Phillip K. Peterson · Michal Toborek
Editors

Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration

Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration

Phillip K. Peterson • Michal Toborek
Editors

Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration

Editors
Phillip K. Peterson
Department of Medicine
University of Minnesota Medical School
Minneapolis, MN, USA

Michal Toborek
Department of Biochemistry
Department of Molecular Biology
University of Miami School of Medicine
Miami, FL, USA

ISBN 978-1-4939-1070-0 ISBN 978-1-4939-1071-7 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7
Springer New York Heidelberg Dordrecht London

Library of Congress Control Number: 2014942307

© Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014
This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed. Exempted from this legal reservation are brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis or material supplied specifically for the purpose of being entered and executed on a computer system, for exclusive use by the purchaser of the work. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is permitted only under the provisions of the Copyright Law of the Publisher's location, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer. Permissions for use may be obtained through RightsLink at the Copyright Clearance Center. Violations are liable to prosecution under the respective Copyright Law.
The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.
While the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication, neither the authors nor the editors nor the publisher can accept any legal responsibility for any errors or omissions that may be made. The publisher makes no warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein.

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

The editors dedicate this book to their wives, children, and mentors.

Preface

> As long as our brain is a mystery, the universe, the reflection of the structure of the brain, will also be a mystery. —Santiago Ramón y Cajal

Over a century has passed since Santiago Ramón y Cajal, the father of modern neuroscience, was awarded the Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine. Yet the brain, like the universe, remains a mystery. But as is true in astrophysics, discoveries in neuroscience continue to astound us. We stand in awe of both these outer and inner worlds. Designation of the 1990s as "The Decade of the Brain" by President George H.W. Bush and the recent launching of the BRAIN (Brain Research through Advancing Innovative Technologies) Initiative by President Barack Obama reflect a universal curiosity about the workings of the nervous system.

The story behind this book, however, begins in the early years of the 1980s—what one might consider the end of the Dark Ages of neuroimmunology. At that time, two highly interdisciplinary scientific fields—psychoneuroimmunology and neuroimmunopharmacology—were just beginning to emerge. In contrast to the prevailing view that the nervous system and the immune system functioned more or less autonomously, research in these fields clearly demonstrated that these two systems are connected. The nervous system, via stress-responsive hormones and neuropeptides, impacted on the immune system. And cells and mediators of the immune system could profoundly affect the brain.

Fast forward to the chapters in this book: state-of-the-art reviews of the neuroimmunological mechanisms underlying some of the most crippling and challenging diseases of the twenty-first century, including Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, multiple sclerosis, Huntington's disease, stroke, cerebral malaria, neuroAIDS, meningitis, encephalitis, and substance abuse. The reader will find that the authors of these chapters and of the introductory chapters on mechanisms of brain defense and neuropathogenesis are talking the same language. This language—activated brain endothelial cells, microglia, and astrocytes and their mediators (cytokines/chemokines and free radicals)—did not exist in the Dark Ages. In that unenlightened era, the brain was regarded simply as an "immunologically privileged" organ.

Now, as you will read, cells of the peripheral immune system (neutrophils, monocytes, and T and B lymphocytes) are not only known to provide critical defense of the nervous system but also implicated in neuroinflammation-induced neurodegeneration.

A concept shared by many of the contributors to this book is that the healthful relationship of the cells of the nervous system and immune system is harmonious. It is when the yin-yang balance is tipped that neurodegenerative processes ensue. Having worked in the field of neuroimmunopharmacology, both before and after the Dark Ages, our main purpose in pulling this book together was to foster communication between neuroscientists, immunologists, and pharmacologists who are dedicated to discovering more about the yin-yang relationship of the nervous and immune systems. But our ultimate goal, which is shared by all the contributors, is to find better treatments and prevention strategies for the diseases highlighted in the book. Several chapters deal with such innovative approaches.

The number of stars in the universe is mind-boggling—current estimate of about one septillion (10^{24}). But so too with the brain, which contains just shy of 100 billion neurons and ten times as many glial cells (totaling over one trillion cells). And when one considers an estimated 100 trillion synapses of neurons and a countless number of neuronal and glial cell receptors and signals, the brain is an incomprehensible organ. While enormous scientific progress has been made in the past quarter century, we remain at the threshold of understanding of how the brain functions and of how the immune system affects both neurophysiological and neuropathological processes. We hope that the readers of this book, like the editors, will share the same sense of awe inspired by the authors of the chapters in this book.

Somewhere, something is waiting to be known. —Carl Sagan

Minneapolis, MN, USA — Phillip K. Peterson
Miami, FL, USA — Michal Toborek

Contents

Part I Mechanisms of Brain Defense and Neuropathogenesis

1 **The Blood-Brain Barrier** 3
Victor Castro and Michal Toborek

2 **Immune Cell Trafficking in the Central Nervous System** 29
Beena John, Christopher A. Hunter, and Tajie H. Harris

3 **General Physiology and Pathophysiology of Microglia** 47
Alexei Verkhratsky and Mami Noda

4 **Inflammation and the Pathophysiology of Astrocytes in Neurodegenerative Diseases** 61
Gordon P. Meares and Etty N. Benveniste

5 **Oxidative Stress, Neuroinflammation, and Neurodegeneration** 81
Hui-Ming Gao, Hui Zhou, and Jau-Shyong Hong

6 **Peripheral Neuroimmune Interactions and Neuropathic Pain** 105
Halina Machelska

Part II Neurological Diseases and Inflammation

7 **Innate and Adaptive Immune-Mediated Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration in Parkinson's Disease** 119
Rebecca A. Wilshusen and R. Lee Mosley

8 **Multiple Sclerosis: Impact on Functioning of the Blood–Brain Barrier** 143
Mark R. Mizee, Gijs Kooij, and Helga E. de Vries

9 **Neuroinflammation in Alzheimer's Disease** 161
Veronika M. Reinisch, Daniela L. Krause, and Norbert Müller

10 Neuroinflammation in Huntington's Disease 179
Roland G.W. Staal and Thomas Möller

11 Neuroinflammation and Immune Regulation in Ischemic Stroke: Identification of New Pharmacological Targets 199
Mario Di Napoli, Craig J. Smith, Stephen J. Hopkins, Aurel Popa-Wagner, Ana Maria Buga, and Mark Slevin

Part III Infectious Diseases

12 HIV/NeuroAIDS 247
Kelly L. Stauch and Howard S. Fox

13 Herpes Simplex Virus Infections of the Central Nervous System 263
Richard J. Whitley

14 Congenital Cytomegalovirus Disease 291
Mark R. Schleiss

15 Japanese Encephalitis: A Tale of Inflammation and Degeneration in the Central Nervous System 309
Kallol Dutta and Anirban Basu

16 The Biology and Clinical Consequence of Infection with the Human Polyomavirus JCV 337
G. von Geldern, M.J. Barhams, and E.O. Major

17 Role of Retrovirus-Induced Transactivator Proteins in Neuroinflammatory Disease 355
Gregory Antell, Michael R. Nonnemacher, Vanessa Pirrone, and Brian Wigdahl

18 Immunopathogenesis of Bacterial Meningitis 387
Uwe Koedel, Matthias Klein, and Hans-Walter Pfister

19 Cerebral Malaria 405
Gregory S. Park and Chandy C. John

Part IV Drugs of Abuse and NeuroAIDS

20 HIV and Cocaine Interplay in HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Disorders 431
Honghong Yao, Crystal Bethel-Brown, and Shilpa J. Buch

21 Methamphetamine Neurotoxicity and Neuroinflammatory Processes 443
Nicole A. Northrop and Bryan K. Yamamoto

22 Drugs of Abuse and NeuroAIDS: Opiates 463
Thomas J. Rogers

23 Cannabinoids 487
Paige S. Katz, Scott Edwards, and Patricia E. Molina

24 Alcohol and Neurodegeneration 511
Yuri Persidsky, Larisa Gofman, and Raghava Potula

Part V Novel Approaches to Therapy

25 Cell-Based Drug Delivery for Improving Antiretroviral Therapeutic Outcomes 529
JoEllyn M. McMillan and Howard E. Gendelman

26 Immunomodulatory Therapeutics 547
David J. Graber and William F. Hickey

27 Therapeutic Potential of Cannabinoids 569
Guy A. Cabral and Melissa Jamerson

Index 589

Contributors

Gregory Antell Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Drexel University College of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Center for Molecular Virology and Translational Neuroscience, Institute for Molecular Medicine and Infectious Disease, Philadelphia, PA, USA

M.J. Barhams, M.H.S.A. Office of Director, NHLBI, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

Anirban Basu National Brain Research Center, Manesar, Haryana, India

Etty N. Benveniste, Ph.D. Department of Cell, Developmental and Integrative Biology, Birmingham, AL, USA

Crystal Bethel-Brown Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Shilpa J. Buch, Ph.D. Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Ana Maria Buga Molecular Psychiatry, Department of Psychiatry, University of Medicine, Rostock, Germany

Department of Functional Sciences, University of Medicine, Craiova, Romania

Guy A. Cabral, Ph.D. Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Virginia Commonwealth University School of Medicine, Richmond, VA, USA

Victor Castro, M.D., Ph.D. Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Miami School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Helga E. de Vries Department of Molecular Cell Biology and Immunology (MCBI), Neuroscience Campus, VU University Medical Center, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Mario Di Napoli, M.D. Neurological Service, San Camillo de' Lellis General Hospital, Rieti, Italy

Neurological Section, SMDN—Center for Cardiovascular Medicine and Cerebrovascular Disease Prevention, Sulmona (AQ), Italy

Department of Medicine for the Elderly, Mansionhouse Unit, Victoria Infirmary, Glasgow, UK

Kallol Dutta Centre de recherche de l'Institut universitaire en santé mentale de Québec, Québec, QC, Canada

Scott Edwards Department of Physiology, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, New Orleans, LA, USA

Alcohol and Drug Abuse Center of Excellence, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, New Orleans, LA, USA

Howard S. Fox, M.D., Ph.D. Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, College of Medicine, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Center for Integrative and Translational Neuroscience, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Hui-Ming Gao Model Animal Research Center and MOE Key Laboratory of Model Animal for Disease Study, Nanjing University, Nanjing, Jiangsu, China

Laboratory of Toxicology and Pharmacology, National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences/National Institutes of Health, Research Triangle Park, NC, USA

G. von Geldern, M.D. Section of Infections of the Nervous System, NINDS, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

Howard E. Gendelman, M.D. Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Larisa Gofman Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, Temple University School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Center for Substance Abuse Research, Temple University School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

David J. Graber Geisel School of Medicine at Dartmouth, Hanover, NH, USA

Department of Pathology, Dartmouth-Hitchcock Medical Center, Lebanon, NH, USA

Tajie H. Harris Department of Neuroscience, School of Medicine, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, VA, USA

William F. Hickey, Ph.D. Geisel School of Medicine at Dartmouth, Hanover, NH, USA

Department of Pathology, Dartmouth-Hitchcock Medical Center, Lebanon, NH, USA

Jau-Shyong Hong, Ph.D. Laboratory of Toxicology and Pharmacology, National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences, Research Triangle Park, NC, USA

Stephen J. Hopkins Vascular and Stroke Research Centre, Manchester Academic Health Science Centre, Salford Royal NHS Foundation Trust, Salford, UK

Christopher A. Hunter Department of Pathobiology, School of Veterinary Medicine, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Melissa Jamerson Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Virginia Commonwealth University School of Medicine, Richmond, VA, USA

Chandy C. John, M.D., M.P.H. Division of Global Pediatrics, University of Minnesota Medical School, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Beena John Department of Pathobiology, School of Veterinary Medicine, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Paige S. Katz Department of Physiology, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, New Orleans, LA, USA

Alcohol and Drug Abuse Center of Excellence, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, New Orleans, LA, USA

Matthias Klein Department of Neurology, University Clinic of Grosshadern, Ludwig-Maximilians-University, Munich, Germany

Uwe Koedel Department of Neurology, University Clinic of Grosshadern, Ludwig-Maximilians-University, Munich, Germany

Gijs Kooij Department of Molecular Cell Biology and Immunology (MCBI), Neuroscience Campus, VU University Medical Center, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Daniela L. Krause Department of Psychiatry and Psychotherapy, Ludwig-Maximilians University Munich, Munich, Germany

Halina Machelska Klinik für Anäesthesiologie und operative Intensivmedizin, Charité-Universitätsmedizin Berlin, Campus Benjamin Franklin, Berlin, Germany

E.O. Major, Ph.D. Laboratory of Molecular Medicine and Neuroscience, NINDS, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

JoEllyn M. McMillan Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Gordon P. Meares, Ph.D. Department of Cell, Developmental and Integrative Biology, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Birmingham, AL, USA

Mark R. Mizee Department of Molecular Cell Biology and Immunology (MCBI), Neuroscience Campus, VU University Medical Center, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Thomas Möller Neuroinflammation Disease Biology Unit, Lundbeck Research USA, Paramus, NJ, USA

Patricia E. Molina, M.D., Ph.D. Department of Physiology, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, New Orleans, LA, USA

Alcohol and Drug Abuse Center of Excellence, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, New Orleans, LA, USA

R. Lee Mosley, Ph.D. Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, Center for Neurodegenerative Disorders, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Norbert Müller Department of Psychiatry and Psychotherapy, Ludwig-Maximilians University Munich, Munich, Germany

Mami Noda Laboratory of Pathophysiology, Graduate School of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Kyushu University, Fukuoka, Japan

Michael R. Nonnemacher Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Drexel University College of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Center for Molecular Virology and Translational Neuroscience, Institute for Molecular Medicine and Infectious Disease, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Nicole A. Northrop, Ph.D. Department of Neurosciences, University of Toledo Health Science Campus, Toledo, OH, USA

Gregory S. Park Division of Global Pediatrics, University of Minnesota Medical School, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Yuri Persidsky, Ph.D. Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, Temple University School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Center for Substance Abuse Research, Temple University School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Hans-Walter Pfister Department of Neurology, University Clinic of Grosshadern, Ludwig-Maximilians-University, Munich, Germany

Vanessa Pirrone Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Drexel University College of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Center for Molecular Virology and Translational Neuroscience, Institute for Molecular Medicine and Infectious Disease, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Aurel Popa-Wagner Molecular Psychiatry, Department of Psychiatry, University of Medicine, Rostock, Germany

Raghava Potula Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, Temple University School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Center for Substance Abuse Research, Temple University School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Veronika M. Reinisch Department of Psychiatry and Psychotherapy, Ludwig-Maximilians University Munich, Munich, Germany

Thomas J. Rogers, Ph.D. Center for Inflammation, Translational and Clinical Lung Research, Temple University School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Mark R. Schleiss, M.D. Department of Pediatrics, Center for Infectious Diseases and Microbiology Translational Research, University of Minnesota Medical School, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Mark Slevin School of Healthcare Science, Manchester Metropolitan University, Manchester, UK

Institut Català de Ciències Cardiovasculars Hospital de la Santa Creu i Sant Pau, Pavelló del Convent Sant Antoni Maria Claret, Barcelona, Spain

Craig J. Smith Vascular and Stroke Research Centre, Manchester Academic Health Science Centre, Salford Royal NHS Foundation Trust, Salford, UK

Roland G.W. Staal Neuroinflammation Disease Biology Unit, Lundbeck Research USA, Paramus, NJ, USA

Kelly L. Stauch, Ph.D. Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, College of Medicine, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Michal Toborek, M.D., Ph.D. Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Miami School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Alexei Verkhratsky, Ph.D. Faculty of Life Sciences, The University of Manchester, Manchester, UK

Richard J. Whitley, M.D. The University of Alabama at Birmingham, Birmingham, AL, USA

Brian Wigdahl, Ph.D. Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Drexel University College of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Center for Molecular Virology and Translational Neuroscience, Institute for Molecular Medicine and Infectious Disease, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Rebecca A. Wilshusen Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, Center for Neurodegenerative Disorders, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Bryan K. Yamamoto, Ph.D. Department of Neurosciences, University of Toledo Health Science Campus, Toledo, OH, USA

Honghong Yao Department of Pharmacology, Medical School of Southeast University, Nanjing, Jiangsu, China

Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Hui Zhou Laboratory of Toxicology and Pharmacology, National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences/National Institutes of Health, Research Triangle Park, NC, USA

Part I
Mechanisms of Brain Defense and Neuropathogenesis

The Blood-Brain Barrier

Victor Castro and Michal Toborek

Abstract The blood-brain barrier (BBB) is the anatomophysiological unit that interfaces between the blood and the brain. It is composed of brain vascular endothelial cells and their surrounding astrocytes and pericytes. These cells interface with neurons to form a functional unit that regulates blood flow in the brain and the traffic of substances between blood and brain parenchyma. The proper function of the BBB requires specialized roles for each of the cell types that compose it; thus, the endothelial cells form a proper biological barrier by expressing tight junctions (TJ) that seal the intercellular space while forming paracellular ion pores. The expression of TJ brings an additional benefit to the endothelial cells as they are determinants of membrane polarization; the resulting cell polarity is crucial for the proper expression of membrane transporters and ion channels responsible for the transcellular exchange of substances across the endothelium. The physiological properties of endothelial cells, however, are regulated by their interaction with astrocytes and pericytes that in turn interact with each other and nearby neurons. This chapter explores the cellular structure of the blood-brain barrier and provides an introduction to the molecular characteristics of tight junctions and electrophysiological properties of the brain vascular endothelium.

Keywords Blood-brain barrier • Microvasculature • Endothelium • Astrocytes • Pericytes • Transporting phenotype • Tight junctions

V. Castro, M.D., Ph.D. (✉) • M. Toborek, M.D., Ph.D. (✉)
Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Miami School of Medicine, 1011 NW 15th Street, Gautier Building, Room 528, Miami, FL 33136-1019, USA
e-mail: vcastrovillela@med.miami.edu; mtoborek@med.miami.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_1, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

1 Introduction

The blood-brain barrier (BBB) is a paramount determinant of brain homeostasis. It is a modulated anatomophysiological interface which separates and controls substance exchange between the blood and the brain parenchyma. Its discovery dates to the late nineteenth century, when Paul Ehrlich observed that if aniline-based dyes were injected into the vasculature of a living animal, most tissues would be readily stained, but not the brain or the spinal cord [1]. In 1898, Max H. Lewandowsky demonstrated that neurotoxins were able to affect brain functions if administered directly into the brain, but not if delivered through the vasculature [2]. Subsequently, in 1913, Edwin Goldman showed that the central nervous system (CNS) could be stained if the dyes were injected directly into the cerebrospinal fluid instead of systemic circulation; however, this staining was restricted to the brain, and not found in other organs [3], suggesting that the aniline compounds were not admitted into the circulating blood flow. This showed the existence of compartmentalization between the brain and the blood, and since no obvious separating membrane was found, it was suggested that the barrier resided directly in the bran microvessels. Later, with the introduction of electron microscopy, the barrier function was correlated to endothelial cells of brain capillaries.

2 Brain Vascular Endothelium

Epithelia are biological barriers that separate and maintain the physicochemical homeostasis between two biological compartments. They constitute a membrane formed by one or more layers of epithelial cells that adhere and communicate with each other, interact with the extracellular matrix, and rest on a basal lamina of connective tissue. To maintain homeostasis, epithelia are subspecialized to fulfill specific needs depending on their topological localization. Nevertheless, two features are common to all epithelial tissues regardless of their specialization: they are capable of vectorial transepithelial transport and they regulate the intercellular ionic flux (Fig. 1).

Endothelia are a subset of epithelia which form the interior lining of the heart, blood and lymph vessels, capillaries, and the serous cavities of the body. Endothelial cells are distinguished from epithelial cells by having different protein expression and molecular behavior patterns. However, similar to epithelia, endothelial cells are polarized, specialize in molecular transport, and regulate the intercellular flux of substances. In the circulatory system, the vascular endothelium ensures laminar blood flow, interacts with blood cells and plasma molecules, secretes hormones, expresses surface immunological recognition molecules, prevents thrombosis, and modulates the passage of immunological cells, water, and substances between the blood and the underlying tissues. In specific tissues (e.g., hepatic sinusoids and the

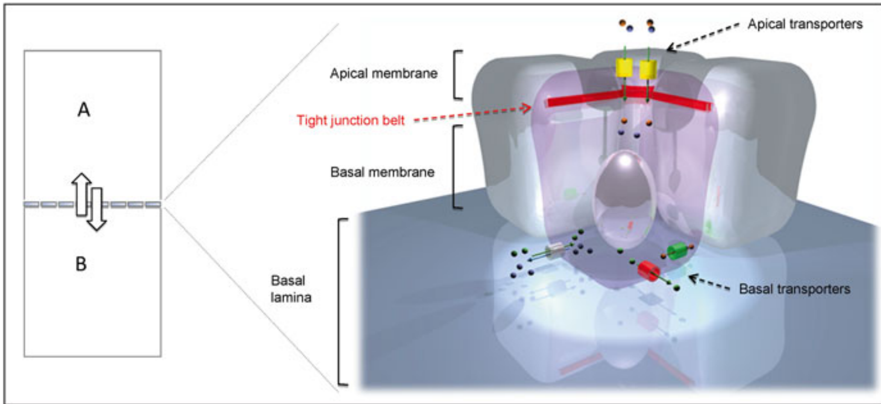


Fig. 1 Epithelia and endothelia are biological membranes that separate two biological compartments and are responsible for maintaining the physicochemical homeostasis between them. These two compartments are generally known as apical (A) and basal (B). The membrane of epithelial/endothelial cells is divided accordingly into apical and basal domains, separated by a molecular belt formed by tight junctions. Different sets of membrane receptors and transporters are expressed in each of these domains. As a result, the cell membrane is physically and functionally polarized

choroid plexus), the vascular endothelium is paired with an underlying epithelial membrane to form a dual transporting unit.

The vascular endothelium has paramount physiopathogenic roles in the onset and perpetuation of atherosclerosis and hypertension, and is involved in systemic inflammation processes, edema, and thrombosis. Furthermore, systemic viral and bacterial infections, and most therapeutic and recreational drugs disseminate through the blood, posing a challenge to the normal vascular endothelial physiology. Endothelial dysfunction is also involved in the progression of systemic metabolic diseases like diabetes mellitus or hypercholesterolemia.

The brain capillaries represent a special case of endothelial specialization and adaptation. Given the particular physicochemical isolation required by the brain, the capillary endothelial function must be regulated with precision, and proper mechanisms must be in place to ensure that brain functions are maintained during vascular growth and/or remodeling. To achieve this degree of regulation, the brain capillary endothelial cells rest on a basal lamina and form a cellular network with the surrounding pericytes and astrocytes that, in turn, are in contact with neurons. This cellular arrangement forms a neurovascular unit and constitutes the BBB, which is embedded in a thin layer of extracellular matrix and strictly regulates the transport of water, ions, glucose, nutrients, and other molecules to and from the brain, playing a major role in the removal of drugs and toxins from the brain parenchyma (Fig. 2).

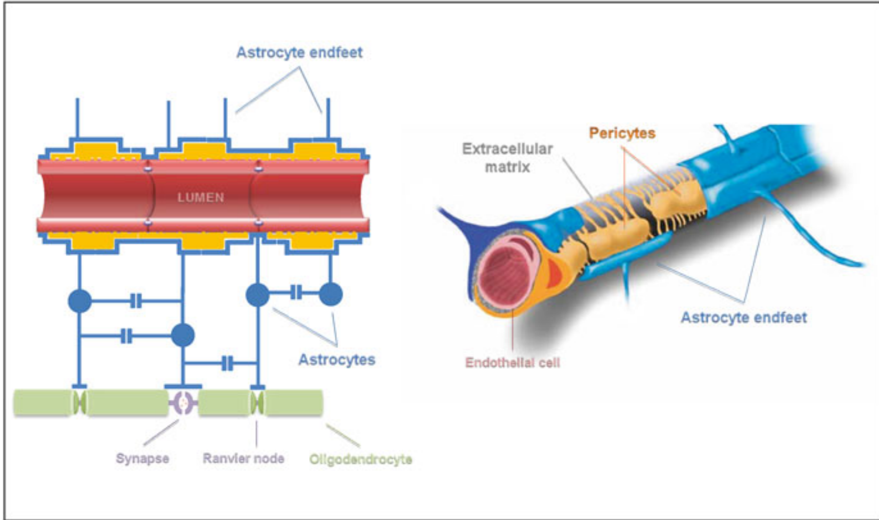


Fig. 2 The blood-brain barrier (BBB) is the regulated anatomophysiological interface that controls homeostasis between the blood and the brain parenchyma at the capillary level. Here, the brain vascular endothelium (*pink*) is surrounded by pericytes (*yellow*) and the end-feet of astrocytes (*blue*). They form a functional unit that is regulated by blood flow and neuronal activity. Astrocytes and pericytes play an important role in this regulation. Pericytes are in direct contact with endothelial cells, embracing them with multiple podocytes, to regulate blood flow and transduce signals to and from astrocytes and endothelial cells. Astrocytes form an extensive and well-organized network that interconnects capillaries with neurons and synapses. Specialized astrocyte end-feet are thus in direct contact with the synaptic space, Ranvier nodes, and brain capillaries

2.1 Transporting Phenotype

Electrophysiology experiments performed in the middle of the nineteenth century showed that electrical current measures in semi-intact frog-leg muscle preparations were consistently lower when the skin was conserved as compared to skin-free preparations [4]. These were the first published experiments that hinted the possibility of the skin modulating the electrical properties of the underlying tissues and prompted the first formal epithelial electrophysiological studies. Shortly after, it was discovered that the frog skin exhibited spontaneous electrical activity if placed between two compartments filled with ionic solutions, a condition that invariably resulted in the solution bathing the inner side of the skin (basal) becoming more electropositive than the solution bathing the outer side (apical) [5]. It was then shown that such spontaneous potential depended on the sodium and lithium ions present in the solutions used, so it was proposed that the electric activity of the frog skin resulted from the asymmetric epithelial permeability to those ions [6, 7].

Further studies demonstrated unambiguously that the skin is indeed capable of transporting Na^+ and that this transport occurs preferentially from the outer side to the inner side of the skin regardless of electrochemical gradient.

Based on these observations, epithelia and endothelia became represented as an equivalent electrical circuit that was originally represented as a "two-membrane" model, where the net transepithelial transport was equal to the net flux of Na^+ across the outer and the inner cell membranes [8]. To explain this phenomenon, it was proposed that the luminal membrane allowed Na^+ to passively enter the cell while the basal membrane transported it out while being exchanged by K^+. Thus, the model required a mechanism to pump Na^+ ions out of the cell through the basal membrane against their electrical and concentration gradients [9]. Incidentally, in a series of unrelated experiments, a ubiquitous membranal protein that actively transported Na^+ ions against their concentration gradient was described [10]. This protein, later identified as the Na^+/K^+-ATPase, was proposed to be the Na^+ pump required in the model. A direct functional implication was that two different sets of membrane transporters had to be expressed differently in the apical and basal regions of the cell membrane in order to explain the different transporting capabilities of both regions.

Further studies demonstrated that in the absence of paracellular free diffusion of ions (electric paracellular leakage), the apical and basal membranes of epithelial and endothelial cells had independent electrical properties and their combined voltage could be added, as if they were in a serial circuit. Thus, the intercellular space had to be closed to prevent the transported ions from freely diffusing back along their concentration gradients.

Biological barriers transport not only ions but also water and other solutes (e.g., glucose and amino acids) that are needed to maintain the homeostasis between the two biological compartments they separate. Endothelial transport occurs by transcellular and/or paracellular routes. Transcellular transport is determined by the presence or absence of specific membrane transporters and channels, whereas the paracellular route is regulated by tight junctions (TJs), protein complexes sealing the paracellular space and forming paracellular ion channels.

TJs are expressed as a continuous belt around the lateral borders of cells, dividing the cell membrane into apical and basal domains, preventing free diffusion of membrane receptors, transporters, and ion channels from one domain to the other, Effectively polarizing the cells. The vectorial transport of Na^+ from the apical to the basal side of the epithelium/endothelium generates a transepithelial/endothelial electrochemical gradient that constitutes the driving force for all other membrane transporters to work [11]. Thus, the transcellular exchange of glucose, amino acids, water, ions, toxins, drugs, etc. is driven by the transport of Na^+, whose vectoriality is determined by the expression of TJs. These two features, namely, the vectorial transport and TJ expression, reflect the current physiological understanding of the two-membrane model and define the transporting phenotype characteristic of the BBB endothelium and, in general, all mature epithelia (Fig. 3).

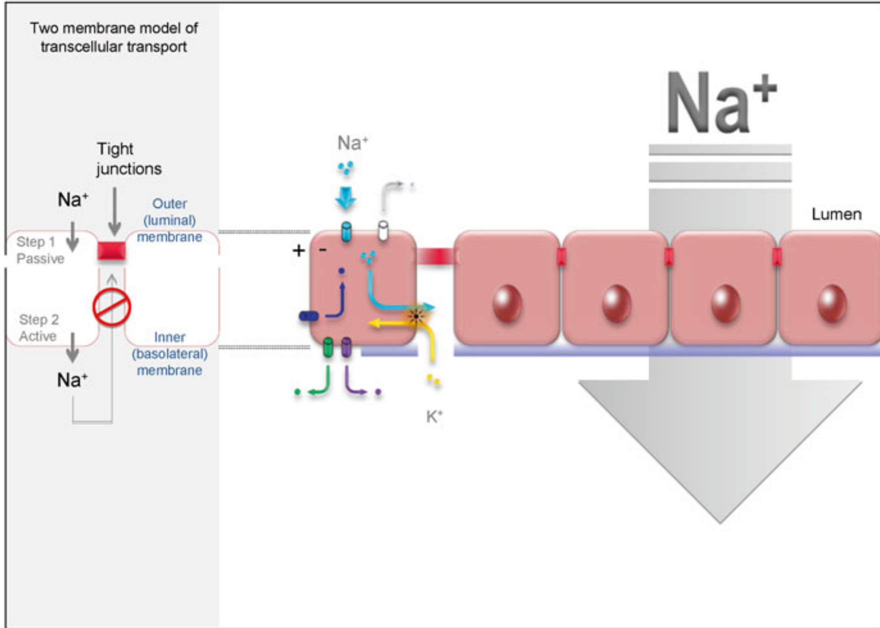


Fig. 3 All endothelia and epithelia share a common transporting phenotype characterized by the expression of tight junctions and vectorial transcellular transport. The classical description of this phenotype established the need of a polarized expression of transporters in the apical (outer/luminal) or basolateral (internal/abluminal) membrane. In order for this model to work as a transporting mechanism, sodium (the most abundant electrolyte in the extracellular fluid) must passively enter the apical membrane, following its concentration gradient, and be actively exchanged with potassium in the basolateral membrane. The sodium pump (Na+/K+-ATPase) is the enzyme that fulfills this role, and its polarized expression is paramount in maintaining the transporting properties of the brain endothelium. In order to prevent sodium backflow, the paracellular space is sealed with tight junctions (*red boxes*). The resulting biochemical effect is the formation of an electrochemical gradient between the intracellular and extracellular sides of the luminal and abluminal membranes. Due to its implications in cell metabolism, this gradient is canonically considered the driving force that allows other membrane transporters to work and ultimately maintain the proper electrochemical environment for cellular metabolism to occur

2.2 Electrical Representation

The introduction of the two-membrane model represented a milestone in understanding the transport characteristics of epithelia and endothelia. However, the observed change in ionic concentration between the apical and basal compartments was not consistent with the total change in voltage across the epithelium/endothelium. This condition was inferred to be caused by transepithelial leakage of ions that could not be explained by the two-membrane model alone, suggesting the existence of an "electrical shunt" pathway. Further studies demonstrated that ionic diffusion through the paracellular space was an important contributor to the electrical shunt [12], and different paracellular conductivities were identified for a number of tissues, leading

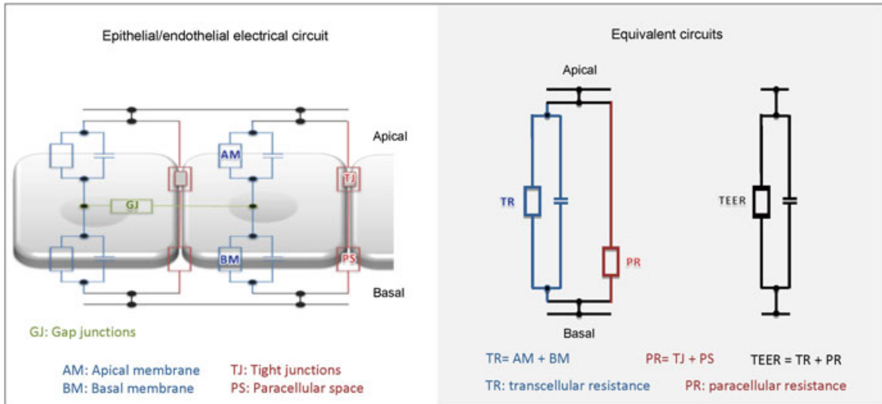


Fig. 4 Electrical gradients arising from the transendothelial ionic transport generate voltage across the apical and basal membranes, tight junctions, and the paracellular space. The particular localization and conductivity of these elements to transport specific ions results in the generation of electrical resistance, creating an electrical circuit with two sets of resistors in parallel: apical and basal membrane (representing transcellular transport), and the tight junctions and paracellular space (representing paracellular diffusion). In addition, direct cell-cell communication via gap junctions allows ions to move between cells, interconnecting adjacent circuits and creating an additional intercellular resistance that has a practical role when the ionic equilibration rate between adjacent cells needs to be accounted for. The transepithelial/transendothelial electrical resistance (TEER) is obtained by obtaining the summatory of the transcellular and paracellular resistances

to the distinction between "tight" (low-conductivity) and "leaky" (high-conductivity) epithelia [13]. It was later proposed that the molecular composition of the TJs was responsible for determining the low or high conductivity of epithelia. These concepts were integrated into the two-membrane model, ultimately representing epithelia/endothelia as an electrical circuit with four resistors: the apical and basal cell membranes form two serial resistors representing the transcellular route, while parallel to them, TJs form a resistor serially coupled to the electrical resistance of the paracellular space, representing the paracellular route (i.e. the shunt pathway) [14] (Fig. 4).

The most sensitive approach to determine the transport function of the BBB endothelium is thus to measure the transendothelial electrical resistance (TEER), which results from the mathematical integration of the transcellular and paracellular resistances. Since TEER is directly proportional to the paracellular resistance, it constitutes an accurate determination of the ionic permeability of TJs.

In general, TJs are selectively permeable to cations, depending on the size and charge; however, their selectivity can be altered by changes in pH, osmotic load, by applying an electrical current [15], or if the molecular structure of the TJ changes. Thus, different ionic selectivities found in different types of epithelia and endothelia depend on the particular molecular composition of TJs [16]. Therefore, it is not surprising that alterations in the molecular composition of TJs of the brain endothelium can influence ionic selectivity and tightness of capillaries influencing the overall BBB permeability.

3 Endothelial Cells and Tight Junctions

Mature endothelial cells are characterized by low height, low number of caveolae in their luminal surface, and numerous mitochondria. Brain endothelial cells (Fig. 5) differ from those outside the brain by the absence of fenestrations, low pinocytic activity, and extensive TJs. The morphology of TJs has been intensively studied by freeze-fracture electron microscopy [17] where it appears as a network of particles organized into multibranched and interconnected fibrils, known as strands. These strands associate with other strands from opposing membranes, forming Velcro-like molecular seal that closes the paracellular space. The number of strands and their branching frequency vary notably among different types of epithelia and correlate with TJ ionic permeability [14] (Fig. 6).

The biochemical nature of TJs started to be characterized when a TJ-enriched membrane fraction obtained from mouse liver was used to generate a monoclonal antibody that detected a previously unknown cytosolic protein of ~225 kDa [18], this was the first TJ protein discovered and named "zonula occludens-1" (ZO-1).

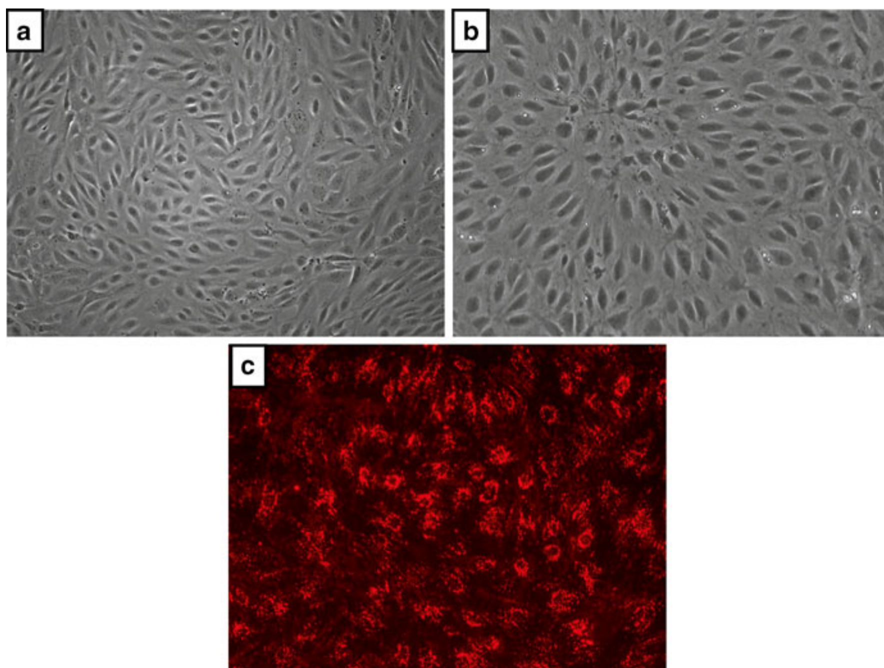


Fig. 5 Brain capillary endothelial cells cultured in vitro. (**a**) Confluent monolayer of frequently used human brain endothelial cells hCMEC/D3. (**b**) Confluent monolayer of primary mouse brain endothelial cells. In (**a**) and (**b**) notice typical morphology of brain endothelial cells, such as a fusiform shape and cobblestone appearance. (**c**) Positive uptake of acetylated low-density lipoprotein are one of the markers of endothelial cells

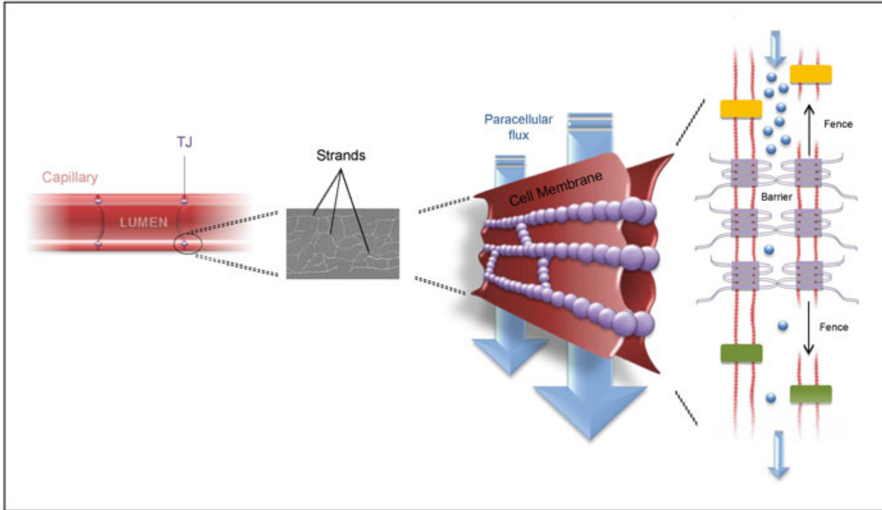


Fig. 6 One of the most prominent features of brain endothelial cells, as well as those from other endothelia or epithelia, is the expression of tight junctions. When studied by freeze-fracture electron microscopy, they appear as a series of filaments, collectively known as strands. Higher number of strands and complex branching patterns have been associated with reduced paracellular ionic permeability (high TEER, i.e. tight paracellular space), whereas fewer strands and simple branching correlate with increased paracellular permeability (low TEER, i.e. leaky paracellular space). These strands are formed by transmembranal proteins that associate laterally in the same membrane (*cis*) to form a fence preventing the free diffusion of proteins and transporters between the apical and basal membrane domains, and frontally with their homologues in a neighboring membrane (*trans*) to form a paracellular barrier that restricts ionic diffusion through the paracellular space

A second molecular component of TJs was later identified as a transmembranal protein of ~65 kDa that received the name "occludin" [19]. Shortly after, two other transmembranal proteins were found claudin-1 and 2, the first of a novel protein family responsible for sealing the intercellular space [20] and forming paracellular ion pores. With the advent of novel protein-protein interaction and molecular screening techniques, the discovery of many additional TJ proteins followed in a short period of time. Currently, more than 40 proteins have been identified as part of TJs [21]. Although the list is large and growing, the key roles in defining the structure and function of TJs reside in a small number of these proteins.

Structurally, TJs consist of a set of transmembranal proteins that interact laterally with each other (*cis*) and across the paracellular space with those expressed in an opposing membrane (*trans*). The *cis*-interaction patterns determine the formation and branching of TJ strands, while the *trans*-interaction arrangements define the paracellular space sealing and formation of ion pores. The transmembranal proteins are scaffolded and attached to the underlying cytoskeleton by a set of submembranal adaptors that, in turn, form a link between transmembranal proteins, regulatory molecules, and transcription factors (Fig. 7).

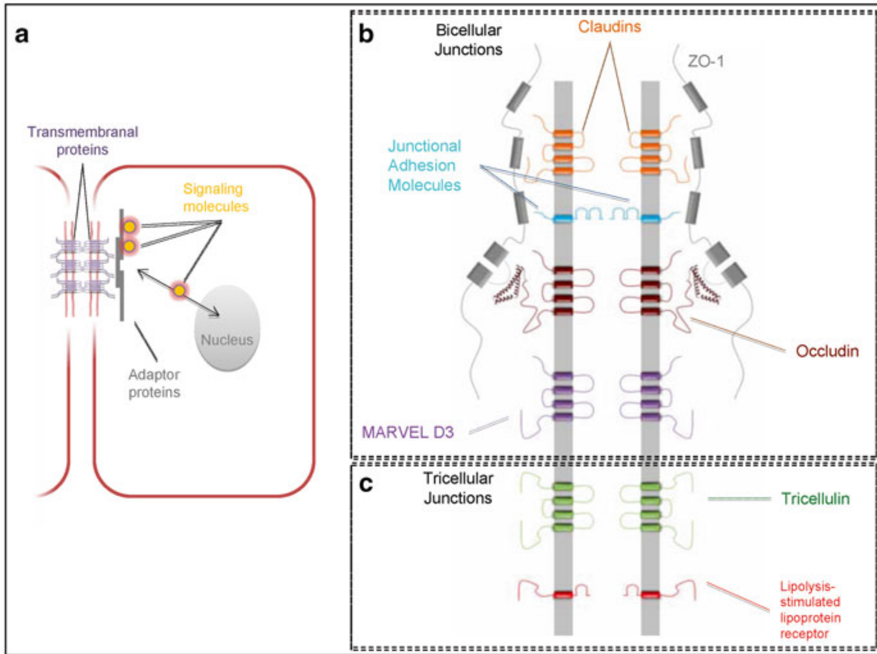


Fig. 7 (**a**) Tight junction complexes are formed by a set of transmembrane proteins anchored and stabilized by a large number of adaptor proteins that, in turn, are associated to the cytoskeleton and numerous signaling molecules that elicit changes in cell metabolism and gene expression. (**b**) The known transmembranal constituents of tight junctions are shown anchored to the submembranal adaptor ZO-1. The figure depicts these proteins in isolation, but they complex to form homo- and hetero-oligomers in living cells. Bicellular contacts are the regions where the membranes of two opposing cells are in contact and the streamlined descriptions of the tight junctions refer to the bicellular junctions. (**c**) A special set of proteins are required in those places where three cells contact each other. Tricellulin and the lipolysis-stimulated lipoprotein receptor organize tight junctions and the tricellular contacts

Epithelia/endothelia are tridimensional structures; therefore, the paracellular space formed where three cells meet together (tricellular contacts) must be subjected to the same sealing and regulatory mechanisms as the bicellular contacts. When the bicellular TJ belt reaches the tricellular contacts, the most apical strands turn down and extend toward the basal membrane, elongating the TJ perpendicularly to the bicellular TJ belt (Fig. 8). Tricellular and bicellular TJs are thus interconnected and form a continuous complex. The vertically oriented strands interact with each other and form an extracellular tubular channel of small diameter (~10 nm) known as the central tube which, similar to the bicellular TJs, regulates paracellular flux (Fig. 8).

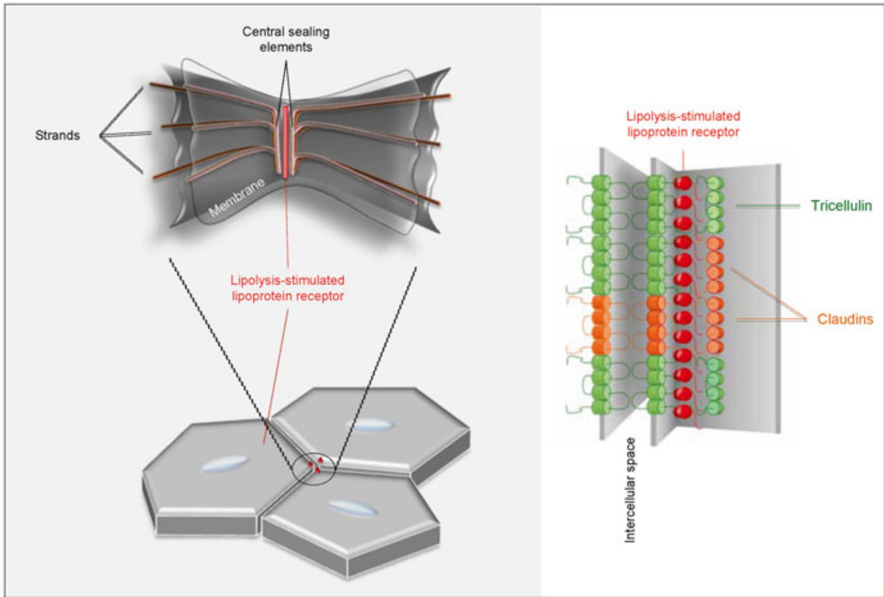


Fig. 8 At the tricellular contacts, the lipolysis-stimulated lipoprotein receptor functions as a beacon for tricellulin to find the cellular corners. Once in place, tricellulin organizes the incorporation of claudin-containing vertical strands to the tricellular borders, forming the central sealing elements. Similar to claudins that form paracellular pores to regulate ionic conductivity, tricellulin controls the ionic environment at the tricellular junctions

3.1 Molecular Structure of the Tight Junctions

3.1.1 Transmembranal Proteins

TJ transmembranal proteins are grouped into three main families: claudins, TJ-associated MARVEL (*m*yelin/lymphocyte *a*nd *r*elated proteins for *ve*sicle trafficking and membrane *l*ink) proteins (TAMPs), and adhesion molecules of the immunoglobulin superfamily. Claudins and TAMPs are tetraspanins, having four transmembranal domains, two extracellular loops, and intracellular N- and C-terminal domains. On the contrary, junctional adhesion molecules (JAMs) are single spanning molecules with a large extracellular domain and a short intracellular tail (Fig. 7).

Claudins

Claudins are the main functional constituents of the TJ strands, seal the paracellular space and form ion pores. Currently, there are 27 known human claudin molecules that, according to their amino acid sequence, can be organized into classic

(claudin-1 to 10, -14, -15, -17, and -19) and nonclassic (claudin-11 to 13, -16, -18, and 20–27) [22]. The precise functional role of many of them is still unknown. Some claudins exhibit a clear paracellular sealing function (claudin-1, -5, -11, and -14), while others are better known for their capacity to form cation pores (claudin-2, -7, -10B, -15, and -16), increasing TJ permeability and decreasing TEER [23]. Claudin-2 is involved in forming pores for monovalent cations (Na^+, K^+, Rb^+, Li^+, Cs^+), claudin-7 and -15 for Na^+, claudin-10B for cations, and claudin-16 for mono- and divalent cations. The cationic permeability is decreased if members of another subset of claudins (claudin-4, -5, -8, -11, -14, and -19) are incorporated into TJs. The formation of anion pores is less understood. Claudin-10A and -7 may be involved in forming Cl^- pores.

Although claudin-1, -3, -5, and -12 are major players in forming TJs between brain microvascular endothelial cells, the involvement (or absence) of other claudin types in the BBB has not been sufficiently clarified. The functions of claudin-6, -9, -12, -13, -17, -18, and 20–27 are still unidentified. Claudin-6, -9, and -13 are thought to be involved in kidney maturation [69]. Claudin-12 and -18 have been found in epithelia and endothelia of the intestine, inner ear, and brain endothelial cells. Claudin-17, -20, -22, and -23 have been found in the kidney, colon, stomach, and placenta, while claudin-21 and 24 have only been identified by genomic analysis.

Different claudins can interact with each other in *cis* and *trans*, homo- and heterotypically. They are anchored in the plasma membrane by adaptor proteins like ZO-1, ZO-2, ZO-3, and the PALS-1-associated tight junction protein PATJ [17, 24]. In most cases, at least two types of claudins are simultaneously expressed; thus, the cell-type-specific variation of claudin isoforms determines the differences in TEER and paracellular permeability [17, 25, 26].

Occludin

Occludin is another constituent of the TJ strands and the first transmembranal protein of TJs to be identified [19]. Although occludin is also a tetraspanin, it does not share similarities with any of the known claudins. It belongs to the TAMP family [27] for which it represents the archetype. It has seven known isoforms generated by alternative splicing. The classical description of occludin refers to the isoform 1, which weighs ~60 kDa, has a very short N-terminal domain, and has a very large C-terminal domain accounting for almost 50 % of its weight. Its MARVEL domain encompasses the four transmembranal domains, the loops in between, and the most N-proximal region of the C-terminal domain. The C-terminal domain has similarities to the RNA polymerase II elongation factor ELL and is thought to mediate protein-protein interactions. Isoform 2 lacks the fourth transmembranal domain, presumably causing the C-terminal domain to become extracellular. Isoform 3 lacks the last 47 amino acids on the C-terminal region, corresponding to half the coiled-coil domain that normally binds to the adaptor protein ZO-1. Isoform 4 is formed by the fourth transmembranal and the full C-terminal domain. Isoform 5 is comprised of the C-terminal domain, excluding a stretch of 57 amino acids on its N-terminal region, and lacks any transmembranal domains, being presumably a cytosolic

protein. Nevertheless, this isoform maintains the full binding site for ZO-1. Isoform 6 is 69 amino acids long, conserves the first 49 amino acids of the N-terminal domain, and presumably is cytosolic. Isoform 7 is 70 amino acids long, conserves the first 50 amino acids of the N-terminal domain, and is also presumed to be cytosolic.

The functions of occludin have proven to be elusive to determine. Most of our current knowledge comes from studying the isoform 1 which has been suggested to be a part of a system that regulates the expression of other TJ molecules and the function of the TJ itself. Occludin may be involved in the activation of the TJ-associated guanine nucleotide exchange factor GEF-H1/Lfc [28] and in targeting the tumoral growth factor-ß (TGF-ß) receptors to the TJs. On the other hand, the interaction of occludin with ZO-1 links it indirectly with other transmembranal TJ molecules (e.g., claudins and JAMs) that also attach to ZO-1. The C-terminal domain is also rich in serines, threonines, and tyrosines that can be differentially phosphorylated [29–31]. In intact cells, occludin is highly phosphorylated on threonine and serine residues, while tyrosines are dephosphorylated. When threonines and serines are dephosphorylated, and tyrosines phosphorylated, occludin delocalizes from TJs. The differential phosphorylation of occludin has been linked to changes in its ability to interact with itself and with ZO-1, as well as modulation of TJ permeability.

Tricellulin

Tricellulin (MARVEL D2) is also a TAMP family member. It is found almost exclusively at the tricellular contacts, where it functions as a master molecule directing organization of the tricellular TJs (Fig. 8). It has an ELL domain and also binds ZO-1 [32, 33]. There are four known isoforms of tricellulin which, similarly to occludin, are formed by alternative splicing. Tricellulin-a is the classical isoform, weighing 64 kDa. Tricellulin-a1 lacks a small number of amino acids in the C-terminal domain, but maintains the ELL domain. Tricellulin-b lacks the ELL domain, and tricellulin-c is predicted to have only two transmembrane domains.

Tricellulin is regulated by phosphorylation, particularly by a PKC-signaling pathway that has been linked to the activity of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma (PPARγ). The presence of tricellulin is required for the adequate development of TEER and molecular organization of TJ molecules in both tricellular and bicellular contacts. At tricellular contacts, tricellulin selectively seals the paracellular space against macromolecules without altering the ionic permeability of the tricellular TJs [34]. Furthermore, expression of tricellulin has been suggested to protect against viral and transepithelial penetration of foreign antigens. Interestingly, in the absence of occludin in epithelial kidney cells, tricellulin migrates from the tricellular to the bicellular contacts [70], suggesting that tricellulin may partially compensate for some occludin functions. On the other hand, the presence of tricellulin in bicellular TJs reduces strand discontinuities and improves their paracellular barrier function.

MARVEL-D3

MARVEL-D3 is a TAMP member whose association with TJs was recently discovered [35]. There are two known isoforms (~45 and ~46 kDa) widely expressed in epithelia and endothelia. Currently, little is known about its function. MARVEL-D3 expression is not required for functional TJs; interestingly, its depletion results in enhanced TEER. Thus, it has been suggested that MARVEL-D3 modulates the paracellular barrier properties of TJs. MARVEL-D3 was also suggested to have an overlapping function with tricellulin and occludin, although the precise nature of this function needs to be clarified.

Lipolysis-Stimulated Lipoprotein Receptor (LSR)

LSR is a receptor for triacylglyceride-rich lipoproteins that binds chylomicrons and low- and very-low-density lipoproteins in the presence of free fatty acids, allowing their subsequent cellular uptake. It is a single spanning molecule of ~71 kDa with an extracellular N-terminal Ig-like domain, a single transmembranal domain, and a large cytosolic C-terminal domain. There are four known isoforms with slightly different molecular weights. Its recent identification as a TJ molecule led to the proposal of a model that explains the formation of tricellular TJs. LSR is suggested to define a topographic landmark for cellular corners at tricellular contacts [36]. The cytosolic C-terminal domain of LSR binds to tricellulin, suggesting that LSR can be directly involved in recruiting it to the tricellular borders, where in turn, tricellulin directs the organization of the tricellular TJs (Fig. 8).

Junctional Adhesion Molecules (JAMs)

JAMs are members of the immunoglobulin superfamily and, similarly to occludin, are not exclusive to epithelial/endothelial cells, as they are also found in leukocytes and platelets. They are formed by a single transmembranal domain, and their large extracellular domain has two Ig-like motifs. The family is comprised of four members: A, B, C, and 4/L (4 in mouse, L in human). While JAM-A and -C are localized at the TJs, JAM-B is expressed along the whole lateral membrane of endothelial cells.

JAMs are involved in cell adhesion by *trans*-interacting with themselves and integrins; thus, they have been proposed to play a role in adhesion of leukocytes to endothelial cells. Their involvement in TJs also contributes to endothelial barrier function [37], but the mechanisms of such regulation are still not defined [38]. JAM-A, -B, and -C have PDZ-binding motifs that allow them to bind a number of TJ-associated adaptor proteins, such as ZO-1, MAGI-1, or MUPP-1. The serine protein kinase CASK/Lin2 and the cell polarity-related/G protein-coupled receptor Par3 are also known binding partners of JAMs. Therefore, it has been suggested that JAMs have a double role in endothelial cells, regulating leukocyte/platelet/endothelial cell interactions and TJ formation during the acquisition of cell polarity.

Coxsackievirus and Adenovirus Receptor (CAR)

CAR was originally identified as a protein that enables group B coxsackievirus and different types of adenoviruses to attach to the cell surface. It is a single spanning molecule formed by an extracellular N-terminal domain that contains two Ig-like domains, a single transmembrane domain, and a smaller cytosolic C-terminal domain. Five isoforms have been identified, but their functions in TJs are yet to be clarified [39]. CAR-1 has a binding region for ZO-1 and its overexpression leads to an increase in TEER. Since it can bind to IgG and IgM in serum and is overexpressed at sites of inflammation, it has been speculated that, similarly to JAMs, CAR-1 may be involved in the transepithelial transmigration of immune cells.

3.1.2 Submembranal Proteins

These adaptors bind to the transmembrane proteins and allow them to acquire a proper organization in cell membranes, linking them to the cytoskeleton and signaling molecules. Some of these adaptors are big scaffolds (i.e. ZO-1) that allow multiple proteins to be bound simultaneously. The most studied proteins in this group are members of the membrane-associated guanylate kinase (MAGUK) family, MAGUK-inverted proteins (MAGIs), and cingulin.

Membrane-associated Guanylate Kinases

MAGUK proteins are characterized by having one or more PSD95/Disk-large/ZO-1 (PDZ) domains, a Src homology-3 (SH3), and a non-catalytic guanylate kinase homology (GuK) domain. Most of them are scaffolding proteins and localize to cell-cell contacts, where they interact with numerous structural and signaling proteins via their PDZ, SH3, and GuK domains. Based on their size and domain distribution, four MAGUK subfamilies are known: DLG-like, ZO-1-like, p55-like, and LIN2-like. ZO-1-like proteins have the most relevance for TJs. ZO-1, -2, and -3 play a key role in regulating membrane protein assembly, clustering of receptors and ion channels, and regulation of cell differentiation [40].

ZO-1 is a ~220 kDa protein that anchors claudins, occludin, JAMs, and tricellulin in TJs. ZO-1 is thus considered the main TJ scaffolding protein. It also binds the Y-box transcription factor ZONAB, the adherens junction protein β-catenin, the signaling proteins ($G\alpha_{12}$ and $G\alpha_{i2}$), the β-subunit of the L-type Ca^{2+} channel, actin, CAR, afadin, and the desmosomal protein AHNAK [41, 71]. Similar to occludin, expression of ZO-1 is not restricted to TJs and epithelial/endothelial cells. The amino acid sequence of ZO-1 contains nuclear localization signals. In fact, ZO-1 localizes to the cell nucleus in sparse cultures of epithelial or endothelial cells. In brain capillary endothelial cells, the small GTPase Rho is involved in the nuclear localization of ZO-1 by inducing phosphorylation of the transcription factor cAMP response element-binding protein (CREB) [42]. The nuclear localization of ZO-1 has also been observed in proliferating corneal fibroblasts and HEK293T cells.

There are five known isoforms of ZO-1 formed by alternative splicing. The most studied are a+, which corresponds to the classical description, and a−, which lacks 80 amino acids in its C-terminal domain. They appear to have different roles; a+ is predominant in epithelia, while a− is in endothelia. In addition, a+ seems to correlate with the establishment of functional TJs and a− is associated with structurally dynamic TJs that undergo active remodeling, e.g., in Sertoli cells or podocytes [43]. The other isoforms are b1 and b2, about which little is known.

ZO-2 is a 160 kDa molecule that binds to ZO-1, claudins, occludin, cingulin, α-catenin, and actin. In sparse epithelial cultures, it is conspicuously located in nuclear speckles, where it co-localizes with the splicing factor SC35. It also associates with the transcription factors Fos, Jun, and C/EBP. ZO-3 is a 130 kDa protein that binds to ZO-1/ZO-2 complexes and seems to mediate the assembly of TJs by associating with PATJ, cingulin, and occludin [44].

The MAGUK-inverted (MAGI) group of proteins is a subset of MAGUK molecules that, inversely to the archetypical MAGUKs, have most of their PDZ domains located N-terminally to the SH3-GuK domains [40]. MAGI-1 co-localizes with ZO-1 and the GTP exchange protein GEP at TJs. MAGI-2 and -3 form a complex with the phosphatase PTEN that catalyzes the dephosphorylation of phosphatidylinositol 3,4,5-triphosphate, which is involved in apoptosis suppression by activating AKT/PKB.

The protein associated with Lin-7 (PALS-1) is also a MAGUK protein. It is recruited to TJs by the PALS-1-associated tight junction protein PATJ and functions as an adaptor that links PATJ to CRB-1, a molecular scaffold that participates in the development of cell polarity. The resulting PALS1/PATJ/CRB-1 complex plays a paramount role in establishing apico-basal polarity and TJ biogenesis. PALS-1 is also involved in adherens junction formation and the trafficking of E-cadherin.

Other Relevant Proteins

The partitioning-defective protein PAR-3 is associated at the TJ level with JAMs and forms a complex with PAR-6 and the atypicial (a) kinases PKC-λ and PKC-ξ. PAR-6, a binding partner of the Rho GTPases Cdc42-GTP and Rac1, is a key molecule that mediates the association of Rac1, Cdc42, and the atypical PKCs to PAR-3. The PAR-3/PAR-6/Cdc42/Rac1 complex is directly involved in cell polarity during the acquisition of the epithelial phenotype and is thought to be recruited to TJs by the association of PAR-3 with JAMs. PAR-6 also interacts with PALS1, linking PALS1/PATJ/CRB with the PAR3/PAR6/aPKC complex [45].

Afadin, also known as AF-6, is a 205 kDa protein that interacts with ZO-1, cingulin, JAMs, profilin, F-actin, and Fam. The binding between ZO-1 and afadin is mediated by the Ras-binding domains of afadin, and activation of members of the small GTPase family Ras (e.g., Ras, Rap1A, Rit, Rin, and M-Ras) inhibits this binding and disrupts cell-cell contacts [46]. JAMs and ZO-1 are mutually exclusive in their association with afadin, which is a critical regulator of cell-cell junctions during development [47]. Afadin is also located at the adherens junctions, where it binds nectin, a Ca^{2+} independent Ig-like molecule, and ponsin, a molecule that links afadin and

vinculin to adherens junctions. Through its association with profilin, afadin is thought to participate in the cortical actin assembly and cytoskeletal remodeling [48].

The multi-PDZ domain protein 1 (MUPP-1) is a large molecule that is associated, at the TJ level, with claudins, JAMs, and PALS-1 [49]. MUPP-1 is not needed for TJ establishment or polarization, but has instead been proposed to modulate cell proliferation [50].

Cingulin is a ~150 kDa protein that localizes to TJs and interacts with ZO-3, afadin, JAM-A, F-actin and myosin, and forms complexes with ZO-1. Cingulin is known to modulate activity of RhoA by interacting and inactivating its exchange factor GEF-H1, particularly in mature epithelia where it regulates gene expression and cell proliferation [51].

3.2 Transcellular Transport

While endothelial cell TJs limit the paracellular flux of hydrophilic molecules, small lipophilic molecules (e.g., anesthetics, O_2, or CO_2) can diffuse freely across plasma membranes following their concentration gradients. The polarized expression of receptors and transporters embedded in the membranes of endothelial cells, ensures the vectorial transport of nutrients such as glucose and amino acids, and the uptake of larger molecules like insulin or leptin. In endothelial cells, transcellular permeability is largely mediated by endocytic and transcytotic processes [52]. Clathrin plays a major role in the formation of polyhedral lattices that surround and coat endocytotic and transcytotic vesicles. These coated vesicles allow endothelial cells to acquire and transfer nutrients, import signal receptors and growth factors, mediate immune responses, and provide an alternate mechanism to remove pathogens and toxins. However, clathrin-mediated endocytosis can also provide an entry pathway for pathogenic agents.

Whereas conserving a proper barrier function is essential to maintain brain homeostasis, delivery of vital molecules from the blood into the brain is essential to preserve brain metabolism. To achieve this, brain endothelial cells express a large number of transporters in their membranes; however, the expression and activity levels of many of them are controlled by astrocytes [53]. In specific cases a transporter may not be expressed in endothelial cells, as is the case of dopamine, nevertheless, L-DOPA can be transported into the cells, where it is enzymatically transformed to dopamine. Transporters for glucose, galactose, amino acids, monocarboxylic acids, purines, nucleosides, amines, and ions have been identified in the membranes of endothelial cells.

Molecular transport, however, does not occur only from the blood into the brain parenchyma. Non-required metabolites, toxic substances, and drugs must be removed from the brain, and endothelial cells express a large variety of carriers to actively transport these molecules into the blood. P-glycoprotein (Pgp), an ATP-binding cassette (ABC) efflux transporter, is one such major carrier. Along with multidrug resistance-associated proteins (MRPs), Pgp is responsible for the active efflux of a wide range of nonpolar molecules out of endothelial cells.

The plasma membranes of a large variety of cells incorporate microdomains composed of glycosphingolipids and glycolipid-associated proteins. These glycolipoprotein domains, known as lipid rafts, influence membrane fluidity, membrane protein and receptor trafficking, and constitute organizing centers for the assembly of signaling molecules. They have three to five times more cholesterol than other parts of the plasma membranes and are rich in sphingolipids and low in phosphatidylcholine. Because their lipid content is more organized and tightly packed than the surrounding cell membrane, these lipid microdomains float in plasma membranes similarly to a raft in water [54]. Their molecular composition makes them relatively insoluble in nonionic detergents (e.g., Triton X-100) at low temperatures.

Caveolae are small (50–100 nm) lipid rafts, forming invaginations of the plasma membrane induced by the oligomerization of caveolins, of which caveolin-1 forms very high molecular weight oligomers while binding to cholesterol and fatty acids. Caveolae have functional effects on signal transduction and play a role in endocytosis, oncogenesis, and the uptake of pathogenic bacteria and viruses [55]. They have been suggested to be a docking site for glycolipids and glycosylphosphatidylinositol-linked proteins. Caveolae contain numerous receptors and transporter systems, including receptors for low- and high-density lipoproteins, insulin, albumin, transferrin, advanced glycation end products, ceruloplasmin, interleukin-1, and vesicle-associated membrane protein-2 (VAMP-2). Caveolin-1, besides its role in the structural arrangement of caveolae, forms signaling complexes with endothelial nitric oxide synthase (eNOS), heterotrimeric G proteins, members of the membrane-associated protein kinase (MAPK) pathway, src tyrosine kinase, and protein kinase C. Caveolin-1 also regulates TJ protein expression. For example, cytoskeletal rearrangements due to actin depolymerization can cause TJ proteins to be internalized by caveolae-mediated endocytosis [56].

4 Astrocytes

Astrocytes are the most abundant cell type in the human brain and one of the major types of glial cells. They are morphologically characterized by star-shaped bodies and histologically identified by their content of intermediate filaments constituted by glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP) (Fig. 9). They express a large number of G-coupled receptors, which transduce neurotransmitter, neuromodulator, and hormonal signals into Ca^{2+} and cAMP signaling cascades. According to their morphology, astrocytes are classified as fibrous, protoplasmic, or radial. Fibrous astrocytes are found mainly in the white matter, contain a small number of organelles, and have many long and unbranched fiber-like processes. Protoplasmic astrocytes are the most abundant and localize in the gray matter, they contain a larger quantity of organelles and exhibit fewer and relatively shorter multibranched processes. Radial astrocytes are located perpendicular to the axis of the ventricular system, having one of their processes immersed into the pia mater and the other buried in the gray matter.

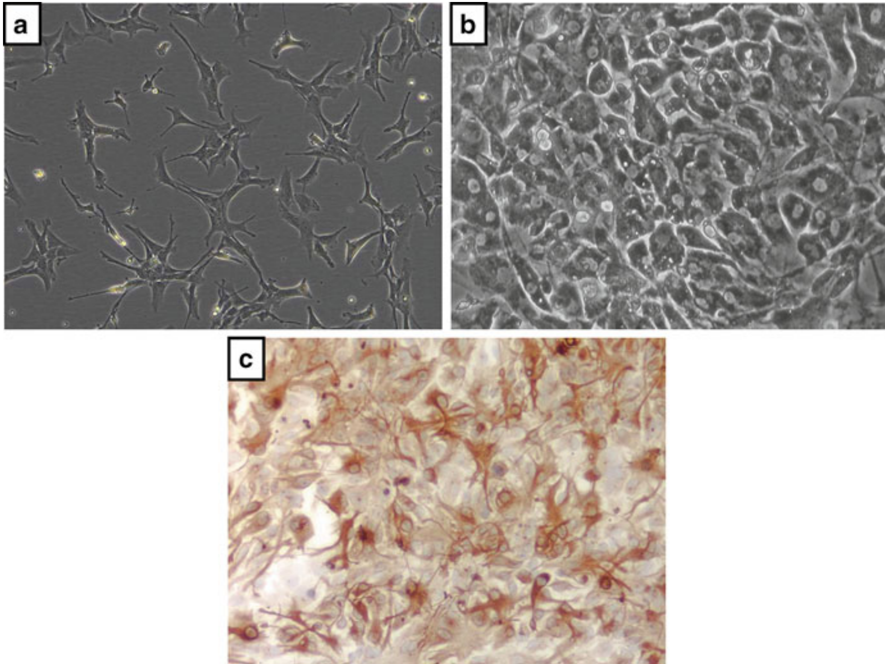


Fig. 9 Cortical astrocytes cultured in vitro and visualized by light microscopy. (**a**) Spare culture of human astrocytes; notice the characteristic star-shaped morphology. (**b**) Confluent culture of mouse astrocytes isolated from neonatal mice revealing typical features of confluent cultures, such as multipolar shape and cell overlapping. (**c**) GFAP-positive immunoreactivity of a confluent culture of mouse astrocytes

They are involved in neuronal migration during CNS development but decrease in number in the adult brain [57]. Regardless of their type, all astrocytes emit processes (vascular feet) that make extensive contact and surround the neighboring capillaries; however, fibrous astrocytes contact the nodes of Ranvier, while their protoplasmic counterparts envelop the synapses. Gap junctions are found in the distal regions of their processes, enhancing astrocyte-astrocyte communication directly in these regions. When in close proximity to the pia mater, astrocytes also emit processes towards it, forming the pia-glial membrane.

Astrocytes populate the CNS in a well-organized and nonoverlapping manner. Under normal conditions, protoplasmic astrocytes maintain well-limited and nonoverlapping domains in the gray matter in such way that only the most distal region of their end-feet interdigitates with one another. Similar domain organization seems to exist in the white matter. There is a considerable structural and molecular diversity among astrocytes at local and regional levels [58], and the complexity and diversity of astrocytes associated with neurons seem to have increased in different

species at different evolutionary stages. In the human brain, an average of 1.4 astrocytes per neuron in the cortex has been proposed [59].

Functionally, astrocytes express potassium and sodium channels, can exhibit evoked inward currents (but cannot trigger or propagate action potentials along their bodies), and show controlled fluctuations in their intracellular calcium concentration that are related to astrocyte-astrocyte and astrocyte-neuron communication. These fluctuations result from calcium release from intracellular stores triggered by neurotransmitters and can, in turn, induce the release of neurotransmitters (e.g., glutamate) from astrocytes into the extracellular space and trigger neuronal activity. Calcium signaling can also propagate to neighboring astrocytes via gap junctions, eliciting responses across their large intercommunicated cellular network. As gap junctions exist between astrocytes, pericytes, and endothelial cells, astrocyte signaling can elicit effects at the capillary level in their respective topographical domains. In fact, astrocytes produce and release various molecular mediators like prostaglandins, nitric oxide, and arachidonic acid that can increase or decrease vessel diameter and thereby control blood flow and intravascular hydrostatic pressure.

The astrocytic end-feet that surround all synapses maintain the homeostasis of the synaptic interstitial fluid. This is important as proper ionic concentration and pH are paramount for synaptic transmission. End-feet have a high content of potassium influx transporters and a number of proton-transporting mechanisms such as Na/H exchanger, HCO_3 and monocarboxylic acid transporters, and the vacuolar-type H-ATPase. GABA, glycine, and glutamate transporters are also enriched in these areas and contribute to clear the synaptic space of these neurotransmitters. Once retrieved, neurotransmitters are interconverted into other metabolites and send back to the synaptic space for their recycling into active transmitters. The large astrocytic networks are responsible for the uptake of potassium and glutamate from the synaptic spaces, preventing the deleterious effect of their synaptic accumulation. Astrocytes can also modulate synaptic transmission by releasing synaptic active molecules such as glutamate, purines (i.e., ATP and adenosine), GABA, and D-serine, in response to changes in synaptic activity. They also produce neurosteroids like estradiol and progesterone and release growth factors that can have long-term effects by influencing synaptic remodeling [60].

On the capillary side, end-feet-contacting endothelial cells are enriched in aquaporins, in particular aquaporin-4. This water transporter regulates water content in the paracellular space and has special clinical relevance since its altered function plays a role in the formation of brain edema [62]. Glucose transporters are also expressed in this location, and glucose transport is elicited upon glutamate stimulation [63]. Glucose can be taken from endothelial cells and extracellular space and is stored as glycogen. In fact, astrocytes constitute the main glycogen storage in the CNS, and the density of astrocytic glycogen granules correlates with synaptic density. Astrocyte-derived glycogen can sustain neuronal activity during hypoglycemia and is used when high neuronal activity occurs. Both the content of glycogen in astrocytes and the gap junction-mediated exchange of glucose metabolites are regulated by neuronal activity (Fig. 10).

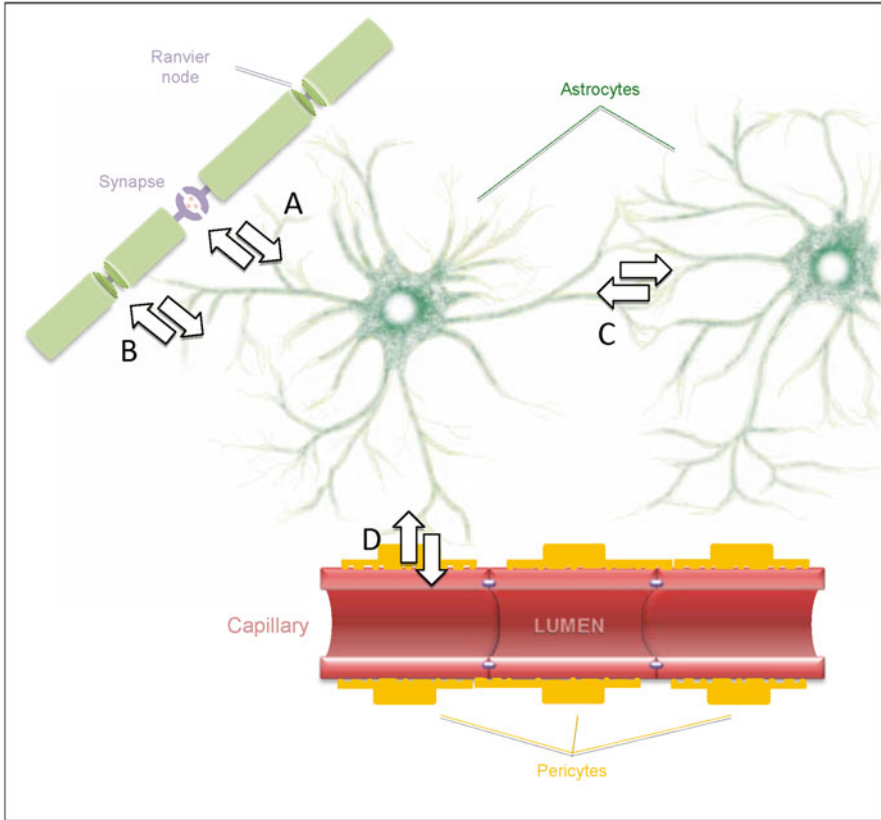


Fig. 10 Astrocytes play paramount roles in maintaining the homeostasis of the brain parenchyma, synaptic function, and transcapillary transport. (*A*) At synapses, their end-feet release energy substrates such as lactate, precursors for neurotransmitters, and neurotransmitters such as glutamate, purines (e.g., ATP or adenosine), growth factors, and neurosteroids. They also remove potassium, water, and neurotransmitters like GABA, glutamate, and glycine. (*B*) At the nodes of Ranvier, astrocytes also exchange energy substrates and electrolytes. (*C*) The astrocyte end-feet are rich in gap junctions that allow the exchange of neurotransmitters, glucose, and ions from one cell to the other and ultimately transport them between the brain capillaries and neurons, or across different astrocyte territories. (*D*) At the capillary level, astrocytes take up glucose and water and release ions, nitric oxide, and amino acids influencing blood flow

5 Pericytes

Pericytes are cells located in the perivascular space and wrapped around endothelial cells to which they provide structural support while conferring vasodynamic capacity to the capillaries. They are also necessary for BBB maturation and maintenance of its properties as they support angiogenesis and prevent endothelial cell apoptosis [64]. Capillary vasoconstriction was the first function identified for pericytes [65]

and can occur in response to vasoactive substances and neurotransmitters. This function has implications for brain activity, as increased local neuronal depolarization is accompanied by incremented regional blood flow. Biochemically, pericytes express a number of receptors for chemical mediators like catecholamines, angiotensin II, vasoactive intestinal peptides, endothelin-1, and vasopressin.

The precise structural and molecular identity of pericytes is still controversial. There is also controversy considering their cell lineage, as pericytes are often classified together with periendothelial smooth muscle cells, fibroblasts, macrophages, sometimes even confused with even endothelial cells. There are no known molecular markers that can be used to specifically identify pericytes and distinguish them from other mesenchymal cells. Furthermore, markers that are commonly found in pericytes are not stably expressed. Consequently, pericytes are often defined by considering their perivascular location, morphology, and gene expression patterns (Fig. 11).

In the BBB, pericytes are in direct contact with the abluminal side of endothelial cells. They extend cytoplasmic processes that often span several endothelial cells and occasionally bridge between neighboring capillary branches where the main body of pericyte resides directly at the branching point and its cytosolic processes extend along each branch. Their density in the human CNS is approximately one pericyte per 1–3 endothelial cells. Pericytes cover approximately 30 % of the abluminal surface of endothelial cells [66, 67]. At the molecular level, platelet-derived growth factor receptor-beta, chondroitin sulfate proteoglycan-4 (NG2), CD13, and alpha-smooth muscle actin are consistently expressed in pericytes [64], although these markers are also found in other mesenchymal cells.

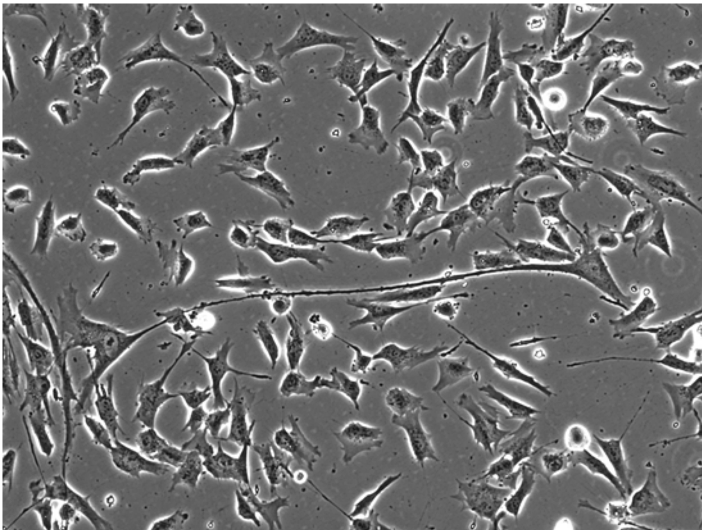


Fig. 11 Spare culture of human brain microvascular pericytes visualized by light microscopy

5.1 Extracellular Matrix

The extracellular matrix (ECM) in the CNS has a distinct composition and organization than that found in other tissues. Since the brain is mechanically protected and enjoys a physicochemically privileged location, there is no need to maintain the high levels of tensile or elastic strength usually present in other tissues. Therefore, the brain ECM, which is predominantly represented by the vascular basal membranes and meninges, has very little amounts of collagen types I and III or fibronectin and has a reduced content of glycosaminoglycan-proteoglycans and hyaluronan. Instead, the thin (20–200 nm thick) and tightly interwoven layers of ECM are predominantly composed of laminins, collagen type IV, heparan sulfate proteoglycans, and nidogens, all of them occurring in different isoforms that generate an ECM with distinct biochemical and functional properties [68]. Laminins in the endothelial cell basal membrane contain chains a4 and a5 combined with b1 and g1 to respectively form the isoforms 411 and 511, while the outer parenchymal basal membranes found at the postcapillary vessels and venules have chains a1 and a2 combined with b1 and g1 to form laminins 111 and 211. Laminins a4 and a5 are produced by endothelial cells, laminin a1 is produced by the leptomeningeal cells and laminin a2 is produced by the astrocyte end-feet. The predominant heparan sulfate proteoglycan in endothelial cell basal membranes is perlecan, while agrin is the predominant counterpart in the parenchymal ECM [61]. Endothelial cell membranes also have additional components such as osteonectin; fibulin-1 and -2; collagen VIII, XV, and XVIII, and thrombospondin-1 and -2. At the capillary level, the endothelial and parenchymal basal membranes are combined and contain laminins a2, a4, and a5, perlecan, and agrin.

6 Conclusions

The BBB constitutes one of the most impregnable mammalian interfaces and is responsible for maintaining the brain homeostasis. It is composed by closely interacting functional multicellular units called the neurovascular units. The properties of the BBB are defined by the unique characteristics of brain capillary endothelial cells that are sealed together by TJ proteins. TJ complexes are formed by transmembranal proteins closely interacting with specific anchor and adaptor proteins. The permeability of the BBB can be modulated by various pharmacological interventions. Importantly, disruption of the BBB integrity is associated with numerous chronic and acute CNS disorders, in which it contributes to the development of neuroinflammatory changes.

References

1. Ehrlich P. Das sauerstufbudurfnis des organismus. Eine Farbenanalytische Studie. Berlin: Hirschwald; 1885.
2. Lewandowsky M. Zur lehre von der cerebrospinalflussigkeit. Z Klin Med. 1900;40:480–94.
3. Goldmann EE. Vitalfärbung am Zentralnervensystem. Beitrag zur Physiopathologie des Plexus chorioideus und der Hirnhäute. Abh Preuss Akd Wiss Phys Math Kl I. 1913;1:1–13.

4. Du Bois-Reymond EH. Vorlaufiger Abriss einer Untersuchung über den sogenannten Froschstrom und über die elektromotorischen Fische. Poggendorffs Ann Phys Chem. 1843; 58:1–22.
5. Du Bois Reymond EH. Untersuchungen über Tierische Elektrizität. Berlin, Germany: Reimer; 1848.
6. Galeotti G. Concerning the EMF which is generated at the surface of animal membranes on contact with different electrolytes. Z Phys Chem. 1904;49:542–52.
7. Galeotti G. Ricercerche di elettrofisiologia secondo I criteri dell'elettrochimica. Z Allg Physiol. 1907;6:99–108.
8. Ussing HH, Zerahn K. Active transport of sodium as the source of electric current in the short-circuited isolated frog skin. Acta Physiol Scand. 1951;23:110–27.
9. Koefoed-Johnsen V, Ussing HH. The nature of the frog skin potential. Acta Physiol Scand. 1958;42:298–308.
10. Skou JC. The influence of some cations on an adenosine triphosphatase from the peripheral nerves. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1957;23:394.
11. Cereijido M, Ponce A, Gonzalez-Mariscal L. Tight junctions and apical/basolateral polarity. J Membr Biol. 1989;110:1–9.
12. Ussing HH, Windhager EE. Nature of shunt path and active sodium transport path through frog skin epithelium. Acta Physiol Scand. 1964;61:484–504.
13. Frömter E, Diamond J. Route of passive ion permeation in epithelia. Nat New Biol. 1972;235:9–13.
14. Powell DW. Barrier function of epithelia. Am J Physiol. 1981;241:G275–88.
15. Schneeberger EE, Lynch RD. Structure, function, and regulation of cellular tight junctions. Am J Physiol. 1992;262:L647–61.
16. Spring K. Routes and mechanism of fluid transport by epithelia. Annu Rev Physiol. 1998;60:105–19.
17. Tsukita S, Furuse M, Itoh M. Multifunctional strands in tight junctions. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2001;2:285–93.
18. Stevenson BR, Siliciano JD, Mooseker MS, Goodenough DA. Identification of ZO-1: a high molecular weight polypeptide associated with the tight junction (zonula occludens) in a variety of epithelia. J Cell Biol. 1986;103:755–66.
19. Furuse M, Hirase T, Itoh M, Nagafuchi A, Yonemura S, Tsukita S, Tsukita S. Occludin: a novel integral membrane protein localizing at tight junctions. J Cell Biol. 1993;123:1777–88.
20. Furuse M, Fujita K, Hiiragi T, Fujimoto K, Tsukita S. Claudin-1 and -2: novel integral membrane proteins localizing at tight junctions with no sequence similarity to occludin. J Cell Biol. 1998;141:1539–50.
21. Gonzalez-Mariscal L, Betanzos A, Nava P, Jaramillo BE. Tight junction proteins. Prog Biophys Mol Biol. 2003;81:1–44.
22. Krause G, Winkler L, Piehl C, Blasig I, Piontek J, Müller SL. Structure and function of extracellular claudin domains. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2009;1165:34–43.
23. Piontek J, Winkler L, Wolburg H, Müller SL, Zuleger N, Piehl C, Wiesner B, Krause G, Blasig IE. Formation of tight junction: determinants of homophilic interaction between classic claudins. FASEB J. 2008;22:146–58.
24. Furuse M, Sasaki H, Tsukita S. Manner of interaction of heterogeneous claudin species within and between tight junction strands. J Cell Biol. 1999;147:891–903.
25. Shin K, Fogg VC, Margolis B. Tight junctions and cell polarity. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol. 2006;22:207–35.
26. Furuse M, Furuse K, Sasaki H, Tsukita S. Conversion of zonulae occludentes from tight to leaky strand type by introducing claudin-2 into Madin-Darby canine kidney I cells. J Cell Biol. 2001;153:263–72.
27. Blasig I, Bellmann C, Cording J, Del Vecchio G, Zwanziger D, Huber O, Haseloff RF. Occludin protein family—oxidative stress and reducing conditions. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2011; 15:1195–219.

28. Aijaz S, D'Atri F, Citi S, Balda MS, Matter K. Binding of GEF-H1 to the tight junction-associated adaptor cingulin results in inhibition of Rho signaling and G1/S phase transition. Dev Cell. 2005;8:777–86.
29. Dörfel MJ, Westphal JK, Huber O. Differential phosphorylation of occludin and tricellulin by CK2 and CK1. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2009;1165:69–73.
30. Rao RK, Basuroy S, Rao VU, Karnaky KJ, Gupta A. Tyrosine phosphorylation and dissociation of occludin-Z0-1 and E-cadherin-beta-catenin complexes from the cytoskeleton by oxidative stress. Biochem J. 2002;368:471–81.
31. Rao R. Occludin phosphorylation in regulation of epithelial tight junctions. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2009;1165:62–8.
32. Ikenouchi J, Furuse M, Furuse K, Sasaki H, Tsukita S, Tsukita S. Tricellulin constitutes a novel barrier at tricellular contacts of epithelial cells. J Cell Biol. 2005;171:939–45.
33. Raleigh DR, Marchiando AM, Zhang Y, Shen L, Sasaki H, Wang Y, Long M, Turner JR. Tight junction-associated MARVEL proteins marveld3, tricellulin, and occludin have distinct but overlapping functions. Mol Biol Cell. 2010;21:1200–13.
34. Krug SM, Amasheh S, Richter JF, Milatz S, Günzel D, Westphal JK, Huber O, Schulzke JD, Fromm M. Tricellulin forms a barrier to macromolecules in tricellular tight junctions without affecting ion permeability. Mol Biol Cell. 2009;20:3713–24.
35. Steed E, Rodrigues NT, Balda MS, Matter K. Identification of MarvelD3 as a tight junction-associated transmembrane protein of the occludin family. BMC Cell Biol. 2009;10:95.
36. Furuse M, Oda Y, Higashi T, Iwamoto N, Masuda S. Lipolysis-stimulated lipoprotein receptor: a novel membrane protein of tricellular tight junctions. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2012;1257:54–8.
37. Monteiro AC, Sumagin R, Rankin CR, Leoni G, Mina MJ, Reiter DM, Stehle T, Dermody TS, Schaefer SA, Hall RA, Nusrat A, Parkos CA. JAM-A associates with ZO-2, afadin, and PDZ-GEF1 to activate Rap2c and regulate epithelial barrier function. Mol Biol Cell. 2013;24:2849–60.
38. Bazzoni G, Martinez-Estrada OM, Orsenigo F, Cordenonsi M, Citi S, Dejana E. Interaction of junctional adhesion molecule with the tight junction components ZO-1, cingulin, and occludin. J Biol Chem. 2000;275:20520–6.
39. Cohen CJ, Shieh JT, Pickles RJ, Okegawa T, Hsieh JT, Bergelson JM. The coxsackievirus and adenovirus receptor is a transmembrane component of the tight junction. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98:15191–6.
40. Gonzalez-Mariscal L, Betanzos A, Avila-Flores A. MAGUK proteins: structure and role in the tight junction. Semin Cell Dev Biol. 2000;11:315–24.
41. Bal MS, Castro V, Piontek J, Rueckert C, Walter JK, Shymanets A, Kurig B, Haase H, Nürnberg B, Blasig IE. The hinge region of the scaffolding protein of cell contacts, zonula occludens protein 1, regulates interacting with various signaling proteins. J Cell Biochem. 2012;113:934–45.
42. Zhong Y, Zhang B, Eum SY, Toborek M. HIV-1 Tat triggers nuclear localization of ZO-1 via Rho signaling and cAMP response element-binding protein activation. J Neurosci. 2012;32:143–50.
43. Balda MS, Anderson JM. Two classes of tight junctions are revealed by ZO-1 isoforms. Am J Physiol. 1993;264:C918–24.
44. Betanzos A, Huerta M, Lopez-Bayghen E, Azuara E, Amerena J, Gonzalez-Mariscal L. The tight junction protein ZO-2 associates with Jun, Fos and C/EBP transcription factors in epithelial cells. Exp Cell Res. 2004;292:51–66.
45. Lin D, Edwards AS, Fawcett JP, Mbamalu G, Scott JD, Pawson T. A mammalian PAR-3-PAR-6 complex implicated in Cdc42/Rac1 and aPKC signalling and cell polarity. Nat Cell Biol. 2000;2:540–7.
46. Ooshio T, Kobayashi R, Ikeda W, Miyata M, Fukumoto Y, Matsuzawa N, Ogita H, Takai Y. Involvement of the interaction of afadin with ZO-1 in the formation of tight junctions in Madin-Darby canine kidney cells. J Biol Chem. 2010;285:5003–12.
47. Ikeda W, Nakanishi H, Miyoshi J, Mandai K, Ishizaki H, Tanaka M, Togawa A, Takahashi K, Nishioka H, Yoshida H, Mizoguchi A, Nishikawa S, Takai Y. Afadin: a key molecule essential for structural organization of cell-cell junctions of polarized epithelia during embryogenesis. J Cell Biol. 1999;146:1117–32.

48. Takai Y, Nakanishi H. Nectin and afadin: novel organizers of intercellular junctions. J Cell Sci. 2003;116:17–27.
49. Ullmer C, Schmuck K, Figge A, Lübbert H. Cloning and characterization of MUPP1, a novel PDZ domain protein. FEBS Lett. 1998;424:63–8.
50. Adachi M, Hamazaki Y, Kobayashi Y, Itoh M, Tsukita S, Furuse M, Tsukita S. Similar and distinct properties of MUPP1 and Patj, two homologous PDZ domain-containing tight-junction proteins. Mol Cell Biol. 2009;29:2372–89.
51. Citi S, Paschoud S, Pulimeno P, Timolati F, De Robertis F, Jond L, Guillemot L. The tight junction protein cingulin regulates gene expression and RhoA signaling. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2009;1165:88–98.
52. Komarova Y, Malik AB. Regulation of endothelial permeability via paracellular and transcellular transport pathways. Annu Rev Physiol. 2010;72:463–93.
53. Abbott NJ, Rönnbäck L, Hansson E. Astrocyte-endothelial interactions at the blood-brain barrier. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2006;7:41–53.
54. Korade Z, Kenworthy AK. Lipid rafts, cholesterol, and the brain. Neuropharmacology. 2008;55:1265–73.
55. Patel HH, Murray F, Insel PA. Caveolae as organizers of pharmacologically relevant signal transduction molecules. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol. 2008;48:359–91.
56. Shen L, Turner JR. Actin depolymerization disrupts tight junctions via caveolae-mediated endocytosis. Mol Biol Cell. 2005;16:3919–36.
57. Kimelberg HK, Nedergaard M. Functions of astrocytes and their potential as therapeutic targets. Neurotherapeutics. 2010;7:338–53.
58. Bachoo RM, Kim RS, Ligon KL, Maher EA, Brennan C, Billings N, Chan S, Li C, Rowitch DH, Wong WH, DePinho RA. Molecular diversity of astrocytes with implications for neurological disorders. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2004;101:8384–9.
59. Nedergaard M, Ransom B, Goldman SA. New roles for astrocytes: redefining the functional architecture of the brain. Trends Neurosci. 2003;26:523–30.
60. Sofroniew MV, Vinters HV. Astrocytes: biology and pathology. Acta Neuropathol. 2010;119:7–35.
61. Wolburg H, Noell S, Mack A, Wolburg-Buchholz K, Fallier-Becker P. Brain endothelial cells and the glio-vascular complex. Cell Tissue Res. 2009;335:75–96.
62. Wolburg H, Noell S, Wolburg-Buchholz K, Mack A, Fallier-Becker P. Agrin, aquaporin-4, and astrocyte polarity as an important feature of the blood-brain barrier. Neuroscientist. 2009;15:180–93.
63. Loaiza A, Porras OH, Barros LF. Glutamate triggers rapid glucose transport stimulation in astrocytes as evidenced by real-time confocal microscopy. J Neurosci. 2003;23:7337–42.
64. Armulik A, Genové G, Betsholtz C. Pericytes: developmental, physiological, and pathological perspectives, problems, and promises. Dev Cell. 2011;21:193–215.
65. Krueger M, Bechmann I. CNS pericytes: concepts, misconceptions, and a way out. Glia. 2010;58:1–10.
66. Mathiisen TM, Lehre KP, Danbolt NC, Ottersen OP. The perivascular astroglial sheath provides a complete covering of the brain microvessels: an electron microscopic 3D reconstruction. Glia. 2010;58:1094–103.
67. Sims DE. The pericyte-a review. Tissue Cell. 1986;18:153–74.
68. Baeten KM, Akassoglou K. Extracellular matrix and matrix receptors in blood-brain barrier formation and stroke. Dev Neurobiol. 2011;71:1018–39.
69. Abuazza G, Becker A, Williams SS, Chakravarty S, Truong HT, Lin F, Baum M. Claudins 6, 9, and 13 are developmentally expressed renal tight junction proteins. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol. 2006;291:F1132–41.
70. Ikenouchi J, Sasaki H, Tsukita S, Furuse M, Tsukita S. Loss of occludin affects tricellular localization of tricellulin. Mol Biol Cell. 2008;19:4687–93.
71. Yamamoto T1, Harada N, Kano K, Taya S, Canaani E, Matsuura Y, Mizoguchi A, Ide C, Kaibuchi K. The Ras target AF-6 interacts with ZO-1 and serves as a peripheral component of tight junctions in epithelial cells. J Cell Biol. 1997;139(3):785–95.

Immune Cell Trafficking in the Central Nervous System

Beena John, Christopher A. Hunter, and Tajie H. Harris

Abstract For many years, it was assumed that cells of the immune system were excluded from the central nervous system (CNS) and thus immune reactions did not occur at this site. Currently, it is widely accepted that the immune system can gain access to and function within the CNS. A growing body of work now supports that the immune system is present in the brain in the steady state. Beyond serving a role in immune surveillance, the immune cells appear to promote neurological function. Under inflammatory conditions, immune cells enter the CNS and, depending on the context, may provide protection or cause tissue pathology. For example, following several infections, the immune system is required to control pathogen replication within the CNS and prevent disease. On the other hand, autoimmune reactions in the CNS, such as multiple sclerosis, cause debilitating tissue destruction. Beyond infection and autoimmune disease, the immune system appears to be involved in many neurodegenerative disorders, such as Parkinson's disease and Alzheimer's disease. Thus, the factors that support lymphocyte entry and function in various settings of neuroinflammation are of great interest. In the following chapter, immune cell entry and behavior within the brain will be discussed, with a focus on the role of adhesion molecules and chemokines in this process.

Keywords Neuroinflammation • Lymphocyte trafficking • Chemokine • Adhesion molecules • Integrins

B. John • C.A. Hunter
Department of Pathobiology, School of Veterinary Medicine,
University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA 19104, USA

T.H. Harris (✉)
Department of Neuroscience, School of Medicine, University of Virginia,
Charlottesville, VA 22908, USA
e-mail: tajieharris@virginia.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_2, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

1 Introduction

For nearly 100 years, the unique immunological status of the brain has been appreciated. The presence of the blood-brain barrier (BBB) and isolation of the central nervous system (CNS) from circulating immune cells and antibodies led to the classification of the CNS as an immune privileged site [1–3]. Subsequently, the detection of small numbers of leukocytes, particularly memory T cells, in the CSF suggested that immune surveillance of these unique sites occurs in the absence of inflammation [4–6]. While it is clear that the nervous system can directly impact immune function, there is also evidence that the presence of a low number of T cells within the brain promotes normal neurological function [7, 8]. Nevertheless, the recruitment of immune cells to the brain is associated with a wide variety of neurological conditions, which, depending on the context, is beneficial or pathological. For example, the immune system is required to limit the replication of a variety of viral, bacterial, and parasitic organisms within the CNS [1, 9]. While the ability to control these pathogens is critical for host survival, the accompanying inflammation can lead to life-threatening disease [10]. Similarly, the development of autoreactive T and B cells specific for antigens present in the CNS accounts for the tissue destruction and disruption of normal neurological function observed in conditions such as multiple sclerosis and limbic encephalitis [11–13]. Inflammatory processes have also been implicated in many neurodegenerative disorders, such as Parkinson's disease and Alzheimer's disease, and in response to sterile injuries that include stroke or trauma [14–18].

A common pathological feature that links many of these conditions is the influx of leukocytes into the CNS [1, 9, 11, 19]. The infiltration of immune cells also triggers changes in resident populations such as microglia and astrocytes, which can amplify the inflammatory response that causes collateral damage which impacts on neuronal survival and function [15, 20]. Thus, understanding the mechanisms that govern the trafficking of immune cells into and within the CNS and their interaction with resident glia is critical for the design of strategies to augment protective immune responses to pathogens and tumors and to prevent the deleterious effects of neuroinflammation. In this chapter, the events involved in the entry of immune cells into the CNS and how this impacts immune surveillance will be discussed, with an emphasis on recent reports that visualize the behavior of these populations in real time.

2 Licensing of Cells for Entry into the CNS

One hallmark of neuroinflammation is the infiltration of immune cells into the multiple compartments of the CNS. In the steady state, small numbers of perivascular macrophages (pericytes) and T cells are present in the meninges and perivascular spaces [21, 22]. In the context of various inflammatory stimuli, the composition of these sites can be dramatically altered to include almost every type of immune cell,

but most commonly T cells, B cells, monocytes, macrophages, and dendritic cells. Immune cells can gain access to the CNS at several sites, including the blood-brain barrier (BBB) present along the capillaries in the brain parenchyma, the choroid plexus, meningeal vessels that extend into the brain parenchyma, and postcapillary venules [1, 9, 23–26]. Local and systemic inflammation can induce changes at these sites that make them more permissive to immune cell infiltration [19, 24, 27, 28]. Consequently, understanding the mechanisms by which diverse inflammatory populations access the CNS may lead to therapeutics that can be useful to manage the inflammatory conditions that affect this site [19].

Our current understanding of how immune cells enter the brain is arguably most developed for T lymphocytes. In current paradigms, naïve T cells do not readily enter the normal or inflamed CNS. Rather, T cells that enter the brain need to be highly activated, suggesting that these cells are primed in the periphery prior to gaining access to this site [9]. These observations raise many questions about the specific conditions that support T cell entry into the CNS, and a recent report has highlighted the importance of peripheral sites where T cells are "licensed" to enter the CNS [29]. In these studies, T cells specific for the CNS autoantigen myelin basic protein (MBP) were activated in vitro and transferred into mice to induce experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE), a model of multiple sclerosis. In the first days following transfer, the T cells were present in the spleen and other tissues, including the lung, but few reached the CNS. However, T cells isolated from the spleen or lung 60 h following transfer were capable of trafficking to the CNS of naïve recipient animals within hours, suggesting that these lymphocytes acquire the ability to traffic to the CNS at these peripheral sites. Microarray analysis of the different T cell populations demonstrated that the T cells that are initially transferred have an activation and replication program, whereas "licensed" T cells express a migratory program characterized by the ability to respond to inflammatory chemokines and increased expression of adhesion molecules [29]. These findings highlight that T cell activation alone is not sufficient for entry into the CNS and that additional events outside the CNS are required to make these cells responsive to the adhesion molecules and chemokine signals that facilitate access to the brain. In the remainder of this chapter, the role of some of the major adhesion molecules and chemokines that influence inflammatory processes in the CNS will be highlighted.

3 Leukocyte Extravasation and the Role of Adhesion Molecules

In many cases, local tissue damage within the CNS and perhaps even systemic insults initiate core processes similar to those employed in other tissue sites that lead to the extravasation of leukocytes across the blood-brain barrier or blood-CSF barrier [22]. However, there are some aspects of this process that appear to be unique to the CNS, and the identification of selective trafficking determinants should lead to the design of strategies to limit or promote leukocyte infiltration into the CNS. The adhesion cascade for leukocyte extravasation involves four canonical steps which

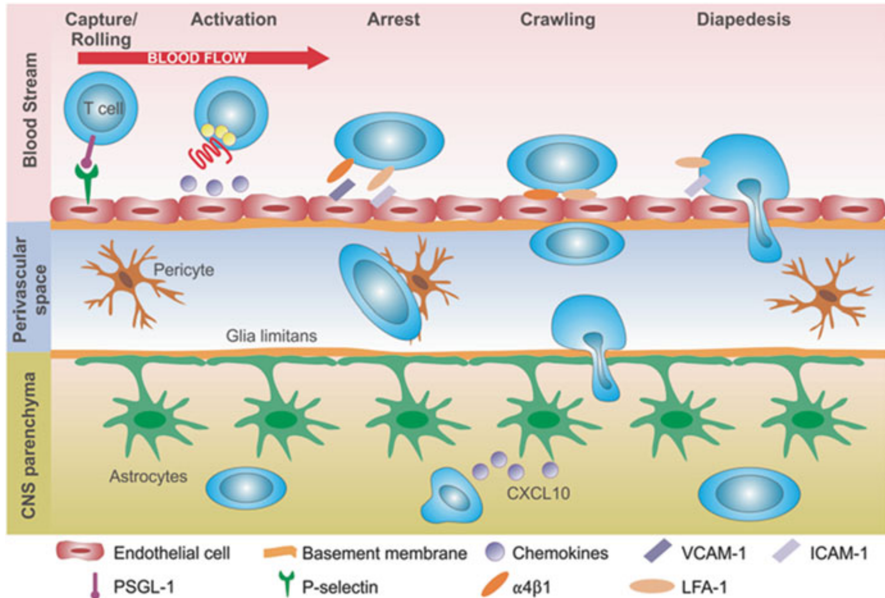


Fig. 1 T cell entry to the CNS through the blood-brain barrier. Activated T cells in the bloodstream interact with activated endothelial cells within the brain vasculature in a stepwise process. First, T cells interact with endothelial cells by binding to adhesion molecules, including PSGL-1, that induce capture or rolling. Next, chemokine signals activate integrin molecules (including $\alpha_4\beta_1$) leading to T cell arrest. Then, T cells crawl along endothelial cells before crossing the endothelium into the perivascular space in a process called diapedesis or extravasation. Within the perivascular space, T cells may interact with perivascular macrophages or pericytes. In order for T cells to gain access to the brain parenchyma, the cells must cross an additional basement membrane laid down by astrocytes, termed the glial limitans. Once T cells reach the brain parenchyma, chemokines provide signals to enhance the migration of T cells

are shared across various tissues (depicted in Fig. 1) and includes (1) capture and rolling of leukocytes regulated by selectins/mucins, (2) activation and change in conformation of integrins mediated by chemokines through Gαi receptor signaling, (3) firm arrest controlled by the integrins and their counter receptors on the endothelia, and (4) diapedesis or transmigration across the endothelial layer. After these events, the major obstacle to the entry of leukocytes is the BBB, which consists of endothelial cells with tight intercellular junctions and endothelial and glial basement membranes. The BBB limits entry from blood vessels in the parenchyma of the brain as well as the postcapillary venules in the meninges [22]. Similarly, the epithelial cells of the choroid plexus have tight junctions, which form the anatomical basis of the blood-CSF barrier. During local and systemic inflammation, endothelial cells of the BBB and epithelial cells of the choroid plexus increase expression of several adhesion molecules that support the recruitment of T cells and other immune cells [5, 19, 25, 26, 30]. Some of the important adhesion molecules required for immune cell recruitment during neuroinflammation are discussed below.

3.1 L-, P-, and E-Selectins

Selectins (L, P, and E) are surface glycoproteins involved in cell adhesion that are crucial for leukocyte rolling and capture on blood vessels. The P- and E-selectins are constitutively expressed on the cerebrovascular endothelium and are upregulated during inflammation [31]. Both P- and E-selectins can bind to PSGL-1, a mucin-type glycoprotein that is expressed on the surface of myeloid cells, activated lymphocytes, and inflamed endothelial cells. The ability of P-selectin to engage PSGL-1 leads to signaling that activates LFA-1, suggesting an indirect role for selectin-mediated signaling on integrin-mediated firm adhesion required for leukocyte recruitment [32]. This process may be relevant to normal surveillance and a model has emerged in which P-selectin expression on the choroid plexus stromal vessels promotes trafficking into this compartment and the presence of small numbers of T cells in the CSF [5, 30]. During EAE, inhibition of selectins and PSGL-1 (using blocking antibodies or mice that lack PSGL-1) has yielded mixed results. Some studies showed reduced trafficking of lymphocytes into the CNS and decreased severity of disease [31, 33], while others indicated that blockade did not impact on these processes [31, 34–36]. However, it is important to distinguish between the role of selectins in mediating leukocyte rolling at the cerebrovascular endothelium versus their function in other T cell and dendritic cell (DC) activities. For example, stimulation of DCs through PSGL-1 results in an increased ability to generate Tregs, which in turn can ameliorate disease [37, 38]. Nevertheless, the combined blockade of P-selectin and α4-integrins has shown a more profound inhibition of T cell rolling along inflamed vessels and a marked decrease in the severity and onset of EAE [32, 39]. These results suggest additive effects in the functions for P-selectin and α4-integrins in T cell rolling and illustrate the complex nature of the molecular interactions involved in these processes.

Another ligand for E-selectin is the glycoprotein CD44, which is ubiquitously expressed by immune and nonimmune cells, and the blockade of CD44 during EAE reduces CNS inflammation and the development of clinical disease [40]. Additional explanations for this observation include the interaction between CD44 and its ligand hyaluronan (HA) and a report that CD44 expression on the inflamed CNS vessels can tether HA and promote recruitment of activated T cells [41]. Given the complex biology of CD44 that includes multiple, unrelated ligands and its ability to undergo conformational changes, there remains a major knowledge gap in our appreciation of how its interactions with the selectins contribute to various forms of CNS inflammation.

3.2 β7 Integrin and Its Role in CD49d and CD103

The pairing of the β7 integrin with α4 (Cd49d) or αE (CD103) chains leads to the formation of stable heterodimeric α4β7 and αEβ7 complexes, respectively. The α4β7-MadCAM-1 pairing has been implicated in leukocyte migration to several

sites of inflammation including the mucosa; however, their role in CNS inflammation is less clear. During EAE, blockade of α4β7 had no effect on disease course, but EAE in β7-integrin-deficient mice was reduced in severity and MAdCAM-1 blocking antibodies did inhibit EAE [42, 43]. Thus, the precise role of the α4β7 integrin and MadCAM-1 during EAE remains to be clarified [25], but these discrepancies may be related to the use of β7 as a component of CD103. DCs and T cells express β7 integrin, and in a model of vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV) infection, memory $CD8^+$ T cells that express CD103 have been detected in the parenchyma long after viral clearance [44]. Whether this population is a consequence of a postinfection surveillance mechanism or due to persistence of VSV-specific T cells within the parenchyma and if CD103 influences these cells are open questions.

3.3 VLA-4 (α4β1)/VCAM-1 Interactions

Numerous studies using EAE as a model have highlighted the importance of the VLA4 (α4β1)/VCAM-1 interactions as a major determinant in leukocyte recruitment to the CNS. VCAM-1, one of the major α4β1 integrin ligands, is upregulated on the vasculature in EAE and MS. Moreover, the adhesion of activated MBP-specific T lymphocytes to brain endothelial cells in tissue sections is mediated by α4-VCAM-1 interactions, and the severity of disease caused by different MBP-specific T cell clones correlated with levels of α4 expression [45]. Consistent with these findings, anti-α4 antibodies block the accumulation of T cells in the CNS and the development of EAE [45, 46]. α4β1 is also required for the adhesion of immature DCs to the CNS vasculature and their access to the brain during EAE; however, the accumulation of granulocytes and macrophages within the CNS is independent of this integrin [47]. VCAM-1 blockade also delayed the onset of EAE but had modest effects on the duration and severity of disease [34], suggesting a role for other α4 integrin ligands such as fibronectin in these events [48]. These proof-of-concept studies underscored the importance of the α4β1 integrins in leukocyte accumulation in the brain and led to the development of antibodies that interfere with the function of this integrin for treatment of MS. However, blockade of α4 integrins in other models has also been shown to compromise protective immunity to several pathogens within the brain, including *T. gondii*, SIV, and bornavirus [49–51]. These findings highlight that approaches that might interfere with natural immune surveillance can lead to unwanted consequences, which are discussed in more detail later.

3.4 LFA-1(αlβ2)/ICAM Interactions

LFA-1 (αlβ2) is one of the best-studied members of the β2 family of integrins, and its ligand ICAM-1 is constitutively expressed by endothelial cells within the CNS vasculature and is upregulated during inflammation [46, 52]. Several *in vitro* studies

have shown that LFA-1-ICAM-1 interactions are required for the adhesion of T cells to the CNS vascular endothelium and for their optimal migration across this barrier. There are also reports that entry of Th17 cells into the brain parenchyma during EAE occurs in the absence of α4 integrins but is dependent on LFA-1 [53]. However, blockade of LFA-1/ICAM-1 and the use of ICAM-1-deficient and LFA-1-deficient mice ($Cd11a^{-/-}$) during EAE have resulted in responses ranging from prevention of EAE to exacerbation of disease [54–57]. Since LFA-1 is a component of the immunological synapse and has a prominent role in T cell activation, it is possible that the broader effects of LFA-1 blockade during EAE also influence the generation of the pathological T cells. Nevertheless, LFA-1 has also been implicated in the migration of adoptively transferred dendritic cells to the brain during toxoplasmic encephalitis [58] and so appears to be part of a core adhesive program that is relevant to many immune populations. Whether this influences other facets of immune function such as migration within the brain is unknown, and some of the disparate findings in EAE indicate that the biology is more complex than currently appreciated.

3.5 Therapeutic Significance of Targeting VLA-4 and LFA-1

With the need to develop more effective treatments to manage the clinical manifestations of MS, one approach has been the development of strategies that would limit the migration of pathogenic T cells into the CNS. The identification of α4β1 as a key molecule required for immune cell access to the CNS provided the rationale for the development of a monoclonal antibody (natalizumab) directed against integrin α4, as a treatment for MS. Clinical trials with this therapy demonstrated significant benefits including fewer inflammatory CNS lesions and reduced numbers of relapses in MS patients. However, the drug was temporarily withdrawn due to reports that, in a limited number of patients, this treatment was associated with the development of progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML), a potentially fatal disease caused by reactivation of JC polyomavirus [59]. Not surprisingly the use of another antibody (efalizumab) that blocks LFA-1 also results in PML (and was withdrawn from the market in 2009) [60]. Latent JC virus can persist in multiple tissues including the kidney, bone marrow, and brain. Whether the CNS disease caused by this virus is a consequence of reduced local immunosurveillance or whether it reflects the reactivation of the virus in the peripheral compartments and spread to the CNS is uncertain. Nevertheless, natalizumab continues to be used primarily as a monotherapy for treatment of MS, with careful consideration of prior JCV antibody titers in patients and close monitoring for development of PML. The challenge in this field is to determine whether the knowledge gained from basic and clinical studies can be used to design improved or more selective approaches that allow normal surveillance while targeting pathological processes.

4 Role of Chemokines in Homeostasis and Inflammation

In humans, there are approximately 50 chemokines and 19 chemokine receptors whose expression varies among immune cells [61, 62]. Several chemokines are expressed constitutively in the steady state and control homeostatic processes such as the natural circulation and homing of different immune cells [63, 64]. For example, the chemokine, CCL25, is expressed in the gut, and T cells and dendritic cells expressing CCR9 (the receptor for CCL25) home specifically to this tissue site during the steady state. Similarly, CCR4 and CCR10 mediate normal trafficking of T cells to the skin. The impact of chemokines and their receptors on tissue-specific homing patterns has been likened to an address code for immune cells [65, 66]. Specific chemokine receptor expression has also been associated with distinct classes of T helper cell subsets: Th1 cells express CXCR3 and CCR5, whereas Th17 cells express CCR6 [65, 67, 68]. To date, no brain-specific "address code" has been identified, but numerous studies have implicated chemokines in various aspects of neuroinflammation and elements of this literature are reviewed below.

4.1 CCR7/CCL19, CCL21

Several homeostatic chemokines are expressed during the steady state and contribute to the localization and behavior of lymphocyte populations within secondary lymphoid organs [69]. Two of these chemokines, CCL19 and CCL21, are constitutively expressed in the spleen and lymph nodes where they influence the migration of CCR7-expressing naïve and memory T cells as part of normal recirculation events [70]. Within the brain, CCL19 expression has been detected in venules and it has been proposed that it promotes immune surveillance by CCR7-expressing T cells [71]. Moreover, in a model of T cell acute lymphocytic leukemia (T-ALL), CCR7 is critical for the entry of tumor cells into the CNS where they can evade chemotherapy and act as a source of relapses [72]. Thus, blocking CCR7 may prevent metastasis to the CNS and reduce the need for aggressive treatment of T-ALL.

CCR7 also appears to have a role in lymphocyte entry into the CNS during inflammation. CCR7 blockade reduced the adhesion of activated T cells to sections of inflamed brain ex vivo [71]. In the context of infectious disease, CCL21 expression increases in the brain during chronic toxoplasmosis, and $CD4^+$ T cells that infiltrate the CNS in response to infection co-localize with CCL21 [51, 73]. Indeed, in *plt*$^{-/-}$ mice, which lack CCL19 and CCL21, $CD4^+$ cells were not able to access the brain parenchyma during toxoplasmic encephalitis. However, in mice that constitutively express CCL21 in astrocytes, lymphocytes did not enter the brain in the absence of infection. Thus, CCL21 alone is not sufficient to promote the entry of lymphocytes into the uninflamed CNS, but this chemokine has a key role during infection.

4.2 CXCR4/CXCL12

In contrast to many chemokines that are expressed in response to inflammatory signals, CXCL12 is expressed constitutively by the endothelium at the BBB and in the choroid plexus. Interestingly, instead of promoting inflammation, it has been proposed that CXCL12 limits the entry of $CXCR4^{+}$ immune cells into the brain. During MS and EAE, the localization of CXCL12 changes from the basal to the luminal side of the endothelium, which may promote T cell entry into the CNS [74–77]. These studies emphasize how altered expression patterns of chemokines at the BBB or BCSFB can influence the entry of immune cells to the CNS.

4.3 CCR6/CCL20

The receptor CCR6 is expressed by multiple cell types, including IL-17 producing T cells, which are associated with pathological T cell responses in many sites, including the CNS. Several recent studies have explored the role of CCR6 during EAE. Reboldi and colleagues reported that CCR6-deficient mice were resistant to EAE, and this phenotype was ascribed to a critical role for CCR6 in the initial recruitment of activated T cells to the CNS. The observation that CCR6-expressing Th17 T cells were associated with the choroid plexus which constitutively expresses CCL20 led to the hypothesis that entry of IL-17 producing cells occurs at this portal [78]. In contrast, two other reports have found that EAE is exacerbated in CCR6-deficient mice [79, 80]. Since regulatory T cells (Tregs) also express CCR6, an increase in pathology in CCR6-deficient mice may be a result of Treg dysfunction. Indeed, Treg recruitment to the CNS is reduced in the absence of CCR6 [79, 80]. Because this receptor is expressed on multiple cell types that influence many facets of the immune responses during neuroinflammation, these apparently contradictory studies illustrate the complexities of interpreting studies that involve total chemokine receptor knockout mice.

4.4 CXCR3/CXCL9,10,11

CXCR3 and its multiple ligands have been associated with various forms of neuroinflammation and surveillance of the CNS. In the absence of inflammation, T cells present in the CSF of patients express CXCR3 [81]. During EAE, as well infections that impact the CNS, CXCR3 is highly expressed by infiltrating T cells [82–89]. In some instances, CXCR3 is required for optimal trafficking of T cells to the CNS [86, 88]. In addition, $CXCR3^{-/-}$ mice develop less severe inflammation in models of viral encephalitis and cerebral malaria [82, 83, 86, 87]. While neurons and infiltrating myeloid cells are capable of producing CXCR3 ligands, astrocytes are a predominant source of CXCL10 and microglia of CXCL9 during EAE [90–93].

Consistent with the evolving view of chemokine biology, CXCR3 and its ligands are not simply involved in the recruitment of T cells to the CNS. Recently, the influence of CXCL10 on T cell behavior in the tissue parenchyma has been visualized using multiphoton microscopy of $CD8^+$ T cells responding to infection with *T. gondii*. Surprisingly, blockade of CXCL10 decreased the velocity of $CD8^+$ T cell migration, but did not influence the directionality of movement or the walk behavior of the cells. This alteration in migration was predicted to decrease the ability of cytotoxic T cells to find infected target cells and limit parasite replication [88]. Thus, a model is emerging in which chemokines within the inflamed CNS promote the movement of T cells through tissues, which may support pathogen control but presumably would also contribute to the development of autoimmune lesions in the CNS. Interestingly, $CXCR3^{-/-}$ mice exhibit exacerbated EAE [85, 94] and one study found that the localization of Tregs in the CNS is altered in these mice [85]. In light of recent studies that Tregs acquire similar phenotypes to the effector cell populations that they regulate [95–98], this change in Treg localization may lead to a reduced ability to limit the autoimmune effector T cell responses leading to more severe disease. Taken together, studies examining the role of CXCR3 in neuroinflammation highlight the complex nature of chemokine biology, with multiple cell types expressing a common receptor, single cells expressing multiple receptors, and differential ligand expression within a tissue.

4.5 CCR2/CCL2

The receptor CCR2 and its ligand CCL2 (monocyte chemoattractant protein 1) play a major role in the mobilization of inflammatory monocytes and neutrophils. The infiltration of CCR2-expressing $Ly6C^{hi}$ monocytes has been observed in a variety of neurological conditions. In the context of EAE, blockade of CCR2 suppressed disease [99, 100] and mice lacking CCL2 developed less severe EAE associated with reduced infiltration of monocytes [27, 101]. Similarly, during certain viral infections, CCR2-dependent accumulation of monocytes is associated with development of pathology characterized by demyelination [102] or vascular injury and the onset of seizures [103]. During other infections, including *T. gondii* and MHV, the lack of CCR2 resulted in decreased leukocyte trafficking and activation of immune cells within the CNS, leading to a reduced ability to control these pathogens [104, 105]. Together, these reports on diverse experimental models highlight the contribution of CCR2 to the recruitment of myelomonocytic cells to destructive and protective immune responses.

5 Future Directions

The studies highlighted in the previous section illustrate the key role of integrins and chemokines in the orchestration of neuroinflammation. Given that chemokines utilize G-protein-coupled receptors to signal, these receptors are attractive targets for

small-molecule inhibitors that may lead to the development of selective antagonists [106–108]. However, successful treatments that target chemokines may ultimately require that specific ligands or combinations of receptors be targeted for the most efficacious result. For example, many studies that have examined the involvement of α4β1/VCAM-1 in T cell entry into the brain support a direct inhibition of T cell adhesion to CNS vessels as the possible mechanism. Similarly, while it is clear that chemokines have a central role in neuroinflammation, how initial entry of cells into the brain or subsequent events are most critically influenced by these factors is still unclear. In many instances, interfering with these pathways results in differences in the number of inflammatory cells within the CNS, which may be due to defective priming, reduced recruitment across barriers into the CNS, or an inability to retain these cells within the tissue. The development of intravital imaging of individual cells combined with the generation of fluorescent reporter mice specific for different cell types (such as DCs, neutrophils, antigen-specific $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells, microglia, astrocytes) and cytokines has made it possible to study the interaction between infiltrating immune cells with CNS-resident cells [1, 51, 109–111]. The application of this technology has the potential to fundamentally advance our appreciation for how immune cells enter and behave in the CNS and may lead to the refinement or discovery of therapeutic strategies to better manage neuroinflammation. This information will also be relevant to the development of complex therapies that use stem cells to repair tissue damage in the brain or chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T cells to treat tumors that affect the CNS [112–114]. In particular, for CAR T cells, an understanding of the environmental cues provided by integrins and chemokines that influence T cell functions in the brain should inform the strategies used to engineer optimal tumor-specific effector T cells that can access and operate within the CNS.

Acknowledgments The authors would like to acknowledge grant support from the National Institutes of Health: AI-090234 (B.J.) and AI-41158, AI-42334, and EY-021314 (C.A.H.).

References

1. Wilson EH, Weninger W, Hunter CA. Trafficking of immune cells in the central nervous system. J Clin Invest. 2010;120(5):1368–79.
2. Barker CF, Billingham RE. Immunologically privileged sites. Adv Immunol. 1977;25:1–54.
3. Medawar PB. Immunity to homologous grafted skin; the fate of skin homografts transplanted to the brain, to subcutaneous tissue, and to the anterior chamber of the eye. Br J Exp Pathol. 1948;29(1):58–69.
4. Wakim LM, Woodward-Davis A, Liu R, Hu Y, Villadangos J, Smyth G, Bevan MJ. The molecular signature of tissue resident memory CD8 T cells isolated from the brain. J Immunol. 2012;189(7):3462–71.
5. Kivisakk P, Trebst C, Liu Z, Tucky BH, Sorensen TL, Rudick RA, Mack M, Ransohoff RM. T-cells in the cerebrospinal fluid express a similar repertoire of inflammatory chemokine receptors in the absence or presence of CNS inflammation: implications for CNS trafficking. Clin Exp Immunol. 2002;129(3):510–8.
6. Kawakami N, Odoardi F, Ziemssen T, Bradl M, Ritter T, Neuhaus O, Lassmann H, Wekerle H, Flugel A. Autoimmune CD4+ T cell memory: lifelong persistence of encephalitogenic T cell clones in healthy immune repertoires. J Immunol. 2005;175(1):69–81.

7. Schwartz M, Kipnis J. A conceptual revolution in the relationships between the brain and immunity. Brain Behav Immun. 2011;25(5):817–9.
8. Kipnis J, Gadani S, Derecki NC. Pro-cognitive properties of T cells. Nat Rev Immunol. 2012;12(9):663–9.
9. Sallusto F, Impellizzieri D, Basso C, Laroni A, Uccelli A, Lanzavecchia A, Engelhardt B. T-cell trafficking in the central nervous system. Immunol Rev. 2012;248(1):216–27.
10. Wraith DC, Nicholson LB. The adaptive immune system in diseases of the central nervous system. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(4):1172–9.
11. Kawakami N, Bartholomaus I, Pesic M, Mues M. An autoimmunity odyssey: how autoreactive T cells infiltrate into the CNS. Immunol Rev. 2012;248(1):140–55.
12. Agrawal SM, Yong VW. Immunopathogenesis of multiple sclerosis. Int Rev Neurobiol. 2007;79:99–126.
13. Irani S, Lang B. Autoantibody-mediated disorders of the central nervous system. Autoimmunity. 2008;41(1):55–65.
14. Sansing LH, Harris TH, Welsh FA, Kasner SE, Hunter CA, Kariko K. Toll-like receptor 4 contributes to poor outcome after intracerebral hemorrhage. Ann Neurol. 2011;70(4):646–56.
15. Perry VH, Nicoll JA, Holmes C. Microglia in neurodegenerative disease. Nat Rev Neurol. 2010;6(4):193–201.
16. Iadecola C, Anrather J. The immunology of stroke: from mechanisms to translation. Nat Med. 2011;17(7):796–808.
17. Das M, Mohapatra S, Mohapatra SS. New perspectives on central and peripheral immune responses to acute traumatic brain injury. J Neuroinflammation. 2012;9:236.
18. Amor S, Puentes F, Baker D, van der Valk P. Inflammation in neurodegenerative diseases. Immunology. 2010;129(2):154–69.
19. Engelhardt B, Ransohoff RM. Capture, crawl, cross: the T cell code to breach the blood-brain barriers. Trends Immunol. 2012;33(12):579–89.
20. Wilson EH, Hunter CA. The role of astrocytes in the immunopathogenesis of toxoplasmic encephalitis. Int J Parasitol. 2004;34(5):543–8.
21. Bartholomaus I, Kawakami N, Odoardi F, Schlager C, Miljkovic D, Ellwart JW, Klinkert WE, Flugel-Koch C, Issekutz TB, Wekerle H, et al. Effector T cell interactions with meningeal vascular structures in nascent autoimmune CNS lesions. Nature. 2009;462(7269):94–8.
22. Ransohoff RM, Engelhardt B. The anatomical and cellular basis of immune surveillance in the central nervous system. Nat Rev Immunol. 2012;12(9):623–35.
23. Man S, Ubogu EE, Ransohoff RM. Inflammatory cell migration into the central nervous system: a few new twists on an old tale. Brain Pathol. 2007;17(2):243–50.
24. Ransohoff RM, Kivisakk P, Kidd G. Three or more routes for leukocyte migration into the central nervous system. Nat Rev Immunol. 2003;3(7):569–81.
25. Engelhardt B, Ransohoff RM. The ins and outs of T-lymphocyte trafficking to the CNS: anatomical sites and molecular mechanisms. Trends Immunol. 2005;26(9):485–95.
26. Engelhardt B. Molecular mechanisms involved in T cell migration across the blood-brain barrier. J Neural Transm. 2006;113(4):477–85.
27. Mahad D, Callahan MK, Williams KA, Ubogu EE, Kivisakk P, Tucky B, Kidd G, Kingsbury GA, Chang A, Fox RJ, et al. Modulating CCR2 and CCL2 at the blood-brain barrier: relevance for multiple sclerosis pathogenesis. Brain. 2006;129(Pt 1):212–23.
28. Takeshita Y, Ransohoff RM. Inflammatory cell trafficking across the blood-brain barrier: chemokine regulation and in vitro models. Immunol Rev. 2012;248(1):228–39.
29. Odoardi F, Sie C, Streyl K, Ulaganathan VK, Schlager C, Lodygin D, Heckelsmiller K, Nietfeld W, Ellwart J, Klinkert WE, et al. T cells become licensed in the lung to enter the central nervous system. Nature. 2012;488(7413):675–9.
30. Kivisakk P, Mahad DJ, Callahan MK, Trebst C, Tucky B, Wei T, Wu L, Baekkevold ES, Lassmann H, Staugaitis SM, et al. Human cerebrospinal fluid central memory CD4+ T cells: evidence for trafficking through choroid plexus and meninges via P-selectin. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100(14):8389–94.

31. Piccio L, Rossi B, Scarpini E, Laudanna C, Giagulli C, Issekutz AC, Vestweber D, Butcher EC, Constantin G. Molecular mechanisms involved in lymphocyte recruitment in inflamed brain microvessels: critical roles for P-selectin glycoprotein ligand-1 and heterotrimeric G(i)-linked receptors. J Immunol. 2002;168(4):1940–9.
32. Kerfoot SM, Kubes P. Overlapping roles of P-selectin and alpha 4 integrin to recruit leukocytes to the central nervous system in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol. 2002;169(2):1000–6.
33. Carrithers MD, Visintin I, Viret C, Janeway Jr CS. Role of genetic background in P selectin-dependent immune surveillance of the central nervous system. J Neuroimmunol. 2002;129(1–2):51–7.
34. Engelhardt B, Laschinger M, Schulz M, Samulowitz U, Vestweber D, Hoch G. The development of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in the mouse requires alpha4-integrin but not alpha4beta7-integrin. J Clin Invest. 1998;102(12):2096–105.
35. Engelhardt B, Vestweber D, Hallmann R, Schulz M. E- and P-selectin are not involved in the recruitment of inflammatory cells across the blood-brain barrier in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Blood. 1997;90(11):4459–72.
36. Osmers I, Bullard DC, Barnum SR. PSGL-1 is not required for development of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Neuroimmunol. 2005;166(1–2):193–6.
37. Rossi B, Angiari S, Zenaro E, Budui SL, Constantin G. Vascular inflammation in central nervous system diseases: adhesion receptors controlling leukocyte-endothelial interactions. J Leukoc Biol. 2011;89(4):539–56.
38. Urzainqui A, Martinez del Hoyo G, Lamana A, de la Fuente H, Barreiro O, Olazabal IM, Martin P, Wild MK, Vestweber D, Gonzalez-Amaro R, et al. Functional role of P-selectin glycoprotein ligand 1/P-selectin interaction in the generation of tolerogenic dendritic cells. J Immunol. 2007;179(11):7457–65.
39. Kerfoot SM, Norman MU, Lapointe BM, Bonder CS, Zbytnuik L, Kubes P. Reevaluation of P-selectin and alpha 4 integrin as targets for the treatment of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol. 2006;176(10):6225–34.
40. Brocke S, Piercy C, Steinman L, Weissman IL, Veromaa T. Antibodies to CD44 and integrin alpha4, but not L-selectin, prevent central nervous system inflammation and experimental encephalomyelitis by blocking secondary leukocyte recruitment. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1999;96(12):6896–901.
41. Winkler CW, Foster SC, Matsumoto SG, Preston MA, Xing R, Bebo BF, Banine F, Berny-Lang MA, Itakura A, McCarty OJ, et al. Hyaluronan anchored to activated CD44 on central nervous system vascular endothelial cells promotes lymphocyte extravasation in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Biol Chem. 2012;287(40):33237–51.
42. Kanwar JR, Harrison JE, Wang D, Leung E, Mueller W, Wagner N, Krissansen GW. Beta7 integrins contribute to demyelinating disease of the central nervous system. J Neuroimmunol. 2000;103(2):146–52.
43. Kanwar JR, Kanwar RK, Wang D, Krissansen GW. Prevention of a chronic progressive form of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by an antibody against mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1, given early in the course of disease progression. Immunol Cell Biol. 2000;78(6):641–5.
44. Wakim LM, Woodward-Davis A, Bevan MJ. Memory T cells persisting within the brain after local infection show functional adaptations to their tissue of residence. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2010;107(42):17872–9.
45. Yednock TA, Cannon C, Fritz LC, Sanchez-Madrid F, Steinman L, Karin N. Prevention of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by antibodies against alpha 4 beta 1 integrin. Nature. 1992;356(6364):63–6.
46. Baron JL, Madri JA, Ruddle NH, Hashim G, Janeway Jr CA. Surface expression of alpha 4 integrin by CD4 T cells is required for their entry into brain parenchyma. J Exp Med. 1993;177(1):57–68.

47. Jain P, Coisne C, Enzmann G, Rottapel R, Engelhardt B. Alpha4beta1 integrin mediates the recruitment of immature dendritic cells across the blood-brain barrier during experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol. 2010;184(12):7196–206.
48. Guan JL, Hynes RO. Lymphoid cells recognize an alternatively spliced segment of fibronectin via the integrin receptor alpha 4 beta 1. Cell. 1990;60(1):53–61.
49. Planz O, Bilzer T, Stitz L. Immunopathogenic role of T-cell subsets in Borna disease virus-induced progressive encephalitis. J Virol. 1995;69(2):896–903.
50. Sasseville VG, Newman W, Brodie SJ, Hesterberg P, Pauley D, Ringler DJ. Monocyte adhesion to endothelium in simian immunodeficiency virus-induced AIDS encephalitis is mediated by vascular cell adhesion molecule-1/alpha 4 beta 1 integrin interactions. Am J Pathol. 1994;144(1):27–40.
51. Wilson EHHT, Mrass P, John B, Tait ED, Wu GF, Pepper M, Wherry EJ, Dzierzinski F, Roos D, Haydon PG, Laufer TM, Weninger W, Hunter CA. Behavior of parasite-specific effector CD8+ T cells in the brain and visualization of a kinesis-associated system of reticular fibers. Immunity. 2009;30(2):300–11.
52. Steffen BJ, Butcher EC, Engelhardt B. Evidence for involvement of ICAM-1 and VCAM-1 in lymphocyte interaction with endothelium in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in the central nervous system in the SJL/J mouse. Am J Pathol. 1994;145(1):189–201.
53. Glatigny S, Duhen R, Oukka M, Bettelli E. Cutting edge: loss of alpha4 integrin expression differentially affects the homing of Th1 and Th17 cells. J Immunol. 2011;187(12):6176–9.
54. Laschinger M, Vajkoczy P, Engelhardt B. Encephalitogenic T cells use LFA-1 for transendothelial migration but not during capture and initial adhesion strengthening in healthy spinal cord microvessels in vivo. Eur J Immunol. 2002;32(12):3598–606.
55. Samoilova EB, Horton JL, Chen Y. Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in intercellular adhesion molecule-1-deficient mice. Cell Immunol. 1998;190(1):83–9.
56. Welsh CT, Rose JW, Hill KE, Townsend JJ. Augmentation of adoptively transferred experimental allergic encephalomyelitis by administration of a monoclonal antibody specific for LFA-1 alpha. J Neuroimmunol. 1993;43(1–2):161–7.
57. Willenborg DO, Simmons RD, Tamatani T, Miyasaka M. ICAM-1-dependent pathway is not critically involved in the inflammatory process of autoimmune encephalomyelitis or in cytokine-induced inflammation of the central nervous system. J Neuroimmunol. 1993; 45(1–2):147–54.
58. John B, Ricart B, Tait Wojno ED, Harris TH, Randall LM, Christian DA, Gregg B, De Almeida DM, Weninger W, Hammer DA, et al. Analysis of behavior and trafficking of dendritic cells within the brain during toxoplasmic encephalitis. PLoS Pathog. 2011;7(9):e1002246.
59. Berger JR, Koralnik IJ. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy and natalizumab—unforeseen consequences. N Engl J Med. 2005;353(4):414–6.
60. Molloy ES, Calabrese LH. Therapy: targeted but not trouble-free: efalizumab and PML. Nat Rev Rheumatol. 2009;5(8):418–9.
61. Rot A, von Andrian UH. Chemokines in innate and adaptive host defense: basic chemokinese grammar for immune cells. Annu Rev Immunol. 2004;22:891–928.
62. Zlotnik A, Yoshie O. Chemokines: a new classification system and their role in immunity. Immunity. 2000;12(2):121–7.
63. Cyster JG. Chemokines, sphingosine-1-phosphate, and cell migration in secondary lymphoid organs. Annu Rev Immunol. 2005;23:127–59.
64. Bromley SK, Mempel TR, Luster AD. Orchestrating the orchestrators: chemokines in control of T cell traffic. Nat Immunol. 2008;9(9):970–80.
65. Sallusto F, Mackay CR. Chemoattractants and their receptors in homeostasis and inflammation. Curr Opin Immunol. 2004;16(6):724–31.
66. Sallusto F, Baggiolini M. Chemokines and leukocyte traffic. Nat Immunol. 2008;9(9): 949–52.
67. Sallusto F, Mackay CR, Lanzavecchia A. The role of chemokine receptors in primary, effector, and memory immune responses. Annu Rev Immunol. 2000;18:593–620.

68. Sallusto F, Geginat J, Lanzavecchia A. Central memory and effector memory T cell subsets: function, generation, and maintenance. Annu Rev Immunol. 2004;22:745–63.
69. Katakai T, Hara T, Lee JH, Gonda H, Sugai M, Shimizu A. A novel reticular stromal structure in lymph node cortex: an immuno-platform for interactions among dendritic cells, T cells and B cells. Int Immunol. 2004;16(8):1133–42.
70. Katakai T, Hara T, Sugai M, Gonda H, Shimizu A. Lymph node fibroblastic reticular cells construct the stromal reticulum via contact with lymphocytes. J Exp Med. 2004;200(6): 783–95.
71. Alt C, Laschinger M, Engelhardt B. Functional expression of the lymphoid chemokines CCL19 (ELC) and CCL 21 (SLC) at the blood-brain barrier suggests their involvement in G-protein-dependent lymphocyte recruitment into the central nervous system during experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Eur J Immunol. 2002;32(8):2133–44.
72. Buonamici S, Trimarchi T, Ruocco MG, Reavie L, Cathelin S, Mar BG, Klinakis A, Lukyanov Y, Tseng JC, Sen F, et al. CCR7 signalling as an essential regulator of CNS infiltration in T-cell leukaemia. Nature. 2009;459(7249):1000–4.
73. Noor S, Wilson EH. Role of C-C chemokine receptor type 7 and its ligands during neuroinflammation. J Neuroinflammation. 2012;9:77.
74. McCandless EE, Wang Q, Woerner BM, Harper JM, Klein RS. CXCL12 limits inflammation by localizing mononuclear infiltrates to the perivascular space during experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol. 2006;177(11):8053–64.
75. McCandless EE, Piccio L, Woerner BM, Schmidt RE, Rubin JB, Cross AH, Klein RS. Pathological expression of CXCL12 at the blood-brain barrier correlates with severity of multiple sclerosis. Am J Pathol. 2008;172(3):799–808.
76. McCandless EE, Zhang B, Diamond MS, Klein RS. CXCR4 antagonism increases T cell trafficking in the central nervous system and improves survival from West Nile virus encephalitis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(32):11270–5.
77. Cruz-Orengo L, Holman DW, Dorsey D, Zhou L, Zhang P, Wright M, McCandless EE, Patel JR, Luker GD, Littman DR, et al. CXCR7 influences leukocyte entry into the CNS parenchyma by controlling abluminal CXCL12 abundance during autoimmunity. J Exp Med. 2011;208(2):327–39.
78. Reboldi A, Coisne C, Baumjohann D, Benvenuto F, Bottinelli D, Lira S, Uccelli A, Lanzavecchia A, Engelhardt B, Sallusto F. C-C chemokine receptor 6-regulated entry of TH-17 cells into the CNS through the choroid plexus is required for the initiation of EAE. Nat Immunol. 2009;10(5):514–23.
79. Elhofy A, Depaolo RW, Lira SA, Lukacs NW, Karpus WJ. Mice deficient for CCR6 fail to control chronic experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Neuroimmunol. 2009; 213(1–2):91–9.
80. Villares R, Cadenas V, Lozano M, Almonacid L, Zaballos A, Martinez AC, Varona R. CCR6 regulates EAE pathogenesis by controlling regulatory CD4+ T-cell recruitment to target tissues. Eur J Immunol. 2009;39(6):1671–81.
81. Liu L, Callahan MK, Huang D, Ransohoff RM. Chemokine receptor CXCR3: an unexpected enigma. Curr Top Dev Biol. 2005;68:149–81.
82. de Lemos C, Christensen JE, Nansen A, Moos T, Lu B, Gerard C, Christensen JP, Thomsen AR. Opposing effects of CXCR3 and CCR5 deficiency on CD8+ T cell-mediated inflammation in the central nervous system of virus-infected mice. J Immunol. 2005;175(3):1767–75.
83. Christensen JE, de Lemos C, Moos T, Christensen JP, Thomsen AR. CXCL10 is the key ligand for CXCR3 on CD8+ effector T cells involved in immune surveillance of the lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus-infected central nervous system. J Immunol. 2006;176(7): 4235–43.
84. Stiles LN, Hosking MP, Edwards RA, Strieter RM, Lane TE. Differential roles for CXCR3 in CD4+ and CD8+ T cell trafficking following viral infection of the CNS. Eur J Immunol. 2006;36(3):613–22.
85. Muller M, Carter SL, Hofer MJ, Manders P, Getts DR, Getts MT, Dreykluft A, Lu B, Gerard C, King NJ, et al. CXCR3 signaling reduces the severity of experimental autoimmune

encephalomyelitis by controlling the parenchymal distribution of effector and regulatory T cells in the central nervous system. J Immunol. 2007;179(5):2774–86.
86. Campanella GS, Tager AM, El Khoury JK, Thomas SY, Abrazinski TA, Manice LA, Colvin RA, Luster AD. Chemokine receptor CXCR3 and its ligands CXCL9 and CXCL10 are required for the development of murine cerebral malaria. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(12):4814–9.
87. Miu J, Mitchell AJ, Muller M, Carter SL, Manders PM, McQuillan JA, Saunders BM, Ball HJ, Lu B, Campbell IL, et al. Chemokine gene expression during fatal murine cerebral malaria and protection due to CXCR3 deficiency. J Immunol. 2008;180(2):1217–30.
88. Harris TH, Banigan EJ, Christian DA, Konradt C, Tait Wojno ED, Norose K, Wilson EH, John B, Weninger W, Luster AD, et al. Generalized Levy walks and the role of chemokines in migration of effector CD8+ T cells. Nature. 2012;486(7404):545–8.
89. Zhang B, Chan YK, Lu B, Diamond MS, Klein RS. CXCR3 mediates region-specific antiviral T cell trafficking within the central nervous system during West Nile virus encephalitis. J Immunol. 2008;180(4):2641–9.
90. Christensen JE, Simonsen S, Fenger C, Sorensen MR, Moos T, Christensen JP, Finsen B, Thomsen AR. Fulminant lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus-induced inflammation of the CNS involves a cytokine-chemokine-cytokine-chemokine cascade. J Immunol. 2009;182(2): 1079–87.
91. Ellis SL, Gysbers V, Manders PM, Li W, Hofer MJ, Muller M, Campbell IL. The cell-specific induction of CXC chemokine ligand 9 mediated by IFN-gamma in microglia of the central nervous system is determined by the myeloid transcription factor PU.1. J Immunol. 2010;185(3):1864–77.
92. Strack A, Asensio VC, Campbell IL, Schluter D, Deckert M. Chemokines are differentially expressed by astrocytes, microglia and inflammatory leukocytes in Toxoplasma encephalitis and critically regulated by interferon-gamma. Acta Neuropathol. 2002;103(5):458–68.
93. Strack A, Schluter D, Asensio VC, Campbell IL, Deckert M. Regulation of the kinetics of intracerebral chemokine gene expression in murine Toxoplasma encephalitis: impact of host genetic factors. Glia. 2002;40(3):372–7.
94. Liu L, Huang D, Matsui M, He TT, Hu T, Demartino J, Lu B, Gerard C, Ransohoff RM. Severe disease, unaltered leukocyte migration, and reduced IFN-gamma production in CXCR3−/− mice with experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol. 2006;176(7): 4399–409.
95. Oldenhove G, Bouladoux N, Wohlfert EA, Hall JA, Chou D, Dos Santos L, O'Brien S, Blank R, Lamb E, Natarajan S, et al. Decrease of Foxp3+ Treg cell number and acquisition of effector cell phenotype during lethal infection. Immunity. 2009;31(5):772–86.
96. Wohlfert EA, Grainger JR, Bouladoux N, Konkel JE, Oldenhove G, Ribeiro CH, Hall JA, Yagi R, Naik S, Bhairavabhotla R, et al. GATA3 controls Foxp3(+) regulatory T cell fate during inflammation in mice. J Clin Invest. 2011;121(11):4503–15.
97. Koch MA, Tucker-Heard G, Perdue NR, Killebrew JR, Urdahl KB, Campbell DJ. The transcription factor T-bet controls regulatory T cell homeostasis and function during type 1 inflammation. Nat Immunol. 2009;10(6):595–602.
98. Duhen T, Duhen R, Lanzavecchia A, Sallusto F, Campbell DJ. Functionally distinct subsets of human FOXP3+ Treg cells that phenotypically mirror effector Th cells. Blood. 2012; 119(19):4430–40.
99. Izikson L, Klein RS, Charo IF, Weiner HL, Luster AD. Resistance to experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in mice lacking the CC chemokine receptor (CCR)2. J Exp Med. 2000;192(7):1075–80.
100. King IL, Dickendesher TL, Segal BM. Circulating Ly-6C+myeloid precursors migrate to the CNS and play a pathogenic role during autoimmune demyelinating disease. Blood. 2009; 113(14):3190–7.

101. Gaupp S, Pitt D, Kuziel WA, Cannella B, Raine CS. Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) in CCR2(−/−) mice: susceptibility in multiple strains. Am J Pathol. 2003; 162(1):139–50.
102. Bennett JL, Elhofy A, Charo I, Miller SD, Dal Canto MC, Karpus WJ. CCR2 regulates development of Theiler's murine encephalomyelitis virus-induced demyelinating disease. Viral Immunol. 2007;20(1):19–33.
103. Kim JV, Kang SS, Dustin ML, McGavern DB. Myelomonocytic cell recruitment causes fatal CNS vascular injury during acute viral meningitis. Nature. 2009;457(7226):191–5.
104. Benevides L, Milanezi CM, Yamauchi LM, Benjamim CF, Silva JS, Silva NM. CCR2 receptor is essential to activate microbicidal mechanisms to control Toxoplasma gondii infection in the central nervous system. Am J Pathol. 2008;173(3):741–51.
105. Chen BP, Kuziel WA, Lane TE. Lack of CCR2 results in increased mortality and impaired leukocyte activation and trafficking following infection of the central nervous system with a neurotropic coronavirus. J Immunol. 2001;167(8):4585–92.
106. Godessart N. Chemokine receptors: attractive targets for drug discovery. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2005;1051:647–57.
107. Hamann I, Zipp F, Infante-Duarte C. Therapeutic targeting of chemokine signaling in Multiple Sclerosis. J Neurol Sci. 2008;274(1–2):31–8.
108. Wijtmans M, Verzijl D, Leurs R, de Esch IJ, Smit MJ. Towards small-molecule CXCR3 ligands with clinical potential. ChemMedChem. 2008;3(6):861–72.
109. John B, Weninger W, Hunter CA. Advances in imaging the innate and adaptive immune response to Toxoplasma gondii. Future Microbiol. 2010;5(9):1321–8.
110. Schaeffer M, Han SJ, Chtanova T, van Dooren GG, Herzmark P, Chen Y, Roysam B, Striepen B, Robey EA. Dynamic imaging of T cell-parasite interactions in the brains of mice chronically infected with Toxoplasma gondii. J Immunol. 2009;182(10):6379–93.
111. Zenaro E, Rossi B, Angiari S, Constantin G. Use of imaging to study leukocyte trafficking in the central nervous system. Immunol Cell Biol. 2013;91(4):271–80.
112. Kahlon KS, Brown C, Cooper LJ, Raubitschek A, Forman SJ, Jensen MC. Specific recognition and killing of glioblastoma multiforme by interleukin 13-zetakine redirected cytolytic T cells. Cancer Res. 2004;64(24):9160–6.
113. Ahmed N, Ratnayake M, Savoldo B, Perlaky L, Dotti G, Wels WS, Bhattacharjee MB, Gilbertson RJ, Shine HD, Weiss HL, et al. Regression of experimental medulloblastoma following transfer of HER2-specific T cells. Cancer Res. 2007;67(12):5957–64.
114. Pham CD, Mitchell DA. Chasing cancer with chimeric antigen receptor therapy. Immunotherapy. 2012;4(4):365–7.

General Physiology and Pathophysiology of Microglia

Alexei Verkhratsky and Mami Noda

Abstract Microglial cells are of scions foetal monocytes that migrate into and disseminate within the central nervous system in early embryogenesis and in perinatal period. After invasion, microglial progenitors undergo specific metamorphosis and acquire a ramified morphological phenotype known as "resting or surveillant microglia." These cells in the healthy brain have highly motile processes by which they scan their territorial domains. Microglial cells also acquire multiple receptors to neurotransmitters and neurohormones and retain receptors associated with their immune and defensive function. Insults to the central nervous system of diverse aetiology trigger a complex, multistage activation process that produce multiple "activated microglia" phenotypes, which have both neuroprotective and cytotoxic capabilities. These phenotypes are most likely disease/pathology context specific, and the balance between neurotoxicity and neuroprotection are critical for the resolution and outcome of neuropathological processes.

Keywords Microglia • Phagocytosis • Activated microglia • Neuropathology • Neurotransmitter receptors • Neuroprotection • Neurotoxicity

A. Verkhratsky, Ph.D. (✉)
Faculty of Life Sciences, The University of Manchester,
1.124 Stopford Building, Oxford Road, Manchester, M13 9PT, UK
e-mail: Alexej.Verkhratsky@manchester.ac.uk

M. Noda
Laboratory of Pathophysiology, Graduate School of Pharmaceutical Sciences,
Kyushu University, Fukuoka, Japan

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_3, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

1 Introduction: Developmental Origins of Microglia

Microglial cells, identified by Pio del Rio Hirtega in 1919 [1–3], form an innate immune and defensive system of the central nervous system (CNS) and are of the myeloid lineage [4, 5]. Invasion of microglial progenitors that derive from the extra-embryonic yolk sac (more precisely from primitive c-kit+erythromyeloid precursors [6]) occurs very early in development (about embryonic day 10 in mice [7]), thus making microglial cells the very first glia (as astrogliogenesis and oligodendrogliogenesis begin in earnest only in a perinatal period). The second wave of migration of peripheral macrophages into the brain and the spinal cord takes place in a perinatal period being complete at about perinatal day 8 when the blood–brain barrier seals. The perinatal migration mainly occurs at the corpus callosum where "fountains" of invading myeloid cells can be readily observed [8].

The myeloid cells after entering the CNS disseminate almost homogeneously throughout the parenchyma of the brain and of the spinal cord and undergo remarkable remodelling of their phenotype that converts them into the highly distinct "resting" microglial cells. The appearance of these resting microglial cells is very different from the myeloid ancestors: resting microglia are characterised by a rather small cell body (4–6 μm in diameter), from which very thin and long processes emanate in all directions [5]. Microglial processes are in constant movement, being instruments of surveying the brain tissue within their reach. These processes also define the territorial domain of an individual microglial cell; domains of neighbouring microglia cells show very little, if any, overlap. Microglial processes move with remarkable speed (up to 0.1–0.3 microns per second) so that the territorial domains of a cell is scanned every several hours or so [9, 10]. This metamorphosis is quite remarkable and may be considered as the signal example of epigenetic adaptation of the cell to a specific environment.

2 Microglial Cell Integration into CNS Cytoarchitecture

The phenotypic remodelling of microglial cells in the nervous system environment goes far beyond the changes in their morphology. Microglia physiology is also profoundly affected that allows full integration into CNS cellular networks. First and foremost, microglial cells, in contrast to macrophages, express multiple receptors to neurotransmitters and neuromodulators. Resting microglial cells are in possession of a remarkable array of these receptors including many types of ionotropic and metabotropic receptors to glutamate, ATP, adenosine, acetylcholine, GABA, adrenaline and noradrenaline, serotonin and histamine (Fig. 1). These receptors control plasmalemmal ion fluxes and numerous intracellular signalling systems, most notably Ca^{2+} signalling, which is fundamental for physiological and pathological microglial responses. At the same time, microglial cells retain their myeloid heritage by expressing numerous receptors fundamental for immune responses such as $P2X_7$ purinoceptors, receptors to chemokines and cytokines and receptors to various tissue mediators such as

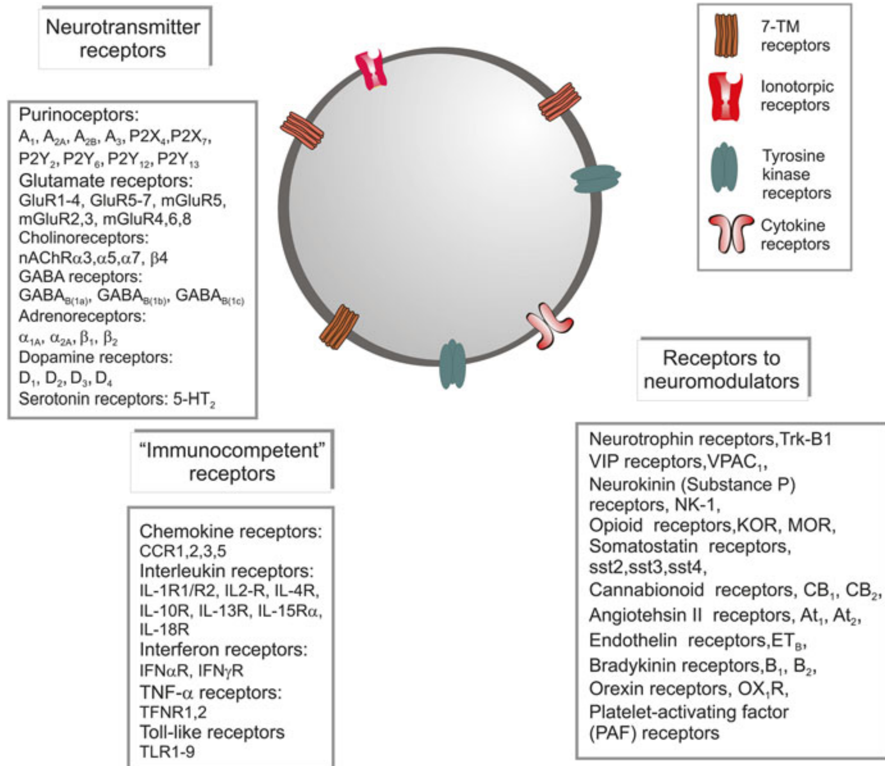


Fig. 1 A multitude of receptors expressed in microglia

platelet-activating factor, thrombin, histamine, bradykinin, etc. (for a comprehensive review of microglial receptors and exhaustive referencing, see [5, 11, 12]).

Microglia are important for developing, shaping and functional modulation of neuronal networks. At the early embryonic stages, microglial cells may assist synaptogenesis through secretion of trophic factors and possibly cholesterol. At later stages microglial cells are critical for synaptic pruning that streamlines neuronal ensembles. In the undisturbed brain, microglial processes frequently contact synaptic structures. These contacts occur on a constant basis with individual microglial process approaching presynaptic terminals and postsynaptic compartments, freezing there for about 5 min and then retracting again [13–15]. Interactions between microglial processes and synapses are regulated by neuronal activity; in the visual cortex, decrease in sensory input by light deprivation reduced the motility of microglial processes and increased the tendency of the latter to contact large dendritic spines. Re-establishing the light-induced input increased the motility of processes and the degree of their coverage of synaptic structures [13]. This specific behaviour arguably allows microglial cells to monitor synaptic activity and possibly contribute to the experience-dependent remodelling of synaptic connections. The actual mechanisms for synaptic to microglia signalling remain to be uncovered although

they are likely to involve activation of microglial neurotransmitter receptors. There is evidence, for example, for the role of ATP and purinoceptors in regulation of motility of microglial processes in vivo [9, 16, 17].

Microglial cells can signal back and modify neuronal networks by either removing synapses or secreting factors affecting neuronal and synaptic plasticity. In physiological conditions microglial cells may remove synapses by phagocytosis performed at the level of single processes without affecting the overall ramified phenotype [18]. This "physiological" phagocytosis can be visualised in acute brain slices. Arguably this process of removing synapses (known also as synaptic stripping or synaptic scaling) represents an important mechanism in controlling the number of synapses. There is evidence for the role of several specific microglial signalling systems in regulating this process. In particular, in genetically modified mice lacking the CX3R1 fractalkine receptor the transient increase in the spine density paralleled with an increase in the frequency of miniature excitatory postsynaptic currents was observed in developing hippocampus. These changes may indicate the deficit in the fractalkine-mediated microglia-dependent synaptic pruning that affects synaptic networking [19]. Similarly microglial complement receptors can contribute to the regulation of synaptic removal. In the developing brain, neurons express C1q complex that can act as a tag for synapses destined for elimination; synaptic removal subsequently is mediated through microglial C3a receptors. Removal of these receptors results in aberrant synaptic connectivity [20].

Microglia can directly influence synaptic transmission and synaptic plasticity through secretion of neuromodulatory factors. For example, microglia were reported to modulate neuronal NMDA receptors (through secreting glycine and L-serine [21]) or to affect intra-neuronal Cl^- concentration (through microglial release of BDNF), thus changing GABA-induced effects from inhibitory to excitatory [22]. The release of tumour necrosis factor-α from microglia was shown to stimulate astrocytes which in turn release glutamate acting on neighbouring synaptic structures [23]. Microglia-derived TNF-α also contributes to regulation of synaptic strength in visual cortex following monocular visual deprivation. Finally, microglial cells may affect neuronal networks through the regulation of adult neurogenesis, through controlling the integration of newly born neurons into the existing circuits and through the elimination of supranumerous neurones that undergo apoptosis [18]. All these multiple pathways for physiological interactions between microglia and neural networks are fundamental for normal development and function of the CNS; the microglia were even implicated in masculinisation of the brain and regulation of sexual behaviour [24].

The failure of microglia to perform their physiological duties may be relevant for numerous developmental brain disorders from autism to psychiatric diseases. Microglial phagocytosis, for example, is markedly impaired in mice deficient in the gene for methyl CpG-binding protein 2 (MECP2), which animals are considered a model for Rett syndrome. Clinically, Rett syndrome is manifested by an impairment of motor language and cognitive function, all these originating from defective synaptogenesis. Morphologically Rett syndrome is characterised by reduced dendritic arborisation, decreased number of spines and atrophy of neuronal somatas. It has been suggested that deficits in synaptic connectivity may result from the paralysis of

microglial phagocytosis. Specific expression of MECP2 gene in cells of myeloid lineage can partially alleviate the pathophysiological phenotype [25]. Similarly, deficient microglial function has been implicated in pathogenesis of pathological grooming behaviour observed in mice lacking Hoxb8 gene. The behavioural phenotype observed in these mice resembles a human disease trichotillomania also known as a compulsive hair-pulling disorder. Grafting of normal wild-type bone marrow cells into these mice reduced the behavioural deficit probably because of alien monocytes entering the recipient brain where they assume deficient phagocytic function [26].

3 Microglial Receptors

As has been mentioned above, acquisition of neurotransmitter receptors is the most striking part of microglial adaptation to the CNS environment. The most widespread and possibly most functionally important for microglia are purinoceptors [27].

The main type of ionotropic purinoceptors expressed in mature microglial cells are $P2X_4$ and $P2X_7$ receptors. The $P2X_7$ receptors in particular are involved in many types of neuropathology [28] and contribute to various aspects of microglial pathology. The $P2X_7$ receptors are unique among other members of P2X family in (1) exceptionally low sensitivity to ATP; the full activation of the receptors requires mM concentrations of ATP; (2) modulation of ATP sensitivity by extracellular divalent cations and (3) ability of $P2X_7$ receptors to form large transmembrane pores (permeable to molecules with m.w. up to 900 Da) upon strong stimulation. The pore formation most likely results from the dilation of the $P2X_7$ channel per se, although the role for some auxiliary proteins has been also debated [29]. $P2X_7$ receptors are abundantly present in immune cells and mediate many immune reactions, including the processing and the release of various cytokines. The $P2X_7$-mediated currents were for the first time identified in amoeboid microglial cells in situ [30]; simultaneously the $P2X_7$-mediated $[Ca^{2+}]_i$ increases were found in freshly isolated mouse microglia [31].

Microglial cells constitutively express $P2X_7$ receptors, and various brain lesions and neuropathologies (e.g. multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis and Alzheimer's disease) induce substantial up-regulation of $P2X_7$ receptor expression [27, 32]. The activation of $P2X_7$ receptors regulates multiple microglial processes from activation to apoptotic death. Stimulation of $P2X_7$ receptors was reported to be necessary for microglial activation by amyloid-β protein [33], and $P2X_7$ receptors control microglial secretion of pro-inflammatory factors (see [5] and references therein). Incidentally, direct over-expression of $P2X_7$ receptors in microglia triggers their activation in the in vitro system in complete absence of any other exogenous factors [34].

The $P2X_4$ receptors are also constitutively expressed in microglia and contribute to microglial activation in particular in the context of neuropathic pain. The role of $P2X_4$ receptors for tactile allodynia was suggested based on the pharmacological profiling and expression analysis following peripheral nerve lesion, intraperitoneal injection of lipopolysaccharide and in animals with experimental autoimmune neuritis [35]. Increased levels of $P2X_4$ receptors was found in activated (as judged by

positive staining with OX42) microglia, whereas intrathecal injection of cultured microglia bearing $P2X_4$ receptors induced allodynia in the absence of peripheral nerve damage [36].

In addition to ionotropic receptors, microglia express several metabotropic purinoceptors with predominant appearance of $P2Y_2$, $P2Y_6$, $P2Y_{12}$ and $P2Y_{13}$ receptors. Stimulation of these receptors as a rule triggers Ca^{2+} signals that often involve store-operated Ca^{2+} influx; overstimulation of P2Y pathways can produce a long-lasting activation of the latter that can contribute to various aspects of microglial activation [37]. The $P2Y_6$ receptors characterised by special sensitivity to UDP regulate microglial phagocytosis [38], whereas ADP-preferring $P2Y_{12}$ receptors are fundamental for acute microglial responses to pathological insults, for morphological activation, membrane ruffling and chemotaxis [27]. In addition $P2Y_{12}$ receptors are linked to integrin-β1 signalling, which regulates extension of microglial processes [39]. In the spinal cord $P2Y_{12}$ receptors are involved in the genesis of neuropathic pain [36].

Microglial cells express ionotropic and metabotropic glutamate receptors. The ionotropic receptors are represented by all four types of AMPA receptors [40], at least three types of kainate receptors [41] and NMDA receptors which were identified only very recently and seem to be somehow linked to microglial neurotoxicity [42]. Microglia are also in possession of metabotropic receptors mGluR5 linked to intracellular Ca^{2+} signalling and mGluR2,3 (group II) and mGluR4,6,8 (group III) coupled to cAMP and involved in the regulation of TNF-α release (group II receptors) and containing microglial cytotoxicity (group III receptors) [43, 44]. Microglial cells express $GABA_B$ receptors linked to Ca^{2+} signalling and the activation of K^+ conductance [45], as well as several subunits of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors including neuronal α7 subunit that confers high Ca^{2+} permeability, and numerous metabotropic receptors including α_{1A}, α_{2A}, β_1 and β_2 adrenoreceptors, $D_{1\text{-}4}$ dopamine receptors and 5-HT_2 serotonin receptors [5].

In addition to receptors to neurotransmitters, microglia are able to sense a wide variety of neuromodulators and neurohormones. Microglial cells express all four types of adenosine receptors (which generally suppress activation process), receptors to bradykinin (with B_2 receptors being expressed in resting microglia, whereas B_1 receptors being upregulated during activation), ET_B endothelin receptors, angiotensin receptors (AT_2 receptors in resting cells and AT_1 in activated cells), somatostatin receptors, opioid receptors, neurotrophin receptors and various receptors to neuropeptides (see [5] for details). Microglial cells are further in possession of receptors to hormones, tissue and trophic factors, various blood factors, etc. In particular microglia have been found to express receptors to thrombin (PAR-1 to 4), cysteinyl leukotrienes receptors of CysLT1 and CysLT2 types, Notch-1 receptors, receptors to complement fragments C3a and C5a, macrophage colony-stimulating factor receptors, colony-stimulating factor-1 receptor, formyl peptide receptors FPR1 and FPR2, lysophosphatidic acid receptors LPA1 and LPA3 and many more [5].

Microglia also contain numerous receptors associated with defensive and immune functions. These are represented by diverse pattern-recognition receptors and by receptors to chemokines and cytokines. The pattern-recognition receptors are specifically designed to detect infectious agents. These receptors are generally classified

into (i) lectin-type, mannose and β-glucan receptors; (ii) nucleotide-binding and oligomerisation domain (NOD)-like receptors; (iii) receptors characterised by a RNA helicase domain and two caspase-recruitment domains (CARD), collectively known now as RIG-I-like receptors (RLR); and (iv) the Toll-like receptors [46–48].

These latter Toll-like receptors are particularly diversified in microglia being involved in the regulation of activation in response to multiple exogenous pathological factors. The activation of Toll-like receptors triggers several complex signalling cascades that often involve adaptor protein MyD88, transcription factors AP-1 and NF-κB [49, 50]. There are at least nine members of Toll-like receptor family, TLR1 to 9, which in the CNS are expressed mainly on glia and in particular they are present in microglial cells (see, e.g. [51–56].). The TLR1/2, 6/2, 4 and 5 are located on the cell surface, whereas TLR3, 7, 8 and 9 reside within endosomal compartments; different Toll-like receptors detect different infectious agents. The TLR1, TLR2 and TLR6, for example, are sensitive to bacterial tri- and diacyl lipopeptides, lipoteichoic acid and peptidoglycan; the TLR3 is activated by virus-specific double-stranded RNA; TKR4 is the receptor for LPS, a cell wall component of gram-negative bacteria that is an agent of choice for in vitro activation of microglia. The TLR5 detects bacterial flagellin; TLR7 and TLR8 are activated by viral RNA, whereas TLR 9 is sensitive to bacterial and viral unmethylated CpG DNA [57–60]. Stimulation of Toll-like receptors initiates the activation of microglia, and the type or receptor involved may define specific activation programmes.

Regulation of immune responses of microglia is mediated through receptors to cytokines and chemokines. Receptors to chemokines (the chemoattractive cytokines) are metabotropic 7-transmembrane domain G-protein-coupled receptors linked to multiple signalling cascades which include adenylate cyclase, phospholipases, GTPases (Rho, Rac and Cdc42) and some kinases such as mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) or phosphatidylinositol-3 kinase (PI3-K) [61] are responsible for cell migration. Cytokine receptors are represented by TNF-α receptors, interleukin (IL) receptors and receptors to interferon β and γ. Microglial cells express two types of TNF-α receptors, TNFR1 and TNFR2 which positively modulate microglial activation and phagocytosis. The receptors that regulate multiple trophic and immune responses are represented by IL-1 type-I receptor (IL-1RI), IL-1 type-II receptor (IL-1RII) and IL-1 receptor accessory protein (IL-1RAcP) [5].

4 Activation of Microglia

Microglial cells form the innate defensive and immune system of the CNS. Therefore, the fundamental function of microglia is to detect pathology and to produce a defensive response. The constantly moving processes allow scanning of the brain parenchyma and multiple receptors expressed in microglial processes can detect danger signals. Detection of pathologically relevant signals triggers the activation of microglia. Microglial activation is primarily a defensive reaction which develops in many stages and results in multiple phenotypes that generally are aimed at neuroprotection although in certain conditions can contribute to cytotoxicity [4, 5, 11, 62].

4.1 Pathological Signalling of Microglia

The molecular cues for brain damage are many. It is generally believed that the activation of microglia is controlled through balancing the "ON" and "OFF" signals [4, 11, 63]. The "ON" signals are represented by molecules that are either absent in the healthy brain or are present in low concentrations. These signals appear in association with pathology and can be further classified into pathogen-associated or danger-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs or DAMPs). The PAMP signals are directly associated with pathogens and can be represented by fragments of bacterial cell walls, viral envelopes or their respective DNAs and/or RNAs. The DAMP signals are molecules normally present in the body, but either absent in the brain (e.g. blood factors entering the CNS following disruption of the blood-brain barrier, such as coagulation factors, immunoglobulins, albumin, thrombin, etc.) or localised intracellularly (enzymes and other proteins released following destruction of cells) or molecules normally utilised for intercellular signalling but appearing in unusually high concentrations (the best example being ATP, that is massively released following cellular stress or damage).

In contrast the "OFF" signals are represented by molecules associated with normal activity of neuroglial circuitry, for example, neurotransmitters, such as glutamate, GABA, ATP adenosine, etc. These are continuously signalling onto microglia to prevent their activation, and withdrawal of these molecules from the environment is indicative of stress and possible damage. These "OFF" signals are most likely responsible for linking neuronal activity with microglial status; suppression of neuronal firing triggers the activation of microglia [5]. In vagal motoneurons suppression of synaptic activity precedes and most likely initiates synaptic stripping [64]. Incidentally ATP may act as both an "ON" and an "OFF" signal; in low concentrations ATP (and its immediate metabolite adenosine) prevents microglial activation, whereas at high concentration ATP acts as a potent stimulator of microglial response. Finally microglial responses to injury are further regulated by molecules controlling microglial motility and phagocytosis. These signals are classified into "*find-me*" signals that attract microglial cells to the damaged site and "*eat-me*" signals that mark the pathological targets and induce phagocytosis [5, 65].

4.2 Multiple Phenotypes of Activated Microglia

The activation of microglia is a complex and multistage and often reversible process represented by a tightly regulated specific programme of gradual transformation of resting microglia into a multitude of activated phenotypes (Fig. 2). At the acute stage, focal lesion to a nervous tissue triggers rapid (~1.5 μm/s) movements of microglial processes converging on the site of damage in such a way that sooner or later it is completely covered by microglial processes [9]. The process motility is triggered by the activation of $P2Y_{12}$ metabotropic purinoceptors [17] and may represent the very early defensive activation response that may completely restore

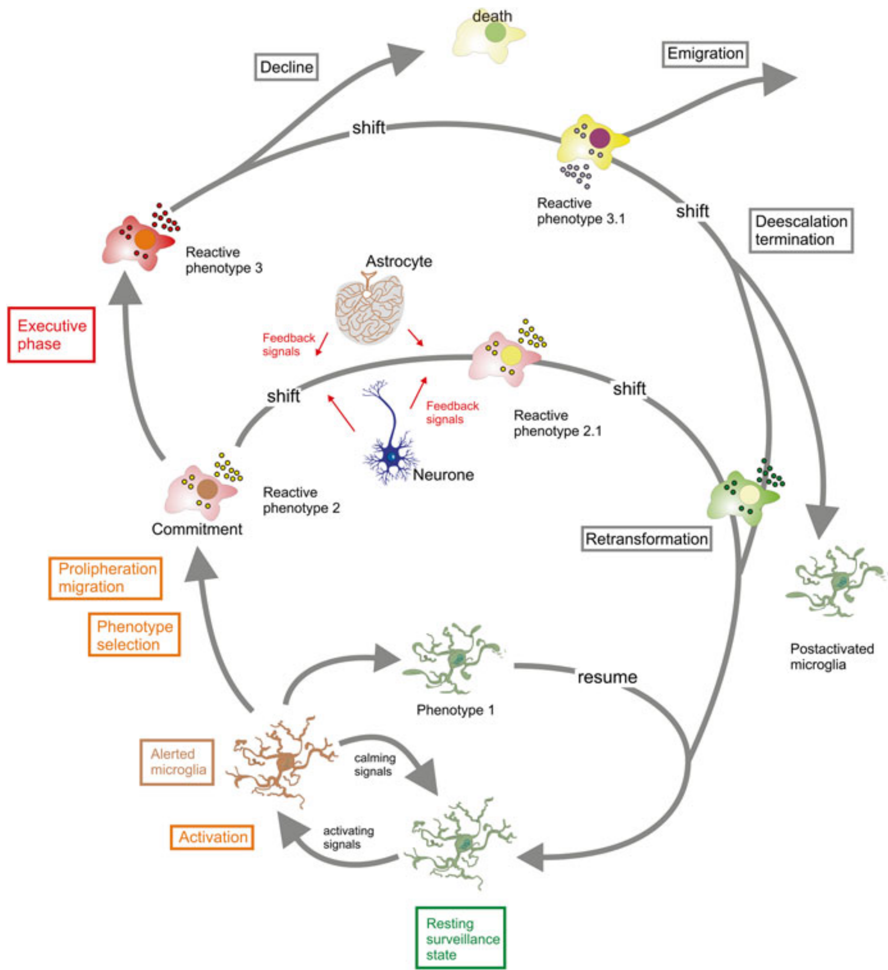


Fig. 2 Microglial activation as a continuous multistage process. The "resting" microglia constantly and actively scan their environment for exogenous or endogenous signals indicating a threat to homeostasis. Sudden appearance of "activating" signals or a loss of constitutively "calming" inputs can then trigger transitions to alerted and activated states. Cells can commit to distinct reactive phenotypes depending on the challenging stimuli and the situational context. Initial response profiles may further shift as instructed by additional influences. Not only resident CNS cells but also invading immune cells would exert such modulating influences. Initial reactive phenotypes with defence orientation may convert to repair-orientated activity profiles. Cells may eventually return to a resting state or stay "experienced." "Experienced" microglia could reveal altered responsiveness and exert distinct responses upon re-challenge. Reproduced from Kettenmann et al., 2011

limited injuries. This early "processes-executed" microglial response may also be regulated by astrocytes releasing ATP through hemichannels.

More extensive (in strength and space) lesions induce microglial transformation into reactive phenotypes. At initial stages of activation, microglia remodel their morphological appearance: the processes become fewer and thicker, some of them retract altogether and the soma size is increasing. In parallel microglial cells undergo

biochemical and biosynthetic metamorphosis, change their receptor expression and begin to secrete immune and pro-inflammatory factors [4, 66–68]. Some of the reactive microglial cells become proliferative resulting in an increase in microglial numbers around lesions. With activation proceeding, microglial cells become motile, acquire an amoeboid morphology and gather around lesioned site(s). The end point of the activation spectrum is manifested by a phagocytic phenotype that represents a final and irreversible stage of microglial activation. These main stages of microglial activation can differ between brain regions and pathological context; all in all the total number of activated phenotypes is most likely much larger that we can define currently using various (mostly derived from experiments on peripheral monocytes) markers.

4.3 Balancing Neuroprotection and Neurotoxicity

The complex programmes of microglial activation are launched very rapidly after the insult and most likely already at this stage show specificity associated with the nature of pathological damage. The activation of microglia results in profound remodelling of their physiology and biochemistry. Activated microglia alter the expression pattern of ion channels (e.g. by up-regulating inward and delayed rectifier K^+ channels [69]) and neurotransmitter receptors (e.g. purinoceptors that undergo rapid changes following activation [70, 71]). Microglia substantially increase their motility (which requires complex and coordinated changes in ion and water channels and transporters [5]). Finally, microglial cells remodel synthesis of enzymes and various inflammatory factors.

All these concerted changes produce many phenotypes of activated microglia, these phenotypes being selected for the defence of the nervous system against pathology. The defence conceptually requires balancing of two opposite arms, cytotoxic and neuroprotective. Activated microglia are in full possession of both as indeed neuroprotective as well as cytotoxic phenotypes are well characterised. Further it is possible that the very same microglial cell may simultaneously execute neuroprotection and cytotoxicity or fluctuate between these two functional extremes. This reflects a high plasticity of activated microglia which may rapidly adopt to changing pathological environments. As a result it is almost impossible to unequivocally define microglial status based on morphology or surface markers. The rather popular division of activated microglia into M1 (neurotoxic phenotype associated with activation of Toll-like or interferon γ receptors) and M2a-c (neuroprotective or regeneration-friendly or deactivating phenotypes induced following stimulation of IL 4 or IL 13, see [62, 72–75]) seems to be an oversimplification [76]. Microglial cells present many phenotypes which can execute a continuum of function which all have a global defensive meaning. Indeed to resolve a foreign invasion, for example, both infectious agent and damaged cells have to be effectively killed and ensuing debris removed, and thus cytotoxicity has been selected for its beneficial potential. Microglial cells are indeed in full possession of cytotoxic agents, such as reactive oxygen species or pro-inflammatory factors. In addition microglial cells are true phagocytes and thus indispensable for post lesion cleaning of the tissue. Neuroprotective function of

microglia is similarly assisted by numerous molecular cascades. For example, activated microglial cells are able to contain glutamate overload (by up-regulating expression of GLAST/GLT-1 glutamate transporters [77, 78]) and assist neuronal survival by secreting numerous growth factors such as, for example, NGF or BDNF [79, 80].

Finally, the activation of microglia is a reversible process that brings activated microglia to resting form after the pathological factor is attenuated [4]. How this "deactivation" of microglia proceeds remains unknown although it is possible to speculate that it may involve removal of pathology-associated signals, restoration of normal chemical environment and possibly appearance of special "terminating" factors.

5 Conclusions

Microglial cells are fundamental elements of neuropathology. In the resting conditions, these myeloid cells are important part of brain cytoarchitecture, which contribute to the development shaping and normal function of synaptically connected neuronal ensembles. Microglial cells are constantly scanning the brain tissue for any signs of damage and when these latter occurs, microglia launch a defensive response generally known as microglial activation. This microglial activation is governed by complex and multifaceted programmes that may produce many cellular phenotypes endowed with both neuroprotective and cytotoxic functions. These phenotypes are most likely disease/pathology context specific, and the balance between neurotoxicity and neuroprotection is critical for the resolution and outcome of neuropathological process.

Acknowledgements MN was supported by Grants-in Aid for Scientific Research of Japan Society for Promotion of Science, and AV research was supported by Alzheimer Research Trust (UK).

References

1. Del Rio-Hortega P. Poder fagocitario y movilidad de la microglia. Bol de la Soc esp de biol. 1919;9:154.
2. Del Rio-Hortega P. Microglia. In: Penfield W, editor. Cytology and cellular pathology of the nervous system, vol. 2. New York, NY: Hoeber; 1932. p. 482–534.
3. Kettenmann H, Verkhratsky A. Neuroglia: the 150 years after. Trends Neurosci. 2008; 31(12):653–9.
4. Hanisch UK, Kettenmann H. Microglia: active sensor and versatile effector cells in the normal and pathologic brain. Nat Neurosci. 2007;10(11):1387–94.
5. Kettenmann H, Hanisch UK, Noda M, Verkhratsky A. Physiology of microglia. Physiol Rev. 2011;91(2):461–553.
6. Kierdorf K, Erny D, Goldmann T, Sander V, Schulz C, Perdiguero EG, et al. Microglia emerge from erythromyeloid precursors via Pu.1- and Irf8-dependent pathways. Nat Neurosci. 2013;16(3):273–80.
7. Ginhoux F, Greter M, Leboeuf M, Nandi S, See P, Gokhan S, et al. Fate mapping analysis reveals that adult microglia derive from primitive macrophages. Science. 2010;330(6005): 841–5.
8. Kershman J. Genesis of microglia in the human brain. Arch Neurol Psychiatr. 1939;41:24–50.
9. Davalos D, Grutzendler J, Yang G, Kim JV, Zuo Y, Jung S, et al. ATP mediates rapid microglial response to local brain injury in vivo. Nat Neurosci. 2005;8(6):752–8.

10. Nimmerjahn A, Kirchhoff F, Helmchen F. Resting microglial cells are highly dynamic surveillants of brain parenchyma in vivo. Science. 2005;308(5726):1314–8.
11. Biber K, Neumann H, Inoue K, Boddeke HW. Neuronal 'On' and 'Off' signals control microglia. Trends Neurosci. 2007;30(11):596–602.
12. Pocock JM, Kettenmann H. Neurotransmitter receptors on microglia. Trends Neurosci. 2007;30(10):527–35.
13. Tremblay ME, Lowery RL, Majewska AK. Microglial interactions with synapses are modulated by visual experience. PLoS Biol. 2010;8(11):e1000527.
14. Tremblay ME, Stevens B, Sierra A, Wake H, Bessis A, Nimmerjahn A. The role of microglia in the healthy brain. J Neurosci. 2011;31(45):16064–9.
15. Wake H, Moorhouse AJ, Jinno S, Kohsaka S, Nabekura J. Resting microglia directly monitor the functional state of synapses in vivo and determine the fate of ischemic terminals. J Neurosci. 2009;29(13):3974–80.
16. Fontainhas AM, Wang M, Liang KJ, Chen S, Mettu P, Damani M, et al. Microglial morphology and dynamic behavior is regulated by ionotropic glutamatergic and GABAergic neurotransmission. PLoS One. 2011;6(1):e15973.
17. Haynes SE, Hollopeter G, Yang G, Kurpius D, Dailey ME, Gan WB, et al. The $P2Y_{12}$ receptor regulates microglial activation by extracellular nucleotides. Nat Neurosci. 2006;9(12):1512–9.
18. Sierra A, Encinas JM, Deudero JJ, Chancey JH, Enikolopov G, Overstreet-Wadiche LS, et al. Microglia shape adult hippocampal neurogenesis through apoptosis-coupled phagocytosis. Cell Stem Cell. 2010;7(4):483–95.
19. Paolicelli RC, Bolasco G, Pagani F, Maggi L, Scianni M, Panzanelli P, et al. Synaptic pruning by microglia is necessary for normal brain development. Science. 2011;333(6048):1456–8.
20. Schafer DP, Lehrman EK, Kautzman AG, Koyama R, Mardinly AR, Yamasaki R, et al. Microglia sculpt postnatal neural circuits in an activity and complement-dependent manner. Neuron. 2012;74(4):691–705.
21. Hayashi Y, Ishibashi H, Hashimoto K, Nakanishi H. Potentiation of the NMDA receptor-mediated responses through the activation of the glycine site by microglia secreting soluble factors. Glia. 2006;53(6):660–8.
22. Coull JA, Beggs S, Boudreau D, Boivin D, Tsuda M, Inoue K, et al. BDNF from microglia causes the shift in neuronal anion gradient underlying neuropathic pain. Nature. 2005; 438(7070):1017–21.
23. Pascual O, Ben Achour S, Rostaing P, Triller A, Bessis A. Microglia activation triggers astrocyte-mediated modulation of excitatory neurotransmission. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2012;109(4):E197–205.
24. Lenz KM, Nugent BM, Haliyur R, McCarthy MM. Microglia are essential to masculinization of brain and behavior. J Neurosci. 2013;33(7):2761–72.
25. Derecki NC, Cronk JC, Lu Z, Xu E, Abbott SB, Guyenet PG, et al. Wild-type microglia arrest pathology in a mouse model of Rett syndrome. Nature. 2012;484(7392):105–9.
26. Chen SK, Tvrdik P, Peden E, Cho S, Wu S, Spangrude G, et al. Hematopoietic origin of pathological grooming in Hoxb8 mutant mice. Cell. 2010;141(5):775–85.
27. Verkhratsky A, Krishtal OA, Burnstock G. Purinoceptors on neuroglia. Mol Neurobiol. 2009;39(3):190–208.
28. Franke H, Verkhratsky A, Burnstock G, Illes P. Pathophysiology of astroglial purinergic signalling. Purinerg Signal. 2012;8(3):629–57.
29. Pelegrin P, Surprenant A. The P2X(7) receptor-pannexin connection to dye uptake and IL-1beta release. Purinerg Signal. 2009;5(2):129–37.
30. Haas S, Brockhaus J, Verkhratsky A, Kettenmann H. ATP-induced membrane currents in ameboid microglia acutely isolated from mouse brain slices. Neuroscience. 1996;75(1):257–61.
31. Ferrari D, Villalba M, Chiozzi P, Falzoni S, Ricciardi-Castagnoli P, Di Virgilio F. Mouse microglial cells express a plasma membrane pore gated by extracellular ATP. J Immunol. 1996;156(4):1531–9.
32. Sperlagh B, Vizi ES, Wirkner K, Illes P. $P2X_7$ receptors in the nervous system. Prog Neurobiol. 2006;78(6):327–46.

33. Sanz JM, Chiozzi P, Ferrari D, Colaianna M, Idzko M, Falzoni S, et al. Activation of microglia by amyloid β requires $P2X_7$ receptor expression. J Immunol. 2009;182(7):4378–85.
34. Monif M, Reid CA, Powell KL, Smart ML, Williams DA. The $P2X_7$ receptor drives microglial activation and proliferation: a trophic role for $P2X_7R$ pore. J Neurosci. 2009;29(12):3781–91.
35. Tsuda M, Shigemoto-Mogami Y, Koizumi S, Mizokoshi A, Kohsaka S, Salter MW, et al. $P2X_4$ receptors induced in spinal microglia gate tactile allodynia after nerve injury. Nature. 2003; 424(6950):778–83.
36. Inoue K, Tsuda M. Microglia and neuropathic pain. Glia. 2009;57:1469–79.
37. Toescu EC, Moller T, Kettenmann H, Verkhratsky A. Long-term activation of capacitative Ca^{2+} entry in mouse microglial cells. Neuroscience. 1998;86(3):925–35.
38. Koizumi S, Shigemoto-Mogami Y, Nasu-Tada K, Shinozaki Y, Ohsawa K, Tsuda M, et al. UDP acting at P2Y6 receptors is a mediator of microglial phagocytosis. Nature. 2007;446(7139): 1091–5.
39. Ohsawa K, Irino Y, Sanagi T, Nakamura Y, Suzuki E, Inoue K, et al. $P2Y_{12}$ receptor-mediated integrin-beta1 activation regulates microglial process extension induced by ATP. Glia. 2010;58:790–801.
40. Noda M, Nakanishi H, Nabekura J, Akaike N. AMPA-kainate subtypes of glutamate receptor in rat cerebral microglia. J Neurosci. 2000;20(1):251–8.
41. Yamada J, Sawada M, Nakanishi H. Cell cycle-dependent regulation of kainate-induced inward currents in microglia. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2006;349(3):913–9.
42. Kaindl AM, Degos V, Peineau S, Gouadon E, Chhor V, Loron G, et al. Activation of microglial N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors triggers inflammation and neuronal cell death in the developing and mature brain. Ann Neurol. 2012;72(4):536–49.
43. Taylor DL, Diemel LT, Cuzner ML, Pocock JM. Activation of group II metabotropic glutamate receptors underlies microglial reactivity and neurotoxicity following stimulation with chromogranin A, a peptide up-regulated in Alzheimer's disease. J Neurochem. 2002;82(5):1179–91.
44. Taylor DL, Diemel LT, Pocock JM. Activation of microglial group III metabotropic glutamate receptors protects neurons against microglial neurotoxicity. J Neurosci. 2003;23(6):2150–60.
45. Kuhn SA, van Landeghem FK, Zacharias R, Farber K, Rappert A, Pavlovic S, et al. Microglia express $GABA_B$ receptors to modulate interleukin release. Mol Cell Neurosci. 2004;25(2): 312–22.
46. Fritz JH, Ferrero RL, Philpott DJ, Girardin SE. Nod-like proteins in immunity, inflammation and disease. Nat Immunol. 2006;7(12):1250–7.
47. Palm NW, Medzhitov R. Pattern recognition receptors and control of adaptive immunity. Immunol Rev. 2009;227(1):221–33.
48. Sansonetti PJ. The innate signaling of dangers and the dangers of innate signaling. Nat Immunol. 2006;7(12):1237–42.
49. Hansson GK, Edfeldt K. Toll to be paid at the gateway to the vessel wall. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2005;25(6):1085–7.
50. Leulier F, Lemaitre B. Toll-like receptors – taking an evolutionary approach. Nat Rev Genet. 2008;9(3):165–78.
51. Bsibsi M, Ravid R, Gveric D, van Noort JM. Broad expression of Toll-like receptors in the human central nervous system. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2002;61(11):1013–21.
52. Ebert S, Zeretzke M, Nau R, Michel U. Microglial cells and peritoneal macrophages release activin A upon stimulation with Toll-like receptor agonists. Neurosci Lett. 2007;413(3):241–4.
53. Gurley C, Nichols J, Liu S, Phulwani NK, Esen N, Kielian T. Microglia and astrocyte activation by toll-like receptor ligands: modulation by PPAR-gamma agonists. PPAR Res. 2008;2008:453120.
54. Lee SJ, Lee S. Toll-like receptors and inflammation in the CNS. Curr Drug Targets Inflamm Allergy. 2002;1(2):181–91.
55. Qin J, Qian Y, Yao J, Grace C, Li X. SIGIRR inhibits interleukin-1 receptor- and toll-like receptor 4-mediated signaling through different mechanisms. J Biol Chem. 2005;280(26): 25233–41.
56. Town T, Jeng D, Alexopoulou L, Tan J, Flavell RA. Microglia recognize double-stranded RNA via TLR3. J Immunol. 2006;176(6):3804–12.
57. Akira S, Takeda K. Toll-like receptor signalling. Nat Rev Immunol. 2004;4(7):499–511.

58. Aravalli RN, Peterson PK, Lokensgard JR. Toll-like receptors in defense and damage of the central nervous system. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2007;2(4):297–312.
59. Carpentier PA, Duncan DS, Miller SD. Glial toll-like receptor signaling in central nervous system infection and autoimmunity. Brain Behav Immun. 2008;22(2):140–7.
60. Olson JK, Miller SD. Microglia initiate central nervous system innate and adaptive immune responses through multiple TLRs. J Immunol. 2004;173(6):3916–24.
61. Biber K, Vinet J, Boddeke HW. Neuron-microglia signaling: chemokines as versatile messengers. J Neuroimmunol. 2008;198(1–2):69–74.
62. Ransohoff RM, Perry VH. Microglial physiology: unique stimuli, specialized responses. Annu Rev Immunol. 2009;27:119–45.
63. van Rossum D, Hanisch UK. Microglia. Metab Brain Dis. 2004;19(3–4):393–411.
64. Yamada J, Hayashi Y, Jinno S, Wu Z, Inoue K, Kohsaka S, et al. Reduced synaptic activity precedes synaptic stripping in vagal motoneurons after axotomy. Glia. 2008;56(13):1448–62.
65. Kettenmann H, Kirchhoff F, Verkhratsky A. Microglia: new roles for the synaptic stripper. Neuron. 2013;77(1):10–8.
66. Cho BP, Song DY, Sugama S, Shin DH, Shimizu Y, Kim SS, et al. Pathological dynamics of activated microglia following medial forebrain bundle transaction. Glia. 2006;53(1):92–102.
67. Ladeby R, Wirenfeldt M, Garcia-Ovejero D, Fenger C, Dissing-Olesen L, Dalmau I, et al. Microglial cell population dynamics in the injured adult central nervous system. Brain Res Brain Res Rev. 2005;48(2):196–206.
68. Raivich G, Bohatschek M, Kloss CU, Werner A, Jones LL, Kreutzberg GW. Neuroglial activation repertoire in the injured brain: graded response, molecular mechanisms and cues to physiological function. Brain Res Brain Res Rev. 1999;30(1):77–105.
69. Boucsein C, Kettenmann H, Nolte C. Electrophysiological properties of microglial cells in normal and pathologic rat brain slices. Eur J Neurosci. 2000;12(6):2049–58.
70. Boucsein C, Zacharias R, Farber K, Pavlovic S, Hanisch UK, Kettenmann H. Purinergic receptors on microglial cells: functional expression in acute brain slices and modulation of microglial activation in vitro. Eur J Neurosci. 2003;17(11):2267–76.
71. Moller T, Kann O, Verkhratsky A, Kettenmann H. Activation of mouse microglial cells affects P2 receptor signaling. Brain Res. 2000;853(1):49–59.
72. Chhor V, Le Charpentier T, Lebon S, Ore MV, Celador IL, Josserand J, et al. Characterization of phenotype markers and neuronotoxic potential of polarised primary microglia in vitro. Brain Behav Immun. 2013;32:70–85.
73. Liao B, Zhao W, Beers DR, Henkel JS, Appel SH. Transformation from a neuroprotective to a neurotoxic microglial phenotype in a mouse model of ALS. Exp Neurol. 2012;237(1):147–52.
74. Mosser DM, Edwards JP. Exploring the full spectrum of macrophage activation. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8(12):958–69.
75. Martinez FO, Helming L, Gordon S. Alternative activation of macrophages: an immunologic functional perspective. Annu Rev Immunol. 2009;27:451–83.
76. Perry VH, Nicoll JA, Holmes C. Microglia in neurodegenerative disease. Nat Rev Neurol. 2010;6(4):193–201.
77. Beschorner R, Dietz K, Schauer N, Mittelbronn M, Schluesener HJ, Trautmann K, et al. Expression of EAAT1 reflects a possible neuroprotective function of reactive astrocytes and activated microglia following human traumatic brain injury. Histol Histopathol. 2007;22(5):515–26.
78. van Landeghem FK, Stover JF, Bechmann I, Bruck W, Unterberg A, Buhrer C, et al. Early expression of glutamate transporter proteins in ramified microglia after controlled cortical impact injury in the rat. Glia. 2001;35(3):167–79.
79. Gomes C, Ferreira R, George J, Sanches R, Rodrigues DI, Goncalves N, et al. Activation of microglial cells triggers a release of brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) inducing their proliferation in an adenosine A2A receptor-dependent manner: A2A receptor blockade prevents BDNF release and proliferation of microglia. J Neuroinflammation. 2013;10:16.
80. Heese K, Fiebich BL, Bauer J, Otten U. Nerve growth factor (NGF) expression in rat microglia is induced by adenosine A2a-receptors. Neurosci Lett. 1997;231(2):83–6.

Inflammation and the Pathophysiology of Astrocytes in Neurodegenerative Diseases

Gordon P. Meares and Etty N. Benveniste

Abstract Astrocytes, the most abundant cell in the central nervous system, are essential for brain function and homeostasis. This chapter focuses on the immunological role of astrocytes in the pathology of major neurodegenerative diseases. Astrocyte activation, or astrogliosis, has been observed in many neurodegenerative diseases. Factors associated with neurodegeneration including extracellular oligomerized proteins such as amyloid β and α-synuclein as well as inflammatory cytokines and chemokines can influence the functionality of astrocytes. In response to such stimuli, astrocytes produce a multitude of soluble factors including cytokines, chemokines, reactive oxygen/nitrogen species, and growth factors. This astrocytic response is initially protective, limiting damage and promoting functional recovery. However, the prolonged and progressive nature of neurodegenerative diseases establishes an environment in which astrogliosis may be aberrantly sustained, and the ongoing production of astrocyte-derived molecules contributes to the non-resolving inflammatory and neurotoxic landscape associated with neurodegeneration.

Keywords Astrocyte • Glia • Microglia • Inflammation • Cytokine • Chemokine • Interleukin • Interferon

G.P. Meares, Ph.D. (✉)
Department of Cell, Developmental and Integrative Biology, University of Alabama at Birmingham, 1918 University Boulevard, MCLM 388, Birmingham, AL 35294-0006, USA
e-mail: mearegp@uab.edu

E.N. Benveniste, Ph.D.
Department of Cell, Developmental and Integrative Biology,
1900 University Boulevard, THT 926A, Birmingham, AL 35294-0006, USA
e-mail: tika@uab.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_4, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

Abbreviations

6-OHDA	6-hydroxydopamine
AD	Alzheimer's disease
ALS	Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
Aβ	Amyloid β
BBB	Blood–brain barrier
BDNF	Brain-derived neurotrophic factor
CNS	Central nervous system
DAMP	Damage-associated molecular pattern
GDNF	Glial-derived neurotrophic factor
GFAP	Glial fibrillary acidic protein
HD	Huntington's disease
IFN	Interferon
ISG	Interferon-stimulated genes
MHC	Major histocompatibility complex
MMP	Matrix metalloproteinase
MPTP	1-Methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine
MS	Multiple sclerosis
NFT	Neurofibrillary tangles
NF-κB	Nuclear factor-kappa B
NOD	Nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain
PGD2	Prostaglandin D2
PRR	Pattern recognition receptor
STAT	Signal transducer and activator of transcription
SN	Substantia nigra
SOD1	Superoxide dismutase 1
TBI	Traumatic brain injury
Th	T helper
TLR	Toll-like receptor

1 Introduction

Astrocytes are intriguing and remarkable cells controlling virtually every facet of central nervous system (CNS) functions. Astrocytes work together with neurons, microglia, oligodendrocytes, endothelial cells, and other cells to ensure harmonious function within the unique environment of the CNS. For example, astrocytes form the tripartite synapse where they take up glutamate as well as synthesize and release glutamine for use by neurons for conversion to glutamate, together ensuring proper neurotransmission. Additionally, astrocytes release trophic factors including brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), glial-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF), and others. Astrocyte end-feet interact with the neurovasculature and influence blood–brain barrier (BBB) function. The many diverse functions of astrocytes are too complex and

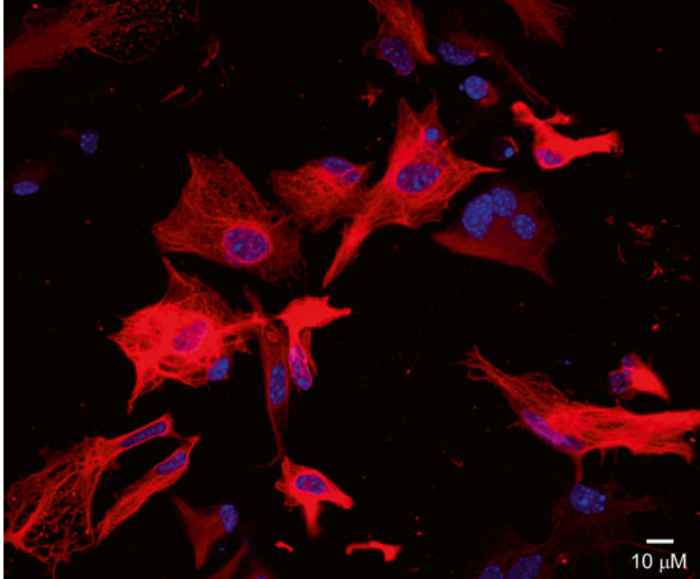


Fig. 1 GFAP expression in murine astrocytes. Astrocytes were isolated from the telencephalon of P1 pups and expanded in culture for 14 days. Cells were then stained for GFAP (*red*) and nuclei (DAPI, *blue*) and imaged by confocal microscopy. Notice the mesh-like network of GFAP

numerous to describe in detail here; however, there are a number of excellent reviews describing the phenotypic and functional characteristics of astrocytes [1–5].

The focus of this chapter is to describe the role of astrocytes in neuroinflammation in the context of neurodegenerative diseases. Microglia are typically thought of as the main innate immunity effector cell in the CNS because of their macrophage-like phenotype, robust inflammatory responses, and ability to present antigen via major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II. It is now appreciated that astrocytes have important innate immune functions as well [6]. In response to injury, infection, disease, or any disturbance, astrocytes undergo a phenotypic change known as astrogliosis. Widely characterized as the increased expression of the intermediate filament protein glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP), astrogliosis involves a host of transcriptional, translational, and phenotypic changes aimed at resolving and limiting damage to the CNS [2]. GFAP is expressed at variable levels in unstimulated astrocytes and forms a fibrous network typical of cytoskeletal proteins (Fig. 1). Additionally, astrocytes express pattern recognition receptors (PRR), although their repertoire is more restricted than that of microglia. Toll-like receptors (TLRs) recognize pathogen-associated molecular patterns and astrocytes express TLR2, TLR3, TLR4, TLR5, and TLR9. TLR3, which recognizes double-stranded RNA, appears to be the most abundant TLR expressed by astrocytes [6]. In addition, astrocytes express nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain (NOD) proteins that recognize bacterial components [7]. Astrocytes can also sense and respond to damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) such as ATP through purinergic receptors and the multi-protein NLRP2

inflammasome [8, 9]. Astrocytes respond to interferons (IFN) and a wide array of cytokines and chemokines. When stimulated, astrocytes in turn produce many cytokines and chemokines including IL-1, IL-6, LIF, CNTF, IL-8, IL-10, IFN-α, IFN-β, M-CSF, GM-CSF, TNF-α, TGF-β, CCL2, CCL3, CCL4, CCL5, CCL20, CXCL10, and CXCL12 [10–12]. In addition, inflammatory stimulation of astrocytes can lead to the production of the free radical nitric oxide (NO) which is toxic to neurons and oligodendrocytes and may promote neurodegeneration [13]. While astrocytes contribute to the local inflammatory response, they are also essential to limit and resolve CNS inflammation. Following traumatic brain injury (TBI), as well as other insults, astrocytes proliferate and form a glial scar around the injury [2]. The selective ablation of proliferating astrocytes following TBI in mice results in a prolonged inflammatory response and increased neuronal degeneration [14]. In acute conditions such as injury or infection, the astrocytic response is paramount to reestablish homeostasis in the CNS. However, in chronic conditions such as neurodegenerative diseases, astrocytes may eventually contribute to pathology.

2 Astrocytes in Multiple Sclerosis

Multiple sclerosis (MS) is a debilitating T cell-mediated autoimmune disease in which leukocytes (T cells, macrophages, neutrophils, and others) invade the CNS, leading to demyelination and axonal degeneration, eventually resulting in permanent disability. The etiology of MS is complex, involving genetic, environmental, and geographic factors, and usually develops in young adults (20–40 years of age) with a bias toward females [15]. MS initially manifests as highly variable transient episodes disrupting sensory and/or motor function, followed by full or partial recovery and disease remission (relapsing-remitting MS). In conjunction with symptoms, inflammatory lesions are also observed in the brain and spinal cord. MS lesions are areas of demyelination and inflammation involving invading peripheral leukocytes as well as resident glial cells. Cytokines and chemokines are key players in this inflammatory attack. Cytokines including IFN-γ, IL-17, and IL-6 are elevated in MS lesions as are the C-C chemokines CCL2, CCL3, CCL4, CCL5, CCL7, and CXCL12 [16–18]. MS patients have multiple attacks causing incremental damage to the CNS, and many patients progress to secondary progressive MS, where remission and recovery are reduced [19, 20]. Additionally, cognitive impairment is observed in at least 50 % of MS patients, contributing to disability and reduced quality of life [21]. Treatments for MS including IFN-β, glatiramer acetate, fingolimod, and others have greatly improved the quality of life for many MS patients; however, not all patients respond to or can tolerate these treatments [22, 23]. As such, new therapeutic targets for the treatment of MS are greatly needed.

The animal model of MS, experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE), has greatly facilitated understanding the immunological interactions with the CNS. Although EAE is by no means a perfect replica of human MS, it shares many similar pathological features. EAE can be induced in a number of animals including nonhuman primates, rabbits, guinea pigs, hamsters, rats, and mice with an array of

protocols and CNS antigens [24, 25]. Most current research utilizes the murine model. EAE, like MS, is a demyelinating disease involving perivascular infiltration of peripheral immune cells and axonal degeneration, manifesting with physical symptoms in a relapsing-remitting and/or progressive fashion. T helper (Th) cells, specifically IFN-γ-producing Th1 cells and IL-17-producing Th17 cells, are the main effector cells in the initiation of EAE [26].

In postmortem studies of MS lesions, markers of Th1 and Th17 cells have been described, among other cell types [27]. Coincident with infiltration of leukocytes, astrocyte damage and hypertrophy have been observed in MS lesions [28]. Moreover, astrogliosis is present in the CNS of MS patients [1]. These examples highlight an abundance of data that suggest astrocytes are important players in the pathogenesis of MS. This has been supported by studies in EAE. Astrocyte activation, as measured by GFAP expression, correlates with or precedes the onset of clinical symptoms [29–31]. Additionally, there is astrocyte proliferation within the white matter of the spinal cord [32]. Astrocytes in MS and EAE produce the potent leukocyte-attracting chemokines CCL2 [33, 34] and CCL20 [12, 35] among others, and disruption of either of the receptors for these chemokines, CCR2 and CCR6, respectively, results in amelioration of EAE [36, 37]. While astrocytes produce chemoattractants, they also form a barrier around perivascular lesions in EAE to block further leukocyte infiltration into the healthy parenchyma [38]. IL-6 is a multifaceted proinflammatory cytokine that is elevated in the CNS following injury or in diseases including MS [39]. Astrocytes are a major source of endogenous IL-6 in the CNS, and IL-6 drives its own expression through autocrine signaling in conjunction with the soluble IL-6 receptor (trans-signaling) [40, 41]. Transgenic mice expressing IL-6 under the control of the GFAP promoter alters EAE disease such that inflammatory leukocytes invade mainly the cerebellum rather than the spinal cord [42]. Disruption of gp130, the common signal-transducing receptor for the IL-6 family of cytokines, in astrocytes leads to exacerbated EAE, indicating that astrocytes also have a key role in limiting disease [43]. Additionally, the importance of astrocytes in EAE was further established in a recent study which demonstrated that intact IL-17 signaling in astrocytes is required for induction of disease [44]. Moreover, IL-17 enhances IL-6-induced IL-6 and CCL20 expression in astrocytes [45, 46]. This likely reflects the cooperative actions of the IL-6-induced transcription factor STAT3 and the IL-17-induced transcription factor NF-κB [47, 48]. Disruption of NF-κB activity in astrocytes ameliorates CNS inflammation and EAE disease severity [49, 50]. In MS and EAE, Th1 cells and Th17 cells contribute to the pathogenesis of disease. However, IL-4-producing Th2 cells and T regulatory cells (Tregs) are protective in EAE models [51, 52]. Thus, the repertoire of T cells interacting with the CNS is critical to the outcome of disease, and astrocytes influence this through production of chemoattractant molecules. For example, during EAE, astrocytes produce CXCL10 which recruits T cells, the monocyte chemoattractant CCL2, as well as CCL20 that can recruit both Th17 cells and Tregs [34, 35, 53, 54]. Additionally, as nonprofessional antigen-presenting cells, astrocytes, in an IFN-γ-inducible fashion, can express major histocompatibility complex (MHC class II) and present myelin-derived autoantigens to encephalitogenic T cells [55–57], potentially providing a stimulus for reactivation of T cells in the CNS. Collectively, these studies indicate that astrocytes are active participants in MS and EAE pathology and are potential therapeutic targets.

3 Astrocytes in Alzheimer's Disease

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is a progressive neurodegenerative disease that robs individuals of their memory and reduces cognitive function. Extracellular amyloid β (Aβ) deposition and tau-containing neurofibrillary tangles (NFTs) are hallmarks of AD pathology [58]. However, beginning with Alois Alzheimer's initial description of AD more than 100 years ago, alterations in glial cells have also been appreciated [59]. Upon postmortem analysis, brains from patients with AD display clear astrogliosis, and the levels of GFAP inversely correlate with cognitive function [60, 61]. Astrocytes influence several features of AD. Astrocytes are thought to phagocytosis Aβ [62], and blockade of astrocyte activation in a transgenic AD mouse model increases Aβ plaque burden [63]. The exact mechanisms leading to gliosis in AD is not well understood. Fibrillar Aβ1-42 can stimulate pattern recognition receptors, including the lipopolysaccharide (LPS) coreceptor CD14 and the NOD-like receptor NALP3, leading to microglial activation and production of IL-1β [64, 65]. Similarly, astrocytes express TLRs and NLRs which may engage Aβ1-42 and promote astrogliosis, but this has not yet been formally demonstrated. However, several molecules have been implicated in mediating various astrocytic responses to Aβ including low-density lipoprotein receptors, aquaporin-4, adenosine A2A receptor, as well as the scavenger receptors CD36 and CD47 [66–69]. More recently, Aβ was shown to interact with the α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor and promote astrocytic glutamate release [70, 71]. While astrogliosis is initially beneficial, the long-term production of cytokines and chemokines may be deleterious and promote AD pathology.

Glial-derived IL-1 and IL-6 are important proinflammatory cytokines elevated in the brain of patients with AD [72, 73]. From animal studies, we have learned that these cytokines may be active participants in AD pathology. Transgenic AD mice (Tg2576) that express an APP mutant associated with early onset familial AD have increased IL-6 in the brain that precedes detectable Aβ plaques [74]. Moreover, IL-6 expression, in the same transgenic mouse model, persists into the established disease state with IL-6-producing astrocytes observed near Aβ deposits [75]. Mice overexpressing IL-6 in astrocytes have learning defects, suggesting that IL-6 may exacerbate cognitive decline [76]. Moreover, IL-1β directs astrocytes to produce IL-6 [77]. As mentioned previously, astrocytes are a potent source of chemokines that likely help to recruit and direct the peripheral monocytes observed in the AD brain [78]. Direct injection of IL-1β into the rat forebrain leads to prolonged astrocyte activation with concomitant increases in GABA and glutamate [79]. Elevated glutamate may be associated with the ability of Aβ1-42 to reduce astrocyte-dependent glutamate clearance [80]. Astrocytes stimulated with IL-1β also secrete S100B [81]. Secreted S100B has cytokine-like functions and at low concentrations is neurotrophic. However, extracellular S100B is elevated in neurological disorders including AD, and at higher concentrations S100B can promote neuronal cell death [82]. Further, antibody-mediated blockade of IL-1β in 3×Tg-AD mice, which express mutants of APP, presenilin, and tau, reduces S100B expression, tau pathology, and disease pathology [83, 84]. Nitric oxide may also play an important role in AD. Mixed glial cultures respond to Aβ peptides with increased production of IL-1β and TNF-α that leads to increased

expression of iNOS and synthesis of nitric oxide [85]. In AD astrocytes appear to be the main source of nitric oxide [86]. Nitric oxide is neurotoxic and may facilitate neurodegeneration in AD [87, 88]. Moreover, stimulation with the microglial- and astrocyte-derived cytokines IL-β, TNF-α, and IFN-γ can also stimulate nitric oxide production with subsequent neurotoxicity from astrocytes [89]. Astrocytes can also modulate microglial function through the production of soluble cytokines and chemokines. Astrocyte-produced S100B can stimulate activation of microglia that includes the production of IL-1β [90], potentially reinforcing or promoting astrogliosis. Additionally, inflammatory cytokines, as well as Aβ fibrils, can also stimulate astrocyte- and neuron-dependent APP expression and Aβ production [91–93]. Ultimately, the interactions between cytokines (particularly IL-1) with neurons, microglia, and astrocytes drive a cycle of inflammation and Aβ production that culminates in neurological dysfunction and cognitive decline [94].

4 Astrocytes in Parkinson's Disease

Parkinson's disease (PD) is characterized by the selective loss of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra (SN) and the associated physical manifestations. In addition to dopaminergic neurodegeneration, neuropathology includes the accumulation of α-synuclein-containing Lewy bodies, activated microglia, infiltrating $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells, and increased numbers of astrocytes surrounding dopaminergic neurons [95–97]. Elevated levels of cytokines including TNF-α, TGF-β1, IL-1β, IL-6, IL-2, IFN-γ, and reactive oxygen/nitrogen species are also observed in brains from PD patients [98]. These findings (and many others) indicate an ongoing, nonresolving inflammatory reaction in the brain of PD patients.

Several animal models suggest that inflammation is important in the pathogenesis of PD. Mice expressing human α-synuclein driven by the thy1 promoter display activated microglia and elevated TNF-α as early as 1 month of age in the striatum [99]. Importantly, the striatum contains axon terminals emanating from the SN as part of the nigrostriatal pathway. These findings support the idea that inflammation maybe a key participant in neurodegeneration and not just a consequence of tissue damage [99]. In toxin-induced models, including MPTP and 6-OHDA, inflammatory cytokines and activated microglia are present [100]. MPTP intoxication leads to prolonged (years) glial activation, suggesting glial cells are involved in the pathological outcome. Direct injection of LPS is toxic to dopaminergic neurons [101], indicating that inflammation, even in the absence of disease, can recapitulate the cell death seen in PD. Additionally, LPS can synergize with MPTP to induce dopaminergic neuronal cell death in neuron-glia cocultures [102]. LPS-induced neuronal death is likely indirect. In support of this are in vitro studies demonstrating that microglia and astrocytes work in concert to drive neurotoxicity in response to LPS [103].

Astrocyte accumulation of α-synuclein is observed in the PD brain [104], and recent findings suggest that α-synuclein can be transmitted from neurons to surrounding cells [105]. Indeed, astrocytes can take up α-synuclein via endocytosis. Not only do astrocytes take up α-synuclein, but an inflammatory reaction is stimu-

lated that includes production of IL-6 and TNF-α as well as chemokines and matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) [105]. Moreover, transgenic mice expressing a mutant α-synuclein associated with familial PD, A53T α-synuclein, in astrocytes display paralysis and mortality. This is associated with widespread gliosis and increased expression of TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6 in the brainstem. Conditioned media from the A53T α-synuclein-expressing astrocytes stimulated IL-1β and Cox1 expression in microglia [106]. These findings suggest that the effects of α-synuclein on astrocytes may contribute to the pathology of PD.

Astrocytes can have both protective and neurotoxic effects. Alpha-synuclein can enhance IL-1β-induced CXCL10 expression in astroglial cultures through mRNA stabilization [107]. CXCL10 is toxic to neurons; this has been demonstrated in the cholinergic LAN-2 cell line and in mixed human fetal neurons [108, 109]. While the dark pigment found in the SN, neuromelanin, attenuates astrocyte-derived CXCL10 [107], the direct influence of CXCL10 on dopaminergic neurons has not been examined. Astrocyte expression of the antioxidant transcription factor nuclear factor erythroid 2-related factor 2 (Nrf2) in the Thy1-hSYN^{A53T} mice protects motor neurons, reduces synuclein aggregates in the brain and spinal cord, and enhances overall survival. Additionally, Nrf2 expression reduces gliosis [110].

The exact mechanisms responsible for activation of the glial reaction in PD are unknown. Gliosis is observed in PD patients and most animal models and once active a self-perpetuating inflammatory reaction may result. In adult macaques injected with MPTP, persistent astrogliosis is observed as well as elevated IFN-γ and TNF-α in the SN. Mice lacking either IFN-γ or TNF-α have attenuated gliosis following MPTP treatment [111].

Some mutations associated with familial forms of PD have been shown to alter inflammatory responses. Cortical slices from PINK1$^{-/-}$ mice have increased production of TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6 [112]. The cytokines produced suggest activation of microglia and astrocytes, although it should be noted that PINK$^{-/-}$ astrocytes are dysfunctional in their proliferative capacity and do not have elevated GFAP expression [113]. Astrocytes deficient for DJ-1 are more sensitive to LPS-induced inflammatory gene expression [114]. Mutations in Nurr1 are associated with a rare form of PD. Nurr1 suppresses inflammation in microglia and astrocytes through repression of NF-κB, and loss of Nurr1 enhances astrocyte-derived neurotoxic molecules [103]. This indicates that astrocytes are involved in both sporadic and familial PD.

5 Astrocytes in Huntington's Disease

In contrast to most neurodegenerative diseases in which the etiology is unknown, we know that Huntington's disease (HD) is caused by a CAG expansion (poly Q) in the huntingtin gene, leading to neuronal loss in the striatum and cortex [115, 116]. As with other neurodegenerative diseases, inflammation is likely a key player in HD. Immune activation is detectable in the periphery and CNS of HD patients. Elevated plasma levels of IL-6, IL-8, IL-4, IL-10, TNF-α, and IL-5 have been shown in HD patients compared to healthy controls. Similarly, IL-6 and IL-8 levels are elevated

in the CSF and in striatal tissue [117]. In addition to elevated cytokines, cellular alterations including microglial activation and astrogliosis are present in HD [118].

The role of astrocytes in HD is multifaceted, involving the production of inflammatory mediators as well as the potential loss of neuronal support. The expression of mutant huntingtin is not restricted to neurons; it is also expressed in astrocytes and peripherally. The targeted expression of mutant htt (160Q) in astrocytes leads to neurological and motor dysfunction [119], suggesting that astrocytes can directly influence HD pathology. A key function of astrocytes is to support neurons through the secretion of neurotrophins and buffering of extracellular glutamate. Evidence from HD mouse models suggests that astrocyte dysfunction may be an important aspect of the disease. Astrocytes produce BDNF, and this was found to be impaired in astrocytes expressing a mutant huntingtin fragment (htt552-100Q) [120]. Others have shown that astrocyte-produced BDNF provides therapeutic benefit. Astrocyte-targeted overexpression of BDNF attenuated quinolinate-induced lesions [121]. Additionally, viral delivery of BDNF driven by the GFAP promoter delayed disease progression in the R6/2 HD mouse model which expresses the 5′end of human huntingtin with 115-150 CAG repeats [122, 123]. Similarly, delivery of GDNF protects neurons and reduces disease severity [124, 125]. In vitro, astrocyte-conditioned media protect a striatal neuronal cell line expressing huntingtin Q111 from oxidative and excitotoxic cell death [126].

Evidence suggests that excitotoxic injury is an underlying mechanism of striatal neuronal loss in HD [127]. The uptake of glutamate, the main excitatory neurotransmitter, is impaired in the prefrontal cortex of HD patients [128]. Expression of mutant huntingtin in astrocytes reduces glutamate transporter expression and impairs the ability of astrocytes to take up glutamate. Moreover, in a coculture system, mutant htt-expressing astrocytes were less efficient at protecting neurons from glutamate-induced excitotoxicity [129]. In an in vivo model in which striatal astrocytes express mutant htt, reduced expression of glutamate transporters GLAST and GLT-1 as well as impaired glutamate uptake was observed. In addition, these mice displayed astrogliosis and neuronal dysfunction [130]. The ability of mutant htt to impair astrocyte-dependent glutamate handling may potentiate neuronal death in HD.

Despite evidence of microglial, astrocytic, and complement activation in the brains of HD patients, few studies have examined the contribution of glial cells to inflammation in HD [131]. In line with previous studies that mutant htt impairs astrocyte function, astrocytes from R6/2 mice express and secrete less CCL5 (RANTES). Impaired secretion results in aberrant accumulation of CCL5 in astrocytes and is observed in HD mouse models and in HD patients [132]. CCL5 has neurotrophic effects and its reduction may contribute to HD pathogenesis [132]. A recent study has examined the inflammatory responses in HD mice and astrocytes. In Hdh150Q mice, acute LPS treatment leads to enhanced TNF-α and IL-1β production in the cortex, striatum, and periphery [133]. Not only is the initial inflammatory reaction greater in the mutant htt mice, it is also prolonged. The enhanced inflammation was associated with excessive NF-κB activation in astrocytes. A single injection of LPS resulted in chronic inflammation and accelerated disease in the R6/2 mice. In addition, isolated R6/2 astrocytes stimulated with LPS produced higher levels of nitric oxide and were more toxic to isolated neurons [133].

6 Astrocytes in ALS

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) is caused by the selective degeneration of motor neurons resulting in progressive paralysis and premature death. In most cases, ALS is sporadic with unknown etiology. In a small number of cases, ALS is caused by mutations in the gene encoding superoxide dismutase 1 (SOD1). Through the use of SOD1 mutant mice, the mechanisms and cells involved in pathogenesis have been examined, and the non-cell autonomous processes involved in ALS have gained attention. Collectively, it appears that disease onset is determined by motor neurons, most likely through mutant SOD1-dependent damage; however, other cells including microglia and astrocytes are important in overall disease progression [134]. Consistently, ALS patients display activated microglia and astrocytes and increased expression of proinflammatory cytokines [135].

Glial activation is observed in the postmortem analysis of patients with ALS and in ALS animal models. It is likely that astrocytes and microglia work together, along with other cells types such as peripheral leukocytes, to modulate disease pathology. Using a SOD1^{G37R} mouse model in which mutant SOD1 could be deleted from astrocytes, Yamanaka and colleagues demonstrated that disease onset was unaffected, but disease progression was greatly attenuated [136]. Although astrogliosis, based on GFAP expression, was not reduced by astrocyte-selective ablation of SOD1^{G37R}, microgliosis was diminished. Concomitant with reduced microglial activation was a reduction in the expression of iNOS. These studies indicate that mutant SOD1-expressing astrocytes can influence disease progression in part through modulation of microglia [136]. Expression of SOD1^{G37R} in astrocytes elicits an inflammatory response and toxicity toward motor neurons in coculture. This includes elevated expression of iNOS and NOX2 with increased production of nitric oxide and reactive oxygen, respectively. The antioxidant apocynin attenuated astrocyte-produced ROS and motor neuron toxicity [137]. Accordingly, motor neurons are sensitive to NO-induced cell death, most likely through reaction with superoxide to form highly reactive peroxynitrite [138]. Additionally, astrocytes derived from both familial and sporadic ALS patients are toxic to motor neurons. This toxicity was associated with upregulation of a number of astrocyte-produced inflammatory molecules including several C-C and C-X-C chemokines, TNF and IL-8 [139]. Similarly, mutant SOD1-expressing mouse astrocytes are toxic to primary motor neurons in coculture [140]. Expression of SOD1^{G93A} alters inflammatory gene expression in astrocytes leading to upregulation of CCL8, CXCL7, and CCL5 [141]. In addition the prostaglandin D2 (PGD2) receptor was markedly increased. While these chemokines do not mediate the astrocyte-dependent toxicity toward motor neurons, blockade of the PGD2 receptor attenuated cell death, suggesting that prostaglandins may have role in motor neuron death [141].

IFN-γ has also been implicated in the demise of motor neurons. SOD1^{G93A}-expressing astrocytes produce IFN-γ, and antibody-mediated neutralization of IFN-γ blocks astrocyte-dependent toxicity toward motor neurons in this model [142]. The toxic effects of IFN-γ are mediated in part through stimulation of the TNF family member, LIGHT (TNFSF14), from motor neurons which binds the lymphotoxin-β

receptor (LT-βR) in an autocrine fashion, activating a pro-death signaling cascade. Consistent with a role for astrocytes in driving disease progression, deletion of LIGHT delays disease progress but not onset [142]. Type I IFNs may also have a role through stimulation of interferon-stimulated genes (ISGs) in astrocytes. ISG15 was reported to be elevated in human ALS and mouse spinal cords. Deletion of IFNAR1 delayed disease progress but not onset in SOD1G93A mice [143]. Thus, astrocyte-dependent production and responses to IFNs may have important roles in the progression of ALS.

7 Conclusions

Astrocytes have a key role in controlling inflammatory responses in the CNS (Fig. 2). Here, we have focused on astrocytes in only the most prevalent neurodegenerative diseases. It is worth noting that activated astrocytes and increased inflammatory cytokines are observed in many other neurodegenerative diseases including

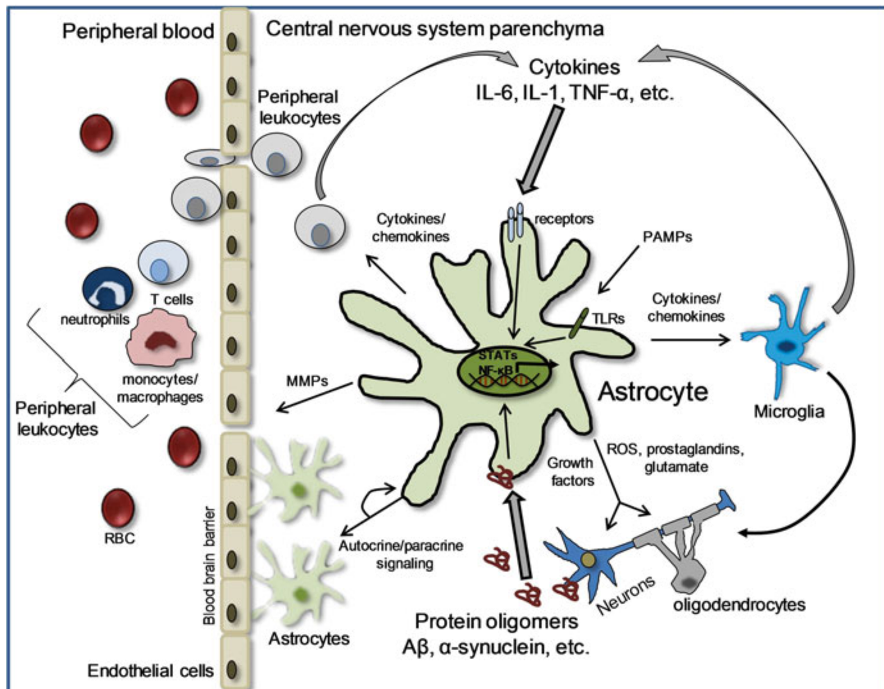


Fig. 2 Astrocytes orchestrate CNS inflammation. In neurodegenerative diseases, astrocytes respond to soluble factors including protein/peptide oligomers produced by neurons and inflammatory cytokines and chemokines produced by endogenous microglia and invading peripheral leukocytes. In response, astrocytes activate transcription factors such as NF-κB and STATs that leads to the production of a plethora of molecules which dictate the behavior and/or recruitment of the surrounding cells. The astrocyte-directed response may be beneficial through release of anti-inflammatory mediators and growth factors, or it may promote neurodegeneration through production of ROS and proinflammatory mediators

prion diseases [144] and lysosomal storage diseases [145]. While astrocytes have numerous beneficial functions [1–4, 6, 146–148], it seems that long-term perpetual stimulation, as likely occurs in neurodegenerative diseases, may exacerbate disease. Thus, we must continue to define the physiological and pathological functions of astrocytes as they may hold the key to new therapies.

Acknowledgments This work was supported in part by grants from the National Multiple Sclerosis Society (NMSS), CA-1059A-13 and RG-4885-A-14 to E.N.B. and TA-3050-A-1 to G.P.M., and NIH grants NS45290 and NS57563 (E.N.B.).

References

1. Sofroniew MV, Vinters HV. Astrocytes: biology and pathology. Acta Neuropathol. 2010;119(1):7–35. PubMed PMID: 20012068, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2799634.
2. Sofroniew MV. Molecular dissection of reactive astrogliosis and glial scar formation. Trends Neurosci. 2009;32(12):638–47. PubMed PMID: 19782411, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2787735.
3. Araque A, Parpura V, Sanzgiri RP, Haydon PG. Tripartite synapses: glia, the unacknowledged partner. Trends Neurosci. 1999;22(5):208–15. PubMed PMID: 10322493.
4. Pellerin L, Bouzier-Sore AK, Aubert A, Serres S, Merle M, Costalat R, et al. Activity-dependent regulation of energy metabolism by astrocytes: an update. Glia. 2007;55(12): 1251–62. PubMed PMID: 17659524.
5. Sofroniew MV. Multiple roles for astrocytes as effectors of cytokines and inflammatory mediators. Neuroscientist. 2014;20(2):160–72. PubMed PMID: 24106265, Pubmed Central PMCID: 24106265.
6. Farina C, Aloisi F, Meinl E. Astrocytes are active players in cerebral innate immunity. Trends Immunol. 2007;28(3):138–45. PubMed PMID: 17276138.
7. Sterka Jr D, Rati DM, Marriott I. Functional expression of NOD2, a novel pattern recognition receptor for bacterial motifs, in primary murine astrocytes. Glia. 2006;53(3):322–30. PubMed PMID: 16265673.
8. Minkiewicz J, de Rivero Vaccari JP, Keane RW. Human astrocytes express a novel NLRP2 inflammasome. Glia. 2013;61(7):1113–21. PubMed PMID: 23625868.
9. Franke H, Verkhratsky A, Burnstock G, Illes P. Pathophysiology of astroglial purinergic signalling. Purinergic Signal. 2012;8(3):629–57. PubMed PMID: 22544529, Pubmed Central PMCID: 22544529.
10. Oh JW, Schwiebert LM, Benveniste EN. Cytokine regulation of CC and CXC chemokine expression by human astrocytes. J Neurovirol. 1999;5(1):82–94. PubMed PMID: 10190694.
11. Dong Y, Benveniste EN. Immune function of astrocytes. Glia. 2001;36(2):180–90. PubMed PMID: 11596126, Pubmed Central PMCID: 11596126.
12. Ambrosini E, Remoli ME, Giacomini E, Rosicarelli B, Serafini B, Lande R, et al. Astrocytes produce dendritic cell-attracting chemokines in vitro and in multiple sclerosis lesions. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2005;64(8):706–15. PubMed PMID: 16106219.
13. Brown GC. Mechanisms of inflammatory neurodegeneration: iNOS and NADPH oxidase. Biochem Soc Trans. 2007;35(Pt 5):1119–21. PubMed PMID: 17956292, Pubmed Central PMCID: 17956292.
14. Bush TG, Puvanachandra N, Horner CH, Polito A, Ostenfeld T, Svendsen CN, et al. Leukocyte infiltration, neuronal degeneration, and neurite outgrowth after ablation of scar-forming, reactive astrocytes in adult transgenic mice. Neuron. 1999;23(2):297–308. PubMed PMID: 10399936.
15. Hauser SL, Oksenberg JR. The neurobiology of multiple sclerosis: genes, inflammation, and neurodegeneration. Neuron. 2006;52(1):61–76. PubMed PMID: 17015227, Pubmed Central PMCID: 17015227.

16. Steinman L. Nuanced roles of cytokines in three major human brain disorders. J Clin Invest. 2008;118(11):3557–63. PubMed PMID: 18982162, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2575716.
17. Ubogu EE, Cossoy MB, Ransohoff RM. The expression and function of chemokines involved in CNS inflammation. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2006;27(1):48–55. PubMed PMID: 16310865, Pubmed Central PMCID: 16310865.
18. Holman DW, Klein RS, Ransohoff RM. The blood-brain barrier, chemokines and multiple sclerosis. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2011;1812(2):220–30. PubMed PMID: 20692338, Pubmed Central PMCID: 20692338.
19. Steinman L. Multiple sclerosis: a two-stage disease. Nat Immunol. 2001;2(9):762–4. PubMed PMID: 11526378.
20. Frohman EM, Racke MK, Raine CS. Multiple sclerosis – the plaque and its pathogenesis. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(9):942–55. PubMed PMID: 16510748.
21. Amato MP, Portaccio E, Goretti B, Zipoli V, Hakiki B, Giannini M, et al. Cognitive impairment in early stages of multiple sclerosis. Neurol Sci. 2010;31 Suppl 2:S211–4. PubMed PMID: 20640466.
22. Miller AE, Rhoades RW. Treatment of relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis: current approaches and unmet needs. Curr Opin Neurol. 2012;25(Suppl):S4–10. PubMed PMID: 22398662, Pubmed Central PMCID: 22398662.
23. Gasperini C, Ruggieri S. Development of oral agent in the treatment of multiple sclerosis: how the first available oral therapy, fingolimod will change therapeutic paradigm approach. Drug Des Devel Ther. 2012;6:175–86. PubMed PMID: 22888218, Pubmed Central PMCID: 22888218.
24. Baxter AG. The origin and application of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Nat Rev Immunol. 2007;7(11):904–12. PubMed PMID: 17917672.
25. Stromnes IM, Goverman JM. Active induction of experimental allergic encephalomyelitis. Nat Protoc. 2006;1(4):1810–9. PubMed PMID: 17487163.
26. Fletcher JM, Lalor SJ, Sweeney CM, Tubridy N, Mills KH. T cells in multiple sclerosis and experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Clin Exp Immunol. 2010;162(1):1–11. PubMed PMID: 20682002, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2990924.
27. Lock C, Hermans G, Pedotti R, Brendolan A, Schadt E, Garren H, et al. Gene-microarray analysis of multiple sclerosis lesions yields new targets validated in autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Nat Med. 2002;8(5):500–8. PubMed PMID: 11984595.
28. Brosnan CF, Raine CS. The astrocyte in multiple sclerosis revisited. Glia. 2013;61(4):453–65. PubMed PMID: 23322421, Pubmed Central PMCID: 23322421.
29. Aquino DA, Shafit-Zagardo B, Brosnan CF, Norton WT. Expression of glial fibrillary acidic protein and neurofilament mRNA in gliosis induced by experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Neurochem. 1990;54(4):1398–404. PubMed PMID: 1690269, Pubmed Central PMCID: 1690269.
30. Tani M, Glabinski AR, Tuohy VK, Stoler MH, Estes ML, Ransohoff RM. In situ hybridization analysis of glial fibrillary acidic protein mRNA reveals evidence of biphasic astrocyte activation during acute experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Am J Pathol. 1996;148(3):889–96. PubMed PMID: 8774143, Pubmed Central PMCID: 8774143.
31. Luo J, Ho P, Steinman L, Wyss-Coray T. Bioluminescence in vivo imaging of autoimmune encephalomyelitis predicts disease. J Neuroinflammation. 2008;5:6. PubMed PMID: 18237444, Pubmed Central PMCID: 18237444.
32. Guo F, Maeda Y, Ma J, Delgado M, Sohn J, Miers L, et al. Macroglial plasticity and the origins of reactive astroglia in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Neurosci. 2011;31(33):11914–28. PubMed PMID: 21849552, Pubmed Central PMCID: 21849552.
33. Van Der Voorn P, Tekstra J, Beelen RH, Tensen CP, Van Der Valk P, De Groot CJ. Expression of MCP-1 by reactive astrocytes in demyelinating multiple sclerosis lesions. Am J Pathol. 1999;154(1):45–51. PubMed PMID: 9916917.
34. Ransohoff RM, Hamilton TA, Tani M, Stoler MH, Shick HE, Major JA, et al. Astrocyte expression of mRNA encoding cytokines IP-10 and JE/MCP-1 in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. FASEB J. 1993;7(6):592–600. PubMed PMID: 8472896.

35. Ambrosini E, Columba-Cabezas S, Serafini B, Muscella A, Aloisi F. Astrocytes are the major intracerebral source of macrophage inflammatory protein-3alpha/CCL20 in relapsing experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis and in vitro. Glia. 2003;41(3):290–300. PubMed PMID: 12528183.
36. Izikson L, Klein RS, Charo IF, Weiner HL, Luster AD. Resistance to experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in mice lacking the CC chemokine receptor (CCR)2. J Exp Med. 2000;192(7):1075–80. PubMed PMID: 11015448, Pubmed Central PMCID: PMC2193310.
37. Liston A, Kohler RE, Townley S, Haylock-Jacobs S, Comerford I, Caon AC, et al. Inhibition of CCR6 function reduces the severity of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis via effects on the priming phase of the immune response. J Immunol. 2009;182(5):3121–30. PubMed PMID: 19234209.
38. Voskuhl RR, Peterson RS, Song B, Ao Y, Morales LBJ, Tiwari-Woodruff S, et al. Reactive astrocytes form scar-like perivascular barriers to leukocytes during adaptive immune inflammation of the CNS. J Neurosci. 2009;29(37):11511–22. PubMed PMID: 19759299, Pubmed Central PMCID: 19759299.
39. Erta M, Quintana A, Hidalgo J. Interleukin-6, a major cytokine in the central nervous system. Int J Biol Sci. 2012;8(9):1254–66. PubMed PMID: 23136554, Pubmed Central PMCID: 23136554.
40. Van Wagoner NJ, Oh JW, Repovic P, Benveniste EN. Interleukin-6 (IL-6) production by astrocytes: autocrine regulation by IL-6 and the soluble IL-6 receptor. J Neurosci. 1999;19(13):5236–44. PubMed PMID: 10377335.
41. Mackiewicz A, Schooltink H, Heinrich PC, Rose-John S. Complex of soluble human IL-6-receptor/IL-6 up-regulates expression of acute-phase proteins. J Immunol. 1992;149(6): 2021–7. PubMed PMID: 1381393.
42. Quintana A, Müller M, Frausto RF, Ramos R, Getts DR, Sanz E, et al. Site-specific production of IL-6 in the central nervous system retargets and enhances the inflammatory response in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol. 2009;183(3):2079–88. PubMed PMID: 19597000.
43. Haroon F, Drogemuller K, Handel U, Brunn A, Reinhold D, Nishanth G, et al. Gp130-dependent astrocytic survival is critical for the control of autoimmune central nervous system inflammation. J Immunol. 2011;186(11):6521–31. PubMed PMID: 21515788.
44. Kang Z, Altuntas CZ, Gulen MF, Liu C, Giltiay N, Qin H, et al. Astrocyte-restricted ablation of interleukin-17-induced Act1-mediated signaling ameliorates autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Immunity. 2010;32(3):414–25. PubMed PMID: 20303295.
45. Ma X, Reynolds SL, Baker BJ, Li X, Benveniste EN, Qin H. IL-17 enhancement of the IL-6 signaling cascade in astrocytes. J Immunol. 2010;184(9):4898–906. PubMed PMID: 20351184.
46. Meares GP, Ma X, Qin H, Benveniste EN. Regulation of CCL20 expression in astrocytes by IL-6 and IL-17. Glia. 2012;60(5):771–81. PubMed PMID: 22319003, Pubmed Central PMCID: 22319003.
47. Gaffen SL. Structure and signalling in the IL-17 receptor family. Nat Rev Immunol. 2009;9(8):556–67. PubMed PMID: 19575028.
48. Grivennikov SI, Karin M. Dangerous liaisons: STAT3 and NF-kappaB collaboration and crosstalk in cancer. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2010;21(1):11–9. PubMed PMID: 20018552, Pubmed Central PMCID: 20018552.
49. Brambilla R, Persaud T, Hu X, Karmally S, Shestopalov VI, Dvoriantchikova G, et al. Transgenic inhibition of astroglial NF-kappa B improves functional outcome in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by suppressing chronic central nervous system inflammation. J Immunol. 2009;182(5):2628–40. PubMed PMID: 19234157.
50. van Loo G, De Lorenzi R, Schmidt H, Huth M, Mildner A, Schmidt-Supprian M, et al. Inhibition of transcription factor NF-kappaB in the central nervous system ameliorates autoimmune encephalomyelitis in mice. Nat Immunol. 2006;7(9):954–61. PubMed PMID: 16892069.
51. Chitnis T, Khoury SJ. Cytokine shifts and tolerance in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Immunol Res. 2003;28(3):223–39. PubMed PMID: 14713716.

52. Zozulya AL, Wiendl H. The role of regulatory T cells in multiple sclerosis. Nat Clin Pract Neurol. 2008;4(7):384–98. PubMed PMID: 18578001.
53. Carter SL, Müller M, Manders PM, Campbell IL. Induction of the genes for Cxcl9 and Cxcl10 is dependent on IFN-gamma but shows differential cellular expression in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis and by astrocytes and microglia in vitro. Glia. 2007;55(16):1728–39. PubMed PMID: 17902170, Pubmed Central PMCID: 17902170.
54. Yamazaki T, Yang XO, Chung Y, Fukunaga A, Nurieva R, Pappu B, et al. CCR6 regulates the migration of inflammatory and regulatory T cells. J Immunol. 2008;181(12):8391–401. PubMed PMID: 19050256.
55. Fontana A, Fierz W, Wekerle H. Astrocytes present myelin basic protein to encephalitogenic T-cell lines. Nature. 1984;307(5948):273–6. PubMed PMID: 6198590.
56. Soos JM, Morrow J, Ashley TA, Szente BE, Bikoff EK, Zamvil SS. Astrocytes express elements of the class II endocytic pathway and process central nervous system autoantigen for presentation to encephalitogenic T cells. J Immunol. 1998;161(11):5959–66. PubMed PMID: 9834077.
57. Tan L, Gordon KB, Mueller JP, Matis LA, Miller SD. Presentation of proteolipid protein epitopes and B7-1-dependent activation of encephalitogenic T cells by IFN-gamma-activated SJL/J astrocytes. J Immunol. 1998;160(9):4271–9. PubMed PMID: 9574529.
58. Goedert M, Spillantini MG. A century of Alzheimer's disease. Science. 2006;314(5800):777–81. PubMed PMID: 17082447, Pubmed Central PMCID: 17082447.
59. Alzheimer A, Stelzmann RA, Schnitzlein HN, Murtagh FR. An English translation of Alzheimer's 1907 paper, "Uber eine eigenartige Erkankung der Hirnrinde". Clin Anat. 1995;8(6):429–31. PubMed PMID: 8713166.
60. Kashon ML, Ross GW, O'Callaghan JP, Miller DB, Petrovitch H, Burchfiel CM, et al. Associations of cortical astrogliosis with cognitive performance and dementia status. J Alzheimers Dis. 2004;6(6):595–604. discussion 73–81, PubMed PMID: 15665400.
61. Simpson JE, Ince PG, Lace G, Forster G, Shaw PJ, Matthews F, et al. Astrocyte phenotype in relation to Alzheimer-type pathology in the ageing brain. Neurobiol Aging. 2010;31(4):578–90. PubMed PMID: 18586353.
62. Wyss-Coray T, Loike JD, Brionne TC, Lu E, Anankov R, Yan F, et al. Adult mouse astrocytes degrade amyloid-beta in vitro and in situ. Nat Med. 2003;9(4):453–7. PubMed PMID: 12612547.
63. Kraft AW, Hu X, Yoon H, Yan P, Xiao Q, Wang Y, et al. Attenuating astrocyte activation accelerates plaque pathogenesis in APP/PS1 mice. FASEB J. 2013;27(1):187–98. PubMed PMID: 23038755, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3528309.
64. Halle A, Hornung V, Petzold GC, Stewart CR, Monks BG, Reinheckel T, et al. The NALP3 inflammasome is involved in the innate immune response to amyloid-beta. Nat Immunol. 2008;9(8):857–65. PubMed PMID: 18604209, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3101478.
65. Fassbender K, Walter S, Kühl S, Landmann R, Ishii K, Bertsch T, et al. The LPS receptor (CD14) links innate immunity with Alzheimer's disease. FASEB J. 2004;18(1):203–5. PubMed PMID: 14597556, Pubmed Central PMCID: 14597556.
66. Basak JM, Verghese PB, Yoon H, Kim J, Holtzman DM. Low-density lipoprotein receptor represents an apolipoprotein E-independent pathway of Aβ uptake and degradation by astrocytes. J Biol Chem. 2012;287(17):13959–71. PubMed PMID: 22383525, Pubmed Central PMCID: 22383525.
67. Yang W, Wu Q, Yuan C, Gao J, Xiao M, Gu M, et al. Aquaporin-4 mediates astrocyte response to β-amyloid. Mol Cell Neurosci. 2012;49(4):406–14. PubMed PMID: 22365952, Pubmed Central PMCID: 22365952.
68. Matos M, Augusto E, Machado NJ, dos Santos-Rodrigues A, Cunha RA, Agostinho P. Astrocytic adenosine A2A receptors control the amyloid-β peptide-induced decrease of glutamate uptake. J Alzheimers Dis. 2012;31(3):555–67. PubMed PMID: 22647260, Pubmed Central PMCID: 22647260.
69. Jones RS, Minogue AM, Connor TJ, Lynch MA. Amyloid-β-induced astrocytic phagocytosis is mediated by CD36, CD47 and RAGE. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2013;8(1):301–11. PubMed PMID: 23238794, Pubmed Central PMCID: 23238794.

70. Talantova M, Sanz-Blasco S, Zhang X, Xia P, Akhtar MW, Okamoto S-I, et al. Aβ induces astrocytic glutamate release, extrasynaptic NMDA receptor activation, and synaptic loss. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2013;110(27):E2518. PubMed PMID: 23776240, Pubmed Central PMCID: 23776240.
71. Wang HY, Lee DH, Davis CB, Shank RP. Amyloid peptide Abeta(1-42) binds selectively and with picomolar affinity to alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. J Neurochem. 2000;75(3):1155–61. PubMed PMID: 10936198, Pubmed Central PMCID: 10936198.
72. Griffin WS, Stanley LC, Ling C, White L, MacLeod V, Perrot LJ, et al. Brain interleukin 1 and S-100 immunoreactivity are elevated in Down syndrome and Alzheimer disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1989;86(19):7611–5. PubMed PMID: 2529544, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2529544.
73. Strauss S, Bauer J, Ganter U, Jonas U, Berger M, Volk B. Detection of interleukin-6 and alpha 2-macroglobulin immunoreactivity in cortex and hippocampus of Alzheimer's disease patients. Lab Invest. 1992;66(2):223–30. PubMed PMID: 1370967, Pubmed Central PMCID: 1370967.
74. Tehranian R, Hasanvan H, Iverfeldt K, Post C, Schultzberg M. Early induction of interleukin-6 mRNA in the hippocampus and cortex of APPsw transgenic mice Tg2576. Neurosci Lett. 2001;301(1):54–8. PubMed PMID: 11239715.
75. Benzing WC, Wujek JR, Ward EK, Shaffer D, Ashe KH, Younkin SG, et al. Evidence for glial-mediated inflammation in aged APP(SW) transgenic mice. Neurobiol Aging. 1999;20(6):581–9. PubMed PMID: 10674423.
76. Heyser CJ, Masliah E, Samimi A, Campbell IL, Gold LH. Progressive decline in avoidance learning paralleled by inflammatory neurodegeneration in transgenic mice expressing interleukin 6 in the brain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1997;94(4):1500–5. PubMed PMID: 9037082, Pubmed Central PMCID: 19820.
77. Benveniste EN, Sparacio SM, Norris JG, Grenett HE, Fuller GM. Induction and regulation of interleukin-6 gene expression in rat astrocytes. J Neuroimmunol. 1990;30(2–3):201–12. PubMed PMID: 2121800.
78. Rezai-Zadeh K, Gate D, Town T. CNS infiltration of peripheral immune cells: D-Day for neurodegenerative disease? J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2009;4(4):462–75. PubMed PMID: 19669892, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2773117.
79. Casamenti F, Prosperi C, Scali C, Giovannelli L, Colivicchi MA, Faussone-Pellegrini MS, et al. Interleukin-1beta activates forebrain glial cells and increases nitric oxide production and cortical glutamate and GABA release in vivo: implications for Alzheimer's disease. Neuroscience. 1999;91(3):831–42. PubMed PMID: 10391466.
80. Scimemi A, Meabon JS, Woltjer RL, Sullivan JM, Diamond JS, Cook DG. Amyloid-beta1-42 slows clearance of synaptically released glutamate by mislocalizing astrocytic GLT-1. J Neurosci. 2013;33(12):5312–8. PubMed PMID: 23516295.
81. de Souza DF, Leite MC, Quincozes-Santos A, Nardin P, Tortorelli LS, Rigo MM, et al. S100B secretion is stimulated by IL-1beta in glial cultures and hippocampal slices of rats: likely involvement of MAPK pathway. J Neuroimmunol. 2009;206(1–2):52–7. PubMed PMID: 19042033.
82. Sen J, Belli A. S100B in neuropathologic states: the CRP of the brain? J Neurosci Res. 2007;85(7):1373–80. PubMed PMID: 17348038, Pubmed Central PMCID: 17348038.
83. Kitazawa M, Cheng D, Tsukamoto MR, Koike MA, Wes PD, Vasilevko V, et al. Blocking IL-1 signaling rescues cognition, attenuates tau pathology, and restores neuronal beta-catenin pathway function in an Alzheimer's disease model. J Immunol. 2011;187(12):6539–49. PubMed PMID: 22095718.
84. Oddo S, Caccamo A, Shepherd JD, Murphy MP, Golde TE, Kayed R, et al. Triple-transgenic model of Alzheimer's disease with plaques and tangles: intracellular Abeta and synaptic dysfunction. Neuron. 2003;39(3):409–21. PubMed PMID: 12895417, Pubmed Central PMCID: 12895417.
85. Akama KT, Van Eldik LJ. Beta-amyloid stimulation of inducible nitric-oxide synthase in astrocytes is interleukin-1 beta- and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF alpha)-dependent, and involves a TNF alpha receptor-associated factor- and NF kappa B-inducing kinase-dependent signaling mechanism. J Biol Chem. 2000;275(11):7918–24. PubMed PMID: WOS:000085913300068.

86. Meda L, Baron P, Scarlato G. Glial activation in Alzheimer's disease: the role of Abeta and its associated proteins. Neurobiol Aging. 2001;22(6):885–93. PubMed PMID: 11754995.
87. Steinert JR, Chernova T, Forsythe ID. Nitric oxide signaling in brain function, dysfunction, and dementia. Neuroscientist. 2010;16(4):435–52. PubMed PMID: 20817920.
88. Abramov AY, Canevari L, Duchen MR. Beta-amyloid peptides induce mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative stress in astrocytes and death of neurons through activation of NADPH oxidase. J Neurosci. 2004;24(2):565–75. PubMed PMID: 14724257.
89. Brown GC, Bal-Price A. Inflammatory neurodegeneration mediated by nitric oxide, glutamate, and mitochondria. Mol Neurobiol. 2003;27(3):325–55. PubMed PMID: 12845153.
90. Liu L, Li Y, Van Eldik LJ, Griffin WST, Barger SW. S100B-induced microglial and neuronal IL-1 expression is mediated by cell type-specific transcription factors. J Neurochem. 2005;92(3):546–53. PubMed PMID: 15659225, Pubmed Central PMCID: 15659225.
91. Brugg B, Dubreuil YL, Huber G, Wollman EE, Delhaye-Bouchaud N, Mariani J. Inflammatory processes induce beta-amyloid precursor protein changes in mouse brain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1995;92(7):3032–5. PubMed PMID: 7708769, Pubmed Central PMCID: 7708769.
92. Blasko I, Veerhuis R, Stampfer-Kountchev M, Saurwein-Teissl M, Eikelenboom P, Grubeck-Loebenstein B. Costimulatory effects of interferon-gamma and interleukin-1beta or tumor necrosis factor alpha on the synthesis of Abeta1-40 and Abeta1-42 by human astrocytes. Neurobiol Dis. 2000;7(6 Pt B):682–9. PubMed PMID: 11114266, Pubmed Central PMCID: 11114266.
93. Zhao J, O'Connor T, Vassar R. The contribution of activated astrocytes to Aβ production: implications for Alzheimer's disease pathogenesis. J Neuroinflammation. 2011;8:150. PubMed PMID: 22047170, Pubmed Central PMCID: 22047170.
94. Griffin WS, Sheng JG, Royston MC, Gentleman SM, McKenzie JE, Graham DI, et al. Glial-neuronal interactions in Alzheimer's disease: the potential role of a 'cytokine cycle' in disease progression. Brain Pathol. 1998;8(1):65–72. PubMed PMID: 9458167, Pubmed Central PMCID: 9458167.
95. Braak H, Del Tredici K, Rub U, de Vos RA, Jansen Steur EN, Braak E. Staging of brain pathology related to sporadic Parkinson's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 2003;24(2):197–211. PubMed PMID: 12498954.
96. Brochard V, Combadiere B, Prigent A, Laouar Y, Perrin A, Beray-Berthat V, et al. Infiltration of CD4+ lymphocytes into the brain contributes to neurodegeneration in a mouse model of Parkinson disease. J Clin Invest. 2009;119(1):182–92. PubMed PMID: 19104149, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2613467.
97. Damier P, Hirsch EC, Zhang P, Agid Y, Javoy-Agid F. Glutathione peroxidase, glial cells and Parkinson's disease. Neuroscience. 1993;52(1):1–6. PubMed PMID: 8433802.
98. Hirsch EC, Hunot S. Neuroinflammation in Parkinson's disease: a target for neuroprotection? Lancet Neurol. 2009;8(4):382–97. PubMed PMID: 19296921.
99. Watson MB, Richter F, Lee SK, Gabby L, Wu J, Masliah E, et al. Regionally-specific microglial activation in young mice over-expressing human wildtype alpha-synuclein. Exp Neurol. 2012;237(2):318–34. PubMed PMID: 22750327, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3443323.
100. Barnum CJ, Tansey MG. Modeling neuroinflammatory pathogenesis of Parkinson's disease. Prog Brain Res. 2010;184:113–32. PubMed PMID: 20887872.
101. Herrera AJ, Castaño A, Venero JL, Cano J, Machado A. The single intranigral injection of LPS as a new model for studying the selective effects of inflammatory reactions on dopaminergic system. Neurobiol Dis. 2000;7(4):429–47. PubMed PMID: 10964613, Pubmed Central PMCID: 10964613.
102. Gao H-M, Liu B, Zhang W, Hong J-S. Synergistic dopaminergic neurotoxicity of MPTP and inflammogen lipopolysaccharide: relevance to the etiology of Parkinson's disease. FASEB J. 2003;17(13):1957–9. PubMed PMID: 12923073, Pubmed Central PMCID: 12923073.
103. Saijo K, Winner B, Carson CT, Collier JG, Boyer L, Rosenfeld MG, et al. A Nurr1/CoREST pathway in microglia and astrocytes protects dopaminergic neurons from inflammation-induced death. Cell. 2009;137(1):47–59. PubMed PMID: 19345186, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2754279.

104. Braak H, Sastre M, Del Tredici K. Development of alpha-synuclein immunoreactive astrocytes in the forebrain parallels stages of intraneuronal pathology in sporadic Parkinson's disease. Acta Neuropathol. 2007;114(3):231–41. PubMed PMID: 17576580.
105. Lee HJ, Suk JE, Patrick C, Bae EJ, Cho JH, Rho S, et al. Direct transfer of alpha-synuclein from neuron to astroglia causes inflammatory responses in synucleinopathies. J Biol Chem. 2010;285(12):9262–72. PubMed PMID: 20071342, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2838344.
106. Gu XL, Long CX, Sun L, Xie C, Lin X, Cai H. Astrocytic expression of Parkinson's disease-related A53T alpha-synuclein causes neurodegeneration in mice. Mol Brain. 2010;3:12. PubMed PMID: 20409326, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2873589.
107. Tousi NS, Buck DJ, Curtis JT, Davis RL. alpha-Synuclein potentiates interleukin-1beta-induced CXCL10 expression in human A172 astrocytoma cells. Neurosci Lett. 2012;507(2):133–6. PubMed PMID: 22178859, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3259703.
108. van Marle G, Henry S, Todoruk T, Sullivan A, Silva C, Rourke SB, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 Nef protein mediates neural cell death: a neurotoxic role for IP-10. Virology. 2004;329(2):302–18. PubMed PMID: 15518810.
109. Mehla R, Bivalkar-Mehla S, Nagarkatti M, Chauhan A. Programming of neurotoxic cofactor CXCL-10 in HIV-1-associated dementia: abrogation of CXCL-10-induced neuro-glial toxicity in vitro by PKC activator. J Neuroinflammation. 2012;9:239. PubMed PMID: 23078780, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3533742.
110. Gan L, Vargas MR, Johnson DA, Johnson JA. Astrocyte-specific overexpression of Nrf2 delays motor pathology and synuclein aggregation throughout the CNS in the alpha-synuclein mutant (A53T) mouse model. J Neurosci. 2012;32(49):17775–87. PubMed PMID: 23223297, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3539799.
111. Barcia C, Ros CM, Annese V, Gomez A, Ros-Bernal F, Aguado-Yera D, et al. IFN-gamma signaling, with the synergistic contribution of TNF-alpha, mediates cell specific microglial and astroglial activation in experimental models of Parkinson's disease. Cell Death Dis. 2011;2:e142. PubMed PMID: 21472005, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3122054.
112. Kim J, Byun JW, Choi I, Kim B, Jeong HK, Jou I, et al. PINK1 deficiency enhances inflammatory cytokine release from acutely prepared brain slices. Exp Neurobiol. 2013;22(1):38–44. PubMed PMID: 23585721, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3620457.
113. Choi I, Kim J, Jeong HK, Kim B, Jou I, Park SM, et al. PINK1 deficiency attenuates astrocyte proliferation through mitochondrial dysfunction, reduced AKT and increased p38 MAPK activation, and downregulation of EGFR. Glia. 2013;61(5):800–12. PubMed PMID: 23440919.
114. Waak J, Weber SS, Waldenmaier A, Gorner K, Alunni-Fabbroni M, Schell H, et al. Regulation of astrocyte inflammatory responses by the Parkinson's disease-associated gene DJ-1. FASEB J. 2009;23(8):2478–89. PubMed PMID: 19276172.
115. A novel gene containing a trinucleotide repeat that is expanded and unstable on Huntington's disease chromosomes. The Huntington's Disease Collaborative Research Group. Cell. 1993;72(6):971–83. PubMed PMID: 8458085. Pubmed Central PMCID: 8458085.
116. Ross CA, Tabrizi SJ. Huntington's disease: from molecular pathogenesis to clinical treatment. Lancet Neurol. 2011;10(1):83–98. PubMed PMID: 21163446, Pubmed Central PMCID: 21163446.
117. Bjorkqvist M, Wild EJ, Thiele J, Silvestroni A, Andre R, Lahiri N, et al. A novel pathogenic pathway of immune activation detectable before clinical onset in Huntington's disease. J Exp Med. 2008;205(8):1869–77. PubMed PMID: 18625748, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2525598.
118. Hsiao HY, Chern Y. Targeting glial cells to elucidate the pathogenesis of Huntington's disease. Mol Neurobiol. 2010;41(2–3):248–55. PubMed PMID: 20107928.
119. Bradford J, Shin J-Y, Roberts M, Wang C-E, Li X-J, Li S. Expression of mutant huntingtin in mouse brain astrocytes causes age-dependent neurological symptoms. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106(52):22480–5. PubMed PMID: 20018729, Pubmed Central PMCID: 20018729.
120. Wang L, Lin F, Wang J, Wu J, Han R, Zhu L, et al. Truncated N-terminal huntingtin fragment with expanded-polyglutamine (htt552-100Q) suppresses brain-derived neurotrophic factor transcription in astrocytes. Acta Biochim Biophys Sinica. 2012;44(3):249–58. PubMed PMID: 22234237.

121. Giralt A, Friedman HC, Caneda-Ferron B, Urban N, Moreno E, Rubio N, et al. BDNF regulation under GFAP promoter provides engineered astrocytes as a new approach for long-term protection in Huntington's disease. Gene Ther. 2010;17(10):1294–308. PubMed PMID: 20463759.
122. Arregui L, Benitez JA, Razgado LF, Vergara P, Segovia J. Adenoviral astrocyte-specific expression of BDNF in the striata of mice transgenic for Huntington's disease delays the onset of the motor phenotype. Cell Mol Neurobiol. 2011;31(8):1229–43. PubMed PMID: 21681558.
123. Mangiarini L, Sathasivam K, Seller M, Cozens B, Harper A, Hetherington C, et al. Exon 1 of the HD gene with an expanded CAG repeat is sufficient to cause a progressive neurological phenotype in transgenic mice. Cell. 1996;87(3):493–506. PubMed PMID: 8898202, Pubmed Central PMCID: 8898202.
124. Alberch J, Perez-Navarro E, Canals JM. Neuroprotection by neurotrophins and GDNF family members in the excitotoxic model of Huntington's disease. Brain Res Bull. 2002;57(6): 817–22. PubMed PMID: 12031278.
125. Ebert AD, Barber AE, Heins BM, Svendsen CN. Ex vivo delivery of GDNF maintains motor function and prevents neuronal loss in a transgenic mouse model of Huntington's disease. Exp Neurol. 2010;224(1):155–62. PubMed PMID: 20227407.
126. Ruiz C, Casarejos MJ, Gomez A, Solano R, de Yebenes JG, Mena MA. Protection by glia-conditioned medium in a cell model of Huntington disease. PLoS Curr. 2012;4: e4fbca54a2028b. PubMed PMID: 22919565, Pubmed Central PMCID: 22919565.
127. Raymond LA, Andre VM, Cepeda C, Gladding CM, Milnerwood AJ, Levine MS. Pathophysiology of Huntington's disease: time-dependent alterations in synaptic and receptor function. Neuroscience. 2011;198:252–73. PubMed PMID: 21907762, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3221774.
128. Hassel B, Tessler S, Faull RL, Emson PC. Glutamate uptake is reduced in prefrontal cortex in Huntington's disease. Neurochem Res. 2008;33(2):232–7. PubMed PMID: 17726644.
129. Shin JY, Fang ZH, Yu ZX, Wang CE, Li SH, Li XJ. Expression of mutant huntingtin in glial cells contributes to neuronal excitotoxicity. J Cell Biol. 2005;171(6):1001–12. PubMed PMID: 16365166, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2171327.
130. Faideau M, Kim J, Cormier K, Gilmore R, Welch M, Auregan G, et al. In vivo expression of polyglutamine-expanded huntingtin by mouse striatal astrocytes impairs glutamate transport: a correlation with Huntington's disease subjects. Hum Mol Genet. 2010;19(15):3053–67. PubMed PMID: 20494921, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2901144.
131. Soulet D, Cicchetti F. The role of immunity in Huntington's disease. Mol Psychiatr. 2011;16(9):889–902. PubMed PMID: 21519341.
132. Chou SY, Weng JY, Lai HL, Liao F, Sun SH, Tu PH, et al. Expanded-polyglutamine huntingtin protein suppresses the secretion and production of a chemokine (CCL5/RANTES) by astrocytes. J Neurosci. 2008;28(13):3277–90. PubMed PMID: 18367595.
133. Hsiao HY, Chen YC, Chen HM, Tu PH, Chern Y. A critical role of astrocyte-mediated nuclear factor-kappaB-dependent inflammation in Huntington's disease. Hum Mol Genet. 2013;22(9):1826–42. PubMed PMID: 23372043.
134. Ilieva H, Polymenidou M, Cleveland DW. Non-cell autonomous toxicity in neurodegenerative disorders: ALS and beyond. J Cell Biol. 2009;187(6):761–72. PubMed PMID: 19951898, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2806318.
135. Glass CK, Saijo K, Winner B, Marchetto MC, Gage FH. Mechanisms underlying inflammation in neurodegeneration. Cell. 2010;140(6):918–34. PubMed PMID: 20303880.
136. Yamanaka K, Chun SJ, Boillee S, Fujimori-Tonou N, Yamashita H, Gutmann DH, et al. Astrocytes as determinants of disease progression in inherited amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Nat Neurosci. 2008;11(3):251–3. PubMed PMID: 18246065, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3137510.
137. Marchetto MC, Muotri AR, Mu Y, Smith AM, Cezar GG, Gage FH. Non-cell-autonomous effect of human SOD1 G37R astrocytes on motor neurons derived from human embryonic stem cells. Cell Stem Cell. 2008;3(6):649–57. PubMed PMID: 19041781.

138. Estevez AG, Spear N, Manuel SM, Radi R, Henderson CE, Barbeito L, et al. Nitric oxide and superoxide contribute to motor neuron apoptosis induced by trophic factor deprivation. J Neurosci. 1998;18(3):923–31. PubMed PMID: 9437014.
139. Haidet-Phillips AM, Hester ME, Miranda CJ, Meyer K, Braun L, Frakes A, et al. Astrocytes from familial and sporadic ALS patients are toxic to motor neurons. Nat Biotechnol. 2011;29(9):824–8. PubMed PMID: 21832997, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3170425.
140. Nagai M, Re DB, Nagata T, Chalazonitis A, Jessell TM, Wichterle H, et al. Astrocytes expressing ALS-linked mutated SOD1 release factors selectively toxic to motor neurons. Nat Neurosci. 2007;10(5):615–22. PubMed PMID: 17435755.
141. Di Giorgio FP, Boulting GL, Bobrowicz S, Eggan KC. Human embryonic stem cell-derived motor neurons are sensitive to the toxic effect of glial cells carrying an ALS-causing mutation. Cell Stem Cell. 2008;3(6):637–48. PubMed PMID: 19041780.
142. Aebischer J, Cassina P, Otsmane B, Moumen A, Seilhean D, Meininger V, et al. IFNγ triggers a LIGHT-dependent selective death of motoneurons contributing to the non-cell-autonomous effects of mutant SOD1. Cell Death Differ. 2011;18(5):754–68. PubMed PMID: 21072055, Pubmed Central PMCID: 21072055.
143. Wang R, Yang B, Zhang D. Activation of interferon signaling pathways in spinal cord astrocytes from an ALS mouse model. Glia. 2011;59(6):946–58. PubMed PMID: 21446050, Pubmed Central PMCID: 21446050.
144. Van Everbroeck B, Dewulf E, Pals P, Lübke U, Martin J-J, Cras P. The role of cytokines, astrocytes, microglia and apoptosis in Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease. Neurobiol Aging. 2002;23(1):59–64. PubMed PMID: 11755020, Pubmed Central PMCID: 11755020.
145. Myerowitz R, Lawson D, Mizukami H, Mi Y, Tifft CJ, Proia RL. Molecular pathophysiology in Tay-Sachs and Sandhoff diseases as revealed by gene expression profiling. Hum Mol Gen. 2002;11(11):1343–50. PubMed PMID: 12019216, Pubmed Central PMCID: 12019216.
146. Ransom BR, Ransom CB. Astrocytes: multitalented stars of the central nervous system. Methods Mol Biol. 2012;814:3–7. PubMed PMID: 22144296, Pubmed Central PMCID: 22144296.
147. Liberto CM, Albrecht PJ, Herx LM, Yong VW, Levison SW. Pro-regenerative properties of cytokine-activated astrocytes. J Neurochem. 2004;89(5):1092–100. PubMed PMID: 15147501, Pubmed Central PMCID: 15147501.
148. Sofroniew MV. Reactive astrocytes in neural repair and protection. Neuroscientist. 2005;11(5):400–7. PubMed PMID: 16151042, Pubmed Central PMCID: 16151042.

Oxidative Stress, Neuroinflammation, and Neurodegeneration

Hui-Ming Gao, Hui Zhou, and Jau-Shyong Hong

Abstract Oxidative stress and chronic neuroinflammation are two intertwined key pathologic factors in brain aging and neurodegenerative diseases, such as Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases. As physiological signaling molecules, reactive oxygen species (ROS) play important roles in many biological processes. However, when excessive amounts of ROS overwhelm the antioxidant defense system, the resultant redox imbalance disrupts cellular integrity and functions. The brain is highly sensitive to oxidative stress. The failure of free radical-scavenging antioxidants in clinical trials demands new therapeutic strategies to block the major sources of oxidative stress in neurodegenerative diseases. While the mitochondrial electron transport chain is the major source of intracellular ROS, over-activated phagocytic NADPH oxidase (NOX2)—the major inflammatory oxidative enzyme—has been demonstrated as a prime mediator of chronic neurodegeneration in models of neurodegenerative diseases. Moreover, emerging evidence has suggested that dysregulated chronic neuroinflammation might be a driving force of decades-long neurodegenerative processes. Blockage of the crossroad of neuroinflammation and oxidative stress may have greater efficacy in the treatment for neurodegenerative diseases. Thus, targeting microglial NOX2 might become a disease-modifying therapeutic strategy for neurodegenerative diseases.

H.-M. Gao (✉)
Model Animal Research Center and MOE Key Laboratory of Model Animal for Disease Study, Nanjing University, Nanjing, Jiangsu 210061, China

Laboratory of Toxicology and Pharmacology, National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences/National Institutes of Health, Research Triangle Park, NC 27709, USA
e-mail: gaohm@nju.edu.cn; gao2@niehs.nih.gov

H. Zhou • J.-S. Hong, Ph.D.
Laboratory of Toxicology and Pharmacology, National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences/National Institutes of Health, Research Triangle Park, NC 27709, USA
e-mail: zhouhui@bjmu.edu.cn; hong3@niehs.nih.gov

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_5, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

Keywords Antioxidant • Microglia • Mitochondria • NADPH oxidase • Neuroinflammation • Neurodegenerative diseases • Neuroprotection • Oxidative stress • Reactive oxygen species

1 Introduction

Neurodegenerative diseases are a group of incurable, chronic, and degenerative disorders in the central nervous system (CNS). They are characterized by the gradual loss of neurons in discrete brain areas and consequent deficits in specific brain functions (e.g., cognition, memory, or movement). More than 36 million people worldwide suffer from Alzheimer's disease (AD) and Parkinson's disease (PD), the two most common neurodegenerative diseases. Ample evidence has implicated that oxidative stress (cytotoxic consequences of redox imbalance) and neuroinflammation (the inflammatory reaction in the CNS) are two co-conspirators in the pathology of chronic neurodegeneration in various neurodegenerative diseases [1, 2]. It is important to point out that neuroinflammation and oxidative stress are two substantially different pathological events in the disease process. However, one can be a cause of the other, and they interplay in the entire disease process. Therefore, inhibition of neuroinflammation may diminish oxidative stress and vice versa. It has been well documented that excessive activation of phagocytic NADPH oxidase (NOX2, the major superoxide-producing enzyme during inflammation) is an important contributor to the pathogenesis of neurodegenerative diseases. Thus, new interventions suppressing microglia over-activation, especially NOX2-derived oxidative stress, might hold therapeutic potential for currently incurable neurodegenerative diseases.

2 Oxidative Stress

Oxidative stress refers to the redox imbalance and its cytotoxic consequences. It happens when increased generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) overwhelms the antioxidant defense system disrupting cellular functions and integrity. At physiological levels, ROS serve as signaling molecules and play vital roles in many biological processes, such as cell growth and signaling, synthesis of biological molecules, posttranslational processing of proteins, the immune response, and metabolism [3, 4]. However, an excessive amount of ROS can oxidize proteins, nucleic acids, and lipids, thereby participating in aging and development of a diverse array of diseases, including obesity, diabetes, cancer, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disease, and neurodegenerative diseases.

3 The Brain Is Highly Sensitive to Oxidative Stress

Although representing only 2 % of the body weight, the brain consumes 20 % of the body's oxygen. The brain derives its energy almost exclusively from oxidative metabolism of the mitochondrial respiratory chain, which produces ATP and reduces oxygen to H_2O by the sequential addition of four H^+ and four electrons. The "leakage" of high-energy electrons along the mitochondrial electron transport chain generates superoxide free radical ($O_2\bullet^-$) and hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2, a non-radical oxidant). In the brain, nonenzymatic reaction of neurotransmitter catecholamines (e.g., epinephrine, norepinephrine, and dopamine) with oxygen forms highly cross-linked quinones and neuromelanin (a dark-colored granular pigment formed within dopamine and noradrenaline-containing neurons), when yielding reactive semiquinones, H_2O_2, and oxygen free radicals [5]. Intraneuronal metabolism of the neurotransmitter dopamine catalyzed by monoamine oxidase (MAO) yields H_2O_2. The activity of MAO increases with age [6]. Moreover, the substantia nigra (the major lesion area in PD) contains high concentrations of iron, which binds to neuromelanin and enhances hydroxyl radical (OH•) formation [7]. Thus, the high oxygen consumption, the high energy demand, and the oxidative metabolism of neurotransmitters lead to high production of ROS in the brain (Fig. 1).

The brain contains large amounts of polyunsaturated fatty acids whose double bonds within membranes allow easy removal of hydrogen atoms by ROS (e.g., OH•) and make the brain particularly vulnerable to free radical attack. Furthermore, numerous neurotransmitter systems are sensitive to ROS. Through direct interaction with neurotransmitter receptors and ion transport proteins (e.g., channels, pumps, and transporters) or alteration of ligand-receptor interactions after oxidation of lipids of cell membranes, ROS disrupt receptor activity, ionic homeostasis, and neurotransmission of adrenergic, dopaminergic, serotonergic, and GABAergic systems [8–10]. ROS impair mitochondria integrity, reduce ATP production, and increase mitochondria-derived ROS [11]. ROS-induced dysfunction of the ubiquitin-proteasome system (UPS) will reduce protein degradation, which in turn exaggerates the accumulation of abnormal proteins [11, 12]. ROS production and destructive effects of oxidative stress can be exacerbated by elevated cellular calcium, increased L-glutamine and excitotoxicity, protein aggregates, and neuroinflammation [1, 2, 13–15]. Collectively, high production of ROS, high sensitivity to ROS, moderate antioxidant defense (e.g., low level of catalase activity and only moderate amounts of superoxide dismutase and glutathione peroxidase in the brain), and a limited renewal and regenerative capacity of neurons render the brain especially susceptible to oxidative insults [1, 16] (Fig. 1). Indeed, diseased brain regions of patients with various neurodegenerative diseases reveal oxidative stress markers, such as lipid peroxidation, protein carbonyls, and reduction of glutathione levels [1, 2].

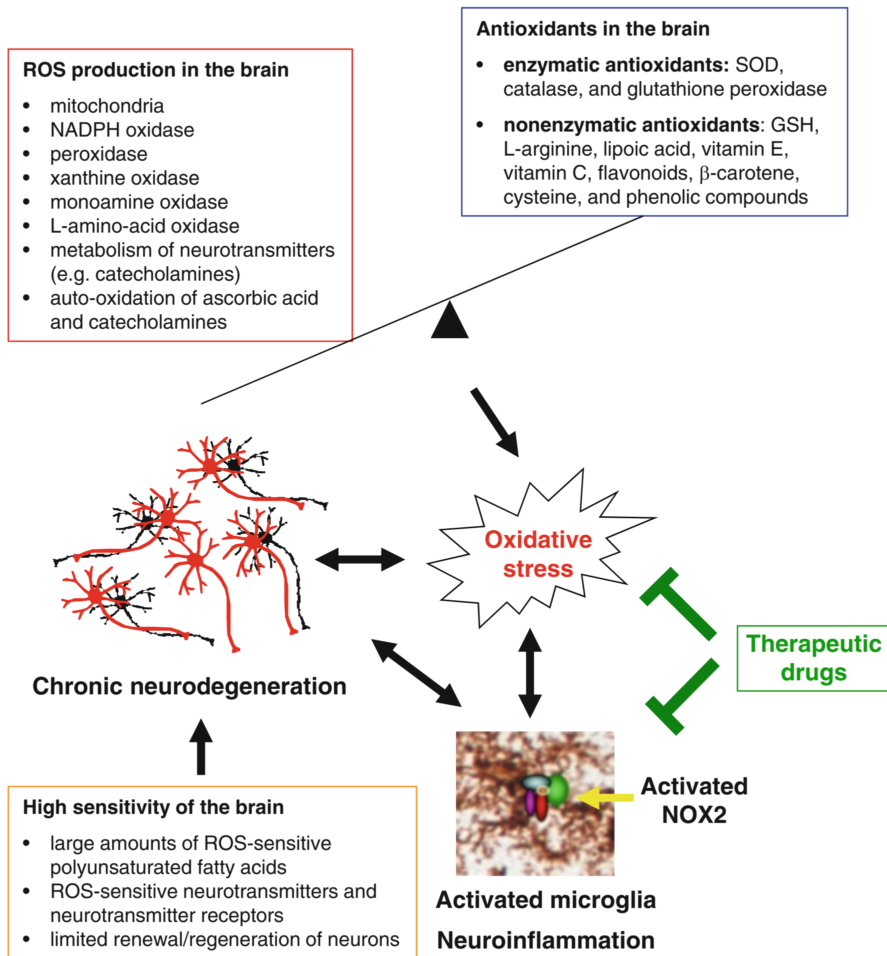


Fig. 1 A vicious cycle among neuroinflammation, oxidative stress, and neurodegeneration drives chronic neurodegeneration. Oxidative phosphorylation in mitochondria, activation of oxidase enzymes (e.g., NADPH oxidase, peroxidase, xanthine oxidase, monoamine oxidase, and L-AMINO-ACID oxidase), metabolism of neurotransmitters (e.g., catecholamines), and auto-oxidation of ascorbic acid and catecholamines in the brain generate reactive oxygen species (ROS). Mitochondrial dysfunction, increased activity of oxidase enzymes, and oxidative metabolism of neurotransmitters, combined with the high oxygen consumption and the high energy demand, lead to high production of ROS in the brain. Both enzymatic antioxidants (e.g., SOD, catalase, and glutathione peroxidase) and nonenzymatic antioxidants (e.g., GSH, L-arginine, lipoic acid, vitamin E, vitamin C, flavonoids, β-carotene, cysteine, and phenolic compounds) are essential for redox balance in the brain. Insufficient antioxidant defense also leads to excessive amounts of ROS. Thus, when excessive amount ROS overwhelms the antioxidant defense system, the resultant oxidative stress induces chronic neurodegeneration and brain dysfunction, which in turn can exaggerate oxidative stress. Dysregulated chronic neuroinflammation can mediate progressive neurodegeneration. Oxidative stress and chronic neuroinflammation are two intertwined key pathologic factors in neurodegenerative diseases; one can be a result of the other. The brain is highly sensitive to oxidative stress and neuroinflammation because of its large amounts of ROS-sensitive polyunsaturated fatty acids, neurotransmitters and neurotransmitter receptors, and the limited renewal/regeneration of neurons. A vicious cycle among neuroinflammation, oxidative stress, and neurodegeneration may drive chronic neurodegenerative process. Therefore, suppression of ROS production may dampen neuroinflammation and vice versa. Over-activated NOX2 is a major contributor to inflammation-mediated oxidative stress and chronic neurodegeneration. Blockade of the crossroad of neuroinflammation and oxidative stress, especially NOX2, may have greater efficacy in the treatment for neurodegenerative diseases. SOD, superoxide dismutase; GSH, glutathione

4 Major Sources of ROS in the Brain

Under physiological conditions, oxidative phosphorylation in mitochondria, activation of several oxidase enzymes (e.g., MAO and L-amino-acid oxidase), and metabolism of neurotransmitters (e.g., catecholamines) in the brain generate superoxide free radical or H_2O_2 as normal byproducts. Mitochondrial dysfunction, inappropriate activity of cytoplasmic or membrane oxidases (e.g., NADPH oxidase, peroxidase, and xanthine oxidase), and insufficient antioxidant defense lead to excessive amounts of ROS (Fig. 1).

4.1 Mitochondria

The mitochondrial electron transport chain is the major source of intracellular ROS [17]. During the process of oxidative phosphorylation, the partial reduction of molecular oxygen leads to the formation of superoxide free radical, which in turn can be converted into many other ROS. Within the mitochondria, antioxidant manganese-superoxide dismutase (MnSOD) catalyzes the dismutation of superoxide into oxygen and H_2O_2. Once produced, H_2O_2 can rapidly be converted to highly reactive OH• through the Fenton reaction in the presence of free iron and copper [18]. Superoxide can also be converted to hypochlorous acid (HOCl) and hydroperoxyl radical (HOO•) [19, 20].

4.2 NADPH Oxidase (NOX)

NOX, a membrane-bound, multi-subunit enzyme complex, transfers electrons across the plasma membrane from NADPH to oxygen and generates superoxide. Four of seven NOX isoforms, NOX1 to NOX4, have been detected in various brain cells (microglia, neurons, and astroglia) [4, 21]. Interestingly, many cells express several NOX isoforms, but distinct subcellular distribution and activation mechanisms may explain the non-redundancy in their functions [3, 4]. NOX2 (also named phagocytic NOX) is the major source of extracellular superoxide in phagocytes including neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, and microglia (the resident immune cells in the CNS). Upon stimulation, the cytosolic subunits of NOX2 ($p47^{phox}$, $p67^{phox}$, $p40^{phox}$, and the small Rho GTPase, Rac1 or Rac2) translocate to the membrane-bound $p22^{phox}$/$gp91^{phox}$ heterodimer to assemble the active NOX2 that catalyzes the reduction of oxygen to superoxide. Rac proteins, $p22^{phox}$, and the cytosolic subunits of non-phagocytic NOX, NOXO1 and NOXA1 (functional homologues of $p47^{phox}$ and $p67^{phox}$, respectively) are essential for NOX1 activation [3, 22, 23]. Both $p22^{phox}$ and NOXO1 are required for NOX3 activation [24, 25]. In summary, for the activation of NOX, the catalytic subunits and $p22^{phox}$ are indispensable; $p47^{phox}$ and NOXO1 serve as organizers or regulatory subunits; $p67^{phox}$

and NOXA1 are activators; and p40^{phox} is a nonessential, modulatory subunit [3, 26]. In the CNS, microglia generate much more NOX-derived ROS than astroglia, neurons, endothelial cells, or vascular smooth muscle cells [19, 27].

NOX-derived ROS participate in microglia proliferation and immune defense [28], glutamate release from activated microglia [29, 30], microglial induction of neuronal apoptosis during development [31], neurite outgrowth [32, 33], blood pressure regulation by angiotensin II [34, 35], astroglia signaling [36], and learning and memory formation [37, 38]. Elevated NOX activation is an important source of brain oxidative stress. Brain tissues of patients with AD reveal increased mRNA transcripts of NOX1 and NOX3 as well as elevated expression and activity of NOX2 [39–41]. An upregulation of NOX4 expression in neurons and in newly formed capillaries under ischemic conditions implies a role for NOX4 in ischemia/hypoxia [42]. Ample experimental evidence also indicates a positive association between increased expression/activation of NOX1, NOX2, and NOX4 and enhanced neuronal damage in several models of neurodegenerative diseases [43–46]. Collectively, NOX expressed in microglia and neurons is an important source of brain oxidative stress in various neurodegenerative diseases.

4.3 Peroxisomes

Another important source of intracellular ROS is peroxisomes (oxidative organelles that are present in all tissues including the brain). Within peroxisomes, enzymatic removal of hydrogen atoms from specific organic substrates (RH2) by using molecular oxygen produces H_2O_2. Through the peroxidation reaction catalyzed by peroxidase, H_2O_2 can oxidize other substrates, such as alcohol, phenols, formic acid, and formaldehyde [47].

4.4 Xanthine Oxidase

In the presence of H_2O and oxygen, xanthine oxidase catalyzes the oxidation of hypoxanthine to xanthine and then xanthine to uric acid, leading to production of H_2O_2 and superoxide. Xanthine oxidase has been implicated as a source of oxygen radicals in the brain. In human neuronal cultures, oxidative stress induced by the xanthine/xanthine oxidase system activates cholesterol biosynthesis pathway and induces neuronal apoptosis, supporting a possible link between oxidative stress, cholesterol metabolism, and AD [48]. In addition, allopurinol, a xanthine oxidase inhibitor, is neuroprotective in mouse cerebellar granule cell cultures treated with kainic acid (a specific agonist for the kainate receptor) and in rodent models of cerebral ischemia [49].

4.5 Other Enzymes and Molecules

Several enzymes expressed in the brain, such as tyrosine hydroxylase, MAO, and L-amino-acid oxidase (also known as ophio-amino-acid oxidase), produce H_2O_2 as a normal byproduct during their activation [6]. The metabolism of arachidonic acid, a polyunsaturated omega-6 fatty acid that is abundant in the brain, by lipoxygenases and cyclooxygenases generates eicosanoids and superoxide [50]. In the brain, auto-oxidation of ascorbic acid and catecholamines also yields H_2O_2 [50].

4.6 Nitric Oxide Synthase (NOS) and Reactive Nitrogen Species (RNS)

In mammals, three NOS isoforms, endothelial NOS (eNOS), neuronal NOS (nNOS), and inducible NOS (iNOS), catalyze the production of nitrogen free radical nitric oxide (NO•) from L-arginine. As an important biological signaling molecule, NO• is involved in modulation of vascular or airway tone, insulin secretion, angiogenesis, and neural development and activity [51]. In particular, iNOS-derived NO• plays an important role in immune defense, autoimmune disease, and neurodegenerative diseases [51]. Reaction of NO• with superoxide forms highly reactive and toxic peroxynitrite ($ONOO^-$), which can decompose to form OH• (the most reactive and damaging species) and $NO2^-$. S-nitrosylation, a form of posttranslational protein modification, involves the covalent incorporation of a NO• moiety into thiol groups of a subset of specific cysteine residues in proteins to form S-nitrosoproteins. Aberrant S-nitrosylation or denitrosylation (the reverse process of S-nitrosylation) has been associated with PD, AD, and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) [52–55].

5 Antioxidant Defense System in the Brain

In order to maintain the balance between oxidants and antioxidants and to eliminate oxidative cellular destruction, cells develop numerous enzymatic and nonenzymatic antioxidant defense mechanisms. SOD, catalase, and glutathione peroxidase are enzymes responsible for coordinated degradation of superoxide and H_2O_2 (Fig. 1). Many scavengers dedicated to reducing the levels of oxidants also play an important role in modulating oxidative stress in the brain.

5.1 Enzymatic Antioxidant Defense

SOD catalyzes the dismutation of superoxide to less reactive H_2O_2. Three forms of SOD, cytosolic copper–zinc SOD (CuZnSOD; SOD1), mitochondrial MnSOD (SOD2), and extracellular CuZnSOD (SOD3), are encoded by three separate genes

in eukaryotic cells. SOD1 and SOD2 play a main role in removing superoxide in the cytosol and mitochondria, respectively. Both SOD1 and SOD2 are implicated in a variety of age-related brain disorders. Mutations in SOD1 are associated with approximately 20 % of familial cases of ALS; however, reduction in dismutase activity may not be the cause of motor neuron death in these cases, whereas a gain-of-function may be responsible for the pathogenic role of mutant SOD1 [56, 57]. Notably, multiple lines of evidence have shown an inverse correlation between SOD levels and overall susceptibility to ischemic brain injury [58]. Cerebral ischemia/reperfusion after transient focal cerebral ischemia (tFCI) downregulates the expression of SOD2 and the transcription factor STAT3 (signal transducer and activator of transcription 3) and blocks the recruitment of STAT3 into the SOD2 promoter [59]. Transgenic overexpression of SOD1 ameliorates infarction volume and neurological deficits induced by tFCI and attenuates hippocampal neuronal death elicited by transient global cerebral ischemia (tGCI) [58, 60, 61]. Similarly, SOD2 overexpression mitigates membrane lipid peroxidation, protein nitration, and infarction volume after tFCI [62]. Administration of a cell-permeable SOD mimetic attenuates hippocampal CA1 pyramidal neuronal damage and neurological deficits induced by tGCI [63]. Conversely, reduced dismutase activity in $SOD1^{-/+}$ mice and $SOD2^{-/+}$ mice aggravates tFCI-elicited superoxide production, apoptotic neuronal death, infarct volume, and neurological deficits [58, 64]. Moreover, in transgenic mouse models of Alzheimer pathology, deletion of SOD1 exacerbates β-amyloid oligomerization, cognitive impairment, and neuronal dysfunction, and deletion of one allele of SOD2 increased amyloid plaque formation [65, 66]. Thus, lost or compromised dismutase activity of SOD1 and SOD2 and consequent oxidative stress play important roles in ischemia brain damage and Alzheimer pathology.

Catalase and glutathione peroxidase mediate the decomposition of H_2O_2 to H_2O and O_2, eliminating the poisonous effect of excessively produced H_2O_2. Glutathione peroxidase also catalyzes the reduction of lipid peroxyl radicals. Catalase is mostly localized to peroxisomes in most cells of the brain, and its expression level is low in both gray and white matter. Glutathione peroxidase is present in the cytosol and the mitochondria of brain cells. In models of AD and stroke, upregulation of catalase is neuroprotective, whereas impairment in catalase increases vulnerability to neuronal injury [67, 68]. Postmortem studies reveal reduction in the activity of glutathione peroxidase and the amount of glutathione in the substantia nigra of PD patients [69]. Genetic deletion of glutathione peroxidase enhances the susceptibility of mouse brain neurons to neurotoxin [70].

Peroxiredoxins, a group of ubiquitous, nonheme peroxidases, catalyze the reduction of H_2O_2, organic hydroperoxides, and peroxynitrite, which requires an activated cysteine residue at their active site of these enzymes [71]. Transgenic mice overexpressing peroxiredoxin are more resistant to ischemic neuronal injury [72]. Lentivirus-mediated overexpression of peroxiredoxin attenuates dopamine neuron death and motor impairment in a mouse model of PD created by 6-hydroxydopamine [73].

The plasma membrane redox system (PMRS) is an electron transport chain in the plasma membrane. It transfers electrons from intracellular or extracellular donors to

extracellular acceptors, reducing membrane-associated oxidative stress. PMRS has multiple redox enzymes, such as quinine reductase, NADH-cytochrome b5 reductase, NADH-quinone oxidoreductase 1 (NQO1), NADH-ferricyanide reductase, NADH-coenzyme Q10 reductase, and NADH-cytochrome c reductase [74]. PMRS has been implicated in aging and neuronal survival, and impairment in PMRS was induced by β-amyloid and detected in the hippocampus and cerebral cortex of triple transgenic (3×Tg-AD) mice, an animal model of AD [74, 75].

5.2 Nonenzymatic Antioxidants

Nonenzymatic antioxidants are scavengers that remove ROS either by inhibiting cellular sources of oxidants or by inducing cellular antioxidant systems. They can broadly be divided into two groups. While metabolic antioxidants (e.g., glutathione, L-arginine, and α-lipoic acid) are generated during the metabolic reactions in the cell, nutrient antioxidants are taken in from diet, which include vitamin E, vitamin C, flavonoids, β-carotene, cysteine, and phenolic compounds [76] (Fig. 1).

Glutathione (GSH), a tripeptide (γ-glutamyl-cysteinyl-glycine), is synthesized intracellularly by a sequential action of two enzymes, the glutamate–cysteine ligase (γ-glutamylcysteine synthetase) and GSH synthetase. In its reduced state, glutathione nonenzymatically scavenges both singlet oxygen and OH•. Glutathione acts as a main cofactor for a family of glutathione peroxidase enzymes. The ratio of reduced glutathione (GSH) to oxidized glutathione (GSSG) serves as the primary determinant and an indicator of the cellular redox state. The reduction in the ratio of GSH:GSSG is associated with aging and neurodegeneration [69]. Glutathione reductase regenerates GSH from GSSG using NADPH as an electron donor. The substantia nigra of patients with idiopathic PD or presymptomatic PD shows glutathione depletion [69]. Exogenous addition of glutathione provided neuroprotection in models of PD [15].

Vitamin E, a hydrophobic antioxidant, protects cell membrane from damage by ROS such as peroxyl radicals during lipid oxidation. α-tocopherol is the most biologically active form of vitamin E. Although α-tocopherol can react with singlet oxygen and OH•, the major antioxidant action of α-tocopherol relies on its ability to donate labile hydrogens to peroxyl and alkoxy radicals, thereby preventing lipid peroxidation. Vitamin E deficiency causes neurologic symptoms and the so-called ataxia with vitamin E deficiency, a neurodegenerative disorder [77]. Although being very effective in ameliorating neurodegeneration in animal models, vitamin E failed to show consistent neuroprotection in patients with neurodegenerative diseases [78, 79]. It seems that supplementation with vitamin E in humans is most effective when its deficiency is more evident. This phenomenon seems true in most nonenzymatic antioxidants. Ascorbic acid (vitamin C) is a hydrophilic antioxidant. It removes free radicals by electron transfer and also serves as a cofactor for enzymes of antioxidant

defense. Like vitamin E, vitamin C is neuroprotective in a variety of models of neurodegenerative diseases but has no great efficacy in the clinical setting.

Coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10), a powerful hydrophobic antioxidant enriched in the mitochondria, participates in electron and proton transport of the respiratory chain in the inner mitochondrial membrane. As an energy carrier, CoQ10 continuously goes through oxidation–reduction cycle. There are three redox states of CoQ10: fully oxidized (ubiquinone), semiquinone (ubisemiquinone), and fully reduced (ubiquinol). The reduced form of CoQ10 inhibits both the initiation and the propagation of lipid peroxidation and protein oxidation by preventing production of lipid peroxyl radicals and reducing initial perferryl radical and singlet oxygen. The reduced form of CoQ10 also effectively regenerates vitamin E from the α-tocopheroxyl radical. The ROS-scavenging role of CoQ10 is reported to be neuroprotective in preclinical studies of neurodegenerative diseases; CoQ10 also shows some clinical efficacy in a few neurodegenerative disorders, including Huntington disease (HD) and PD [80, 81]. However, in 2011, the National Institute for Neurological Disease and Stroke (NINDS) terminated a phase III clinical trial of high doses of CoQ10 (1,200 or 2,400 mg/day) because of the lack of evidence of a clinical benefit in early PD [82].

Antioxidant thioredoxin acts as an electron donor to facilitate the reduction of other proteins by cysteine thiol–disulfide exchange. Thioredoxins are present in all organisms and are essential for life in mammals. Loss-of-function mutation of either of the two human thioredoxin genes is embryonic lethal. Using NADPH as an electron donor, thioredoxin reductase converts oxidized thioredoxin back to its reduced form. Thioredoxin is reported to be neuroprotective, and its overexpression suppresses neurotoxicity in a Drosophila model of Machado–Joseph disease expressing polyglutamine expansions [83, 84].

6 Oxidative Stress and Neurodegeneration

Oxidative stress is intimately linked to aging—the best established risk factor for neurodegenerative diseases. Microarray analysis of postmortem human brain samples has revealed downregulation of genes encoding for synaptic transmission, learning, and memory after age 45, and such gene downregulation is associated with increased amounts of oxidative damage in their promoters [85]. Mitochondrial dysfunction and glutamate-mediated oxidative stress, inflammatory oxidative insults, and insufficient GSH are important mechanisms underlying age-related oxidative damage and neurodegeneration. In aged brains, iron accumulates in the basal ganglia and is believed to contribute to neurodegenerative diseases through oxidative stress in PD and AD [86]. It is commonly accepted that neurodegenerative diseases are consequence of elevated oxidative stress and compromised anti-oxidative mechanisms, regardless of initial insults or genetic defects.

6.1 Mitochondrial Dysfunction and Oxidative Neuronal Damage

Mitochondria play a key role in electron transport and oxidative phosphorylation, and they are the major cellular source of oxygen free radicals. Considerable evidence has shown that mitochondria-derived oxidative stress occurs early and acts causally in the pathogenesis of aging-related neurodegenerative diseases [11]. Oxidized nucleotides in brain mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) are increased in aging and AD [6, 87, 88]. The accumulation of mutations in mtDNA correlates with impairment of mitochondrial function that causes imbalance of production and removal of ROS, leading to cell death. The mitochondrial uncoupler CCCP (carbonyl cyanide m-chlorophenyl hydrazone, a chemical inhibitor of oxidative phosphorylation) triggers amyloidogenic processing of amyloid precursor protein (APP) and intracellular accumulation of β-amyloid in astroglia, which are pathological features seen in Down syndrome [89]. Hemizygous deficiency of the mitochondrial MnSOD increases brain β-amyloid levels and plaque deposition in a transgenic mouse model of AD that harbor a mutant APP [90].

Both genetics and environmental evidence have revealed a prominent role for mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative stress in the pathogenesis of PD. Immunocapture techniques have detected increased oxidative damage and reduced electron transfer rates in mitochondrial complex I subunits in PD patients [91]. Mitochondrial complex I inhibition by 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP), 1-methyl-4-phenylpyridinium (MPP^+, an active metabolite of MPTP), or rotenone replicates some of the key features of PD, such as death of dopaminergic neurons and locomotor deficits. Mechanistically, mitochondria-derived free radicals are important contributors of such pathological alterations [92, 93]. Paraquat, a free radical generator, induces loss of dopaminergic neurons, motor deficits, and increased production of free radicals by mitochondria in rodents [94]. While accidental exposure to MPTP causes Parkinsonism in human, lifetime use of pesticides rotenone and paraquat in farm workers is associated with increased risk for PD. Mutations in *parkin*, *DJ-1*, and *PINK1*, known to cause familial forms of PD, are linked to mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative stress [95]. In addition, α-synuclein (a cytosolic protein under physiological condition) appears to interact with mitochondrial membranes [96] and to inhibit mitochondrial complex I in affected brain regions of patients and models of PD [97]. Mutant α-synuclein transgenic mice exhibit impairment in mitochondrial integrity and function [98]. Under oxidative stress or electron transport chain inhibition, which can lead to increased permeability of mitochondrial membrane or opening of the mitochondrial permeability transition pore, Bax and other pro-apoptotic molecules can result in enhanced cytochrome c release into the cytosol, caspase activation, apoptosis, and collapse of the mitochondrial membrane potential. Thus, mitochondrial dysfunction and consequent oxidative stress play a pivotal role in aging and neurodegenerative diseases.

6.2 Oxidative Stress and Glutamate-Induced Neuronal Degeneration

Glutamate-mediated oxidative stress alone or in combination with other sources of oxidants has been implicated in PD, ALS, and HD. The neurotransmitter glutamate and related excitatory amino acids account for most of the excitatory synaptic activity in the mammalian CNS. Through activation of its ionotropic receptors (NMDA receptor, AMPA receptor, and kainate receptors), glutamate activates a number of different pathways that cause oxidative stress and induces neuronal degeneration. NMDA receptor-mediated stimulation of enzyme phospholipase A2 (PLA2) by glutamate and subsequent release of arachidonic acid lead to production of superoxide and OH•. These radicals and arachidonic acid enhance the release of glutamate and inhibit its uptake and its inactivation by neurons and glia, promoting a vicious cycle [6]. Antioxidants protect cultured mouse cortical neurons against delayed NMDA receptor-mediated neuronal degeneration [99]. Transgenic mice expressing CuZnSOD gene show elevated SOD activity and are less vulnerable than wild-type mice to ischemic brain damage; neurons cultured from these transgenic mice are less vulnerable to glutamate toxicity [6]. Systemic administration of kainate acid (a specific agonist for the kainate receptor) leads to production of free radicals in the brain; concurrent neurodegeneration and lipid peroxidation accumulation induced by kainate acid are attenuated by antioxidants. Furthermore, the neurotoxic effects of intracerebral injection of kainate acid or quisqualic acid (an AMPA receptor agonist) are blocked by the centrally active antioxidant, idebenone [6].

Two recent reports reveal that superoxide production in neurons elicited by NMDA receptor activation primarily results from NOX activation [100, 101]. Deficiency in $p47^{phox}$ or NOX2 inhibitor apocynin blocks NMDA-elicited superoxide production and neurotoxicity in cultured neurons and mouse hippocampus [100]. Interestingly, the NMDA receptor antagonist ketamine also increases NOX activity with a possible involvement of neuronal interleukin-6 [102, 103]. Knockdown of NOX2 and NOX4 expression in HT22 neuronal cells reduces glutamate-induced H_2O_2 accumulation and cell death [104]. These findings indicate that NOX-derived ROS appear important for neurotoxicity induced by excessive glutamate.

7 Inflammatory Oxidative Damage Is a Major Mediator of Chronic Neurodegeneration

Neuroinflammation, a prominent and most common feature shared by all neurodegenerative diseases, has been increasingly accepted as a crucial contributor to chronic neurodegeneration in various neurodegenerative diseases [105–107]. Microglial activation is the prime component of neuroinflammation. A wide range of stimuli, such as infection, autoimmune injury, toxic insults, trauma, or ischemia, can trigger microglial activation and disrupt CNS homeostasis [105–107]. Activated microglia release a myriad of inflammatory and cytotoxic factors, such as cytokines,

chemokines, eicosanoids, proteases, excitatory amino acids, and ROS. Among these factors, NOX2-derived ROS are recognized as a crucial player in neuroinflammation-mediated oxidative stress and chronic neurodegeneration [105–107].

7.1 NOX2 Activation in AD

AD is an age-related, nonreversible brain disorder. It is characterized by a progressive decline in memory, cognitive abilities, and mental function. Three major hallmarks in the brain—extracellular amyloid plaques, intracellular neurofibrillary tangles that contain aberrant Tau, and loss of neurons responsible for memory and learning and consequent brain atrophy—are associated with the disease processes of AD. Aggregated β-amyloid (the prime pathogenic mediator of AD) induces NOX2-dependent ROS production in microglia [108–111]. NOX2 inhibition by apocynin or $p47^{phox}$ deletion promotes alternative and anti-inflammatory microglial activation during neuroinflammation evoked by an intracerebroventricular injection of LPS or β-amyloid [112]. NOX2 deletion or inhibition prevents microglia-mediated neurotoxicity triggered by β-amyloid in cell culture systems [113, 114]. Furthermore, in an AD mouse model overexpressing mutant APP, a membrane-permeable NOX2 peptide inhibitor NOX2ds-tat (gp91ds-tat) or NOX2 deletion attenuates neuronal oxidative stress, cerebrovascular dysfunction, and behavioral deficits [115]. NOX2 inhibitors diphenylene iodonium (DPI) and apocynin prevent β-amyloid-induced neuronal death through blocking ROS generation, glutathione depletion, and mitochondrial depolarization in neurons and astrocytes [12]. Thus, NOX2-mediated oxidative stress is an important contributor to AD pathogenesis.

7.2 NOX2 Activation in PD

PD is a neurodegenerative movement disorder. A gradual loss of nigral dopaminergic neurons and the formation of α-synuclein-containing Lewy body are the pathological hallmarks of the disease. The major lesion region in PD, the substantia nigra, reveals upregulation of microglial NOX2 in PD patients and a mouse model of PD [116]. Activation of microglial NOX2 aggravates dopaminergic neurodegeneration induced by aggregated α-synuclein (the key pathogenic mediator of PD); PD-producing neurotoxins MPTP and 6-hydroxydopamine; PD-associated pesticides rotenone and paraquat; inflammagens LPS and fMLP (formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine); diesel particles; angiotensin II; the active form of matrix metalloproteinase-3; and extracellular high-mobility group box 1 (HMGB1) released from stressed/damaged neurons or activated microglia. Importantly, DPI, apocynin, or NOX2 deletion mitigates such neurodegeneration [15, 117–128]. Minocycline blocks MPTP-elicited nigral dopaminergic neurodegeneration via suppressing microglial activation and membrane translocation of $p67^{phox}$ [129]. NOX2-deficient mice are more resistant to systemic administration of MPTP or an intra-nigral

injection of LPS than wild-type mice [120, 130]. Collectively, NOX2-mediated redox imbalance exaggerates inflammation-mediated PD neurodegeneration.

7.3 NOX2 in Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)

ALS (Lou Gehrig's disease), a fatal paralytic neurodegenerative disorder, is characterized by a progressive degeneration of motor neurons in the spinal cord, the brainstem, and the motor cortex leading to rapidly progressive muscle weakness and atrophy throughout the body. Microglia in the spinal cord of animal models and patients with ALS show NOX2 upregulation, increased ROS production, and oxidative damage [131]. Mutations of SOD1 are associated with autosomal dominant familial ALS. Recent studies using glial cells suggest a regulatory role of SOD1 in Rac1-dependent NOX2 activation and a pathogenic role of enhanced interaction of mutant SOD1 with Rac1 [56, 132]. In mice carrying mutant SOD1, apocynin (30–300 mg/kg) and NOX2 deficiency delays motor neurodegeneration, slows disease progression, improves neurological symptoms, and extends survival [46, 56, 131, 132]. Altogether, increased activity of microglial NOX2 is an important disease mechanism underlying the non-cell-autonomous nature of ALS neurodegeneration.

7.4 NOX2 Activation in Multiple Sclerosis (MS)

MS is a neurodegenerative disease with widespread inflammatory axonal demyelination and neuronal injury in the brain and the spinal cord. NOX2 activation in microglia has been implicated in MS pathogenesis. For instance, a low ROS-generating variant of $p47^{phox}$ in rats promotes the formation of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE, a widely used animal model for MS) [133]. Similarly, mice carrying a truncated and nonfunctional $p47^{phox}$ develop severer EAE than wild-type mice; however, $p47^{phox}$-knockout mice reveal decreased EAE [134, 135]. NOX2-deficient mice are resistant to EAE [136]. These seemingly conflicting findings regarding NOX2 activity and EAE development imply that the combined action and the balance among ROS, inflammatory process, neuronal injury, and neuronal repair might critically determine the outcome of inflammatory axonal demyelination and neuronal survival.

7.5 NOX1 Activation in Neurodegenerative Diseases

NOX1 deletion slows disease progression and increases lifespan of a mouse model of ALS, which carries mutant SOD1 [46]. PD-associated pesticide paraquat increased NOX1 expression, and siRNA-mediated NOX1 knockdown attenuated ROS production and cell death induced by paraquat and MPP^+ in N27 dopaminergic

neuronal cultures [43, 44]. NOX1-derived superoxide increases the release of inflammatory factors in LPS-treated microglia cultures and exaggerates presynaptic protein loss in striatal neurons after intra-striatum LPS injection [45]. Collectively, the NOX family expressed in microglia and neurons is an important contributor to brain oxidative stress in various neurodegenerative diseases.

8 The Therapeutic Potential of Targeting NOX2 in Neurodegenerative Diseases

The fact that oxidative stress is a key pathologic mediator and that several free radical-scavenging antioxidants failed in clinical trials in neurodegenerative diseases requires a better therapeutic strategy—to block major sources of oxidative stress. As described above, over-activated NOX2 has been implicated as a major contributor to inflammation-mediated chronic neuron loss in neurodegenerative diseases. In fact, recent preclinical evidence has demonstrated neuroprotective effects of pharmacological inhibition of NOX2 in models of neurodegenerative diseases [27]. Many structurally and functionally different compounds that shared common properties of dampening inflammation and NOX2 activation provide neuroprotection in models of PD. These compounds, including compound A (a potent and selective inhibitor of IKK-β in the NF-κB pathway), dextromethorphan (a widely used antitussive agent), sinomenine (a natural dextrorotatory morphinan analog), squamosamide derivative FLZ, minocycline (a broad-spectrum tetracycline antibiotic), pituitary adenylate cyclase-activating polypeptides, resveratrol (a nonflavonoid polyphenol with antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties), TGF-β1 (transforming growth factor-β1, a known endogenous immune modulator), and verapamil (a calcium-channel blocker used to treat high blood pressure, chest pain, and certain heart rhythm disorders), lose their neuroprotective effects in the absence of NOX2 [27, 129, 130, 137–144].

By targeting estrogen receptor alpha and subsequent suppressing NOX activation, 17-beta-estradiol attenuates ischemic oxidative damage in stroke [145]. Galantamine, an alkaloid drug currently used to treat AD, suppresses activation of iNOS and NOX and offers neuroprotection in an in vitro brain ischemia–reperfusion model [146]. A 9-month treatment of aged R1.40 mice (a model of AD) with the nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug ibuprofen reduces oxidative damage (as shown by the reduction in lipid peroxidation, tyrosine nitration, and protein oxidation) and enhances plaque clearance at least partially through the inhibition of microglial NOX2 activation [109]. Additionally, an intraperitoneal injection of a low dose of dextromethorphan (0.1 mg/kg) suppresses NOX2 expression and infiltration of monocytes and lymphocytes into the spinal cord and thereby attenuates moderate EAE [147]. It is worth emphasizing that the long-standing clinical safety record of some “old” drugs (e.g., dextromethorphan and galantamine) makes them attractive candidates for further investigation for their clinical use in the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases. Taken together, the correlation of pharmacological

inhibition of NOX2 activity with attenuated neurodegeneration in models of various neurodegenerative diseases strongly implicates NOX2 as a promising therapeutic target for neurodegenerative diseases (Fig. 1).

The limitation of known NOX2 inhibitors, the prooxidant potential of apocynin, the insufficient specificity and high toxicity of DPI, the irreversible off-target effect on serine proteases and low efficacy with an IC50 greater than 1 mM of AEBSF (4-(2-aminoethyl)benzenesulfonyl fluoride hydrochloride), and unfavorable administration routes of NOX2ds-tat make their clinical translation almost unfeasible [3, 148, 149]. Thus, to develop and screen novel blood–brain-barrier permeable NOX2 inhibitors with improved efficacy, specificity and pharmacokinetic profiles might discover promising clinical therapeutics for various neurodegenerative diseases. Furthermore, given the critical role of mitochondrial dysfunction in brain oxidative stress, either as a cause or a result, a combination of "mitochondrial medicine" (e.g., CoQ10) with agents targeting neuroinflammation and NOX2 will be more effective than an individual therapeutic approach for the treatment of chronic neurodegeneration.

Acknowledgments This work was supported by a start-up fund provided by Nanjing University and in part by Jiangsu Province's Innovation and Entrepreneurship Talent People Award and by the Intramural Research Program of the National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences, National Institutes of Health. We apologize for limiting citation of many excellent original contributions due to space limitations. The authors declare they have no actual or potential competing financial interests.

References

1. Barnham KJ, Masters CL, Bush AI. Neurodegenerative diseases and oxidative stress. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2004;3:205–14.
2. Zhou C, Huang Y, Przedborski S. Oxidative stress in Parkinson's disease: a mechanism of pathogenic and therapeutic significance. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2008;1147:93–104.
3. Bedard K, Krause KH. The NOX family of ROS-generating NADPH oxidases: physiology and pathophysiology. Physiol Rev. 2007;87:245–313.
4. Sorce S, Krause KH. NOX enzymes in the central nervous system: from signaling to disease. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2009;11:2481–504.
5. Smythies JR. Oxidative reactions and schizophrenia: a review-discussion. Schizophr Res. 1997;24:357–64.
6. Coyle JT, Puttfarcken P. Oxidative stress, glutamate, and neurodegenerative disorders. Science. 1993;262:689–95.
7. Youdim MB, Stephenson G, Ben Shachar D. Ironing iron out in Parkinson's disease and other neurodegenerative diseases with iron chelators: a lesson from 6-hydroxydopamine and iron chelators, desferal and VK-28. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2004;1012:306–25.
8. Kvaltinova Z, Lukovic L, Stolc S. Effect of incomplete ischemia and reperfusion of the rat brain on the density and affinity of alpha-adrenergic binding sites in the cerebral cortex. Prevention of changes by stobadine and vitamin E. Neuropharmacology. 1993;32:785–91.
9. Joseph JA, Denisova N, Fisher D, Shukitt-Hale B, Bickford P, Prior R, Cao G. Membrane and receptor modifications of oxidative stress vulnerability in aging. Nutritional considerations. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1998;854:268–76.
10. Sah R, Galeffi F, Ahrens R, Jordan G, Schwartz-Bloom RD. Modulation of the GABA(A)-gated chloride channel by reactive oxygen species. J Neurochem. 2002;80:383–91.

11. Lin MT, Beal MF. Mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative stress in neurodegenerative diseases. Nature. 2006;443:787–95.
12. Abramov AY, Canevari L, Duchen MR. Beta-amyloid peptides induce mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative stress in astrocytes and death of neurons through activation of NADPH oxidase. J Neurosci. 2004;24:565–75.
13. Goodwin J, Nath S, Engelborghs Y, Pountney DL. Raised calcium and oxidative stress cooperatively promote alpha-synuclein aggregate formation. Neurochem Int. 2013;62:703–11.
14. Chen L, Xu B, Liu L, Luo Y, Zhou H, Chen W, Shen T, Han X, Kontos CD, Huang S. Cadmium induction of reactive oxygen species activates the mTOR pathway, leading to neuronal cell death. Free Radic Biol Med. 2011;50:624–32.
15. Gao HM, Jiang J, Wilson B, Zhang W, Hong JS, Liu B. Microglial activation-mediated delayed and progressive degeneration of rat nigral dopaminergic neurons: relevance to Parkinson's disease. J Neurochem. 2002;81:1285–97.
16. Marklund SL, Westman NG, Lundgren E, Roos G. Copper- and zinc-containing superoxide dismutase, manganese-containing superoxide dismutase, catalase, and glutathione peroxidase in normal and neoplastic human cell lines and normal human tissues. Cancer Res. 1982;42:1955–61.
17. Turrens JF. Mitochondrial formation of reactive oxygen species. J Physiol. 2003;552:335–44.
18. Valko M, Morris H, Cronin MT. Metals, toxicity and oxidative stress. Curr Med Chem. 2005;12:1161–208.
19. Thannickal VJ, Fanburg BL. Reactive oxygen species in cell signaling. Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol. 2000;279:L1005–28.
20. Dasuri K, Zhang L, Keller JN. Oxidative stress, neurodegeneration, and the balance of protein degradation and protein synthesis. Free Radic Biol Med. 2013;62:170–85.
21. Gao HM, Zhang F, Zhou H, Kam W, Wilson B, Hong JS. Neuroinflammation and alpha-synuclein dysfunction potentiate each other, driving chronic progression of neurodegeneration in a mouse model of Parkinson's disease. Environ Health Perspect. 2011;119:807–14.
22. Cheng G, Lambeth JD. NOXO1, regulation of lipid binding, localization, and activation of Nox1 by the Phox homology (PX) domain. J Biol Chem. 2004;279:4737–42.
23. Valente AJ, El Jamali A, Epperson TK, Gamez MJ, Pearson DW, Clark RA. NOX1 NADPH oxidase regulation by the NOXA1 SH3 domain. Free Radic Biol Med. 2007;43:384–96.
24. Cheng G, Ritsick D, Lambeth JD. Nox3 regulation by NOXO1, p47phox, and p67phox. J Biol Chem. 2004;279:34250–5.
25. Ueno N, Takeya R, Miyano K, Kikuchi H, Sumimoto H. The NADPH oxidase Nox3 constitutively produces superoxide in a p22phox-dependent manner: its regulation by oxidase organizers and activators. J Biol Chem. 2005;280:23328–39.
26. Babior BM. NADPH oxidase. Curr Opin Immunol. 2004;16:42–7.
27. Gao HM, Zhou H, Hong JS. NADPH oxidases: novel therapeutic targets for neurodegenerative diseases. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2012;33:295–303.
28. Mander PK, Jekabsone A, Brown GC. Microglia proliferation is regulated by hydrogen peroxide from NADPH oxidase. J Immunol. 2006;176:1046–52.
29. Harrigan TJ, Abdullaev IF, Jourd'heuil D, Mongin AA. Activation of microglia with zymosan promotes excitatory amino acid release via volume-regulated anion channels: the role of NADPH oxidases. J Neurochem. 2008;106:2449–62.
30. Barger SW, Goodwin ME, Porter MM, Beggs ML. Glutamate release from activated microglia requires the oxidative burst and lipid peroxidation. J Neurochem. 2007;101:1205–13.
31. Marin-Teva JL, Dusart I, Colin C, Gervais A, van Rooijen N, Mallat M. Microglia promote the death of developing Purkinje cells. Neuron. 2004;41:535–47.
32. Ibi M, Katsuyama M, Fan C, Iwata K, Nishinaka T, Yokoyama T, Yabe-Nishimura C. NOX1/NADPH oxidase negatively regulates nerve growth factor-induced neurite outgrowth. Free Radic Biol Med. 2006;40:1785–95.
33. Munnamalai V, Suter DM. Reactive oxygen species regulate F-actin dynamics in neuronal growth cones and neurite outgrowth. J Neurochem. 2009;108:644–61.

34. Zimmerman MC, Dunlay RP, Lazartigues E, Zhang Y, Sharma RV, Engelhardt JF, Davisson RL. Requirement for Rac1-dependent NADPH oxidase in the cardiovascular and dipsogenic actions of angiotensin II in the brain. Circ Res. 2004;95:532–9.
35. Wang G, Anrather J, Huang J, Speth RC, Pickel VM, Iadecola C. NADPH oxidase contributes to angiotensin II signaling in the nucleus tractus solitarius. J Neurosci. 2004;24:5516–24.
36. Abramov AY, Jacobson J, Wientjes F, Hothersall J, Canevari L, Duchen MR. Expression and modulation of an NADPH oxidase in mammalian astrocytes. J Neurosci. 2005;25:9176–84.
37. Pao M, Wiggs EA, Anastacio MM, Hyun J, DeCarlo ES, Miller JT, Anderson VL, Malech HL, Gallin JI, Holland SM. Cognitive function in patients with chronic granulomatous disease: a preliminary report. Psychosomatics. 2004;45:230–4.
38. Kishida KT, Hoeffer CA, Hu D, Pao M, Holland SM, Klann E. Synaptic plasticity deficits and mild memory impairments in mouse models of chronic granulomatous disease. Mol Cell Biol. 2006;26:5908–20.
39. Ansari MA, Scheff SW. NADPH-oxidase activation and cognition in Alzheimer disease progression. Free Radic Biol Med. 2011;51:171–8.
40. Shimohama S, Tanino H, Kawakami N, Okamura N, Kodama H, Yamaguchi T, Hayakawa T, Nunomura A, Chiba S, Perry G, Smith MA, Fujimoto S. Activation of NADPH oxidase in Alzheimer's disease brains. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2000;273:5–9.
41. de la Monte SM, Wands JR. Molecular indices of oxidative stress and mitochondrial dysfunction occur early and often progress with severity of Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis. 2006;9:167–81.
42. Vallet P, Charnay Y, Steger K, Ogier-Denis E, Kovari E, Herrmann F, Michel JP, Szanto I. Neuronal expression of the NADPH oxidase NOX4, and its regulation in mouse experimental brain ischemia. Neuroscience. 2005;132:233–8.
43. Anantharam V, Kaul S, Song C, Kanthasamy A, Kanthasamy AG. Pharmacological inhibition of neuronal NADPH oxidase protects against 1-methyl-4-phenylpyridinium (MPP+)-induced oxidative stress and apoptosis in mesencephalic dopaminergic neuronal cells. Neurotoxicology. 2007;28:988–97.
44. Cristovao AC, Choi DH, Baltazar G, Beal MF, Kim YS. The role of NADPH oxidase 1-derived reactive oxygen species in paraquat-mediated dopaminergic cell death. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2009;11:2105–18.
45. Cheret C, Gervais A, Lelli A, Colin C, Amar L, Ravassard P, Mallet J, Cumano A, Krause KH, Mallat M. Neurotoxic activation of microglia is promoted by a nox1-dependent NADPH oxidase. J Neurosci. 2008;28:12039–51.
46. Marden JJ, Harraz MM, Williams AJ, Nelson K, Luo M, Paulson H, Engelhardt JF. Redox modifier genes in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis in mice. J Clin Invest. 2007;117:2913–9.
47. del Rio LA, Sandalio LM, Palma JM, Bueno P, Corpas FJ. Metabolism of oxygen radicals in peroxisomes and cellular implications. Free Radic Biol Med. 1992;13:557–80.
48. Recuero M, Vicente MC, Martinez-Garcia A, Ramos MC, Carmona-Saez P, Sastre I, Aldudo J, Vilella E, Frank A, Bullido MJ, Valdivieso F. A free radical-generating system induces the cholesterol biosynthesis pathway: a role in Alzheimer's disease. Aging Cell. 2009;8:128–39.
49. Dykens JA, Stern A, Trenkner E. Mechanism of kainate toxicity to cerebellar neurons in vitro is analogous to reperfusion tissue injury. J Neurochem. 1987;49:1222–8.
50. Gilgun-Sherki Y, Rosenbaum Z, Melamed E, Offen D. Antioxidant therapy in acute central nervous system injury: current state. Pharmacol Rev. 2002;54:271–84.
51. Liu B, Gao HM, Wang JY, Jeohn GH, Cooper CL, Hong JS. Role of nitric oxide in inflammation-mediated neurodegeneration. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2002;962:318–31.
52. Uehara T, Nakamura T, Yao D, Shi ZQ, Gu Z, Ma Y, Masliah E, Nomura Y, Lipton SA. S-nitrosylated protein-disulphide isomerase links protein misfolding to neurodegeneration. Nature. 2006;441:513–7.
53. Yao D, Gu Z, Nakamura T, Shi ZQ, Ma Y, Gaston B, Palmer LA, Rockenstein EM, Zhang Z, Masliah E, Uehara T, Lipton SA. Nitrosative stress linked to sporadic Parkinson's disease: S-nitrosylation of parkin regulates its E3 ubiquitin ligase activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2004;101:10810–4.

54. Cho DH, Nakamura T, Fang J, Cieplak P, Godzik A, Gu Z, Lipton SA. S-nitrosylation of Drp1 mediates beta-amyloid-related mitochondrial fission and neuronal injury. Science. 2009;324:102–5.
55. Schonhoff CM, Matsuoka M, Tummala H, Johnson MA, Estevez AG, Wu R, Kamaid A, Ricart KC, Hashimoto Y, Gaston B, Macdonald TL, Xu Z, Mannick JB. S-nitrosothiol depletion in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2006;103:2404–9.
56. Harraz MM, Marden JJ, Zhou W, Zhang Y, Williams A, Sharov VS, Nelson K, Luo M, Paulson H, Schoneich C, Engelhardt JF. SOD1 mutations disrupt redox-sensitive Rac regulation of NADPH oxidase in a familial ALS model. J Clin Invest. 2008;118:659–70.
57. Boillee S, Yamanaka K, Lobsiger CS, Copeland NG, Jenkins NA, Kassiotis G, Kollias G, Cleveland DW. Onset and progression in inherited ALS determined by motor neurons and microglia. Science. 2006;312:1389–92.
58. Chen H, Yoshioka H, Kim GS, Jung JE, Okami N, Sakata H, Maier CM, Narasimhan P, Goeders CE, Chan PH. Oxidative stress in ischemic brain damage: mechanisms of cell death and potential molecular targets for neuroprotection. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2011;14:1505–17.
59. Jung JE, Kim GS, Narasimhan P, Song YS, Chan PH. Regulation of Mn-superoxide dismutase activity and neuroprotection by STAT3 in mice after cerebral ischemia. J Neurosci. 2009;29:7003–14.
60. Yang G, Chan PH, Chen J, Carlson E, Chen SF, Weinstein P, Epstein CJ, Kamii H. Human copper-zinc superoxide dismutase transgenic mice are highly resistant to reperfusion injury after focal cerebral ischemia. Stroke. 1994;25:165–70.
61. Murakami K, Kondo T, Epstein CJ, Chan PH. Overexpression of CuZn-superoxide dismutase reduces hippocampal injury after global ischemia in transgenic mice. Stroke. 1997;28:1797–804.
62. Keller JN, Kindy MS, Holtsberg FW, St Clair DK, Yen HC, Germeyer A, Steiner SM, Bruce-Keller AJ, Hutchins JB, Mattson MP. Mitochondrial manganese superoxide dismutase prevents neural apoptosis and reduces ischemic brain injury: suppression of peroxynitrite production, lipid peroxidation, and mitochondrial dysfunction. J Neurosci. 1998;18:687–97.
63. Lee BI, Chan PH, Kim GW. Metalloporphyrin-based superoxide dismutase mimic attenuates the nuclear translocation of apoptosis-inducing factor and the subsequent DNA fragmentation after permanent focal cerebral ischemia in mice. Stroke. 2005;36:2712–7.
64. Kondo T, Reaume AG, Huang TT, Carlson E, Murakami K, Chen SF, Hoffman EK, Scott RW, Epstein CJ, Chan PH. Reduction of CuZn-superoxide dismutase activity exacerbates neuronal cell injury and edema formation after transient focal cerebral ischemia. J Neurosci. 1997;17:4180–9.
65. Murakami K, Murata N, Noda Y, Tahara S, Kaneko T, Kinoshita N, Hatsuta H, Murayama S, Barnham KJ, Irie K, Shirasawa T, Shimizu T. SOD1 (copper/zinc superoxide dismutase) deficiency drives amyloid beta protein oligomerization and memory loss in mouse model of Alzheimer disease. J Biol Chem. 2011;286:44557–68.
66. Esposito L, Raber J, Kekonius L, Yan F, Yu GQ, Bien-Ly N, Puolivali J, Scearce-Levie K, Masliah E, Mucke L. Reduction in mitochondrial superoxide dismutase modulates Alzheimer's disease-like pathology and accelerates the onset of behavioral changes in human amyloid precursor protein transgenic mice. J Neurosci. 2006;26:5167–79.
67. Mao P, Manczak M, Calkins MJ, Truong Q, Reddy TP, Reddy AP, Shirendeb U, Lo HH, Rabinovitch PS, Reddy PH. Mitochondria-targeted catalase reduces abnormal APP processing, amyloid beta production and BACE1 in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease: implications for neuroprotection and lifespan extension. Hum Mol Genet. 2012;21:2973–90.
68. Kim SO, Cho IS, Gu HK, Lee DH, Lim H, Yoo SE. KR-31378 protects neurons from ischemia-reperfusion brain injury by attenuating lipid peroxidation and glutathione loss. Eur J Pharmacol. 2004;487:81–91.
69. Martin HL, Teismann P. Glutathione – a review on its role and significance in Parkinson's disease. FASEB J. 2009;23:3263–72.

70. Klivenyi P, Andreassen OA, Ferrante RJ, Dedeoglu A, Mueller G, Lancelot E, Bogdanov M, Andersen JK, Jiang D, Beal MF. Mice deficient in cellular glutathione peroxidase show increased vulnerability to malonate, 3-nitropropionic acid, and 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyridine. J Neurosci. 2000;20:1–7.
71. Poole LB. Bacterial defenses against oxidants: mechanistic features of cysteine-based peroxidases and their flavoprotein reductases. Arch Biochem Biophys. 2005;433:240–54.
72. Gan Y, Ji X, Hu X, Luo Y, Zhang L, Li P, Liu X, Yan F, Vosler P, Gao Y, Stetler RA, Chen J. Transgenic overexpression of peroxiredoxin-2 attenuates ischemic neuronal injury via suppression of a redox-sensitive pro-death signaling pathway. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2012;17:719–32.
73. Hu X, Weng Z, Chu CT, Zhang L, Cao G, Gao Y, Signore A, Zhu J, Hastings T, Greenamyre JT, Chen J. Peroxiredoxin-2 protects against 6-hydroxydopamine-induced dopaminergic neurodegeneration via attenuation of the apoptosis signal-regulating kinase (ASK1) signaling cascade. J Neurosci. 2011;31:247–61.
74. Hyun DH, Emerson SS, Jo DG, Mattson MP, de Cabo R. Calorie restriction up-regulates the plasma membrane redox system in brain cells and suppresses oxidative stress during aging. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2006;103:19908–12.
75. Hyun DH, Mughal MR, Yang H, Lee JH, Ko EJ, Hunt ND, de Cabo R, Mattson MP. The plasma membrane redox system is impaired by amyloid beta-peptide and in the hippocampus and cerebral cortex of 3xTgAD mice. Exp Neurol. 2010;225:423–9.
76. Uttara B, Singh AV, Zamboni P, Mahajan RT. Oxidative stress and neurodegenerative diseases: a review of upstream and downstream antioxidant therapeutic options. Curr Neuropharmacol. 2009;7:65–74.
77. Ouahchi K, Arita M, Kayden H, Hentati F, Ben Hamida M, Sokol R, Arai H, Inoue K, Mandel JL, Koenig M. Ataxia with isolated vitamin E deficiency is caused by mutations in the alpha-tocopherol transfer protein. Nat Genet. 1995;9:141–5.
78. Dunnett SB, Bjorklund A. Prospects for new restorative and neuroprotective treatments in Parkinson's disease. Nature. 1999;399:A32–9.
79. Andersen JK. Oxidative stress in neurodegeneration: cause or consequence? Nat Med. 2004;10(Suppl):S18–25.
80. Spindler M, Beal MF, Henchcliffe C. Coenzyme Q10 effects in neurodegenerative disease. Neuropsychiatr Dis Treat. 2009;5:597–610.
81. Beal MF. Bioenergetic approaches for neuroprotection in Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol. 2003;53 Suppl 3:S39–47. discussion S47–38.
82. Beal MF. A phase III clinical trial of coenzyme Q10 (QE3) in early Parkinson's disease: Parkinson Study Group QE3 Investigators [meeting abstract]. Mov Disord. 2012;27:346.
83. Masutani H, Bai J, Kim YC, Yodoi J. Thioredoxin as a neurotrophic cofactor and an important regulator of neuroprotection. Mol Neurobiol. 2004;29:229–42.
84. Umeda-Kameyama Y, Tsuda M, Ohkura C, Matsuo T, Namba Y, Ohuchi Y, Aigaki T. Thioredoxin suppresses Parkin-associated endothelin receptor-like receptor-induced neurotoxicity and extends longevity in Drosophila. J Biol Chem. 2007;282:11180–7.
85. Lu T, Pan Y, Kao SY, Li C, Kohane I, Chan J, Yankner BA. Gene regulation and DNA damage in the ageing human brain. Nature. 2004;429:883–91.
86. Perry G, Cash AD, Smith MA. Alzheimer Disease and Oxidative Stress. J Biomed Biotechnol. 2002;2:120–3.
87. Mecocci P, MacGarvey U, Beal MF. Oxidative damage to mitochondrial DNA is increased in Alzheimer's disease. Ann Neurol. 1994;36:747–51.
88. Shigenaga MK, Hagen TM, Ames BN. Oxidative damage and mitochondrial decay in aging. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1994;91:10771–8.
89. Busciglio J, Pelsman A, Wong C, Pigino G, Yuan M, Mori H, Yankner BA. Altered metabolism of the amyloid beta precursor protein is associated with mitochondrial dysfunction in Down's syndrome. Neuron. 2002;33:677–88.

90. Li F, Calingasan NY, Yu F, Mauck WM, Toidze M, Almeida CG, Takahashi RH, Carlson GA, Flint Beal M, Lin MT, Gouras GK. Increased plaque burden in brains of APP mutant MnSOD heterozygous knockout mice. J Neurochem. 2004;89:1308–12.
91. Keeney PM, Xie J, Capaldi RA, Bennett Jr JP. Parkinson's disease brain mitochondrial complex I has oxidatively damaged subunits and is functionally impaired and misassembled. J Neurosci. 2006;26:5256–64.
92. Gao HM, Hong JS. Gene-environment interactions: key to unraveling the mystery of Parkinson's disease. Prog Neurobiol. 2011;94:1–19.
93. Schapira AH, Cooper JM, Dexter D, Clark JB, Jenner P, Marsden CD. Mitochondrial complex I deficiency in Parkinson's disease. J Neurochem. 1990;54:823–7.
94. Castello PR, Drechsel DA, Patel M. Mitochondria are a major source of paraquat-induced reactive oxygen species production in the brain. J Biol Chem. 2007;282:14186–93.
95. Schapira AH. Mitochondria in the aetiology and pathogenesis of Parkinson's disease. Lancet Neurol. 2008;7:97–109.
96. Gao HM, Kotzbauer PT, Uryu K, Leight S, Trojanowski JQ, Lee VM. Neuroinflammation and oxidation/nitration of alpha-synuclein linked to dopaminergic neurodegeneration. J Neurosci. 2008;28:7687–98.
97. Devi L, Raghavendran V, Prabhu BM, Avadhani NG, Anandatheerthavarada HK. Mitochondrial import and accumulation of alpha-synuclein impair complex I in human dopaminergic neuronal cultures and Parkinson disease brain. J Biol Chem. 2008;283:9089–100.
98. Martin LJ, Pan Y, Price AC, Sterling W, Copeland NG, Jenkins NA, Price DL, Lee MK. Parkinson's disease alpha-synuclein transgenic mice develop neuronal mitochondrial degeneration and cell death. J Neurosci. 2006;26:41–50.
99. Willis CL, Ray DE. Antioxidants attenuate MK-801-induced cortical neurotoxicity in the rat. Neurotoxicology. 2007;28:161–7.
100. Brennan AM, Suh SW, Won SJ, Narasimhan P, Kauppinen TM, Lee H, Edling Y, Chan PH, Swanson RA. NADPH oxidase is the primary source of superoxide induced by NMDA receptor activation. Nat Neurosci. 2009;12:857–63.
101. Girouard H, Wang G, Gallo EF, Anrather J, Zhou P, Pickel VM, Iadecola C. NMDA receptor activation increases free radical production through nitric oxide and NOX2. J Neurosci. 2009;29:2545–52.
102. Behrens MM, Ali SS, Dao DN, Lucero J, Shekhtman G, Quick KL, Dugan LL. Ketamine-induced loss of phenotype of fast-spiking interneurons is mediated by NADPH-oxidase. Science. 2007;318:1645–7.
103. Behrens MM, Ali SS, Dugan LL. Interleukin-6 mediates the increase in NADPH-oxidase in the ketamine model of schizophrenia. J Neurosci. 2008;28:13957–66.
104. Ha JS, Lim HM, Park SS. Extracellular hydrogen peroxide contributes to oxidative glutamate toxicity. Brain Res. 2010;1359:291–7.
105. Gao HM, Hong JS. Why neurodegenerative diseases are progressive: uncontrolled inflammation drives disease progression. Trends Immunol. 2008;29:357–65.
106. Philips T, Robberecht W. Neuroinflammation in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: role of glial activation in motor neuron disease. Lancet Neurol. 2011;10:253–63.
107. Glass CK, Saijo K, Winner B, Marchetto MC, Gage FH. Mechanisms underlying inflammation in neurodegeneration. Cell. 2010;140:918–34.
108. Milton RH, Abeti R, Averaimo S, DeBiasi S, Vitellaro L, Jiang L, Curmi PM, Breit SN, Duchen MR, Mazzanti M. CLIC1 function is required for beta-amyloid-induced generation of reactive oxygen species by microglia. J Neurosci. 2008;28:11488–99.
109. Wilkinson B, Koenigsknecht-Talboo J, Grommes C, Lee CY, Landreth G. Fibrillar beta-amyloid-stimulated intracellular signaling cascades require Vav for induction of respiratory burst and phagocytosis in monocytes and microglia. J Biol Chem. 2006;281:20842–50.
110. Kim JS, Diebold BA, Babior BM, Knaus UG, Bokoch GM. Regulation of Nox1 activity via protein kinase A-mediated phosphorylation of NoxA1 and 14-3-3 binding. J Biol Chem. 2007;282:34787–800.

111. Parvathenani LK, Tertyshnikova S, Greco CR, Roberts SB, Robertson B, Posmantur R. P2X7 mediates superoxide production in primary microglia and is up-regulated in a transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:13309–17.
112. Choi DY, Lee MK, Hong JT. Lack of CCR5 modifies glial phenotypes and population of the nigral dopaminergic neurons, but not MPTP-induced dopaminergic neurodegeneration. Neurobiol Dis. 2012;49C:159–68.
113. Qin L, Liu Y, Cooper C, Liu B, Wilson B, Hong JS. Microglia enhance beta-amyloid peptide-induced toxicity in cortical and mesencephalic neurons by producing reactive oxygen species. J Neurochem. 2002;83:973–83.
114. Qin B, Cartier L, Dubois-Dauphin M, Li B, Serrander L, Krause KH. A key role for the microglial NADPH oxidase in APP-dependent killing of neurons. Neurobiol Aging. 2006;27:1577–87.
115. Park L, Zhou P, Pitstick R, Capone C, Anrather J, Norris EH, Younkin L, Younkin S, Carlson G, McEwen BS, Iadecola C. Nox2-derived radicals contribute to neurovascular and behavioral dysfunction in mice overexpressing the amyloid precursor protein. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105:1347–52.
116. Wu DC, Teismann P, Tieu K, Vila M, Jackson-Lewis V, Ischiropoulos H, Przedborski S. NADPH oxidase mediates oxidative stress in the 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine model of Parkinson's disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100:6145–50.
117. Gao HM, Hong JS, Zhang W, Liu B. Synergistic dopaminergic neurotoxicity of the pesticide rotenone and inflammogen lipopolysaccharide: relevance to the etiology of Parkinson's disease. J Neurosci. 2003;23:1228–36.
118. Gao HM, Liu B, Hong JS. Critical role for microglial NADPH oxidase in rotenone-induced degeneration of dopaminergic neurons. J Neurosci. 2003;23:6181–7.
119. Gao HM, Liu B, Zhang W, Hong JS. Critical role of microglial NADPH oxidase-derived free radicals in the in vitro MPTP model of Parkinson's disease. FASEB J. 2003;17:1954–6.
120. Qin L, Liu Y, Wang T, Wei SJ, Block ML, Wilson B, Liu B, Hong JS. NADPH oxidase mediates lipopolysaccharide-induced neurotoxicity and proinflammatory gene expression in activated microglia. J Biol Chem. 2004;279:1415–21.
121. Rodriguez-Pallares J, Parga JA, Munoz A, Rey P, Guerra MJ, Labandeira-Garcia JL. Mechanism of 6-hydroxydopamine neurotoxicity: the role of NADPH oxidase and microglial activation in 6-hydroxydopamine-induced degeneration of dopaminergic neurons. J Neurochem. 2007;103:145–56.
122. Rodriguez-Pallares J, Rey P, Parga JA, Munoz A, Guerra MJ, Labandeira-Garcia JL. Brain angiotensin enhances dopaminergic cell death via microglial activation and NADPH-derived ROS. Neurobiol Dis. 2008;31:58–73.
123. Wu XF, Block ML, Zhang W, Qin L, Wilson B, Zhang WQ, Veronesi B, Hong JS. The role of microglia in paraquat-induced dopaminergic neurotoxicity. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2005;7:654–61.
124. Block ML, Wu X, Pei Z, Li G, Wang T, Qin L, Wilson B, Yang J, Hong JS, Veronesi B. Nanometer size diesel exhaust particles are selectively toxic to dopaminergic neurons: the role of microglia, phagocytosis, and NADPH oxidase. FASEB J. 2004;18:1618–20.
125. Gao X, Hu X, Qian L, Yang S, Zhang W, Zhang D, Wu X, Fraser A, Wilson B, Flood PM, Block M, Hong JS. Formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine-induced dopaminergic neurotoxicity via microglial activation: a mediator between peripheral infection and neurodegeneration? Environ Health Perspect. 2008;116:593–8.
126. Zhang W, Wang T, Pei Z, Miller DS, Wu X, Block ML, Wilson B, Zhou Y, Hong JS, Zhang J. Aggregated alpha-synuclein activates microglia: a process leading to disease progression in Parkinson's disease. FASEB J. 2005;19:533–42.
127. Kim YS, Choi DH, Block ML, Lorenzl S, Yang L, Kim YJ, Sugama S, Cho BP, Hwang O, Browne SE, Kim SY, Hong JS, Beal MF, Joh TH. A pivotal role of matrix metalloproteinase-3 activity in dopaminergic neuronal degeneration via microglial activation. FASEB J. 2007;21:179–87.

128. Gao HM, Zhou H, Zhang F, Wilson BC, Kam W, Hong JS. HMGB1 acts on microglia Mac1 to mediate chronic neuroinflammation that drives progressive neurodegeneration. J Neurosci. 2011;31:1081–92.
129. Wu DC, Jackson-Lewis V, Vila M, Tieu K, Teismann P, Vadseth C, Choi DK, Ischiropoulos H, Przedborski S. Blockade of microglial activation is neuroprotective in the 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine mouse model of Parkinson disease. J Neurosci. 2002;22:1763–71.
130. Zhang W, Wang T, Qin L, Gao HM, Wilson B, Ali SF, Hong JS, Liu B. Neuroprotective effect of dextromethorphan in the MPTP Parkinson's disease model: role of NADPH oxidase. FASEB J. 2004;18:589–91.
131. Wu DC, Re DB, Nagai M, Ischiropoulos H, Przedborski S. The inflammatory NADPH oxidase enzyme modulates motor neuron degeneration in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2006;103:12132–7.
132. Li Q, Spencer NY, Pantazis NJ, Engelhardt JF. ALSIN and SOD1G93A regulate endosomal ROS production by glial cells and pro-inflammatory pathways responsible for neurotoxicity. J Biol Chem. 2011;286(46):40151–62.
133. Becanovic K, Jagodic M, Sheng JR, Dahlman I, Aboul-Enein F, Wallstrom E, Olofsson P, Holmdahl R, Lassmann H, Olsson T. Advanced intercross line mapping of Eae5 reveals Ncf-1 and CLDN4 as candidate genes for experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol. 2006;176:6055–64.
134. Hultqvist M, Olofsson P, Holmberg J, Backstrom BT, Tordsson J, Holmdahl R. Enhanced autoimmunity, arthritis, and encephalomyelitis in mice with a reduced oxidative burst due to a mutation in the Ncf1 gene. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2004;101:12646–51.
135. van der Veen RC, Dietlin TA, Hofman FM, Pen L, Segal BH, Holland SM. Superoxide prevents nitric oxide-mediated suppression of helper T lymphocytes: decreased autoimmune encephalomyelitis in nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate oxidase knockout mice. J Immunol. 2000;164:5177–83.
136. Li S, Vana AC, Ribeiro R, Zhang Y. Distinct role of nitric oxide and peroxynitrite in mediating oligodendrocyte toxicity in culture and in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Neuroscience. 2011;184:107–19.
137. Qian L, Wei SJ, Zhang D, Hu X, Xu Z, Wilson B, El-Benna J, Hong JS, Flood PM. Potent anti-inflammatory and neuroprotective effects of TGF-beta1 are mediated through the inhibition of ERK and p47phox-Ser345 phosphorylation and translocation in microglia. J Immunol. 2008;181:660–8.
138. Qian L, Xu Z, Zhang W, Wilson B, Hong JS, Flood PM. Sinomenine, a natural dextrorotatory morphinan analog, is anti-inflammatory and neuroprotective through inhibition of microglial NADPH oxidase. J Neuroinflammation. 2007;4:23.
139. Yang S, Yang J, Yang Z, Chen P, Fraser A, Zhang W, Pang H, Gao X, Wilson B, Hong JS, Block ML. Pituitary adenylate cyclase-activating polypeptide (PACAP) 38 and PACAP4-6 are neuroprotective through inhibition of NADPH oxidase: potent regulators of microglia-mediated oxidative stress. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2006;319:595–603.
140. Zhang D, Hu X, Wei SJ, Liu J, Gao H, Qian L, Wilson B, Liu G, Hong JS. Squamosamide derivative FLZ protects dopaminergic neurons against inflammation-mediated neurodegeneration through the inhibition of NADPH oxidase activity. J Neuroinflammation. 2008;5:21.
141. Zhang F, Shi JS, Zhou H, Wilson B, Hong JS, Gao HM. Resveratrol protects dopamine neurons against lipopolysaccharide-induced neurotoxicity through its anti-inflammatory actions. Mol Pharmacol. 2010;78:466–77.
142. Liu Y, Lo YC, Qian L, Crews FT, Wilson B, Chen HL, Wu HM, Chen SH, Wei K, Lu RB, Ali S, Hong JS. Verapamil protects dopaminergic neuron damage through a novel anti-inflammatory mechanism by inhibition of microglial activation. Neuropharmacology. 2011;60:373–80.
143. Zhang F, Qian L, Flood PM, Shi JS, Hong JS, Gao HM. Inhibition of IkappaB kinase-beta protects dopamine neurons against lipopolysaccharide-induced neurotoxicity. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2010;333:822–33.

144. Choi SH, Lee DY, Chung ES, Hong YB, Kim SU, Jin BK. Inhibition of thrombin-induced microglial activation and NADPH oxidase by minocycline protects dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra in vivo. J Neurochem. 2005;95:1755–65.
145. Zhang QG, Raz L, Wang R, Han D, De Sevilla L, Yang F, Vadlamudi RK, Brann DW. Estrogen attenuates ischemic oxidative damage via an estrogen receptor alpha-mediated inhibition of NADPH oxidase activation. J Neurosci. 2009;29:13823–36.
146. Egea J, Martin-de-Saavedra MD, Parada E, Romero A, Del Barrio L, Rosa AO, Garcia AG, Lopez MG. Galantamine elicits neuroprotection by inhibiting iNOS, NADPH oxidase and ROS in hippocampal slices stressed with anoxia/reoxygenation. Neuropharmacology. 2012; 62:1082–90.
147. Chechneva OV, Mayrhofer F, Daugherty DJ, Pleasure DE, Hong JS, Deng W. Low dose dextromethorphan attenuates moderate experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by inhibiting NOX2 and reducing peripheral immune cells infiltration in the spinal cord. Neurobiol Dis. 2011;44:63–72.
148. Drummond GR, Selemidis S, Griendling KK, Sobey CG. Combating oxidative stress in vascular disease: NADPH oxidases as therapeutic targets. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2011;10: 453–71.
149. Jaquet V, Scapozza L, Clark RA, Krause KH, Lambeth JD. Small-molecule NOX inhibitors: ROS-generating NADPH oxidases as therapeutic targets. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2009; 11:2535–52.

Peripheral Neuroimmune Interactions and Neuropathic Pain

Halina Machelska

Abstract Neuropathic pain often results from damage to peripheral nerves, which can mobilize the immune system, as in Guillain-Barré syndrome, postherpetic neuralgia, or trauma. Although most studies focused on detrimental effects of neuroinflammation, recent experimental data provide evidence on analgesic effects of leukocytes. Pain-ameliorating actions involve anti-inflammatory cytokines and immune cell-derived opioid peptides, which activate opioid receptors on peripheral terminals of sensory neurons in injured nerves. In addition, endocannabinoids are present in leukocytes, and mechanisms involved in the resolution of inflammation are mounted, but their significance to neuropathic pain modulation is yet to be examined. Clinical evidence is less compelling, although in some conditions the occurrence of pain seems to be associated with lowered numbers of macrophages or T lymphocytes. This chapter discusses studies addressing both unfavorable and beneficial actions of neuroinflammation in the regulation of painful neuropathies.

Keywords Pain • Neuropathy • Inflammation • Immune cells • Leukocytes • Opioid peptides • Endocannabinoids • Resolvins

Abbreviations

CCI	Chronic constriction injury
CRF	Corticotropin-releasing factor
CXCL	Chemokine (C-X-C motif) ligand
DRG	Dorsal root ganglion
ICAM-1	Intercellular adhesion molecule-1

H. Machelska (✉)
Klinik für Anäesthesiologie und operative Intensivmedizin, Charité-Universitätsmedizin Berlin, Campus Benjamin Franklin, Hindenburgdamm 30, 12203 Berlin, Germany
e-mail: halina.machelska@charite.de

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_6, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

IL	Interleukin
PSNL	Partial sciatic nerve ligation
SNL	Spinal nerve ligation
TNF	Tumor necrosis factor

1 Introduction

Neuropathic pain can result from perturbations to the peripheral nervous system, which include diseases (e.g., diabetes), trauma (e.g., amputation, nerve compression, entrapment, stretch), or cancer-related chemotherapy. Debilitating consequences are ongoing/spontaneous pain and enhanced sensitivity to normally innocuous (allodynia) or noxious stimuli (hyperalgesia) (reviewed in [1, 2]). Maladaptive alterations in the nervous system include ectopic impulse generation (at the site of axonal damage and/or in cell bodies), sensory fiber degeneration, sensory and sympathetic nerve sprouting to areas they normally do not innervate, disinhibition (i.e., decreased activity or loss of inhibitory neurons), enhanced activity of descending facilitatory, or impaired activity of descending inhibitory transmission (reviewed in [3, 4]). Furthermore, increasing evidence shows that nerve damage mobilizes the immune system, which can occur in response to infection (e.g., by varicella zoster virus in postherpetic neuralgia), autoimmune disease (Guillain-Barré syndrome), nerve compression (e.g., by tumor), or amputation [5–8]. Neuroimmune mechanisms have been predominately examined in animal models, including spinal nerve ligation (SNL), in which lumbar L5 and/or L6 nerves are tightly ligated; chronic constriction injury (CCI), in which loose ligations are placed around the sciatic or saphenous nerves; and partial sciatic or saphenous nerve ligation (PSNL), in which the dorsal third to half of the nerve is tightly ligated (reviewed in [9, 10]). Traditionally, attention has been focused on the enhancement of pain by leukocytes in neuropathy (reviewed in [10–15]). Interestingly, recent research suggests that immune cells can also ameliorate pain associated with nerve lesion (reviewed in [9, 16]). This chapter provides an overview of bimodal actions of the immune response in the modulation of neuropathic pain: detrimental, which can be mediated by proinflammatory cytokines, and beneficial, which are mediated by anti-inflammatory cytokines and opioid peptides. Other possible mediators such as endocannabinoids and resolvins are also addressed.

2 Immune Responses in the Generation of Neuropathic Pain

Injury to peripheral nerves leads to activation of resident cells, such as fibroblasts, mast cells, and macrophages as well as Schwann cells, which secrete proinflammatory cytokines (e.g., tumor necrosis factor [TNF]-α, interleukin [IL]-1β, IL-6), chemokines, nitric oxide, reactive oxygen species, prostaglandins, growth factors, or metalloproteases. Additionally, damaged nerve fibers release vasoactive and

algesic substances, including substance P and calcitonin gene-related peptide. Action of these mediators results in the blood-nerve barrier disruption, vasodilation, and enhanced blood vessel permeability and consequently in extravasation of blood-borne leukocytes (neutrophils, monocytes, and lymphocytes), which accumulate in lesioned nerves and dorsal root ganglia (DRG) (reviewed in [9–12, 14]).

Several studies have directly investigated the role of leukocytes in neuropathic pain. Systemic treatment with a cytotoxic neutrophil antibody decreased the number of neutrophils in the blood or injured nerves and diminished heat or mechanical hypersensitivity following PSNL [17, 18]. Stabilization of mast cells by injections of sodium cromoglycate increased the number of intact mast cells, reduced counts of neutrophils and macrophages at the site of nerve damage, and attenuated both forms of hypersensitivity after PSNL [19]. Treatments affecting macrophages were less consistent. Thus, mice with genetically delayed influx of macrophages had reduced heat hyperalgesia but enhanced mechanical hypersensitivity, compared to wild-type mice following CCI [20]. Treatment with liposome-encapsulated clodronate decreased the number of macrophages infiltrating injured nerves, reduced degeneration of nerve fibers, and attenuated thermal hyperalgesia following PSNL [21], but did not improve mechanical hypersensitivity after SNL [22]. Additionally, clodronate application in another study only slightly decreased sensitivity to noxious pressure and did not ameliorate sensitivity to innocuous mechanical stimulation in the PSNL model [23]. Furthermore, administration of macrophages to uninjured nerves did not induce mechanical hypersensitivity [22]. Together, these variable results suggest a limited contribution of macrophages to the generation of neuropathic pain. The role of T lymphocytes was assessed in athymic nude rats and mice, CD4 knockouts, recombination-activating gene-1 knockouts, and in mice with severe combined immunodeficiency. These animals developed less mechanical or thermal hypersensitivity compared to wild-type animals following CCI or transection of spinal nerves. However, the effects were usually moderate, often did not correlate with the temporal expression of T lymphocytes, and did not always appear to be solely attributed to their absence, but probably to the T lymphocyte genetic deficiency-related secondary alterations (e.g., decreased expression of astrocytes in the spinal cord) [24–27].

Enhancement of pain by leukocytes has been attributed to proinflammatory cytokines, of which TNF-α and IL-1β were most often examined. TNF-α mRNA or protein levels as well as TNF-α receptors were found at the site of nerve injury and in the DRG neurons following CCI [28, 29]. In animals without nerve damage, TNF-α and IL-1β applied on the sciatic nerves or into hind paws elicited discharges in peripheral sensory neurons [30] or induced mechanical and heat hypersensitivity [31]. Moreover, these electrophysiological and behavioral effects of TNF-α were enhanced following SNL [32]. Interestingly, however, the excitatory effects were produced by TNF-α and IL-1β in lower but not higher concentrations, which possibly resulted from activation of anti-inflammatory cytokines by higher doses of TNF-α and IL-1β [30–32]. Several other proinflammatory cytokines, IL-6, IL-15, IL-17, and IL-18, have also been implicated (reviewed in [14]). Consistently, strategies interfering with proinflammatory cytokine function ameliorated neuropathy-induced hypersensitivity. Thalidomide, which inhibits TNF-α synthesis, attenuated mechanical and heat hypersensitivity

following CCI. These effects were associated with decreased endoneurial levels of TNF-α and enhanced amounts of the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10 in the injured nerves as well as of the opioid peptide Met-enkephalin in the spinal cord [33]. Both forms of hypersensitivity were also reduced by etanercept, which prevents TNF-α binding to its receptor [34], and by antibodies to TNF-α or IL-1β, following CCI [35, 36]. Additionally, approaches indirectly affecting proinflammatory cytokine actions have been applied. Hence, blocking adenosine triphosphate signaling by purinergic 2 receptor antagonist (pyridoxalphosphate-6-azophenyl-2′,4′-disulphonic acid) decreased IL-1β mRNA in injured nerves, DRG, and spinal cord (where also IL-1β protein level was reduced) as well as IL-6 mRNA in nerves and diminished heat and mechanical hypersensitivity following CCI [37]. Similar effects were also found by antagonizing estrogen receptor β with the isoflavone genistein [38]. Interestingly, systemic treatment with neural stem cells resulted in their migration to the injured nerves (but not uninjured nerves, DRG, spinal cord, or brain), diminished mRNA and protein levels of IL-1β and IL-6, slightly enhanced anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10 mRNA (but not protein), and improved heat and mechanical hypersensitivity after CCI [39]. Likewise, analgesic effects of systemically applied human adipose-derived stem cells were associated with lower levels of IL-1β and elevated levels of IL-10 in CCI nerves [40].

In summary, most animal studies show that dampening proinflammatory cytokine responses improves neuropathic pain. Depletion of immune cells produced less coherent results, particularly regarding T lymphocytes and macrophages, which might be related to their heterogeneity. For example, while in vitro polarized T helper-1 lymphocytes (producing proinflammatory cytokines) enhanced pain, the T helper-2 lymphocytes (producing anti-inflammatory cytokines) decreased mechanical and thermal hypersensitivity following CCI [24]. Macrophages are the key phagocytic cells for removing degenerating axons' debris in a process of Wallerian degeneration, which facilitates the regrowth of injured axons (reviewed in [11]). Similar to lymphocytes, macrophages consist of M1 and M2 subpopulations [41], which might differentially modulate neuropathic pain. Additionally, immune cells are not the only source of cytokines, which are also present in Schwann, satellite glial, and neuronal cells (reviewed in [11, 13, 14]), and the relative contribution of each cell type has not been clarified. Moreover, as discussed below, immune cells produce opioid peptides, which serve as endogenous analgesics.

3 Analgesic Effects of Immune Responses in Neuropathy

3.1 Anti-inflammatory Cytokines

As described above, analgesic effects of various treatments aiming at inhibition of proinflammatory cytokines were associated with elevated levels of anti-inflammatory cytokines. For instance, amelioration of neuropathy-induced hypersensitivity by

thalidomide and stem cells correlated with increased numbers of macrophages expressing IL-10 or elevated levels of IL-10 in CCI nerves [33, 39, 40], and splenocytes driven in vitro to produce IL-4, IL-10, and IL-13 attenuated CCI-induced hypersensitivity following in vivo transfer [24]. Additionally, an injection of IL-10 at the site of nerve damage diminished the number of endoneurial TNF-α-expressing cells and attenuated thermal hypersensitivity after CCI [42]. Additionally, a viral vector encoding IL-4 led to the expression of IL-4 protein in DRG neurons and reduced mechanical and heat hypersensitivity following SNL. These effects were associated with decreased levels of IL-1β, prostaglandin E2, and phosphorylated p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase in the spinal cord [43]. The beneficial effects of anti-inflammatory cytokines are predominantly mediated through suppression of proinflammatory cytokines. Additionally, IL-4 upregulates opioid receptors [44].

3.2 Opioid Peptides

Opioid peptides belong to three main groups represented by endorphins, enkephalins, and dynorphins, which derive from the respective precursors, pro-opiomelanocortin, proenkephalin, and prodynorphin. Two additional opioids, endomorphin-1 and endomorphin-2, are known, but their precursors have not been identified. Opioid peptides possess different selectivity for the three opioid receptors, μ (endomorphins, endorphins, enkephalins), δ (enkephalins, endorphins), and κ (dynorphins), which belong to the family of seven transmembrane domain Gαi/o protein-coupled receptors. In addition to the nervous system, opioid peptides are synthesized by leukocytes. The full-length pro-opiomelanocortin transcripts as well as enzymes required for processing of pro-opiomelanocortin and proenkephalin have been detected in rodent or human immune cells. Importantly, β-endorphin, Met-enkephalin, Leu-enkephalin, dynorphin A, and endomorphins were found in T lymphocytes, neutrophils, and monocytes/macrophages infiltrating injured tissues. Opioid receptors have also been found in immune cells; however, their significance in pain transmission has not been directly examined. Thus, in peripheral injured tissue, leukocyte-derived opioid peptides activate opioid receptors on peripheral sensory neurons to locally inhibit pain. Mechanisms of such peripheral opioid analgesia have been extensively examined in animal models of inflammatory pain and are addressed in recent review articles [16, 45, 46]. Briefly, opioid peptide-producing immune cells use adhesion molecules (selectins, intercellular adhesion molecule-1, integrins α_4 and β_2) and chemokine (C-X-C motif) ligands (CXCL1, CXCL2/3) to accumulate in peripheral inflamed tissues [47–49]. Upon stressful stimulation (e.g., experimental cold water swim) or in response to releasing agents, such as corticotropin-releasing factor (CRF), cytokines (TNF-α, IL-1β), chemokines (CXCL1, CXCL2/3), and formyl peptides, immune cells secrete opioid peptides. The release of opioids from leukocytes is CRF-, IL-1-, and formyl peptide-receptor specific. Depending on the cell type, opioid peptide secretion is mediated by extracellular Ca^{2+} or by inositol trisphosphate receptor-triggered release of Ca^{2+} from

endoplasmic reticulum and is mimicked by potassium, consistent with vesicular secretion [50–52]. Moreover, blocking aminopeptidase N and neutral endopeptidase on leukocytes and peripheral terminals of sensory neurons prevented degradation of enkephalins and dynorphin A and locally ameliorated inflammatory pain [53].

The role of neuroimmune interactions involving opioids in the regulation of neuropathic pain has been recently investigated. β-Endorphin, Met-enkephalin, and dynorphin A proteins and their precursors' mRNA were found in neutrophils, macrophages, and T lymphocytes accumulating at the injured nerves following CCI or PSNL [27, 54–56]. All three opioid receptors were expressed in sensory fibers, and μ- and δ-receptors were upregulated in injured nerves [54, 57, 58]. Consistent with the expression of CRF receptors on opioid peptide-containing leukocytes, application of CRF at the site of nerve damage reversed mechanical hypersensitivity following CCI. These analgesic effects were blocked by locally applied CRF receptor antagonist, antibodies to β-endorphin, Met-enkephalin or dynorphin A, and selective antagonists of μ-, δ-, and κ-opioid receptors, as well as by systemic injections of antibody to intercellular adhesion molecule-1 [54]. While opioid peptide-containing neutrophils and macrophages are involved at early (2–3 days) and later (14–15 days) neuropathy stages, β-endorphin-containing T lymphocytes mediated analgesia in advanced neuritis, as demonstrated in mice with severe combined immunodeficiency. Hence, attenuated CRF-induced analgesia in these mice was restored by transfer of wild-type mice-derived T lymphocytes in the CCI model [27]. Additionally, peripherally restricted opioid receptor antagonist (naloxone methiodide) applied at the nerve injury site enhanced heat hyperalgesia following PSNL, suggesting a tonic control of neuropathic pain by endogenous opioids [55]. Furthermore, systemic treatment with granulocyte colony-stimulating factor enhanced the number of granulocytes containing β-endorphin in injured nerves and attenuated heat and mechanical hypersensitivity in the naloxone methiodide-sensitive manner. Concomitantly, TNF-α and IL-6 were downregulated in the DRG, whereas microglial activation was attenuated in the spinal cord [56]. Clearly, immune cells can be protective against neuropathic pain by utilizing opioid peptides.

3.3 Other Mediators

Endocannabinoids *N*-arachidonoylethanolamine (anandamide) and 2-arachidonoyl-glycerol are synthesized from polyunsaturated fatty acid, and their levels are regulated by metabolizing enzymes. Anandamide is primarily inactivated by the fatty acid amide hydrolase, while 2-arachidonoyl-glycerol is metabolized by monoacylglycerol lipase. Endocannabinoids exert their actions via cannabinoid receptors 1 and 2, which belong to the family of seven transmembrane domain Gαi/o protein-coupled receptors. Both cannabinoid receptors and their ligands are expressed in the pain-modulating pathways of the central and peripheral nervous system. Additionally, anandamide and 2-arachidonoyl-glycerol were found to be produced

and secreted by macrophage cell lines or native cultured macrophages. Similarly, cannabinoid receptor 2 and to a lesser extent cannabinoid receptor 1 are expressed on splenocytes, lymphocytes, natural killer cells, mast cells, monocytes, macrophages, and neutrophils in cell cultures and in vivo. Macrophage-derived anandamide and 2-arachidonoyl-glycerol interacting with vascular cannabinoid receptors were implied in endotoxin-induced hypotension, whereas activation of leukocytic cannabinoid receptors modulated leukocyte function (e.g., cytokine production and/or release, cell proliferation, migration, and apoptosis) (reviewed in [16, 59]). However, the significance of such immunomodulatory effects of cannabinoid receptors and of immune cell-derived endocannabinoids in pain transmission is yet to be established. For example, a peripherally restricted inhibitor of fatty acid amide hydrolase elevated levels of anandamide in peripheral tissue and suppressed hypersensitivity in inflammatory and neuropathic pain in a cannabinoid receptor 1-dependent manner, but the cellular source of anandamide was not identified [60].

Resolvins D and E are lipid mediators synthesized from polyunsaturated fatty acid by several enzymes, including cyclooxygenase-2, cytochrome P450, and 5- and 15-lipoxygenases, and are involved in the resolution of inflammation. Application of synthetic resolvin E1 into inflamed tissue reduced local neutrophil infiltration and expression of TNF-α, IL-1β, IL-6, and chemokine CCL2 and diminished heat hypersensitivity in an inflammatory pain model. Analgesic effects were also observed following injection of resolvin E1 on the spinal cord, in inflammatory and SNL pain models. These actions were mediated by Gαi-associated ChemR23 receptor. The receptor has been found on spinal microglia and central and peripheral terminals of DRG neurons as well as in macrophages accumulating in inflamed tissue (reviewed in [61]). Nevertheless, the relative contribution of each cell type as sources of ChemR23 receptors and resolvins to the modulation of neuropathic pain awaits clarification.

4 Clinical Evidence

Several clinical conditions associated with peripheral nerve damage involve immune reactions. In patients with neuropathies of various etiologies (including vasculitis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, alcohol abuse, and AIDS), the immunoreactivity of TNF-α in Schwann cells as well as of TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6 in macrophages and T lymphocytes in sural nerve biopsies was higher in patients with painful compared to those with nonpainful neuropathies. In addition, serum levels of TNF-α and IL-2 mRNA were higher in patients with painful neuropathy, while in those with painless neuropathy anti-inflammatory IL-4 and IL-10 mRNA levels were elevated. Proinflammatory IL-8 concentration in the cerebrospinal fluid was higher in postherpetic neuralgia patients compared to healthy controls, but there were no differences in serum levels of various other pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokines (reviewed in [62]). Interestingly, however, there were significantly fewer $CD3^+$ and $CD8^+$

T lymphocytes in biopsies of zoster skin lesions in these patients [5]. Furthermore, lowered plasma $CD4^+$ T lymphocyte counts paralleled increased incidences of sensory neuropathies in HIV patients [63]. Additionally, patients who developed phantom pain had significantly lower number of macrophages in nerve biopsies compared to patients without phantom pain after leg amputation; there were no differences in the number of T and B lymphocytes, cells expressing TNF-α or TNF-α receptor 1 in nerves, as well as in the serum levels of TNF-α and IL-6 [8]. Together, it appears that in some conditions, decreased counts of macrophages or T lymphocytes were associated with the presence of pain, suggesting their beneficial role in neuropathy. It is more difficult to find clear relationships between neuropathic pain and the expression of cytokines in patients, which might be related to the variety of neuropathies, stages of the disease, and/or examined tissue.

The investigation of the role of opioid peptide-containing immune cells in neuropathic pain has just begun in preclinical studies. So far, the clinical relevance of peripheral endogenous opioid analgesia has been shown for somatic inflammatory pain. β-Endorphin and Met-enkephalin were detected in synovial granulocytes, monocytes/macrophages, lymphocytes, and plasma cells, while opioid receptors were found in synovial tissue sensory neurons in patients with acute knee trauma and chronic arthritis. Blockade of opioid receptors by the antagonist naloxone injected into such tissue exacerbated pain after knee surgery. Furthermore, in these patients, CRF receptors and β-endorphin were co-expressed in synovial leukocytes, and the injection of CRF into the knee joint resulted in a transient but significant reduction of postoperative pain. This strongly indicates that immune cells continuously release and can be stimulated to secret opioid peptides to counteract inflammatory pain (reviewed in [16]). It remains to be examined whether immune mechanisms involving opioids, cannabinoids, and resolvins contribute to the regulation of neuropathic pain in patients.

5 Conclusions

There is a compelling body of evidence on the association of neuropathy with activation of the immune system. Although a majority of studies concentrated on pain-generating properties of immune responses, the analgesic actions of opioid peptide-containing leukocytes in experimental neuropathy were recently reported, and the presence of pain in some clinical neuropathic conditions correlated with lowered numbers of macrophages or T lymphocytes. Thus, it will be interesting to investigate the opioid production/release in leukocytes in such patients. These findings suggest that immunosuppressive strategies for the treatment of inflammatory diseases carry a risk to exacerbate pain. Clinical therapy of neuropathic pain with immunomodulatory agents such as steroids, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, or anti-TNF-α drugs showed limited efficacy and can be associated with serious side effects, such as gastrointestinal ulcers and bleeding, kidney and liver toxicity,

infection, cardiovascular complications, and risk for tumor induction as well as neurological disorders, including demyelinating neuropathies (reviewed in [10, 64, 65]). Clearly, immune responses accompanying nerve injury are not exclusively maladaptive, and their favorable actions are not restricted to the removal of tissue debris and improvement of nerve regeneration. It appears that immune cells need to be stimulated to secrete opioids to produce adequate pain relief. Technology-oriented research [66] is needed to find novel ways to target opioid-containing cells, anti-inflammatory cytokines, and mediators involved in the resolution of inflammation in the relevant damaged tissues. This represents an attractive opportunity to use intrinsic beneficial effects of neuroinflammation as possible therapies of painful neuropathies. Importantly, since chronic pain is a complex biopsychosocial phenomenon, an interdisciplinary management, including psychological, physical, and occupational therapy, needs to be combined with pharmacological treatments [67].

References

1. Baron R, Binder A, Wasner G. Neuropathic pain: diagnosis, pathophysiological mechanisms, and treatment. Lancet Neurol. 2010;9(8):807–19.
2. Bennett GJ. What is spontaneous pain and who has it? J Pain. 2012;13(10):921–9.
3. Costigan M, Scholz J, Woolf CJ. Neuropathic pain: a maladaptive response of the nervous system to damage. Annu Rev Neurosci. 2009;32:1–32.
4. Nickel FT, Seifert F, Lanz S, Maihöfner C. Mechanisms of neuropathic pain. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol. 2012;22(2):81–91.
5. Zak-Prelich M, McKenzie RC, Sysa-Jedrzejowska A, Norval M. Local immune responses and systemic cytokine responses in zoster: relationship to the development of postherpetic neuralgia. Clin Exp Immunol. 2003;131(2):318–23.
6. Nyland H, Matre R, Mørk S. Immunological characterization of sural nerve biopsies from patients with Guillain-Barré syndrome. Ann Neurol. 1981;9(suppl):80–6.
7. Benoliel R, Epstein J, Eliav E, Jurevic R, Elad S. Orofacial pain in cancer: part I-mechanisms. J Dent Res. 2007;86(6):491–505.
8. Stremmel C, Horn C, Eder S, Dimmler A, Lang W. The impact of immunological parameters on the development of phantom pain after major amputation. Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg. 2005;30(1):79–82.
9. Machelska H. Dual peripheral actions of immune cells in neuropathic pain. Arch Immunol Ther Exp (Warsz). 2011;59(1):11–24.
10. Calvo M, Dawes JM, Bennett DL. The role of the immune system in the generation of neuropathic pain. Lancet Neurol. 2012;11(7):629–42.
11. Watkins LR, Maier SF. Beyond neurons: evidence that immune and glial cells contribute to pathological pain states. Physiol Rev. 2002;82(4):981–1011.
12. Scholz J, Woolf CJ. The neuropathic pain triad: neurons, immune cells and glia. Nat Neurosci. 2007;10(11):1361–8.
13. Uçeyler N, Schäfers M, Sommer C. Mode of action of cytokines on nociceptive neurons. Exp Brain Res. 2009;196(1):67–78.
14. Austin PJ, Moalem-Taylor G. The neuro-immune balance in neuropathic pain: involvement of inflammatory immune cells, immune-like glial cells and cytokines. J Neuroimmunol. 2010; 229(1–2):26–50.
15. Sacerdote P, Franchi S, Moretti S, Castelli M, Procacci P, Magnaghi V, Panerai AE. Cytokine modulation is necessary for efficacious treatment of experimental neuropathic pain. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2013;8(1):202–11.

16. Stein C, Machelska H. Modulation of peripheral sensory neurons by the immune system: implications for pain therapy. Pharmacol Rev. 2011;63(4):860–81.
17. Perkins NM, Tracey DJ. Hyperalgesia due to nerve injury: role of neutrophils. Neuroscience. 2000;101(3):745–57.
18. Nadeau S, Filali M, Zhang J, Kerr BJ, Rivest S, Soulet D, Iwakura Y, de Rivero Vaccari JP, Keane RW, Lacroix S. Functional recovery after peripheral nerve injury is dependent on the pro-inflammatory cytokines IL-1β and TNF: implications for neuropathic pain. J Neurosci. 2011;31(35):12533–42.
19. Zuo Y, Perkins NM, Tracey DJ, Geczy CL. Inflammation and hyperalgesia induced by nerve injury in the rat: a key role of mast cells. Pain. 2003;105(3):467–79.
20. Sommer C, Schäfers M. Painful mononeuropathy in C57BL/Wld mice with delayed Wallerian degeneration: differential effects of cytokine production and nerve regeneration on thermal and mechanical hypersensitivity. Brain Res. 1998;784(1–2):154–62.
21. Liu T, van Rooijen N, Tracey DJ. Depletion of macrophages reduces axonal degeneration and hyperalgesia following nerve injury. Pain. 2000;86(1–2):25–32.
22. Rutkowski MD, Pahl JL, Sweitzer S, van Rooijen N, DeLeo JA. Limited role of macrophages in generation of nerve injury-induced mechanical allodynia. Physiol Behav. 2000;71(3–4):225–35.
23. Barclay J, Clark AK, Ganju P, Gentry C, Patel S, Wotherspoon G, Buxton F, Song C, Ullah J, Winter J, Fox A, Bevan S, Malcangio M. Role of the cysteine protease cathepsin S in neuropathic hyperalgesia. Pain. 2007;130(3):225–34.
24. Moalem G, Xu K, Yu L. T lymphocytes play a role in neuropathic pain following peripheral nerve injury in rats. Neuroscience. 2004;129(3):767–77.
25. Kleinschnitz C, Hofstetter HH, Meuth SG, Braeuninger S, Sommer C, Stoll G. T cell infiltration after chronic constriction injury of mouse sciatic nerve is associated with interleukin-17 expression. Exp Neurol. 2006;200(2):480–5.
26. Cao L, DeLeo JA. CNS-infiltrating CD4+ T lymphocytes contribute to murine spinal nerve transection-induced neuropathic pain. Eur J Immunol. 2008;38(2):448–58.
27. Labuz D, Schreiter A, Schmidt Y, Brack A, Machelska H. T lymphocytes containing β-endorphin ameliorate mechanical hypersensitivity following nerve injury. Brain Behav Immun. 2010;24(7):1045–53.
28. Shubayev VI, Myers RR. Axonal transport of TNF-alpha in painful neuropathy: distribution of ligand tracer and TNF receptors. J Neuroimmunol. 2001;114(1–2):48–56.
29. Schäfers M, Geis C, Svensson CI, Luo ZD, Sommer C. Selective increase of tumour necrosis factor-alpha in injured and spared myelinated primary afferents after chronic constrictive injury of rat sciatic nerve. Eur J Neurosci. 2003;17(4):791–804.
30. Sorkin LS, Xiao WH, Wagner R, Myers RR. Tumour necrosis factor-alpha induces ectopic activity in nociceptive primary afferent fibres. Neuroscience. 1997;81(1):255–62.
31. Zelenka M, Schäfers M, Sommer C. Intraneural injection of interleukin-1beta and tumor necrosis factor-alpha into rat sciatic nerve at physiological doses induces signs of neuropathic pain. Pain. 2005;116(3):257–63.
32. Schäfers M, Lee DH, Brors D, Yaksh TL, Sorkin LS. Increased sensitivity of injured and adjacent uninjured rat primary sensory neurons to exogenous tumor necrosis factor-alpha after spinal nerve ligation. J Neurosci. 2003;23(7):3028–38.
33. George A, Marziniak M, Schäfers M, Toyka KV, Sommer C. Thalidomide treatment in chronic constrictive neuropathy decreases endoneurial tumor necrosis factor-alpha, increases interleukin-10 and has long-term effects on spinal cord dorsal horn met-enkephalin. Pain. 2000;88(3):267–75.
34. Sommer C, Schäfers M, Marziniak M, Toyka KV. Etanercept reduces hyperalgesia in experimental painful neuropathy. J Peripher Nerv Syst. 2001;6(2):67–72.
35. Lindenlaub T, Teuteberg P, Hartung T, Sommer C. Effects of neutralizing antibodies to TNF-alpha on pain-related behavior and nerve regeneration in mice with chronic constriction injury. Brain Res. 2000;866(1–2):15–22.

36. Sommer C, Petrausch S, Lindenlaub T, Toyka KV. Neutralizing antibodies to interleukin 1-receptor reduce pain associated behavior in mice with experimental neuropathy. Neurosci Lett. 1999;270(1):25–8.
37. Martucci C, Trovato AE, Costa B, Borsani E, Franchi S, Magnaghi V, Panerai AE, Rodella LF, Valsecchi AE, Sacerdote P, Colleoni M. The purinergic antagonist PPADS reduces pain related behaviours and interleukin-1 beta, interleukin-6, iNOS and nNOS overproduction in central and peripheral nervous system after peripheral neuropathy in mice. Pain. 2008;137(1):81–95.
38. Valsecchi AE, Franchi S, Panerai AE, Sacerdote P, Trovato AE, Colleoni M. Genistein, a natural phytoestrogen from soy, relieves neuropathic pain following chronic constriction sciatic nerve injury in mice: anti-inflammatory and antioxidant activity. J Neurochem. 2008;107(1): 230–40.
39. Franchi S, Valsecchi AE, Borsani E, Procacci P, Ferrari D, Zalfa C, Sartori P, Rodella LF, Vescovi A, Maione S, Rossi F, Sacerdote P, Colleoni M, Panerai AE. Intravenous neural stem cells abolish nociceptive hypersensitivity and trigger nerve regeneration in experimental neuropathy. Pain. 2012;153(4):850–61.
40. Sacerdote P, Niada S, Franchi S, Arrigoni E, Rossi A, Yenagi V, de Girolamo L, Panerai AE, Brini AT. Systemic administration of human adipose-derived stem cells reverts nociceptive hypersensitivity in an experimental model of neuropathy. Stem Cells Dev. 2013;22(8):1252–63.
41. Lee S, Zhang J. Heterogeneity of macrophages in injured trigeminal nerves: cytokine/chemokine expressing vs phagocytic macrophages. Brain Behav Immun. 2012;26(6):891–903.
42. Wagner R, Janjigian M, Myers RR. Anti-inflammatory interleukin-10 therapy in CCI neuropathy decreases thermal hyperalgesia, macrophage recruitment, and endoneurial TNF-alpha expression. Pain. 1998;74(1):35–42.
43. Hao S, Mata M, Glorioso JC, Fink DJ. HSV-mediated expression of interleukin-4 in dorsal root ganglion neurons reduces neuropathic pain. Mol Pain. 2006;2:6.
44. Kraus J. Regulation of mu-opioid receptors by cytokines. Front Biosci (Schol Ed). 2009;1:164–70.
45. Hua S, Cabot PJ. Mechanisms of peripheral immune-cell-mediated analgesia in inflammation: clinical and therapeutic implications. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2010;31(9):427–33.
46. Bodnar RJ. Endogenous opiates and behavior: 2012. Peptides. 2013;50:55–95.
47. Machelska H, Mousa SA, Brack A, Schopohl JK, Rittner HL, Schäfer M, Stein C. Opioid control of inflammatory pain regulated by intercellular adhesion molecule-1. J Neurosci. 2002;22(13):5588–96.
48. Machelska H, Brack A, Mousa SA, Schopohl JK, Rittner HL, Schäfer M, Stein C. Selectins and integrins but not platelet-endothelial cell adhesion molecule-1 regulate opioid inhibition of inflammatory pain. Br J Pharmacol. 2004;142(4):772–80.
49. Brack A, Rittner HL, Machelska H, Leder K, Mousa SA, Schäfer M, Stein C. Control of inflammatory pain by chemokine-mediated recruitment of opioid-containing polymorphonuclear cells. Pain. 2004;112(3):229–38.
50. Cabot PJ, Carter L, Schäfer M, Stein C. Methionine-enkephalin-and Dynorphin A-release from immune cells and control of inflammatory pain. Pain. 2001;93(3):207–12.
51. Rittner HL, Labuz D, Schaefer M, Mousa SA, Schulz S, Schäfer M, Stein C, Brack A. Pain control by CXCR2 ligands through Ca2+-regulated release of opioid peptides from polymorphonuclear cells. FASEB J. 2006;20(14):2627–9.
52. Rittner HL, Hackel D, Voigt P, Mousa S, Stolz A, Labuz D, Schäfer M, Schaefer M, Stein C, Brack A. Mycobacteria attenuate nociceptive responses by formyl peptide receptor triggered opioid peptide release from neutrophils. PLoS Pathog. 2009;5(4):e1000362.
53. Schreiter A, Gore C, Labuz D, Fournie-Zaluski MC, Roques BP, Stein C, Machelska H. Pain inhibition by blocking leukocytic and neuronal opioid peptidases in peripheral inflamed tissue. FASEB J. 2012;26(12):5161–71.
54. Labuz D, Schmidt Y, Schreiter A, Rittner HL, Mousa SA, Machelska H. Immune cell-derived opioids protect against neuropathic pain in mice. J Clin Invest. 2009;119(2):278–86.

55. Liou JT, Liu FC, Mao CC, Lai YS, Day YJ. Inflammation confers dual effects on nociceptive processing in chronic neuropathic pain model. Anesthesiology. 2011;114(3):660–72.
56. Chao PK, Lu KT, Lee YL, Chen JC, Wang HL, Yang YL, Cheng MY, Liao MF, Ro LS. Early systemic granulocyte-colony stimulating factor treatment attenuates neuropathic pain after peripheral nerve injury. PLoS One. 2012;7(8):e43680.
57. Truong W, Cheng C, Xu QG, Li XQ, Zochodne DW. Mu opioid receptors and analgesia at the site of a peripheral nerve injury. Ann Neurol. 2003;53(3):366–75.
58. Kabli N, Cahill CM. Anti-allodynic effects of peripheral delta opioid receptors in neuropathic pain. Pain. 2007;127(1–2):84–93.
59. Tanasescu R, Constantinescu CS. Cannabinoids and the immune system: an overview. Immunobiology. 2010;215(8):588–97.
60. Clapper JR, Moreno-Sanz G, Russo R, Guijarro A, Vacondio F, Duranti A, Tontini A, Sanchini S, Sciolino NR, Spradley JM, Hohmann AG, Calignano A, Mor M, Tarzia G, Piomelli D. Anandamide suppresses pain initiation through a peripheral endocannabinoid mechanism. Nat Neurosci. 2010;13(10):1265–70.
61. Ji RR, Xu ZZ, Strichartz G, Serhan CN. Emerging roles of resolvins in the resolution of inflammation and pain. Trends Neurosci. 2011;34(11):599–609.
62. Uçeyler N, Sommer C. Cytokine regulation in animal models of neuropathic pain and in human diseases. Neurosci Lett. 2008;437(3):194–8.
63. Childs EA, Lyles RH, Selnes OA, Chen B, Miller EN, Cohen BA, Becker JT, Mellors J, McArthur JC. Plasma viral load and CD4 lymphocytes predict HIV-associated dementia and sensory neuropathy. Neurology. 1999;52(3):607–13.
64. Fromont A, De Seze J, Fleury MC, Maillefert JF, Moreau T. Inflammatory demyelinating events following treatment with anti-tumor necrosis factor. Cytokine. 2009;45(2):55–7.
65. Woodcock J. A difficult balance–pain management, drug safety, and the FDA. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(22):2105–7.
66. Rosen H, Abribat T. The rise and rise of drug delivery. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2005;4(5): 381–5.
67. Stein C. Opioids, sensory systems and chronic pain. Eur J Pharmacol. 2013;716(1–3):179–87.

Part II
Neurological Diseases and Inflammation

Innate and Adaptive Immune-Mediated Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration in Parkinson's Disease

Rebecca A. Wilshusen and R. Lee Mosley

Abstract Innate and adaptive immunity affect the pathogenesis of Parkinson's disease (PD). In particular, the activation of microglia that feed neuroinflammation and oxidative stress influences the degeneration of dopaminergic neurons along the nigrostriatal axis during disease. Activated microglia that proximate degenerating neurons within the substantia nigra are a hallmark of PD. Other PD hallmarks include neuronal Lewy body inclusions composed primarily of aggregated ubiquitin and neuronal proteins. Under inflammatory conditions, oxidative or nitrative modifications of neuronal proteins, such as ?-synuclein, lead to misfolding and formation of neurotoxic species that accumulate within the neuron. Release of misfolded proteins from injured or dead neurons intensifies neuroinflammation and neuronal injury within the surrounding area. Moreover, once in the peripheral immune compartments, processing and presentation of modified proteins, such as nitrated ?-synuclein by dendritic cells, induce effector T cells to those nitrated epitopes that act as neoantigens. Robust effector T cell immune responses against nitrated or modified self-proteins and migration of those effector T cells to inflammatory sites exacerbate neuroinflammation and dopaminergic neurodegeneration, which lead to accelerated disease progression. The links between T cell immunity and nigrostriatal neurodegeneration are supported by laboratory and animal models as well as human investigations of immune-associated biomarkers in the spinal fluid, peripheral blood, and brain tissue of patients with idiopathic or familial forms of PD. Regulatory T cells modulate both innate and effector T cell-mediated immunity to attenuate neuroinflammation and alleviate neurodegeneration along the nigrostriatal axis. Thus, harnessing proinflammatory and neurotoxic effector immune responses with drugs, vaccination, or immunomodulation affords promising therapeutic strategies

R.A. Wilshusen • R.L. Mosley, Ph.D. (✉)
Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience,
Center for Neurodegenerative Disorders, University of Nebraska Medical Center,
985930 Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE 68198-5930, USA
e-mail: rebecca.wilshusen@unmc.edu; rlmosley@unmc.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*, 119
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_7, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

either alone as an interdictory therapy or in combination as adjunctive therapy in the context of neuronal replacement. Herein immune-mediated inflammation, oxidative stress, and neurodegeneration as linked to PD pathogenesis are examined as well as the potential benefits of efficacious immune regulatory control over those neurotoxic processes.

Keywords Parkinson's disease • Neuroinflammation • Neurodegeneration • Dopaminergic • Adaptive immunity • Innate immunity • Microglia • Effector T cells • Teffs • Regulatory T cells • Tregs

Abbreviations

PD	Parkinson's disease
SNpc	Substantia nigra pars compacta
LB	Lewy body
α-syn	α-Synuclein
TNF	Tumor necrosis factor
LPS	Lipopolysaccharide
IFN-γ	Interferon gamma
CD40L	CD40 ligand
tPA	Tissue plasminogen activator
MMP-3	Matrix metalloproteinase-3
β-Amyloid	Amyloid beta
MHC	Major histocompatibility complex
ADCC	Antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity
LFA-1	Lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1
ICAM-1	Intercellular adhesion molecule-1
VCAM-1	Vascular cell adhesion molecule-1
ROS	Reactive oxygen species
RNS	Reactive nitrogen species
iNOS	Inducible nitric oxide synthase
COX1	Cyclooxygenase-1
COX 2	Cyclooxygenase-2
NADPH	Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate
HLA-DR	Human lymphocyte antigen-DR
MPTP	1-Methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine
6-OHDA	6-Hydroxydopamine
NO	Nitric oxide
PGE2	Prostaglandin E2
PRRs	Pattern recognition receptors
PAMPs	Pathogen-associated molecular patterns
DAMPs	Damage-associated molecular patterns
TCR	T cell receptor
APCs	Antigen-presenting cells

Th1	Type 1 T helper
Th2	Type 2 T helper
Th17	Type 17 T helper
HSP	Heat shock protein
GFAP	Glial fibrillar acidic protein
NGF	Nerve growth factor
BBB	Blood-brain barrier
RANTES	Regulated on activation normal T cell expressed and secreted
Tregs	Regulatory T cells
N-α-syn	Nitrated α-syn
Teffs	Effector T cells
GDNF	Glial cell-derived neurotrophic factor
nTregs	Natural Tregs
IPEX	Immune-dysregulation polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy X-linked
iTregs	Induced or inducible Tregs
TGF-β	Transforming growth factor-β
NF-κB	Nuclear factor-kappa B
NSAIDs	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
MAP	Mitogen-activated protein
MCP-1	Monocyte chemotactic protein-1
BDNF	Brain-derived neurotrophic factor
VIP	Vasoactive intestinal peptide
GM-CSF	Granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor

1 Introduction

Parkinson's disease (PD) is a relatively common neurodegenerative disorder, second in prevalence only to Alzheimer's disease, but the most common neurodegenerative movement disorder. Rare before 50 years of age, PD affects approximately 1–2 % of the population older than 60 years, with the incidence increasing to 3–5 % for those over 85 years of age [1]. Most studies in the USA and Europe estimate the annual incidence rate at 16–19 per 100,000 [2]. An estimated five million people worldwide are afflicted with PD, with 1–1.5 million people each in the USA and Europe. The average age of onset for PD is approximately 60–65 years with the peak incidence between 70 and 80 years of age. Thus, age represents a primary risk factor for PD with an increased prevalence among the population of increased age. This is particularly noteworthy given the increasing levels of neuroinflammation and oxidative stress associated with progressive age [3].

Clinical signs and severity of disease associated with PD result from the progressive loss and neuropathology of neurons that synthesize the neurotransmitter dopamine and are responsible for initiation of movement. The dopaminergic neurons that are primarily lost in PD are those that originate in the substantia nigra pars compacta (SNpc) and innervate the dorsal striatum. This nigrostriatal pathway represents one

of the four major dopamine signaling pathways in the brain and is prominently involved in controlling movement [4]. Thus, degeneration of these neurons and loss of dopamine along this axis result in the presentation of the pathophysiological clinical signs of PD: tremors, gait disturbance, muscle rigidity, and cognitive dysfunction. Dynamic neuronal dysfunction and loss that progress without intervention eventually lead to total loss of physical movement and ultimately to death [5].

Other pathological hallmarks in PD include neuronal cytoplasmic inclusions known as Lewy bodies (LBs). LBs are eosinophilic inclusions composed primarily of aggregated proteins including α-synuclein and ubiquitin as two major components [6–10]. Although, typically only observed among postmortem brain samples from PD patients, LBs are considered diagnostic for PD. In the brain, α-synuclein (α-syn) exists as a natively unfolded and soluble protein localized in the presynaptic terminals of neurons and is postulated to be involved in chaperoning vesicles to synaptic membranes. Posttranslational modifications of α-syn through nitration, oxidation, or phosphorylation enhance misfolding, oligomerization, fibril formation, and aggregation [11–14]. These processes are responsible for converting nontoxic molecules of α-syn into toxic fibrillar species that induce annular pore formation in neuronal membranes and eventually lead to neurodegeneration [15, 16]. Misfolding of α-syn is also caused by genetic mutation or overexpression. While most cases of PD have no family history of disease, point mutations in the gene encoding α-syn (SNCA; OMIM 163890) are linked to autosomal dominant parkinsonism (PARK1, OMIM 168601) [17–20] as are duplications and triplications of the SNCA gene (PARK4, OMIM 605543) [21, 22], all of which increase the aberrant misfolding of α-syn [23–25]. Taken together, these observations led to the α-syn burden hypothesis of PD which posits that misfolding of excess wild-type or mutated α-syn and the inability of the cell to clear the misfolded toxic species lead to the etiology or progression of familial and sporadic disease [26].

The reason(s) for increased susceptibility of dopaminergic neurons along the nigrostriatal axis in PD remains enigmatic. Neuronal death can be induced along several different, but cross-signaling pathways. One parameter thought to be responsible for increased susceptibility was the oxidative synthesis and metabolism of dopamine, which would increase oxidative stress within neurons [27, 28]. Additionally, dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra possess low intracellular glutathione which results in reduced antioxidant capacity and therefore are rendered more susceptible to oxidative stress than other types of cells located in the same area [29]. However, dopaminergic neurons in close proximity to the SNpc, which exist under similar conditions, appear undisturbed. Reactive oxygen species produced by activated microglia also have the potential to cause dopaminergic cell death by directly crossing the membrane to enter the dopaminergic neuron and overwhel the endogenous antioxidant systems to elevate oxidative stress that eventually leads to increased apoptosis and degeneration of the neuron [30]. In that same vein, since dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra widely express the death signaling tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor, chronic inflammation and delivery of proinflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α can induce and augment apoptotic cell death processes [30].

2 Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration in Parkinson's Disease

While the etiology of PD remains enigmatic, strong evidence now supports a non-cell autonomous theory, which promotes the notion that neuroinflammation is strongly implicated in etiology and/or disease progression [31]. Indeed, other hallmarks of PD include the abundant signs of neuroinflammation as evidenced by activated glia in ante- and post-mortem analyses of patient brains [32–34]. Interestingly, the predominant inflammatory glial cell population in PD is the microglia, whereas reactive astrocytes and myelinating oligodendrocytes are largely absent [32, 35, 36].

Microglia are a population of cells derived from the myeloid lineage of the innate immune system. They constitute approximately 20 % of the glia in the brain and represent the brain's resident phagocytic cells, thereby making them the first line of defense against pathogens and foreign material [37, 38]. Microglial progenitor cells enter the brain during early embryogenesis and develop throughout the brain within the parenchyma, choroid plexus, leptomeninges, and among the microvasculature [38, 39]. Resident microglial cells in a healthy brain typically are in a resting or dormant state with a ramified morphology, and not until activation are structural changes observed that include motile branches or the migration of somata [40]. Resting microglia have small rod-shaped somata that remain fixed with few signs of migration capacity. Numerous and highly ramified processes extend from the somata and continuously undergo cycles of de novo formation and withdrawal, participating in immune surveillance by sampling the extracellular space in a seemingly random fashion with a high turnover rate [30, 40]. These processes enable the microglia to efficiently sample and control the microenvironment of the brain and clear the surrounding tissue of increased metabolic products and deteriorated tissue components. The extensive processes and protrusions of the microglia enable direct contact with other cells of the brain, particularly astrocytes, neuronal cell bodies, and blood vessels, suggesting that microglia dynamically interact with other cellular elements to generate a finely tuned communications network that quickly allows microglia to become activated in response to insult and injury [37, 40]. In contrast, some interactions seem necessary for homeostasis and regulation, such as the interaction of CD200 on neurons and endothelial cells with CD200R on microglia, whereby deletion of CD200 or blockade with CD200R antagonists results in increased levels of microglia demonstrating an activated phenotype [5].

Microglia have a multitude of receptors on the cell surface, including toll-like receptors, cytokine and chemokine receptors, and ion channels that allow the microglia to remain sensitive to small changes in the extracellular environment. These changes result from a plethora of stimuli and danger signals including pathogens, viral DNA, lipopolysaccharide (LPS), interferon gamma (IFN-γ), CD40 ligand (CD40L), chemokines, and proteases such as thrombin and tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) as well as neurotransmitters, gangliosides such as GM1, matrix metalloproteinase-3 (MMP-3), and even simple alterations in ion homeostasis [37, 41–47]. More important to neurodegenerative disorders such as Alzheimer's disease and PD are microglial responses to misfolded proteins such as amyloid beta (β-amyloid) and

α-syn, respectively. Under homeostatic conditions damaged and misfolded proteins in the brain are cleared by the ubiquitin-proteasome pathway [48]. The immune surveillance function of myeloid cells in the brain, such as microglia, enables the cells to contact and control the neuronal microenvironment, thereby maintaining the homeostatic conditions of the brain. However, encounters with misfolded proteins, such as aggregated or modified α-synuclein, that cannot be cleared adequately from the microenvironment can lead to increased microglial activation [49].

Detection of disturbances within the neuronal microenvironment induce microglia to become activated with graded responses relative to the extent of perturbation [50]. Upon activation, resting microglia undergo several physical and metabolic changes including increases in proliferative capability, morphogenesis, cell volume, and extension of their processes into an amoeboid appearance, which is morphologically distinct from resting microglia that present small cell bodies with ramified processes [5, 37, 51]. Morphological changes of microglia become more macrophage-like in appearance, express surface proteins such as CD11b or major histocompatibility complex (MHC) antigens, and change the expression pattern of cytokines to resemble a more proinflammatory profile [38, 52, 53]. During activation, maximal densities of reactive microglia are found close to the lesion or epicenter of injured cells [52].

Among their many innate immune functions, activated microglia are well adapted for the induction of inflammation as well as cytokine-mediated cytotoxicity and antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity (ADCC). Moreover, microglia with antigen presentation and co-stimulatory capabilities are able to induce and regulate T cell responses [54]. In the activated state, microglia show increased expression of Fc receptors leading to increased IgG reactivity necessary for ADCC, upregulation of complement receptors, and increased expression of cell adhesion molecules such as lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1 (LFA-1), intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) (CD54), vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 (VCAM-1) (CD106), and CD1 [50], thus amplifying the abilities of microglia to traffic and migrate. Of interest, deletion of the FcγR by genetic ablation inhibits microglial activation and dopaminergic cell death in animal models of PD [55]. Activated microglia are known to produce a variety of toxic substances that, in addition to killing infectious agents, also can accelerate neuronal injury and death. These toxic substances include reactive oxygen species (ROS), reactive nitrogen species (RNS), and proinflammatory mediators such as cytokines, chemokines, and prostaglandins [37, 40, 52, 56]. As expected, generation of reactive species is potentiated by upregulation of enzymes such as inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), cyclooxygenase 1 (COX1), COX 2, and nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase resulting in increased levels of oxidative stress. These inflammatory conditions alter most cellular functions including proliferation, differentiation, and cell death. High levels of ROS and RNS can inactivate or damage proteins, which then result in cellular death and degeneration [5]. iNOS produces high levels of nitric oxide (NO) and superoxide radicals which increase the nitration and modification of neuronal proteins such as α-syn and in turn preferentially amplify microglial activation and cell-surface expression of MHC class II (MHC II) molecules [8, 9, 56]. Large numbers of activated microglia that express increased human lymphocyte antigen-DR (HLA-DR) (i.e., a human MHC II) have been shown in the substantia nigra of postmortem samples from brains of patients with PD or

parkinsonism with dementia [32, 33] and in antemortem analyses by PET imaging with PK11195, a ligand for the peripheral benzodiazepine receptor (PBR) that is preferentially expressed by activated microglia and correlates with disease severity in PD [34]. Additionally, activated microglia are present in the SN and striatum of animals used in models of PD such as 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP)- and 6-hydroxydopamine (6-OHDA)-induced parkinsonism [49, 57–65].

Unregulated microglial activation has proven toxic to neurons due in part to release of proinflammatory factors including, but not limited to, interleukin (IL)-1β, TNF-α, IL-6, IFN-γ, NO, prostaglandin E2 (PGE2), and superoxide radical [8, 9, 52, 62, 66]. IL-1β activates microglial iNOS and NADPH oxidase that generate NO and superoxide radicals, respectively [38, 39], both of which directly and indirectly produce oxidative damage to neurons that is sufficiently severe to result in imminent death [56]. In addition, IL-1β secretion from microglia activates the cells in an autocrine fashion and upregulates expression of cell-surface receptor CD23 (FcεRII), an early biomarker of microglial activation. Subsequent activation after CD23 expression induces microglia to express greater amounts of iNOS which subsequently leads to the production and buildup of NO [56]. This cascade of inflammation set up by acutely activated microglial cells can eventually progress to chronicity and lead to the activation and recruitment of the adaptive immune system in PD [52] (see Sect. 3 below).

Interestingly, the SN contains the highest concentration of microglia in the brain, especially in the ventral tier of the pars compacta [67, 68], thus making this region especially susceptible to perpetuated microglial activation. Abnormally high levels of IL-1β and TNF-α found in the plasma and cerebral spinal fluid in patients with PD support this contention [69, 70]. Reactive microglia are highly localized, found close to cell bodies of dead or injured nigral dopaminergic neurons, but not around striatal degenerating termini [36], which suggests a retrograde mechanism for neuronal death. Cell death can also result from loss of trophic support stemming from microglia-induced neuritic beading or synaptic stripping along dendrites [71, 72]. These findings suggest a direct link between dopaminergic neuronal death in PD and microglial activation. Indeed, postmortem examinations demonstrate that neuronal degeneration in PD is associated with a substantive gliosis linked to activated microglia that has been shown in MPTP-induced parkinsonism in primates, rodents, and humans [33, 38, 73–75]. Moreover, activated microglia have been shown phagocytizing dying dopaminergic cells and are well correlated with α-syn deposition in neuronal inclusions [12]. Importantly, in vivo and in vitro studies demonstrated that microglia become activated in response to overexpression of α-syn or nitrated and aggregated forms of α-syn, a major component of LBs found in the brains of PD patients [49, 76]. Release of modified and misfolded proteins such as α-syn from injured or degenerating neurons increases proximate microglial activation and subsequent degeneration of dopaminergic neurons in the SNpc. Moreover, oxidative stress is upregulated by a multitude of mediators including increased levels of reactive oxygen, nitrogen, and carbonyl species, which in turn raise high oxygen demand in the absence of low antioxidant defense mechanisms [37]. The increased oxidative stress induces more modified α-syn to become misfolded and aggregated with formation of more fibrillar species and LBs associated with degenerating nigral neurons that feed this cyclic cascade of progressive neuroinflammation and neurotoxicity in PD [48, 49, 52, 62, 77].

3 Adaptive Immune-Mediated Exacerbation of Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration

In addition to the involvement of the immune system's innate arm, adaptive immunity plays a profound role in neurodegeneration of the nigrostriatal pathway and disease progression. A controlled immune response to infection and injury supports homeostasis of the central nervous system (CNS) microenvironment by protecting the host via killing pathogens and clearance of pathogenic debris to promote healing. A chronically activated immune response without regulation amplifies inflammatory and immune responses that lead to further tissue and cellular damage [78]. Adaptive immunity utilizes immunological memory to recognize specific pathogens and mount a stronger, amplified response than that afforded by innate immunity alone. Adaptive immunity is typically initiated after innate immune cells, such as dendritic cells, macrophages, or microglia via their pattern recognition receptors (PRRs), recognize broad specificities of pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) and damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs), which are associated with microbial pathogens, cellular stress, or cell components of damaged tissues [79]. By activating antigen processing programs, innate immune cells digest and process these substances, insert the processed peptides into the groove of MHC molecules, and present the peptide epitopes in the context of the MHC I or II molecules. Upon recognition of antigen by T cells and their T cell receptor (TCR) for antigen, antigen-presenting cells (APCs) become activated to express co-stimulatory molecules and second signals such as IL-12 and IL-4 that aid in the maturation of type 1 T helper (Th1) or Th2 effector T cells that influence cell- or antibody-mediated immunity, respectively.

While autoantibodies against dopamine neuron antigens are present in the sera and CSF of PD patients [80–82], the role of antibody-mediated or humoral immunity in PD has only recently begun to be investigated in depth. In addition to a variety of antibodies directed against globally expressed tissue antigens such as heat shock protein (HSP)-65 and HSP-70 [83], PD patients also exhibit autoantibodies to brain-associated molecules including GM1, S100B, glial fibrillar acidic protein (GFAP), nerve growth factor (NGF), neurofilament, myelin basic protein, tau, Aβ, and neuronal calcium channels as well as α-syn and its modified and fibrillar forms [84–92]. Immunohistochemical staining of tissues from idiopathic and familial PD patients show dopaminergic neurons within the SN that have bound IgG, but not IgM, while tissues from age-matched controls and non-nigral control tissues show no detectable bound immunoglobulin [93]. The IgG was reacted with approximately 30 % of the dopaminergic neurons within the nigra and directly correlated with numbers of MHC II$^+$ and CD64$^+$ (FcγRI) reactive microglia, but not with disease duration. In PD patients, about 4 % of the pigmented neurons contain LBs, and all pigmented, LB-containing neurons presented detectable amounts of bound IgG as well as α-syn within the inclusions. These patterns of antibody reactivity were consistent with numbers of activated microglia around dopaminergic neurons that are at risk of dying in PD. Together these data suggest that endogenous antibodies

of unknown specificity have the capacity to cross the blood-brain barrier (BBB) and bind cognate antigens expressed by dopaminergic neurons. Moreover, levels of antibodies to α-syn and catecholamine-derived melanin (i.e., neuromelanin) are increased in PD patients, while anti-neuromelanin immunoglobulin binding to neurons is more prevalent in early disease [94]. Opsonization or autoantibody binding of neurons targets those cells for phagocytosis and degradation by mononuclear phagocytes such as macrophages and microglia and also can activate the complement system, a major mediator of cell lysis and inflammatory reactions. Interestingly, activation of the complement system may also be involved in microglia-mediated neuronal death since microglia are the only cells within the SN that express the initial recognition component of complement, C1q [95]. Moreover, compared to controls, PD patients exhibit increased areas of C1q-opsonized extracellular depositions of neuromelanin within the parenchyma, and C1q-expressing phagocytic microglia surround those areas as well as cells around the luminal surfaces of the vasculature which express neuromelanin and C1q, suggesting a role for anti-self antibodies and C1q-mediated clearing pathways in PD.

In addition to activated microglia and astrocytes, T cells also comprise an integral component of the PD lesion, although their function or even the mechanisms by which they infiltrate remain enigmatic. Early autopsy evidence within the SN of PD patients showed increased numbers of $CD8^+$ T cells in close proximity to activated microglia and degenerating neurons [33]. More recently, both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells have been discovered within the SN of PD patients as well as MPTP-treated mice [65, 96–100]. As PD patients exhibit some leakiness across the BBB, the lymphocytic infiltration was thought to reflect a dysfunctional BBB [101]; however, CD4:CD8 lymphocyte ratios of 1:5 in the SN of PD patients [96] and 1:4 in the SN of MPTP mice [100] contrast the typical 2:1 ratio expected for peripheral T cells performing surveillance functions and strongly suggest the involvement of active processes other than dysfunctional BBB. Thus, the mechanisms by which these T cells gain access to the SN, their activation state, and their actual function are questions that remain to be answered.

Peripheral immune aberrations, particularly in T lymphocyte subsets are abundant in PD patients. Total numbers of lymphocytes have been shown to be diminished by 17 %, while $CD19^+$ B cells are diminished as much as 35 % and $CD3^+$ T cells diminished by 22 % [102]. Among $CD3^+$ T cells, numbers of $CD4^+$ T cells have been shown to be diminished by 31 %, whereas numbers of $CD8^+$ T cells are not significantly changed. Naïve helper $CD4^+$ T cells ($CD45RA^+$) are diminished and levels of effector/memory helper T cell subsets ($CD29^+$ or $CD45R0^+$) are either unchanged or increased. Selective loss of $CD4^+CD45RA^+$ naïve cells are also detected in other neuropathological-associated disorders such as MS and Down's syndrome, suggesting a common immunological abnormality in those neurological disorders [103, 104]. Studies of PD patients' peripheral blood showed increased frequencies of activated $CD4^+$ T cells expressing Fas [105], increased IFN-γ-producing Th1 cells, diminished frequencies of IL-4-producing Th2 cells, and $CD4^+CD25^+$ T cells [106]. Circulating levels of IL-15, RANTES (regulated on activation, normal T cell expressed and secreted), IL-10, and IL-12 are significantly

elevated in PD patients compared to controls suggesting that immune effector cells are activated in PD [107, 108]. Evidence for the increased mutual co-expression of CD4 and CD8 by CD45RO$^+$ T cells with increased expression of CD25 (α-chain of the high-affinity IL-2 receptor), TNF-α receptors, and diminished expression of IFN-γ receptors also suggest the presence of activated T cell subsets in PD patients.

In addition to T cells that express α- and β-chains of the T cell receptor (TCRαβ$^+$ T cells), elevated frequencies of T cell populations expressing γ- and δ-chains of the TCR (TCRγδ$^+$T cells) also have been found in the CSF of PD patients [109] and are thought to play a regulatory role in CNS inflammation [110–112]. Moreover, a larger proportion of the TCRγδ$^+$ T cells also express CD25 compared to controls, suggesting these CSF-obtained T cells are preferentially activated in PD patients [104]. More recently, T cell frequencies were compared to disease severity as measured by the Unified Parkinson's Disease Rating Scale III scores. Those studies showed that in peripheral blood from PD patients compared to age- and environment-matched caregivers, frequencies of CD45RO$^+$ and FAS$^+$ effector/memory CD4$^+$ T cells were increased and were directly correlated with disease, while those of CD31$^+$ and α4β7$^+$ CD4$^+$ T cells were diminished and inversely correlated with disease progression [113]. No correlations could be established between frequencies of CD4$^+$ cells within any T cell subsets and age or disease duration. Additionally, the ability of CD4$^+$ regulatory T cells (Tregs) from PD patients to suppress anti-CD3-stimulated effector T cell function from healthy donors was impaired. Overall, these data support the notion that chronic immune stimulation, notably effector/memory T cell activation and Treg dysfunction, is linked to PD pathobiology and disease severity, but not disease duration. The association of T cell phenotypes with motor symptoms provides fresh avenues for novel biomarkers and therapeutic designs.

One mechanism by which T cells may be mobilized to infiltrate the CNS during PD is through the drainage of aberrant forms of α-syn into the lymphatic system, which activates APCs to induce T cells that recognize aggregated or nitrated α-syn (N-α-syn) species (Fig. 1). Indeed, in MPTP-intoxicated mice, α-syn and most likely other inflammatory mediators drain to cervical lymph nodes where APCs are activated to induce effector T cells [97]. An influx of α-syn-specific Th1 or Th17 effector T cells into the brain during PD could increase the inflammatory phenotype and neurotoxic response of microglia near dopaminergic neurons by increasing the concentration of proinflammatory molecules in the SN [63]. Taken together, increased frequencies of memory and activated peripheral T cell subsets, as well as those cells within the nigra of PD patients, suggest putative roles of T cells in disease progression and possibly PD etiology. Although those roles have yet to be delineated, activated effector T cells (Teffs) or Tregs both exhibit effector/memory T cell phenotypes and may migrate to foci of inflammation in PD patients and lead to Teff-mediated exacerbation or Treg-mediated attenuation of PD-associated neuroinflammation and neurodegeneration. Thus, Tregs have the capacity to keep the disorder in check during the early or asymptomatic phase, while Teffs can accelerate disease progression (Fig. 1). Whether T cell aberrations in PD patients reflect specifically activated effector or regulatory T cell subsets and to which specific antigen(s) those T cells are activated require answers to develop more precise immune-based therapeutic strategies.

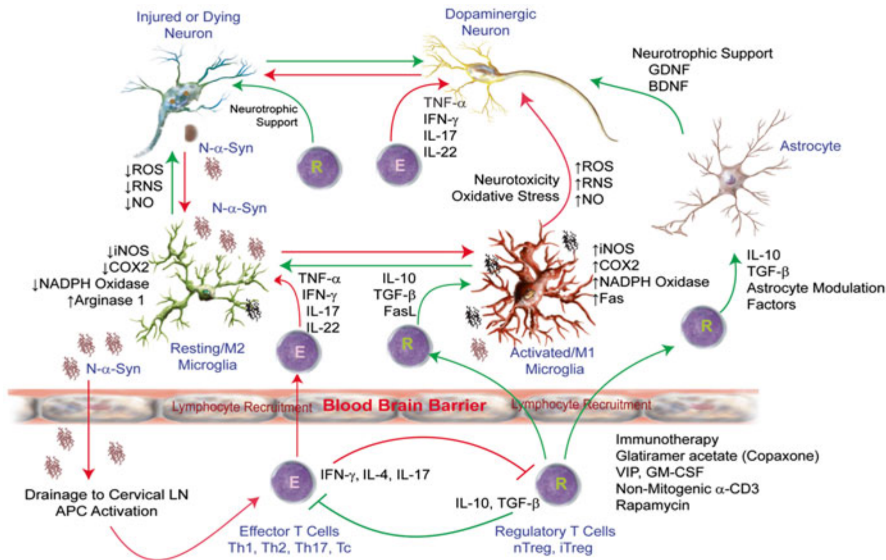


Fig. 1 Innate and adaptive immune contributions to PD pathogenesis. Reactive microglia are a prominent feature of PD. Microglia are sensitive to changes in their microenvironment, which include factors released from damaged/dying neurons such as DAMPs and self-proteins such as α-synuclein (α-syn) that have been modified, misfolded, or aggregated. These factors drive resting microglial to an activated M1 phenotype characterized by secretion of proinflammatory and neurotoxic factors and upregulation of proinflammatory mediator enzymes such as iNOS, COX-2, and NADPH oxidase. Induction of these enzymes increases ROS/RNS production and oxidative stress, which perpetuate neuronal injury and death. Microglia-derived proinflammatory cytokine/chemokine gradients recruit other lymphocytes to migrate across the BBB to sites of inflammation. One such T lymphocyte population is the regulatory T cell subset (Tregs) (R in figure). Tregs produce anti-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-10 and TGF-β, which induce microglia to switch from a proinflammatory (M1) phenotype to an anti-inflammatory (M2) phenotype. The M2 phenotype is characterized by downregulation of iNOS, COX-2, and NADPH oxidase and upregulation of arginase-1, an enzyme with capabilities to suppress activated microglia or T cells. Changes in these enzyme functions diminish ROS/RNS formation and maintain oxidative stress at homeostatic levels. Moreover, in the presence of activated microglia which upregulate Fas, Tregs upregulate Fas ligand (FasL) that leads to subsequent killing of activated microglia via Fas-FasL interactions. Additionally, Tregs induce astrocytes to increase expression of neurotrophic factors GDNF and BDNF, which afford another neuroprotective mechanism. However, with age PD progresses, Treg functions decline, and regulatory control over proinflammatory microglia and neurotrophic support is not maintained. Thus, inflammation and dopaminergic neurodegeneration increase with augmented misfolding of modified self-proteins such as nitrated α-synuclein (N-α-syn). These proteins and the ensuring inflammatory milieu may drain to periphery immune compartments, where, as neoantigens, adaptive immune responses such as effector T cells (Teffs) (E in figure) are mounted against the modified epitopes. With increased inflammation, Th1 and Th17 Teffs are recruited and migrate across the BBB to the sites of inflammation and encounter cognate antigen presented by activated microglia. Th1 and Th17 cells express proinflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α, IFN-γ, IL-17, and IL-22, which drive microglia to higher levels of inflammation, thus indirectly enhancing neurotoxicity. A mechanism by which Teffs may directly kill neurons is suggested since both Th1 and Th17 cells produce TNF-α, and nigral neurons express TNF receptors capable of triggering apoptotic pathways. Of importance, proinflammatory cytokines from Teffs inhibit Treg functions, which further restrict regulatory control and exacerbate Teff- and microglia-mediated inflammatory responses. Treg numbers or function can be augmented with exogenous agents such as VIP, GM-CSF, anti-CD3, or rampamycin. Thus, strategies aimed at inducing, boosting, or reprogramming Treg responses by increasing Treg numbers and function, transforming Teffs to Tregs, or activating Tregs in an antigen-specific manner show promise as possible disease-modifying therapies that slow or halt progression of PD

Modified α-syn exposed to the immune system in sufficient quantity and under the appropriate conditions, such as a proinflammatory milieu, can function as a foreign antigen to engage adaptive immunity. We previously demonstrated that nitrated α-synuclein (N-α-syn) acts as a neoantigen that breaks immunological tolerance, exacerbates MPTP-induced neuroinflammation, and enhances subsequent dopaminergic neurodegeneration along the nigrostriatal axis [8, 48, 97, 114]. In MPTP-treated mice, the inflammatory milieu, which includes N-α-syn, drains to the cervical lymph nodes within 24 h and activates APCs. Conceivably, N-α-syn that is chronically released from degenerating neurons would reach the circulation and afferent lymphatics of PD patients, be sequestered in the secondary lymphoid tissues to be processed and presented by MHC II of activated APCs and induce effector T cells [48]. Indeed, after several weeks, MPTP-treated mice produce antibodies to N-α-syn, but not to unmodified α-syn [97]. Moreover, immunization with N-α-syn induces effector T cells that recognize nitrated epitopes, but not non-nitrated α-syn moieties. In contrast, immunization with unmodified α-syn yields no detectable effector T cells that recognize either unmodified or N-α-syn. The induced N-α-syn-specific Teffs are thought to be recruited to areas of inflammation surrounding the dopaminergic neurons in the SN. Since the Teffs are specific for the disease-associated protein modifications in α-syn, presentation of N-α-syn epitopes by MHC II of already activated APCs (microglia, macrophages, or dendritic cells) within the inflamed SN would evoke a helper Teff-mediated immune response and promote expansion and/or cytokine secretion appropriate for the type of induced helper Teff subtype that includes Th1, Th2, or Th17 Teffs. Th1 cells express various proinflammatory cytokines such as IL-2, IFN-γ, and TNF-α that act to induce activated microglial release of reactive oxygen species, NO, and proinflammatory factors, all of which are neurotoxic [30, 48] (Fig. 1). Th17 cells also release proinflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α, IL-17A, IL-17F, IL-21, and IL-22 which (a) induce non-hematopoietic tissue reactions due to the distribution of IL-17 and IL-22 receptors among both epithelial and endothelial cells; (b) stimulate the production of inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6; and (c) induce IL-21/IL-21 receptor-mediated signaling by T cells, B cells, myeloid-derived cells, and natural killer cells [48, 115–119].

Secretion of proinflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-12 disrupts the BBB integrity by increasing the expression of cellular adhesion molecules, such as E-selectin, while inducing chemokine gradients to allow the extravasation of Teff subtypes through the endothelial cells of the microvasculature and into the brain at the site of inflammation [8, 9, 37, 38, 63]. Once within inflammatory sites of the SN, Th1 and Th17 effectors can secrete proinflammatory and neurotoxic cytokines (Fig. 1). Alternatively, Teffs could drive microglia to a hyperactivated or neurotoxic phenotype that produces greater levels of neurotoxic mediators within the microenvironment, killing surrounding dopaminergic neurons, and leading to accelerated disease progression. In the MPTP model, N-α-syn-specific Teffs exacerbate the extent of the neuroinflammatory response with increased numbers of activated microglia, prolong the intensity of the inflammatory response, accelerate the rate of dopaminergic cell death, and worsen the nigrostriatal lesion by 50 % [63, 97].

Moreover, N-α-syn Teffs polarized to yield Th17 effectors afford significantly greater capacity to kill dopaminergic neurons compared to those Teffs polarized as Th1 effectors [8, 63]. Thus, the omnipresent inflammatory cytokine gradients produced not only from Teffs but also from hyperactivated microglia, combined with injured and dying neurons that release modified and misfolded proteins come together to form the perfect storm. This storm is sufficient for a chronically inflamed CNS environment and persistent oxidative reactive state along the nigrostriatal axis that ultimately is responsible for disease progression in PD [8, 48, 119, 120].

4 Control of Immune-Mediated Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration in PD

While proinflammatory effector T cells upregulate neuroinflammatory responses of microglia, Th2 effector cells secrete anti-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13 which work to enhance the neuroprotective activity of the microglial cells. Induction of Th2 effectors has been successfully utilized in strategies of immunomodulation therapy in multiple sclerosis using glatiramer acetate [121, 122]. In that same vein, $CD4^+$ Th2 effectors from glatiramer acetate-immunized mice attenuate MPTP-induced neuroinflammation and dopaminergic neurodegeneration presumably by diminishing levels of activated microglia resulting from anti-inflammatory cytokine production as well as providing neurotrophic support via increased glial cell-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) production by astrocytes [39, 98, 123]. Interestingly, cytokines from one particular Teff subtype tend to regulate the other types [124]. For instance, Th2-produced IL-4 suppresses Th1 and Th17 development, and Th1-specific INF-γ inhibits Th2 and Th17 cell maturation, while IL-17 produced by Th17 effectors inhibits Th1 and Th2 function.

Another T cell population with neuroprotective capabilities is the Tregs. Tregs play an indispensable role in maintaining immune homeostasis and controlling immune-mediated inflammation, and are thought, at least in part, responsible for the establishment and maintenance of immunological tolerance to self and protection from autoimmunity [125]. Moreover, after foreign pathogens and antigens are removed by immune responses, suppression of active effectors is necessary to minimize cytotoxic effects of inflammation on self-tissues. Natural Tregs (nTregs) are generated in the thymus and express both CD4 and CD25 cell-surface markers in addition to the transcription factor FOXP3, which is required not only for development and maintenance in the periphery but also for function [78]. Indeed, some mutations in FOXP3 lead to Treg dysfunction and a systemic autoimmune disorder designated as immune-dysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy X-linked (IPEX) syndrome [126], which, without hematopoietic reconstitution of the Treg component, is a fatal condition. While nTregs are derived directly from the thymus, generation of induced or inducible Tregs (iTregs) is possible with $CD4^+$ T cells and the appropriate polarizing conditions, such as coculture in the presence of transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), IL-2, IL-10, and/or all-trans retinoic acid [8]. Tregs

regulate immune responses by different mechanisms at several different levels. Mechanisms of Treg control include secretion of anti-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-10 and TGF-β [127, 128], cytolysis of Teffs [129], metabolic disruption by removing IL-2 ("IL-2 sponge") [130], and modulation of dendritic cell maturation or function through CTLA4 ligation [131, 132]. Effector cells such as T cells, B cells, or myeloid and APCs including microglia are inactivated or neutralized via cell-cell interaction of receptors with Tregs, albeit the requirement is determined through in vitro measurements, thus the necessity of proximal contact in vivo has not been adequately addressed [133–135]. We have reported that Tregs induce significant reductions in the number of activated microglia in the SN by decreasing mRNA expression for TNF-α and iNOS in the midbrain, indicating the reduction of microglia-mediated inflammation and oxidative stress [8, 30, 37, 49, 61, 62, 64]. Tregs also reduce nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB) gene expression and nuclear translocation, thereby reducing production and release of proinflammatory factors from activated microglia. Interestingly, coculture with Tregs prior to stimulation of microglia with N-α-syn results in the suppression of microglial production of ROS and proinflammatory cytokines/chemokines; however, coculture after microglial stimulation results in the upregulation of FAS by microglia and FAS ligand by Tregs with subsequent killing of the stimulated microglia by FAS-FAS ligand interactions [64].

5 Immune-Targeted Therapeutic Strategies in PD

The lack of efficacious treatment for PD warrants new strategies for disease progression and regeneration. One such strategy targets neuroinflammation, which should have profound implications at two therapeutic levels. Efficacious anti-inflammatory therapy could serve to inhibit further inflammation-mediated neurotoxicity and interdict dopaminergic neuronal loss. This alone could mitigate further disease progression. At another level, since dopaminergic neurogenesis along the nigrostriatal axis is limited, if occurring at all, attenuation of inflammatory and oxidative stress will be important to successful neuron replacement modalities. The importance of this is underscored by three independent studies wherein fetal nigrostriatal cells were transplanted to PD patients [136–139]. Postmortem analysis from several transplanted patients revealed evidence of α-syn accumulation and LB formation in older engrafted neurons from 14-year survivors, but not within those from survivors of 4 years or less [136–138]. Taken together these data suggest that dopaminergic cell loss may result from nonneuronal autonomous processes and that neuroinflammation plays an integral role in those processes [8, 31, 140, 141]. Therefore, to better facilitate neuronal engraftment, regeneration, and survival along the nigrostriatal axis, adjunctive therapies to control neuroinflammation will be an integral component of neuronal replacement therapies. Interestingly, stem cell transplants into the CNS have been shown to attenuate inflammatory responses and promote neuroprotection during early transplantation [142, 143]; however, whether these hypo-inflammatory conditions are retained throughout the life of the graft remains to be determined.

Several immunotherapeutic and pharmacological strategies that target inflammatory components of PD are actively being pursued. One potential target is COX-2, which is upregulated in nigral dopaminergic neurons of both PD patients and animal models. Among large cohorts, those who use nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), particularly ibuprofen at least twice weekly, exhibit a lower risk of developing PD [144, 145]. Also pretreatment with NSAIDs and deletion of COX-2 is protective in MPTP- or 6-OHDA-induced neurodegeneration [75, 146, 147]. However, for PD patients the mechanism(s), best drug formulation, and dosage regimen that yield the most efficacious results remain to be determined.

The proinflammatory enzyme iNOS is thought to play a major role in dopaminergic neurodegeneration. Ablation by genetic manipulation or inhibition with specific pharmaceutical agents protects nigral neurodegeneration induced by MPTP or 6-OHDA but is less active at protecting striatal termini [148–150]. Interestingly, not all microglia express iNOS and inhibition of iNOS does not attenuate all reactive microglia suggesting that only a subpopulation of reactive microglia may participate in neurodegeneration [148, 150].

Minocycline is a long-acting second-generation tetracycline that exhibits a high capability to penetrate the brain parenchyma and CSF and act on activated microglia [151]. The mechanisms of action include inhibiting the phosphorylation of p38 mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase and the upregulation of iNOS as well as reducing production of IL-1β-converting enzyme (ICE) and IL-1β [146, 151–153]. In the MPTP and 6-OHDA models, minocycline reduces numbers of reactive microglia and inhibits neurodegeneration of nigral dopaminergic neurons as well as striatal termini in a dose-dependent fashion [146, 154, 155]. PET analyses of PD patients suggest that minocycline interferes with microglial activation; however, assessment of motor function has failed to detect clinical benefits [156–158]. In part, issues of becoming refractory to chronic anti-inflammatory pharmaceutical agents for neuroinflammation have more recently evoked strategies that afford long-term regulation via immunomodulation.

As detailed above, proinflammatory innate and adaptive immune responses are upregulated in PD and are thought to play a major role in disease exacerbation and hence progression. Thus, therapeutic strategies aimed at modulating the immune response during disease may be applicable. One strategy involves the use of Tregs to target neuroinflammation. This strategy is being investigated not only for PD but also for other neurological and autoimmune diseases for which inflammation is a major component [159–165]. In the MPTP mouse model, we showed Tregs attenuate microglia-mediated neuroinflammation, completely protect nigral neurons, and protect up to 90 % of the striatal termini [61, 63–65]. Moreover, protection is transferable in a fashion that is dependent on Treg dose. Attenuation is accomplished by Treg-mediated phenotypic switch from an M1 neurotoxic microglial phenotype to a more neurotrophic M2 phenotype with downregulation of proinflammatory mediators such as iNOS, IL-12, TNF-α, IL-1α, IL-1β, INF-γ, and monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (MCP-1) as well as concomitant upregulation of arginase-1. Moreover, Tregs control microglia function by suppressing ROS production and NF-κB activation via processes that modulate redox enzymes, cell migration, and phagocytosis.

An additional mechanism by which Tregs protect neurons is through increasing astrocytic production of brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) and GDNF [61]. Furthermore, whereas α-syn-specific Th17 and Th1 Teffs exacerbate neuroinflammation and dopaminergic neurodegeneration, interactions of those Teffs with Tregs lead to Teff augmentation of Treg function and enhanced ability of those Tregs to protect dopaminergic neurons within the nigrostriatal system. This Treg-mediated neuroprotection can be enhanced further by increasing the number or function of Tregs via immune modulatory agents such as vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), non-mitogenic anti-CD3 antibody, rampamycin, and 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D3 [8, 37, 48, 63]. Together, these data suggest that Tregs may be used to suppress the activity of innate and adaptive immune responses operative in PD pathogenesis by inhibiting Th1 and Th17 Teff function and transforming the neurotoxic phenotype of activated microglia. Finally, for PD patients whose innate CNS immunity is chronically activated, adaptive T cell-mediated immunity is skewed toward an effector/memory phenotype, and Treg-mediated function, which is tasked with controlling innate and Teff responses, is diminished [113, 158]. Therapeutic strategies are warranted that repair Treg deficits and harness those proinflammatory conditions in the CNS and periphery which support neurodegeneration.

6 Conclusion

In PD, activated microglia become unregulated and chronically activated for reasons that remain unknown. Neurotoxic and proinflammatory mediators produced from activated microglia fuel a cycle of inflammation, oxidative/nitrative stress, protein modification, and protein misfolding that lead to dopaminergic neurodegeneration along the nigrostriatal axis. The cyclic production of modified and aggregated self-proteins, such as nitrated α-synuclein, in the chronic presence of proinflammatory mediators is sufficient to overwhelm Treg-mediated immunological tolerance and induce peripheral immune responses to those modified epitopes. In the face of continuing neuroinflammation, effector T cells with migratory capabilities are able to cross the BBB to the inflammatory foci and again encounter their cognate antigen presented by proinflammatory microglia. Responding effector T cells exacerbate nigral inflammation with subsequent increase in neurodegeneration, which in turn accelerate disease progression. Thus, key therapeutic strategies for PD should include approaches that interdict the cycle of microglia- and effector T cell-mediated inflammation. Indeed immune modulatory regimens and vaccine approaches that upregulate regulatory T cell activities attenuate CNS inflammation and promote dopaminergic neuroprotection in laboratory and animal models. In PD patients, this approach would be expected to diminish oxidative stress, reduce protein modifications and misfolding, and lead to decreased neuronal loss with improved clinical outcomes.

Acknowledgments Supported by NIH grants 3R01NS070190-03S1 (R.A.W.) and 5R01NS070190-03 (R.L.M.).

References

1. Fahn S. Description of Parkinson's disease as a clinical syndrome. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2003;991:1–14.
2. Twelves D, Perkins KS, Counsell C. Systematic review of incidence studies of Parkinson's disease. Mov Disord. 2003;18(1):19–31.
3. Godbout JP, Johnson RW. Age and neuroinflammation: a lifetime of psychoneuroimmune consequences. Immunol Allergy Clin North Am. 2009;29(2):321–37.
4. Appel SH, Beers DR, Henkel JS. T cell-microglial dialogue in Parkinson's disease and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: are we listening? Trends Immunol. 2010;31(1):7–17.
5. Peterson LJ, Flood PM. Oxidative stress and microglial cells in Parkinson's disease. Mediators Inflamm. 2012;2012:401264.
6. Shimura H, Schlossmacher MG, Hattori N, Frosch MP, Trockenbacher A, Schneider R, et al. Ubiquitination of a new form of alpha-synuclein by parkin from human brain: implications for Parkinson's disease. Science. 2001;293(5528):263–9.
7. Wan OW, Chung KK. The role of alpha-synuclein oligomerization and aggregation in cellular and animal models of Parkinson's disease. PLoS One. 2012;7(6):e38545.
8. Mosley RL, Hutter-Saunders JA, Stone DK, Gendelman HE. Inflammation and adaptive immunity in Parkinson's disease. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med. 2012;2(1):a009381.
9. Hutter-Saunders JA, Mosley RL, Gendelman HE. Pathways towards an effective immunotherapy for Parkinson's disease. Expert Rev Neurother. 2011;11(12):1703–15.
10. Corti O, Lesage S, Brice A. What genetics tells us about the causes and mechanisms of Parkinson's disease. Physiol Rev. 2011;91(4):1161–218.
11. Fujiwara H, Hasegawa M, Dohmae N, Kawashima A, Masliah E, Goldberg MS, et al. Alpha-Synuclein is phosphorylated in synucleinopathy lesions. Nat Cell Biol. 2002;4(2):160–4.
12. Giasson BI, Duda JE, Murray IV, Chen Q, Souza JM, Hurtig HI, et al. Oxidative damage linked to neurodegeneration by selective alpha-synuclein nitration in synucleinopathy lesions. Science. 2000;290(5493):985–9.
13. Koprich JB, Johnston TH, Reyes MG, Sun X, Brotchie JM. Expression of human A53T alpha-synuclein in the rat substantia nigra using a novel AAV1/2 vector produces a rapidly evolving pathology with protein aggregation, dystrophic neurite architecture and nigrostriatal degeneration with potential to model the pathology of Parkinson's disease. Mol Neurodegener. 2010;5:43.
14. Parihar MS, Parihar A, Fujita M, Hashimoto M, Ghafourifar P. Alpha-synuclein overexpression and aggregation exacerbates impairment of mitochondrial functions by augmenting oxidative stress in human neuroblastoma cells. Int J Biochem Cell Biol. 2009;41(10):2015–24.
15. Uversky VN, Yamin G, Munishkina LA, Karymov MA, Millett IS, Doniach S, et al. Effects of nitration on the structure and aggregation of alpha-synuclein. Brain Res Mol Brain Res. 2005;134(1):84–102.
16. Cavallarin N, Vicario M, Negro A. The role of phosphorylation in synucleinopathies: focus on Parkinson's disease. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets. 2010;9(4):471–81.
17. Polymeropoulos MH, Higgins JJ, Golbe LI, Johnson WG, Ide SE, Di Iorio G, et al. Mapping of a gene for Parkinson's disease to chromosome 4q21-q23. Science. 1996;274(5290):1197–9.
18. Polymeropoulos MH, Lavedan C, Leroy E, Ide SE, Dehejia A, Dutra A, et al. Mutation in the alpha-synuclein gene identified in families with Parkinson's disease. Science. 1997;276(5321):2045–7.
19. Kruger R, Kuhn W, Muller T, Woitalla D, Graeber M, Kosel S, et al. Ala30Pro mutation in the gene encoding alpha-synuclein in Parkinson's disease. Nat Genet. 1998;18(2):106–8.
20. Zarranz JJ, Alegre J, Gomez-Esteban JC, Lezcano E, Ros R, Ampuero I, et al. The new mutation, E46K, of alpha-synuclein causes Parkinson and Lewy body dementia. Ann Neurol. 2004;55(2):164–73.

21. Chartier-Harlin MC, Kachergus J, Roumier C, Mouroux V, Douay X, Lincoln S, et al. Alpha-synuclein locus duplication as a cause of familial Parkinson's disease. Lancet. 2004;364(9440):1167–9.
22. Singleton AB, Farrer M, Johnson J, Singleton A, Hague S, Kachergus J, et al. Alpha-Synuclein locus triplication causes Parkinson's disease. Science. 2003;302(5646):841.
23. Uversky VN. Neuropathology, biochemistry, and biophysics of alpha-synuclein aggregation. J Neurochem. 2007;103(1):17–37.
24. Narhi L, Wood SJ, Steavenson S, Jiang Y, Wu GM, Anafi D, et al. Both familial Parkinson's disease mutations accelerate alpha-synuclein aggregation. J Biol Chem. 1999;274(14):9843–6.
25. Li J, Uversky VN, Fink AL. Effect of familial Parkinson's disease point mutations A30P and A53T on the structural properties, aggregation, and fibrillation of human alpha-synuclein. Biochemistry. 2001;40(38):11604–13.
26. McGeer PL, McGeer EG. Glial reactions in Parkinson's disease. Mov Disord. 2008;23(4):474–83.
27. Greenamyre JT, Hastings TG. Biomedicine. Parkinson's—divergent causes, convergent mechanisms. Science. 2004;304(5674):1120–2.
28. Riederer P, Wuketich S. Time course of nigrostriatal degeneration in parkinson's disease. A detailed study of influential factors in human brain amine analysis. J Neural Transm. 1976;38(3–4):277–301.
29. Banerjee R, Mosley RL, Reynolds AD, Dhar A, Jackson-Lewis V, Gordon PH, et al. Adaptive immune neuroprotection in G93A-SOD1 amyotrophic lateral sclerosis mice. PLoS One. 2008;3(7):e2740.
30. Cao JJ, Li KS, Shen YQ. Activated immune cells in Parkinson's disease. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2011;6(3):323–9.
31. Dawson TM. Non-autonomous cell death in Parkinson's disease. Lancet Neurol. 2008;7(6):474–5.
32. Vila M, Jackson-Lewis V, Guegan C, Wu DC, Teismann P, Choi DK, et al. The role of glial cells in Parkinson's disease. Curr Opin Neurol. 2001;14(4):483–9.
33. McGeer PL, Itagaki S, Boyes BE, McGeer EG. Reactive microglia are positive for HLA-DR in the substantia nigra of Parkinson's and Alzheimer's disease brains. Neurology. 1988;38(8):1285–91.
34. Ouchi Y, Yagi S, Yokokura M, Sakamoto M. Neuroinflammation in the living brain of Parkinson's disease. Parkinsonism Relat Disord. 2009;15 Suppl 3:S200–4.
35. Banati RB, Daniel SE, Blunt SB. Glial pathology but absence of apoptotic nigral neurons in long-standing Parkinson's disease. Mov Disord. 1998;13(2):221–7.
36. Mirza B, Hadberg H, Thomsen P, Moos T. The absence of reactive astrocytosis is indicative of a unique inflammatory process in Parkinson's disease. Neuroscience. 2000;95(2):425–32.
37. Stone DK, Reynolds AD, Mosley RL, Gendelman HE. Innate and adaptive immunity for the pathobiology of Parkinson's disease. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2009;11(9):2151–66.
38. Czlonkowska A, Kurkowska-Jastrzebska I, Czlonkowski A, Peter D, Stefano GB. Immune processes in the pathogenesis of Parkinson's disease—a potential role for microglia and nitric oxide. Med Sci Monit. 2002;8(8):RA165–77.
39. Laurie C, Reynolds A, Coskun O, Bowman E, Gendelman HE, Mosley RL. CD4+ T cells from Copolymer-1 immunized mice protect dopaminergic neurons in the 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine model of Parkinson's disease. J Neuroimmunol. 2007;183(1–2):60–8.
40. Nimmerjahn A, Kirchhoff F, Helmchen F. Resting microglial cells are highly dynamic surveillants of brain parenchyma in vivo. Science. 2005;308(5726):1314–8.
41. abd-el-Basset E, Fedoroff S. Effect of bacterial wall lipopolysaccharide (LPS) on morphology, motility, and cytoskeletal organization of microglia in cultures. J Neurosci Res. 1995;41(2):222–37.
42. Aloisi F, Penna G, Polazzi E, Minghetti L, Adorini L. CD40-CD154 interaction and IFN-gamma are required for IL-12 but not prostaglandin E2 secretion by microglia during antigen presentation to Th1 cells. J Immunol. 1999;162(3):1384–91.

43. Kim YS, Kim SS, Cho JJ, Choi DH, Hwang O, Shin DH, et al. Matrix metalloproteinase-3: a novel signaling proteinase from apoptotic neuronal cells that activates microglia. J Neurosci. 2005;25(14):3701–11.
44. Moller T, Hanisch UK, Ransom BR. Thrombin-induced activation of cultured rodent microglia. J Neurochem. 2000;75(4):1539–47.
45. Suzumura A, Sawada M, Takayanagi T. Production of interleukin-12 and expression of its receptors by murine microglia. Brain Res. 1998;787(1):139–42.
46. Tan J, Town T, Mori T, Wu Y, Saxe M, Crawford F, et al. CD45 opposes beta-amyloid peptide-induced microglial activation via inhibition of p44/42 mitogen-activated protein kinase. J Neurosci. 2000;20(20):7587–94.
47. Tsirka SE. Clinical implications of the involvement of tPA in neuronal cell death. J Mol Med. 1997;75(5):341–7.
48. Kosloski LM, Ha DM, Hutter JA, Stone DK, Pichler MR, Reynolds AD, et al. Adaptive immune regulation of glial homeostasis as an immunization strategy for neurodegenerative diseases. J Neurochem. 2010;114(5):1261–76.
49. Reynolds AD, Glanzer JG, Kadiu I, Ricardo-Dukelow M, Chaudhuri A, Ciborowski P, et al. Nitrated alpha-synuclein-activated microglial profiling for Parkinson's disease. J Neurochem. 2008;104(6):1504–25.
50. Kreutzberg GW. Microglia: a sensor for pathological events in the CNS. Trends Neurosci. 1996;19(8):312–8.
51. Whitton PS. Inflammation as a causative factor in the aetiology of Parkinson's disease. Br J Pharmacol. 2007;150(8):963–76.
52. Mosley RL, Benner EJ, Kadiu I, Thomas M, Boska MD, Hasan K, et al. Neuroinflammation, oxidative stress and the pathogenesis of Parkinson's disease. Clin Neurosci Res. 2006;6(5):261–81.
53. Su X, Maguire-Zeiss KA, Giuliano R, Prifti L, Venkatesh K, Federoff HJ. Synuclein activates microglia in a model of Parkinson's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 2008;29(11):1690–701.
54. Aloisi F. Immune function of microglia. Glia. 2001;36(2):165–79.
55. He Y, Le WD, Appel SH. Role of Fcgamma receptors in nigral cell injury induced by Parkinson disease immunoglobulin injection into mouse substantia nigra. Exp Neurol. 2002;176(2):322–7.
56. Phani S, Loike JD, Przedborski S. Neurodegeneration and Inflammation in Parkinson's disease. Parkinsonism Relat Disord. 2012;18 Suppl 1:S207–9.
57. Brecknell JE, Dunnett SB, Fawcett JW. A quantitative study of cell death in the substantia nigra following a mechanical lesion of the medial forebrain bundle. Neuroscience. 1995;64(1):219–27.
58. Revuelta M, Venero JL, Machado A, Cano J. Serotonin hyperinnervation in the adult rat ventral mesencephalon following unilateral transection of the medial forebrain bundle. Correlation with reactive microglial and astroglial populations. Neuroscience. 1999;91(2):567–77.
59. Sugama S, Cho BP, Degiorgio LA, Shimizu Y, Kim SS, Kim YS, et al. Temporal and sequential analysis of microglia in the substantia nigra following medial forebrain bundle axotomy in rat. Neuroscience. 2003;116(4):925–33.
60. Sugama S, Yang L, Cho BP, DeGiorgio LA, Lorenzl S, Albers DS, et al. Age-related microglial activation in 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP)-induced dopaminergic neurodegeneration in C57BL/6 mice. Brain Res. 2003;964(2):288–94.
61. Reynolds AD, Banerjee R, Liu J, Gendelman HE, Mosley RL. Neuroprotective activities of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells in an animal model of Parkinson's disease. J Leukoc Biol. 2007;82(5):1083–94.
62. Reynolds AD, Kadiu I, Garg SK, Glanzer JG, Nordgren T, Ciborowski P, et al. Nitrated alpha-synuclein and microglial neuroregulatory activities. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2008;3(2):59–74.
63. Reynolds AD, Stone DK, Hutter JA, Benner EJ, Mosley RL, Gendelman HE. Regulatory T cells attenuate Th17 cell-mediated nigrostriatal dopaminergic neurodegeneration in a model of Parkinson's disease. J Immunol. 2010;184(5):2261–71.

64. Reynolds AD, Stone DK, Mosley RL, Gendelman HE. Nitrated {alpha}-synuclein-induced alterations in microglial immunity are regulated by CD4+ T cell subsets. J Immunol. 2009;182(7):4137–49.
65. Reynolds AD, Stone DK, Mosley RL, Gendelman HE. Proteomic studies of nitrated alpha-synuclein microglia regulation by CD4+ CD25+ T cells. J Proteome Res. 2009;8(7):3497–511.
66. Hunot S, Hirsch EC. Neuroinflammatory processes in Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol. 2003;53 Suppl 3:S49–58. discussion S-60.
67. Kim WG, Mohney RP, Wilson B, Jeohn GH, Liu B, Hong JS. Regional difference in susceptibility to lipopolysaccharide-induced neurotoxicity in the rat brain: role of microglia. J Neurosci. 2000;20(16):6309–16.
68. Lawson LJ, Perry VH, Dri P, Gordon S. Heterogeneity in the distribution and morphology of microglia in the normal adult mouse brain. Neuroscience. 1990;39(1):151–70.
69. Blum-Degen D, Muller T, Kuhn W, Gerlach M, Przuntek H, Riederer P. Interleukin-1 beta and interleukin-6 are elevated in the cerebrospinal fluid of Alzheimer's and de novo Parkinson's disease patients. Neurosci Lett. 1995;202(1–2):17–20.
70. Gonzalez-Scarano F, Baltuch G. Microglia as mediators of inflammatory and degenerative diseases. Annu Rev Neurosci. 1999;22:219–40.
71. Schiefer J, Kampe K, Dodt HU, Zieglgansberger W, Kreutzberg GW. Microglial motility in the rat facial nucleus following peripheral axotomy. J Neurocytol. 1999;28(6):439–53.
72. Takeuchi H, Mizuno T, Zhang G, Wang J, Kawanokuchi J, Kuno R, et al. Neuritic beading induced by activated microglia is an early feature of neuronal dysfunction toward neuronal death by inhibition of mitochondrial respiration and axonal transport. J Biol Chem. 2005;280(11):10444–54.
73. Langston JW, Ballard P, Tetrud JW, Irwin I. Chronic Parkinsonism in humans due to a product of meperidine-analog synthesis. Science. 1983;219(4587):979–80.
74. McGeer PL, Schwab C, Parent A, Doudet D. Presence of reactive microglia in monkey substantia nigra years after 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine administration. Ann Neurol. 2003;54(5):599–604.
75. Teismann P, Tieu K, Choi DK, Wu DC, Naini A, Hunot S, et al. Cyclooxygenase-2 is instrumental in Parkinson's disease neurodegeneration. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100(9):5473–8.
76. Su X, Maguire-Zeiss KA, Giuliano R, Prifti L, Venkatesh K, Federoff HJ. Synuclein activates microglia in a model of Parkinson's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 2007;29(11):1690–701.
77. Sekiyama K, Sugama S, Fujita M, Sekigawa A, Takamatsu Y, Waragai M, et al. Neuroinflammation in Parkinson's disease and related disorders: a lesson from genetically manipulated mouse models of alpha-synucleinopathies. Parkinsons Dis. 2012;2012:271732.
78. Faraco G, Pittelli M, Cavone L, Fossati S, Porcu M, Mascagni P, et al. Histone deacetylase (HDAC) inhibitors reduce the glial inflammatory response in vitro and in vivo. Neurobiol Dis. 2009;36(2):269–79.
79. Mills KH. TLR-dependent T, cell activation in autoimmunity. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11(12):807–22.
80. McRae-Degueurce A, Rosengren L, Haglid K, Booj S, Gottfries CG, Granerus AC, et al. Immunocytochemical investigations on the presence of neuron-specific antibodies in the CSF of Parkinson's disease cases. Neurochem Res. 1988;13(7):679–84.
81. Dahlstrom A, Wigander A, Lundmark K, Gottfries CG, Carvey PM, McRae A. Investigations on auto-antibodies in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases, using defined neuronal cultures. J Neural Transm Suppl. 1990;29:195–206.
82. Kunas RC, McRae A, Kesselring J, Villiger PM. Antidopaminergic antibodies in a patient with a complex autoimmune disorder and rapidly progressing Parkinson's disease. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 1995;96(5 Pt 1):688–90.
83. Fiszer U, Fredrikson S, Czlonkowska A. Humoral response to hsp 65 and hsp 70 in cerebrospinal fluid in Parkinson's disease. J Neurol Sci. 1996;139(1):66–70.

84. Papachroni KK, Ninkina N, Papapanagiotou A, Hadjigeorgiou GM, Xiromerisiou G, Papadimitriou A, et al. Autoantibodies to alpha-synuclein in inherited Parkinson's disease. J Neurochem. 2007;101(3):749–56.
85. Yanamandra K, Gruden MA, Casaite V, Meskys R, Forsgren L, Morozova-Roche LA. Alpha-synuclein reactive antibodies as diagnostic biomarkers in blood sera of Parkinson's disease patients. PLoS One. 2011;6(4):e18513.
86. Gruden MA, Sewell RD, Yanamandra K, Davidova TV, Kucheryanu VG, Bocharov EV, et al. Immunoprotection against toxic biomarkers is retained during Parkinson's disease progression. J Neuroimmunol. 2011;233(1–2):221–7.
87. Zappia M, Crescibene L, Bosco D, Arabia G, Nicoletti G, Bagala A, et al. Anti-GM1 ganglioside antibodies in Parkinson's disease. Acta Neurol Scand. 2002;106(1):54–7.
88. Poletaev AB, Morozov SG, Gnedenko BB, Zlunikin VM, Korzhenevskey DA. Serum anti-S100b, anti-GFAP and anti-NGF autoantibodies of IgG class in healthy persons and patients with mental and neurological disorders. Autoimmunity. 2000;32(1):33–8.
89. Terryberry JW, Thor G, Peter JB. Autoantibodies in neurodegenerative diseases: antigen-specific frequencies and intrathecal analysis. Neurobiol Aging. 1998;19(3):205–16.
90. Elizan TS, Casals J, Yahr MD. Antineurofilament antibodies in postencephalitic and idiopathic Parkinson's disease. J Neurol Sci. 1983;59(3):341–7.
91. Karcher D, Federsppiel BS, Lowenthal FD, Frank F, Lowenthal A. Anti-neurofilament antibodies in blood of patients with neurological diseases. Acta Neuropathol. 1986;72(1):82–5.
92. Appel SH, Smith RG, Alexianu M, Engelhardt J, Mosier D, Colom L, et al. Neurodegenerative disease: autoimmunity involving calcium channels. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1994;747:183–94.
93. Hong J, Li N, Zhang X, Zheng B, Zhang JZ. Induction of CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T cells by copolymer-I through activation of transcription factor Foxp3. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102(18):6449–54.
94. Vellas B, Black R, Thal LJ, Fox NC, Daniels M, McLennan G, et al. Long-term follow-up of patients immunized with AN1792: reduced functional decline in antibody responders. Curr Alzheimer Res. 2009;6(2):144–51.
95. Depboylu C, Schafer MK, Arias-Carrion O, Oertel WH, Weihe E, Hoglinger GU. Possible involvement of complement factor C1q in the clearance of extracellular neuromelanin from the substantia nigra in Parkinson disease. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2011;70(2):125–32.
96. Brochard V, Combadiere B, Prigent A, Laouar Y, Perrin A, Beray-Berthat V, et al. Infiltration of CD4+ lymphocytes into the brain contributes to neurodegeneration in a mouse model of Parkinson disease. J Clin Invest. 2009;119(1):182–92.
97. Benner EJ, Banerjee R, Reynolds AD, Sherman S, Pisarev VM, Tsiperson V, et al. Nitrated alpha-synuclein immunity accelerates degeneration of nigral dopaminergic neurons. PLoS One. 2008;3(1):e1376.
98. Benner EJ, Mosley RL, Destache CJ, Lewis TB, Jackson-Lewis V, Gorantla S, et al. Therapeutic immunization protects dopaminergic neurons in a mouse model of Parkinson's disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2004;101(25):9435–40.
99. Kurkowska-Jastrzebska I, Wronska A, Kohutnicka M, Czlonkowski A, Czlonkowska A. MHC class II positive microglia and lymphocytic infiltration are present in the substantia nigra and striatum in mouse model of Parkinson's disease. Acta Neurobiol Exp (Wars). 1999;59(1):1–8.
100. Kurkowska-Jastrzebska I, Wronska A, Kohutnicka M, Czlonkowski A, Czlonkowska A. The inflammatory reaction following 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3, 6-tetrahydropyridine intoxication in mouse. Exp Neurol. 1999;156(1):50–61.
101. Kortekaas R, Leenders KL, van Oostrom JC, Vaalburg W, Bart J, Willemsen AT, et al. Blood-brain barrier dysfunction in Parkinsonian midbrain in vivo. Ann Neurol. 2005;57(2):176–9.
102. Bas J, Calopa M, Mestre M, Mollevi DG, Cutillas B, Ambrosio S, et al. Lymphocyte populations in Parkinson's disease and in rat models of parkinsonism. J Neuroimmunol. 2001;113(1):146–52.

103. Crucian B, Dunne P, Friedman H, Ragsdale R, Pross S, Widen R. Alterations in levels of CD28-/CD8+ suppressor cell precursor and CD45RO+/CD4+ memory T lymphocytes in the peripheral blood of multiple sclerosis patients. Clin Diagn Lab Immunol. 1995;2(2): 249–52.
104. Fiszer U, Mix E, Fredrikson S, Kostulas V, Link H. Parkinson's disease and immunological abnormalities: increase of HLA-DR expression on monocytes in cerebrospinal fluid and of CD45RO+ T cells in peripheral blood. Acta Neurol Scand. 1994;90(3):160–6.
105. Hisanaga K, Asagi M, Itoyama Y, Iwasaki Y. Increase in peripheral CD4 bright+ CD8 dull+ T cells in Parkinson disease. Arch Neurol. 2001;58(10):1580–3.
106. Baba Y, Kuroiwa A, Uitti RJ, Wszolek ZK, Yamada T. Alterations of T-lymphocyte populations in Parkinson disease. Parkinsonism Relat Disord. 2005;11(8):493–8.
107. Rentzos M, Nikolaou C, Andreadou E, Paraskevas GP, Rombos A, Zoga M, et al. Circulating interleukin-15 and RANTES chemokine in Parkinson's disease. Acta Neurol Scand. 2007;116(6):374–9.
108. Rentzos M, Nikolaou C, Andreadou E, Paraskevas GP, Rombos A, Zoga M, et al. Circulating interleukin-10 and interleukin-12 in Parkinson's disease. Acta Neurol Scand. 2009;119(5): 332–7.
109. Fiszer U, Mix E, Fredrikson S, Kostulas V, Olsson T, Link H. Gamma delta+ T cells are increased in patients with Parkinson's disease. J Neurol Sci. 1994;121(1):39–45.
110. Bennett JL, Stuve O. Update on inflammation, neurodegeneration, and immunoregulation in multiple sclerosis: therapeutic implications. Clin Neuropharmacol. 2009;32(3):121–32.
111. Blink SE, Miller SD. The contribution of gammadelta T cells to the pathogenesis of EAE and MS. Curr Mol Med. 2009;9(1):15–22.
112. Ponomarev ED, Dittel BN. Gamma delta T cells regulate the extent and duration of inflammation in the central nervous system by a Fas ligand-dependent mechanism. J Immunol. 2005;174(8):4678–87.
113. Saunders JA, Estes KA, Kosloski LM, Allen HE, Dempsey KM, Torres-Russotto DR, et al. CD4+ regulatory and effector/memory T cell subsets profile motor dysfunction in Parkinson's disease. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2012;7(4):927–38.
114. Ha D, Stone DK, Mosley RL, Gendelman HE. Immunization strategies for Parkinson's disease. Parkinsonism Relat Disord. 2012;18 Suppl 1:S218–21.
115. Aggarwal S, Xie MH, Maruoka M, Foster J, Gurney AL. Acinar cells of the pancreas are a target of interleukin-22. J Interferon Cytokine Res. 2001;21(12):1047–53.
116. Korn T, Bettelli E, Oukka M, Kuchroo VK. IL-17 and Th17 Cells. Annu Rev Immunol. 2009;27:485–517.
117. Monteleone G, Pallone F, Macdonald TT. Interleukin-21 as a new therapeutic target for immune-mediated diseases. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2009;30(8):441–7.
118. Hecker A, Kaufmann A, Hecker M, Padberg W, Grau V. Expression of interleukin-21, interleukin-21 receptor alpha and related type I cytokines by intravascular graft leukocytes during acute renal allograft rejection. Immunobiology. 2009;214(1):41–9.
119. Kebir H, Kreymborg K, Ifergan I, Dodelet-Devillers A, Cayrol R, Bernard M, et al. Human Th17 lymphocytes promote blood-brain barrier disruption and central nervous system inflammation. Nat Med. 2007;13(10):1173–5.
120. Appel SH. CD4+ T cells mediate cytotoxicity in neurodegenerative diseases. J Clin Invest. 2009;119(1):13–5.
121. Yong VW. Prospects of repair in multiple sclerosis. J Neurol Sci. 2009;277 Suppl 1:S16–8.
122. Schrempf W, Ziemssen T. Glatiramer acetate: mechanisms of action in multiple sclerosis. Autoimmun Rev. 2007;6(7):469–75.
123. Boska MD, Lewis TB, Destache CJ, Benner EJ, Nelson JA, Uberti M, et al. Quantitative 1H magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging determines therapeutic immunization efficacy in an animal model of Parkinson's disease. J Neurosci. 2005;25(7):1691–700.
124. Zhu J, Paul WE. Peripheral CD4+ T-cell differentiation regulated by networks of cytokines and transcription factors. Immunol Rev. 2010;238(1):247–62.

125. Sakaguchi S, Sakaguchi N, Shimizu J, Yamazaki S, Sakihama T, Itoh M, et al. Immunologic tolerance maintained by CD25+ CD4+ regulatory T cells: their common role in controlling autoimmunity, tumor immunity, and transplantation tolerance. Immunol Rev. 2001;182:18–32.
126. Wildin RS, Smyk-Pearson S, Filipovich AH. Clinical and molecular features of the immunodysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy, X linked (IPEX) syndrome. J Med Genet. 2002;39(8):537–45.
127. Hawrylowicz CM, O'Garra A. Potential role of interleukin-10-secreting regulatory T cells in allergy and asthma. Nat Rev Immunol. 2005;5(4):271–83.
128. Joetham A, Takeda K, Taube C, Miyahara N, Matsubara S, Koya T, et al. Naturally occurring lung CD4(+)CD25(+) T cell regulation of airway allergic responses depends on IL-10 induction of TGF-beta. J Immunol. 2007;178(3):1433–42.
129. Grossman WJ, Verbsky JW, Barchet W, Colonna M, Atkinson JP, Ley TJ. Human T regulatory cells can use the perforin pathway to cause autologous target cell death. Immunity. 2004;21(4):589–601.
130. Pandiyan P, Zheng L, Ishihara S, Reed J, Lenardo MJ. CD4+ CD25+ Foxp3+ regulatory T cells induce cytokine deprivation-mediated apoptosis of effector CD4+ T cells. Nat Immunol. 2007;8(12):1353–62.
131. Tadokoro CE, Shakhar G, Shen S, Ding Y, Lino AC, Maraver A, et al. Regulatory T cells inhibit stable contacts between CD4+ T cells and dendritic cells in vivo. J Exp Med. 2006;203(3):505–11.
132. Tang Q, Adams JY, Tooley AJ, Bi M, Fife BT, Serra P, et al. Visualizing regulatory T cell control of autoimmune responses in nonobese diabetic mice. Nat Immunol. 2006;7(1):83–92.
133. Cederbom L, Hall H, Ivars F. CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T cells down-regulate co-stimulatory molecules on antigen-presenting cells. Eur J Immunol. 2000;30(6):1538–43.
134. Suri-Payer E, Amar AZ, Thornton AM, Shevach EM. CD4+ CD25+ T cells inhibit both the induction and effector function of autoreactive T cells and represent a unique lineage of immunoregulatory cells. J Immunol. 1998;160(3):1212–8.
135. Thornton AM, Shevach EM. Suppressor effector function of CD4+ CD25+ immunoregulatory T cells is antigen nonspecific. J Immunol. 2000;164(1):183–90.
136. Kordower JH, Chu Y, Hauser RA, Olanow CW, Freeman TB. Transplanted dopaminergic neurons develop PD pathologic changes: a second case report. Mov Disord. 2008;23(16): 2303–6.
137. Li JY, Englund E, Holton JL, Soulet D, Hagell P, Lees AJ, et al. Lewy bodies in grafted neurons in subjects with Parkinson's disease suggest host-to-graft disease propagation. Nat Med. 2008;14(5):501–3.
138. Kordower JH, Chu Y, Hauser RA, Freeman TB, Olanow CW. Lewy body-like pathology in long-term embryonic nigral transplants in Parkinson's disease. Nat Med. 2008;14(5):504–6.
139. Mendez I, Vinuela A, Astradsson A, Mukhida K, Hallett P, Robertson H, et al. Dopamine neurons implanted into people with Parkinson's disease survive without pathology for 14 years. Nat Med. 2008;14(5):507–9.
140. Hirsch EC, Hunot S. Neuroinflammation in Parkinson's disease: a target for neuroprotection? Lancet Neurol. 2009;8(4):382–97.
141. Hirsch EC, Jenner P, Przedborski S. Pathogenesis of Parkinson's disease. Mov Disord. 2013;28(1):24–30.
142. Morando S, Vigo T, Esposito M, Casazza S, Novi G, Principato MC, et al. The therapeutic effect of mesenchymal stem cell transplantation in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis is mediated by peripheral and central mechanisms. Stem Cell Res Ther. 2012;3(1):3.
143. Uccelli A, Laroni A, Freedman MS. Mesenchymal stem cells for the treatment of multiple sclerosis and other neurological diseases. Lancet Neurol. 2011;10(7):649–56.
144. Chen H, Jacobs E, Schwarzschild MA, McCullough ML, Calle EE, Thun MJ, et al. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug use and the risk for Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol. 2005;58(6):963–7.
145. Chen H, Zhang SM, Hernan MA, Schwarzschild MA, Willett WC, Colditz GA, et al. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and the risk of Parkinson disease. Arch Neurol. 2003;60(8):1059–64.

146. He Y, Appel S, Le W. Minocycline inhibits microglial activation and protects nigral cells after 6-hydroxydopamine injection into mouse striatum. Brain Res. 2001;909(1–2):187–93.
147. Teismann P, Ferger B. Inhibition of the cyclooxygenase isoenzymes COX-1 and COX-2 provide neuroprotection in the MPTP-mouse model of Parkinson's disease. Synapse. 2001;39(2):167–74.
148. Liberatore GT, Jackson-Lewis V, Vukosavic S, Mandir AS, Vila M, McAuliffe WG, et al. Inducible nitric oxide synthase stimulates dopaminergic neurodegeneration in the MPTP model of Parkinson disease. Nat Med. 1999;5(12):1403–9.
149. Morale MC, Serra PA, Delogu MR, Migheli R, Rocchitta G, Tirolo C, et al. Glucocorticoid receptor deficiency increases vulnerability of the nigrostriatal dopaminergic system: critical role of glial nitric oxide. FASEB J. 2004;18(1):164–6.
150. Dehmer T, Lindenau J, Haid S, Dichgans J, Schulz JB. Deficiency of inducible nitric oxide synthase protects against MPTP toxicity in vivo. J Neurochem. 2000;74(5):2213–6.
151. Kim HS, Suh YH. Minocycline and neurodegenerative diseases. Behav Brain Res. 2009;196(2):168–79.
152. Yrjanheikki J, Tikka T, Keinanen R, Goldsteins G, Chan PH, Koistinaho J. A tetracycline derivative, minocycline, reduces inflammation and protects against focal cerebral ischemia with a wide therapeutic window. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1999;96(23):13496–500.
153. Tikka T, Fiebich BL, Goldsteins G, Keinanen R, Koistinaho J. Minocycline, a tetracycline derivative, is neuroprotective against excitotoxicity by inhibiting activation and proliferation of microglia. J Neurosci. 2001;21(8):2580–8.
154. Du Y, Ma Z, Lin S, Dodel RC, Gao F, Bales KR, et al. Minocycline prevents nigrostriatal dopaminergic neurodegeneration in the MPTP model of Parkinson's disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98(25):14669–74.
155. Wu DC, Jackson-Lewis V, Vila M, Tieu K, Teismann P, Vadseth C, et al. Blockade of microglial activation is neuroprotective in the 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine mouse model of Parkinson disease. J Neurosci. 2002;22(5):1763–71.
156. NINDS.NET-PD.Investigators. A randomized, double-blind, futility clinical trial of creatine and minocycline in early Parkinson disease. Neurology. 2006;66(5):664–71.
157. NINDS.NET-PD.Investigators. A pilot clinical trial of creatine and minocycline in early Parkinson disease: 18-month results. Clin Neuropharmacol. 2008;31(3):141–50.
158. Dodel R, Spottke A, Gerhard A, Reuss A, Reinecker S, Schimke N, et al. Minocycline 1-year therapy in multiple-system-atrophy: effect on clinical symptoms and [(11)C] (R)-PK11195 PET (MEMSA-trial). Mov Disord. 2010;25(1):97–107.
159. Putnam AL, Brusko TM, Lee MR, Liu W, Szot GL, Ghosh T, et al. Expansion of human regulatory T-cells from patients with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes. 2009;58(3):652–62.
160. Brusko TM, Putnam AL, Bluestone JA. Human regulatory T cells: role in autoimmune disease and therapeutic opportunities. Immunol Rev. 2008;223:371–90.
161. Gonzalez-Rey E, Fernandez-Martin A, Chorny A, Delgado M. Vasoactive intestinal peptide induces CD4+, CD25+ T regulatory cells with therapeutic effect in collagen-induced arthritis. Arthritis Rheum. 2006;54(3):864–76.
162. Haas J, Korporal M, Balint B, Fritzsching B, Schwarz A, Wildemann B. Glatiramer acetate improves regulatory T-cell function by expansion of naive CD4(+)CD25(+)FOXP3(+) CD31(+) T-cells in patients with multiple sclerosis. J Neuroimmunol. 2009;216(1–2):113–7.
163. Vandenbark AA, Huan J, Agotsch M, La Tocha D, Goelz S, Offner H, et al. Interferon-beta-1a treatment increases CD56bright natural killer cells and CD4+ CD25+ Foxp3 expression in subjects with multiple sclerosis. J Neuroimmunol. 2009;215(1–2):125–8.
164. Lowther DE, Hafler DA. Regulatory T cells in the central nervous system. Immunol Rev. 2012;248(1):156–69.
165. Lan Q, Fan H, Quesniaux V, Ryffel B, Liu Z, Zheng SG. Induced Foxp3(+) regulatory T cells: a potential new weapon to treat autoimmune and inflammatory diseases? J Mol Cell Biol. 2012;4(1):22–8.

Multiple Sclerosis: Impact on Functioning of the Blood–Brain Barrier

Mark R. Mizee, Gijs Kooij, and Helga E. de Vries

Abstract Proper function of the neurovasculature is required for optimal brain function and preventing neuroinflammation and neurodegeneration. During a large number of neurological disorders, dysfunction of the blood–brain barrier (BBB) is an apparent feature and may significantly contribute to disease progression. In particular, during the neuroinflammatory disorder multiple sclerosis (MS), the function of the BBB is severely hampered and immune cells gain access into the brain, causing neurological deficits. Consequently, transport of compounds, including drugs, may be altered under disease condition.

Within this chapter, we will discuss alterations of the function of the BBB and its consequences in the neuroinflammatory disorder multiple sclerosis.

Keywords Multiple sclerosis • Blood–brain barrier • Astrocytes • Immune cell trafficking

1 Multiple Sclerosis

1.1 Clinical Features and Diagnosis

Multiple sclerosis (MS) is a chronic inflammatory demyelinating disease of the central nervous system (CNS), affecting over 2.5 million individuals worldwide. The onset of disease generally occurs between the age of 20 and 40 and is considered to be one of the most disabling neurodegenerative diseases in young adults [1]. MS incidence and prevalence is highest in Western countries (Northern Europe, North America)

M.R. Mizee • G. Kooij • H.E. de Vries (✉)
Department of Molecular Cell Biology and Immunology (MCBI), Neuroscience Campus, VU University Medical Center, P.O. Box 7057, Amsterdam 1007MB, The Netherlands
e-mail: he.devries@vumc.nl

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_8, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

where the lifetime risk of MS development is approximately one per 1,000, affecting more women than men in a ratio of 3:1.

During MS, immune cells infiltrate the CNS causing damage to the protective myelin sheaths that surround the axons, which gradually leads to motor and sensory deficits. Clinical features of MS depend on lesion number, size, and location in the CNS and may be heterogeneous. A common sensory disturbance is impaired vision due to optic neuritis, and motor disturbances include muscle weakness, tremor, paralysis, and spasms. Depending on clinical features, four main subtypes of MS can be distinguished [2, 3].

The majority (~70 %) of MS cases progress in a relapsing-remitting course (RRMS) characterized by clearly defined alternating episodes of neurologic impairment and recovery. About half of all RRMS cases develop a secondary progressive course of MS (SPMS) within 10 years, characterized by increasing permanent neurologic impairment. Two other disease courses that comprise a small part (~15 %) of the total MS population are primary-progressive MS (PPMS), characterized by increasing neurologic impairment from the point of MS onset without recovery, and progressive-relapsing MS (PRMS; ~5 %), characterized by a steadily increasing neurologic impairment combined with acute attacks of disability [4, 5]. The diagnosis of MS is primarily based on clinical history and neurological examination and is supported by cerebrospinal fluid analysis and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the brain and spinal cord, to determine the number and size of MS lesions and blood–brain barrier (BBB) leakage [4, 5].

1.2 Etiology

MS is conventionally viewed as an autoimmune disorder that has a multifactorial background, but its precise etiology is largely unknown. Both environmental and genetic factors may contribute to disease susceptibility and disease outcome. Sibling and twin studies have demonstrated that the incidence of MS is higher in monozygotic twins (25–30 %) compared to dizygotic twins (2–5 %) [6]. Moreover, genome-wide studies have revealed that susceptibility of MS is linked to genes in the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) on chromosome 6. Alleles for certain class II genes, human leukocyte antigen (HLA), confer the strongest risk of contracting MS [6, 7]. Family studies have revealed that first-degree relatives of MS patients are more likely to develop MS compared to non-related persons [6–8]. Furthermore, supporting a genetic component in MS susceptibility, twin studies showed a higher concordance rate of MS in monozygotic twins compared to dizygotic twins [8–11]. Concerning genetic associations, certain HLA alleles are associated with susceptibility to MS. The allele with the strongest association with MS is HLA-DRB1*15 (HLA-DR2) showing consistency of effect across several western European and Scandinavian countries and the Unites States. In addition, various genes coding for cytokines (interleukin (IL)7, IL12A, IL12B), cytokine/chemokine receptors (CXCR5, IL2 receptor A, IL7 receptor, tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor, IL12 receptor), adhesion molecules (vascular cell adhesion molecule (VCAM)-1), and

co-stimulatory molecules (CD37, CD40, CD80, CD86) are associated with pathogenesis of MS [12].

Environmental factors also contribute to the risk of developing MS as the prevalence of MS generally increases with distance from the equator and is particularly high in Northern Europe and North America. This may be related to exposure to sunlight (vitamin D), diet, or viral or other infections. Numerous viruses have been associated with MS pathology, including Epstein-Barr virus, human herpes simplex virus, measles virus, or Chlamydia pneumoniae [13–22], although no single infectious agent has been directly related to MS.

Epidemiological data further suggest that associated with living around the equator during the first 15 years of life environmental factors induce an MS resistant state that is maintained even when persons move toward high-risk areas for MS [7, 23–25]. Many explanations have been sought for this interesting phenomenon, one of them being the occurrence of helminth infections [24, 25]. Areas with high frequency of such infections show an extremely low frequency of MS [24, 25]. In addition, helminth-infected MS patients show significant lower number of relapses, reduced disability scores, and lower MRI activity compared to uninfected MS subjects [25]. These initial studies indicate that helminth infections possibly may reset the innate immune system which results in diminished clinical symptoms of MS.

1.3 Pathogenesis

Although the exact cause of MS remains unknown, MS is characterized neuropathologically by the presence of multiple focal lesions throughout the CNS [2]. MS lesions occur in all brain areas, although there are several predilection sites, like the optic nerves, periventricular white matter, brain stem, cerebellum, and spinal cord. MS white matter lesions are histopathologically characterized by the destruction of myelin sheaths, oligodendrocyte cell death, axonal damage, and glial scar formation and the presence of inflammatory cell infiltrates. Based on the degree of myelin loss and the presence of inflammatory cells or microglial cell activation, MS lesions in the white matter can be classified as preactive, active, chronic active, and chronic inactive lesions [26].

Active white matter MS lesions contain high numbers of immune cells, mainly T cells and monocyte-derived macrophages, of which the latter are mainly responsive for causing damage to the myelin sheaths surrounding axons, resulting in neuronal dysfunction. The mechanisms of CNS inflammation involve activation of autoreactive, myelin specific T helper (TH) cells in the peripheral lymphoid organs, possibly by molecular mimicry, which gain entry to the CNS and form perivascular infiltrates, a process that is accompanied by enhanced permeability of the BBB [27–30]. Local antigen-presenting cells (APCs), like microglia or perivascular macrophages, subsequently reactivate transmigrated T cells by presenting their specific target antigens. Consequently, increased amounts of proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines are locally produced, which in turn attracts more monocyte-derived macrophages and lymphocytes to the site of inflammation. This inflammatory cascade

finally leads to destruction of myelin sheaths and axonal loss [31–34]. Characteristic subsets of myeloid cells present in demyelinating lesions are foamy macrophages, which obtain their distinctive morphology by ingestion and accumulation of vast amounts of myelin-derived lipids. Glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP)-positive reactive astrocytes with long processes are evenly distributed throughout the demyelinated areas where they inhibit remyelination and axonal sprouting and regeneration by glial scar formation [35].

MS has long been considered an autoimmune disease primarily affecting the white matter (WM). However, it has become increasingly clear that grey matter (GM) pathology is an important aspect of the disease. To date, evidence that extensive demyelination occurs in the cerebral cortex of patients with chronic MS is increasing [36, 37]. In the cortex and deep GM brain regions, areas of demyelination can be detected in the presence of infiltrating inflammatory cells [37]. GM lesions are differently classified compared to WM lesions, based on their location within the cortex. So-called type I lesions are mixed GM/WM lesions, which are also visible on conventional histochemistry; type II lesions are mostly located around cortical blood vessels; type III lesions are subpial lesions and represent the most common type of cortical GM lesions; type III lesions reach from the pial surface downward into the cortex and may cover multiple gyri. Finally, type IV lesions are large, cortex-spanning lesions covering all six layers of the cortex while never reaching into the WM [38, 39].

However, the exact GM lesion pathology remains largely unknown [39], as WM lesion hallmarks like BBB dysfunction and leukocyte infiltration are not apparent in GM lesions [40].

1.4 Disease-Modifying Drugs

Despite many advances in both molecular and clinical MS research, MS has not been curable and current therapies consist of lifelong disease and symptom management. They are based on the hypothesis that MS is an autoimmune disease and is therefore anti-inflammatory, immunosuppressive, or immunomodulating agents. The most widely used drugs during relapses are corticosteroids like prednisone and methylprednisolone, which have both immunosuppressive and anti-inflammatory properties and reduce the duration of a relapse and accelerate recovery. RRMS patients are often treated with interferon beta (IFN-β) or glatiramer acetate, which have both been shown to reduce exacerbation frequency and severity and to improve neurological disability [41, 42].

One of the recent drugs that seems promising is natalizumab (Tysabri), which is a recombinant humanized monoclonal antibody directed against the α_4 chain of the $\alpha_4\beta_1$ integrin (or very late antigen-4 (VLA-4)) that is expressed on activated lymphocytes and monocytes and is involved in transendothelial migration [43–45]. Natalizumab treatment significantly reduced the number of new lesions and clinical relapses by blocking leukocyte migration into the brain [46].

A novel immunosuppressant drug recently on the market for treatment of RRMS is FTY720, which can reduce both relapse rate and the number of new lesions [47, 48].

FTY720 targets lymphocytes that result in sequestering of these cells in secondary lymphoid organs. Furthermore, it actively blocks lymphocyte passage over the BBB thereby reducing disease progression, indicating that limitation of the inflammation process during MS pathology is an attractive therapeutic strategy, although such drugs have limited efficacy when patients have already entered the progressive phase.

1.5 Animal Model for MS, Experimental Allergic Encephalomyelitis

Most of our current knowledge about the pathogenesis of MS is extrapolated from an animal model called experimental allergic encephalomyelitis (EAE). EAE is a widely accepted animal model for MS, sharing its clinical, immunological, and pathological characteristics [49, 50]. Rodents or nonhuman primates display MS-like symptoms after active immunization of these animals with myelin components or total myelin in combination with a strong adjuvant like (in)complete Freunds' adjuvant. Immunization leads to the development of autoreactive T cells in the peripheral lymphoid organs that recognize myelin proteins. These T cells finally enter the CNS where they find their antigens, which results in CNS inflammation, loss of neurological function, and subsequently paralysis. Depending on the immunization protocol, disease pattern may vary from monophasic type of disease with only minor myelin damage (acute EAE or transfer EAE) to the demyelinating and relapsing-remitting form (chronic EAE). Generally, clinical signs manifest themselves in an ascending manner, beginning with loss of tail tonus followed by paralysis of the hind limbs, and the disease may progress to the front limbs and occasionally even to death of the animals. However, EAE is far from being a perfect approximation of MS because MS is more heterogeneous and the target antigen(s) is (are) not known. Further advances in MS therapy will depend on our growing understanding of the pathogenesis of this still incurable disease [50].

2 The Blood–Brain Barrier

The vasculature of the brain is specialized to function as a barrier to protect the CNS by restricting entry of unwanted molecules and immune cells into the brain, by active removal of cytotoxic compounds from the brain, and by supplying the brain with essential nutrients and oxygen through specific transport mechanisms. Therefore, the BBB is not static, but reacts dynamically to the local demands of neurons for their need of oxygen, glucose, and other nutrients.

Several neuroinflammatory and neurodegenerative diseases: MS, HIV, associated dementia, capillary cerebral amyloid angiopathy, and Parkinson's disease are associated with an impaired function of the BBB. Especially in MS, an altered BBB function leads to enhanced entry of immune cells and unwanted compounds into the CNS, which will be reviewed below.

2.1 Features of the Blood–Brain Barrier

A key structure that protects the CNS microenvironment from the systemic circulation is the BBB. It plays a crucial role in maintaining brain homeostasis by restricting transport of immune cells and molecules into the brain parenchyma. The BBB is composed of highly specialized brain endothelial cells, surrounded by two basement membranes, pericytes, perivascular macrophages, and astrocytes, of which the latter project their end feet to the BBB, thereby inducing specific barrier properties [43–45]. Several characteristics of brain endothelium support the barrier function and exhibit functional and morphological properties that distinguish them from peripheral endothelium. The paracellular cleft between adjacent endothelial cells (ECs) is tightly sealed due to the presence of well-developed tight junctions (TJ) and adherens junctions (AJ), thereby impeding the entrance of circulating hydrophilic molecules and immune cells into the CNS. However, small gaseous molecules and a number of lipophilic agents may diffuse freely through the lipid membranes of the ECs. Other prominent features of brain endothelium are the absence of fenestrations, low pinocytotic vesicular activity, and the presence of high densities of mitochondria in the cytosol.

To maintain brain homeostasis and provide the brain with essential nutrients, specific transporters and carrier molecules strictly regulate the uptake of nutrients and metabolites into the CNS. Furthermore, potential harmful compounds like drugs and toxins are excluded from the CNS by a large family of efflux pumps, which contribute to the multidrug-resistant (MDR) phenotype of the CNS. Due to their specific features like TJs and efflux pumps, brain endothelial cells are crucial gatekeepers of the CNS and understanding the regulation of these structures and molecules will open avenues for the treatment of brain disorders complicated by BBB dysfunction.

2.1.1 Tight Junctions

The main structures responsible for endothelial sealing are TJs and AJs [43–45, 51–60]. These intercellular structures are located between adjacent brain endothelial cells, consisting of transmembrane and cytoplasmic proteins that are associated with the actin cytoskeleton. The transmembrane proteins occludin and various claudins mediate cellular interaction between brain ECs and play a major role in TJ functioning. Occludin is a phosphoprotein that spans the plasma membrane four times with intracellular location of both the amino and the carboxy termini and is associated with increased electrical resistance. Claudins comprise a multigene family consisting of more than 20 members and contain two extracellular loops and four transmembrane domains and interact in both a homophilic and heterophilic way with claudins of adjacent cells. At the BBB, the presence of claudin-1, claudin-3, claudin-5, and recently claudin-12 has been reported. Claudin-5 is a critical component of the BBB as it closes the BBB for small molecules up to 800 Da [43–45, 51–53].

The carboxyterminal parts of both occludin and claudins interact with membrane-associated recruiting proteins of the zona occludens (ZO) protein family. ZO proteins are reported to link transmembrane proteins to the actin cytoskeleton and have signaling potential. Through its interaction with TJ molecules, the actin cytoskeleton plays an active role in maintaining TJ integrity and BBB function. AJ are composed of cadherins, catenins, vinculin, and actinin. Although both AJ and TJ act to restrict endothelial permeability, TJ are primarily responsible for the low transendothelial permeability and high transendothelial electrical resistance (TEER) due to the limitation of ion transfer. Several cytoplasmic signaling molecules, such as Rho, PI3 kinase, protein kinase C (PKC), $Ca2^{+}$, heterotrimeric G proteins, cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), and phospholipase C, have been localized to TJ and AJ complexes and may regulate their assembly and disassembly. These studies strengthen our knowledge about molecular mechanisms underlying BBB regulation at the level of TJs and may therefore provide novel therapeutic opportunities to prevent TJ disassembly and subsequent BBB dysfunction [43–45, 51–53].

2.1.2 BBB Transporters

To maintain brain homeostasis, the BBB strictly regulates the influx and efflux of a variety of proteins and molecules by different transporters and carrier molecules, which makes the BBB a selective transport barrier. The brain endothelial transporters that supply the brain with nutrients include the glucose transporter 1 (GLUT-1), several amino acid carriers like excitatory amino acid transporters (EAAT) and transporters for nucleosides, nucleobases, and many other substances [43–45].

In contrast, potential harmful compounds are excluded from the CNS by the large family of ATP-binding cassette (ABC) efflux transporters, enabling multidrug resistance of the brain to xenobiotics and toxic compounds. ABC transporters consist of a variety of drug efflux pumps, including P-glycoprotein (P-gp), breast cancer resistant protein (BCRP), and the multidrug resistance-associated proteins (MRPs). These efflux pumps are expressed in the luminal and abluminal membrane of brain capillary endothelial cells and can drive cellular exclusion of a variety of exogenous compounds and drugs through the endothelial membrane against a concentration gradient at the cost of ATP hydrolysis [54–57].

The best-known and most widely studied representative of the ABC transporter family is P-gp (MDR1; ABCB1), a phosphorylated glycoprotein that was first identified in tumor cells, where overexpression conferred multidrug resistance. Moreover, it was the first drug efflux transporter to be detected on BBB endothelial cells where it locates at the luminal membrane. P-gp actively effluxes a wide variety of substrates and drugs, although the physiological substrates of P-gp have not been identified yet. At the transcriptional level these ABC transporters are under control of the orphan nuclear receptors such as steroid and xenobiotic receptor (SXR in human or pregnane X receptor (PXR) in rodent. Expression of these ABC transporters is under the influence of a number of environmental factors like neurotransmitters, endothelial factors, and inflammatory cytokines [54–57].

2.2 Astrocytes and the BBB

Astrocytes are strongly represented within the neurovascular unit, ensheathing over 95 % of the abluminal microvascular surface. It was this observation that gave rise to the idea that astrocytic processes formed the BBB, until electron microscopic studies showed that BEC were responsible for barrier function in brain microvasculature.

Astrocytes are able to influence a number of features of the brain EC, leading to increased integrity of the BBB. TJ expression and tightening, expression and localization of EC transporters, and specialized enzyme systems have been shown to be upregulated under astrocyte influence [43]. The notion that astrocytes can induce and maintain BBB properties in brain EC through physical interaction and secreted agents has been widely accepted. Astrocyte processes extending toward CNS microvessels terminate in specialized (perivascular) endfeet structures onto the basal lamina surrounding the BEC. Astrocyte endfeet associated with BEC shows a high density of orthogonal arrays of particles (OAPs) and organized arrays of ion- and volume-regulating membrane particles identified by freeze fracture [58], containing channels like the water channel aquaporin-4 (AQP4) and the potassium ion channel Kir 4.1 [59]. Membrane proteins in OAPs represent a strong polarization of perivascular astrocyte function and correlate with the expression of the basement membrane molecule agrin, an important proteoglycan for BBB integrity, which is responsible for the correct localization of AQP4. The distribution of these channels in OAPs is most likely important in the regulation of BBB homeostasis, as disruption of this distribution is associated with microvascular damage in, among other pathologies, Alzheimer's disease (AD) [60].

The observation of astrocyte-conditioned medium inducing junction formation in EC in vitro [61] gave rise to the idea that astrocyte-derived secreted factors were able to influence their BBB properties. Numerous astrocyte-derived agents have since then been described, mainly by in vitro studies, as modulators of EC barrier function. Transforming growth factor-β (TGFβ) secreted by astrocytes has been shown to mediate the regulation of tissue plasminogen activator and the anticoagulant thrombomodulin [62]. Glial-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) has been found to enhance barrier function in BEC through the TJ [63]. Fibroblast growth factor (FGF) was found to decrease BBB permeability [64], consistent with the observation that FGF knockout mice show decreased levels of TJ proteins and BBB integrity loss [65].

More recent data indicate that factors involved in CNS development such as sonic hedgehog, angiotensin, and retinoic acid have a critical role in the induction of barrier characteristics in the brain endothelium [66–68].

3 The BBB in MS

In MS pathology, numerous changes in BBB structure and functioning have been described. These observations, derived from in vitro, in vivo animal model, and patient tissue studies, show a high involvement of the disruption of BBB integrity

and function in MS pathology. The combined outcome of these studies has led to the notion that BBB disruption represents an early event in MS lesion formation, preceding the massive infiltration of leukocytes (mainly T lymphocytes and monocyte-derived macrophages) leading to myelin degradation and nervous tissue destruction. Even before clinical symptoms arise, MRI scans of animals with EAE, a validated animal model for the inflammatory phase of MS, show leakage of the BBB before leukocytes infiltrate [69].

3.1 Inflammation at the BBB in MS

Pathological events that may occur at the BBB include structural and spatial alterations of the TJs, enhanced permeability for blood-derived components, and infiltration of inflammatory cells into the CNS [70]. In these processes, proinflammatory mediators like chemokines [71, 72], cytokines [73, 74], matrix metalloproteinases [75, 76], and reactive oxygen species (ROS) play an important role [77–79].

Not only structural changes of the BBB occur during neuroinflammation; also the expression of P-gp, one of the ABC transporters, was severely decreased in its function. Work from our group showed a significant reduction of microvessel P-gp expression in various MS lesions in patients, compared to normal-appearing white matter [80]. These results suggest that a loss of P-gp expression might be involved in lesion formation or aggravation. In the same study P-gp expression was seen to be upregulated in astrocytes in MS lesions, suggesting a possible role for astrocytes as a complementary drug resistance barrier in areas of BBB disruption. Importantly, P-gp was found to mediate the release of the chemokines CCL2 (or MCP-1) and the proinflammatory lipid platelet activating factor [81, 82] which may contribute to the neuroinflammatory process.

During MS pathogenesis, reactive astrocytes participate in various mechanisms that contribute to neuroinflammation. Reactive astrocytes aggravate inflammation by increasing vascular activation and leukocyte accumulation in the CNS and are involved in loss of BBB integrity, mediated by local release of proinflammatory molecules like IL-1β, IL6, and CCL2 [83–85]. In addition, once inflammation has abated, astrocytes are the major cell type involved in glial scar formation and are thereby directly associated with inhibition of axonal regeneration [86]. In contrast, during pathophysiology, astrocytes may also exert protective properties and promote cellular regeneration. Astrocytes are able to produce antioxidant enzymes and glutamate metabolizing enzymes and transporters suggesting an important role in scavenging ROS and extracellular glutamate [87, 88]. Furthermore, reactive astrocytes maintain the capacity to secrete T-cell suppressive factors, anti-inflammatory cytokines, and neurotrophic factors and possibly rearrange their contact sites with the endothelium [60, 89, 90]. Through secretion of proinflammatory molecules, astrocytes not only contribute to direct disruption of the BBB but also facilitate upregulation of endothelial cell adhesion molecules (CAMs) thereby promoting recruitment and adhesion of leukocytes to ECs.

Recently, we demonstrated an increase in the production of the proinflammatory lipid ceramide in reactive astrocytes in active MS lesions, which contributed to the neuroinflammatory process. During MS pathogenesis, stress signals such as ROS, TNF-α, and interferon are present in the inflamed brain parenchyma and may be responsible for the observed increase in astrocytic ceramide. In turn, ceramide was found to impair the function of the BBB in vitro [91], illustrating the impact of the reactive astrocyte phenotype on the barrier properties in MS. Strikingly, reactive astrocytes were found to have an induced expression of the sphingosine-1-phosphate (S1P) receptors which after triggering with the S1P analogue Fingolimod (FTY-720P) resulted in a diminished production of proinflammatory mediators [91, 92]. Together, these data indicate that the dampening of the reactive astrocyte phenotype is an attractive new therapeutic strategy [93], although this may also result in the loss of important protective aspects of reactive gliosis.

3.1.1 Immune Cell Trafficking Across the Brain Endothelium

Before leukocytes adhere and transmigrate through the BBB, the cerebral endothelium must be activated by inflammatory mediators to express cell adhesion molecules (CAM) with which leukocytes interact. TNF-α and the chemokine MCP-1 are two examples of numerous proinflammatory molecules which can cause upregulation of endothelial CAMs such as E-selectin, P-selectin, VCAM-1, and intracellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) [94–96].

The presence of various immune cells in the CNS is an important hallmark of MS pathology. It is unknown which factor initiates the infiltration of immune cells into the CNS, but the current hypothesis is that myelin-specific CD4+ T cells are primed in the peripheral lymphoid organs, which encounter their target antigens during immune surveillance of the CNS, thereby triggering an immune response. The general principles governing leukocyte extravasation have been thoroughly documented. It occurs according to the multistep model of leukocyte extravasation, which consists of rolling, tethering, firm adhesion, and finally transmigration of immune cells across brain EC. Endothelial cells play an active role during the extravasation process. Upon interaction with leukocytes, various signaling pathways are triggered in brain ECs that lead to rearrangement of the cytoskeleton and TJs, thus facilitating transendothelial migration [94–96].

In addition to the family of cell adhesion molecules, members of another class of cell surface molecules are involved in the transendothelial migration process. The transmembrane 4 superfamily, or tetraspanins, are small membrane proteins differentially expressed by all mammalian cells. The size of tetraspanins ranges from 204 to 355 amino acids and they contain four transmembrane domains; the first of the two resulting extracellular loops is short, while the second loop is long [97, 98]. This long, second loop in combination with the four transmembrane domains are important in promoting associations of the tetraspanin with additional proteins, such as other tetraspanins, integrins, CAMs, and intracellular signaling molecules. Resulting structures are referred to as tetraspanin-enriched microdomains (TEMs)

and they operate as molecular organizers for other transmembrane proteins [99, 100]. The biological function of tetraspanins depends on the ability of the tetraspanin to organize TEMs Moreover, these tetraspanins, CD9, CD81, and CD151, also localize to docking structures on endothelial cells which are formed at sites of leukocyte adhesion [101, 102]. More specifically microdomains containing tetraspanins and adhesion receptors were present on activated endothelial cells even before leukocytes adhered and studies demonstrated that CD81 and CD9 play a role in the transendothelial migration of immune cells [101, 102].

Besides the involvement of CAMs in the migration process, the release of inflammatory mediators severely contributes to the migration process. Monocytes, the effector cells within MS since they induce demyelination and axonal damage, are attracted to the MS lesions in high numbers. Within the process of monocyte trafficking across the BBB, it has been demonstrated that ROS play a dominant role. ROS are produced by monocytes upon firm adhesion to ECs and subsequently enhance migration and adhesion of monocytes. Treatment of EAE animals with antioxidants such as flavonoids and lipoic acid suppressed the development of EAE by lowering the entry of inflammatory cells into the CNS. Histological examination demonstrated a reduced number of infiltrated T cells and macrophages, suggesting a role for ROS in BBB permeability. Moreover, it was shown that super oxide is the predominant ROS treatment which induces BBB disruption by inducing TJ rearrangements and cytoskeletal changes, allowing cell migration [77–79]. Pathological changes at the neurovascular unit are summarized in Fig. 1.

4 Conclusions and Future Directions: Impact on Drug Delivery

The BBB is specialized to function as a barrier to protect the CNS by restricting entry of unwanted molecules and immune cells into the brain. An important feature of MS pathology is a dysfunctional BBB and consequent loss of the imperative CNS homeostasis. The unrestrained access of immune cells and harmful compounds into the CNS play a central role in demyelination and axonal damage, two hallmarks of MS pathology strongly contributing to the clinical symptoms of MS. Strategies that restore the impaired function of the BBB are therefore a promising new strategy together with the dampening of the proinflammatory phenotype of the reactive astrocytes.

Consequentially, drug delivery to the brain will be altered and disposition of drugs in the brain during different disease states may limit efficient treatment. Altered BBB permeability and function during CNS diseases such as MS may be mediated via changes in various transport pathways and receptor systems. Conversely, disease state of the CNS also provide opportunities for drug targeting to sites of affected brain regions, since drugs that normally are unable to traverse the BBB (either due to ABC transporter activity or presence of TJs) may now reach their target in the diseased brain. To accurately treat complex CNS disorders, future

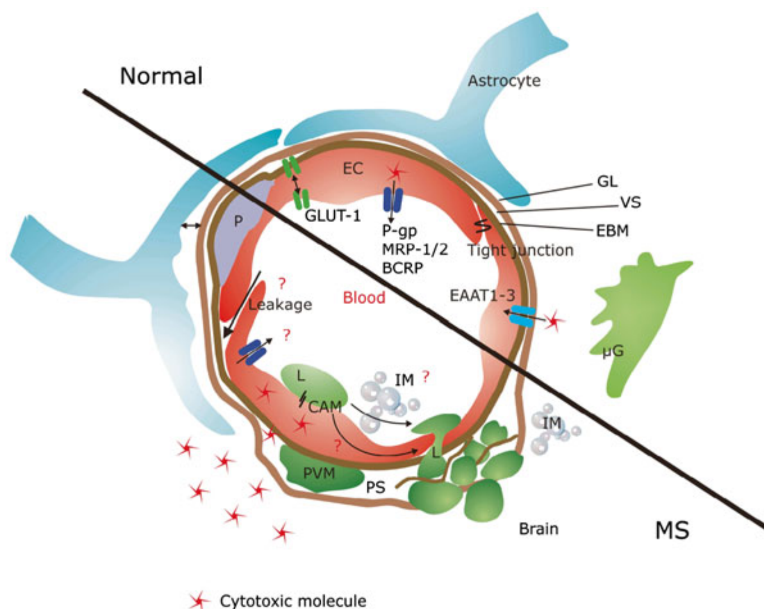


Fig. 1 The BBB during health and disease. Under healthy conditions, brain endothelial cells (EC) are interconnected by tight junction structures and have several transport systems and efflux pumps on their luminal or abluminal membranes. ECs are surrounded by a basement membrane (EBM), pericytes (P), perivascular macrophages (PVM), and astrocytes, which project their endfeet to brain EC, thereby forming a glia limitans (GL). During MS pathology several processes occur including BBB leakage, retraction of astrocyte endfeet, leukocyte (L) adhesion via cell adhesion molecules (CAM) and diapedesis, accumulation of these cells in the perivascular space (PS), and finally transmigration into the brain parenchyma. Inflammatory mediators (IM) are involved in several events, but it is not known which mediators affect TJ integrity, endothelial signaling, or BBB leakage. Moreover, cytotoxic molecules accumulate in the brain, which may be due to a decreased efflux capacity of the BBB

research should therefore aim to gain more and detailed insight into the effects of neuroinflammation on different BBB properties.

Whether the described dysregulation of transport and receptor systems are favorable or unfavorable for drug delivery across the BBB largely depends on the type of transport route or receptor involved, the regulation of its expression, and specific localization of transporters or receptors in the brain. Thus, when relying on such mechanisms in delivery strategies, targeting efficiency may be changed during CNS disease states, potentially increasing or decreasing the therapeutic efficacy of drugs. In the past and also more recently, novel and specific drug delivery approaches have been developed to overcome the BBB.

Development of new protein vectors for the physiologic delivery of large therapeutic compounds to the CNS is still ongoing [103]. Since most of these targeting approaches are dependent on specific or nonspecific targeting and trafficking mechanisms at the BBB, understanding the regulation of these mechanisms is of

crucial importance. Recent data from our group indicated that during EAE, the enhanced delivery of methylprednisolone to the brain by the means of glutathione pegylated conjugated liposomes is beneficial for the treatment of neuroinflammation associated with EAE and possibly MS [104].

For proper selection of a suitable carrier or targeting moiety, the described dysregulations of transport routes and potential target receptors during neuroinflammatory conditions must be taken into account. For instance, paracellular transport is often increased in MS due to decreased TJ expression, potentially allowing for more efficient drug targeting to affected brain regions. Likewise, the downregulation of ABC transporters during CNS diseases may lead to reduced efflux of exogenous compounds, thereby increasing brain retention of therapeutics and rendering the application of drugs that are ABC transporter substrates more effective. In contrast, application of drugs may themselves cause an increase in ABC transporter expression and function, thus hampering drug delivery to the brain.

Drug delivery strategies that depend upon the expression of a specific internalizing receptor are at risk of missing their target if its expression is markedly reduced during disease status. On the other hand, enhanced or de novo expression of specific BBB ligands under inflammatory conditions holds promise for the development of new targeting strategies. Finally, it is of importance to realize that transport mechanisms and receptor expression may change during the course of the disease, complicating the selection of an efficient strategy even more.

References

1. Noseworthy JH, Lucchinetti C, Rodriguez M, Weinshenker BG. Multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 2000;343(13):938–52.
2. Frohman EM, Racke KM, Raine CS. Multiple sclerosis–the plaque and its pathogenesis. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(9):942–55.
3. Weinshenker BG, Bass B, Rice GP, Noseworthy J, Carriere W, Baskerville J, Ebers GC. The natural history of multiple sclerosis: a geographically based study. I. Clinical course and disability. Brain. 1989;112:133–46.
4. Miller DH, Chard DT, Ciccarelli O. Clinically isolated syndromes. Lancet Neurol. 2012; 11(2):157–69.
5. Lublin FD, Reingold SC. Defining the clinical course of multiple sclerosis: results of an international survey. National Multiple Sclerosis Society (USA) Advisory Committee on Clinical Trials of New Agents in Multiple Sclerosis. Neurology. 1996;46(4):907–11.
6. Dyment DA, Ebers GC, Sadovnick AD. Genetics of multiple sclerosis. Lancet Neurol. 2004;3(2):104–10.
7. Ramagopalan SV, Dobson R, Meier UC, Giovannoni G. Multiple sclerosis: risk factors, prodromes, and potential causal pathways. Lancet Neurol. 2010;9(7):727–39.
8. Sadovnick AD, Baird PA, Ward RH. Multiple sclerosis: updated risks for relatives. Am J Med Genet. 1988;29(3):533–41.
9. Ebers GC, Bulman DE, Sadovnick AD, Paty DW, Warren S, Hader W, Murray TJ, Seland TP, Duquette P, Grey T. A population-based study of multiple sclerosis in twins. N Engl J Med. 1986;315(26):1638–42.

10. Kinnunen E, Koskenvuo M, Kaprio J, Aho K. Multiple sclerosis in a nationwide series of twins. Neurology. 1998;37(10):1627–9.
11. McFarland HF. Twin studies and multiple sclerosis. Ann Neurol. 1992;32(6):722–3.
12. Sawcer S, Hellenthal G, Pirinen M, Spencer CC, Patsopoulos NA, Moutsianas L, Dilthey A, Su Z, Freeman C, Hunt SE, Edkins S, Gray E, Booth DR, Potter SC, Goris A, Band G, Oturai AB, Strange A, Saarela J, Bellenguez C, Fontaine B, Gillman M, Hemmer B, Gwilliam R, Zipp F, Jayakumar A, Martin R, Leslie S, Hawkins S, Giannoulatou E, D'alfonso S, Blackburn H, Martinelli BF, Liddle J, Harbo HF, Perez ML, Spurkland A, Waller MJ, Mycko MP, Ricketts M, Comabella M, Hammond N, Kockum I, McCann OT, Ban M, Whittaker P, Kemppinen A, Weston P, Hawkins C, Widaa S, Zajicek J, Dronov S, Robertson N, Bumpstead SJ, Barcellos LF, Ravindrarajah R, Abraham R, Alfredsson L, Ardlie K, Aubin C, Baker A, Baker K, Baranzini SE, Bergamaschi L, Bergamaschi R, Bernstein A, Compston A, et al. A genetic risk and a primary role for cell-mediated immune mechanisms in multiple sclerosis. Nature. 2011;476(7359):214–9.
13. Moore FG, Wolfson C. Human herpes virus 6 and multiple sclerosis. Acta Neurol Scand. 2002;106(2):63–83.
14. Friedman JE, Lyons MJ, Cu G, Ablashl DV, Whitman JE, Edgar M, Koskiniemi M, Vaheri A, Zabriskie JB. The association of the human herpesvirus-6 and MS. Mult Scler. 1999; 5(5):355–62.
15. Enbom M. Human herpesvirus 6 in the pathogenesis of multiple sclerosis. APMIS. 2001; 109(6):401–11.
16. Ohara Y. Multiple sclerosis and measles virus. Jpn J Infect Dis. 1999;52(5):198–200.
17. Sriram S, Stratton CW, Yao S, Tharp A, Ding L, Bannan JD, Mitchell WM. Chlamydia pneumoniae infection of the central nervous system in multiple sclerosis. Ann Neurol. 1999;46(1):6–14.
18. Layh-Schmitt G, Bendl C, Hildt U, Dong-Si T, Juttler E, Schnitzler P, Grond-Ginsbach C, Grau AJ. Evidence for infection with Chlamydia pneumoniae in a subgroup of patients with multiple sclerosis. Ann Neurol. 2000;47(5):652–5.
19. Morre SA, De Groot CJ, Killestein J, Meijer CJ, Polman CH, van Middeldorp JM, van Den Brule AJ. Is Epstein-Barr virus present in the CNS of patients with MS? Neurology. 2001;56(5):692–7.
20. Ascherio A, Munger KL, Lennette ET, Spiegelman D, Hernan MA, Olek MJ, Hankinson SE, Hunter DJ. Epstein-Barr virus antibodies and risk of multiple sclerosis: a prospective study. JAMA. 2001;286(24):3083–8.
21. Lunemann JD. Epstein-Barr virus in multiple sclerosis: a continuing conundrum. Neurology. 2012;78(1):11–2.
22. Lassmann H. Epstein-Barr virus in the multiple sclerosis brain: a controversial issue–report on a focused workshop held in the Centre for Brain Research of the Medical University of Vienna, Austria. Brain. 2011;134(9):2772–8.
23. Kakalacheva K, Lunemann JD. Environmental triggers of multiple sclerosis. FEBS Lett. 2001;585(23):3724–9.
24. Fleming J, Fabry Z. The hygiene hypothesis and multiple sclerosis. Ann Neurol. 2007; 61:85–9.
25. Correale J, Farez MF. The impact of parasite infections on the course of multiple sclerosis. J Neuroimmunol. 2011;233:6–11.
26. Van der van Valk P, De Groot CJ. Staging of multiple sclerosis (MS) lesions: pathology of the time frame of MS. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 2000;26(1):2–12.
27. Vos CMP, Geurts JJG, Montagne EM, van Haastert ES, van der Valk P, Barkhof F, de Vries HE. Blood-brain barrier alterations in both focal and diffuse abnormalities on post mortem MRI in multiple sclerosis. Neurobiol Dis. 2005;20:953–60.
28. Kirk J, Plumb J, Mirakhur M, McQuaid S. Tight junctional abnormality in multiple sclerosis white matter affects all calibres of vessel and is associated with blood-brain barrier leakage and active demyelination. J Pathol. 2003;201:319–27.

29. Plumb J, McQuaid S, Mirakhur M, Kirk J. Abnormal endothelial tight junctions in active lesions and normal-appearing white matter in multiple sclerosis. Brain Pathol. 2002;12: 154–69.
30. Leech S, Kirk J, Plumb J, McQuaid S. Persistent endothelial abnormalities and blood-brain barrier leak in primary and secondary progressive multiple sclerosis. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 2007;33:86–98.
31. Serafini B, Rosicarelli B, Magliozzi R, Stigliano E, Capello E, Mancardi GL, Aloisi F. Dendritic cells in multiple sclerosis lesions: maturation stage, myelin uptake, and interaction with proliferating T cells. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2006;65(2):124–41.
32. Ferguson B, Matyszak MK, Esiri MM, Perry VH. Axonal damage in acute multiple sclerosis lesions. Brain. 1997;120(3):393–9.
33. Trapp BD, Peterson J, Ransohoff RM, Rudick R, Mork S, Bo L. Axonal transection in the lesions of multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 1998;338(5):278–85.
34. Bjartmar C, Kidd G, Mork S, Rudick R, Trapp BD. Neurological disability correlates with spinal cord axonal loss and reduced N-acetyl aspartate in chronic multiple sclerosis patients. Ann Neurol. 2000;48(6):893–901.
35. Zeinstra E, Wilczak N, De KJ. Reactive astrocytes in chronic active lesions of multiple sclerosis express co-stimulatory molecules B7-1 and B7-2. J Neuroimmunol. 2003;135:166–71.
36. Kutzelnigg A, Faber-Rod JC, Bauer J, Lucchinetti CF, Sorensen PS, Laursen H, Stadelmann C, Brück W, Rauschka H, Schmidbauer M, Lassmann H. Widespread demyelination in the cerebellar cortex in multiple sclerosis. Brain Pathol. 2007;17(1):38–44.
37. Lucchinetti CF, Popescu BF, Bunyan RF, Moll NM, Roemer SF, Lassmann H, Brück W, Parisi JE, Scheithauer BW, Giannini C, Weigand SD, Mandrekar J, Ransohoff RM. Inflammatory cortical demyelination in early multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 2011;365(23): 2188–97.
38. Lassmann H, Brück W, Lucchinetti CF. The immunopathology of multiple sclerosis: an overview. Brain Pathol. 2007;17(2):210–8. Review.
39. Klaver R, De Vries HE, Schenk GJ, Geurts JJ. Grey matter damage in multiple sclerosis: a pathology perspective. Prion. 2013;7(1):66–75.
40. van Horssen J, Brink BP, de Vries HE, van der Valk P, Bø L. The blood-brain barrier in cortical multiple sclerosis lesions. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2007;66(4):321–8.
41. Kappos L, Polman CH, Freedman MS, Edan G, Hartung HP, Miller DH, Montalban X, Barkhof F, Bauer L, Jakobs P, Pohl C, Sandbrink R. Treatment with interferon beta-1b delays conversion to clinically definite and McDonald MS in patients with clinically isolated syndromes. Neurology. 2006;67(7):1242–9.
42. Johnson KP. Glatiramer acetate for treatment of relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis. Expert Rev Neurother. 2012;12(4):371–84.
43. Abbott NJ, Rönnbäck L, Hansson E. Astrocyte-endothelial interactions at the blood-brain barrier. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2006;7(1):41–53.
44. Abbott NJ, Patabendige AA, Dolman DE, Yusof SR, Begley DJ. Structure and function of the blood-brain barrier. Neurobiol Dis. 2010;37(1):13–25.
45. Abbott NJ. Astrocyte-endothelial interactions and blood-brain barrier permeability. J Anat. 2002;200(5):527–33.
46. Polman CH, O'Connor PW, Havrdova E, Hutchinson M, Kappos L, Miller DH, Phillips JT, Lublin FD, Giovannoni G, Wajgt A, Toal M, Lynn F, Panzara MA, Sandrock AW, AFFIRM Investigators. A randomized, placebo-controlled trial of natalizumab for relapsing multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(9):899–910.
47. Chun J, Brinkmann V. A mechanistically novel, first oral therapy for multiple sclerosis: the development of fingolimod (FTY720, Gilenya). Discov Med. 2011;12(64):213–28.
48. Mehling M, Kappos L, Derfuss T. Fingolimod for multiple sclerosis: mechanism of action, clinical outcomes, and future directions. Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep. 2011;11(5):492–7.
49. Baker D, Gerritsen W, Rundle J, Amor S. Critical appraisal of animal models of multiple sclerosis. Mult Scler. 2011;17(6):647–57.

50. Hohlfeld R, Wekerle H. Autoimmune concepts of multiple sclerosis as a basis for selective immunotherapy: from pipe dreams to (therapeutic) pipelines. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2004;5(101):14599–606.
51. Wolburg H, Lippoldt A. Tight junctions of the blood-brain barrier: development, composition and regulation. Vascul Pharmacol. 2002;38(6):323–35.
52. Bazzoni G. Endothelial tight junctions: permeable barriers of the vessel wall. Thromb Haemost. 2006;95(1):36–47.
53. Nitta T, Hata M, Gotoh S, Seo Y, Sasaki H, Hashimoto N, Furuse M, Tsukita S. Size-selective loosening of the blood-brain barrier in claudin-5-deficient mice. J Cell Biol. 2003;161(3):653–60.
54. Loscher W, Potschka H. Blood-brain barrier active efflux transporters: ATP-binding cassette gene family. NeuroRx. 2005;2(1):86–98.
55. Mahringer A, Ott M, Reimold I, Reichel V, Fricker G. The ABC of the blood-brain barrier – regulation of drug efflux pumps. Curr Pharm Des. 2011;17(26):2762–70.
56. Hartz AM, Bauer B. Regulation of ABC transporters at the blood-brain barrier: new targets for CNS therapy. Mol Interv. 2010;10(5):293–304.
57. Miller DS. Regulation of P-glycoprotein and other ABC drug transporters at the blood-brain barrier. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2010;31(6):246–54.
58. Dermietzel R. Junctions in the central nervous system of the cat. 3. Gap junctions and membrane-associated orthogonal particle complexes (MOPC) in astrocytic membranes. Cell Tissue Res. 1974;149(1):121–35.
59. Nagelhus EA, Mathiisen TM, Ottersen PO. Aquaporin-4 in the central nervous system: cellular and subcellular distribution and coexpression with KIR4.1. Neuroscience. 2004;129(4):905–13.
60. Berzin TM, Zipser BD, Rafii MS, Kuo-Leblanc V, Yancopoulos GD, Glass DJ, Fallon JR, Stopa EG. Agrin and microvascular damage in Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 2000;21(2):349–55.
61. Arthur FE, Shivers RR, Bowman PD. Astrocyte -mediated induction of tight junctions in brain capillary endothelium: an efficient in vitro model. Brain Res. 1987;433(1):155–9.
62. Tran ND, Correale J, Schreiber SS, Fisher M. Transforming growth factor-beta mediates astrocyte-specific regulation of brain endothelial anticoagulant factors. Stroke. 1999;30(8):1671–8.
63. Igarashi Y, Utsumi H, Chiba H, Yamada-Sasamori Y, Tobioka H, Kamimura Y, Furuuchi K, Kokai Y, Nakagawa T, Mori M, Sawada N. Glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor induces barrier function of endothelial cells forming the blood-brain barrier. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1999;261(1):108–12.
64. el Hafny B, Bourre JM, Roux F. Synergistic stimulation of gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase and alkaline phosphatase activities by retinoic acid and astroglial factors in immortalized rat brain microvessel endothelial cells. J Cell Physiol. 1996;167(3):451–60.
65. Reuss B, Dono R, Unsicker K. Functions of fibroblast growth factor (FGF)-2 and FGF-5 in astroglial differentiation and blood-brain barrier permeability: evidence from mouse mutants. J Neurosci. 2003;23(16):6404–12.
66. Mizee MR, Wooldrik D, Lakeman KA, van het Hof B, Drexhage JA, Geerts D, Bugiani M, Aronica E, Mebius RE, Prat A, de Vries HE, Reijerkerk A. Retinoic acid induces blood-brain barrier development. J Neurosci. 2013;33(4):1660–71.
67. Wosik K, Cayrol R, Dodelet-Devillers A, Berthelet F, Bernard M, Moumdjian R, Bouthillier A, Reudelhuber TL, Prat A. Angiotensin II controls occludin function and is required for blood brain barrier maintenance: relevance to multiple sclerosis. J Neurosci. 2007;27(34):9032–42.
68. Alvarez JI, Dodelet-Devillers A, Kebir H, Ifergan I, Fabre PJ, Terouz S, Sabbagh M, Wosik K, Bourbonnière L, Bernard M, van Horssen J, de Vries HE, Charron F, Prat A. The Hedgehog pathway promotes blood-brain barrier integrity and CNS immune quiescence. Science. 2011;334(6063):1727–17231.
69. Floris S, Blezer EL, Schreibelt G, Döpp E, van der Pol SM, Schadee-Eestermans IL, Nicolay K, Dijkstra CD, de Vries HE. Blood-brain barrier permeability and monocyte infiltration in

experimental allergic encephalomyelitis: a quantitative MRI study. Brain. 2004;127(Pt 3): 616–27.
70. Librizzi L, Mazzetti S, Pastori C, Frigerio S, Salmaggi A, Buccellati C, Di Gennaro A, Folco G, Vitellaro-Zuccarello L, de Curtis M. Activation of cerebral endothelium is required for mononuclear cell recruitment in a novel in vitro model of brain inflammation. Neuroscience. 2006;137(4):1211–9.
71. Hayashi M, Luo Y, Laning J, Strieter RM, Dorf ME. Production and function of monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 and other beta-chemokines in murine glial cells. J Neuroimmunol. 1995;60(1–2):143–50.
72. Song L, Pachter JS. Monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 alters expression of tight junction-associated proteins in brain microvascular endothelial cells. Microvasc Res. 2004;67(1): 78–89.
73. Pan W, Stone KP, Hsuchou H, Manda VK, Zhang Y, Kastin AJ. Cytokine signaling modulates blood-brain barrier function. Curr Pharm Des. 2011;17(33):3729–40.
74. Kebir H, Kreymborg K, Ifergan I, Dodelet-Devillers A, Cayrol R, Bernard M, Giuliani F, Arbour N, Becher B, Prat A. Human TH17 lymphocytes promote blood-brain barrier disruption and central nervous system inflammation. Nat Med. 2007;13(10):1173–5.
75. Wu C, Ivars F, Anderson P, Hallmann R, Vestweber D, Nilsson P, Robenek H, Tryggvason K, Song J, Korpos E, Loser K, Beissert S, Georges-Labouesse E, Sorokin LM. Endothelial basement membrane laminin alpha5 selectively inhibits T lymphocyte extravasation into the brain. Nat Med. 2009;15(5):519–27.
76. Sorokin L. The impact of the extracellular matrix on inflammation. Nat Rev Immunol. 2010;10(10):712–23.
77. Van der Goes A, Wouters D, Huizinga R, van der Pol SMA, Ronken E, Dijkstra CD, de Vries HE Reactive oxygen species influence monocyte migration across the blood-brain barrier. FASEB J 2001;15:U84–99.
78. Hendriks JJ, Alblas J, van der Pol SM, van Tol EA, Dijkstra CD, de Vries HE. Flavonoids influence monocytic GTPase activity and are protective in experimental allergic encephalitis. J Exp Med. 2004;200(12):1667–72.
79. Schreibelt G, Musters RJ, Reijerkerk A, de Groot LR, van der Pol SM, Hendrikx EM, Döpp ED, Dijkstra CD, Drukarch B, de Vries HE. Lipoic acid affects cellular migration into the central nervous system and stabilizes blood-brain barrier integrity. J Immunol. 2006; 177(4):2630–7.
80. Kooij G, Mizee MR, van Horssen J, Reijerkerk A, Witte ME, Drexhage JA, van der Pol SM, van het Hof AJ, Scheffer G, Scheper R, Dijkstra CD, van der Valk P, de Vries HE. Adenosine triphosphate-binding cassette transporters mediate chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 2 secretion from reactive astrocytes: relevance to multiple sclerosis pathogenesis. Brain. 2001;134(Pt 2): 555–70.
81. Kooij G, van Horssen J, de Lange EC, Reijerkerk A, van der Pol SM, van Het Hof B, Drexhage J, Vennegoor A, Killestein J, Scheffer G, Oerlemans R, Scheper R, van der Valk P, Dijkstra CD, de Vries HE. T lymphocytes impair P-glycoprotein function during neuroinflammation. J Autoimmun. 2010;34(4):416–25.
82. Kooij G, van Horssen J, Bandaru VV, Haughey NJ, de Vries HE. The role of ATP-binding cassette transporters in neuro-inflammation: relevance for bioactive lipids. Front Pharmacol. 2012;3:74.
83. Quintana A, Müller M, Frausto RF, Ramos R, Getts DR, Sanz E, Hofer MJ, Krauthausen M, King NJ, Hidalgo J, Campbell IL. Site-specific production of IL-6 in the central nervous system retargets and enhances the inflammatory response in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol. 2009;183(3):2079–88.
84. Stamatovic SM, Dimitrijevic OB, Keep RF, Andjelkovic AV. Protein kinase Calpha-RhoA cross-talk in CCL2-induced alterations in brain endothelial permeability. J Biol Chem. 2006;281(13):8379–88.
85. Didier N, Romero IA, Créminon C, Wijkhuisen A, Grassi J, Mabondzo A. Secretion of interleukin-1beta by astrocytes mediates endothelin-1 and tumour necrosis factor-alpha

effects on human brain microvascular endothelial cell permeability. J Neurochem. 2003; 86(1):246–54.
86. Davies SJ, Fitch MT, Memberg SP, Hall AK, Raisman G, Silver J. Regeneration of adult axons in white matter tracts of the central nervous system. Nature. 1997;390(6661):680–3.
87. van Horssen J, Schreibelt G, Drexhage J, Hazes T, Dijkstra CD, van der Valk P, de Vries HE. Severe oxidative damage in multiple sclerosis lesions coincides with enhanced antioxidant enzyme expression. Free Radic Biol Med. 2008;45(12):1729–37.
88. Newcombe J, Uddin A, Dove R, Patel B, Turski L, Nishizawa Y, Smith T. Glutamate receptor expression in multiple sclerosis lesions. Brain Pathol. 2008;18(1):52–61.
89. Warth A, Kroger S, Wolburg H. Redistribution of aquaporin-4 in human glioblastoma correlates with loss of agrin immunoreactivity from brain capillary basal laminae. Acta Neuropathol. 2004;107(4):311–6.
90. Sinclair C, Kirk J, Herron B, Fitzgerald U, McQuaid S. Absence of aquaporin-4 expression in lesions of neuromyelitis optica but increased expression in multiple sclerosis lesions and normal-appearing white matter. Acta Neuropathol. 2007;113(2):187–94.
91. van Doorn R, Nijland PG, Dekker N, Witte ME, Lopes-Pinheiro MA, van het Hof B, Kooij G, Reijerkerk A, Dijkstra C, van der Valk P, van Horssen J, de Vries HE. Fingolimod attenuates ceramide-induced blood-brain barrier dysfunction in multiple sclerosis by targeting reactive astrocytes. Acta Neuropathol. 2012;124(3):397–410.
92. Van Doorn R, Van Horssen J, Verzijl D, Witte M, Ronken E, Van Het Hof B, Lakeman K, Dijkstra CD, Van Der Valk P, Reijerkerk A, Alewijnse AE, Peters SL, De Vries HE. Sphingosine 1-phosphate receptor 1 and 3 are upregulated in multiple sclerosis lesions. Glia. 2010;58(12):1465–76.
93. Lassmann H. Targeting intracerebral inflammation in multiple sclerosis: is it feasible? Acta Neuropathol. 2012;124(3):395–6.
94. Greenwood J, Heasman SJ, Alvarez JI, Prat A, Lyck R, Engelhardt B. Review: leucocyte-endothelial cell crosstalk at the blood-brain barrier: a prerequisite for successful immune cell entry to the brain. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 2011;37(1):24–39.
95. Ransohoff RM, Engelhardt B. The anatomical and cellular basis of immune surveillance in the central nervous system. Nat Rev Immunol. 2012;12(9):623–35.
96. Sallusto F, Impellizzieri D, Basso C, Laroni A, Uccelli A, Lanzavecchia A, Engelhardt B. T-cell trafficking in the central nervous system. Immunol Rev. 2012;248(1):216–27.
97. Seigneuret M, Delaguillaumie A, Lagaudrière-Gesbert C, Conjeaud H. Structure of the tetraspanin main extracellular domain. A partially conserved fold with a structurally variable domain insertion. J Biol Chem. 2001;276(43):40055–64.
98. Levy S, Shoham T. The tetraspanin web modulates immune-signalling complexes. Nat Rev Immunol. 2005;5(2):136–48.
99. Hemler ME. Specific tetraspanin functions. J Cell Biol. 2001;155(7):1103–7.
100. Hemler ME. Tetraspanin functions and associated microdomains. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2005;6(10):801–11.
101. Barreiro O, Yáñez-Mó M, Sala-Valdés M, Gutiérrez-López MD, Ovalle S, Higginbottom A, Monk PN, Cabañas C, Sánchez-Madrid F. Endothelial tetraspanin microdomains regulate leukocyte firm adhesion during extravasation. Blood. 2005;105(7):2852–61.
102. Barreiro O, Zamai M, Yáñez-Mó M, Tejera E, López-Romero P, Monk PN, Gratton E, Caiolfa VR, Sánchez-Madrid F. Endothelial adhesion receptors are recruited to adherent leukocytes by inclusion in preformed tetraspanin nanoplatforms. J Cell Biol. 2008;183(3):527–42.
103. Gaillard PJ, Visser CC, Appeldoorn CC, Rip J. Targeted blood-to-brain drug delivery – 10 key development criteria. Curr Pharm Biotechnol. 2012;13(12):2328–39.
104. Gaillard PJ, Appeldoorn CC, Rip J, Dorland R, van der Pol SM, Kooij G, de Vries HE, Reijerkerk A. Enhanced brain delivery of liposomal methylprednisolone improved therapeutic efficacy in a model of neuroinflammation. J Control Release. 2012;164(3):364–9.

Neuroinflammation in Alzheimer's Disease

Veronika M. Reinisch, Daniela L. Krause, and Norbert Müller

Abstract The neuropathology of Alzheimer's disease (AD) is still only partly understood. Beyond doubt neuroinflammation plays a key role in pathophysiology of the disease. Still it has not been fully understood when and how inflammation arises in the course of AD. Whether inflammation is an underlying cause or a resulting condition in AD remains unresolved. Mounting evidence indicates that microglia activation contributes to neuronal damage in neurodegenerative diseases. However, also beneficial aspects of microglia activation have been identified. The purpose of this review is to highlight new insights into the detrimental and beneficial role of neuroinflammation in AD. In regard to this, we discuss the limitations and the advantages of anti-inflammatory treatment options and identify what future implications might result from this underlying neuroinflammation for AD therapy. Here we put a special focus on the therapy with COX-1 and COX-2 Inhibitors as well as anti-Aß antibodies.

Keywords Inflammation • Alzheimer • Microglia • COX-inhibitors • Abeta DNA vaccination

1 Introduction

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is the most common form of dementia, amongst others, that humans are at risk of as they age. The most achievable long-term aim is to diagnose AD in an earlier stage, thus starting treatment before most clinical symptoms are present [1]. This is possible with new diagnostic imaging, e.g. amyloid-PET imaging, which can show the amyloid burden in the brain [2]. Anyway the

V.M. Reinisch (✉) • D.L. Krause • N. Müller
Department of Psychiatry and Psychotherapy, Ludwig-Maximilians University Munich, Nußbaumstr. 7, 80336 Munich, Germany
e-mail: Veronika.Reinisch@med.uni-muenchen.de

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_9, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

pathophysiology of AD is not yet clearly identified. Still a lot of issues related to what causes AD are still unclear, limiting the identification of effective disease-modifying therapies. The main neuropathologic hallmarks of AD are peptide deposition (senile plaques), extracellular ß-amyloid (Ae) and intracellular neurofibrillary tangles containing hyperphosphorylated tau protein [3]. Today it is possible to demonstrate neuroinflammation induced by Aß burden in the brain in vivo. Apart from the disease's distinct pathological markers, the neurodegenerative features are characterized by chronic neuroinflammatory processes. Yet, those inflammatory markers are not exclusively associated with AD. Also, brains of 'healthy aged' individuals show concentrations of serum markers related to inflammation, such as elevated homocysteine and altered cholesterol homeostasis associated with cognitive functioning in the nondemented healthy ageing population [4]. In AD pathology, these ageing-related inflammatory processes are increased.

The suggestion that inflammation may participate in AD first appeared more than two decades ago. As several clinical trials have shown a beneficial effect for nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for the occurrence and course of AD, the inflammatory hypothesis in AD gained a lot of attention. In regard to treatment and prevention of AD, several classes of medications have emerged on the market, which improve the cognitive symptoms of this disorder (e.g. the cholinesterase inhibitors). But the relief that these drugs provide remains symptomatic—so it is a major goal for the future to develop effective disease-modifying therapy.

Different substantial efforts have been made to identify potential strategies to ameliorate or prevent AD pathology, with data stemming from basic research as well as from animal and epidemiological studies. Because many investigators have concluded that neuroinflammation contributes to neuronal damage in the brain during AD [5, 6], the use of anti-inflammatory drugs as a possible treatment option has been widely investigated [7–9]. Anti-inflammatory therapy has therefore been credited as a strategy for reducing the risk or slowing the progression of AD. However, the results of these studies remain inconsistent [10]. Until now, many questions regarding the inflammatory response are still unresolved. Discussion continues whether neuroinflammation is an underlying cause or a resulting condition in AD [11]. There are several studies showing that an intact immune response including intact T cell immunity is a prerequisite for cognitive function. T-cell-deficient mice show impaired learning abilities, which can be reversed with T cell substitution [12, 13].

Regarding the fact that the T cellular immune response declines with age, starting from about the age of 55 years—'immunosenescence'—such immunodeficiency in aged patients may also explain cognitive deficits. The "Maastricht Aging Study" followed this approach. Nearly 100 healthy people, mean age 57 years, were followed up in a longitudinal analysis with regard to inflammatory markers and cognitive tests. It could be shown that high levels of haptoglobin (an acute phase protein) correlated significantly negatively with cognitive abilities, measured by the Stroop test and the auditory verbal learning test. High levels of the inflammatory marker C-reactive protein (CRP) also correlated negatively with the auditory verbal learning test after 3 and 6 years follow-up. Lower cognitive abilities were associated

with higher concentrations of CRP and haptoglobin [14]. In a similar design, a prospective cohort study in 4,200 healthy persons examined CRP and interleukin (IL)-6 as inflammatory markers combined with cognitive tests at 7 years and 12 years of follow-up. It could be shown that CRP and IL-6 were significantly associated with cognitive performance, in particular in men. Higher levels of pro-inflammatory markers during midlife correlated significantly with lower cognitive abilities and weakly with the decline of cognitive abilities. Interestingly, in animal experiments it was shown that an increased secretion of IL-6 leads to deficits in learning and memory, while IL-6 knockout (KO) mice were less prone to forget learned skills and exhibited a better cognitive performance compared to wild-type mice. Accordingly, the intraventricular administration of anti-IL-6 antibodies resulted in improved memory function.

Inflammation in the brain is characterized by activation of glial cells (mainly microglia and astrocytes) and expression of key inflammatory mediators as well as neurotoxic free radicals. It has been suggested that neuroinflammation is associated with neurodegenerative disorders—both acute (e.g. stroke, injury) and chronic (e.g. multiple sclerosis, AD). In this context, microglial cells play a crucial role, and therefore, microglia and cytokines have been extensively studied in these conditions. In the central nervous system, microglia are the resident phagocytes of the innate immune system. Microglia are found in a highly activated state in close anatomical proximity to senile plaques within the AD brain. In this activated state, microglia produce various pro-inflammatory cytokines and other immune mediators that create a neurotoxic milieu leading to disease progression [6, 15].

It is our intention in this chapter to focus on newer controversies in the field of microglia activation and its role in AD pathology. For this purpose, we asked ourselves several questions: Are neuroinflammatory alterations neuroprotective—or are they rather an underlying cause of AD? And what strategies result from this underlying neuroinflammation for future treatment options?

2 Characteristics of Neuroinflammation in AD

The relevance of neuroinflammation to AD pathology has been established by multiple lines of direct and indirect evidence. One argument is that increased microglia activation has been shown in regions associated with Aβ deposition [16]. Upregulated inflammatory mechanisms co-localize in the AD brain with those regions that exhibit high levels of AD pathology (e.g. frontal and limbic cortex) and are minimal in brain regions with low AD pathologic susceptibility (e.g. cerebellum) [17].

As a second point, many of the inflammatory mechanisms that have been uncovered in the AD brain are established to be cytotoxic in the periphery of the body. Therefore, it seems likely that they are also cytotoxic in the brain, an organ that is sensitive to inflammation (e.g. in meningitis and encephalitis). However, inflammation in the brain is different from inflammation in the peripheral body. AD brains lack the classical hallmarks of inflammation such as neutrophil infiltration and

perivascular mononuclear cuffing. As for other neurodegenerative diseases, a local inflammatory reaction is sustained by activated microglia and reactive astrocytes [11]. This is indicated by the presence of antigens associated with microglia activation and inflammatory mediators, such as factors of the complement system, cytokines and free radicals [18].

Only modest elevations of inflammatory markers are found in the autopsy of patients lacking a clinical presentation of dementia but who exhibit sufficient Aβ and neurofibrillary tangles to otherwise qualify for the diagnosis of AD. Their level of inflammatory markers is significantly greater than levels of nondemented patients, but dramatically less than AD patients [19]. These findings further strengthen that inflammation is a necessity for clinical symptoms of AD.

For AD a huge variety of pro-inflammatory markers have been identified, whereas this was not the case for other forms of dementia. A relevant reduction of monocyte chemotactic protein-1 levels in the grey matter in dementia patients has been shown. For IL-6 and related markers of this pro-inflammatory cytokine system, decreases were observed in the brain and cerebrospinal fluid of demented patients [20, 21]. It is unclear, however, whether this decrease is related to further psychopathological symptoms such as depression [21]. On the other hand, IL-6 has also neuroprotective properties and decreased IL-6 might be associated with decreased neuroprotection [22].

There also is direct evidence of inflammatory toxicity in the AD brain. For instance, complement fixation and lysis of neurites could be demonstrated ultrastructurally in AD cortex, but in contrast it was only very weakly detected in nondemented elderly cortex under the same conditions [23].

Finally, many clinical and animal studies have strongly suggested that especially nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) could be used as preventive or treatment strategies in AD. This aspect is further discussed in a later section of this chapter, where we focus on anti-inflammatory treatment.

Even though there are many indicators that neuroinflammation plays a key role in AD pathology, this does not answer which of these inflammatory activities are causing disease progression. The question remains: do some of these processes help to fight against the disease? In order to address this question, the role of microglia seems important, because these cells are known for neuroprotective and—degenerative functions.

2.1 Are Activated Microglia Neuroprotective or Neurodegenerative in Brain of AD Patients?

There are three glial cell types in the central nervous system (CNS), one of which is microglia. Since the 1970s there has been wide recognition that microglia are immune effectors in the CNS that respond to pathological conditions and participate in initiation and progression of neurological disorders (including AD) by releasing potentially cytotoxic molecules such as pro-inflammatory cytokines, reactive

oxygen intermediates, proteinases and complement proteins [24]. This means that their phagocytic function can be beneficial while their inflammation-related functions might be detrimental.

Several studies give evidence for an increased number of morphologically reactive microglia in AD brains compared to nondemented individuals [25, 26]. The location of these reactive microglia has been indentified directly around plaques [27]. This finding has been verified in a recent imaging study using a specific ligand for positron emission tomography (PET), which showed increased microglia activation in regions associated with amyloid deposition [16]. Up to now, the exact timing of this association could not be identified. Microgliosis might be an early component of the disease process and not necessarily dependent upon Aβ plaque interaction as a stimulus. What is known so far is that activation of microglia by Aβ fibrils is associated with a chemotactic response and extensive clustering of microglia around Aβ plaques in the AD brain [28]. These findings indicate the prominent role of microglia cells in AD. Nonetheless, it remains unclear, whether their functions are beneficial or detrimental.

The following section explains the checkered role of activated microglia in AD pathology.

2.1.1 Neuroprotective Properties of Microglia in AD

Perhaps activated microglial cells are beneficial in neurodegenerative diseases. For the useful role of microglia is that neuroprotection results from the microglia glutamate removal. Glutamate has been identified as a relevant neurotoxic substance that acts through N-methyl-D-aspartic acid (NMDA) receptors on neurons and can lead to increased neuronal cell death. Microglial cells can increase their capacity to take up glutamate upon stimulation with lipopolysaccharide (LPS) via a mechanism that is tumour necrosis factor (TNF)α dependent [11, 29] . In AD this microglia function could be relevant because memantine (the NMDA receptor antagonist) has been shown to improve cognition, function (activities of daily living), agitation and delusions in AD patients [30]. Taken together, microglial cells are important for the control of glutamate levels and might therefore contribute to neuronal survival. There is also evidence that microglia are capable of secreting neurotrophic or neuron survival factors (e.g. nerve growth factor and neurotrophin 3) upon activation via inflammation or injury [31].

Furthermore, it has been suggested that newly recruited microglia have different phagocytotic properties than intrinsic microglia, which is important for Aβ elimination. Lysosomes from the macrophage cell line are more acidic than those of microglia lysosomes [32]. This indicates that microglia derived from the periphery might be more efficient in eliminating Aβ than brain microglia. Furthermore, phagocytic activity of microglia is dampened by pro-inflammatory cytokines like TNF-α [33]. These findings show that microglia that are committed to an inflammatory response may have a lower phagocytotic capacity than newly recruited microglia. In mouse models of AD, it could be demonstrated drugs with anti-inflammatory properties like minocycline improve cognitive function and reduce the activation of

microglial cells but do not alter Aβ plaque deposition and distribution [34]. Seabrook et al. showed in amyloid precursor protein transgenic mice an age-dependent effect of minocycline: in young animals the drug increased the amyloid load indicating a beneficial effect of microglia in clearing amyloid [35]. Minocycline has been investigated not only as a potential treatment for AD but also in schizophrenia as an adjunctive therapy where it appeared to be effective in cognitive performance and reducing a broad range of psychotic symptoms [36]. Another mechanism that might help microglial cells with elimination of Aβ involves transforming growth factor-β 1 which has been demonstrated to promote microglia Aβ clearance and reduce plaque burden [37]. This supports the idea that microglia activation is useful in the clearance of Aβ.

A recent review explains that microglia—when they are challenged—may adapt to different stimulatory contexts and pass through a sequence of reactive profiles. This is in line with the finding that microglia are not just ‘resting’ but have active sensor and versatile functions [11, 38].

Are most microglia cells functions beneficial in AD? Several studies suggest an overbalance of the detrimental microglia properties.

2.1.2 Neurodegenerative Aspects of Microglia

In order to address this question, it is important to focus on timing: One must investigate when microglia activity begins during the time course of the disease. An increase in microglia activation has been observed in very early stages of AD. This increase surprisingly disappeared over time [39]. The suggestion of Vehmas et al. strengthens the assumption that microglia activation begins early in disease progression [39]. Microglia initially try to eliminate Aβ, but over time of the disease microglia fail and therefore decrease their activity. Alternatively, the microglia role in AD could be detrimental and they initiate the underlying AD pathology.

In order to further evaluate this issue, a closer look needs to be taken on what causes the microglia activation in AD, and it seems important to distinguish between acute and chronic stimulation of microglial cells. While an acute insult may trigger oxidative and nitrosative stress, it is typically short-lived and unlikely to be harmful to long-term neuronal survival. Therefore, it is believed that an acute neuroinflammatory response is generally beneficial to the CNS, since it tends to minimize further injury and contributes to repair of damaged tissue. The opposite is the case for a chronic stimulation. Chronic neuroinflammation is most often detrimental and damaging to nervous tissue. Thus, whether neuroinflammation has beneficial or harmful outcomes in the brain may depend critically on the duration of the inflammatory response. The progressive deposition of Aβ in AD disease might provide a chronic stimulus to microglial cells. Also, the chemotactic functions of Aβ to attract microglia contribute further to the ongoing inflammatory process [28]. The ratio of the pro-inflammatory cytokine IL-1β to the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10 is drastically elevated in the serum of AD patients, giving these patients a definite long-term pro-inflammatory profile [40], indicating a chronic neuroinflammatory

state of the CNS. In addition, the accumulating loss of neurons that characterizes AD further contributes to generation of debris and keeps microglia activated indefinitely maintaining microglia in an activated state long term. These data indicate that in AD the inflammation might be chronic, therefore contributing to disease progression [11].

There is also the emerging idea that an inflamed CNS environment may influence the ability of microglia to contribute to plaque deposition rather than plaque removal [33]. This strongly suggests that the microenvironment of the brain can influence whether microglia perform beneficial or deleterious functions in pathophysiological states. This means that microglial cells functionally adapt to their environment [38]. Recent studies show that in response to certain environmental toxins and endogenous proteins, microglia can enter an overactivated state and release reactive oxygen species (ROS) that cause neurotoxicity [41]. Overactivated microglia can be detected using imaging techniques and therefore this knowledge offers an opportunity not only for early diagnosis but eventually also for the development of targeted anti-inflammatory therapies that might diminish the progression of the disease [24].

In addition, activated microglia release the excitotoxin quinolinic acid [42] and microglia activated by AD plaques produce an apparently novel amine that evokes fulminant excitotoxicity [43]. One interesting implication of an excitotoxic contribution to inflammatory mechanisms is the potential for limited damage to functional cellular compartments. Because excitatory amino acid receptors are restricted to synapses and dendrites, these subcellular compartments are preferentially vulnerable.

As a result, microglia-produced excitotoxins may lead to cognitive impairment that is not necessarily correlated with neuronal cell loss [5]. However, activated microglia not only produce neurotoxic metabolites: Some of their products like 3-hydroxyanthralinic acid (which is—like quinolinic acid—one of the downstream products of the tryptophan metabolism) exert antioxidant and anti-inflammatory functions [44, 45].

Since tryptophan/kynurenine metabolism—i.e. the degradation of tryptophan to the partly neuroprotective, partly neurotoxic metabolites of the degradation to quinolinic acid—is driven by the enzyme indoleamine 2,3 dioxygenase (IDO), immune mechanisms are key players in this system. IDO is activated by pro-inflammatory cytokines such as interferon-gamma or IL-2. Immune activation is associated with an increased degradation of tryptophan and kynurenine. In an interesting study it was investigated whether an imbalance between neurotoxic and neuroprotective kynurenine metabolites could be detected in patients with AD. Serum levels of tryptophan, kynurenic acid, 3-hydroxykynurenine (HK), picolinic acid and quinolinic acid were measured in patients with AD, and it was found that serum levels of 3-HK were markedly increased in AD patients compared to the comparison groups ($p < .0001$), while serum levels of the other KP metabolites were not significantly different between groups. In contrast to its downstream metabolites, quinolinic acid and picolinic acid, 3-HK can cross the blood-brain barrier via an active transport process. These data therefore indicate an enhanced availability of

3-hydroxykynurenine in the brain of AD patients, which may be related to the previously reported higher production of quinolinic acid in AD brains [46].

Therefore, the balance of these products that result from activated microglia is important for the inflammatory process.

Finally up the results from microglia studies, clear evidence that exists for an important role of neuroinflammation contributing to disease progression in AD was found. However, some aspects of microglia activation might also be beneficial during the course of AD. As explained above, neuroinflammation is a critical event in AD. It has been suggested that anti-inflammatory therapy could be beneficial in delaying the onset or slowing the progression of AD. Cyclooxygenase (COX) is a unique enzyme. First, it exhibits two catalytic activities, a bis-oxygenase activity, which catalyses prostaglandin G_2 (PG) formation from arachidonic acid, and a peroxidase activity, which reduces PG G_2 to PG H_2. The peroxidase activity also results in the production of free radicals, which are in part utilized by COX itself [47]. Although nonsteroidal inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) may have other effects as well, it is generally assumed that their primary mechanism of action is by competitive inhibition of COX activity, thereby reducing the production of inflammatory prostaglandins from membrane-derived arachidonate. COX not only helps mediate production of prostaglandins and other inflammatory factors; it is itself upregulated by pro-inflammatory mediators [11, 47].

In AD, Aβ neurotoxicity may result from several mechanisms, most likely in combination. These mechanisms include oxidative damage, direct cytotoxicity and induction of destructive inflammatory mechanisms; efforts have been directed at the control of each of these processes [48].

3 Possible Mechanisms of Action of NSAIDs in AD

The treatment of AD with NSAIDs is one of the most promising approaches. If NSAIDs are beneficial in AD, the presumed mechanism would be inhibition of COX expressed in the brain. Both COX-1 and COX-2 are expressed there and COX-2 plays a unique role in the brain compared to the periphery: Only in the brain is COX-2 expressed constitutively, whereas elsewhere the expression is activation dependent. Although in vivo the majority of COX-2 appears to be made in neurons, COX-2 was also seen in rat astrocytes and microglia [49]. It has been demonstrated that COX-inhibiting NSAIDs reduce microglia activation following infusion of Aβ in rats [50]. Neuronal stress, such as ischaemia and excitotoxicity, is associated with strong upregulation of neuronal COX-2 expression. This suggests that COX-2 is involved in neurotoxic mechanisms and may therefore represent a target for drug therapy in the treatment of AD [51, 52].

Several epidemiological studies provide the background for possible mechanisms of action of NSAIDs in AD. In most studies COX-2 inhibitors are used, because neuronal COX-2 is upregulated in response to exposure to Aβ [53], and focal increases in COX-2 have been shown in the region of amyloid plaques in

double transgenic mice carrying genes that encode both mutant APP and mutant presenilin 1 [54]. Many studies seem to show that COX-2 inhibition confers neuroprotection [55–58]. Some studies have revealed an upregulation of neuronal COX-2 in the brains of patients with AD [59, 60], though this has not been a universal finding [61, 62]. One explanation for the variation of COX expression is the short half-life of COX-2 transcripts or individual variability of inflammatory-related processes.

COX-1 is also localized in microglia and is actively involved in brain injury induced by pro-inflammatory stimuli including Aß, LPS and interleukins. A study with 20-month-old triple transgenic AD mice showed that their memory function increases, when treated with COX-1 inhibitors. In addition, amyloid deposits and tau hyperphosphorylation in hippocampus decrease [63]. Triflusal, a platelet anti-aggregant and irreversible COX-1 inhibitor, could protect against cognitive deficits by reducing the dense-core amyloid plaque load, associated glial cell activation and pro-inflammatory cytokine levels in a transgenic mouse model [64]. Unfortunately, this could only be clearly demonstrated in animal experiments.

Another principle of how NSAIDs could act comes from the finding that prostaglandin E2 levels are elevated in patients with AD, especially in early stages of the disease [65]. Therefore, NSAIDs blocking prostaglandin E2 synthesis might be beneficial. This issue is further strengthened by glial culture studies indicating that prostaglandins, particularly prostaglandin E, alter the production of several inflammation-related molecules, including IL-6, chemokines and APP [66–68].

In addition to the more traditional inflammatory mechanisms associated with COX, unique functions of COX-mediated damage may also occur in the AD brain. For example, several of the prostanoid products of arachidonate metabolism potentiate glutamate excitotoxicity, and COX-2 overexpressing transgenic mice exhibit increased neuronal susceptibility to excitotoxic insult [69].

Some of the previously mentioned studies of COX in ischaemia also suggest that intraneuronal COX-2 levels may contribute to neuronal death by production of free radicals [70]. In addition, increased COX-2 levels in AD neurons may directly damage neurons or increase their vulnerability to other detrimental processes occurring in AD brain [70]. Resulting, the inhibitory action of NSAIDs on COX-mediated production of apoptotic factors by neurons could be one of the mechanisms by which these anti-inflammatory drugs cause beneficial effects in AD.

Another non-COX-dependent mechanism of NSAIDs is to attenuate inflammatory processes in a manner by directly activating the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma (PPARγ), a receptor and nuclear transcription factor [71–73]. PPARγ is a member of the orphan nuclear receptor family. In cells of the monocytic lineage, including microglia, PPARγ acts to suppress the expression of a broad range of proinflammatory genes [71, 73]. Some NSAIDs act as PPARγ agonists, directly binding to it and initiating its transcriptional activity. Activation of PPARγ inhibits the Aβ-stimulated activation of microglia and monocytes and their secretion of proinflammatory and neurotoxic products. For example, PPARγ agonists act to inhibit the Aβ-stimulated expression of IL-6 and TNF-alpha [74], by

microglia and monocytes, and to prevent Aβ-mediated conversion of microglia into an activated phenotype [11, 75].

A further underlying mechanism of AD pathology is oxidative stress [76, 77]. Activated microglial cells are known to release ROS, which might possibly cause this oxidative stress. However, glial cells can also exhibit antioxidative functions by releasing hemeoxygenase-1 (HO-1) triggered by accumulation of 3-hydroxyanthrallinic acid (3-HAA), a downstream product of the tryptophan metabolism. The association of neuronal injury in AD and oxidative stress has been demonstrated by overexpression of immunoreactive HO-1 protein in neurons and astrocytes of the cerebral cortex and hippocampus. HO-1 was found to be co-localized to senile plaques, neurofibrillary tangles and corpora amylacea [78]. It is widely accepted that a moderate activation of heme catabolism is neuroprotective and contributes to degradation of neurotoxic protein aggregates. Regulatory interactions between HO-1 and COX pathways have also been reported [79]. However, experimental observations indicate that the extent of HO-1 induction may be critical because excessive heme degradation may result in toxic levels of carbon monoxide, bilirubin and iron. Pharmacological modulation of HO-1 levels in the brain shows promising results in models of AD and Parkinson's disease [80].

Referring to the oxidative stress underlying AD pathology, one further aspect of these ROS includes activation of COX-1/2, which is blocked by NSAIDs. It has been shown that daily doses of NSAIDs increase circulating levels of antioxidants [81]. In a rat model of AD, it was suggested that treatment with a COX-2 inhibitor reduces oxidative stress and might therefore be beneficial for the course of AD [82].

Another neuroprotective mechanism has been suggested for NSAIDs whereby these drugs directly affect amyloid pathology in the brain by reducing Aβ-42 peptide levels over the gamma-secretase activity independently of COX activity [83]. Weggen et al. reported that the NSAIDs ibuprofen, indomethacin and sulindac sulphide preferentially decrease the highly amyloidogenic Aβ-42 peptide produced from a variety of cultured cells by as much as 80 % [84]. However, for some NSAIDs the lowering effect of Aβ-42 could not be shown; instead, an increase in Aβ-42 levels was observed [85]. The underlying mechanism of how NSAIDs decrease Aβ-42 was clarified by Lleo et al., who demonstrated that Aβ-42 by lowering NSAIDs specifically affects the proximity between APP and presenilin 1 and alters a novel allosteric mechanism of action [86].

4 Anti-inflammatory Treatment Studies in AD

In recent years it has become widely accepted that inflammatory processes are an underlying condition of AD. Therefore, a number of clinical trials investigating different anti-inflammatory treatment regimens have been performed. In the following paragraph, we summarize the most import findings in regard to first mainly COX-2 dominant and second COX-1 inhibitors.

4.1 COX-1 and COX-2 Inhibitors

A prospective cohort study with 6,989 subjects showed that long-term use of NSAIDs protects against AD but not against vascular dementia [7]. More recently, Szekely et al. provided very similar findings. They concluded that NSAID use reduced the risk of preferentially AD versus vascular dementia but mainly in those individuals having an apolipoprotein E (APO) epsilon 4 allele. This study was done with over 3,000 subjects aged 65 years and older [8]. Not only selective COX-2 inhibitors were shown to be associated with decreased risk of AD; a reduced occurrence of AD could also be demonstrated for the use of the mixed COX-1/COX-2 inhibitor aspirin [9]. A meta-analysis of 17 epidemiological studies yielded strong, generally consistent, statistical evidence that NSAID and steroid use is associated with reduced risk of AD [87]. Vlad et al. investigated 49,349 patients with AD and 196,850 controls: long-term (>5 years) nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug use was shown to be protective against AD. These findings were clearest for ibuprofen, but did not appear for other NSAIDs [88].

Naproxen, which is slightly more selective for COX-1 than COX-2, cuts the risk of developing AD in 117 patients with MCI from whom CSF was collected 21–41 months after treatment was terminated. The tau to Aß42 ratio was reduced by more than 40 % in the group treated with naproxen [89]. Also, another NSAID with preferential COX-1 selectivity such as indomethacin reduced amyloid burden in transgenic mice [90].

To conclude there are at least ten studies showing beneficial effects of NSAIDs on amyloid burden and inflammation in mice.

In humans however, not all studies showed a positive outcome for COX-inhibitors. The failure of selective COX-2 inhibition (rofecoxib) over placebo was found in a 1-year randomized controlled study. The authors argued that their results could indicate that the disease process was too advanced to be modified, as the goal of the study was slowing the progression of dementia in patients with already established AD [10]. For another COX-2 inhibitor, celecoxib, no beneficial effect on the occurrence of AD could be demonstrated in an age group over 70 years [91]. Also, Wolfson et al. looked retrospectively at a case-control population and found no support for a beneficial effect for NSAIDs in the AD subjects [92]. However, this negative result may have been caused by an insufficient period of data collection before disease onset.

4.2 Passive and Active Anti-Aß Immunotherapies

In the last few years, most of the efforts of the pharmaceutical industry were directed against the production and accumulation of Aß. The most revolutionary development in the last several years consists in the removal of brain ß-amyloid via anti-Aß antibodies. Both passive and active anti-Aß immunotherapies can clear Aß deposits

from the brain of the AD patients. AN1792, which was used in AD patients, showed some clues of clinical efficacy but was associated with aseptic meningoencephalitis in about 6 % of patients. So this medication has been abandoned. The next generation of active and passive vaccines has been developed in the past few years and is currently under clinical investigation. The aim of these vaccines is to clear the brain from Aß deposits and to stop the progression of AD.

Bapineuzumab, composed of humanized anti-Aß monoclonal antibodies, is the most advanced product. It has been tested in two phase II trials and Aß burden was reduced in the brain of AD patients. Some patients experienced vasogenic edema especially apolipoprotein E4 carriers. This limits its clinical use, especially in higher doses (2 mg/kg). The proposed remedy is to treat AD patients with lower doses, particularly in APOE4 carriers. A large phase III trial with bapineuzumab is ongoing. This study will tell us if passive anti-Aß immunization is able to reduce progression of the disease [93]. Of course, improvements in vaccine design are needed to improve the safety and the efficacy of anti-Aß immunotherapy. Unfortunately, at this point we cannot definitely identify individuals in the preclinical stages of AD; therefore, passive immunotherapy is indicated in patients that are diagnosed with AD, i.e. have clinical symptoms. At that point patients have already accumulated substantial neuropathology in affected regions of the brain [94].

Perhaps amyloid-PET imaging combined with genetic markers and last but not least with clinical symptoms such as mild cognitive impairment will potentially detect individuals with a higher risk to develop an AD [95]. Development of valid biomarkers for AD should be a high priority aim of research on AD in the next few years.

5 Conclusion

Neuroinflammation plays a key role in the pathophysiology of the AD. Mechanisms that parallel those encountered in inflammatory diseases involving other organ systems are readily identified, along with detailed pathways for how the mechanisms interact. Although still controversial, on balance, it is likely that AD neuroinflammation exacerbates AD pathogenesis.

A general treatment principle in neurology and psychiatry that an intervention as early as possible leads to the best outcome seems to be especially true for AD. However, lack of appropriate biomarkers such as genetic risk factors or neuroimaging techniques is a problem that needs to be solved in the next few years. Until then, the treatment cannot start early enough.

Many lines of evidence show that Aβ-induced neuroinflammation is an early event in neurodegeneration of AD [96], as increases in microglia activation have been observed in very early stages of AD and disappeared over time [39]. The fact that neuroinflammation occurs very early in AD could explain why anti-inflammatory treatment seems to be most efficient as preventive or early treatment.

There are several reasons why early use of NSAIDs is superior to a late treatment. COX expression in the brain decreases over time in AD brains [97]. And the CSF PG E_2 levels in patients with AD are high when their short-term memory scores were just below those of controls, but were low in later stages of the disease. These findings further support that inflammatory processes predominate early in AD [98] and therefore require early intervention with anti-inflammatory agents.

This might also explain that the failure of some prospective clinical trials of selective COX-2 inhibitors delayed the onset of treatment. Lack of clinical efficacy could also be due to drug selection (regarding different effects of COX-1 and COX-2) or to dose and duration of treatment. The drug selection seems essential as some NSAIDs have recently been shown to increase Aβ-42 levels. It also has to be noted that the protective effects of NSAIDs may be via non-COX-inhibitory mechanisms, such as lowering of Aβ levels and activation of the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor [gamma] [99]. These non-COX-dependent mechanisms might be differentially distributed amongst different COX-inhibitors.

While the harmful inflammatory processes seem to dominate in AD pathology, there are also some beneficial functions for inflammatory subsets. If AD neuroinflammation is approached with realistic expectations and rational drug design, AD patients could significantly benefit from anti-inflammatory treatment, especially with NSAIDs.

Another aspect could be to not only utilize the efficient treatment properties of NSAIDs in early AD but also make use of the neuroprotective aspects of neuroinflammation with combination therapy that maximizes the potential of glial activation. This would include treatment with NSAIDs and drugs that enforce anti-inflammatory and antioxidative properties (e.g. with 3-HAA and HO-1 enhancement).

Finally, a promising therapeutic approach using passive and active immunization against amyloid-beta has emerged. If in the next few years we are able to detect AD much earlier, starting treatment with immunization before the clinical symptoms appear could prove effective.

References

1. Sperling RA, Aisen PS, et al. Toward defining the preclinical stages of Alzheimer's disease: recommendations from the National Institute on Aging-Alzheimer's Association workgroups on diagnostic guidelines for Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Dement. 2011;7(3):280–92.
2. Rosenberg PB et al. Cognition and amyloid load in Alzheimer disease imaged with Florbetapir F 18(AV-45) positron emission tomography. Am J Geriatr Psychiatry. 2013;21(3):272–8.
3. Panza F et al. Immunotherapy for Alzheimer's disease: from anti-beta-amyloid to tau-based immunization strategies. Immunotherapy. 2012;4(2):213–38.
4. Teunissen CE et al. [Serum markers in relation to cognitive functioning in an aging population: results of the Maastricht Aging Study (MAAS)]. Tijdschr Gerontol Geriatr. 2003;34(1):6–12.
5. McGeer EG, McGeer PL. Neuroinflammation in Alzheimer's disease and mild cognitive impairment: a field in its infancy. J Alzheimers Dis. 2010;19(1):355–61.
6. Akiyama H et al. Inflammation and Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 2000;21(3): 383–421.

7. in t' Veld BA, et al. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs and the risk of Alzheimer's disease. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(21):1515–21.
8. Szekely CA et al. NSAID use and dementia risk in the Cardiovascular Health Study: role of APOE and NSAID type. Neurology. 2008;70(1):17–24.
9. Anthony JC et al. Reduced prevalence of AD in users of NSAIDs and H2 receptor antagonists: the Cache County study. Neurology. 2000;54(11):2066–71.
10. Reines SA et al. Rofecoxib: no effect on Alzheimer's disease in a 1-year, randomized, blinded, controlled study. Neurology. 2004;62(1):66–71.
11. Dl K. Muller N, MN. Neuroinflammation, microglia and implications for anti-inflammatory treatment in Alzheimer's disease. Int. J Alzheimers Dis. 2010;14(732806):732806. 10.4061/2010/732806 [doi] 732806 [pii].
12. Kipnis J et al. T cell deficiency leads to cognitive dysfunction: implications for therapeutic vaccination for schizophrenia and other psychiatric conditions. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2004;101(21):8180–5.
13. Ziv Y et al. Immune cells contribute to the maintenance of neurogenesis and spatial learning abilities in adulthood. Nat Neurosci. 2006;9(2):268–75.
14. Teunissen CE et al. Inflammation markers in relation to cognition in a healthy aging population. J Neuroimmunol. 2003;134(1–2):142–50.
15. Wyss-Coray T. Inflammation in Alzheimer disease: driving force, bystander or beneficial response? Nat Med. 2006;12(9):1005–15.
16. Edison P et al. Microglia, amyloid, and cognition in Alzheimer's disease: an [11C](R) PK11195-PET and [11C]PIB-PET study. Neurobiol Dis. 2008;32(3):412–9.
17. Rogers J, Shen Y. A perspective on inflammation in Alzheimer's disease. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2000;924:132–5.
18. Perry VH, Newman TA, Cunningham C. The impact of systemic infection on the progression of neurodegenerative disease. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2003;4(2):103–12.
19. Lue LF et al. Inflammation, a beta deposition, and neurofibrillary tangle formation as correlates of Alzheimer's disease neurodegeneration. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1996;55(10):1083–8.
20. Mulugeta E et al. Inflammatory mediators in the frontal lobe of patients with mixed and vascular dementia. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord. 2008;25(3):278–86.
21. Stubner S et al. Interleukin-6 and the soluble IL-6 receptor are decreased in cerebrospinal fluid of geriatric patients with major depression: no alteration of soluble gp130. Neurosci Lett. 1999;259(3):145–8.
22. Wang XQ et al. Neuroprotection of interleukin-6 against NMDA attack and its signal transduction by JAK and MAPK. Neurosci Lett. 2009;450(2):122–6.
23. Webster S et al. Molecular and cellular characterization of the membrane attack complex, C5b-9, in Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 1997;18(4):415–21.
24. Block ML, Zecca L, Hong JS. Microglia-mediated neurotoxicity: uncovering the molecular mechanisms. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2007;8(1):57–69.
25. Cras P et al. Neuronal and microglial involvement in beta-amyloid protein deposition in Alzheimer's disease. Am J Pathol. 1990;137(2):241–6.
26. Styren SD, Civin WH, Rogers J. Molecular, cellular, and pathologic characterization of HLA-DR immunoreactivity in normal elderly and Alzheimer's disease brain. Exp Neurol. 1990;110(1):93–104.
27. Perlmutter LS, Barron E, Chui HC. Morphologic association between microglia and senile plaque amyloid in Alzheimer's disease. Neurosci Lett. 1990;119(1):32–6.
28. Lue LF et al. Inflammatory repertoire of Alzheimer's disease and nondemented elderly microglia in vitro. Glia. 2001;35(1):72–9.
29. Persson M et al. Lipopolysaccharide increases microglial GLT-1 expression and glutamate uptake capacity in vitro by a mechanism dependent on TNF-alpha. Glia. 2005;51(2):111–20.
30. Francis PT. Altered glutamate neurotransmission and behaviour in dementia: evidence from studies of memantine. Curr Mol Pharmacol. 2009;2(1):77–82.
31. Kim SU, de Vellis J. Microglia in health and disease. J Neurosci Res. 2005;81(3):302–13.

32. Majumdar A et al. Activation of microglia acidifies lysosomes and leads to degradation of Alzheimer amyloid fibrils. Mol Biol Cell. 2007;18(4):1490–6.
33. Koenigsknecht-Talboo J, Landreth GE. Microglial phagocytosis induced by fibrillar beta-amyloid and IgGs are differentially regulated by proinflammatory cytokines. J Neurosci. 2005; 25(36):8240–9.
34. Fan R et al. Minocycline reduces microglial activation and improves behavioral deficits in a transgenic model of cerebral microvascular amyloid. J Neurosci. 2007;27(12):3057–63.
35. Seabrook TJ et al. Minocycline affects microglia activation, A beta deposition, and behavior in APP-tg mice. Glia. 2006;53(7):776–82.
36. Chaves C et al. Glutamate-N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor modulation and minocycline for the treatment of patients with schizophrenia: an update. Braz J Med Biol Res. 2009;42(11): 1002–14.
37. Wyss-Coray T et al. TGF-beta1 promotes microglial amyloid-beta clearance and reduces plaque burden in transgenic mice. Nat Med. 2001;7(5):612–8.
38. Hanisch UK, Kettenmann H. Microglia: active sensor and versatile effector cells in the normal and pathologic brain. Nat Neurosci. 2007;10(11):1387–94.
39. Vehmas AK et al. Immune reactive cells in senile plaques and cognitive decline in Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 2003;24(2):321–31.
40. Remarque EJ et al. Patients with Alzheimer's disease display a pro-inflammatory phenotype. Exp Gerontol. 2001;36(1):171–6.
41. Innamorato NG, Lastres-Becker I, Cuadrado A. Role of microglial redox balance in modulation of neuroinflammation. Curr Opin Neurol. 2009;22(3):308–14.
42. Espey MG et al. Activated human microglia produce the excitotoxin quinolinic acid. Neuroreport. 1997;8(2):431–4.
43. Giulian D et al. Senile plaques stimulate microglia to release a neurotoxin found in Alzheimer brain. Neurochem Int. 1995;27(1):119–37.
44. Leipnitz G et al. In vitro evidence for an antioxidant role of 3-hydroxykynurenine and 3-hydroxyanthranilic acid in the brain. Neurochem Int. 2007;50(1):83–94.
45. Thomas SR, Witting PK, Stocker R. 3-Hydroxyanthranilic acid is an efficient, cell-derived co-antioxidant for alpha-tocopherol, inhibiting human low density lipoprotein and plasma lipid peroxidation. J Biol Chem. 1996;271(51):32714–21.
46. Schwarz MJ, Guillemin GJ, et al. Increased 3-Hydroxykynurenine serum concentrations differentiate Alzheimer's disease patients from controls. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci. 2012;29:29.
47. Smith WL, Garavito RM, DeWitt DL. Prostaglandin endoperoxide H synthases (cyclooxygenases)-1 and -2. J Biol Chem. 1996;271(52):33157–60.
48. Aisen PS, Davis KL. The search for disease-modifying treatment for Alzheimer's disease. Neurology. 1997;48(5 Suppl 6):S35–41.
49. Hirst WD et al. Expression of COX-2 by normal and reactive astrocytes in the adult rat central nervous system. Mol Cell Neurosci. 1999;13(1):57–68.
50. Hauss-Wegrzyniak B, Vraniak P, Wenk GL. The effects of a novel NSAID on chronic neuroinflammation are age dependent. Neurobiol Aging. 1999;20(3):305–13.
51. Planas AM et al. Induction of cyclooxygenase-2 mRNA and protein following transient focal ischemia in the rat brain. Neurosci Lett. 1995;200(3):187–90.
52. Tocco G et al. Maturational regulation and regional induction of cyclooxygenase-2 in rat brain: implications for Alzheimer's disease. Exp Neurol. 1997;144(2):339–49.
53. Pasinetti GM, Aisen PS. Cyclooxygenase-2 expression is increased in frontal cortex of Alzheimer's disease brain. Neuroscience. 1998;87(2):319–24.
54. Matsuoka Y et al. Inflammatory responses to amyloidosis in a transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Am J Pathol. 2001;158(4):1345–54.
55. Hewett SJ et al. Cyclooxygenase-2 contributes to N-methyl-D-aspartate-mediated neuronal cell death in primary cortical cell culture. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2000;293(2):417–25.
56. Willard LB et al. The cytotoxicity of chronic neuroinflammation upon basal forebrain cholinergic neurons of rats can be attenuated by glutamatergic antagonism or cyclooxygenase-2 inhibition. Exp Brain Res. 2000;134(1):58–65.

57. Kunz T, Oliw EH. The selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor rofecoxib reduces kainate-induced cell death in the rat hippocampus. Eur J Neurosci. 2001;13(3):569–75.
58. Araki E et al. Cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor ns-398 protects neuronal cultures from lipopolysaccharide-induced neurotoxicity. Stroke. 2001;32(10):2370–5.
59. Yasojima K et al. Distribution of cyclooxygenase-1 and cyclooxygenase-2 mRNAs and proteins in human brain and peripheral organs. Brain Res. 1999;830(2):226–36.
60. Ho L et al. Neuronal cyclooxygenase 2 expression in the hippocampal formation as a function of the clinical progression of Alzheimer disease. Arch Neurol. 2001;58(3):487–92.
61. Lukiw WJ, Bazan NG. Cyclooxygenase 2 RNA message abundance, stability, and hypervariability in sporadic Alzheimer neocortex. J Neurosci Res. 1997;50(6):937–45.
62. Chang JW, Coleman PD, O'Banion MK. Prostaglandin G/H synthase-2 (cyclooxygenase-2) mRNA expression is decreased in Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 1996;17(5):801–8.
63. Choi SH et al. Cyclooxygenase-1 inhibition reduces amyloid pathology and improves memory deficits in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. J Neurochem. 2013;124(1):59–68.
64. Coma M, Sereno L, et al. Triflusal reduces dense-core plaque load, associated axonal alterations and inflammatory changes, and rescues cognition in a transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Dis. 2010;38(3):482–91.
65. Montine TJ et al. Elevated CSF prostaglandin E2 levels in patients with probable AD. Neurology. 1999;53(7):1495–8.
66. Lee RK, Knapp S, Wurtman RJ. Prostaglandin E2 stimulates amyloid precursor protein gene expression: inhibition by immunosuppressants. J Neurosci. 1999;19(3):940–7.
67. Blom MA et al. NSAIDS inhibit the IL-1 beta-induced IL-6 release from human post-mortem astrocytes: the involvement of prostaglandin E2. Brain Res. 1997;777(1–2):210–8.
68. Fiebich BL et al. Prostaglandin E2 induces interleukin-6 synthesis in human astrocytoma cells. J Neurochem. 1997;68(2):704–9.
69. Kelley KA et al. Potentiation of excitotoxicity in transgenic mice overexpressing neuronal cyclooxygenase-2. Am J Pathol. 1999;155(3):995–1004.
70. Pasinetti GM. Cyclooxygenase and inflammation in Alzheimer's disease: experimental approaches and clinical interventions. J Neurosci Res. 1998;54(1):1–6.
71. Jiang C, Ting AT, Seed B. PPAR-gamma agonists inhibit production of monocyte inflammatory cytokines. Nature. 1998;391(6662):82–6.
72. Lehmann JM et al. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors alpha and gamma are activated by indomethacin and other non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. J Biol Chem. 1997;272(6):3406–10.
73. Ricote M et al. The peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma is a negative regulator of macrophage activation. Nature. 1998;391(6662):79–82.
74. Combs CK et al. Identification of microglial signal transduction pathways mediating a neurotoxic response to amyloidogenic fragments of beta-amyloid and prion proteins. J Neurosci. 1999;19(3):928–39.
75. Combs CK et al. Inflammatory mechanisms in Alzheimer's disease: inhibition of beta-amyloid-stimulated proinflammatory responses and neurotoxicity by PPARgamma agonists. J Neurosci. 2000;20(2):558–67.
76. Ansari MA, Scheff SW. Oxidative stress in the progression of Alzheimer disease in the frontal cortex. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2010;69(2):155–67.
77. Smith MA et al. Increased iron and free radical generation in preclinical Alzheimer disease and mild cognitive impairment. J Alzheimers Dis. 2010;19(1):363–72.
78. Schipper HM et al. Heme oxygenase-1 and neurodegeneration: expanding frontiers of engagement. J Neurochem. 2009;110(2):469–85.
79. Alcaraz MJ, Fernandez P, Guillen MI. Anti-inflammatory actions of the heme oxygenase-1 pathway. Curr Pharm Des. 2003;9(30):2541–51.
80. Cuadrado A, Rojo AI. Heme oxygenase-1 as a therapeutic target in neurodegenerative diseases and brain infections. Curr Pharm Des. 2008;14(5):429–42.
81. Kimura K. Mechanisms of active oxygen species reduction by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. Int J Biochem Cell Biol. 1997;29(3):437–46.

82. Nivsarkar M, Banerjee A, Padh H. Cyclooxygenase inhibitors: a novel direction for Alzheimer's management. Pharmacol Rep. 2008;60(5):692–8.
83. Guardia-Laguarta C, Pera M, Lleo A. A gamma-Secretase as a therapeutic target in Alzheimer's disease. Curr Drug Targets. 2010;11(4):506–17.
84. Weggen S et al. A subset of NSAIDs lower amyloidogenic Abeta42 independently of cyclooxygenase activity. Nature. 2001;414(6860):212–6.
85. Kukar T et al. Diverse compounds mimic Alzheimer disease-causing mutations by augmenting Abeta42 production. Nat Med. 2005;11(5):545–50.
86. Lleo A et al. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs lower Abeta42 and change presenilin 1 conformation. Nat Med. 2004;10(10):1065–6.
87. McGeer PL, Schulzer M, McGeer EG. Arthritis and anti-inflammatory agents as possible protective factors for Alzheimer's disease: a review of 17 epidemiologic studies. Neurology. 1996;47(2):425–32.
88. Vlad SC et al. Protective effects of NSAIDs on the development of Alzheimer disease. Neurology. 2008;70(19):1672–7.
89. Breitner JC, Baker LD, et al. Extended results of the Alzheimer's disease anti-inflammatory prevention trial. Alzheimers Dement. 2011;7(4):402–11.
90. Jantzen PT, Connor KE, et al. Microglial activation and beta -amyloid deposit reduction caused by a nitric oxide-releasing nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug in amyloid precursor protein plus presenilin-1 transgenic mice. J Neurosci. 2002;22(6):246–54.
91. Martin BK et al. Cognitive function over time in the Alzheimer's Disease Anti-inflammatory Prevention Trial (ADAPT): results of a randomized, controlled trial of naproxen and celecoxib. Arch Neurol. 2008;65(7):896–905.
92. Wolfson C et al. A case-control analysis of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and Alzheimer's disease: are they protective? Neuroepidemiology. 2002;21(2):81–6.
93. Panza F, Frisardi V, et al. Anti-beta-amyloid immunotherapy for Alzheimer's disease: focus on bapineuzumab. Curr Alzheimer Res. 2011;8(8):808–17.
94. DH C. Abeta DNA vaccination for Alzheimer's disease: focus on disease prevention. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets. 2010;9(2):207–16.
95. Fleisher AS, Chen K, et al. Florbetapir PET analysis of amyloid-beta deposition in the presenilin 1 E280A autosomal dominant Alzheimer's disease kindred: a cross-sectional study. Lancet Neurol. 2012;11(12):1057–65.
96. Craft JM, Watterson DM, Van Eldik LJ. Human amyloid beta-induced neuroinflammation is an early event in neurodegeneration. Glia. 2006;53(5):484–90.
97. Yermakova AV, O'Banion MK. Downregulation of neuronal cyclooxygenase-2 expression in end stage Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 2001;22(6):823–36.
98. Combrinck M et al. Levels of CSF prostaglandin E2, cognitive decline, and survival in Alzheimer's disease. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2006;77(1):85–8.
99. Aisen PS. The potential of anti-inflammatory drugs for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Lancet Neurol. 2002;1(5):279–84.

Neuroinflammation in Huntington's Disease

Roland G.W. Staal and Thomas Möller

Abstract Huntington's disease (HD) is a progressive, eventually terminal, neurodegenerative disease caused by autosomal-dominant mutations in the huntingtin gene (*HTT*). The early symptoms of HD typically include subtle changes in mood and/or cognition, as well as poor coordination and unsteady gait. These symptoms progressively worsen until coordinated movement is virtually impossible and mental abilities have declined to a state of dementia. There is no cure and patients generally succumb to comorbid complications within 20 years of onset. The mutation is an expansion of the CAG triplet repeat stretch in the *HTT* gene, resulting in an expanded poly-glutamine (polyQ) stretch in the huntingtin protein (HTT). The length of this CAG repeat correlates strongly with the age of onset as well as the rate of disease progression. The ability to identify at-risk individuals by genetic testing enabled researchers to conduct clinical studies and learn about early events in the development of HD. One of the earliest pathological changes observed in the CNS of HD patients is the appearance of neuroinflammation, preceding overt neurodegeneration or protein aggregation. Here we will review the data implicating neuroinflammation in all stages of HD, from initiation to progression. We will also explore the most recent advances in our understanding of neuroinflammation in HD including a potential role for the peripheral immune system. We will also discuss how these various biologies may lead the way to discovery of novel, innovative, and urgently needed therapies.

Keywords Huntington's disease • Huntingtin • CAG repeat • PolyQ • Neurodegeneration • Neuroinflammation • PK-11195 • Microglia • Astrocytes • Monocytes • T cells

R.G.W. Staal (✉) • T. Möller
Neuroinflammation Disease Biology Unit, Lundbeck Research USA,
215 College Road, Paramus, NJ 07652, USA
e-mail: staa@lundbeck.com; tmoe@lundbeck.com

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_10, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

List of Abbreviations

AD	Alzheimer's disease
ALS	Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
ApoE	Apolipoprotein epsilon
ApoJ	Apolipoprotein J
ATP	Adenosine triphosphate
B cell	Bone marrow-derived lymphocyte
BBB	Blood–brain barrier
BDNF	Brain-derived neurotrophic factor
CB2R	Cannabinoid receptor 2
CCL5	Chemokine (C–C motif) ligand 5 (also CCL5)
CNS	Central nervous system
CXCL1	Chemokine (C–X–C motif) ligand 1 (GROα, KC)
EAAT2	Excitatory amino acid transporter 2
GABA	Gama-aminobutyric acid (inhibitory neurotransmitter)
GFP	Green fluorescent protein
HD	Huntington's disease
HTT	Huntingtin's protein
HTT	Human huntingtin's gene
Htt	Mouse huntingtin's gene
Iba1	Ionized Ca^{2+}-binding adapter molecule 1 [Allograft inflammatory factor 1 (AIF1)]
IKK	IκB kinase
IL-10	Interleukin 10
IL-4	Interleukin 4
IL-6	Interleukin 6
KCNN4	K^+ intermediate/small conductance Ca^{2+}-activated channel, subfamily N, member 4
KMO	Kynurenine 3-monooxygenase
LRP	Lipoprotein receptor-related proteins
MCP-1	Monocyte chemotactic protein-1 [Chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 2 (CCL2)]
MCP-4	Monocyte chemotactic protein-4 [Chemokine (C–C motif) ligand 13 (CCL13)]
MIP-1β	Macrophage inflammatory protein-1β, CCL4 [Chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 4]
MS	Multiple sclerosis
NAD^+	Nicotine adenine dinucleotide
NF-κB	Nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells
NMDA	*N*-methyl-d-aspartate
NO	Nitric oxide
P2X4	P2X purinoceptor 4
P2X7	P2X purinoceptor 7
PD	Parkinson's disease

PolyQ	Poly-glutamine stretch
PrP	Prion protein
Q	Glutamine
RANTES	Regulated on activation, normal T cell expressed and secreted
ROS	Reactive oxygen species (superoxide, hydrogen peroxide, etc.)
SSRI	Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
T cell	Thymus-derived lymphocyte
TGF-β	Transforming growth factor β
TLR4	Toll-like receptor 4
TRPM2	Transient receptor potential cation channel, subfamily M, member 2
VGCC	Voltage-gated Ca^{2+} channels

1 Huntington's Disease

Huntington's disease (HD) is a progressive, terminal, neurodegenerative disease of monogenetic origin. The first signs of disease include subtle changes in mood and cognition as well as poor coordination and unsteady gate. Cognitive, behavioral, and psychological problems as well as the uncoordinated, jerking movements (chorea) continue to deteriorate and become more pronounced, eventually leading the patient to seek medical advice. Collectively, abnormal motor movements (dystonia and chorea) accompanied by cognitive decline and personality changes suggest the possibility of Huntington's disease, a diagnosis which can be confirmed by genetic testing. The disease and symptoms continue to progress until coordinated movement becomes extremely difficult and mental abilities decline to a state of dementia. Patients eventually succumb to bulbar dysfunction and accompanying complications such as pneumonia or heart disease within 20 years of disease onset [1, 2]. There are currently no disease-modifying treatments, only medications to manage the motor symptoms (e.g., Xenazine® (tetrabenazine), neuroleptics, benzodiazepines) and psychiatric symptoms (medications used to treat similar psychiatric symptoms in the general population, i.e., SSRIs, atypical antipsychotics).

One of the earliest neuropathological changes observed in HD patients is proteinacious inclusions rich in huntingtin protein (HTT) that are found in both the nucleus and cytoplasm of striatal GABAergic neurons. Whether or not these inclusions are themselves toxic or represent a protective sequestration mechanism remains unresolved [3, 4]. The CNS pathology of HD is characterized by severe atrophy of the caudate nucleus and putamen due to extensive loss of GABAergic medium spiny neurons that project to the globus pallidus. As the striatopallidal projections are lost, secondary degeneration of the globus pallidus sets in. The basal ganglia are key regulators of motor control, mood, and higher cognitive function which accounts for the clinical manifestations. As with most neurodegenerative diseases, neuronal death and atrophy of anatomical structures are not restricted to just one area, especially as the disease reaches later stages. Cerebral cortical atrophy is also commonly observed later in disease while the cerebellar Purkinje cells are generally spared [2].

The recognition that HD was an autosomal-dominant disorder enabled scientists to discover the underlying mutation in the huntingtin gene (*HTT*). Researchers identified the disease-causing mutation as an expansion of a CAG trinucleotide repeat stretch. As CAG encodes for glutamine (Q), the expansion in the protein is also known as polyQ region [2]. They determined that the length of the expansion predicts the age of onset, which while typically around 35–45 years of age can manifest itself as early as infancy and as late as 85 years. Individuals not affected by HD have fewer than 36 CAG repeats; however, people with 27–35 repeats have a slightly increased risk that their children could pass the 36 CAG repeat threshold due to de novo repeat expansion. Carriers of 36–39 repeats have a significant risk of manifesting HD, and carriers with more than 40 repeats will get the disease with certainty. As an autosomal-dominant disease, children of HD patients have a 50 % risk of receiving the gene with the CAG expansion.

Identification of the disease-associated gene was an important step in understanding HD, but determining the molecular function(s) of the huntingtin (HTT) protein and the biological processes it initiates, coordinates, or regulates remains largely unknown. The autosomal-dominant inheritance of mutated HTT suggests a toxic gain of function since HD patients usually still have one wild-type allele and normal protein is still produced. For example, mutant HTT can recruit normal HTT into insoluble aggregates in vitro and in vivo. In contrast, ablation of *Htt* leads to embryonic lethality, suggesting a critical role of normal HTT function in development. Other in vitro and in vivo studies suggest that loss of HTT function may contribute to disease as shown by decreased cell survival and dysfunction of neurons. Because HTT is expressed throughout the body, its expression pattern fails to provide any insight into its function or the increased susceptibility of the medium spiny neurons in the striatum. The ubiquitous expression, however, implies that the polyQ repeat expansion may affect any cell type in which it is expressed (including astrocytes, microglia, and oligodendrocytes in the CNS). The impact of the mutation upon a given cell type may also depend on the specific function of HTT within that particular cell. The effects of the mutation may also manifest itself at varying stages of the disease depending on the levels of mutant HTT expression. Thus, any cell in the CNS has the potential to contribute to the etiology of HD, suggesting that the underlying disease mechanism may be non-cell autonomous as has been suggested for other neurodegenerative diseases such as Parkinson's disease (PD) and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) [5–7].

2 Neuroinflammation in Huntington's Disease

One type of nonneuronal cells that garnered interest in early neuropathological studies of brains from patients with neurological disease is microglia, the resident immune cells of the CNS. These cells were observed to have profoundly altered morphology (less ramified and more amoeboid) and increased expression of immune cell markers (e.g., HLA-DR, CD68) in neurological diseases including HD [8, 9].

Numerous studies have since been published that firmly establish altered microglial morphology and phenotype (commonly called "activated microglia") as a pathological hallmark of HD. In addition, mediators of inflammation, such as cytokines and increased oxidation products, were found to be increased in HD [10, 11]. Hence, the term "neuroinflammation" was coined to describe the *inflammation* observed in the brains of patients with *neuro*logical disease.

As the CNS resident immune cell, microglia surveil the environment for danger signals (foreign or endogenous) and continuously communicate and interact with the other cells in the brain (astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, and neurons). One mechanism is the release of molecules that are traditionally considered to be immunological signaling molecules such as cytokines and chemokines [12]. Another modality is via release of growth factors, neuropeptides, and transmitters (neuro- and glio-transmitters, such as norepinephrine, glutamate, ATP). The cells of the CNS work in concert to initiate and then modulate neuroinflammation whose goal is to remove the initial cause (infection, disease, and trauma) and ultimately restore homeostasis. The term "neuroinflammation" has therefore been extended beyond the CNS resident immune cells and come to include all cells in the CNS that contribute to the inflammatory response to neurological disease or infection.

2.1 Microglia

The primary function of microglia is to survey the CNS for any signs of danger (either endogenous or foreign) [13]. In the surveilling state (formerly referred to as the "resting" state), microglia have small cell bodies with long, thin ramified processes that constantly extend and retract, making contacts with neurons and other cells. Upon detection of danger signals, microglia can rapidly migrate to the site of injury. They become less ramified and increase the expression of cell surface antigens, resulting in the "activated" morphology observed in virtually all neurological diseases and injuries. The specific phenotype of "activated microglia," however, can be very different from one another even though they morphologically "appear" similar. Microglia have a wide-ranging arsenal of executory functions, including phagocytosis of pathogens or cellular debris, secretion of enzymes that break down the extracellular matrix, secretion of proteins that opsonize dying or damaged cells and mark them for phagocytosis, release of pro- and/or anti-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines, release of growth factors (or downregulation of their release), generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) to destroy phagocytized pathogens, as well as release of glutamate, toxic kynurenine metabolites, ATP, and nitric oxide [13]. The nature of the insult, as well as the immediate milieu of the microglia, will all impinge on the microglia and shape their response. Hence, even if "activated" microglia are observed, one can only conclude that their phenotype is no longer surveying and that they are now "activated." One needs to be cautious in making predictions about what these microglia are actually producing or doing (or have stopped producing/doing).

Microglia can respond quickly to danger, setting in motion fast, potent mechanisms such as phagocytosis, and production of ROS to kill or neutralize phagocytized pathogens, dangerous substances, or dying cells [13, 14]. Over time, other mechanisms are engaged, such as changes in gene expression, transcription, and release of pro-inflammatory and later anti-inflammatory substances including cytokines and growth factors [13, 15]. Especially pro-inflammatory mediators (as well as withdrawal of trophic support) can easily damage or kill nearby cells (bystander damage), so that tight control and effective resolution of neuroinflammation is critical. This resolution of neuroinflammation is accomplished not only by ceasing to produce the pro-inflammatory mediators but by producing anti-inflammatory mediators (IL-4, IL-10, TGF-β) [13]. Thus, microglia are key cellular participants in all stages of neuroinflammation, initiation, resolution, and the following tissue repair. One needs to keep in mind, however, that either this can be a temporal sequence of phenotypes through which microglia pass or it could be a sequential response mediated by distinct subsets of microglia. If the inflammatory response is overshooting in amplitude or length, cells can be damaged or killed, resulting in the spillage of intracellular molecules (chemokines, ATP, heat shock proteins, mitochondrial proteins some of which are formylated like their bacterial forefathers). Since these intracellular molecules are not normally "seen" by microglia, they act as additional danger signals that activate microglia or continue to maintain the microglia in an activated state. This cascade can propagate the neuroinflammatory response or prevent its resolution, potentially starting a vicious cycle. Unrelated inflammatory diseases or conditions (including peripheral inflammation or infection) may directly or indirectly "alert" microglia in the CNS. In this alerted state, microglia are primed such that when a subsequent danger signal comes along, the response is potentiated, leading to greater bystander damage. Thus, microglia activation can be a double-edged sword, one side slaying the microbe, the other the neuron [13, 14, 16].

2.2 Microglia in HD

The first observation of activated microglia in autopsy brains from patients with HD, reported an altered microglial morphology and increased expression of HLA-DR (a component of the antigen-presenting "machinery") [8, 9]. This observation was interpreted as evidence of inflammation in the brains of these patients since HLA-DR expression is also increased on antigen-presenting cells during inflammation. Since then, other studies have demonstrated that in addition to increased expression of HLA-DR, other markers of microglial activation are also increased in HD brain, supporting the hypothesis that there is inflammation in the brains from patients with neurologic disease. These observations are complemented by PET imaging studies demonstrating increased microglial activation in HD patients (see below) [17, 18]. The first study to suggest that microglia might

actually participate in the pathological processes already in motion was the finding that there was an increased number of microglia in the caudate putamen from HD patients [19]. A subsequent study then showed an increase in the number of morphologically activated microglia in the neostriatum, cortex, and globus pallidus and adjoining white matter of HD brains vs. controls [20]. The numbers and density of microglia increased with the grade of HD pathology (i.e., Vonsattel rating scale [21]) and increasing neuronal loss. The findings were confirmed in additional studies with human HD tissue and extended to the R6/2 mouse model of HD where the number of activated microglia was also found to be increased in the striatum [20]. Importantly, this study was also the first to demonstrate the expression and, in some cells, aggregation of HTT in microglia. Aggregation of HTT is considered to be a hallmark of HD, and the observation that microglial cells contain HTT aggregates might indicate a direct cell-autonomous effect of HTT on microglial cells.

More recently, it was demonstrated that wild-type microglia localize to neurons expressing mutant HTT fragments, specifically, along dystrophic neurites but not to somata with mutant huntingtin inclusions [22]. Concurrent with neurodegeneration, microglia increased their expression of Iba1, increased in number, underwent morphological alterations (more amoeboid, less ramified), and increased the expression of the proliferation marker Ki67. Surprisingly, the inflammatory mediators IL-1β, TNFα, and IFNγ were unchanged. In contrast to other studies, however, IL-6 and complement 1q were increased once overt neurodegeneration set in, suggesting that neuroinflammation was still occurring even though different effector molecules were released [22]. Together, the data suggest that microglia recognize and respond to neurons expressing mutant HTT, perhaps to remove dysfunctional synapses or neurites.

A study by Singhrao et al. showed that in addition to an increased number of microglia, there was increased complement biosynthesis by microglia and an increase in complement activation on neurons [19]. For a long time, the complement system was ignored by neuroscientists who considered it a part of the peripheral innate immune system that provides powerful cytotoxic and cytolytic activities against a large variety of pathogens [23]. Over the years, it has become increasingly clear that complement is not only synthesized in the CNS but also participates in most CNS pathologies from acute stroke to chronic neurodegenerative diseases such as HD [24–26]. In HD postmortem samples, neurons, astrocytes, and myelin show increased deposition of C1q, C4, and C3, iC3b-neoepitope and C9-neoepitope compared with non-HD controls [19]. The authors hypothesized that increased levels of complement in HD brains contributes to disease progression, by either contributing to increased inflammatory signaling or the elimination of synapses or neurons by phagocytosis by microglia. Furthermore, the complement receptors, C3aR and C5aR, are also strongly expressed in HD caudate. Interestingly, activation of these receptors in microglia resulted in a reorganization of the actin cytoskeleton and subsequent increase in motility [27]. The increase in expression of complement

proteins in HD brains could not be recapitulated in the R6/2 mouse model. Furthermore, crossing the R6/2 mice with C3 KO mice did not change their phenotype [28]. Intriguingly, the complement system has been shown to play an important role in synaptic pruning in CNS development, homeostasis and disease (reviewed in [29]), suggesting that perhaps the complement system has a function (such as synaptic pruning or phagocytosis) not revealed in the R6/2 mouse model of HD. Thus, the role of increased complement proteins and receptors in brains from HD patients remains to be determined.

Our understanding of the role of neuroinflammation in HD was advanced in 2006 by studies using the radioligand PK-11195 that labels microglia [30, 31]. PK-11195 binds to the peripheral benzodiazepine receptor whose expression is significantly increased in activated microglia and, some studies suggest, reactive astrocytes [31]. Pavese and colleagues demonstrate increased binding of PK-11195 and presumably increased peripheral benzodiazepine receptor in the striatum of HD patients [17, 30]. The increase in PK-11195 binding was correlated with disease progression as assessed by the loss of dopamine D2 receptor binding sites in the striatum. Since most HD is inherited, genetic testing can be used to identify at-risk individuals years before disease onset. In a follow-up study, the same investigators were able to demonstrate that microglial activation is already evident as much as 15 years before onset of overt symptoms which was predicted based on CAG repeat length. The appearance of activated microglia over a decade before disease onset suggests that neuroinflammation is an early event in the disease. Furthermore, higher levels of microglial activation and decreased levels of D2 receptors were associated with a higher probability of developing clinical HD (as determined by onset of symptoms). The findings that neuroinflammation preceded neurodegeneration put the spotlight on microglia and neuroinflammation as a disease biology that had to be more than just a coincidental consequence of disease and the degenerative processes in play.

2.3 Astrocytes in HD

As with microglia, the idea that astrocytes might play a prominent role in the etiology or progression of HD took several years to gain traction even though the expression of HTT in astrocytes was demonstrated soon after the discovery of the gene mutation that caused HD [32, 33]. It was not until much later that genetic studies in mice implicated astrocytes in the pathogenesis of mutant HTT [34–38]. Restriction of mutant HTT expression to select neuronal populations, as opposed to pan-expression, actually resulted in a marked reduction of motor deficits and neuropathology in the striatum [39]. When the mutant HTT transgene was expressed in neurons and astrocytes, progression of disease like symptoms and neuropathology was exacerbated vs. those mice in which expression was restricted to neurons [40, 41]. This suggested that astrocytes, like microglia, are important contributors to neuroinflammation and pathology in HD animal models and likely in patients as well.

Like microglia, astrocytes can respond to danger signals, endogenous and foreign, in a process termed reactive astrogliosis. Their responses are also a continuum of changes that depend on the nature of the insult and signals from other cells in the CNS. These changes can result in changes to tissue structure, scar formation, and altered blood flow. Upon activation, the gene expression profile of astrocytes changes dramatically as does their phenotype and their portfolio of signaling molecules [42]. In animal models of Huntington's disease, mutant HTT expressed in astrocytes can accumulate in their nuclei and decrease the expression of glutamate transporters [35–37]. In these models, researchers demonstrated that the uptake of glutamate as well as the release of CCL5/RANTES and brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) was diminished [43]. While mRNA for the astrocyte-expressed glutamate transporter (EAAT2) was reported to be altered in HD brains in one report [44], another study failed to find any alteration in synaptosomal glutamate transport [45]. While decreased BDNF levels in HD have been largely ascribed to neuronal loss [46], BDNF is also expressed in astrocytes (and microglia) where expression of HTT decreases its release via transcriptional regulation [47]. In support of a role for astrocytic BDNF in HD, targeting BDNF overexpression to astrocytes delayed disease in animal models of HD, suggesting that this may be a therapeutic strategy for disease intervention [48, 49]. BDNF is one among dozens of genes whose transcription is regulated by NF-κB, a transcription factor found throughout the body. NF-κB plays a critical role in both microglia and astrocytes, by positively and negatively regulating transcription of various signaling molecules. For example, NF-κB can increase the transcription of pro-neuroinflammatory genes, such as cytokines, while leading to decreased transcription of neurotrophic factors. One mechanism of activating the NF-κB pathway is via stimulation of the toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4) with lipopolysaccharide (LPS). A recent study demonstrated that two HD mouse models (Hdh(150Q) and R6/2) both responded more robustly to systemic LPS with greater systemic inflammation and by producing more pro-inflammatory cytokines in the brain [50]. The hypothesis that the increased response to LPS was due to enhanced NF-κB activation was supported by observations that activated NF-κB levels were elevated in HD patients and that astrocytes from R6/2 mutant mice express higher IκB kinase (IKK) activity, which prolongs NFκB activation [50]. Similar increases in astrocytic NF-κB levels in mouse models of HD as well as HD patients suggest that enhancement of the NF-κB signaling pathway in astrocytes could contribute to neuroinflammation and HD.

Astrocytes also play a vital role in cholesterol synthesis, transport, and metabolism. Cholesterol is a vital molecule for the CNS, yet it does not cross the BBB and thus has to be synthesized locally. Almost 25 % of a person's cholesterol is within the CNS, and 70 % of that is incorporated in oligodenroglial myelin sheaths enwrapping axons [51]. Lipid imbalance as a potential cause of HD was first proposed in the 1970s but was highly controversial [52–54]. Much later it was demonstrated that expression of mutant HTT reduced the expression of genes involved in cholesterol biosynthesis in vitro and in vivo (R6/2 model) [55, 56]. However, over time dysfunction in the cholesterol synthesis pathway was replicated across 4 different HD rodent models (R6/2, YAC, Hdh^{Q111}, transgenic HD rats) [57–59].

Neurons make cholesterol much less efficiently than glia, but it is an absolute necessity for their survival and ability to function. All glial cells contribute to the overall cholesterol pool in the CNS, but the majority of neuronal cholesterol originates from astrocytes. The ABCA1 transporter on astrocytes loads cholesterol onto ApoE which carries it to neurons (and oligodendrocytes). Neurons have an array of receptors to take up the cholesterol-rich ApoE molecules. It is interesting to note that ApoE4/4 genotype is a significant risk factor for Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease, with deficits in cholesterol transport (potentially due to reduced ability to bind to LRP class of receptors) as one proposed mechanism [60]. Oligodendrocytes (discussed below) also produce cholesterol. If the production of cholesterol is inhibited, myelination cannot occur, causing a profound phenotype, including ataxia and tremor [61]. It is interesting to note that a close relative of ApoE is ApoJ, also known as clusterin. Clusterin plays an important role in complement activation and innate immune responses, raising the question whether cholesterol metabolism and these pathways may have additional roles in neuroinflammation. Thus, cholesterol metabolism and transport is another vital metabolic process connecting the main propagators of neuroinflammation; however, little is known about neuroinflammation-dependent changes in cholesterol in HD.

2.4 Central and Peripheral Cytokines

As mentioned earlier, peripheral inflammation, infection, or disease states can alter the phenotype of microglia in the CNS and, more generally, affect the neuroinflammatory status of the CNS [34]. It is also becoming increasingly clear that the peripheral immune system significantly impacts neurological disease [62, 63]. The first evidence that the immune system may be dysregulated in HD was presented by Lebhuber et al. in 1998 [64]. In their study of 12 patients and 10 controls, they reported increased serum levels of IgA, soluble TNF receptor, soluble IL-2 receptor, neopterin, and complement C3 [64]. Another group showed that chemokines were elevated in the plasma of HD patients [65]. Eotaxin, eotaxin-3, MIP-1β, MCP-1, and MCP-4 were significantly elevated in HD patients. Of these, three (eotaxin-3, macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP)-1β, and eotaxin) correlated with advancing disease stages [65]. Björkqvist and colleagues demonstrated that HD gene carriers had elevated IL-6 levels, on average, 16 years before the predicted onset of clinical symptoms [66]. Interestingly, a more global increase in cytokine transcripts was also detected in the striatum of HD patients [11]. The Björkqvist study also examined the response of monocytes from HD subjects, in order to determine if they might be the source of the elevated cytokines observed in the plasma of patients. The monocytes not only expressed mutant HTT but also release significantly more IL-6 in response to stimulation by lipopolysaccharide. Similar patterns of cytokine release were observed in macrophages and microglia from HD mouse models [66]. Finally, IL-6, IL-10, CXCL1, and interferon-γ were significantly elevated in the serum

of HD vs. wild-type mice but were normal in HD mice receiving a bone marrow transplant from WT mice [67]. Together, these data suggest that there is dysregulation of the peripheral immune system that might parallel the neuroinflammation in the CNS and that, perhaps, this could be a contributing factor to HD pathology.

2.5 Peripheral Immune Cells

The observation that peripheral cytokine release is dysregulated in HD led people to investigate further the role of HTT in immune cells as well as HD. Studies that quantified mutant as well as total HTT protein levels in leukocytes from patients with HD demonstrated robust changes in mutant HTT expression between carriers and noncarriers and also between asymptomatic and symptomatic carriers of the *HTT* mutation in monocytes as well as T and B lymphocytes [68]. The investigators also demonstrated a significant correlation between mutant HTT levels and disease burden scores and caudate atrophy rates in monocytes and T cells in patients with HD. However, total HTT levels in leukocytes were not different between HD patients and controls or between different disease stages within the same patient. In contrast to monocytes and T cells, mutant HTT was not altered in buccal cells between any group, suggesting that the increased expression and dysfunction are specific to at least some cells of the immune system [68]. Chemotaxis was another immune cell function that was determined to be dysregulated by mutant HTT in leukocytes (white blood cells including monocytes, T and B cells, basophils, neutrophils, eosinophils, and dendritic cells) from the HD mice. Leukocytes from mutant HTT mice as well as carriers of the *HTT* mutation had a blunted chemotactic response [69]. Evidence that the peripheral cells could impact the CNS pathology in HD mouse models came from a study in which bone marrow from wild-type mice was transplanted into lethally irradiated transgenic mice (YAC128 and BACHD mice) [67]. While the bone marrow transplant only partially attenuated the hypokinetic and motor deficits in HD mice, the investigators observed increased levels of synapses in the cortex of these mice. This suggests that transplantation of peripheral immune cells could influence some of the pathophysiology in HD models. Interestingly, the group observed that in the brain of irradiated HD mice, many more microglia were positive for Iba1 as well as green fluorescent protein (GFP) than in normal irradiated mice. Since only the transplanted bone marrow cells were GFP positive, the Iba1/GFP double positive cells in the brains of these mice must have come from the periphery. The implication is that more bone marrow-derived cells could migrate into the CNS of irradiated HD mice than in irradiated wild-type mice. Once in the CNS, the bone marrow-derived cells can directly influence neuroinflammation and the pathological processes in mouse models of HD, and perhaps in patients as well [67].

Together, the findings suggest that multiple functions of immune cells are dysregulated by mutant HTT. Furthermore, the dysregulation of immune cell function is

not restricted to a single immune cell lineage, but manifest in the myeloid, lymphoid lineages, as well as yolk sac-derived microglia of the CNS. While the studies do not identify the sequelae of increased mutant HTT in T or B cells, they do raise the question whether or not the increased mutant HTT levels cause T or B cell dysfunction, much like they do in monocytes. Could T and B lymphocytes also contribute to the initiation or progression of HD? Critics of the hypothesis point out that there is no large-scale infiltration of the CNS by T cells as in multiple sclerosis (MS). In MS, it has been demonstrated in animal models as well as the clinic that T cell infiltration into the CNS plays an integral role in the pathophysiology of the disease as illustrated by Tysabri® [70]. In other neurodegenerative diseases such as PD and ALS, evidence supporting a role for T cells in the pathological process is accumulating, even though large T cell infiltrates are generally not observed [71, 72]. Recent studies, however, have demonstrated that T cells patrol the CSF and subarachnoid spaces (and perhaps even the CNS parenchyma), supporting the hypothesis that T cells are able to get into the CNS and potentially respond to antigen presentation and participate or modulate neuroinflammation [73]. The ability of T cells to control parasitic (*Toxoplasma gondii*) infections of the CNS demonstrates not only that T cells patrol the brain parenchyma but that they are able to execute their immunological functions as well. It will be interesting to see if future studies will demonstrate that mutant HTT expression in T cells results in their dysfunction and if this dysfunction contributes to the pathophysiology of HD.

3 Targeting Neuroinflammation in Huntington's Disease

An area of active investigation, not just for HD but all major neurological diseases, is the therapeutic targeting of neuroinflammation. By expanding drug discovery, efforts from the traditional neuron-focused strategies (neuroprotection, neuroregeneration, neurotransmission) to include neuroinflammation greatly increase the diversity and number of targets amenable for therapeutic intervention using small molecules and biologic. Targets, such as toll-like receptors, cytokine and chemokine receptors, purinoceptors, neuro- and glio-transmitter receptors, kinases, glutamate transporters, and catalytic enzymes (proteolytic, reactive oxygen species generators, ATP hydrolyzing), may offer tractable novel approaches to treat HD. Microglia have many of the same receptors or signaling pathways as peripheral monocytes/macrophages. This, unfortunately, is a double-edged sword, in that it is target rich and may present repurposing opportunities but may also potentially result in unwanted side effects mechanistically coupled to the target's role in the peripheral immune system (e.g., increased risk of infection). Astrocytes and oligodendrocytes have the potential advantage that they have less overlap with cells of the immune system, decreasing the risk of unwanted immune-related side effects. Other glial targets, such as neurotransmitter receptors and amino acid transporters, may also be expressed on neurons, raising the possibility of significant adverse neuronal side effects.

Currently, small molecules are the best strategy for treatment of CNS diseases as CNS-penetrant molecules can be designed or selected. While many targets would likely require a biologic as a therapeutic, delivery technologies need to be developed to increase the brain penetration, or the biologics themselves need to be optimized to achieve significant brain penetration. Until these challenges are effectively solved, many promising targets that regulate neuroinflammation will remain intractable (including adhesion molecules, immunoglobulin signaling molecules, and other targets not currently amenable to modulation by small molecules [74]). Finally, as we learn more about the role of peripheral immune cells in HD perhaps, one could target them in the periphery, without the need for a CNS-penetrant agent. Such a therapeutic could alter the phenotype of peripheral cells before they migrate into the CNS. It could also block/augment the ability of peripheral immune cells to migrate into the CNS (depending on if they are desirable or pathological). Precedent for this idea comes through modulation of peripheral immune mechanisms in the treatment of MS.

One area of intensive exploration has focused on the mechanism of action of the antibiotic minocycline, which has been reported to ameliorate neuroinflammation and subsequent pathology in many animal models of neurological disease, including HD models [75]. Experiments using minocycline were believed to target neuroinflammation presumably via inhibition of NF-κB [75, 76]. In contrast, other studies have suggested that minocycline targets caspases and neuronal apoptosis [77, 78]. The actual mechanism of action or the target of minocycline is a matter of ongoing debate and is reviewed elsewhere [79–82]. While minocycline has not been used in a clinical trial for HD, it was tested in numerous other neurological diseases and disorders exhibiting neuroinflammation. Unfortunately, the promising findings failed to translate into the clinic, as the clinical trials to date have largely failed [75].

Another potentially promising therapeutic strategy for HD is to regulate or normalize kynurenine metabolism which can produce both neuroprotective and neurotoxic metabolites. The kynurenine pathway is the primary route of l-tryptophan metabolism and the primary metabolic pathway for the formation of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+) [83]. Several of the metabolites in this pathway have neuroactive properties. (For review, see [84, 85].) Schwarcz and colleagues were the first to suggest that the kynurenine pathway may play a role in the pathogenesis of HD by showing that an intra-striatal injection of quinolinic acid replicates many features of human HD in rodents [86]. Quinolinic acid is an N-methyl-d-aspartate (NMDA) receptor agonist and induces excitotoxicity [87]. Follow-up studies demonstrated that the levels of neurotoxic kynurenine metabolites were elevated in HD patients and mouse models, whereas the levels of neuroprotective metabolites were decreased [85, 88]. A subsequent report demonstrated that cultured microglial cells from the R6/2 HD mouse model synthesized increased levels of neurotoxic kynurenine metabolites [89]. The discovery that genetic ablation of kynurenine 3-monooxygenase (KMO) suppresses HTT-mediated toxicity and the fact that KMO is predominantly expressed in microglia, not neurons, made for a strong argument that microglial kynurenine metabolism might play a significant role in HD [89–91]. Microglial dysregulation of the kynurenine pathway was also the first

example of a potentially non-cell-autonomous mechanism in HD (from a neuronal point of view). KMO thus presents an attractive target for the treatment of HD as evidenced by the number of academic and nonprofit organizations working to develop KMO inhibitors [92].

Another strategy for targeting neuroinflammation is based on activation of the cannabinoid receptor 2 (CB2R) which in the CNS is only expressed on activated microglia [93]. The authors demonstrated the role of CB2Rs in regulating neuroinflammation by knocking out the CB2R in the R6/2 mouse model of HD which resulted in enhanced microglial activation, worsened disease symptoms, and shortened life span. Following injection of the neurotoxin quinolinic acid, edema and loss of medium spiny neurons were also exacerbated in the R6/2 mice lacking CB2Rs as compared to R6/2. Pharmacological activation of CB2R in R6/2 mice with intact CB2R attenuated the microglial activation and loss of medium spiny neurons following quinolinic acid lesioning [94]. The study also demonstrated that a CNS-penetrant CB2R agonist can extend the life span while suppressing motor deficits, synapse loss, and CNS inflammation in a mouse model of HD. Unexpectedly, a non-CNS-penetrant CB2R antagonist had similar effects. Since this compound does not reach the CB2R-expressing microglia in the brain, it suggested that peripheral cells were driving the neuroinflammation and pathology [95]. CB2 agonists were also protective against striatal malonate toxicity, another toxin model of Huntington's disease [96, 97]. While there is some debate about the expression of CB2 in microglial cells in vivo [93], these studies suggest that neuroinflammation in HD may be reduced by pharmacological activation of CB2 receptors.

Currently, there are no disease-modifying treatments for HD, only symptomatic medications. As discussed previously, there are many potentially promising therapeutic targets that could treat the neuroinflammation associated with HD. Even if blocking neuroinflammation in HD only would be able to slow disease progression, but not provide a cure, it would be considerable progress for a disease with currently very limited therapeutic options. While the target space for neuroinflammation in HD is rich, it still needs validation in the clinic. Since neuroinflammation is present in all neurological disease, there is the potential that discovery of a therapeutic that blocks or reduces neuroinflammation in HD may also have efficacy in other devastating neurological diseases.

4 Summary and Conclusion

Neuroinflammation is increasingly being recognized as a biological process that is intimately linked to the pathological cascades underlying HD. While symptoms are a manifestation of neuronal dysfunction or loss, neurons do not live and die in isolation within the CNS. They are in constant contact, not only with each other, but also with astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, and microglia. The polyQ expansions have been well documented to cause neurotoxicity and render neurons more vulnerable to toxic insults, but they have also been shown to alter microglial and astrocytic functions. The finding that microglial activation is increased years before overt

neurodegeneration suggests that neuroinflammation is involved early HD and, at minimum, an important contributor. This is supported by numerous studies showing that immune-related markers are similarly dysregulated in HD as well as the animal models. Furthermore, if these mechanisms are modulated, they result in robust changes in "disease" outcome in the models, suggesting that they also play a significant role in disease. Peripheral immune cells may also affect neuroinflammation upon migration into the CNS or by release of inflammatory mediators that indirectly alter neuroinflammation. While the interplay of these CNS resident and peripheral players presents a daunting complexity, it also provides a wealth of new targets for desperately needed therapeutics.

References

1. Vonsattel JP, DiFiglia M. Huntington disease. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1998;57(5): 369–84.
2. Walker FO. Huntington's disease. Semin Neurol. 2007;27(2):143–50.
3. Rubinsztein DC, Carmichael J. Huntington's disease: molecular basis of neurodegeneration. Expert Rev Mol Med. 2003;5(20):1–21. Epub 2003/10/31.
4. Truant R, Atwal RS, Desmond C, Munsie L, Tran T. Huntington's disease: revisiting the aggregation hypothesis in polyglutamine neurodegenerative diseases. FEBS J. 2008; 275(17):4252–62. Epub 2008/07/22.
5. Lobsiger CS, Cleveland DW. Glial cells as intrinsic components of non-cell-autonomous neurodegenerative disease. Nat Neurosci. 2007;10(11):1355–60. Epub 2007/10/30.
6. Garden GA, Möller T. Microglia biology in health and disease. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2006;1(2):127–37.
7. Raibon E, Todd LM, Moller T. Glial cells in ALS: the missing link? Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am. 2008;19(3):441–59.
8. McGeer PL, McGeer EG, Itagaki S, Mizukawa K. Anatomy and pathology of the basal ganglia. Can J Neurol Sci. 1987;14(3 Suppl):363–72. Epub 1987/08/01.
9. McGeer PL, Itagaki S, McGeer EG. Expression of the histocompatibility glycoprotein HLA-DR in neurological disease. Acta Neuropathol. 1988;76(6):550–7.
10. Möller T. Neuroinflammation in Huntington's disease. J Neural Transm. 2010;117(8):1001–8. Epub 2010/06/11.
11. Silvestroni A, Faull RL, Strand AD, Moller T. Distinct neuroinflammatory profile in postmortem human Huntington's disease. Neuroreport. 2009;20(12):1098–103. Epub 2009/07/11.
12. Hanisch UK. Microglia as a source and target of cytokines. Glia. 2002;40(2):140–55.
13. Hanisch UK, Kettenmann H. Microglia: active sensor and versatile effector cells in the normal and pathologic brain. Nat Neurosci. 2007;10(11):1387–94.
14. Block ML, Zecca L, Hong JS. Microglia-mediated neurotoxicity: uncovering the molecular mechanisms. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2007;8(1):57–69. Epub 2006/12/21.
15. van Rossum D, Hanisch UK. Microglia. Metab Brain Dis. 2004;19(3–4):393–411.
16. Sugama S, Takenouchi T, Cho BP, Joh TH, Hashimoto M, Kitani H. Possible roles of microglial cells for neurotoxicity in clinical neurodegenerative diseases and experimental animal models. Inflamm Allergy Drug Targets. 2009;8(4):277–84. Epub 2009/09/17.
17. Pavese N, Gerhard A, Tai YF, Ho AK, Turkheimer F, Barker RA, et al. Microglial activation correlates with severity in Huntington disease: a clinical and PET study. Neurology. 2006;66(11):1638–43. Epub 2006/06/14.
18. Tai YF, Pavese N, Gerhard A, Tabrizi SJ, Barker RA, Brooks DJ, et al. Microglial activation in presymptomatic Huntington's disease gene carriers. Brain. 2007;130(Pt 7):1759–66. Epub 2007/04/03.

19. Singhrao SK, Neal JW, Morgan BP, Gasque P. Increased complement biosynthesis by microglia and complement activation on neurons in Huntington's disease. Exp Neurol. 1999;159(2): 362–76.
20. Simmons DA, Casale M, Alcon B, Pham N, Narayan N, Lynch G. Ferritin accumulation in dystrophic microglia is an early event in the development of Huntington's disease. Glia. 2007;55(10):1074–84. Epub 2007/06/07.
21. Vonsattel JP, Myers RH, Stevens TJ, Ferrante RJ, Bird ED, Richardson Jr EP. Neuropathological classification of Huntington's disease. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1985;44(6):559–77.
22. Kraft AD, Kaltenbach LS, Lo DC, Harry GJ. Activated microglia proliferate at neurites of mutant huntingtin-expressing neurons. Neurobiol Aging. 2012;33(3):621 e17–33. Epub 2011/04/13.
23. Carroll MC. The complement system in regulation of adaptive immunity. Nat Immunol. 2004;5(10):981–6. Epub 2004/09/30.
24. Hauwel M, Furon E, Canova C, Griffiths M, Neal J, Gasque P. Innate (inherent) control of brain infection, brain inflammation and brain repair: the role of microglia, astrocytes, "protective" glial stem cells and stromal ependymal cells. Brain Res Brain Res Rev. 2005;48(2):220–33. Epub 2005/04/27.
25. Bonifati DM, Kishore U. Role of complement in neurodegeneration and neuroinflammation. Mol Immunol. 2007;44(5):999–1010. Epub 2006/05/16.
26. Griffiths MR, Gasque P, Neal JW. The multiple roles of the innate immune system in the regulation of apoptosis and inflammation in the brain. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2009;68(3):217–26. Epub 2009/02/20.
27. Nolte C, Moller T, Walter T, Kettenmann H. Complement 5a controls motility of murine microglial cells in vitro via activation of an inhibitory G-protein and the rearrangement of the actin cytoskeleton. Neuroscience. 1996;73(4):1091–107.
28. Larkin PB, Muchowski PJ. Genetic deficiency of complement component 3 does not alter disease progression in a mouse model of Huntington's disease. J Huntingtons Dis. 2012; 1(1):107–18. Epub 2012/10/26.
29. Stephan AH, Barres BA, Stevens B. The complement system: an unexpected role in synaptic pruning during development and disease. Annu Rev Neurosci. 2012;35:369–89. Epub 2012/06/22.
30. Tai YF, Pavese N, Gerhard A, Tabrizi SJ, Barker RA, Brooks DJ, et al. Imaging microglial activation in Huntington's disease. Brain Res Bull. 2007;72(2–3):148–51.
31. Hertz L, Zhao Z, Chen Y. The astrocytic GABA(A)/benzodiazepine-like receptor: the Joker receptor for benzodiazepine-mimetic drugs? Recent Pat CNS Drug Discov. 2006;1(1):93–103. Epub 2008/01/29.
32. Li SH, Schilling G, Young 3rd WS, Li XJ, Margolis RL, Stine OC, et al. Huntington's disease gene (IT15) is widely expressed in human and rat tissues. Neuron. 1993;11(5):985–93.
33. Trottier Y, Lutz Y, Stevanin G, Imbert G, Devys D, Cancel G, et al. Polyglutamine expansion as a pathological epitope in Huntington's disease and four dominant cerebellar ataxias. Nature. 1995;378(6555):403–6.
34. Hsiao HY, Chern Y. Targeting glial cells to elucidate the pathogenesis of Huntington's disease. Mol Neurobiol. 2010;41(2–3):248–55. Epub 2010/01/29.
35. Lievens JC, Woodman B, Mahal A, Spasic-Boscovic O, Samuel D, Kerkerian-Le Goff L, et al. Impaired glutamate uptake in the R6 Huntington's disease transgenic mice. Neurobiol Dis. 2001;8(5):807–21. Epub 2001/10/11.
36. Shin JY, Fang ZH, Yu ZX, Wang CE, Li SH, Li XJ. Expression of mutant huntingtin in glial cells contributes to neuronal excitotoxicity. J Cell Biol. 2005;171(6):1001–12.
37. Adachi H, Kume A, Li M, Nakagomi Y, Niwa H, Do J, et al. Transgenic mice with an expanded CAG repeat controlled by the human AR promoter show polyglutamine nuclear inclusions and neuronal dysfunction without neuronal cell death. Hum Mol Genet. 2001;10(10):1039–48. Epub 2001/05/02.
38. Ishiguro H, Yamada K, Sawada H, Nishii K, Ichino N, Sawada M, et al. Age-dependent and tissue-specific CAG repeat instability occurs in mouse knock-in for a mutant Huntington's disease gene. J Neurosci Res. 2001;65(4):289–97. Epub 2001/08/09.

39. Gu X, Andre VM, Cepeda C, Li SH, Li XJ, Levine MS, et al. Pathological cell-cell interactions are necessary for striatal pathogenesis in a conditional mouse model of Huntington's disease. Mol Neurodegener. 2007;2:8.
40. Bradford J, Shin JY, Roberts M, Wang CE, Li XJ, Li S. Expression of mutant huntingtin in mouse brain astrocytes causes age-dependent neurological symptoms. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106(52):22480–5. Epub 2009/12/19.
41. Bradford J, Shin JY, Roberts M, Wang CE, Sheng G, Li S, et al. Mutant huntingtin in glial cells exacerbates neurological symptoms of Huntington disease mice. J Biol Chem. 2010; 285(14):10653–61. Epub 2010/02/11.
42. Sofroniew MV. Molecular dissection of reactive astrogliosis and glial scar formation. Trends Neurosci. 2009;32(12):638–47. Epub 2009/09/29.
43. Chou SY, Weng JY, Lai HL, Liao F, Sun SH, Tu PH, et al. Expanded-polyglutamine huntingtin protein suppresses the secretion and production of a chemokine (CCL5/RANTES) by astrocytes. J Neurosci. 2008;28(13):3277–90. Epub 2008/03/28.
44. Arzberger T, Krampfl K, Leimgruber S, Weindl A. Changes of NMDA receptor subunit (NR1, NR2B) and glutamate transporter (GLT1) mRNA expression in Huntington's disease–an in situ hybridization study. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1997;56(4):440–54. Epub 1997/04/01.
45. Rothstein JD, Martin LJ, Kuncl RW. Decreased glutamate transport by the brain and spinal cord in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 1992;326(22):1464–8. Epub 1992/05/28.
46. Zuccato C, Cattaneo E. Brain-derived neurotrophic factor in neurodegenerative diseases. Nat Rev Neurol. 2009;5(6):311–22. Epub 2009/06/06.
47. Wang L, Lin F, Wang J, Wu J, Han R, Zhu L, et al. Expression of mutant N-terminal huntingtin fragment (htt552-100Q) in astrocytes suppresses the secretion of BDNF. Brain Res. 2012;1449:69–82. Epub 2012/03/14.
48. Giralt A, Friedman HC, Caneda-Ferron B, Urban N, Moreno E, Rubio N, et al. BDNF regulation under GFAP promoter provides engineered astrocytes as a new approach for long-term protection in Huntington's disease. Gene Ther. 2010;17(10):1294–308. Epub 2010/05/14.
49. Arregui L, Benitez JA, Razgado LF, Vergara P, Segovia J. Adenoviral astrocyte-specific expression of BDNF in the striata of mice transgenic for Huntington's disease delays the onset of the motor phenotype. Cell Mol Neurobiol. 2011;31(8):1229–43. Epub 2011/06/18.
50. Hsiao HY, Chen YC, Chen HM, Tu PH, Chern Y. A critical role of astrocyte-mediated nuclear factor-kappaB-dependent inflammation in Huntington's disease. Hum Mol Genet. 2013; 22(9):1826–42. Epub 2013/02/02.
51. Valenza M, Cattaneo E. Emerging roles for cholesterol in Huntington's disease. Trends Neurosci. 2011;34(9):474–86. Epub 2011/07/22.
52. Menkes JH, Hanoch A. Huntington's disease–growth of fibroblast cultures in lipid-deficient medium: a preliminary report. Ann Neurol. 1977;1(5):423–5. Epub 1977/05/01.
53. Barkley DS, Hardiwidjaja S, Menkes JH. Abnormalities in growth of skin fibroblasts of patients with Huntington's disease. Ann Neurol. 1977;1(5):426–30. Epub 1977/05/01.
54. Maltese WA. Cholesterol synthesis in cultured skin fibroblasts from patients with Huntington's disease. Biochem Med. 1984;32(1):144–50. Epub 1984/08/01.
55. Valenza M, Rigamonti D, Goffredo D, Zuccato C, Fenu S, Jamot L, et al. Dysfunction of the cholesterol biosynthetic pathway in Huntington's disease. J Neurosci. 2005;25(43):9932–9. Epub 2005/10/28.
56. Sipione S, Rigamonti D, Valenza M, Zuccato C, Conti L, Pritchard J, et al. Early transcriptional profiles in huntingtin-inducible striatal cells by microarray analyses. Hum Mol Genet. 2002;11(17):1953–65. Epub 2002/08/08.
57. Valenza M, Leoni V, Tarditi A, Mariotti C, Bjorkhem I, Di Donato S, et al. Progressive dysfunction of the cholesterol biosynthesis pathway in the R6/2 mouse model of Huntington's disease. Neurobiol Dis. 2007;28(1):133–42. Epub 2007/08/19.
58. Valenza M, Carroll JB, Leoni V, Bertram LN, Bjorkhem I, Singaraja RR, et al. Cholesterol biosynthesis pathway is disturbed in YAC128 mice and is modulated by huntingtin mutation. Hum Mol Genet. 2007;16(18):2187–98. Epub 2007/07/07.

59. Valenza M, Leoni V, Karasinska JM, Petricca L, Fan J, Carroll J, et al. Cholesterol defect is marked across multiple rodent models of Huntington's disease and is manifest in astrocytes. J Neurosci. 2010;30(32):10844–50. Epub 2010/08/13.
60. Yu C, Youmans KL, LaDu MJ. Proposed mechanism for lipoprotein remodelling in the brain. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2010;1801(8):819–23. Epub 2010/05/18.
61. Saher G, Brugger B, Lappe-Siefke C, Mobius W, Tozawa R, Wehr MC, et al. High cholesterol level is essential for myelin membrane growth. Nat Neurosci. 2005;8(4):468–75. Epub 2005/03/29.
62. Perry VH. Contribution of systemic inflammation to chronic neurodegeneration. Acta Neuropathol. 2010;120(3):277–86. Epub 2010/07/21.
63. Rezai-Zadeh K, Gate D, Town T. CNS infiltration of peripheral immune cells: D-Day for neurodegenerative disease? J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2009;4(4):462–75. Epub 2009/08/12.
64. Leblhuber F, Walli J, Jellinger K, Tilz GP, Widner B, Laccone F, et al. Activated immune system in patients with Huntington's disease. Clin Chem Lab Med. 1998;36(10):747–50. Epub 1998/12/16.
65. Wild E, Magnusson A, Lahiri N, Krus U, Orth M, Tabrizi SJ, et al. Abnormal peripheral chemokine profile in Huntington's disease. PLoS Curr. 2011;3, RRN1231. Epub 2011/08/10.
66. Bjorkqvist M, Wild EJ, Thiele J, Silvestroni A, Andre R, Lahiri N, et al. A novel pathogenic pathway of immune activation detectable before clinical onset in Huntington's disease. J Exp Med. 2008;205(8):1869–77. Epub 2008/07/16.
67. Kwan W, Magnusson A, Chou A, Adame A, Carson MJ, Kohsaka S, et al. Bone marrow transplantation confers modest benefits in mouse models of Huntington's disease. J Neurosci. 2012;32(1):133–42. Epub 2012/01/06.
68. Weiss A, Trager U, Wild EJ, Grueninger S, Farmer R, Landles C, et al. Mutant huntingtin fragmentation in immune cells tracks Huntington's disease progression. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(10):3731–6. Epub 2012/09/22.
69. Menalled LB, Kudwa AE, Miller S, Fitzpatrick J, Watson-Johnson J, Keating N, et al. Comprehensive behavioral and molecular characterization of a new knock-in mouse model of Huntington's disease: zQ175. PLoS One. 2012;7(12):e49838. Epub 2013/01/04.
70. Broux B, Markovic-Plese S, Stinissen P, Hellings N. Pathogenic features of CD4+CD28- T cells in immune disorders. Trends Mol Med. 2012;18(8):446–53. Epub 2012/07/13.
71. Gendelman HE, Appel SH. Neuroprotective activities of regulatory T cells. Trends Mol Med. 2011;17(12):687–8. Epub 2011/10/15.
72. Henkel JS, Beers DR, Wen S, Rivera AL, Toennis KM, Appel JE, et al. Regulatory T-lymphocytes mediate amyotrophic lateral sclerosis progression and survival. EMBO Mol Med. 2013;5(1):64–79. Epub 2012/11/13.
73. Ousman SS, Kubes P. Immune surveillance in the central nervous system. Nat Neurosci. 2012;15(8):1096–101. Epub 2012/07/28.
74. Hoarau JJ, Krejbich-Trotot P, Jaffar-Bandjee MC, Das T, Thon-Hon GV, Kumar S, et al. Activation and control of CNS innate immune responses in health and diseases: a balancing act finely tuned by neuroimmune regulators (NIReg). CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets. 2011;10(1):25–43. Epub 2010/12/15.
75. Plane JM, Shen Y, Pleasure DE, Deng W. Prospects for minocycline neuroprotection. Arch Neurol. 2010;67(12):1442–8. Epub 2010/08/11.
76. Harry GJ, Kraft AD. Neuroinflammation and microglia: considerations and approaches for neurotoxicity assessment. Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol. 2008;4(10):1265–77. Epub 2008/09/19.
77. Stack EC, Smith KM, Ryu H, Cormier K, Chen M, Hagerty SW, et al. Combination therapy using minocycline and coenzyme Q10 in R6/2 transgenic Huntington's disease mice. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2006;1762(3):373–80.
78. Chen M, Ona VO, Li M, Ferrante RJ, Fink KB, Zhu S, et al. Minocycline inhibits caspase-1 and caspase-3 expression and delays mortality in a transgenic mouse model of Huntington disease. Nat Med. 2000;6(7):797–801.

79. Blum D, Chtarto A, Tenenbaum L, Brotchi J, Levivier M. Clinical potential of minocycline for neurodegenerative disorders. Neurobiol Dis. 2004;17(3):359–66. Epub 2004/12/02.
80. Kim HS, Suh YH. Minocycline and neurodegenerative diseases. Behav Brain Res. 2009;196(2):168–79. Epub 2008/11/04.
81. Mievis S, Levivier M, Communi D, Vassart G, Brotchi J, Ledent C, et al. Lack of minocycline efficiency in genetic models of Huntington's disease. Neuromolecular Med. 2007;9(1):47–54. Epub 2006/11/23.
82. Orsucci D, Calsolaro V, Mancuso M, Siciliano G. Neuroprotective effects of tetracyclines: molecular targets, animal models and human disease. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets. 2009;8(3):222–31. Epub 2009/07/16.
83. Moroni F. Tryptophan metabolism and brain function: focus on kynurenine and other indole metabolites. Eur J Pharmacol. 1999;375(1–3):87–100. Epub 1999/08/12.
84. Amori L, Guidetti P, Pellicciari R, Kajii Y, Schwarcz R. On the relationship between the two branches of the kynurenine pathway in the rat brain in vivo. J Neurochem. 2009;109(2): 316–25. Epub 2009/02/20.
85. Schwarcz R, Guidetti P, Sathyasaikumar KV, Muchowski PJ. Of mice, rats and men: revisiting the quinolinic acid hypothesis of Huntington's disease. Prog Neurobiol. 2010;90(2):230–45. Epub 2009/04/28.
86. Schwarcz R, Whetsell Jr WO, Mangano RM. Quinolinic acid: an endogenous metabolite that produces axon-sparing lesions in rat brain. Science. 1983;219(4582):316–8. Epub 1983/01/21.
87. Schwarcz R, Pellicciari R. Manipulation of brain kynurenines: glial targets, neuronal effects, and clinical opportunities. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2002;303(1):1–10. Epub 2002/09/18.
88. Giorgini F. The kynurenine pathway and microglia: implications for pathology and therapy in Huntington's disease. In: Outerio TF, editor. Protein misfolding in biology and disease. Kerala: Transworld Research Network; 2008. p. 231–55.
89. Giorgini F, Moller T, Kwan W, Zwilling D, Wacker JL, Hong S, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibition modulates kynurenine pathway activation in yeast, microglia, and mice expressing a mutant huntingtin fragment. J Biol Chem. 2008;283(12):7390–400. Epub 2007/12/15.
90. Giorgini F, Guidetti P, Nguyen Q, Bennett SC, Muchowski PJ. A genomic screen in yeast implicates kynurenine 3-monooxygenase as a therapeutic target for Huntington disease. Nat Genet. 2005;37(5):526–31. Epub 2005/04/05.
91. Guillemin GJ, Smith DG, Smythe GA, Armati PJ, Brew BJ. Expression of the kynurenine pathway enzymes in human microglia and macrophages. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2003;527: 105–12. Epub 2004/06/23.
92. Schwarcz R. The kynurenine pathway of tryptophan degradation as a drug target. Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2004;4(1):12–7. Epub 2004/03/17.
93. Stella N. Endocannabinoid signaling in microglial cells. Neuropharmacology. 2009;56 Suppl 1:244–53. Epub 2008/08/30.
94. Palazuelos J, Aguado T, Pazos MR, Julien B, Carrasco C, Resel E, et al. Microglial CB2 cannabinoid receptors are neuroprotective in Huntington's disease excitotoxicity. Brain. 2009;132(Pt 11):3152–64. Epub 2009/10/07.
95. Bouchard J, Truong J, Bouchard K, Dunkelberger D, Desrayaud S, Moussaoui S, et al. Cannabinoid receptor 2 signaling in peripheral immune cells modulates disease onset and severity in mouse models of Huntington's disease. J Neurosci. 2012;32(50):18259–68. Epub 2012/12/15.
96. Valdeolivas S, Satta V, Pertwee RG, Fernandez-Ruiz J, Sagredo O. Sativex-like combination of phytocannabinoids is neuroprotective in malonate-lesioned rats, an inflammatory model of Huntington's disease: role of CB(1) and CB(2) receptors. ACS Chem Neurosci. 2012;3(5): 400–6. Epub 2012/08/04.
97. Sagredo O, Gonzalez S, Aroyo I, Pazos MR, Benito C, Lastres-Becker I, et al. Cannabinoid CB2 receptor agonists protect the striatum against malonate toxicity: relevance for Huntington's disease. Glia. 2009;57(11):1154–67. Epub 2008/12/31.

Neuroinflammation and Immune Regulation in Ischemic Stroke: Identification of New Pharmacological Targets

Mario Di Napoli, Craig J. Smith, Stephen J. Hopkins, Aurel Popa-Wagner, Ana Maria Buga, and Mark Slevin

Abstract Stroke is among the most common diseases of advanced age and is becoming a steadily increasing financial healthcare problem in the industrialized world with the increasing longevity and aging of the population. The incidence of ischemic stroke is highest in the elderly population, representing one of the most common causes of disability and mortality worldwide. Over the past decades, a tremendous amount of research has been undertaken into developing effective therapeutic strategies for the treatment of acute stroke. Unfortunately, many neuroprotective agents

This chapter was originated as a lecture given at the tenth Summer School of Neuroscience, University of Catania, in July 2012.

M. Di Napoli, M.D. (✉)
Neurological Service, San Camillo de' Lellis General Hospital, Rieti, Italy

Neurological Section, SMDN—Center for Cardiovascular Medicine and Cerebrovascular Disease Prevention, Sulmona (AQ), Italy

Department of Medicine for the Elderly, Mansionhouse Unit, Victoria Infirmary, Glasgow G41 3DX, UK
e-mail: mariodinapoli@katamail.com

C.J. Smith • S.J. Hopkins
Vascular and Stroke Research Centre, Manchester Academic Health Science Centre, Salford Royal NHS Foundation Trust, Clinical Sciences Building, Salford, UK

A. Popa-Wagner
Molecular Psychiatry, Department of Psychiatry, University of Medicine, Rostock, Germany

A.M. Buga
Molecular Psychiatry, Department of Psychiatry, University of Medicine, Rostock, Germany

Department of Functional Sciences, University of Medicine, Craiova, Romania

M. Slevin
School of Healthcare Science, Manchester Metropolitan University, John Dalton Building, Manchester, UK

Institut Català de Ciències Cardiovasculars Hospital de la Santa Creu i Sant Pau, Pavelló del Convent Sant Antoni Maria Claret, Barcelona, Spain

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_11, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

that have shown successful results in treating animal models of acute stroke have failed to translate into clinical treatments. Only tissue plasminogen activator is currently licensed for use in the treatment of acute ischemic stroke. Increasing evidence shows that the central nervous system and the immune system interact in complex ways, and better insight into these interactions may be relevant to the treatment of patients with stroke and other forms of central nervous system injury. However, during recent years, promising findings suggest that systemic inflammation and neuroinflammation are central features in cerebrovascular disease. Atherosclerosis, autoimmune disease, and physiological stressors, such as infection or surgery, may be a risk factor for the initial development of cerebral ischemia. In addition, the immune system actively participates in the pathophysiological processes occurring during an ischemic stroke. Thrombosis and hypoxia trigger an intravascular inflammatory cascade which elicits an inflammatory response in the injured brain that is accompanied by a marked local inflammatory reaction that is initiated by ischemia- or hematoma-induced expression of cytokines, adhesion molecules, and other inflammatory mediators, including prostanoids, extracellular proteases, reactive oxygen species, and nitric oxide, leading to the accumulation of inflammatory cells, such as leukocytes and microglia, which is further augmented by the innate immune response to cellular damage occurring in the parenchyma. Many of these compounds are known to promote and sustain inflammatory responses at local and systemic level, producing a neuroinflammatory response and a systemic acute-phase response. The acute-phase inflammatory response after stroke is a reflection of an unspecific systemic inflammatory response syndrome. Classic acute-phase reactants and body temperature are also modified in stroke and may be useful in the prediction of events and outcome and as therapeutic targets. The activation of innate immunity after stroke sets the stage for an adaptive immune response directed against brain antigens. The pathogenic significance of adaptive immunity and its long-term effects on the postischemic brain remains unclear, but it cannot be ruled out that a persistent autoimmune response to brain antigens has deleterious and long-lasting consequences, such as the development of poststroke dementia. This immune activation causes secondary tissue injury, but it is unclear whether modulating the acute immune response to stroke can produce clinical benefits. Better understanding of the role of the postischemic-induced inflammatory response and its potential for modulation might have profound implications for patient treatment. Preclinical studies suggest that interventions that are aimed at attenuating such inflammation reduce the progression of brain damage that occurs during the late stages of cerebral ischemia. In particular, strategies that block the activity of inflammation-related enzymes reduce ischemic damage with an extended therapeutic window. Although, clinical trials using anti-inflammatory strategies did not show benefit in patients with ischemic stroke, there is a strong rationale for continuing to explore the efficacy of anti-inflammatory therapies in the treatment of the late stages of cerebral ischemia acting more on the modulation of these later events than targeting of specific steps in the ischemic cascade.

Keywords Cerebral ischemia • Neuroinflammation • Adaptive immunity • Innate immunity • Danger-associated molecular pattern molecules (DAMPs) • C-Reactive protein • Hypothermia

Abbreviations

AD	Alzheimer's disease
ANXA1	Annexin A1
APC	Antigen-presenting cells
ATP	Adenosine triphosphate
BBB	Blood–brain barrier
CBF	Cerebral blood flow
CIDS	CNS injury-induced immunodepression
CMV	Cytomegalovirus
CNS	Central nervous system
CRP	C-reactive protein
DAMPs	Danger-associated molecular pattern molecules
DC	Dendritic cells
EC	Endothelial cells
Glu	Glutamate
HMGB1	High-mobility group box 1
HPA	Hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal
HSV	Herpes simplex virus
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
IGF-1	Insulin-like growth factor 1
IFN	Interferon
IL-1β	Interleukin-1β
IL-1Ra	Interleukin-1 receptor antagonist
I/R	Ischemia/reperfusion
LPS	Bacterial lipopolysaccharide
MBP	Myelin basic protein
MCs	Mast cells
MHC	Major histocompatibility complex
MMP	Matrix metalloproteinases
MTDL	Multi-target-directed ligands
NK	Natural killer cells
NKT	Natural killer T cells
NO	Nitric oxide
NPCs	Neural precursor cells
PNS	Parasympathetic nervous system
ROS	Reactive oxygen species
RTL	Recombinant T-cell receptor ligand
SNS	Sympathetic nervous system

TBI	Traumatic brain injury
Th1	T helper type 1
TLRs	Toll-like receptors
TNF	Tumor necrosis factor
tPA	Tissue plasminogen activator
Treg	T regulatory
UTIs	Urinary tract infections
UTP	Uridine triphosphate
VEGF	Vascular endothelial growth factor

1 Introduction

Stroke is the second leading cause of mortality and leading cause of adult disability worldwide [1]. As 80 % of survivors remain disabled and our society ages, the socioeconomic burden of stroke will increase further. Although progress has been made in prevention with a reduction in stroke incidence and mortality, and the introduction of specialized stroke units has improved the functional outcome of stroke victims [2], no new treatment for acute ischemic stroke has made it from bench to bedside since tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) was introduced in 1996 [3]. Intravenous tPA can only be administered within the first 4.5 h following onset of ischemic stroke, and only 5–20 % are eligible, despite admission to hospital in a timely manner [4]. Moreover, circumstantial evidence suggests potentially neurotoxic effects of tPA, by activating matrix metalloproteinases (MMP) [5] or excitotoxicity in experimental models [6], and intracerebral hemorrhage is a significant complication [7]. Most experimental therapeutic approaches have focused on specific pathogenic mechanisms causing ischemic injury, such as excitotoxicity, oxidative stress, inflammation, or apoptosis [8]. These experimental treatments have failed in large clinical trials, generating debate about the feasibility of neuroprotection in stroke therapy [8]. There are several possible reasons why the previous approaches were not successful, at the level of both preclinical development and clinical trials (Table 1) [9, 10]. Therefore, translational stroke research is at a crossroads requiring a reevaluation of traditional approaches and the development of a new conceptual framework to guide therapy [11].

In this context, there is much to learn about inflammation as a key factor in injury and repair processes following cerebral ischemia, which remains a target for developing new therapies. Emerging evidence also suggests that inflammation preceding stroke contributes to stroke risk, stroke onset, and extent of injury. The elements of the immune system are involved in all stages of the ischemic cascade, from the acute intravascular events triggered by the interruption of the blood supply to the parenchymal processes leading to brain damage and the ensuing tissue repair. In response to cerebral ischemia, the brain, through the autonomic nervous and neuroendocrine systems, exerts a potent suppressive effect on immune activation, which may increase susceptibility to intercurrent infections, which are major determinants of stroke morbidity and mortality. Therefore, the immune system is closely related

Table 1 Limitations of clinical trials in stroke [10]

Limitations
Failure to apply basic principles of immunology
Inadequate understanding of brain injury mechanisms
Exacerbation of systemic effect
Exacerbation of preexisting infection or inflammation
Failure to aquire an adequate preclinical dataset to translate experiment to clinical trial design
Failure to translate observations from phase II studies to phase III studies
Use of novel trial design elements not previously or adequately tested
Failure to adequately validate outcome measures to be used
Failure to appreciate alternative hypotheses
Conflict of interest
Failure of the fundamental hypothesis

to critical events determining the fate of the ischemic brain and the survival of stroke patients. This chapter reviews the central and peripheral inflammatory responses to cerebral ischemia, considering the balance between pro- and anti-inflammatory pathways and the prospects for the development of therapies.

2 Is Inflammation a Stroke Risk Factor or a Trigger?

A stroke risk is a personal characteristic that increases the propensity to have a stroke in someone with that characteristic when compared to someone without [12]. Some risk factors cannot be modified, other risk factors are modifiable, and their correction reduces the chance of having a stroke. The activation of the immune system may increase the risk of stroke. Numerous prospective population-based investigations demonstrated a correlation between levels of inflammatory biomarkers [such as white blood cell count, fibrinogen, D-dimer, and C-reactive protein (CRP)] and the risk of incident and recurrent stroke [13]. These observations suggest that inflammation may have a causal role in vascular injury and subsequent stroke, which would open the door for immunomodulatory agents as new tools to prevent stroke in these patients. However, observational data are notoriously prone to confounding, and animal models often do not apply well to humans. Clearly, a more detailed understanding of the complex relationship between inflammation and stroke is required to better assess the feasibility of immunomodulation as a potential tool for stroke prevention.

2.1 How Does Inflammation Increase the Propensity to Stroke?

Inflammation is a stepwise process that is fundamentally designed to enhance the resistance of the organism to infections and to lead to tissue repair after various forms of injury. Atherosclerosis, the pathological process underlying the majority of

ischemic stroke in humans, is a peculiar form of inflammation triggered by cholesterol-rich lipoproteins and other noxious factors such as cigarette smoking, diabetes mellitus, and hypertension [14]. Inflammation is the dominant process in atherosclerotic lesion formation, characterized by the accumulation of foam cells, macrophages loaded with phagocytozed lipids, and the formation of a cellular lipid core (high cholesterol ester content) that weaken the arterial wall and make atheroma prone to rupture [15]. The proliferation and accumulation of smooth muscle cells is also typical and probably secondary to the destabilization and destruction of the media layer of arterial wall. It alters vascular structure by promoting stiffening of arteries and by inducing narrowing, thickening, and tortuosity of arterioles and capillaries. It contributes to arterial remodeling with smooth muscle cell migration and proliferation with abnormal angiogenesis and destabilization of the arterial wall [16]. In the brain, these morphological changes are often associated with reductions in resting cerebral blood flow (CBF) and marked alterations in CBF regulation [17]. Vascular risk factors that impair the structure and function of cerebral blood vessels and associated cells (neurovascular unit) [18] act by vascular oxidative stress and inflammation, impairing vital adaptive mechanisms and reducing brain perfusion. Endothelial dysfunction and inflammation, microvascular disease, and macrovascular disease affect cerebral hemodynamics. Injury to the neurovascular unit alters CBF regulation, depletes vascular reserves, disrupts the blood–brain barrier (BBB), and reduces the brain's repair potential, effects that amplify the brain dysfunction and damage exerted by incident ischemia and coexisting neurodegeneration [18, 19]. The ability of the endothelium to regulate microvascular flow is compromised, while the increase in blood flow evoked by neural activity is suppressed, resulting in a mismatch between the brain's energy supply and demand [20].

These vascular alterations increase the brain's vulnerability to ischemia after arterial occlusion because they compromise the development of collateral flow which is vital to the survival of the ischemic perinfarct zone. In addition to their vascular effects, both chronic and acute systemic inflammation may enhance the intrinsic susceptibility of brain cells to injury. In mice, acute [21, 22] and chronic peripheral infections [23, 24] exacerbate ischemic brain damage, which is associated with delayed resolution of brain inflammation and augmented microvascular dysfunction after stroke, amplifying the tissue damage produced by ischemia, although the biological bases of this effect are not well understood [25, 26].

2.2 How Does Inflammation Alter Cerebral Blood Vessels?

Among potential proinflammatory mediators of atherosclerosis and stroke, infection remains one of the most plausible, although controversial, causes [27–29]. Infections may contribute to vascular risk in at least two ways [30]. First, infections could serve as risk factors through long-term effects on the vascular wall much like conventional risk factors such as diabetes or hypertension. Acute infections, alternatively, could contribute to short-term stroke risk (i.e., as a stroke trigger). Many organisms, including bacteria and viruses, have been associated with

atherosclerosis and stroke risk with regard to infection serving as a chronic risk factor [31], particularly respiratory tract infections. Case–control and prospective studies indicate that chronic infections, such as periodontitis, chronic bronchitis, and infection with *Helicobacter pylori*, *Chlamydia pneumoniae*, or cytomegalovirus (CMV), herpes simplex virus (HSV), and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), might increase stroke risk, although considerable variation exists in the results of these studies, and methodological issues regarding serological results remain unresolved [31, 32]. However, the inconsistent results from these studies are probably a good indication that if infection plays a role, it is more likely to be in a cumulative fashion.

The aggregate burden of chronic and/or past infections rather than any one single infectious disease is associated with the risk of stroke [33, 34]. According to this hypothesis, infections contribute to the overall inflammatory milieu of the vessel lining, together with other risk factors, and individuals with the greatest exposure to different infections throughout life are most likely to develop atherosclerosis and stroke. It is also likely that individuals with a more robust inflammatory response due to polymorphisms in infection-response genes are also more likely to show vascular changes related to infection. Finally, it is plausible that more sophisticated measures of infectious burden may have a role in assessing risk of vascular disease associated with infections. Past exposure to common infections may contribute to atherosclerosis by exacerbating innate immune responses and inflammation. Future studies are needed to validate these and other approaches to measuring infectious burden, define optimal measures of infectious burden, and elucidate host and other environmental factors that modify the risk of vascular disease associated with common infections.

2.3 Inflammation as Stroke Trigger

Although the factors precipitating the ischemic event cannot be established in most instances, stroke has been associated with infectious episodes occurring within the previous 2 weeks in case–control studies [33, 35, 36]. Precisely how systemic infections exert their effect remains unclear [37]. Exacerbation of vascular inflammation and activation of the coagulation cascade are likely to play a role [38]. The added vascular dysfunction and blood clotting abnormalities, superimposed on those induced by stroke risk factors, could precipitate vascular occlusion. This view is supported by the fact that acute stroke often occurs in the setting of increased circulating leukocytes, and elevated plasma markers of systemic inflammation and vascular activation, which also predict a poor outcome [37, 38]. The identification of a short-term state of elevated stroke risk after acute infection could have direct therapeutic implications. For example, increased doses of antiplatelet agents or statins may be warranted during times of fever or infection when benefits may outweigh risks of dose-related side effects. In addition, the period during and soon after hospitalization for infection could constitute a “treatable moment” during which patients can be evaluated for cardiovascular risk and standard preventive strategies instituted.

3 Phases and Players of Ischemic Neuroinflammation

Ischemic strokes are characterized by the occlusion of a blood vessel due to a thrombus or embolus. The location and the size of the eventual infarct vary, depending on the arterial territory, whether reperfusion is established, and extent of collaterals. After the onset of cerebral ischemia, two main regions of damage can be defined according to metabolic parameters and CBF thresholds [39]. The ischemic core, characterized by profound hypoperfusion (CBF reduced to less than 12 ml/100 g/min), is defined by almost complete energy failure, resulting in necrosis. The ischemic penumbra is less critically hypoperfused (CBF maintained approximately 30 ml/100 g/min), and metabolic activity persists in this region, particularly if reperfusion can be restored quickly. The penumbra is therefore the principal target for reperfusion/neuroprotective therapy and can remain potentially viable for up to 48 h in patients.

3.1 Temporal Kinetics of the Different Mechanisms of Ischemic Neurodegeneration

In simple terms, three phases of infarct progression can be characterized (Fig. 1) [39, 40]. The acute phase starts within minutes of stroke onset. Interruption of blood flow reduces the supply of oxygen and glucose that enable the brain to generate the adenosine triphosphate (ATP) needed to support its energy demands [41].

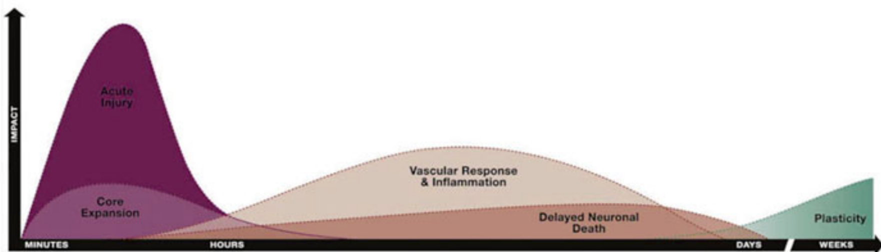


Fig. 1 The sequence of mechanisms involved in neuronal cell death following cerebral ischemia. The occlusion of a blood vessel due to a thrombus or embolus in the affected brain region induces an acute injury phase, characterized by excitotoxicity and increased free radical production. Hours to days after ischemia, an inflammatory response occurs, characterized by an increase in cytokine release and infiltration of neutrophils and leukocytes, with damage to the extracellular matrix, the blood–brain barrier, and a later phase of cell toxicity. At later stages, activated signaling cascades and transcription events by these initial mechanisms cause further tissue damage progression and induce cell death via apoptosis. A plasticity response, permitting spontaneous recovery following stroke, is also mounted following injury and involves the birth of new neurons, migration of stem cells, and the sprouting of existing fibers to form new connections

After focal ischemia, this energy deficit is most severe in areas with the lowest residual flow (ischemic core), wherein cell death (necrosis) occurs rapidly [41]. In areas of less severe ischemia (ischemic penumbra), the decrease in CBF perturbs ionic homeostasis, with an increase in intracellular calcium concentrations, and stimulates glutamate release, causing excitotoxicity and spreading depression throughout. Water shifts to the intracellular space due to osmotic gradients causing cytotoxic edema. The resulting cytotoxic edema can influence reperfusion negatively, by increasing intracranial pressure and vascular compression, potentially resulting in herniation. Generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS), which may be increased following rapid reperfusion, can damage membranes, mitochondria, and DNA, leading to misfolding of proteins and enzyme damage [41]. Reperfusion, while considered a key process to limit the evolution of infarction, may exacerbate neuronal injury through increased production of ROS and by delivering proinflammatory cells and mediators to the site of evolving injury [42]. In the subacute phase (hours to a few days after ischemia), an apoptotic and neuroinflammatory response develops, accompanied by BBB damage with interstitial tissue breakdown as a result of increased proteolytic enzyme release and activation and evolution of vasogenic edema [43]. Finally, in the chronic phase, which can last up to some months after stroke, repair and regeneration determine the extent to which neuronal function can be restored [39, 40].

3.2 Inflammation and Microvasculature: Cross Talk During Brain Ischemia

The inflammatory process begins in the intravascular compartment, immediately after arterial occlusion. The cerebral microvasculature rapidly displays multiple dynamic responses to focal ischemia including the breakdown of the permeability barrier of primary endothelial cells (EC), transudation of plasma, loss of EC and astrocyte integrin receptors, loss of their matrix ligands, expression of members of several MMP families, and the appearance of receptors associated with angiogenesis and neovascularization [44]. The ensuing hypoxia, changes in shear stress, and production of ROS trigger the coagulation cascade and lead to the activation of complement, platelets, and EC [42, 45, 46]. Ischemia triggers inflammatory signaling with intravascular and parenchymal accumulation of leukocytes [42]. Oxidative stress in EC reduces the bioavailability of nitric oxide (NO). Intravascular formation of fibrin traps platelets and leukocytes leading to microvascular occlusions [47–49]. While leukocyte infiltration into the ischemic brain is detrimental, leukocyte accumulation in the microvasculature was shown to be one of the many factors implicated in reduced reperfusion [50]. Platelet–leukocyte aggregates also contribute to microvessel occlusion and no-reflow phenomenon after reperfusion [50].

Table 2 Mediators of postischemic inflammation and their producing cells [42]

Initiation non-transcriptional (*cell type*)	Amplification transcriptional (*cell type*)	Resolution transcriptional (*cell type*)
Adhesion molecules	Adhesion molecules	Growth factors
P-selectin (*EC, PLT*)	ICAM1, VCAM1, P-selectin, E-selectin, Mac-1, VLA-1 (EC, Leuk, PVM, MG, AG)	BDNF, EPO, FGF, G-CSF, GDNF, HB-EGF, IGF-1, NGF, VEGF (*MG, AG, PVM, Macr, EC, Neu*)
Cytokines	Cytokines	Cytokines
IL-1β (*MG, PVM, MC*) IL-1α (*PLT*) TNF (*MC*)	IL-1, IL-6, IL-10, IL-17, IL-20, TNF (*EC, PVM, MG, AG, Neu*)	TGFβ, IL-10, IL-17, IL-23 (*T cells, MG, Macr, AG*)
Chemokines	Chemokines	
CCL5 (RANTES), CXCL4, CXCL7 (*PLT*) CX3CL1 (fractalkine) (*Neu*)	CCL2 (MCP-1), CCL3 (MIP-1α), CCL5 (RANTES), CXCL2/3 (MIP2), CXCL8 (IL-8) (*EC, PVM, MG, AG, Neu*)	
Proteases	Proteases	Proteases
Elastase, MMP8, MMP9, MT6-MMP (*Leuk*) Clotting factors (*Circ*) Complement (*Circ, EC, AG, Neu*)	MMP2, MMP9 (*EC, Leuk*) Complement (*Circ, EC, AG, Neu*)	MMP9 (*AG, Neu*) Complement (*Circ, EC, AG, Neu*)
Small molecules	Others	Small molecules
Prostanoids, leukotrienes (*EC,PLT,MG, Neu*) ATP (*Circ, Neu*) Radicals (*EC, PLT, Leuk, PVM, MG, Neu*)	iNOS (*MG, Leuk, EC*) COX-2 (*Neu, MG, Leuk, EC*) LOX (*Neu, Leuk*) PTGES (*Neu, MG, Leuk, EC*) NADPH oxidase (*MG, Leuk*)	Cyclopentenones prostaglandins Lipoxins Docosanoids (resolvins, protectins)

AG astroglia, *Circ* plasma, *EC* endothelial cells, *Leuk* leukocytes, *Macr* macrophages, *MC* mast cells, *MG* microglia, *Neu* neurons, *PLT* platelets, *PVM* perivascular macrophages, *ATP* adenosine triphosphate, *BDNF* brain-derived growth factor, *COX-2* cyclooxygenase-2, *EPO* erythropoietin, *FGF* fibroblast growth factor, *G-CSF* granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, *GDNF* glial cell-derived neurotrophic factor, *HB-EGF* heparin-binding epidermal growth factor-like growth factor, *ICAM1* intercellular adhesion molecule 1, *IGF-1* insulin-like growth factor 1, *IL* interleukin, *iNOS* inducible nitric oxide synthase, *LOX* lipoxygenase, *Mac-1* macrophage-1 antigen, *MIP* macrophage inflammatory protein, *MMP* matrix metalloproteinase, *NGF* nerve growth factor, *PTGES* prostaglandin E2 synthase-1, *RANTES* regulated upon activation, normally T expressed, and presumably secreted, *TGFβ* transforming growth factor-β, *TNF* tumor necrosis factor, *VCAM1* vascular adhesion molecule 1, *VEGF* vascular endothelial growth factor, *VLA-1* very late activation antigen-1

3.3 Early Phase: Vascular Events Triggered by Stroke

Within minutes after ischemia, the adhesion molecule P-selectin is translocated to the surface membrane of platelets and EC, and proinflammatory signals are rapidly generated (Table 2) [42]. Complement is activated and arachidonic acid metabolites are released. In the vascular wall, upregulation of E- and P-selectin on EC provides a platform for low-affinity leukocyte binding through interaction with sialyl Le^x

moieties of glycoproteins expressed on leukocytes (PSGL-1), while stronger adhesion is obtained after endothelial expression of ICAM-1 interacting with leukocyte β2 integrins (LFA-1 and Mac-1) [51]. Loss of NO promotes vasoconstriction and enhances leukocyte and platelet aggregation [52]. Upregulation of additional adhesion molecules promotes the binding of circulating leukocytes. The trafficking of inflammatory cells into the perivascular space is facilitated by the downregulation of junctional proteins that maintain the integrity of the endothelial lining and the BBB and by proteases, including MMP, that are also expressed in vascular cells and released by perivascular macrophages [53]. MMP activation further contributes to BBB breakdown and matrix proteolysis facilitating leukocyte extravasation [54], while chemotactic complement subunits (C5a), acting on mast cell complement receptors (CD88), leads to degranulation and release of histamine and proteases in the perivascular space, contributing to BBB leakiness [55–58]. Oxidative stress and induction of inflammatory mediators also contribute to permeability of the BBB. Further signals to guide leukocyte migration across the vessel wall are produced by mast cells and perivascular macrophages, secreting cytokines, such as tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and interleukin-1β (IL-1β), which in turn recruit and promote the infiltration of more leukocytes, via induction of chemokines and adhesion molecules [59, 60].

ATP is also released by vascular cells and blood cells and may promote intravascular coagulation and platelet aggregation [61]. In the brain parenchyma, within minutes after ischemia, injured cells release purines [ATP, uridine triphosphate (UTP)], as a result of neuronal and glial depolarization or escape through damaged plasma membranes [62–64]. High parenchymal ATP levels activate P_{2X7} receptors in microglia and act as early proinflammatory signals leading to the production of proinflammatory mediators (Table 2) activating microglia that develop many characteristics of macrophages (i.e., amoeboid morphology, migratory capacity, phagocytosis, and major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II-restricted antigen presentation) [61]. Furthermore, microglia express a wide variety of neurotransmitter receptors (i.e., AMPA, kainate, adrenergic, $GABA_B$ opioid, and cannabinoid receptors) [65]. Some of these neurotransmitters, with several exceptions [65], released after ischemia/reperfusion (I/R) may counteract the emerging inflammatory response, downregulating microglial cytokine, ROS, and NO production [65], and suppress the secretory response in mast cells with the activation of their receptors [66, 67]. Finally, the disruption of neuronal–microglial interaction (CX3CL1, CD200) [68] and increases in extracellular glutamate (Glu) acting on microglial GluR1 metabotropic receptor also contribute to the proinflammatory milieu [65].

3.4 *Middle Phase: Ischemic Cell Death-Dependent Inflammation*

With the ischemic cascade progression, cell death leads to a new phase of the inflammatory response. Neurons are more vulnerable than glia and vascular cells and, when exposed to ischemia, quickly become dysfunctional and die (ischemic necrosis).

The ensuing neuronal damage is most rapid and severe in the ischemic core where cellular energy failure, attributable to lack of oxygen and glucose, occurs very rapidly. This leads to extracellular accumulation of glutamate, which in turn leads to cytoplasmic accumulation of Ca^{2+} and activation of Ca^{2+}-dependent enzymes, including calpains and caspases. These events lead to necrosis or programmed cell death, depending on the intensity of the insult and the metabolic state of the neurons.

Injured and dying cells play a key role in postischemic inflammation because they release *danger signals* which activate the immune system [69]. These *danger signals* are usually called danger-associated molecular pattern molecules (DAMPs) and represent a wide variety of molecular signals released from the intracellular compartment or generated by the action of lytic enzymes escaped from dead cells on matrix proteins [69]. Some of these signals, like the nucleotides ATP and UTP, are released by cells under stress when the cell membrane is still intact and set the stage for the subsequent immune response [70]. DAMPs and purines induce the expression of proinflammatory molecules in infiltrating leukocytes (Table 2) and prime dendritic cells (DC) for antigen presentation. Furthermore, inflammatory mediators released from parenchymal cells are likely to feed back on the vascular and perivascular compartments to reinforce and amplify the expression of cytokines, chemokines, and adhesion molecules that drive the infiltration of blood-borne cells into the ischemic tissue due to the high vascular density of the brain.

3.5 DAMPS and Ischemic Brain Injury: High-Mobility Group Protein Box 1 (HMGB1) (a DAMP with a Key Pathophysiological Role in Stroke)

DAMPs activate toll-like receptors (TLRs) and scavenger receptors on microglia, perivascular macrophages, DCs and ECs, and infiltrating leukocytes [71]. This activation induces the expression of proinflammatory molecules, such as IL-1, and primes DCs for antigen presentation. Such proinflammatory changes are initially counterbalanced by the release of neurotransmitters (Glu and purines) [71], which activate anti-inflammatory receptors on microglia, and by the presence of cell–cell interactions between microglia and adjacent neurons, which usually keep microglia quiescent [72]. Increasing concentrations of extracellular Glu activate metabotropic Glu receptors on microglia leading to a proinflammatory phenotype [73]. From one side, ATP as an early neuronal danger signal promotes the inflammatory response of resident immune cells, while from the other side, as a neurotransmitter, it may oppose these changes and counteract inflammation [74, 75]. However, as ischemic neuronal cell death progresses in the ischemic core and spreads to the penumbra, neurotransmitters are depleted, releasing this brake on proinflammatory signaling. High-mobility group box 1 (HMGB1) is a well-elucidated DAMP and is also implicated in ischemic brain injury [76–78]. HMGB1 is a nuclear protein that binds to nucleosomes and promotes DNA binding. When cells die in a nonprogrammed way,

HMGB1 is released in the extracellular medium; in contrast, apoptotic cells modify their chromatin so that HMGB1 binds irreversibly and thus is not released [79]. HMGB1, which is localized in cell nuclei in the normal brain, translocates into the cytosolic compartment and is released into the extracellular compartment in the ischemic condition. Extracellular release of HMGB1 is observed within 6 h after stroke onset, but is diminished by 12 h after the onset [76]. HMGB1 increases vascular permeability and promotes BBB breakdown [76]. The administration of anti-HMGB1-neutralizing antibody protects the BBB and reduces infarct volume [76]. Thus, HMGB1 is an essential DAMP in ischemic brain injury.

Furthermore, the loss of cell–cell interaction between neurons and microglia promotes inflammatory signaling [72]. In the normal state, microglia are kept quiescent by contact with neurons for the presence of a surface protein expressed in neurons (CD200) which interacts with its receptor CD200R on microglia enforcing a resting phenotype [80]. The disruption of this interaction due to postischemic loss of CD200 may promote microglial activation [80, 81]. Furthermore, a neuronally expressed chemokine, fractalkine (CX3CL1), may be important in maintaining microglia in preventing excessive microglial activation during cerebral ischemia [82]. Fractalkine is the only member of the CXC subfamily of chemokines and exists as both a membrane-anchored ligand and a secreted glycoprotein suggesting that it can work locally, by direct contact, as well as through distant soluble effects. Fractalkine is one of a few chemokines that is constitutively expressed at high levels in the brain and is unique in that it binds only one receptor, CX3CR1. Evidence from both in vitro and in vivo experiments demonstrates that the interaction of fractalkine and its receptor contributes to the attenuation of microglial activation and neurotoxicity under cerebral ischemia [82, 83]. Using mice lacking the microglial fractalkine receptor, it has been shown that the absence of CX3CL1-CX3CR1 signaling dysregulates microglial responses. CX3CR1-deficient mice show intense and widespread microglial activation as well as a protective inflammatory milieu, characterized by the promotion of M2 polarization markers [84]. In summary, these observations suggest that the inflammatory response after I/R starts at the vascular level, driven by non-transcriptional events triggered by hypoxia, shear stress, and ROS production. The ischemic brain tissue damage releases danger signals from cells under stress and then from necrotic cells. These signals activate purinergic receptors and pattern recognition receptors, which induce an inflammatory response in resident brain cells and infiltrating leukocytes together with the loss of immunosuppressive mechanisms.

3.6 The Innate and Adaptive Immunity Engagement

Both innate and adaptive immunity are engaged by cerebral ischemia. The inflammatory processes occurring immediately following ischemia rely on the innate immune system, because they involve the rapid activation of low-affinity receptors recognizing a wide range of targets, including DAMPs. The innate system is

germline encoded and is rapidly activated and relies on low-affinity receptors to gain wide-ranging target recognition [85]. Injury-induced inflammation is mostly dependent on TLRs, whose primary role is the initial activation of immune cell responses, mainly TLR2 and TLR4 [43]. Some endogenous TLR ligands, HMGB1, and peroxiredoxin family proteins, in particular, are implicated in the activation and inflammatory cytokine expression in infiltrating macrophages [86]. Experimental models of ischemia suggest that TLRs are involved in the enhancement of cell damage following ischemia and their absence is associated with lower infarct volumes [87].

Several cell types are predominantly associated with innate immunity, although there is considerable overlap between the roles of these cells in innate and adaptive immunity. Microglia derive from the hematopoietic system and constitute the resident immune cells of the central nervous system (CNS). They serve as sensitive sensors, through continuous extension and retraction of their processes [88], of events occurring within their environment [89, 90]. Microglia respond to cerebral ischemia with increased proliferation, motility, phagocytic activity, and the release of cytokines and ROS. However, they also contribute to the resolution of inflammation and tissue repair by producing IL-10 and transforming growth factor (TGF)-β, as well as several growth factors, including IGF-1. Perivascular macrophages, confined to the space between the vascular basement membrane and the brain surface (glia limitans) [89, 91], drive the infiltration of inflammatory cells [57]. They produce proinflammatory cytokines (IL-1β, IL-12, IL-23, and TNF), chemokines, ROS, and NO, thus promoting a T helper type 1 (Th1) immune response (M1 macrophages), or produce anti-inflammatory cytokines (IL-10 and TGF-β), IL-1ra, and arginase (M2 macrophages) [92].

Mast cells (MCs), localized in meninges and cerebral blood vessels, release vasoactive substances (histamine), cytokines (TNF), anticoagulants (heparin), and proteases (tryptase, chymase, MMP2, MMP9) from their MC granule store [55, 56] and are capable of phagocytosis, antigen presentation, and modulating the adaptive immune response [93]. Proinflammatory monocytes (producing TNF) are rapidly recruited to the site of injury where they give rise to macrophages and DC [94, 95]. DCs appear in the brain parenchyma after focal ischemia and originate from resident as well as blood-borne cells [95, 96]. They are the main interface between innate and adaptive immunity and specialized antigen-presenting cells (APC). Neutrophils adhere to the cerebral endothelium and transmigrate into the tissue [52]. They are secretory and phagocytic cells of the innate immune system with different types of cytoplasmic granules and secretory vesicles. NADPH oxidase, iNOS, MMP8, MMP9, elastase, myeloperoxidase, and cathepsins are major proinflammatory molecules stored in granules and vesicles. Receptor engagement, e.g., binding to E-selectin on EC, and IL-8 stimulation induce vesicle and granule exocytosis [97].

The immediate onset of this inflammatory cascade together with the available experimental data on patterns of signaling during early immune activation does not support a substantial role for the adaptive immune system in the early phases of cerebral ischemia, which relies on the clonal expansion of specific lymphocytes

with high-affinity receptors to specific antigens. However, the general immune activation caused by cerebral ischemia raises the questions of whether the adaptive immune system is subsequently activated and how it may contribute to the propagation and repair of brain injury. Antibodies against CNS antigens, such as myelin basic protein (MBP) and related peptides, develop after ischemic stroke, suggesting a humoral immune response to the injury, and circulating T cells become sensitized against CNS antigens, while APC are reduced in the periphery and increased in the ischemic brain both in rodent and human stroke [95, 98, 99].

After stroke, there is an increase in the number of cells in the brain that are capable of presenting antigen to lymphocytes. The accumulation of APC coincides with the peak of lymphocytic infiltration and is associated with the expression of MHC class II molecules and the co-stimulatory molecule CD80 [95, 98, 99]. More importantly, since antigens are primarily presented to lymphocytes in the secondary lymphoid organs, increased amounts of brain antigens, released from damaged cells, are able to drain to lymphoid tissues for potential presentation to lymphocytes [100]. This antigen presentation results in the production of antibodies against brain antigens and T cells sensitized to brain antigens. Oral administration of myelin antigens in experimental models results in the development of immune tolerance and reduced infarct size, though not reduced mortality [101]. Although tolerization is antigen specific, its beneficial effects are not restricted to immune responses directed at the inducing antigen, but are more widespread, a phenomenon termed bystander suppression [101]. A similar effect is also obtained with an adoptive transfer of splenocytes or CD4+ T cells from tolerized animals that can induce protection in naïve mice involving cellular immune mechanisms [101–103]. Furthermore, the Th2 cytokine response [102–104], due to IL-4 and IL-10 production by the activation of tolerized T cells in response to the antigen unveiled by the stroke, favors the formation of TGFβ-secreting Treg cells [102–104], while the administration of recombinant T-cell receptor ligand (RTL) reduces stroke volume in focal ischemia [105].

Although the available data do not provide a clear picture of how lymphocytes participate in acute infarction, mice engineered to lack selected T-cell subgroups are protected from ischemic damage to the penumbral zone around areas of infarction [106, 107]. Because B-cell-deficient mice or lymphocyte-deficient mice reconstituted with B cells are still protected from injury, the protection has been attributed to T cells. γδT cells also have been shown to contribute to the injury by releasing the proinflammatory cytokine IL-17 [108]. On the contrary, Treg are protective in the late stage of cerebral ischemia, but their effect is evident only if the injury is small [109, 110]. In conclusion, these data suggest that following macrophage activation, T lymphocytes infiltrate the ischemic brain and regulate the delayed phase of inflammation. IL-17-producing γδT lymphocytes induced by IL-23 from macrophages promote ischemic brain injury, whereas T_{reg} lymphocytes suppress the function of inflammatory mediators. The protection does not stem from an inability to propagate thrombus, and no significant differences in CBF exist between healthy and lymphocyte-deficient mice [111].

The lack of lymphocytes does not improve postischemic CBF at least in the acute phase, nor does it suppress thrombus formation [107]. Therefore, effects of lymphocytes altering microvascular perfusion or patency seem unlikely. It is possible that lymphocytes instead produce cell damage directly or through proinflammatory signaling and activation of downstream microglia and macrophages. Alternatively, early damage associated with lymphocyte infiltration of the ischemic brain may be due to natural killer T cells (NKT), which lack a TCR and, as such, do not require antigen presentation for their activation and cytotoxicity. Also, NKT or γδT cells, T cells that have a simplified TCR, do not require antigen processing, recognize aberrant cells, and particularly lack important self-recognition molecules. Because CD1-deficient mice that lack NKT cells are not protected from ischemic injury at 24 h [107], NKT cells may not be involved in the early phase of the injury. γδT cells have been implicated in ischemic brain injury, but their involvement seems restricted to the late phase of cerebral ischemia (4 days) [107, 108]. Considering the limited number of studies available, the involvement of NK, NKT, and γδT cells, lymphocyte subtypes that act in a fashion akin to innate immunity, needs further exploration. Despite the reported evidence supporting an autoimmune response against the postischemic brain, there are inconsistencies with the hypothesis that classical adaptive immunity contributes to ischemic brain injury. First, the temporal profile of the involvement of T cells in brain damage is not consistent with established concepts of adaptive immunity. The adaptive responses require an interval of 7–10 days from antigen presentation to the clonal expansion of autoreactive T cells and immune attack on the target organ, while the protective effect observed in lymphocyte-deficient mice or afforded by blocking postischemic trafficking of T cells into the ischemic brain occurs 24–48 h after ischemia [107]. Second, mice lacking co-stimulatory molecules essential for antigen-specific T-cell response appear unprotected from ischemia, and the reconstitution of lymphocyte-deficient mice with T cells targeting non-CNS antigens worsens ischemic damage [107, 111]. Finally, both CD4+ and CD8+ T cells are equally involved in ischemic injury [111], different from other autoimmune responses where prevalence for either T-helper or T-effector cell participation is present.

Collectively, these data suggest that, although an antigen-specific immune response may develop following stroke, evidence that autoreactive T cells attack brain antigens exposed by ischemic damage against which they were sensitized is lacking. Similarly, considering the evidence for humoral immune responses in stroke, the contribution of B cells to the damage needs a more in-depth assessment. Lymphocytes do play a role in the development and progression of the injury, but the mechanism of their powerful effect does not conform to the tenets of classical autoimmunity. It is unclear whether the release and presentation of CNS antigens during and after stroke results in an adaptive immune response directed against the CNS. If such an autoimmune response was directed against the brain after stroke, its long-term implications would potentially be significant. Such immune activity would be expected to impair neuronal plasticity and functional recovery and contribute to other CNS pathology, such as dementia.

4 The Inflammatory Response Is Age Dependent

The aging brain is characterized by a shift from the homeostatic balance of inflammatory mediators to a proinflammatory state. Basal mRNA expression of CD11b and Iba1, markers of activated microglia, as well as the basal mRNA expression of GFAP and S100B, markers of activated astrocytes, is higher in aged brain than in the young adult brain [112–114]. An elevated neuroinflammatory response sets the stage for an exaggerated inflammatory cytokine response in the brain after injuries such as traumatic brain injury (TBI) and stroke and may lead to more severe and persistent behavioral and cognitive deficits [68, 115, 116].

Microglial cells also exhibit an age-associated augmentation of reactivity in a variety of mammalian species [72]. In young rats, after an episode of mild cerebral ischemia, the process of microglial activation is rather slow, with microglia being fully activated at day 14. The situation is quite different in aged animals. A great number of microglia-like cells are fully activated at day 3 postsurgery, and the process reaches a maximum at day 7. Thereafter the intensity of the microglial reaction diminishes progressively with time, but is still evident even at day 28 [115]. These results have been largely confirmed in a model of intracerebral hemorrhage-induced brain injury in senescence-accelerated prone mice [117] and in a senescence-accelerated mouse prone 10 (SAMP10) [118]. Aging also exacerbates intracerebral hemorrhage-induced brain injury, with the activation kinetics of microglia/macrophages very similar to those assessed in focal cerebral ischemia and TBI. Three days after stroke, activated microglia/macrophages with OX42-positive processes and swollen cytoplasm were more abundantly distributed around and inside the hemorrhagic lesions of aged rats [119].

In most cases of acute CNS injury, the deposition of tissue debris is due to cell death, and the debris is removed by macrophages. In the CNS, the debris consists mostly of myelin, which contains several growth inhibitory molecules (such as Nogo A) that inhibit axonal regrowth [120, 121]. Therefore, delaying myelin clearance from the brain or spinal cord after acute injury may contribute to the failure of axonal regeneration. Microglia in aged rodent and human brains are subject to replicative senescence [122–124]. Importantly, in young animals myelin debris is removed more effectively than in older animals [125–128]. Furthermore, older rats show a delayed recruitment of phagocytic cells and diminished clearance of myelin after a toxin-induced demyelination lesion [129], and these deficits correlate with the slower remyelination in older animals [130]. Previous studies have shown that microglia-derived TNFα can adversely affect the survival of neural precursor cells (NPCs) and thereby limit the capacity for regeneration and repair in vitro and in vivo [131]. In light of these findings, it is conceivable that the accelerated inflammatory reaction in aged rats in response to stroke impedes the removal of cellular debris, thereby hindering poststroke tissue restoration.

5 The Systemic Acute-Phase Response

The acute-phase response comprises a variety of systemic changes in response to tissue injury, infection, and inflammation and is mediated mainly by IL-6 and IL-1. Classic *positive* acute-phase reactants that are elevated in patients with acute cerebral infarction include the plasma proteins CRP, serum amyloid A protein, and fibrinogen, neutrophil leukocytosis, and activation of the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal (HPA) axis. Numerous studies have investigated the time course and prognostic value of the acute-phase response in ischemic stroke. In general, acute-phase parameters correlate with stroke severity and infarct volume and predict worse outcome. CRP is the most studied acute-phase protein in stroke and will be discussed here in detail (for detailed review see also Di Napoli et al. [132]).

5.1 C-Reactive Protein

CRP is the major acute-phase protein in humans, and its concentration can rise 100-fold or more in response to injury, inflammation, or infection. Plasma CRP concentration is elevated in patients with acute stroke with or without infection [133], correlates with severity of stroke or infarct volume [134], and is an independent predictor of survival or nonfatal vascular events after ischemic stroke [13, 135]. There are limited data available to address the value of CRP measurement as a short-term prognostic marker. In one study of patients with confirmed middle cerebral artery occlusion receiving tPA within 3 h of symptom onset, patients with pretreatment levels of CRP of >7.7 mg/l were over eight times more likely to die after thrombolysis (OR: 8.51; 95 % CI: 2.16–33.5; $p = 0.002$) [136]. The utility of CRP measured after stroke as a predictor of future risk of recurrence or survival is also unsettled. In a secondary analysis of the PROGRESS trial, a multicenter secondary stroke prevention trial where patients were recruited several months after stroke or transient ischemic attack (TIA), those in the highest tertile of CRP had a modestly increased risk of recurrent ischemic stroke (OR: 1.39; 95 % CI: 1.05–1.85) [137]. In a different study, CRP levels measured at least 3 months after a first ischemic stroke or TIA were strongly predictive of increased risk of subsequent stroke or myocardial infarction (OR: 8.7) [138]. A CRP level >10 mg/l at time of discharge was significantly associated with the occurrence of a new vascular event or death at 1 year (HR: 7.4) [139]. Conversely, a CRP level ≥10.1 mg/dl when measured within 72 h of stroke predicted increased mortality over a follow-up period of up to 4 years in another study [140]. Winbeck et al. found that the measurement of CRP at 24 or 48 h, but not at admission, also predicted outcome [141]. The timing of measurement of CRP and the patient group studied are important considerations. Plasma CRP may remain elevated for up to 3 months after stroke [133, 142] implying that measurements made soon after stroke are not reflective of prestroke levels and may be less reliable for longer-term risk stratification. Based on the available data a few

years ago, the members of the CRP Pooling Project concluded that there were insufficient data to routinely recommend CRP testing for determining prognosis in ischemic stroke patients [13].

The role of CRP in the pathophysiology and outcome of ischemic stroke remains unclear. CRP in the acute phase of stroke may simply reflect the severity of tissue injury, while in the subacute/chronic phase, it may be a marker of underlying persisting inflammatory vascular risk. However, given the known proinflammatory and prothrombotic effects of CRP, it is increasingly recognized that CRP may directly mediate ischemic injury and vascular inflammation. For example, one likely mechanism of CRP-mediated injury is binding of abundant CRP to ligands exposed in dead and damaged cells, triggering substantial complement activation with the release of chemotactic factors and opsonization of cells in and around the ischemic lesion, leading to enhanced infiltration by inflammatory cells [132]. This model is supported by data indicating that CRP activates macrophages and attracts leukocytes to the damaged tissue by binding to FcgR present on phagocytic cells and leukocytes [132].

Human CRP administered intravenously in a rat model of cerebral ischemia enters the brain via a damaged BBB and binds to ligands exposed in damaged tissue and then activates complement [143]. Codeposition of human CRP and rat complement in the infarct area may lead to complement-mediated exacerbation of tissue injury. Incubation of cultured cerebral microvascular endothelial cells with CRP for 24 h significantly increased lactate dehydrogenase leakage from endothelial cells and induced significant upregulation of ICAM-1 and VCAM-1 expression. Several drugs, including statins, have been shown to be effective in reducing CRP plasma levels and in lowering future vascular events in humans. In animal models, the inhibition of CRP ligand-binding capability by 1,6-bis(phosphocholine)-hexane abrogated the increase in infarct size and cardiac dysfunction in poststroke animals [144]. Taken together, these studies suggest that CRP may be involved directly in the development of inflammation in response to cerebral ischemia.

6 Inflammation and Poststroke Infection: The Role of Immune Suppression

Infections acquired after stroke are an important contributor to morbidity and mortality [145]. Infection may worsen stroke outcome not only via its systemic effects (i.e., sepsis) but also via exacerbating brain tissue damage directly. Eighty-five percent of all stroke patients have complications, of which infection is the most frequent (23–65 %) [145]. Infection is also the most relevant complication during rehabilitation and the leading cause of death in stroke after day 1. Patients with stroke are especially at risk of pneumonia and urinary tract infections (UTIs), and such infections may independently worsen neurological outcomes and increase mortality.

6.1 Immunosuppression

Clinical data are currently emerging to support the involvement of so-called brain-induced immunodepression after acute ischemic stroke [53, 145–147]. While severity and age are strongly associated with infection [148–150], immune suppression may explain the inability of other factors (such as dysphagia or bladder dysfunction) to fully account for the high rates of pneumonia or UTIs, respectively, which are seen in survivors of stroke. Chamorro and colleagues reported a rapid increase in the plasma concentrations of circulating cytokines, with a low ratio of TNF-α to anti-inflammatory IL-10 preceding the symptoms of infection [151]. Increases in another anti-inflammatory cytokine interleukin-receptor antagonist (IL-1Ra) have also been linked to infection [152]. In terms of cellular immune activity, in a recent study of patients with acute ischemic stroke, marked signs of suppression of cell-mediated immunity were noted; these included functional deactivation of monocytes and Th1 cells, and there was some evidence that these changes occurred before the clinical manifestation of infection [22, 153]. In other studies, increases in activated circulating lymphoid cells, including those with characteristics of T-regulatory (Treg) cells, have been observed [154, 155]. Functional activity of innate immune cells from stroke patients has been monitored in terms of capacity to release cytokines following stimulation with bacterial endotoxin. The release was significantly reduced relative to age, sex, and atherosclerosis-matched controls [156]. Similar results have been noted by Haeusler et al. [148] and in subarachnoid hemorrhage [149].

These clinical observations are supported by experimental models, where a CNS injury-induced immunodepression syndrome has been described in experimental stroke models leading to spontaneous septicemia and pneumonia within three days after focal cerebral ischemia [157]. This was accompanied by extensive apoptotic loss of lymphocytes and atrophy of primary and secondary lymphatic organs. In parallel with the changes in the adaptive immune system, monocyte counts and function are compromised as well. Adoptive transfer of T and NK cells from wild-type mice, but not from interferon (IFN)-deficient mice, or administration of IFN at day 1 after focal cerebral ischemia greatly decreases the bacterial burden. A murine model of aspiration pneumonia was used to evaluate whether stroke-induced immunodepression contributed to the development of pneumonia after stroke [157]. Intranasal aspiration of only 200 colony-forming units of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* caused severe pneumonia and bacteremia in mice after transient middle cerebral artery occlusion. In contrast, 200,000 colony-forming units are needed to induce pneumonia of similar severity in sham animals. Such observations have led to the concept of CNS injury-induced immunodepression (CIDS) as an important contributor to infection [158–160].

6.2 Counter-Regulatory Response

It is interesting to speculate why poststroke immunodepression occurs, when it would seem to harm patients by increasing their risk of infectious complications. Although it may simply be a maladaptive response that stems from inherent aspects

of the design of the CNS and immune system, it may also be an attempt to control the extent of the inflammation, by mounting a homeostatic, counter-inflammatory response. In addition, it may serve to protect the CNS from the development of adaptive immune responses directed against self-antigens. Recent data indicate that the CNS undergoes regular immune surveillance by circulating lymphocytes. CNS components are not routinely presented to these lymphocytes in such a way as to sensitize them and launch an immune response against the CNS. However, increased levels of proinflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1 and IL-6, are known to be able to break tolerance [161, 162], and in the absence of countervailing factors, such antigen presentation would be expected to occur after CNS injury and compromise of the BBB. Therefore, the immunodepression seen after stroke may serve a beneficial purpose in limiting the development of such autoimmunity.

6.3 Neural and Endocrine Control

Although there is clearly potential for counter-regulatory cytokines, such as IL-4, IL-10, and TGF-β, to modulate cell responses locally, immune suppression appears to be systemic and this implies a controlling role for the autonomic nervous, or endocrine, systems, regulated by the CNS. The interaction between the CNS and immune system is bidirectional, and CNS injury has profound effects on immune function [158]. Sensors within the central and peripheral autonomic nervous systems relay information about the status of the immune system. This input is processed by the CNS, in particular the frontal premotor cortex, the hypothalamus, the pituitary, and the brain stem. This processing results in homeostatic signals being sent to various sites in the body via three major pathways of neuroimmunomodulation: the HPA axis, the sympathetic nervous system (SNS) axis, and the parasympathetic nervous system (PNS), and there is good evidence for immune control by each of these [158, 163, 164].

Neural stress seems likely to account for the earliest afferent and efferent phases of the response, but several lines of clinical and experimental evidence indicate that proinflammatory cytokines produced by inflamed tissue can directly lead to HPA axis and CNS activation. IL-6 is increased systemically after stroke [133], probably induced by proinflammatory cytokines such as IL-1, and is able to sustain the drive on the HPA axis [165]. Support for this is suggested by the observation that stroke patients treated with IL-1Ra have a normalized cortisol response as well as reversal of immune suppression [164]. Evidence for a role of the SNS in stroke patients comes from decreased baroreflex sensitivity, which is linked to increased adrenergic activity and was found to be associated with infection in intracerebral hemorrhage [150]. In a similar vein, heart rate variability is used as an index of PNS vagal tone and has been shown to be associated with reduced cytokine secretion in patients with head injury, and particularly intracerebral hemorrhage, possibly triggered by increased intracranial pressure [166].

Because the autonomic system of the CNS is *hardwired* with secondary lymphoid organs, the interruption of these circuits can result in immune dysfunction. Stroke can lead to direct damage of CNS structures involved in vegetative neuroimmunomodulation, and support for the concept of the neurogenic nature of CIDS comes from studies indicating that damage to specific areas of the brain is related to stroke-related infection [167]. In models of spontaneous or aspiration-induced infection after experimental stroke, the IFN deficiency and the development of bacterial infections were prevented by blocking β-adrenergic but not glucocorticoid activity [146, 158]. Administration of the beta-adrenoreceptor blocker propranolol also drastically reduced mortality after middle cerebral artery occlusion. These studies indicate that a catecholamine-mediated defect in early lymphocyte activation is a key factor in the impaired antibacterial immune response after experimental stroke.

6.4 Prevention of Infection and Immunosuppression

To prevent infection, preventive antibiotic strategies have been proposed. Prophylactic antibiotic treatment dramatically reduces mortality and improves outcome in mouse experiments [168], but the results of phase II clinical studies conducted in this field are contradictory at present [169]. Larger trials are needed to answer the question whether (and which) stroke patients should be treated prophylactically with antibiotics. Interestingly, several classes of antibiotics have been demonstrated to be neuroprotective. Minocycline protects brain tissue against ischemia [170, 171]. β-Lactam antibiotics also offer neuroprotection by increasing glutamate transporter expression [172]. Since the antibiotics for which neuroprotection has already been demonstrated are not suited for the treatment of infections commonly acquired by patients in stroke units, further research is needed to characterize the immunomodulatory and neuroprotective properties of suitable antibiotics. If antibiotic use is eventually shown to improve outcomes after stroke, questions will remain about the effects of such a strategy on microbial resistance patterns and hospital-acquired infections (e.g., *Clostridium difficile*).

In accord with the possible role of the SNS, intriguing clinical observations associate beta-blocker use with lower rates of pneumonia and mortality after stroke, but given the sparse nature of these data and the pleiotropic effects of beta-blockers, including effects on blood pressure, further research will be required to determine the usefulness of such widely available drugs to modulate the immune response after stroke.

Inhibition of glucocorticoids improved immune cellular parameters but failed to prevent infection in a mouse model of stroke [157]. However, the evidence for SNS and PNS immune suppression is weaker in patients, and it is difficult to see how the nervous system induces rapid suppression of circulating blood cells. It is also clear that cortisol is extremely potent in reducing immune activation and the possibility that this axis may be of some value as a therapeutic target for preventing or

reversing immune suppression has been identified by at least one drug company in respect of a patent covering cortisol antagonists for this purpose [173].

A better understanding of the interactions between the immune system and the brain will potentially result in more effective treatments of the injury and identify targets for reducing susceptibility to infection. In the meantime, physicians should be cognizant of the immunosuppressed state of their patients with stroke and should remain vigilant to expeditiously identify and appropriately treat infections in these patients.

7 Late Phase: Resolution and Repair

Inflammation is a basic mechanism by which organisms and tissues respond to injury. The inflammatory response eliminates pathogens or noxious agents and also clears debris, prior to the restoration of tissue integrity and function. The potential benefits of inflammation after stroke have received relatively little attention so far, but indirect evidence suggests that specific inflammatory reactions are neuroprotective and neuroregenerative. However, these benefits may be offset, at least partially, by the *bystander toxicity* of inflammation and by scar formation. A connective tissue response is crucial to wound closure in peripheral tissues, and fibrosis may be an important and relatively benign consequence in peripheral tissue, but is a major impediment to regeneration and plasticity in the brain. A recent example of the dual nature of ischemia-induced inflammation is the discovery of the regenerative role of MMP activation. Previously, these enzymes were almost exclusively linked to BBB disruption and lesion growth, but there is also evidence that MMPs have an important role to play in neurovascular remodeling [174].

7.1 The Role of Inflammation in Repair

Increasing evidence suggests that the resolution of inflammation is not a passive process, but is orchestrated by the interplay of a large number of mediators which actively suppress the inflammatory response. Major steps in the repair process include the removal of dead cells, development of an anti-inflammatory milieu, and generation of pro-survival factors fostering tissue reconstruction and repair [175, 176]. Microglia and infiltrating macrophages constitute the predominant phagocytes removing dead cells and tissue debris after stroke, a process orchestrated by *find-me* and *eat-me* signals [177]. *Find-me signals*, including purines released from injured cells and chemokines, attract microglia and macrophages to the site of injury [178, 179]. These phagocytic cells are then presented with *eat-me signals* associated with dying or dead cells. TGFβ and IL-10 are pleiotropic immunoregulatory cytokines that play a crucial role in the development of the anti-inflammatory milieu associated with tissue repair [176]. The production of these

cytokines is promoted by phagocytosis and occurs in concert with the removal of dead cells. TGFβ is upregulated after ischemia primarily in microglia and macrophages and, in addition to its neuroprotective properties, also has profound effects on immune cells. Although well known for its proinflammatory effects, TGFβ can suppress inflammation by inhibiting Th1 and Th2 responses and promoting Treg cell development [180]. Similarly, the immunoregulatory cytokine IL-10, produced by different cells, including Treg cells, has both neuroprotective and anti-inflammatory activities [110]. Therefore, postischemic production of TGFβ and IL-10 can facilitate tissue repair by promoting the resolution of inflammation and exerting direct cytoprotective effects on surviving cells in the ischemic territory.

Immune cells and inflammation play an important role in tissue repair and reorganization. These beneficial effects have to be considered in developing therapeutic approaches based on restraining postischemic inflammation. The concern is that counteracting the inflammatory response to ischemic injury may ameliorate the tissue damage in the acute phase, but it may compromise repair mechanisms and worsen the long-term outcome of the injury. Due to the paucity of experimental studies in the recovery phase, there is no definitive experimental evidence that anti-inflammatory treatments interfere with repair processes in the postischemic brain. The essential role of inflammation in tissue repair highlights the difficulties with approaches based on full-blown suppression of inflammation. A clear example of the duality of inflammation is characterized by IL-6, which is a major cytokine induced during the acute phase of stroke but which is a member of the neuropoietic family of cytokines, which have demonstrated the ability to promote neuronal growth and development [181]. Furthermore, in light of stroke-induced immunosuppression, the infectious complications of therapies suppressing inflammation also need to be taken into account.

Therapies based on immunomodulation, in which the overall immune response is deviated from a Th1- to a Th2-type response, also have a dark side. A similar worsening in the chronic phase has also been reported in tolerization applied to models of cerebral ischemia. Therefore, the delayed effects of humoral immunity could counteract the short-term benefit of suppression of cellular immunity. A more complete understanding of the immunology of stroke would enable the development of targeted approaches to selectively suppress the deleterious effects of inflammation. Postischemic production of growth factors helps to establish an environment that is favorable to neuronal sprouting, neurogenesis, angiogenesis, gliogenesis, and matrix reorganization [182–184]. Inflammatory cells, as well as neurons and astrocytes, are capable of producing a vast array of growth factors. For example, microglia are required for the full expression of insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1) [185], a critical factor in postischemic neuronal sprouting, whereas reactive astrocytes are required for functional recovery after stroke. Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), a key growth factor in postischemic angiogenesis, is produced by reactive astrocytes [186], and its action may require neutrophil MMPs, suggesting a link between inflammatory cells and angiogenesis [187]. However, VEGF administration early after ischemia, or in excessive doses, may enhance the damage [188, 189].

The role of inflammatory signaling in brain recovery has also been highlighted by studies in which the transcriptome of sprouting neurons was defined indicating involvement of MHC class I molecules and complement subunits [190]. Generally there is an increased astrocytic reaction following injury to the aging CNS [191]. Tissue morphology at 1–2 weeks after stroke in aged rats is similar to that at 4 weeks in young rats; i.e., in both instances a scar-like formation is noted, fully penetrated by reactive astrocytes. Also noted is a strong activation of oligodendrocytes, seen at early stages of infarct development in both young and aged rats that persisted in older rats, suggesting the formation of an even stronger barrier to regeneration-like phenomena. The early formation of the glial scar may impede functional recovery in aged rats. The temporal correlation between an increase in glial activity after stroke in aged rats and the decline in function lends support to this hypothesis [191].

The evidence presented above indicates that cells of the immune system serve a fundamental role in all the phases of postischemic brain recovery. But, the limited data available provide only a glimpse into the complex sequence of events that reestablish the structural and functional homeostasis of the brain after cerebral ischemia. Additional investigations of recently identified mediators instrumental to inflammation resolution and tissue repair, such as lipoxins, resolvins, protectins, progranulins, and cyclopentenone prostaglandins, are needed to fully elucidate the role of the immune system in brain repair after stroke [42].

7.2 The Role of Inflammation in Perpetuating Damage: Early Onset of Dementia

It is conceivable that sensitization to CNS antigens plays a role in the long-term outcome of stroke. Statistical analyses reveal that more than 60 % of people with stroke have some degree of cognitive impairment with a significant number having clinical dementia. Similarly, over 30 % of postmortem brains of patients with dementia also show cerebrovascular pathology resulting in a chronic mild cerebrovascular dysfunction, which may have originated as a pathological consequence of ischemic stroke or cerebral small vessel disease/silent strokes as seen in lacunar stroke [192]. Inflammation is a major debilitating feature of stroke, accounting for the majority of infarct volume, facilitated by increased vascular permeability, activation, and damage, and importantly, this inflammation, particularly the activation of cell death-mediating cytokine-induced signaling through NFκB, is known to be strongly linked to the onset of cognitive impairment. The common mediator between neurodegeneration and stroke toxicity is now thought to be neuroinflammation.

Evidence of reduced BBB integrity preceding other neurodegenerative disorders, such as Alzheimer's disease (AD), provides a strong link between cerebrovascular pathology and AD. In animal models, amyloid-β peptide-injected animals exhibited a commonality in perturbations of microvessels compared with those evident in AD brain [193]. It was suggested that amyloidogenesis promotes extensive

neo-angiogenesis leading to increased vascular permeability and subsequent hypervascularization in AD. In patients hypervascularity was corroborated in a comparison of postmortem brain tissues from AD. Brain microvessels derived from patients with AD expressed numerous factors implicated in vascular activation and angiogenesis. Signaling cascades associated with vascular activation and angiogenesis are also upregulated in AD-derived brain microvessels [194]. Original small vessels develop arteriosclerotic characteristics, weak and permeable vessel walls, and are associated with increased inflammation, while newly formed blood vessels are often immature, abnormally shaped, and nonfunctional or with blind endings creating an environment of hypoxia and continued proliferation of proinflammatory cytokines.

Current data therefore suggests a new paradigm for integrating vascular remodeling with the pathophysiology observed in AD and indeed vascular dementia [195, 196]. These vessels are demonstrated histopathologically to persist in the active state, showing expression of adhesion molecules and interleukins, making them ideal disseminators of inflammatory reaction [197]. Demonstrating the possible therapeutic benefit of amelioration of endothelial dysfunction and inflammation, Whitehead et al. [198] showed a significant protection against AD markers of pathology (e.g., APP and Tau and NFκB near to Aβ plaque deposition) following reduction of inflammation using triflusal in a combined mouse model of AD and stroke. Furthermore, although poststroke immunosuppression is deleterious in that it increases the incidence of infections [153, 158], acute infection could also negatively affect stroke outcome by upregulating co-stimulatory molecules and promoting antigen presentation [69].

Bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS) administered at the time of reperfusion to simulate poststroke infection worsens the outcome of experimental stroke [199] and increases postischemic brain atrophy assessed 1 month after stroke [200, 201]. This effect is associated with T-cell sensitization against CNS antigens and a Th1 cytokine response due to an increased expression of B7.1, a co-stimulatory molecule needed for efficient antigen presentation [200, 201]. According to these experimental data, poststroke immunosuppression not only increases the incidence of systemic infections, but at the same time, it could be beneficial by attenuating such delayed autoimmune response. Systemic infections can promote antigen presentation and autoimmunity against the brain, which may play a role in the long-term sequelae of the stroke.

8 Therapeutic Strategies

Recent studies have reported that targeting the inflammatory response to ischemic injury limits the expansion of the lesion and increases the survivability of neurons after stroke [43, 108, 202]. Molecular cues generated by cerebral ischemia activate components of innate and adaptive immunity that regulate both inflammatory signaling and protective immunity. Among the potential therapeutic approaches

targeting the ischemic cascade, preclinical studies in rodent models suggest that the suppression of inflammation offers unique advantages. First, these treatments could have an extended therapeutic window and appear effective in experimental stroke models. Therefore, they could be used in patients presenting too late for thrombolysis. Second, because suppression of inflammation is also beneficial in models of cerebral hemorrhage, immune-modulating agents offer therapeutic opportunities in hemorrhagic stroke and might therefore be a viable option in prehospital stroke prior to brain imaging. Thirdly, considering that inflammation may be particularly deleterious in ischemia associated with reperfusion, suppression of inflammation may be a fitting complement to reperfusion therapy using thrombolysis or intravascular thrombectomy.

Although these considerations are primarily based on animal models, which may not model in full the human disease, as mechanisms of inflammation may differ [203], inflammation is a critical pathogenic component of human stroke and remains an attractive target for therapeutic intervention. However, many drugs with anti-inflammatory properties that have proven effective in experimental models have failed to improve outcome after ischemic stroke in patients. Several reasons may explain this discrepancy [204], including use of many different stroke models (different species, permanent or transient occlusion, differing representation of gray vs. white matter). Until recently, animal studies have generally been performed in healthy young male rodents, lacking comorbidities relevant to the clinical setting (e.g., diabetes, hypertension, and infection), which impact on the ischemic cascade and inflammatory responses [205]. However, in terms of therapeutic strategies, modulation of later events like inflammation might be considered to have greater chance of success than neuroprotective agents that target much earlier steps in the ischemic cascade, such as excitotoxicity. Given the strong neuroinflammatory reaction in the brain after stroke, several studies have focused on interventional therapies that could potentially diminish inflammation. For example, intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) protects the brain against experimental stroke by preventing complement-mediated neuronal cell death [206].

Despite extensive programs of research to date, no therapies modulating immune/inflammatory mechanisms have translated successfully from experimental research to clinical practice (Table 3) [8]. For example, blocking antibodies directed against adhesion molecules (ICAM-1, MAC-1), or recombinant neutrophil inhibitory factor, have not been effective in clinical trials. The case of the Enlimomab Acute Stroke Trial, a phase III clinical trial of a murine monoclonal antibody to ICAM-1, led to important lessons in translational research [207]. The negative outcome of this trial has been attributed to deleterious immunoactivation resulting from the administration of a mouse antibody to humans, as reproduced in an experimental study in which murine antibodies to rat ICAM-1 were administered to rats [208]. Although there also might be other reasons for these failures, a likely contributing factor is that postischemic inflammation acts through multiple redundant pathways that cannot be effectively suppressed by blocking a single cytokine or adhesion molecule, as attempted in these clinical trials. Thus, neutralizing upstream mediators of the signaling cascade or blocking multiple inflammatory pathways might be

Table 3 Neuroprotective agents targeting neuroinflammation in acute stroke [8]

Neuroprotective agent	Mode of action	Summary of clinical trials
Recombinant human IL-1 ra (rhIL-1ra)	Interleukin-1 receptor antagonist	In the phase II clinical trial of rhIL-1ra, patients within 6 h of stroke symptom onset were randomized to either intravenous rhIL-1ra or placebo. In the rhIL-1ra-treated group, patients with cortical infarcts had a better clinical outcome. Further phase II trials of subcutaneous rhIL-1ra in ischemic stroke and subarachnoid hemorrhage are ongoing
Enlimomab	Anti-ICAM-1 monoclonal antibody	In the phase III clinical trial of enlimomab, patients were randomized to receive either the monoclonal antibody or placebo within 6 h of acute stroke onset. The modified Rankin scale was worse in patients treated with enlimomab ($p = 0.004$) and treatment was associated with higher mortality. Further development of this drug has been abandoned
UK-279, 276	Neutrophil inhibitory factor	In the Acute Stroke Therapy by Inhibition of Neutrophils (ASTIN) phase II clinical trial, patients were randomized to receive an infusion of either UK-279, 276, or placebo within 6 h of acute stroke symptom onset. No efficacy was reported on the administration of study medication and the clinical trial was terminated for futility
Cerovive (NXY-059)	Nitrone-based free radical trapping agent	The phase III clinical trial, Stroke–Acute Ischemic NXY-059 Treatment II (SAINT II) randomized patients within 6 h of acute stroke onset to an infusion of either NXY-059 or placebo. There was no significant reduction in stroke-related disability, as assessed by the modified Rankin scale ($p = 0.33$). The cerebral hemorrhage and NXY-059 Treatment (CHANT) trial also showed no treatment effect on functional outcome. Further drug development has been abandoned
Edaravone (Radicut)	Free radical scavenger	Lacunar stroke patients treated with edaravone showed significant reduction in infarct size at 1-year follow-up and early improved neurological outcomes. There was no difference in overall clinical outcomes after 1 year
Uric acid	Antioxidant	The phase II double-blinded study investigated safety and pharmacokinetics of uric acid in acute stroke patients treated with rt-PA. Levels of uric acid increased in the treatment group, with reduction in lipid peroxidation. No safety concerns were reported with uric acid treatment. Uric acid level showed a positive correlation with clinical improvement and was an independent predictor for favorable stroke outcome

(continued)

Table 3 (continued)

Neuroprotective agent	Mode of action	Summary of clinical trials
Acetaminophen (paracetamol)	Antipyretic effect	In the Paracetamol (Acetaminophen) in Stroke (PAIS) clinical trial, patients presenting within 12 h of acute stroke onset were randomized to either acetaminophen (6 g daily) or placebo for 3 days. There was no benefit seen for routine use of acetaminophen in acute stroke but post hoc analysis showed beneficial effects in patients with body temperature between 37 and 39 °C
Minocycline	Bacteriostatic antibiotic anti-inflammatory effects	Stroke patients with NIHSS >5 and symptom onset between 6 and 24 h were randomized to either once daily minocycline 200 mg or placebo for 5 days. The NIHSS and modified Rankin Scale were significantly lower in the treatment group at 90 days. The minocycline to improve neurologic outcome in stroke (MINOS) study was a dose-escalation trial, administering intravenous minocycline within 6 h of symptom onset. This was shown to be safe and well tolerated up to 10 mg/kg intravenous dosing

more effective. For example, blocking upstream components of inflammatory signaling, such as IL-1, complement, TLR, or scavenger receptors, is highly protective in experimental models. Blockade of IL-1, using treatment with its IL-1Ra, reduces infarct volume and parameters of inflammation in a range of experimental models of cerebral ischemia, including comorbid animals [209]. Treatment with IL-1Ra in patients with ischemic stroke [210] or subarachnoid hemorrhage [211] appears safe and is undergoing further evaluation in phase II trials in these patient groups. Furthermore, minocycline, an agent with multiple neuroprotective actions including broad anti-inflammatory properties, has shown promise in clinical trials [170, 212]. Another strategy is to develop approaches in which the immune system is directed to suppress the deleterious effects of inflammation while enhancing its protective potential.

Ischemic tolerance or preconditioning is a phenomenon in which a sublethal injurious stimulus protects an organ against a subsequent lethal stimulus. Ischemic preconditioning is a procedure whereby brief episodes of ischemia to the brain (local preconditioning) or other organs (remote preconditioning) are protective against a subsequent, more severe ischemic insult [41, 213, 214]. One factor that may mediate the neuroprotective effect of ischemic preconditioning is inflammation [215, 216]. For example, the administration of low doses of LPS protects the brain from ischemic damage [217]. Likewise, a mild systemic inflammation elicited prior to stroke in a rat model for periodontitis has a neuroprotective effect by reducing the infarct volume in a rat model for cerebral ischemia [218].

Although ischemic tolerance is well known to protect the brain by simultaneously suppressing multiple pathways in the ischemic cascade, modulation of the postischemic immune response has emerged as one of its key effector mechanisms [71, 219]. It was hypothesized that the reduction in the infarct volume was due to a reduction in the number of macrophage-like cells that when present cause an enlargement of the infarcted area [218]. Postischemic TLR4 signaling, redirecting toward production of IFNβ, reprograms the immune system to suppress the production of proinflammatory cytokines and the infiltration of inflammatory cells [220]. However, the full expression of the tolerance depends on several factors based on the conditions that stimulate NF-κB-dependent inflammatory mediators. The timing and threshold of IL-1, TNF, and their receptors, iNOS-derived NO and ROS, and the extent of microglial activation in specific brain regions are also required, indicating that the protection does not rely just on the suppression of deleterious inflammatory mediators, but on a fine balance between pro- and anti-inflammatory signaling [221–224].

One of the challenges, therefore, is to learn how to modulate the immune system to replicate the beneficial inflammatory milieu induced by preconditioning. Tolerization may provide the opportunity to achieve this goal. However, due to the need to establish tolerization prior to injury, this approach, like preconditioning, would be more appropriate for stroke prevention in high-risk patients than acute stroke treatment. One strategy could be the induction of immune tolerance through mucosal exposure to myelin antigens or E-selectin promoting a protective Th2 response through multiple pathways that suppress the deleterious effects of inflammation [103]. Another strategy is based on the administration of RTL. RTL suppresses the infiltration of inflammatory cells and provides neuroprotection even if administered after the onset of cerebral ischemia [104]. Similarly, the administration of the immunomodulatory copolymer poly-YE ameliorates neurological dysfunction without reducing injury volume, an effect attributed to increased production of growth factors and hippocampal neurogenesis [225]. However, the full translational potential of treatments based on immunomodulation has not been established.

Therapeutic window, efficacy in both sexes and higher-order species, aging, and the presence of cardiovascular risk factors need further exploration. The critical effector of the tissue damage in autoimmune diseases by IL-17-secreting T cells (Th17 cells) [226] and in cerebral ischemia (γδT cells) [108] raises the possibility that counteracting IL-17 could be beneficial in cerebral ischemia [226]. Similar strategies could also boost the protective roles of Treg, although a negative role of these cells has also been proposed [227]. Although, at the moment, the role of lymphocytes in ischemic injury is poorly understood and the full implications of suppressing the action of specific T- and B-cell populations remain to be defined, these approaches may be desirable because they target the delayed phase of the injury and have a particularly wide therapeutic window.

Hypothermia is another potent neuroprotective strategy that engages central and peripheral mechanisms leading to a marked reduction in ischemic brain injury in experimental stroke. Brain cooling has been reported to improve recovery from

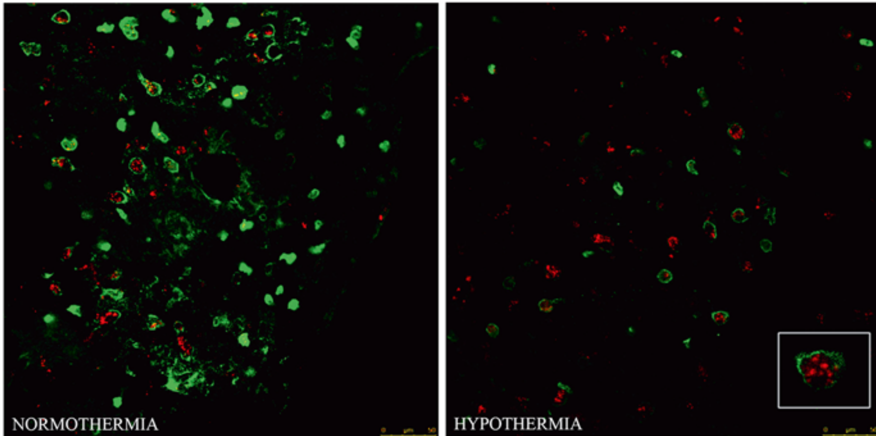


Fig. 2 Long-term hypothermia causes a reduction of inflammatory reaction. Exposure to hypothermia led to a large reduction in the number of phagocytic cells in the penumbra. Two-day exposure to hypothermia led to a large reduction in the number of phagocytic cells (ANX1-positive, green) in the penumbra. Nuclei are shown in *red*

traumatic brain injury (TBI) in rats [228] and from focal cerebral ischemia in baboons [229]. In animal studies of focal ischemia, short-term hypothermia consistently reduces infarct size [230–233]. However, efficient neuroprotection requires long-term, regulated lowering of whole-body temperature and detailed mechanistic analysis. The exposure of aged rats after stroke to H_2S-induced hypothermia for 48 h causes a 50 % reduction in infarct size without obvious neurological deficits or physiological side effects [234, 235]. In fact, animals recover within minutes after 48-h exposure, and behaviorally, rats kept under hypothermic conditions scored significantly better in tests that require complex sensorimotor skills, such as the rotarod and inclined plane tasks, suggesting a cytoprotective effect of prolonged hypothermia with subsequent beneficial effects on behavioral recuperation. Additionally, after the first week poststroke, rats kept under hypothermia began gaining weight at a higher pace than did control rats [234].

Transcriptionally, hypothermia was associated with decreased levels of inflammation-related mRNAs coding for caspase 12, NF-κB, and grp78. Unlike other caspases that have functions related to apoptosis, caspase 12 may be proinflammatory and is implicated in cytokine processing and the regulation of inflammation [236]. In addition to the role of caspases in the processing of cytokine precursors into mature, proinflammatory cytokines, new evidence supports a role for caspase 12 as a dominant negative regulator of inflammation [237]. We hypothesized that a reduction in the levels of caspase 12 leads to decreased levels of other inflammatory mediators such as NF-κB and grp78 mRNAs, as underscored by our finding that the number of phagocytic cells is reduced in the penumbra of rats subjected to prolonged hypothermia (Fig. 2) [234]. It should be noted that NF-κB is normally bound by the inhibitory protein, I-κBα, and sequestered in the cytoplasm.

Upon degradation of I-κBα, NF-κB translocates to the nucleus and initiates the activation of NF-κB signaling cascade. More recently, it has been shown that the loss of I-κBα in the brain worsened tissue damage following a TBI. Moreover, astrocytes, but not neurons, exhibit prominent NF-κB activity [238].

A recent comprehensive physiological, biochemical, immunohistochemical, and gene expression characterization of the brain response to long-term gaseous hypothermia identified annexin A1 (ANXA1) as a prominent target of the anti-inflammatory actions of H_2S-induced hypothermia in the peri-infarcted area of aged rat brains. Two days of hypothermia greatly diminished the number of co-localized PMN-ANXA1 cells [235]. These data identify ANXA1 as an important component of phagocytosis that appears to link actin accumulation to different stages of phagosome formation [239]. The anti-inflammatory role of ANXA1 has been explained by its ability to prevent the infiltration of neutrophils when they adhere to inflamed endothelium. In stroke, the leakage of neutrophils into the infarct site could follow two pathways: (1) directly from the bloodstream via the disrupted BBB or (2) infiltration of neutrophils that bind to the inflamed endothelium. Both mechanisms may be operating [240, 241]. Yet a third mechanism could be that hypothermia itself reduces the number of circulating leukocytes and may diminish their phagocytic capacity [242]. Similarly, mild hypothermia has been found to delay the migration of phagocytic cells toward the lesion in a rat model of stab injury [243]. Gaseous hypothermia utilizing H_2S enables precise temperature control that is achieved by the simple inspiration of a mixture of air and H_2S.

The disagreeable odor of H_2S can be circumvented by using injectable formulations that yield therapeutic doses of the gas, a number of which are already in clinical trials. The organism adapts to prolonged exposure to H_2S and increasingly counteracts the pharmacological effects of the gas by gradually raising both temperature and blood pressure. It thus appears that H_2S-induced hypothermia has a pleiotropic effect by (1) reducing the metabolic rate, (2) inducing a hibernation-like state, (3) reducing the epileptic forms of EEG activity, and (4) inducing a sleep deprivation state. Therefore, the ability of ANXA1 to control and contain inflammation may play a pivotal role in postischemic recovery. H_2S-induced hypothermia, by simultaneously targeting multiple points of intervention, could have a higher probability of success in treating stroke.

However, many questions still must be answered regarding the use of therapeutic hypothermia for ischemia in clinical practice, such as the H_2S concentration, optimal target temperature and duration, the therapeutic window in humans, and cost-effectiveness [244]. The concentration of H_2S used is well below the toxicity limit for humans (80 ppm). A more serious problem is the translation to animals with larger body size. Recently it has been reported that inhaled H_2S did not induce hypothermia in sheep or pigs [245]. However, the beneficial effects of H_2S may extend beyond the cooling effect. Therefore, a better understanding of the pathophysiology of the ischemic injury processes on which hypothermia acts will serve to further promote the use of this promising method to reduce the mortality and morbidity caused by stroke.

Although the relative importance of the many physiological effects of hypothermia in neuroprotection remains unclear, hypothermia improves neurological outcome in patients with cardiac arrest and in children with hypoxic–ischemic brain injury. Hypothermia counteracts excitotoxicity, inflammation, and apoptosis and promotes tissue homeostasis by producing growth factors and *cold shock proteins* endowed with cytoprotective and repair-promoting properties. Mild hypothermia (33 °C) in stroke patients receiving tPA is feasible, but did not improve outcome in one trial, possibly because too few patients were studied and cooling was started relatively late after stroke [246]. Moreover, hypothermia has also potentially detrimental complications, causing, for example, pneumonia and malignant cerebral edema during rewarming, which need to be controlled. Therefore, more studies and new strategies to minimize the complications of cooling and rewarming are needed.

The brain is endowed with a rich complement of central and peripheral defense mechanisms that are unveiled by acute injury, preconditioning stimuli, or exercise. Pharmacological interventions or other therapeutic approaches that reproduce or mobilize these coordinated neuroprotective programs could have a transformative effect on the treatment of ischemic stroke, which has remained stagnant for almost two decades. This would represent a paradigm shift in stroke therapy: from interventions targeting individual pathogenic mechanisms to protect neurons to interventions that engage multifunctional genetic and epigenetic programs directed at maintaining the homeostasis of the brain tissue as a whole. Therapies with cytokine antagonists, hematopoietic growth factors, minocycline, hypothermia, or remote post-conditioning are steps in this direction, but their efficacy in human stroke remains to be proven. Recently identified factors that contribute to the genomic response that confers ischemic tolerance, such as Polycomb proteins and sirtuins, raise the possibility of using epigenetic approaches to induce tolerance to cerebral ischemia. Although these treatments are still in the early preclinical stage, they offer the opportunity to enrich our armamentarium for the fight against stroke.

Future pharmacotherapy should focus on amelioration of vascular dysfunction in order to control both acute and chronic CNS/neuroinflammation. Current drugs under consideration include NSAIDs and multi-target-directed ligands (MTDL) [247]; however, a recent study investigated over 600 relevant trials demonstrating that interventions with aspirin, traditional nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, COX-2 inhibitors, or steroids had more side effects and a trend for higher death rates with a final recommendation against use in therapy for AD [248]. Hence, alternatives need to be considered and one of these may be calpain inhibitors.

Calpains are cysteine proteases produced in large quantity after brain injury or stroke. Inhibition of calpains is known to significantly reduce inflammation through blocking of NFκB [249] while protecting directly against beta-amyloid production and tau hyperphosphorylation as demonstrated in a mouse transgenic model of AD [250]. This dual mode of action could make them of particular interest in the treatment of vascular-based brain pathologies. Activation of cell signaling via microglia and astrocytes also plays a major role in stimulation of inflammation, involving intermediates such as TNF-α, MCP-1, adhesion molecules, and interleukins. Molecules with the ability to inhibit cytokine production from these cells could

also be therapeutically useful. For example, epigallocatechin-3 [251], arctigenin [252], and telmisartan [253] all effectively inhibited neuroinflammation and concomitantly improved memory deficiency, cognitive impairment, and/or neurological outcome in various in vivo models of AD and cerebrovascular disease. Furthermore, antibodies against beta-secretase cleavage site of amyloid precursor protein significantly improved cognitive abilities in conjunction with reduced neuroinflammation in a mouse triple transgenic model of AD [254]. Clinical trials involving specific neuroinflammatory modulators as protectors against development of AD are ongoing.

9 Conclusion and Overview

The relationship between the CNS and the immune system is complex and remains incompletely understood. It has particular salience after stroke and other forms of CNS injury, which trigger immune processes that seem to be both beneficial and harmful. A major frontier in stroke research involves efforts to better understand these interactions to develop new strategies and drugs that will prevent and reduce the burden of stroke. The realization that the immune system and inflammation are central to the pathophysiology of stroke has raised the prospect of new therapeutic approaches to counteract ischemic injury. However, our understanding of the cross talk between the immune system and the ischemic brain is still rudimentary and, as suggested by failed clinical trials, not adequate to guide therapeutic interventions. Modulation of adaptive immunity may afford the opportunity to deviate the post-ischemic immune response away from tissue damage and toward protection, an approach very effective in stroke models. However, immunomodulation can also have deleterious effects that need to be considered. Nevertheless, the remarkable impact that modulation of the immune system has on stroke damage and repair justifies the aggressive pursuit of basic and clinical investigations seeking to unravel the fundamental processes governing the interaction of the ischemic brain with the immune system. Learning how to mimic or engage endogenous neuroprotective mechanisms may provide new directions in stroke research and open new avenues in the treatment of this devastating disease.

References

1. Johnston SC, Mendis S, Mathers CD. Global variation in stroke burden and mortality: estimates from monitoring, surveillance, and modelling. Lancet Neurol. 2009;8:345–54.
2. Hachinski V, Donnan GA, Gorelick PB, Hacke W, Cramer SC, Kaste M, et al. Stroke: working toward a prioritized world agenda. Stroke. 2010;41:1084–99.
3. Group TNIoNDaSr-PSS. Tissue plasminogen activator for acute ischemic stroke. N Engl J Med. 1995;333:1581–7.

4. Fonarow GC, Smith EE, Saver JL, Reeves MJ, Bhatt DL, Grau-Sepulveda MV, et al. Timeliness of tissue-type plasminogen activator therapy in acute ischemic stroke: patient characteristics, hospital factors, and outcomes associated with door-to-needle times within 60 minutes. Circulation. 2011;123:750–8.
5. Wang X, Lee SR, Arai K, Tsuji K, Rebeck GW, Lo EH. Lipoprotein receptor-mediated induction of matrix metalloproteinase by tissue plasminogen activator. Nat Med. 2003;9:1313–7.
6. Nicole O, Docagne F, Ali C, Margaill I, Carmeliet P, MacKenzie ET, et al. The proteolytic activity of tissue-plasminogen activator enhances NMDA receptor-mediated signaling. Nat Med. 2001;7:59–64.
7. Goto H, Fujisawa H, Oka F, Nomura S, Kajiwara K, Kato S, et al. Neurotoxic effects of exogenous recombinant tissue-type plasminogen activator on the normal rat brain. J Neurotrauma. 2007;24:745–52.
8. Di Napoli M, Shah IM. Neuroinflammation and cerebrovascular disease in old age: a translational medicine perspective. J Aging Res. 2011;2011:857484.
9. Moskowitz MA. Brain protection: maybe yes, maybe no. Stroke. 2010;41:S85–6.
10. del Zoppo GJ. Acute anti-inflammatory approaches to ischemic stroke. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2010;1207:143–8.
11. Iadecola C, Anrather J. Stroke research at a crossroad: asking the brain for directions. Nat Neurosci. 2011;14:1363–8.
12. Hankey GJ. Potential new risk factors for ischemic stroke: what is their potential? Stroke. 2006;37:2181–8.
13. Di Napoli M, Schwaninger M, Cappelli R, Ceccarelli E, Di Gianfilippo G, Donati C, et al. Evaluation of C-reactive protein measurement for assessing the risk and prognosis in ischemic stroke: a statement for health care professionals from the CRP pooling project members. Stroke. 2005;36:1316–29.
14. Libby P, Ridker PM, Hansson GK. Progress and challenges in translating the biology of atherosclerosis. Nature. 2011;473:317–25.
15. Libby P. Inflammation in atherosclerosis. Nature. 2002;420:868–74.
16. Khurana R, Simons M, Martin JF, Zachary IC. Role of angiogenesis in cardiovascular disease: a critical appraisal. Circulation. 2005;112:1813–24.
17. Liu H, Zhang J. Cerebral hypoperfusion and cognitive impairment: the pathogenic role of vascular oxidative stress. Int J Neurosci. 2012;122:494–9.
18. Hawkins BT, Davis TP. The blood–brain barrier/neurovascular unit in health and disease. Pharmacol Rev. 2005;57:173–85.
19. Iadecola C. The overlap between neurodegenerative and vascular factors in the pathogenesis of dementia. Acta Neuropathol. 2010;120:287–96.
20. Iadecola C. Neurovascular regulation in the normal brain and in Alzheimer's disease. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2004;5:347–60.
21. Langdon KD, Maclellan CL, Corbett D. Prolonged, 24-h delayed peripheral inflammation increases short- and long-term functional impairment and histopathological damage after focal ischemia in the rat. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2010;30:1450–9.
22. Urra X, Cervera A, Obach V, Climent N, Planas AM, Chamorro A. Monocytes are major players in the prognosis and risk of infection after acute stroke. Stroke. 2009;40:1262–8.
23. Denes A, Humphreys N, Lane TE, Grencis R, Rothwell N. Chronic systemic infection exacerbates ischemic brain damage via a ccl5 (regulated on activation, normal T-cell expressed and secreted)-mediated proinflammatory response in mice. J Neurosci. 2010;30:10086–95.
24. Dhungana H, Malm T, Denes A, Valonen P, Wojciechowski S, Magga J, et al. Aging aggravates ischemic stroke-induced brain damage in mice with chronic peripheral infection. Aging Cell. 2013;12:842–50.
25. Gresa-Arribas N, Vieitez C, Dentesano G, Serratosa J, Saura J, Sola C. Modelling neuroinflammation in vitro: a tool to test the potential neuroprotective effect of anti-inflammatory agents. PLoS One. 2012;7:e45227.
26. Denes A, Ferenczi S, Kovacs KJ. Systemic inflammatory challenges compromise survival after experimental stroke via augmenting brain inflammation, blood–brain barrier damage and brain oedema independently of infarct size. J Neuroinflammation. 2011;8:164.

27. Smeeth L, Thomas SL, Hall AJ, Hubbard R, Farrington P, Vallance P. Risk of myocardial infarction and stroke after acute infection or vaccination. N Engl J Med. 2004;351:2611–8.
28. Vermeij FH, Scholte op Reimer WJ, de Man P, van Oostenbrugge RJ, Franke CL, de Jong G, et al. Stroke-associated infection is an independent risk factor for poor outcome after acute ischemic stroke: data from the Netherlands stroke survey. Cerebrovasc Dis. 2009;27:465–71.
29. Salat D, Penalba A, Garcia-Berrocoso T, Campos-Martorell M, Flores A, Pagola J, et al. Immunological biomarkers improve the accuracy of clinical risk models of infection in the acute phase of ischemic stroke. Cerebrovasc Dis. 2013;35:220–7.
30. Smith CJ, Tyrrell PJ. Current and emerging treatments for acute stroke: relationships with infection. Infect Disord Drug Targets. 2010;10:112–21.
31. Grau AJ, Urbanek C, Palm F. Common infections and the risk of stroke. Nat Rev Neurol. 2010;6:681–94.
32. Benjamin LA, Bryer A, Emsley HC, Khoo S, Solomon T, Connor MD. HIV infection and stroke: current perspectives and future directions. Lancet Neurol. 2012;11:878–90.
33. Elkind MS. Infectious burden: a new risk factor and treatment target for atherosclerosis. Infect Disord Drug Targets. 2010;10:84–90.
34. Elkind MS, Ramakrishnan P, Moon YP, Boden-Albala B, Liu KM, Spitalnik SL, et al. Infectious burden and risk of stroke: the Northern Manhattan study. Arch Neurol. 2010;67:33–8.
35. Elkind MS, Carty CL, O'Meara ES, Lumley T, Lefkowitz D, Kronmal RA, et al. Hospitalization for infection and risk of acute ischemic stroke: the cardiovascular health study. Stroke. 2011;42:1851–6.
36. Elkind MS, Cole JW. Do common infections cause stroke? Semin Neurol. 2006;26:88–99.
37. Elkind MS. Why now? Moving from stroke risk factors to stroke triggers. Curr Opin Neurol. 2007;20:51–7.
38. Welsh P, Barber M, Langhorne P, Rumley A, Lowe GD, Stott DJ. Associations of inflammatory and haemostatic biomarkers with poor outcome in acute ischaemic stroke. Cerebrovasc Dis. 2009;27:247–53.
39. Dirnagl U, Iadecola C, Moskowitz MA. Pathobiology of ischaemic stroke: an integrated view. Trends Neurosci. 1999;22:391–7.
40. Zaleska MM, Mercado ML, Chavez J, Feuerstein GZ, Pangalos MN, Wood A. The development of stroke therapeutics: promising mechanisms and translational challenges. Neuropharmacology. 2009;56:329–41.
41. Moskowitz MA, Lo EH, Iadecola C. The science of stroke: mechanisms in search of treatments. Neuron. 2010;67:181–98.
42. Iadecola C, Anrather J. The immunology of stroke: from mechanisms to translation. Nat Med. 2011;17:796–808.
43. Shichita T, Sakaguchi R, Suzuki M, Yoshimura A. Post-ischemic inflammation in the brain. Front Immunol. 2012;3:132.
44. del Zoppo GJ, Mabuchi T. Cerebral microvessel responses to focal ischemia. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2003;23:879–94.
45. Carden DL, Granger DN. Pathophysiology of ischaemia-reperfusion injury. J Pathol. 2000;190:255–66.
46. Eltzschig HK, Carmeliet P. Hypoxia and inflammation. N Engl J Med. 2011;364:656–65.
47. Franks ZG, Campbell RA, Weyrich AS, Rondina MT. Platelet-leukocyte interactions link inflammatory and thromboembolic events in ischemic stroke. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2010;1207:11–7.
48. Ishikawa M, Zhang JH, Nanda A, Granger DN. Inflammatory responses to ischemia and reperfusion in the cerebral microcirculation. Front Biosci. 2004;9:1339–47.
49. Atochin DN, Wang A, Liu VW, Critchlow JD, Dantas AP, Looft-Wilson R, et al. The phosphorylation state of ENOS modulates vascular reactivity and outcome of cerebral ischemia in vivo. J Clin Invest. 2007;117:1961–7.

50. del Zoppo GJ, Schmid-Schonbein GW, Mori E, Copeland BR, Chang CM. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes occlude capillaries following middle cerebral artery occlusion and reperfusion in baboons. Stroke. 1991;22:1276–83.
51. Lee SJ, Benveniste EN. Adhesion molecule expression and regulation on cells of the central nervous system. J Neuroimmunol. 1999;98:77–88.
52. Yilmaz G, Granger DN. Leukocyte recruitment and ischemic brain injury. Neuromolecular Med. 2010;12:193–204.
53. Kamel H, Iadecola C. Brain-immune interactions and ischemic stroke: clinical implications. Arch Neurol. 2012;69:576–81.
54. Engelhardt B, Sorokin L. The blood–brain and the blood–cerebrospinal fluid barriers: function and dysfunction. Semin Immunopathol. 2009;31:497–511.
55. Lindsberg PJ, Strbian D, Karjalainen-Lindsberg ML. Mast cells as early responders in the regulation of acute blood–brain barrier changes after cerebral ischemia and hemorrhage. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2010;30:689–702.
56. Strbian D, Karjalainen-Lindsberg ML, Tatlisumak T, Lindsberg PJ. Cerebral mast cells regulate early ischemic brain swelling and neutrophil accumulation. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2006;26:605–12.
57. Konsman JP, Drukarch B, VanDam AM. Perivascular production and action of pro-inflammatory cytokines in brain pathology. Clin Sci (Lond). 2007;112:1–25.
58. Sairanen TR, Lindsberg PJ, Brenner M, Siren AL. Global forebrain ischemia results in differential cellular expression of interleukin-1beta (IL-1beta) and its receptor at mRNA and protein level. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 1997;17:1107–20.
59. Schilling M, Strecker JK, Ringelstein EB, Kiefer R, Schabitz WR. Turn-over of meningeal and perivascular macrophages in the brain of MCP-1-, CCR-2- or double knockout mice. Exp Neurol. 2009;219:583–5.
60. Terao S, Yilmaz G, Stokes KY, Russell J, Ishikawa M, Kawase T, et al. Blood cell-derived rantes mediates cerebral microvascular dysfunction, inflammation, and tissue injury after focal ischemia-reperfusion. Stroke. 2008;39:2560–70.
61. Bune LT, Thaning P, Johansson PI, Bochsen L, Rosenmeier JB. Effects of nucleotides and nucleosides on coagulation. Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis. 2010;21:436–41.
62. Melani A, Turchi D, Vannucchi MG, Cipriani S, Gianfriddo M, Pedata F. ATP extracellular concentrations are increased in the rat striatum during in vivo ischemia. Neurochem Int. 2005;47:442–8.
63. Schock SC, Munyao N, Yakubchyk Y, Sabourin LA, Hakim AM, Ventureyra EC, et al. Cortical spreading depression releases ATP into the extracellular space and purinergic receptor activation contributes to the induction of ischemic tolerance. Brain Res. 2007;1168: 129–38.
64. Burnstock G. Purinergic signalling and disorders of the central nervous system. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2008;7:575–90.
65. Pocock JM, Kettenmann H. Neurotransmitter receptors on microglia. Trends Neurosci. 2007;30:527–35.
66. Peachell P. Regulation of mast cells by beta-agonists. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol. 2006; 31:131–42.
67. Samson MT, Small-Howard A, Shimoda LM, Koblan-Huberson M, Stokes AJ, Turner H. Differential roles of CB1 and CB2 cannabinoid receptors in mast cells. J Immunol. 2003;170:4953–62.
68. Sparkman NL, Johnson RW. Neuroinflammation associated with aging sensitizes the brain to the effects of infection or stress. Neuroimmunomodulation. 2008;15:323–30.
69. Kono H, Rock KL. How dying cells alert the immune system to danger. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8:279–89.
70. Bours MJ, Swennen EL, Di Virgilio F, Cronstein BN, Dagnelie PC. Adenosine 5'-triphosphate and adenosine as endogenous signaling molecules in immunity and inflammation. Pharmacol Ther. 2006;112:358–404.

71. Marsh BJ, Williams-Karnesky RL, Stenzel-Poore MP. Toll-like receptor signaling in endogenous neuroprotection and stroke. Neuroscience. 2009;158:1007–20.
72. Jurgens HA, Johnson RW. Dysregulated neuronal-microglial cross-talk during aging, stress and inflammation. Exp Neurol. 2012;233:40–8.
73. Chapman GA, Moores K, Harrison D, Campbell CA, Stewart BR, Strijbos PJ. Fractalkine cleavage from neuronal membranes represents an acute event in the inflammatory response to excitotoxic brain damage. J Neurosci. 2000;20:RC87.
74. Orellana JA, Froger N, Ezan P, Jiang JX, Bennett MV, Naus CC, et al. ATP and glutamate released via astroglial connexin 43 hemichannels mediate neuronal death through activation of pannexin 1 hemichannels. J Neurochem. 2011;118:826–40.
75. Li F, Wang L, Li JW, Gong M, He L, Feng R, et al. Hypoxia induced amoeboid microglial cell activation in postnatal rat brain is mediated by ATP receptor p2x4. BMC Neurosci. 2011;12:111.
76. Zhang J, Takahashi HK, Liu K, Wake H, Liu R, Maruo T, et al. Anti-high mobility group box-1 monoclonal antibody protects the blood–brain barrier from ischemia-induced disruption in rats. Stroke. 2011;42:1420–8.
77. Yang QW, Lu FL, Zhou Y, Wang L, Zhong Q, Lin S, et al. Hmbg1 mediates ischemia-reperfusion injury by TRIF-adaptor independent toll-like receptor 4 signaling. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2011;31:593–605.
78. Yang QW, Wang JZ, Li JC, Zhou Y, Zhong Q, Lu FL, et al. High-mobility group protein box-1 and its relevance to cerebral ischemia. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2010;30:243–54.
79. Venereau E, Schiraldi M, Uguccioni M, Bianchi ME. Hmgb1 and leukocyte migration during trauma and sterile inflammation. Mol Immunol. 2013;55:76–82.
80. Hoek RM, Ruuls SR, Murphy CA, Wright GJ, Goddard R, Zurawski SM, et al. Down-regulation of the macrophage lineage through interaction with OX2 (CD200). Science. 2000;290:1768–71.
81. Matsumoto H, Kumon Y, Watanabe H, Ohnishi T, Takahashi H, Imai Y, et al. Expression of CD200 by macrophage-like cells in ischemic core of rat brain after transient middle cerebral artery occlusion. Neurosci Lett. 2007;418:44–8.
82. Denes A, Ferenczi S, Halasz J, Kornyei Z, Kovacs KJ. Role of cx3cr1 (fractalkine receptor) in brain damage and inflammation induced by focal cerebral ischemia in mouse. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2008;28:1707–21.
83. Cipriani R, Villa P, Chece G, Lauro C, Paladini A, Micotti E, et al. Cx3cl1 is neuroprotective in permanent focal cerebral ischemia in rodents. J Neurosci. 2011;31:16327–35.
84. Fumagalli S, Perego C, Ortolano F, De Simoni MG. Cx3cr1 deficiency induces an early protective inflammatory environment in ischemic mice. Glia. 2013;61:827–42.
85. Griffiths MR, Gasque P, Neal JW. The multiple roles of the innate immune system in the regulation of apoptosis and inflammation in the brain. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2009;68:217–26.
86. Shichita T, Hasegawa E, Kimura A, Morita R, Sakaguchi R, Takada I, et al. Peroxiredoxin family proteins are key initiators of post-ischemic inflammation in the brain. Nat Med. 2012;18:911–7.
87. Mallard C. Innate immune regulation by toll-like receptors in the brain. ISRN Neurol. 2012;2012:701950.
88. Nimmerjahn A, Kirchhoff F, Helmchen F. Resting microglial cells are highly dynamic surveillants of brain parenchyma in vivo. Science. 2005;308:1314–8.
89. Lassmann H, Schmied M, Vass K, Hickey WF. Bone marrow derived elements and resident microglia in brain inflammation. Glia. 1993;7:19–24.
90. Ginhoux F, Greter M, Leboeuf M, Nandi S, See P, Gokhan S, et al. Fate mapping analysis reveals that adult microglia derive from primitive macrophages. Science. 2010;330:841–5.
91. Bechmann I, Priller J, Kovac A, Bontert M, Wehner T, Klett FF, et al. Immune surveillance of mouse brain perivascular spaces by blood-borne macrophages. Eur J Neurosci. 2001;14:1651–8.

92. Mantovani A, Sica A, Locati M. Macrophage polarization comes of age. Immunity. 2005;23:344–6.
93. Rao KN, Brown MA. Mast cells: multifaceted immune cells with diverse roles in health and disease. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2008;1143:83–104.
94. Tanaka R, Komine-Kobayashi M, Mochizuki H, Yamada M, Furuya T, Migita M, et al. Migration of enhanced green fluorescent protein expressing bone marrow-derived microglia/macrophage into the mouse brain following permanent focal ischemia. Neuroscience. 2003;117:531–9.
95. Felger JC, Abe T, Kaunzner UW, Gottfried-Blackmore A, Gal-Toth J, McEwen BS, et al. Brain dendritic cells in ischemic stroke: time course, activation state, and origin. Brain Behav Immun. 2010;24:724–37.
96. Reichmann G, Schroeter M, Jander S, Fischer HG. Dendritic cells and dendritic-like microglia in focal cortical ischemia of the mouse brain. J Neuroimmunol. 2002;129:125–32.
97. Borregaard N. Neutrophils, from marrow to microbes. Immunity. 2010;33:657–70.
98. Gelderblom M, Leypoldt F, Steinbach K, Behrens D, Choe CU, Siler DA, et al. Temporal and spatial dynamics of cerebral immune cell accumulation in stroke. Stroke. 2009;40:1849–57.
99. Yilmaz A, Fuchs T, Dietel B, Altendorf R, Cicha I, Stumpf C, et al. Transient decrease in circulating dendritic cell precursors after acute stroke: potential recruitment into the brain. Clin Sci (Lond). 2010;118:147–57.
100. Cserr HF, Harling-Berg CJ, Knopf PM. Drainage of brain extracellular fluid into blood and deep cervical lymph and its immunological significance. Brain Pathol. 1992;2:269–76.
101. Becker KJ, McCarron RM, Ruetzler C, Laban O, Sternberg E, Flanders KC, et al. Immunologic tolerance to myelin basic protein decreases stroke size after transient focal cerebral ischemia. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1997;94:10873–8.
102. Becker KJ. Sensitization and tolerization to brain antigens in stroke. Neuroscience. 2009;158:1090–7.
103. Becker K, Kindrick D, McCarron R, Hallenbeck J, Winn R. Adoptive transfer of myelin basic protein-tolerized splenocytes to naive animals reduces infarct size: a role for lymphocytes in ischemic brain injury? Stroke. 2003;34:1809–15.
104. Frenkel D, Huang Z, Maron R, Koldzic DN, Moskowitz MA, Weiner HL. Neuroprotection by IL-10-producing MOG CD4+ T cells following ischemic stroke. J Neurol Sci. 2005;233:125–32.
105. Subramanian S, Zhang B, Kosaka Y, Burrows GG, Grafe MR, Vandenbark AA, et al. Recombinant T cell receptor ligand treats experimental stroke. Stroke. 2009;40:2539–45.
106. Hurn PD, Subramanian S, Parker SM, Afentoulis ME, Kaler LJ, Vandenbark AA, et al. T- and B-cell-deficient mice with experimental stroke have reduced lesion size and inflammation. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2007;27:1798–805.
107. Kleinschnitz C, Schwab N, Kraft P, Hagedorn I, Dreykluft A, Schwarz T, et al. Early detrimental T-cell effects in experimental cerebral ischemia are neither related to adaptive immunity nor thrombus formation. Blood. 2010;115:3835–42.
108. Shichita T, Sugiyama Y, Ooboshi H, Sugimori H, Nakagawa R, Takada I, et al. Pivotal role of cerebral interleukin-17-producing gammadeltat cells in the delayed phase of ischemic brain injury. Nat Med. 2009;15:946–50.
109. Liesz A, Suri-Payer E, Veltkamp C, Doerr H, Sommer C, Rivest S, et al. Regulatory T cells are key cerebroprotective immunomodulators in acute experimental stroke. Nat Med. 2009;15:192–9.
110. Ren X, Akiyoshi K, Vandenbark AA, Hurn PD, Offner H. Cd4+foxp3+ regulatory T-cells in cerebral ischemic stroke. Metab Brain Dis. 2011;26:87–90.
111. Yilmaz G, Arumugam TV, Stokes KY, Granger DN. Role of T lymphocytes and interferon-gamma in ischemic stroke. Circulation. 2006;113:2105–12.
112. Sandhir R, Onyszchuk G, Berman NE. Exacerbated glial response in the aged mouse hippocampus following controlled cortical impact injury. Exp Neurol. 2008;213:372–80.
113. Godbout JP, Johnson RW. Age and neuroinflammation: a lifetime of psychoneuroimmune consequences. Immunol Allergy Clin North Am. 2009;29:321–37.

114. Tanaka Y, Matsuwaki T, Yamanouchi K, Nishihara M. Exacerbated inflammatory responses related to activated microglia after traumatic brain injury in progranulin-deficient mice. Neuroscience. 2013;231:49–60.
115. Badan I, Buchhold B, Hamm A, Gratz M, Walker LC, Platt D, et al. Accelerated glial reactivity to stroke in aged rats correlates with reduced functional recovery. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2003;23:845–54.
116. Acosta SA, Tajiri N, Shinozuka K, Ishikawa H, Grimmig B, Diamond D, et al. Long-term upregulation of inflammation and suppression of cell proliferation in the brain of adult rats exposed to traumatic brain injury using the controlled cortical impact model. PLoS One. 2013;8:e53376.
117. Wasserman JK, Yang H, Schlichter LC. Glial responses, neuron death and lesion resolution after intracerebral hemorrhage in young vs. aged rats. Eur J Neurosci. 2008;28:1316–28.
118. Hasegawa-Ishii S, Takei S, Inaba M, Umegaki H, Chiba Y, Furukawa A, et al. Defects in cytokine-mediated neuroprotective glial responses to excitotoxic hippocampal injury in senescence-accelerated mouse. Brain Behav Immun. 2011;25:83–100.
119. Lee JC, Cho GS, Choi BO, Kim HC, Kim WK. Aging exacerbates intracerebral hemorrhage-induced brain injury. J Neurotrauma. 2009;26:1567–76.
120. Akbik FV, Bhagat SM, Patel PR, Cafferty WB, Strittmatter SM. Anatomical plasticity of adult brain is titrated by Nogo receptor 1. Neuron. 2013;77:859–66.
121. Kempf A, Montani L, Petrinovic MM, Schroeter A, Weinmann O, Patrignani A, et al. Upregulation of axon guidance molecules in the adult central nervous system of Nogo-A knockout mice restricts neuronal growth and regeneration. Eur J Neurosci. 2013;38:3567–79.
122. Streit WJ, Miller KR, Lopes KO, Njie E. Microglial degeneration in the aging brain–bad news for neurons? Front Biosci. 2008;13:3423–38.
123. Neumann H, Kotter MR, Franklin RJ. Debris clearance by microglia: an essential link between degeneration and regeneration. Brain. 2009;132:288–95.
124. Wong WT. Microglial aging in the healthy CNS: phenotypes, drivers, and rejuvenation. Front Cell Neurosci. 2013;7:22.
125. Kotter MR, Li WW, Zhao C, Franklin RJ. Myelin impairs CNS remyelination by inhibiting oligodendrocyte precursor cell differentiation. J Neurosci. 2006;26:328–32.
126. Dubois-Dalcq M, Ffrench-Constant C, Franklin RJ. Enhancing central nervous system remyelination in multiple sclerosis. Neuron. 2005;48:9–12.
127. Clarner T, Diederichs F, Berger K, Denecke B, Gan L, van der Valk P, et al. Myelin debris regulates inflammatory responses in an experimental demyelination animal model and multiple sclerosis lesions. Glia. 2012;60:1468–80.
128. Kang H, Lichtman JW. Motor axon regeneration and muscle reinnervation in young adult and aged animals. J Neurosci. 2013;33:19480–91.
129. Chari DM, Zhao C, Kotter MR, Blakemore WF, Franklin RJ. Corticosteroids delay remyelination of experimental demyelination in the rodent central nervous system. J Neurosci Res. 2006;83:594–605.
130. Miron VE, Boyd A, Zhao JW, Yuen TJ, Ruckh JM, Shadrach JL, et al. M2 microglia and macrophages drive oligodendrocyte differentiation during CNS remyelination. Nat Neurosci. 2013;16:1211–8.
131. Guadagno J, Xu X, Karajgikar M, Brown A, Cregan SP. Microglia-derived TNFalpha induces apoptosis in neural precursor cells via transcriptional activation of the bcl-2 family member puma. Cell Death Dis. 2013;4:e538.
132. Di Napoli M, Elkind MS, Godoy DA, Singh P, Papa F, Popa-Wagner A. Role of C-reactive protein in cerebrovascular disease: a critical review. Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther. 2011;9:1565–84.
133. Emsley HC, Smith CJ, Gavin CM, Georgiou RF, Vail A, Barberan EM, et al. An early and sustained peripheral inflammatory response in acute ischaemic stroke: relationships with infection and atherosclerosis. J Neuroimmunol. 2003;139:93–101.

134. Smith CJ, Emsley HC, Gavin CM, Georgiou RF, Vail A, Barberan EM, et al. Peak plasma interleukin-6 and other peripheral markers of inflammation in the first week of ischaemic stroke correlate with brain infarct volume, stroke severity and long-term outcome. BMC Neurol. 2004;4:2.
135. Whiteley W, Chong WL, Sengupta A, Sandercock P. Blood markers for the prognosis of ischemic stroke: a systematic review. Stroke. 2009;40:e380–9.
136. Montaner J, Fernandez-Cadenas I, Molina CA, Ribo M, Huertas R, Rosell A, et al. Poststroke C-reactive protein is a powerful prognostic tool among candidates for thrombolysis. Stroke. 2006;37:1205–10.
137. Woodward M, Lowe GD, Campbell DJ, Colman S, Rumley A, Chalmers J, et al. Associations of inflammatory and hemostatic variables with the risk of recurrent stroke. Stroke. 2005;36:2143–7.
138. Arenillas JF, Alvarez-Sabin J, Molina CA, Chacon P, Montaner J, Rovira A, et al. C-Reactive protein predicts further ischemic events in first-ever transient ischemic attack or stroke patients with intracranial large-artery occlusive disease. Stroke. 2003;34:2463–8.
139. Di Napoli M, Papa F, Bocola V. C-Reactive protein in ischemic stroke: an independent prognostic factor. Stroke. 2001;32:917–24.
140. Muir KW, Weir CJ, Alwan W, Squire IB, Lees KR. C-Reactive protein and outcome after ischemic stroke. Stroke. 1999;30:981–5.
141. Winbeck K, Poppert H, Etgen T, Conrad B, Sander D. Prognostic relevance of early serial C-reactive protein measurements after first ischemic stroke. Stroke. 2002;33:2459–64.
142. Ladenvall C, Jood K, Blomstrand C, Nilsson S, Jern C, Ladenvall P. Serum C-reactive protein concentration and genotype in relation to ischemic stroke subtype. Stroke. 2006;37:2018–23.
143. Gill R, Kemp JA, Sabin C, Pepys MB. Human C-reactive protein increases cerebral infarct size after middle cerebral artery occlusion in adult rats. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2004;24:1214–8.
144. Pepys MB, Hirschfield GM, Tennent GA, Gallimore JR, Kahan MC, Bellotti V, et al. Targeting C-reactive protein for the treatment of cardiovascular disease. Nature. 2006;440: 1217–21.
145. Emsley HC, Hopkins SJ. Acute ischaemic stroke and infection: recent and emerging concepts. Lancet Neurol. 2008;7:341–53.
146. Dirnagl U, Klehmet J, Braun JS, Harms H, Meisel C, Ziemssen T, et al. Stroke-induced immunodepression: experimental evidence and clinical relevance. Stroke. 2007;38:770–3.
147. Chamorro A, Urra X, Planas AM. Infection after acute ischemic stroke: a manifestation of brain-induced immunodepression. Stroke. 2007;38:1097–103.
148. Haeusler KG, Schmidt WU, Fohring F, Meisel C, Helms T, Jungehulsing GJ, et al. Cellular immunodepression preceding infectious complications after acute ischemic stroke in humans. Cerebrovasc Dis. 2008;25:50–8.
149. Sarrafzadeh A, Schlenk F, Meisel A, Dreier J, Vajkoczy P, Meisel C. Immunodepression after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage. Stroke. 2011;42:53–8.
150. Sykora M, Diedler J, Poli S, Rizos T, Turcani P, Veltkamp R, et al. Autonomic shift and increased susceptibility to infections after acute intracerebral hemorrhage. Stroke. 2011;42: 1218–23.
151. Chamorro A, Amaro S, Vargas M, Obach V, Cervera A, Torres F, et al. Interleukin 10, monocytes and increased risk of early infection in ischaemic stroke. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2006;77:1279–81.
152. Tanzi P, Cain K, Kalil A, Zierath D, Savos A, Gee JM, et al. Post-stroke infection: a role for IL-1ra? Neurocrit Care. 2011;14:244–52.
153. Urra X, Villamor N, Amaro S, Gomez-Choco M, Obach V, Oleaga L, et al. Monocyte subtypes predict clinical course and prognosis in human stroke. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2009;29:994–1002.
154. Yan J, Greer JM, Etherington K, Cadigan GP, Cavanagh H, Henderson RD, et al. Immune activation in the peripheral blood of patients with acute ischemic stroke. J Neuroimmunol. 2009;206:112–7.

155. Kleinschnitz C, Kraft P, Dreykluft A, Hagedorn I, Gobel K, Schuhmann MK, et al. Regulatory T cells are strong promoters of acute ischemic stroke in mice by inducing dysfunction of the cerebral microvasculature. Blood. 2013;121:679–91.
156. Emsley HC, Smith CJ, Gavin CM, Georgiou RF, Vail A, Barberan EM, et al. Clinical outcome following acute ischaemic stroke relates to both activation and autoregulatory inhibition of cytokine production. BMC Neurol. 2007;7:5.
157. Prass K, Meisel C, Hoflich C, Braun J, Halle E, Wolf T, et al. Stroke-induced immunodeficiency promotes spontaneous bacterial infections and is mediated by sympathetic activation reversal by poststroke T helper cell type 1-like immunostimulation. J Exp Med. 2003;198: 725–36.
158. Meisel C, Schwab JM, Prass K, Meisel A, Dirnagl U. Central nervous system injury-induced immune deficiency syndrome. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2005;6:775–86.
159. Docke WD, Hoflich C, Davis KA, Rottgers K, Meisel C, Kiefer P, et al. Monitoring temporary immunodepression by flow cytometric measurement of monocytic HLA-DR expression: a multicenter standardized study. Clin Chem. 2005;51:2341–7.
160. Offner H, Vandenbark AA, Hurn PD. Effect of experimental stroke on peripheral immunity: CNS ischemia induces profound immunosuppression. Neuroscience. 2009;158:1098–111.
161. Pasare C, Medzhitov R. Toll pathway-dependent blockade of CD4+CD25+ T cell-mediated suppression by dendritic cells. Science. 2003;299:1033–6.
162. Oprica M, Eriksson C, Schultzberg M. Inflammatory mechanisms associated with brain damage induced by kainic acid with special reference to the interleukin-1 system. J Cell Mol Med. 2003;7:127–40.
163. Tracey KJ. Reflex control of immunity. Nat Rev Immunol. 2009;9:418–28.
164. Smith CJ, Emsley HC, Udeh CT, Vail A, Hoadley ME, Rothwell NJ, et al. Interleukin-1 receptor antagonist reverses stroke-associated peripheral immune suppression. Cytokine. 2012;58:384–9.
165. Turnbull AV, Prehar S, Kennedy AR, Little RA, Hopkins SJ. Interleukin-6 is an afferent signal to the hypothalamo-pituitary-adrenal axis during local inflammation in mice. Endocrinology. 2003;144:1894–906.
166. Kox M, Vrouwenvelder MQ, Pompe JC, van der Hoeven JG, Pickkers P, Hoedemaekers CW. The effects of brain injury on heart rate variability and the innate immune response in critically ill patients. J Neurotrauma. 2012;29:747–55.
167. Walter U, Kolbaske S, Patejdl R, Steinhagen V, Abu-Mugheisib M, Grossmann A, et al. Insular stroke is associated with acute sympathetic hyperactivation and immunodepression. Eur J Neurol. 2013;20:153–9.
168. Hetze S, Engel O, Romer C, Mueller S, Dirnagl U, Meisel C, et al. Superiority of preventive antibiotic treatment compared with standard treatment of poststroke pneumonia in experimental stroke: a bed to bench approach. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2013;33:846–54.
169. van de Beek D, Wijdicks EF, Vermeij FH, de Haan RJ, Prins JM, Spanjaard L, et al. Preventive antibiotics for infections in acute stroke: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Arch Neurol. 2009;66:1076–81.
170. Lampl Y, Boaz M, Gilad R, Lorberboym M, Dabby R, Rapoport A, et al. Minocycline treatment in acute stroke: an open-label, evaluator-blinded study. Neurology. 2007;69:1404–10.
171. Elewa HF, Hilali H, Hess DC, Machado LS, Fagan SC. Minocycline for short-term neuroprotection. Pharmacotherapy. 2006;26:515–21.
172. Sheldon AL, Robinson MB. The role of glutamate transporters in neurodegenerative diseases and potential opportunities for intervention. Neurochem Int. 2007;51:333–55.
173. Peeters BW, Tonnaer JA, Groen MB, Broekkamp CL, van der Voort HA, Schoonen WG, et al. Glucocorticoid receptor antagonists: new tools to investigate disorders characterized by cortisol hypersecretion. Stress. 2004;7:233–41.
174. Zhao BQ, Wang S, Kim HY, Storrie H, Rosen BR, Mooney DJ, et al. Role of matrix metalloproteinases in delayed cortical responses after stroke. Nat Med. 2006;12:441–5.
175. Spite M, Serhan CN. Novel lipid mediators promote resolution of acute inflammation: impact of aspirin and statins. Circ Res. 2010;107:1170–84.

176. Nathan C, Ding A. Nonresolving inflammation. Cell. 2010;140:871–82.
177. Ravichandran KS. Find-me and eat-me signals in apoptotic cell clearance: progress and conundrums. J Exp Med. 2010;207:1807–17.
178. Rappert A, Bechmann I, Pivneva T, Mahlo J, Biber K, Nolte C, et al. Cxcr3-dependent microglial recruitment is essential for dendrite loss after brain lesion. J Neurosci. 2004;24:8500–9.
179. Davalos D, Grutzendler J, Yang G, Kim JV, Zuo Y, Jung S, et al. ATP mediates rapid microglial response to local brain injury in vivo. Nat Neurosci. 2005;8:752–8.
180. Taylor A, Verhagen J, Blaser K, Akdis M, Akdis CA. Mechanisms of immune suppression by interleukin-10 and transforming growth factor-beta: the role of T regulatory cells. Immunology. 2006;117:433–42.
181. Bauer S, Kerr BJ, Patterson PH. The neuropoietic cytokine family in development, plasticity, disease and injury. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2007;8:221–32.
182. Greenberg DA, Jin K. Growth factors and stroke. NeuroRx. 2006;3:458–65.
183. Carmichael ST. Translating the frontiers of brain repair to treatments: starting not to break the rules. Neurobiol Dis. 2010;37:237–42.
184. Zhang ZG, Zhang L, Jiang Q, Chopp M. Bone marrow-derived endothelial progenitor cells participate in cerebral neovascularization after focal cerebral ischemia in the adult mouse. Circ Res. 2002;90:284–8.
185. Lalancette-Hebert M, Gowing G, Simard A, Weng YC, Kriz J. Selective ablation of proliferating microglial cells exacerbates ischemic injury in the brain. J Neurosci. 2007;27:2596–605.
186. Zhang ZG, Zhang L, Tsang W, Soltanian-Zadeh H, Morris D, Zhang R, et al. Correlation of vegf and angiopoietin expression with disruption of blood–brain barrier and angiogenesis after focal cerebral ischemia. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2002;22:379–92.
187. Hao Q, Chen Y, Zhu Y, Fan Y, Palmer D, Su H, et al. Neutrophil depletion decreases vegf-induced focal angiogenesis in the mature mouse brain. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2007;27:1853–60.
188. Manoonkitiwongsa PS, Schultz RL, McCreery DB, Whitter EF, Lyden PD. Neuroprotection of ischemic brain by vascular endothelial growth factor is critically dependent on proper dosage and may be compromised by angiogenesis. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2004;24:693–702.
189. Zhang ZG, Zhang L, Jiang Q, Zhang R, Davies K, Powers C, et al. Vegf enhances angiogenesis and promotes blood–brain barrier leakage in the ischemic brain. J Clin Invest. 2000;106:829–38.
190. Li S, Overman JJ, Katsman D, Kozlov SV, Donnelly CJ, Twiss JL, et al. An age-related sprouting transcriptome provides molecular control of axonal sprouting after stroke. Nat Neurosci. 2010;13:1496–504.
191. Popa-Wagner A, Buga AM, Kokaia Z. Perturbed cellular response to brain injury during aging. Ageing Res Rev. 2011;10:71–9.
192. Leys D, Henon H, Mackowiak-Cordoliani MA, Pasquier F. Poststroke dementia. Lancet Neurol. 2005;4:752–9.
193. Jantaratnotai N, Ryu JK, Schwab C, McGeer PL, McLarnon JG. Comparison of vascular perturbations in an abeta-injected animal model and in AD brain. Int J Alzheimers Dis. 2011;2011:918280.
194. Grammas P, Sanchez A, Tripathy D, Luo E, Martinez J. Vascular signaling abnormalities in Alzheimer disease. Cleve Clin J Med. 2011;78 Suppl 1:S50–3.
195. Biron KE, Dickstein DL, Gopaul R, Jefferies WA. Amyloid triggers extensive cerebral angiogenesis causing blood brain barrier permeability and hypervascularity in Alzheimer's disease. PLoS One. 2011;6:e23789.
196. Wallin A, Ohrfelt A, Bjerke M. Characteristic clinical presentation and CSF biomarker pattern in cerebral small vessel disease. J Neurol Sci. 2012;322:192–6.
197. Giwa MO, Williams J, Elderfield K, Jiwa NS, Bridges LR, Kalaria RN, et al. Neuropathologic evidence of endothelial changes in cerebral small vessel disease. Neurology. 2012;78:167–74.

198. Whitehead SN, Massoni E, Cheng G, Hachinski VC, Cimino M, Balduini W, et al. Triflusal reduces cerebral ischemia induced inflammation in a combined mouse model of Alzheimer's disease and stroke. Brain Res. 2010;1366:246–56.
199. McColl BW, Rothwell NJ, Allan SM. Systemic inflammatory stimulus potentiates the acute phase and CXC chemokine responses to experimental stroke and exacerbates brain damage via interleukin-1- and neutrophil-dependent mechanisms. J Neurosci. 2007;27:4403–12.
200. Becker KJ, Kindrick DL, Lester MP, Shea C, Ye ZC. Sensitization to brain antigens after stroke is augmented by lipopolysaccharide. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2005;25:1634–44.
201. Zierath D, Thullbery M, Hadwin J, Gee JM, Savos A, Kalil A, et al. CNS immune responses following experimental stroke. Neurocrit Care. 2010;12:274–84.
202. Lapchak PA. A critical assessment of edaravone acute ischemic stroke efficacy trials: is edaravone an effective neuroprotective therapy? Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2010;11:1753–63.
203. Seok J, Warren HS, Cuenca AG, Mindrinos MN, Baker HV, Xu W, et al. Genomic responses in mouse models poorly mimic human inflammatory diseases. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2013;110:3507–12.
204. Macleod MR, Fisher M, O'Collins V, Sena ES, Dirnagl U, Bath PM, et al. Good laboratory practice: preventing introduction of bias at the bench. Stroke. 2009;40:e50–2.
205. Smith CJ, Lawrence CB, Rodriguez-Grande B, Kovacs KJ, Pradillo JM, Denes A. The immune system in stroke: clinical challenges and their translation to experimental research. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2013;8(4):867–87.
206. Arumugam TV, Selvaraj PK, Woodruff TM, Mattson MP. Targeting ischemic brain injury with intravenous immunoglobulin. Expert Opin Ther Targets. 2008;12:19–29.
207. Investigators EAST. Use of anti-icam-1 therapy in ischemic stroke: results of the enlimomab acute stroke trial. Neurology. 2001;57:1428–34.
208. Furuya K, Takeda H, Azhar S, McCarron RM, Chen Y, Ruetzler CA, et al. Examination of several potential mechanisms for the negative outcome in a clinical stroke trial of enlimomab, a murine anti-human intercellular adhesion molecule-1 antibody: a bedside-to-bench study. Stroke. 2001;32:2665–74.
209. Pradillo JM, Denes A, Greenhalgh AD, Boutin H, Drake C, McColl BW, et al. Delayed administration of interleukin-1 receptor antagonist reduces ischemic brain damage and inflammation in comorbid rats. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2012;32:1810–9.
210. Emsley HC, Smith CJ, Georgiou RF, Vail A, Hopkins SJ, Rothwell NJ, et al. A randomised phase II study of interleukin-1 receptor antagonist in acute stroke patients. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2005;76:1366–72.
211. Gueorguieva I, Clark SR, McMahon CJ, Scarth S, Rothwell NJ, Tyrrell PJ, et al. Pharmacokinetic modelling of interleukin-1 receptor antagonist in plasma and cerebrospinal fluid of patients following subarachnoid haemorrhage. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2008;65:317–25.
212. Kohler E, Prentice DA, Bates TR, Hankey GJ, Claxton A, van Heerden J, et al. Intravenous minocycline in acute stroke: a randomized, controlled pilot study and meta-analysis. Stroke. 2013;44:2493–9.
213. Hess DC, Hoda MN, Bhatia K. Remote limb preconditioning and postconditioning: will it translate into a promising treatment for acute stroke? Stroke. 2013;44:1191–7.
214. Gidday JM. Cerebral preconditioning and ischaemic tolerance. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2006;7:437–48.
215. Kirino T. Ischemic tolerance. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2002;22:1283–96.
216. Stenzel-Poore MP, Stevens SL, Simon RP. Genomics of preconditioning. Stroke. 2004;35:2683–6.
217. Bordet R, Deplanque D, Maboudou P, Puisieux F, Pu Q, Robin E, et al. Increase in endogenous brain superoxide dismutase as a potential mechanism of lipopolysaccharide-induced brain ischemic tolerance. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2000;20:1190–6.
218. Petcu EB, Kocher T, Kuhr A, Buga AM, Kloting I, Herndon JG, et al. Mild systemic inflammation has a neuroprotective effect after stroke in rats. Curr Neurovasc Res. 2008;5:214–23.

219. Kariko K, Weissman D, Welsh FA. Inhibition of toll-like receptor and cytokine signaling – a unifying theme in ischemic tolerance. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2004;24:1288–304.
220. Marsh B, Stevens SL, Packard AE, Gopalan B, Hunter B, Leung PY, et al. Systemic lipopolysaccharide protects the brain from ischemic injury by reprogramming the response of the brain to stroke: a critical role for IRF3. J Neurosci. 2009;29:9839–49.
221. Blondeau N, Widmann C, Lazdunski M, Heurteaux C. Activation of the nuclear factor-kappaB is a key event in brain tolerance. J Neurosci. 2001;21:4668–77.
222. Kunz A, Park L, Abe T, Gallo EF, Anrather J, Zhou P, et al. Neurovascular protection by ischemic tolerance: role of nitric oxide and reactive oxygen species. J Neurosci. 2007;27:7083–93.
223. Ohtsuki T, Ruetzler CA, Tasaki K, Hallenbeck JM. Interleukin-1 mediates induction of tolerance to global ischemia in gerbil hippocampal ca1 neurons. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 1996;16:1137–42.
224. Pradillo JM, Romera C, Hurtado O, Cardenas A, Moro MA, Leza JC, et al. TNFr1 upregulation mediates tolerance after brain ischemic preconditioning. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2005;25:193–203.
225. Ziv Y, Finkelstein A, Geffen Y, Kipnis J, Smirnov I, Shpilman S, et al. A novel immune-based therapy for stroke induces neuroprotection and supports neurogenesis. Stroke. 2007;38: 774–82.
226. Steinman L. A brief history of t(h)17, the first major revision in the t(h)1/t(h)2 hypothesis of T cell-mediated tissue damage. Nat Med. 2007;13:139–45.
227. Schwartz M, London A, Shechter R. Boosting T-cell immunity as a therapeutic approach for neurodegenerative conditions: the role of innate immunity. Neuroscience. 2009;158: 1133–42.
228. Kuo JR, Lo CJ, Chang CP, Lin HJ, Lin MT, Chio CC. Brain cooling-stimulated angiogenesis and neurogenesis attenuated traumatic brain injury in rats. J Trauma. 2010;69:1467–72.
229. Schwartz AE, Finck AD, Stone JG, Connolly ES, Edwards NM, Mongero L. Delayed selective cerebral hypothermia decreases infarct volume after reperfused stroke in baboons. J Neurosurg Anesthesiol. 2011;23:124–30.
230. Miyazawa T, Tamura A, Fukui S, Hossmann KA. Effect of mild hypothermia on focal cerebral ischemia. Review of experimental studies. Neurol Res. 2003;25:457–64.
231. Luan X, Li J, McAllister 2nd JP, Diaz FG, Clark JC, Fessler RD, et al. Regional brain cooling induced by vascular saline infusion into ischemic territory reduces brain inflammation in stroke. Acta Neuropathol. 2004;107:227–34.
232. Kollmar R, Blank T, Han JL, Georgiadis D, Schwab S. Different degrees of hypothermia after experimental stroke: short- and long-term outcome. Stroke. 2007;38:1585–9.
233. Kollmar R, Schwab S. Hypothermia and ischemic stroke. Curr Treat Options Neurol. 2012;83(10):1252–9.
234. Florian B, Vintilescu R, Balseanu AT, Buga AM, Grisk O, Walker LC, et al. Long-term hypothermia reduces infarct volume in aged rats after focal ischemia. Neurosci Lett. 2008;438: 180–5.
235. Joseph C, Buga AM, Vintilescu R, Balseanu AT, Moldovan M, Junker H, et al. Prolonged gaseous hypothermia prevents the upregulation of phagocytosis-specific protein annexin 1 and causes low-amplitude EEG activity in the aged rat brain after cerebral ischemia. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2012;32:1632–42.
236. Martinon F, Tschopp J. Inflammatory caspases: linking an intracellular innate immune system to autoinflammatory diseases. Cell. 2004;117:561–74.
237. Hotchkiss RS, Nicholson DW. Apoptosis and caspases regulate death and inflammation in sepsis. Nat Rev Immunol. 2006;6:813–22.
238. Liu W, Hendren J, Qin XJ, Liu KJ. Normobaric hyperoxia reduces the neurovascular complications associated with delayed tissue plasminogen activator treatment in a rat model of focal cerebral ischemia. Stroke. 2009;40:2526–31.
239. Patel DM, Ahmad SF, Weiss DG, Gerke V, Kuznetsov SA. Annexin a1 is a new functional linker between actin filaments and phagosomes during phagocytosis. J Cell Sci. 2011;124: 578–88.

240. Popa-Wagner A, Stocker K, Balseanu AT, Rogalewski A, Diederich K, Minnerup J, et al. Effects of granulocyte-colony stimulating factor after stroke in aged rats. Stroke. 2010;41: 1027–31.
241. Oliani SM, Paul-Clark MJ, Christian HC, Flower RJ, Perretti M. Neutrophil interaction with inflamed postcapillary venule endothelium alters annexin 1 expression. Am J Pathol. 2001;158:603–15.
242. Bouma HR, Carey HV, Kroese FG. Hibernation: the immune system at rest? J Leukoc Biol. 2010;88:619–24.
243. Seo JW, Kim JH, Seo M, Han HS, Park J, Suk K. Time-dependent effects of hypothermia on microglial activation and migration. J Neuroinflammation. 2012;9:164.
244. Liu L, Yenari MA. Clinical application of therapeutic hypothermia in stroke. Neurol Res. 2009;31:331–5.
245. Drabek T, Kochanek PM, Stezoski J, Wu X, Bayir H, Morhard RC, et al. Intravenous hydrogen sulfide does not induce hypothermia or improve survival from hemorrhagic shock in pigs. Shock. 2011;35:67–73.
246. Bi M, Ma Q, Zhang S, Li J, Zhang Y, Lin L, et al. Local mild hypothermia with thrombolysis for acute ischemic stroke within a 6-h window. Clin Neurol Neurosurg. 2011;113:768–73.
247. Shi S, Wang Z, Qiao Z. The multifunctional anti-inflammatory drugs used in the therapy of Alzheimer's disease. Curr Med Chem. 2013;20:2583–8.
248. Jaturapatporn D, Isaac MG, McCleery J, Tabet N. Aspirin, steroidal and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;2, CD006378.
249. Baud L, Fouqueray B, Bellocq A, Peltier J. [calpains participate in inflammatory reaction development]. Med Sci (Paris). 2003;19:71–6.
250. Medeiros R, Kitazawa M, Chabrier MA, Cheng D, Baglietto-Vargas D, Kling A, et al. Calpain inhibitor a-705253 mitigates Alzheimer's disease-like pathology and cognitive decline in aged 3xtgad mice. Am J Pathol. 2012;181:616–25.
251. Lee YJ, Choi DY, Yun YP, Han SB, Oh KW, Hong JT. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate prevents systemic inflammation-induced memory deficiency and amyloidogenesis via its anti-neuroinflammatory properties. J Nutr Biochem. 2013;24:298–310.
252. Fan T, Jiang WL, Zhu J, Feng ZY. Arctigenin protects focal cerebral ischemia-reperfusion rats through inhibiting neuroinflammation. Biol Pharm Bull. 2012;35:2004–9.
253. Shindo T, Takasaki K, Uchida K, Onimura R, Kubota K, Uchida N, et al. Ameliorative effects of telmisartan on the inflammatory response and impaired spatial memory in a rat model of Alzheimer's disease incorporating additional cerebrovascular disease factors. Biol Pharm Bull. 2012;35:2141–7.
254. Rabinovich-Nikitin I, Rakover IS, Becker M, Solomon B. Beneficial effect of antibodies against beta-secretase cleavage site of app on Alzheimer's-like pathology in triple-transgenic mice. PLoS One. 2012;7:e46650.

Part III
Infectious Diseases

HIV/NeuroAIDS

Kelly L. Stauch and Howard S. Fox

Abstract Early after primary infection of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the HIV virus invades the central nervous system resulting in motor and cognitive dysfunction ranging from mild impairment to frank dementia. Chronic HIV infection can result in neurodegenerative disease, overall termed neuroAIDS. HIV infection leads to neuronal dysfunction and neurodegeneration via the activation of brain macrophages/microglia, the presence of viral proteins, and/or inflammatory factors generated in response to viral infection as well as alterations in glia and the blood–brain barrier. Although HIV does not productively infect neurons, neuronal injury and loss play a central role in the neurological decline and HIV-associated neuropathology. Early in the AIDS epidemic, patients exhibited high viral loads and elevated markers of immune activation as well as neurological dysfunction in cognition, motor performance, and behavior. Despite successful reduction of viral burden using antiretroviral therapies, the persistence of a milder less severe form of HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder (HAND) remains. The presence of several risk factors has been associated with the development of HAND, which include host factors, HIV disease and viral factors, comorbidity factors, as well as CNS penetrance and toxicity of cART. As HAND has been associated with increased mortality, decreased quality of life, and poor adherence to treatment, even this milder form of HIV-associated neurocognitive impairment is clinically relevant. This chapter on NeuroAIDS highlights the progression in the field and our current understanding of HIV infection of the CNS, HIV-induced neurodegeneration, and HAND pathogenesis.

Keywords Macrophage/microglia • Inflammation • Neurodegeneration • HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders • cART • CNS • Blood–brain barrier

K.L. Stauch, Ph.D. • H.S. Fox, M.D., Ph.D. (✉)
Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, College of Medicine, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Durham Research Center 3008, 985800 Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE 68198-5800, USA
e-mail: kelly.stauch@unmc.edu; hfox@unmc.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_12, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

1 Introduction

Worldwide the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infects an estimated 35 million people [1], and in the United States over 1.1 million individuals are infected with HIV [2]. HIV invades the central nervous system (CNS) early after initial retrovirus infection and can result in neurodegenerative disease, overall termed neuroAIDS. The incidence of HIV-associated dementia (HAD) has been reduced via effective use of combination antiretroviral therapies (cART). However, despite the successful control of viral replication in the blood, a milder less severe form of HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder (HAND) persists, and poor prognoses continue to correlate with HIV infection of the nervous system. In fact, neurological complications are observed in approximately 30 % of persons with asymptomatic HIV infection and in more than 50 % of adults with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) according to the National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke [3]. This chapter reviews the progression to our current understanding of the clinical features, neuropathology, pathogenesis, and treatments of neuroAIDS.

2 HIV Invasion of the CNS

In the mid-1980s, the “Trojan horse” hypothesis was adapted from studies on other lentiviruses and proposed to explain HIV entry into the CNS as a passenger in cells that are trafficking to the brain [4–7]. Evidence supports this model since HIV enters the CNS early in the course of infection soon after peripheral infection of circulating cells including T cells and monocytes, which express the major HIV receptors CD4 that aid attachment and entry of the virus into the cell [8]. In addition to CD4 receptors that are necessary for cellular infection, coreceptors are required, and such coreceptors have been identified as chemokine receptors. The coreceptor CXC-chemokine receptor 4 (CXCR4) appears to be the most important for HIV entry into lymphocytes, while CC-chemokine receptor 5 (CCR5) is important for monocytes, macrophages, and microglia [9]. HIV strains have been characterized for their varying phenotypes based on their usage of the CCR5 or CXCR4 coreceptors and are designated as R5- and X4-viruses, respectively [9]. Such coreceptor use can change in vivo, with initial infection occurring with R5 viruses but with the development of dual-tropic viruses that use both CCR5 and CXCR4 as well as viruses that utilize CXCR4 exclusively.

Brain infection, as it occurs in myeloid cells, is largely with R5 viruses. Infected $CD4^{+}$ T cells and monocytes can transmigrate the blood–brain barrier (BBB) from the peripheral circulation and propagate infection within the CNS [5, 10, 11]. Cellular migration into the brain through the BBB during HIV infection seems to be regulated by several factors including monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 (MCP-1), a microglial and astrocytic chemokine, and vascular cell-adhesion

molecule-1 (VCAM-1), an adhesion molecule [12, 13]. Additionally, the inflammatory cytokine tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) has been suggested to play a role in HIV entry across the BBB into the brain [14]. Another possible mechanism of HIV neuroinvasion is the entry of cell-free HIV particles from the blood into the brain via migration between the brain microvascular endothelial cells [15, 16]. Upon entry into the CNS, infected cells come into direct contact with perivascular macrophages, microglia, and astrocytes. Monocytes differentiate into macrophages after establishing residence in the CNS, and this process allows for brain infiltration by intracellular HIV. In fact, the main cell populations responsible for productive HIV infection in the brain are monocyte-derived macrophages and microglia [17, 18]. The presence of multinucleated giant cells (MGNCs) in brain tissue is one of the characteristics of HIV encephalitis (HIVE) and, while often associated with HAD patients, is not itself pathognomonic. MGNCs are formed by the fusion of infected cells that express surface viral envelope glycoproteins with uninfected cells (likely a microglial and macrophage cell) that express CD4 and an HIV coreceptor [19]. Perivascular macrophages and microglia both express CD4 and the major HIV coreceptors CXCR4 and CCR5 supporting their role in MGNC formation [20].

3 Macrophages and HIV Infection

Macrophages are terminally differentiated, nondividing phagocytes, derived from circulating monocytes that play an important role in the innate and adaptive immune response [21]. Macrophages promote HIV infection through several distinct routes including (1) active production of HIV, (2) transmission of HIV to T cells, (3) recruitment of T lymphocytes to sites of infection via secretion of cytokines, and (4) facilitation of HIV entry into the brain [22–24]. Additionally, macrophages may act as HIV reservoirs, storing HIV particles in internal compartments [25]. The CNS provides an optimal HIV sanctuary (infection site which is difficult to reach by antiretroviral drugs) as it contains infected macrophages, which mediate long-term virus persistence [26].

As previously mentioned, HIV neuroinvasion is mediated by infected monocytes and macrophages crossing the BBB; these cells can then transmit the virus to brain macrophages, microglia, and possibly astrocytes [27]. Neurons are not infected. The presence of activated macrophages/microglia correlates strongly with the severity of neurocognitive impairment, suggesting that brain inflammation is a key driving force behind dementia. Activated macrophages/microglia secrete cytokines amplifying the population of activated cells and increasing neuroinflammation creating a vicious cycle [28, 29]. Additionally, several HIV proteins themselves activate macrophages/microglia and are neurotoxic in both cell-associated and soluble forms [30]. Although macrophages are suspected to play a pivotal role in the development of HAND, the precise viral and cellular factors responsible for HIV-induced neuronal damage remain obscure.

4 HIV-Induced Neurodegeneration

As discussed above, the primary cell types of the CNS that are productively infected by HIV are macrophages and microglia. Studies have found that HIV can infect astrocytes although these cells rarely produce virus [31, 32]. Astrocytes may function as HIV reservoirs, similar to macrophages, and transmit HIV to other cells in the CNS [33, 34]. Evidence for HIV infection of oligodendrocytes and neurons in vivo is lacking. However, significant neuronal injury and apoptosis can be observed in brains from HIV patients [35].

Two major hypotheses exist to explain how HIV-infected macrophages/microglia and perhaps astrocytes disrupt normal neuron function including (1) the direct injury hypothesis involving the production of neurotoxic viral proteins and (2) the indirect “bystander” injury hypothesis where neurons are damaged as a consequence of inflammation, through production of neurotoxic molecules by infected and/or activated nonneuronal cells [18]. The functional properties of viral proteins such as Tat, Vpr, Nef, and the envelope proteins gp120 and gp41, all of which can be secreted, have been shown to have neurotoxic properties [36]. Neurotoxic viral proteins have been shown to excessively stimulate neurons resulting in excitotoxicity, to disrupt neuronal membranes, or to induce apoptosis.

Neurons are not only damaged by exposure to HIV proteins, but indirect effects on neurons involve neurotoxic cytokines that are produced and released by activated glial cells (both infected and uninfected) [37]. Activated macrophages, microglia, and astrocytes produce proinflammatory cytokines including TNF-α, interleukin-1β (IL-1β), and interferon-γ, which promote inflammatory signaling cascades resulting in neuronal toxicity [27]. In the brain and/or cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of HIV patients with HAD, increased expression of cytokines including transforming growth factor (TGF)-β, IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-6, and TNF-α has been reported [38, 39].

Chemokines and their receptors have also been implicated to mediate the pathogenesis of HAD due to their role in HIV entry, inflammatory processes, and normal neuronal physiology. The expression of chemokines and chemokine receptors has been observed to be altered in HIV-infected brains. Increased expression of β-chemokines and several receptors, such as CCR3 and CCR5, has been reported in the brains of HIV patients [40, 41]. The α-chemokines CXCL10 and CXCL12 are also found at increased levels in HIV-positive brains [42]. The neurodegeneration resulting from HIV infection is caused at least in part by dysregulation of inflammatory cytokines and chemokines and recruitment of immune cells (monocyte-macrophages) to the CNS. The activation of macrophages/microglia in the brain due to HIV infection, viral proteins, and/or inflammatory factors generated in response to viral infection leads to dysfunction of neurons as well as alterations in glia and the BBB, thus driving neuropathogenesis and the establishment of HAD.

5 From AIDS Dementia Complex (ADC) to HAND

In the 1980s early in the AIDS epidemic, neurological symptoms were identified in patients with advanced AIDS, who exhibited high viral loads and elevated markers of immune activation [43, 44]. The first systematic description of the CNS complications of AIDS occurred in 1983 in a case series of 50 patients, and the observation of possible AIDS-related dementia was noted [43]. Clinically, the AIDS dementia complex (ADC) was recognized as a novel pathology, and diagnosis was based on the pattern of neurological dysfunction in cognition, motor performance, and behavior [45]. The main characteristic is cognitive impairment, which results in mental slowness and poor memory and concentration. Motor dysfunction and behavioral changes can also be present.

While the progression of dysfunction is variable, if left untreated, patients become nearly vegetative, and the disease can be fatal. Pathological changes were most prominent in subcortical structures and included diffuse white matter pallor and astrocytosis, multinucleated cell encephalitis, and vacuolar myelopathy [46–49]. The first comprehensive study of HAND deficits in 1987 provided strong evidence of neurocognitive impairment across all stages of HIV disease from medically asymptomatic to AIDS [50]. Early reports of improvement of neurological disease in ADC patients by zidovudine monotherapy (AZT) showed that antiretroviral therapy might be effective in treatment of AIDS neurocognitive disease, and it suggested that HIV infection was indeed the cause of ADC [51]. Diagnostic guidelines were described by the AIDS Task Force of the American Academy of Neurology (AAN) in 1991 for classifying the neurological manifestations of HIV infection associated with two levels of severity: (1) HAD with motor, behavioral/psychosocial, or combined features and (2) minor cognitive motor disorder (MCMD) described as a less severe presentation of HIV-associated neurocognitive impairment that did not meet the criteria for HAD.

The advent of combination antiretroviral therapy (cART), which has decreased viral expression and allowed HIV-infected individuals to live longer with milder symptoms, contributed to the changing epidemiology of HIV infection requiring new criteria for HAND diagnosis published in 2007 [52]. Despite the restricted entry of many drugs to the CNS where infection formerly led to HAD, standard cART regimens have greatly decreased the incidence of severe HAD forms, and a shift to a higher prevalence of milder neurocognitive impairment in treated patients has occurred [53, 54]. The neurological manifestations of HIV infection are now referred to as HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders (HAND). Advances in neuroimaging techniques including magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging (MRSI) have allowed for the detection of changes in the brains of HIV-positive individuals with milder subcategories of HAND, which include symptomatic minor neurocognitive disorder (MND) and asymptomatic neurocognitive impairment (ANI) [52, 55]; however, these imaging techniques are not themselves diagnostic, nor are there any other biomarkers available to diagnose HAND. Therefore, neurocognitive testing is necessary. Currently, the focus of neuroAIDS research has shifted from severe ADC to the milder forms of HAND, including ANI and MND.

6 HAND in the cART Era

Before the introduction of cART (commonly referred to as highly active retroviral therapy (HAART) regimens) in 1996, the prevalence of the devastating cognitive/motor disorder known as HAD (previously known as AIDS dementia complex) was estimated in the early 1990s to be as high as 20–30 % of individuals with advanced HIV disease. Although standard cART regimens have significantly decreased the incidence of HAD, HAND in its milder forms (ANI and MND) remains common [52, 53]. In fact, the prevalence of HAND remains high in the cART era despite effective viral suppression in CSF and plasma [56]. The development of the milder forms of HAND has been explained to occur as a result of slow progressive neurodegeneration due to low-level viral replication, longer survival of patients, and insufficient CNS penetration of certain antiretroviral drugs [57, 58]. Several lines of reasoning have been proposed to explain the persistence of HAND despite successful cART including the presence of the following risk factors associated with the development of HAND: (1) host factors, (2) HIV disease and viral factors, (3) comorbidity factors, and (4) CNS penetrance and toxicity of cART, each of which will be discussed in detail, and the differences occurring following the introduction of cART are illustrated in Fig. 1.

6.1 Host Factors

In the early years before the introduction of antiretroviral therapy, HIV replication was uninhibited and progressed to AIDS with few patients surviving beyond 1–3 years. The majority of AIDS patients were young adults with profound immunodeficiency, and the cause of death was related to underlying CNS pathology in about 35 % of the autopsies, second to pulmonary failure [55]. The advent of cART resulted in improved longevity of patients and older individuals (≥50 years of age) now comprise over 25 % of HIV-positive patients in the United States. The diagnosis of AIDS is often overlooked in older HIV-infected individuals; thus, they are more likely to have higher plasma viral load at HIV diagnosis and tend to progress to advanced AIDS more rapidly [59]. Several features of HIV infection are risk factors for developing Alzheimer's disease including immune dysfunction, inflammation, and hyperlipidemia in the elderly population [60, 61]. Increased age is a strong risk factor for HAND and combined with the cognitive changes that occur in normal aging presents major difficulties in the assessment of neurocognitive impairment in HIV-positive seniors [60]. As patients live longer, neurocognitive impairment is further complicated by longer cumulative exposure to CNS HIV infection, the use of drugs of abuse, psychiatric disturbances, and normal neurocognitive decline with aging.

In addition, there is a well-documented phenomenon of immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS), in which the now recovering immune system in

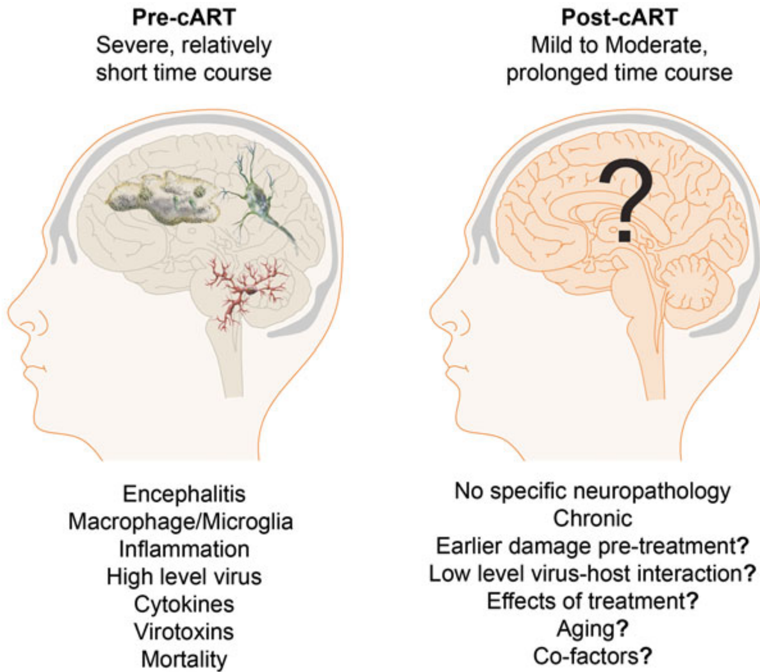


Fig. 1 Pathogenic mechanisms leading to HAND. Before the advent of antiretroviral therapy, the work of many helped unravel the processes contributing to encephalitis and the neurocognitive deficits and frank dementia that occurred in HIV-infected individuals (*left*). However, the nature of the insults that are responsible for less severe deficits now found is largely unknown (*right*)

cART-treated HIV-infected individuals shows a pronounced reactivity to an infection, and this immune reaction itself is damaging to the host. While these are often directed against opportunistic pathogens, IRIS can occur in the brain in the absence of such an opportunistic infection and may be directed against HIV itself in the CNS [62]. Both before and after the introduction of cART, neurocognitive impairment has been linked to the nadir CD4 cell count [63–65], leading to the possibility of a "legacy effect" in that current neurocognitive dysfunction is due to permanent damage linked to events that occurred during earlier immunosuppression. Still it remains unclear whether immune restoration and/or the "legacy effect" is a major factor in the persistence of HAND despite successful cART.

However, polymorphisms that modify the function or expression of immune response genes and factors as well as neurotransmitters have been identified that may affect the progression to neurocognitive impairment [66–69]. Host genetics therefore can play a role in the progression of neuroAIDS, and in the current era of cART treatment, studies are needed to assess the role of these or other genetic factors.

6.2 HIV Disease and Viral Factors

The progression of HIV disease is correlated with the development of neurocognitive disorders even in the cART era. Therefore, early initiation of cART may reduce the risk of developing HAND and prevent early CNS injury, and studies are beginning to show a protective effect of early initiation of therapy [70]. Extensive genetic variation of the HIV virus exists within individual hosts, making HIV one of the most rapid evolving viruses to date. In fact, most infected cells contain two or more different proviruses [71]. This within-host genetic viral variation poses a problem for successful clinical treatment since the HIV virus shows strong positive selection resulting in mutations to evade the host immune response [72]. The emergence of HIV strains capable of using coreceptors other than CCR5 such as the X4 strain seems to occur later in infection [73].

The evolution of HIV is also seen among different hosts. The different subtypes of HIV virus show different fitness levels and rates of neurovirulence. Some data suggest that some HIV clades might be less (clade C) or more (clade D) neuropathogenic and clade D is associated with an increased risk for dementia compared to clade A [74]. Recombination of different subtypes might accelerate disease progression and provide mechanisms to evade drug therapy, vaccine treatment, and/or immune pressure [75, 76]. However, as different clades are predominant in different geographical areas throughout the world, it can be difficult to control for the myriad other factors that can affect CNS disease other than the clade itself.

Clearly, the use of cART in reducing viral load has been the most important advance in decreasing the severity of CNS disorders. The development of drug resistance in HIV has been a setback in AIDS treatment. HIV reservoirs such as the CNS play an important role in this process by replenishing the main pool of replicating virus even long after cART initiation [77]. The rapid evolution of drug-resistant HIV mutants is facilitated by the accumulation and exchange of drug-resistant mutations between viruses from different reservoirs [78]. These factors must be considered as the field moves forward with treatments for HIV, and the CNS reservoirs remain important targets for drug design.

6.3 Comorbidities

The use of substances of abuse and/or presence of psychiatric illness, which themselves are associated with neurocognitive impairment, has been suggested to explain the high prevalence of HAND in the cART era. Drug abuse is a major cause of morbidity in young adults, and this population is highly susceptible to contracting HIV infection. HIV-infected drug abusers have higher viral loads, increased immunosuppression, and experience more severe neurological disease [79]. The degree to which drug abuse contributes to the neurocognitive and motor dysfunction that is observed in HIV patients is largely unknown since drug histories are often not reliable, and drug abusers are frequently noncompliant with medications [80]. Drugs

commonly used by HIV-infected individuals include cocaine, methamphetamine, and opioids, all of which experimentally can potentiate HIV replication and augment the neurotoxic effects of HIV viral proteins [81, 82]. For example, the development of HAND has been linked to the effects of cocaine and methamphetamine on increased dopamine, HIV replication, and macrophage infiltration [81]. Additionally, cocaine and methamphetamine disrupt endothelial cell tight junctions enhancing monocyte migration across the BBB, increasing the ability of HIV to enter the brain [83]. Coinfection with other viruses such as hepatitis C (HCV) is also a risk factor since it is associated with neurocognitive dysfunction [84].

6.4 CNS Penetrance and Toxicity of cART

One of the factors that may be resulting in the high prevalence of HAND is inadequate CNS penetrance of cART. Studies have revealed that antiretroviral drugs that have greater ability to enter the brain through the BBB can improve neurocognitive function [85]. These cART regimens with high CNS penetration effectiveness (CPE) scores correlate with lower CSF HIV RNA levels and have been termed neuro-HAART [86]. Concerns have been raised about the possibility of neuro-HAART toxicity contributing to the persistence of HAND despite the proven neuropsychological benefits. Studies have shown that nucleoside reverse-transcriptase inhibitors can disrupt mitochondrial function, and nucleoside analogs are known to cause mitochondrial toxicities [87, 88]. Despite greater benefits in neuropsychological function over other treatments, a quadruple nucleoside-analog regimen resulted in an increased level of myoinositol/creatine ratio, a metabolic marker of increased cerebral microglial activation, which is associated with HIV cognitive dysfunction [88]. Indirect toxicity of cART is also proposed to raise common HIV inflammatory markers [89]. The improvement of CNS penetrance will be important in order to deplete viral reservoirs and maintain viral latency in the CNS, but the possibility of toxicity will have to be addressed.

7 Basis for HAND in the cART Era

Before the advent of treatment, especially in the setting of HIVE, prolific work was performed on brains of patients with HAD, as well as on in vitro and animal models, demonstrating untoward effects of a number of cytokines, other molecules produced during inflammation, and viral proteins on the brain, neurons, and glia. However, in the largest study to date on neuropathological analysis of brains from neurocognitively characterized HIV-infected individuals concluded that there was "no observed relationship between parenchymal HIV brain pathology and HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder [90]." Instead, a correlation was found with Alzheimer's type II gliosis (the presence of a type of enlarged astrocyte thought to be metabolically

hyperactive) and minimal nondiagnostic abnormality, a term that certainly connotes a lack of specific mechanistic pathogenesis. While a recent study did identify a link between latent HIV infection (presence of HIV DNA and not RNA) and neurocognitive abnormalities, another study found that it was the brain HIV RNA that correlated best [91], with a lower effect found for the level of brain HIV DNA [92]. In this regard, it is of interest to point out that the viral protein Tat, highly linked to neuropathogenesis in many studies [93], can continue to be produced by HIV-infected macrophage/microglia even in the presence of antiviral therapy.

Clues from recent gene array studies of brains from HIV-infected individuals focused on those with more severe CNS abnormalities. In one, a distinct effect of cART treatment was found in those with neurocognitive impairment in reducing abnormal gene expression; however, remaining altered genes were involved in a number of pathways including immune responses [94]. In a second study, two different types of gene expression patterns were found in those with significant neurocognitive impairment, one associated with HIVE and the other in the absence of HIVE, the latter of which showed changes in transcriptions associated with endothelial cells [95]. Data from this second study was used in another analysis, which revealed similar altered pathways in HAND and Alzheimer's disease [96].

The work performed on brains with HIVE as well as its in vitro and animal models have provided a framework for the current knowledge and research on HAND in the era of cART. Lessons from the effects of the virus, inflammatory molecules, and subsequent damage to neurons could indeed still underlie the neuropathogenesis, however instead of high levels for a small number of months or years, much lower levels for decades. While speculative, alterations in the endothelial cells of the BBB, an ongoing, low-level CNS immune response to HIV (as well as effects of viral proteins such as Tat) remaining in the brain, residual continued glial activation, and/or mechanisms associated with aging-related neurodegenerative disorders may provide additional potential avenues to explore in determining the pathogenesis of HAND in the era of cART.

8 Conclusions

In this review, we have highlighted the developments in the neuroAIDS field that have led to our current understanding of HIV infection of the CNS, HIV-induced neurodegeneration, and HAND pathogenesis. However, much of our knowledge comes from studies related to HIVE and HAD, and continued research is needed which aimed to elucidate the molecular mechanisms underlying neuronal dysfunction in the current era of cART treatments. Furthermore identification of risk factors associated with the development of HAND is necessary in order to develop means to prevent and treat neuroAIDS. As the CNS provides a reservoir for HIV during the cART era and the continued presence of HIV in the brain can be linked to HAND, it is crucial to develop means of treatment to control and hopefully eliminate HIV from the brain.

References

1. (UNAIDS) JUNPoHA. UNAIDS report on the global AIDS epidemic. http://www.unaids.org/en/dataanalysis/knowyourepidemic/2012.
2. (CDC) CfDCaP. HIV and AIDS in the United States by geographic distribution. http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/library/factsheets/2012.
3. (NINDS) NIoNDaS. NINDS neurological complications of AIDS information page. http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/aids/detail_aids.htm2013.
4. Peluso R, Haase A, Stowring L, Edwards M, Ventura P. A Trojan Horse mechanism for the spread of visna virus in monocytes. Virology. 1985;147(1):231–6. Epub 1985/11/01.
5. Haase AT. Pathogenesis of lentivirus infections. Nature. 1986;322(6075):130–6. Epub 1986/07/10.
6. Gendelman HE, Narayan O, Kennedy-Stoskopf S, Kennedy PG, Ghotbi Z, Clements JE, et al. Tropism of sheep lentiviruses for monocytes: susceptibility to infection and virus gene expression increase during maturation of monocytes to macrophages. J Virol. 1986;58(1):67–74. Epub 1986/04/01.
7. Gendelman HE, Narayan O, Molineaux S, Clements JE, Ghotbi Z. Slow, persistent replication of lentiviruses: role of tissue macrophages and macrophage precursors in bone marrow. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1985;82(20):7086–90. Epub 1985/10/01.
8. Zaitseva M, Peden K, Golding H. HIV coreceptors: role of structure, posttranslational modifications, and internalization in viral-cell fusion and as targets for entry inhibitors. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2003;1614(1):51–61. Epub 2003/07/23.
9. Moore JP, Kitchen SG, Pugach P, Zack JA. The CCR5 and CXCR4 coreceptors—central to understanding the transmission and pathogenesis of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 2004;20(1):111–26. Epub 2004/03/06.
10. Wiley CA, Schrier RD, Nelson JA, Lampert PW, Oldstone MB. Cellular localization of human immunodeficiency virus infection within the brains of acquired immune deficiency syndrome patients. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1986;83(18):7089–93. Epub 1986/09/01.
11. Fischer-Smith T, Croul S, Adeniyi A, Rybicka K, Morgello S, Khalili K, et al. Macrophage/microglial accumulation and proliferating cell nuclear antigen expression in the central nervous system in human immunodeficiency virus encephalopathy. Am J Pathol. 2004;164(6):2089–99. Epub 2004/05/27.
12. Asensio VC, Campbell IL. Chemokines in the CNS: plurifunctional mediators in diverse states. Trends Neurosci. 1999;22(11):504–12. Epub 1999/10/26.
13. Sasseville VG, Newman W, Brodie SJ, Hesterberg P, Pauley D, Ringler DJ. Monocyte adhesion to endothelium in simian immunodeficiency virus-induced AIDS encephalitis is mediated by vascular cell adhesion molecule-1/alpha 4 beta 1 integrin interactions. Am J Pathol. 1994;144(1):27–40. Epub 1994/01/01.
14. Fiala M, Looney DJ, Stins M, Way DD, Zhang L, Gan X, et al. TNF-alpha opens a paracellular route for HIV-1 invasion across the blood-brain barrier. Mol Med. 1997;3(8):553–64. Epub 1997/08/01.
15. Bomsel M. Transcytosis of infectious human immunodeficiency virus across a tight human epithelial cell line barrier. Nat Med. 1997;3(1):42–7. Epub 1997/01/01.
16. Banks WA, Freed EO, Wolf KM, Robinson SM, Franko M, Kumar VB. Transport of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 pseudoviruses across the blood-brain barrier: role of envelope proteins and adsorptive endocytosis. J Virol. 2001;75(10):4681–91. Epub 2001/04/20.
17. Anderson E, Zink W, Xiong H, Gendelman HE. HIV-1-associated dementia: a metabolic encephalopathy perpetrated by virus-infected and immune-competent mononuclear phagocytes. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2002;31 Suppl 2:S43–54. Epub 2002/10/24.
18. Kaul M, Garden GA, Lipton SA. Pathways to neuronal injury and apoptosis in HIV-associated dementia. Nature. 2001;410(6831):988–94. Epub 2001/04/20.

19. Dickson DW. Multinucleated giant cells in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome encephalopathy. Origin from endogenous microglia? Arch Pathol Lab Med. 1986;110(10):967–8. Epub 1986/10/01.
20. Albright AV, Shieh JT, Itoh T, Lee B, Pleasure D, O'Connor MJ, et al. Microglia express CCR5, CXCR4, and CCR3, but of these, CCR5 is the principal coreceptor for human immunodeficiency virus type 1 dementia isolates. J Virol. 1999;73(1):205–13. Epub 1998/12/16.
21. Gordon S, Taylor PR. Monocyte and macrophage heterogeneity. Nat Rev Immunol. 2005;5(12):953–64. Epub 2005/12/03.
22. Shen R, Richter HE, Clements RH, Novak L, Huff K, Bimczok D, et al. Macrophages in vaginal but not intestinal mucosa are monocyte-like and permissive to human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. J Virol. 2009;83(7):3258–67. Epub 2009/01/21.
23. Swingler S, Mann A, Jacque J, Brichacek B, Sasseville VG, Williams K, et al. HIV-1 Nef mediates lymphocyte chemotaxis and activation by infected macrophages. Nat Med. 1999;5(9):997–1003. Epub 1999/09/02.
24. Groot F, Welsch S, Sattentau QJ. Efficient HIV-1 transmission from macrophages to T cells across transient virological synapses. Blood. 2008;111(9):4660–3. Epub 2008/02/26.
25. Sharova N, Swingler C, Sharkey M, Stevenson M. Macrophages archive HIV-1 virions for dissemination in trans. EMBO J. 2005;24(13):2481–9. Epub 2005/05/28.
26. Gras G, Kaul M. Molecular mechanisms of neuroinvasion by monocytes-macrophages in HIV-1 infection. Retrovirology. 2010;7:30. Epub 2010/04/09.
27. Williams KC, Hickey WF. Central nervous system damage, monocytes and macrophages, and neurological disorders in AIDS. Annu Rev Neurosci. 2002;25:537–62. Epub 2002/06/08.
28. Winkler MK, Beveniste EN. Transforming growth factor-beta inhibition of cytokine-induced vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 expression in human astrocytes. Glia. 1998;22(2):171–9. Epub 1998/04/16.
29. Lee SJ, Hou J, Benveniste EN. Transcriptional regulation of intercellular adhesion molecule-1 in astrocytes involves NF-kappaB and C/EBP isoforms. J Neuroimmunol. 1998;92 (1–2):196–207. Epub 1999/01/23.
30. Herbein G, Varin A. The macrophage in HIV-1 infection: from activation to deactivation? Retrovirology. 2010;7:33. Epub 2010/04/13.
31. Saito Y, Sharer LR, Epstein LG, Michaels J, Mintz M, Louder M, et al. Overexpression of nef as a marker for restricted HIV-1 infection of astrocytes in postmortem pediatric central nervous tissues. Neurology. 1994;44(3 Pt 1):474–81. Epub 1994/03/01.
32. Trillo-Pazos G, Diamanturos A, Rislove L, Menza T, Chao W, Belem P, et al. Detection of HIV-1 DNA in microglia/macrophages, astrocytes and neurons isolated from brain tissue with HIV-1 encephalitis by laser capture microdissection. Brain Pathol. 2003;13(2):144–54. Epub 2003/05/15.
33. Chiodi F, Fuerstenberg S, Gidlund M, Asjo B, Fenyo EM. Infection of brain-derived cells with the human immunodeficiency virus. J Virol. 1987;61(4):1244–7. Epub 1987/04/01.
34. Sabri F, Tresoldi E, Di Stefano M, Polo S, Monaco MC, Verani A, et al. Nonproductive human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection of human fetal astrocytes: independence from CD4 and major chemokine receptors. Virology. 1999;264(2):370–84. Epub 1999/11/24.
35. Petito CK, Roberts B. Evidence of apoptotic cell death in HIV encephalitis. Am J Pathol. 1995;146(5):1121–30. Epub 1995/05/01.
36. Ellis R, Langford D, Masliah E. HIV and antiretroviral therapy in the brain: neuronal injury and repair. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2007;8(1):33–44. Epub 2006/12/21.
37. Li W, Galey D, Mattson MP, Nath A. Molecular and cellular mechanisms of neuronal cell death in HIV dementia. Neurotox Res. 2005;8(1–2):119–34. Epub 2005/11/02.
38. Tyor WR, Glass JD, Griffin JW, Becker PS, McArthur JC, Bezman L, et al. Cytokine expression in the brain during the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Ann Neurol. 1992; 31(4):349–60. Epub 1992/04/01.
39. Achim CL, Heyes MP, Wiley CA. Quantitation of human immunodeficiency virus, immune activation factors, and quinolinic acid in AIDS brains. J Clin Invest. 1993;91(6):2769–75. Epub 1993/06/01.

40. Vallat AV, De Girolami U, He J, Mhashilkar A, Marasco W, Shi B, et al. Localization of HIV-1 co-receptors CCR5 and CXCR4 in the brain of children with AIDS. Am J Pathol. 1998;152(1):167–78. Epub 1998/01/09.
41. Klein RS, Williams KC, Alvarez-Hernandez X, Westmoreland S, Force T, Lackner AA, et al. Chemokine receptor expression and signaling in macaque and human fetal neurons and astrocytes: implications for the neuropathogenesis of AIDS. J Immunol. 1999;163(3):1636–46. Epub 1999/07/22.
42. Asensio VC, Maier J, Milner R, Boztug K, Kincaid C, Moulard M, et al. Interferon-independent, human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp120-mediated induction of CXCL10/IP-10 gene expression by astrocytes in vivo and in vitro. J Virol. 2001;75(15):7067–77. Epub 2001/07/04.
43. Snider WD, Simpson DM, Nielsen S, Gold JW, Metroka CE, Posner JB. Neurological complications of acquired immune deficiency syndrome: analysis of 50 patients. Ann Neurol. 1983;14(4):403–18. Epub 1983/10/01.
44. Perry S, Jacobsen P. Neuropsychiatric manifestations of AIDS-spectrum disorders. Hosp Community Psychiatry. 1986;37(2):135–42. Epub 1986/02/01.
45. Navia BA, Jordan BD, Price RW. The AIDS dementia complex: I. Clinical features. Ann Neurol. 1986;19(6):517–24. Epub 1986/06/01.
46. Petito CK, Cho ES, Lemann W, Navia BA, Price RW. Neuropathology of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS): an autopsy review. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1986;45(6):635–46. Epub 1986/11/01.
47. Rosenblum MK. Infection of the central nervous system by the human immunodeficiency virus type 1. Morphology and relation to syndromes of progressive encephalopathy and myelopathy in patients with AIDS. Pathol Annu. 1990;25(Pt 1):117–69. Epub 1990/01/01.
48. Budka H. Neuropathology of human immunodeficiency virus infection. Brain Pathol. 1991;1(3):163–75. Epub 1991/04/01.
49. Wiley CA, Achim C. Human immunodeficiency virus encephalitis is the pathological correlate of dementia in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Ann Neurol. 1994;36(4):673–6. Epub 1994/10/01.
50. Grant I, Atkinson JH, Hesselink JR, Kennedy CJ, Richman DD, Spector SA, et al. Evidence for early central nervous system involvement in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and other human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infections. Studies with neuropsychologic testing and magnetic resonance imaging. Ann Intern Med. 1987;107(6):828–36. Epub 1987/12/01.
51. Yarchoan R, Berg G, Brouwers P, Fischl MA, Spitzer AR, Wichman A, et al. Response of human-immunodeficiency-virus-associated neurological disease to 3′-azido-3′-deoxythymidine. Lancet. 1987;1(8525):132–5. Epub 1987/01/17.
52. Antinori A, Arendt G, Becker JT, Brew BJ, Byrd DA, Cherner M, et al. Updated research nosology for HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders. Neurology. 2007;69(18):1789–99. Epub 2007/10/05.
53. Letendre S, Marquie-Beck J, Capparelli E, Best B, Clifford D, Collier AC, et al. Validation of the CNS penetration-effectiveness rank for quantifying antiretroviral penetration into the central nervous system. Arch Neurol. 2008;65(1):65–70. Epub 2008/01/16.
54. Brodt HR, Kamps BS, Gute P, Knupp B, Staszewski S, Helm EB. Changing incidence of AIDS-defining illnesses in the era of antiretroviral combination therapy. AIDS. 1997;11(14):1731–8. Epub 1997/12/05.
55. Klatt EC. Diagnostic findings in patients with acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 1988;1(5):459–65. Epub 1988/01/01.
56. Mellgren A, Antinori A, Cinque P, Price RW, Eggers C, Hagberg L, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid HIV-1 infection usually responds well to antiretroviral treatment. Antivir Ther. 2005;10(6):701–7. Epub 2005/10/13.
57. Neuenburg JK, Brodt HR, Herndier BG, Bickel M, Bacchetti P, Price RW, et al. HIV-related neuropathology, 1985 to 1999: rising prevalence of HIV encephalopathy in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2002;31(2):171–7. Epub 2002/10/24.

58. Letendre SL, McCutchan JA, Childers ME, Woods SP, Lazzaretto D, Heaton RK, et al. Enhancing antiretroviral therapy for human immunodeficiency virus cognitive disorders. Ann Neurol. 2004;56(3):416–23. Epub 2004/09/07.
59. Bhaskaran K, Mussini C, Antinori A, Walker AS, Dorrucci M, Sabin C, et al. Changes in the incidence and predictors of human immunodeficiency virus-associated dementia in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. Ann Neurol. 2008;63(2):213–21. Epub 2007/09/27.
60. Babiker AG, Peto T, Porter K, Walker AS, Darbyshire JH. Age as a determinant of survival in HIV infection. J Clin Epidemiol. 2001;54 Suppl 1:S16–21. Epub 2001/12/26.
61. Valcour V, Shikuma C, Shiramizu B, Watters M, Poff P, Selnes OA, et al. Age, apolipoprotein E4, and the risk of HIV dementia: the Hawaii aging with HIV cohort. J Neuroimmunol. 2004;157(1–2):197–202. Epub 2004/12/08.
62. Johnson T, Nath A. Neurological complications of immune reconstitution in HIV-infected populations. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2010;1184:106–20. Epub 2010/02/12.
63. Heaton RK, Franklin D, Ellis R, McCutchan JA, Letendre S, Leblanc S, CHARTER Group; HNRC Group, et al. HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders before and during the era of combination antiretroviral therapy: differences in rates, nature, and predictors. J Neurovirol. 2011;17(1):3–16.
64. Tozzi V, Balestra P, Lorenzini P, Bellagamba R, Galgani S, Corpolongo A, et al. Prevalence and risk factors for human immunodeficiency virus-associated neurocognitive impairment, 1996 to 2002: results from an urban observational cohort. J Neurovirol. 2005;11(3):265–73. Epub 2005/07/23.
65. Valcour V, Yee P, Williams AE, Shiramizu B, Watters M, Selnes O, et al. Lowest ever CD4 lymphocyte count (CD4 nadir) as a predictor of current cognitive and neurological status in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection—the Hawaii aging with HIV cohort. J Neurovirol. 2006;12(5):387–91. Epub 2006/10/27.
66. Letendre S, Marquie-Beck J, Singh KK, de Almeida S, Zimmerman J, Spector SA, et al. The monocyte chemotactic protein-1–2578G allele is associated with elevated MCP-1 concentrations in cerebrospinal fluid. J Neuroimmunol. 2004;157(1–2):193–6. Epub 2004/12/08.
67. Quasney MW, Zhang Q, Sargent S, Mynatt M, Glass J, McArthur J. Increased frequency of the tumor necrosis factor-alpha-308 A allele in adults with human immunodeficiency virus dementia. Ann Neurol. 2001;50(2):157–62. Epub 2001/08/17.
68. Gonzalez E, Rovin BH, Sen L, Cooke G, Dhanda R, Mummidi S, et al. HIV-1 infection and AIDS dementia are influenced by a mutant MCP-1 allele linked to increased monocyte infiltration of tissues and MCP-1 levels. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99(21):13795–800. Epub 2002/10/11.
69. Bol SM, Booiman T, van Manen D, Bunnik EM, van Sighem AI, Sieberer M, et al. Single nucleotide polymorphism in gene encoding transcription factor Prep1 is associated with HIV-1-associated dementia. PLoS One. 2012;7(2):e30990. Epub 2012/02/22.
70. Crum-Cianflone NF, Moore DJ, Letendre S, Poehlman Roediger M, Eberly L, Weintrob A, et al. Low prevalence of neurocognitive impairment in early diagnosed and managed HIV-infected persons. Neurology. 2013;80(4):371–9. Epub 2013/01/11.
71. Jung A, Maier R, Vartanian JP, Bocharov G, Jung V, Fischer U, et al. Recombination: multiply infected spleen cells in HIV patients. Nature. 2002;418(6894):144. Epub 2002/07/12.
72. Williamson S. Adaptation in the env gene of HIV-1 and evolutionary theories of disease progression. Mol Biol Evol. 2003;20(8):1318–25. Epub 2003/06/05.
73. Shankarappa R, Margolick JB, Gange SJ, Rodrigo AG, Upchurch D, Farzadegan H, et al. Consistent viral evolutionary changes associated with the progression of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. J Virol. 1999;73(12):10489–502. Epub 1999/11/13.
74. Sacktor N, Nakasujja N, Skolasky RL, Rezapour M, Robertson K, Musisi S, et al. HIV subtype D is associated with dementia, compared with subtype A, in immunosuppressed individuals at risk of cognitive impairment in Kampala, Uganda. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49(5):780–6. Epub 2009/07/23.

75. Liu SL, Mittler JE, Nickle DC, Mulvania TM, Shriner D, Rodrigo AG, et al. Selection for human immunodeficiency virus type 1 recombinants in a patient with rapid progression to AIDS. J Virol. 2002;76(21):10674–84. Epub 2002/10/09.
76. Najera R, Delgado E, Perez-Alvarez L, Thomson MM. Genetic recombination and its role in the development of the HIV-1 pandemic. AIDS. 2002;16 Suppl 4:S3–16. Epub 2003/04/18.
77. Blankson JN, Persaud D, Siliciano RF. The challenge of viral reservoirs in HIV-1 infection. Annu Rev Med. 2002;53:557–93. Epub 2002/01/31.
78. Morris A, Marsden M, Halcrow K, Hughes ES, Brettle RP, Bell JE, et al. Mosaic structure of the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 genome infecting lymphoid cells and the brain: evidence for frequent in vivo recombination events in the evolution of regional populations. J Virol. 1999;73(10):8720–31. Epub 1999/09/11.
79. Bell JE, Brettle RP, Chiswick A, Simmonds P. HIV encephalitis, proviral load and dementia in drug users and homosexuals with AIDS. Effect of neocortical involvement. Brain. 1998;121 (Pt 11):2043–52. Epub 1998/11/25.
80. Kim MT, Hill MN. Validity of self-report of illicit drug use in young hypertensive urban African American males. Addict Behav. 2003;28(4):795–802. Epub 2003/05/03.
81. Gaskill PJ, Calderon TM, Luers AJ, Eugenin EA, Javitch JA, Berman JW. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection of human macrophages is increased by dopamine: a bridge between HIV-associated neurologic disorders and drug abuse. Am J Pathol. 2009;175(3):1148–59. Epub 2009/08/08.
82. Li Y, Wang X, Tian S, Guo CJ, Douglas SD, Ho WZ. Methadone enhances human immunodeficiency virus infection of human immune cells. J Infect Dis. 2002;185(1):118–22. Epub 2002/01/05.
83. Fiala M, Eshleman AJ, Cashman J, Lin J, Lossinsky AS, Suarez V, et al. Cocaine increases human immunodeficiency virus type 1 neuroinvasion through remodeling brain microvascular endothelial cells. J Neurovirol. 2005;11(3):281–91. Epub 2005/07/23.
84. Forton DM, Thomas HC, Murphy CA, Allsop JM, Foster GR, Main J, et al. Hepatitis C and cognitive impairment in a cohort of patients with mild liver disease. Hepatology. 2002;35(2):433–9. Epub 2002/02/05.
85. Brew BJ, Crowe SM, Landay A, Cysique LA, Guillemin G. Neurodegeneration and ageing in the HAART era. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2009;4(2):163–74. Epub 2008/12/11.
86. Letendre S. Central nervous system complications in HIV disease: HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder. Top Antivir Med. 2011;19(4):137–42. Epub 2011/12/14.
87. Brew BJ. Benefit or toxicity from neurologically targeted antiretroviral therapy? Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50(6):930–2. Epub 2010/02/12.
88. Winston A, Duncombe C, Li PC, Gill JM, Kerr SJ, Puls R, et al. Does choice of combination antiretroviral therapy (cART) alter changes in cerebral function testing after 48 weeks in treatment-naive, HIV-1-infected individuals commencing cART? A randomized, controlled study. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50(6):920–9. Epub 2010/02/12.
89. Wright EJ, Grund B, Robertson K, Brew BJ, Roediger M, Bain MP, et al. Cardiovascular risk factors associated with lower baseline cognitive performance in HIV-positive persons. Neurology. 2010;75(10):864–73. Epub 2010/08/13.
90. Everall I, Vaida F, Khanlou N, Lazzaretto D, Achim C, Letendre S, et al. Cliniconeuropathologic correlates of human immunodeficiency virus in the era of antiretroviral therapy. J Neurovirol. 2009;15(5–6):360–70. Epub 2010/02/24.
91. Desplats P, Dumaop W, Smith D, Adame A, Everall I, Letendre S, et al. Molecular and pathologic insights from latent HIV-1 infection in the human brain. Neurology. 2013;80(15): 1415–23. Epub 2013/03/15.
92. Gelman BB, Lisinicchia JG, Morgello S, Masliah E, Commins D, Achim CL, et al. Neurovirological correlation with HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders and encephalitis in a HAART-era cohort. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2013;62(5):487–95. Epub 2012/12/18.
93. Li W, Li G, Steiner J, Nath A. Role of Tat protein in HIV neuropathogenesis. Neurotox Res. 2009;16(3):205–20. Epub 2009/06/16.

94. Borjabad A, Morgello S, Chao W, Kim SY, Brooks AI, Murray J, et al. Significant effects of antiretroviral therapy on global gene expression in brain tissues of patients with HIV-1-associated neurocognitive disorders. PLoS Pathog. 2011;7(9):e1002213. Epub 2011/09/13.
95. Gelman BB, Chen T, Lisinicchia JG, Soukup VM, Carmical JR, Starkey JM, et al. The National NeuroAIDS Tissue Consortium brain gene array: two types of HIV-associated neurocognitive impairment. PLoS One. 2012;7(9):e46178. Epub 2012/10/11.
96. Levine AJ, Miller JA, Shapshak P, Gelman B, Singer EJ, Hinkin CH, et al. Systems analysis of human brain gene expression: mechanisms for HIV-associated neurocognitive impairment and common pathways with Alzheimer's disease. BMC Med Genomics. 2013;6:4. Epub 2013/02/15.

Herpes Simplex Virus Infections of the Central Nervous System

Richard J. Whitley

Abstract Herpes simplex virus infections of the central nervous system are associated with significant morbidity in spite of efficacious antiviral therapy. Herpes simplex virus, type 1 (HSV-1), causes focal neurologic findings that are characteristic of temporal lobe localization. Herpes simplex encephalitis occurs in a biphasic age distribution with one-third of the cases less than 20 and the majority of remaining cases over 50. The diagnostic test of choice is the detection of HSV DNA by PCR in the cerebrospinal fluid. Acyclovir is the treatment of choice and is administered for 14–21 days intravenously at a dose of 10 mg/kg every 8 h. Neonatal HSV infections are more frequently caused by HSV-2 than HSV-1, although the number of cases of the latter is increasing. Infection is most frequently acquired intrapartum by contact with infected maternal genital secretions. Approximately 50 % of all newborns with neonatal infection will have central nervous system involvement. Importantly, HSV-2 infections of the central nervous system in neonates have a poorer outcome than those attributable to HSV-1. Therapy of neonatal infection is achieved with high-dose acyclovir that is administered at 20 mg/kg/every 8 h for 14–21 days. Six months of oral acyclovir post-intravenous treatment has resulted in an improved neurologic outcome for children with central nervous system infection. Likely, in the future, combination antiviral approaches will be employed for both adult and pediatric disease in order to improve neurologic outcome.

Keywords Herpesvirus • Herpes simplex encephalitis • Acyclovir • Polymerase chain reaction • Latency • Neonatal herpes virus infection

---

R.J. Whitley, M.D. (✉)
The University of Alabama at Birmingham, Chb 303, 1600 7th Avenue South, Birmingham, AL 35233-1711, USA
e-mail: Rwhitley@peds.uab.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_13, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

1 Introduction

Eight herpesviruses routinely cause human disease. There are three subfamilies: alpha (herpes simplex virus 1 (HSV-1), HSV-2, and varicella-zoster virus (VZV)), beta (cytomegalovirus (CMV), human herpesvirus-6 (HHV-6), and HHV-7), and gamma (Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) and Kaposi sarcoma herpesvirus (i.e., HHV-8)). Members of the alpha herpesvirus subfamily are characterized by a very short reproductive cycle, prompt destruction of the host cell, and ability to establish latency, usually in sensory ganglia. Its two leading members—HSV-1 and HSV-2 as causes of CNS disease—are the subject of this chapter.

2 History

Infections caused by HSV have been recognized since the time of ancient Greece. Greek physicians used the word *herpes* to mean "creeping" or "crawling" in reference to skin lesions. Likely, this word was used to describe various skin conditions ranging from cancer to shingles and probably even fever blisters. The Roman scholar Herodotus associated mouth ulcers and lip vesicles with fever [1]. He called this event *herpes febrilis*. Genital herpetic infections were described first by Astruc, a physician to the French royalty [2].

The transmissibility of these viruses was established unequivocally by passage of virus from human lip and genital lesions to either the cornea or the scarified skin of the rabbit [3]. Goodpasture [4] further demonstrated that material derived from the lesions of herpes labialis consistently produced encephalitis when inoculated onto the scarified cornea of rabbits.

Since the first suggestions of herpes simplex encephalitis (HSE) by the Mathewson Commission in 1926 [5] and subsequent description of the histopathologic changes [6], HSV is reported as the most common cause of sporadic fatal encephalitis in the United States [7]. Intranuclear inclusion bodies consistent with HSV infection were first demonstrated in the brain of a neonate with encephalitis [6] in 1941, as is described later in this chapter. Virus was subsequently isolated from this brain tissue [6]. The first adult case of HSE providing similar proof of viral disease (i.e., intranuclear inclusions in brain tissue and virus isolation) was described in 1944 [8]. The most striking pathologic findings in this patient's brain were apparent in the left temporal lobe, where perivascular cuffs of lymphocytes and numerous small hemorrhages were identified. This temporal lobe localization is characteristic of adult HSE, and it differs from the patchy diffuse encephalitis of neonates with HSV brain infection.

In the mid-1960s, Nahmias and Dowdle [9] demonstrated two antigenic types of HSV. Viral typing allowed the demonstration that HSV-1 was virtually uniformly responsible for herpes encephalitis in older children and adults. In contrast, infection of the newborn brain is attributable to HSV-1 or HSV-2 but more frequently the latter.

3 Pathology and Pathogenesis

Recent detailed reviews highlight the importance of these organisms as models of viral replication and as pathogens for human infection [10–13].

3.1 Pathology of CNS Disease

HSE results in acute inflammation, congestion, and/or hemorrhage, most prominently in the temporal lobes and usually asymmetrically in adults [14] and more diffusely in the newborn. Adjacent limbic areas show involvement as well. The meninges overlying the temporal lobes may appear clouded or congested. After approximately 2 weeks, these changes proceed to frank necrosis and liquefaction.

Microscopically, involvement extends beyond areas that appear grossly abnormal. At the earliest stage, the histologic changes are not dramatic and may be nonspecific. Congestion of capillaries and other small vessels in the cortex and subcortical white matter is evident; other changes include the development of petechiae. Vascular changes that have been reported in the area of infection include areas of hemorrhagic necrosis and perivascular cuffing. The perivascular cuffing becomes prominent in the second and third weeks of infection. Glial nodules are common after the second week [15, 16]. The microscopic appearance becomes dominated by evidence of necrosis and inflammation; the latter is characterized by a diffuse perivascular subarachnoid mononuclear cell infiltrate, gliosis, and satellitosis neuronophagia [14, 17]. In such cases, widespread areas of hemorrhagic necrosis, mirroring the area of infection, become most prominent. Oligodendrocytic involvement and gliosis (as well as astrocytosis) are common, but these changes develop very late in the disease. Although found in only approximately 50 % of patients, the presence of intranuclear inclusions supports the diagnosis of viral infection, and these inclusions are most often visible in the first week of infection. Intranuclear inclusions (Cowdry type A inclusions) are characterized by an eosinophilic homogeneous appearance and are often surrounded by a clear, unstained zone beyond which lies a rim of marginated chromatin.

3.2 General Observations on the Pathogenesis of Human Disease

The pathogenesis of human disease depends on intimate, personal contact of a susceptible individual (namely, one who is seronegative) with someone excreting HSV. Virus must come in contact with mucosal surfaces or abraded skin for infection to occur. With viral replication at the site of infection, the capsid is transported by neurons to the dorsal root ganglia, where after another round of viral replication, latency is established. Transport of the virion is by retrograde axonal flow [18]. In some instances, replication can lead to severe CNS infection; however, more often a host–virus interaction results in latency. After latency is established, reactivation

can occur, with virus shedding at mucocutaneous sites appearing as skin vesicles or mucosal ulcers or being completely asymptomatic. Occasionally, primary infection can become systemic, affecting other organ systems besides the CNS and the peripheral nervous system. Such circumstances include disseminated neonatal HSV infection with multiorgan involvement, multiorgan disease of pregnancy, and infrequently dissemination in patients undergoing immunosuppressive therapy. Multiorgan disease is likely the consequence of viremia in a host not capable of limiting replication to mucosal surfaces.

3.3 Pathogenesis of Latency

All of the herpesviruses have the ability to become latent, persist in an apparent inactive state for varying durations, and be reactivated by a provocative stimulus, as yet unidentified [11, 19–24]. As a biologic phenomenon, latency has been recognized since the beginning of the twentieth century [19, 21–23, 25–31]. In 1905, Cushing [32] noted that patients treated for trigeminal neuralgia (by sectioning a branch of the trigeminal nerve) developed HSV lesions along the innervated areas of the sectioned branch, as suggested previously by Goodpasture [33]. Several investigators have demonstrated that microvascular surgery of the trigeminal nerve tract for tic douloureux resulted in recurrent herpetic lesions in more than 90 % of seropositive individuals [34–37]. Axonal injury and attempts at excision of lesions have been associated with recurrences [38, 39]. Reactivation of latent virus appears to depend on an intact anterior nerve route and peripheral nerve pathways [40].

Recurrences occur despite both cell-mediated and humoral immune responses and can be either symptomatic or asymptomatic. Recurrences are spontaneous, but there have been associations with physical or emotional stress, fever, exposure to ultraviolet light, tissue damage, and immune suppression [23, 30, 41, 42]. Viral DNA can be detected in neuronal tissue in the absence of cutaneous lesions [22, 27, 43–48]. Latent virus has been retrieved from the trigeminal, sacral, and vagal ganglia of humans [19, 25, 26, 44, 48].

3.4 Pathogenesis of Encephalitis

The pathogenesis of HSE in older children (older than 3 months) and adults is only partly understood. Both primary and recurrent HSV infections can cause disease of the CNS. From studies performed by the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) Collaborative Antiviral Study Group (CASG), approximately one-third of the cases of HSE are the consequence of primary infection. For the most part, the patients with primary infection are younger than 18 years. The remaining two-thirds of cases occur in the presence of preexisting antibodies, but

only approximately 10 % of patients have a history of recurrent herpes labialis. Patients with preexisting antibodies are considered to have HSE as a consequence of reactivation of HSV [49]. When the DNA from the peripheral nervous system (labial) and CNS isolates are compared by restriction endonuclease analysis, the isolates are usually identical; however, this is not always the case. The virus isolated from the peripheral site can be different from that retrieved from the CNS [50]. Thus, the issues of reactivation of virus directly within the CNS, the potential for enhanced neurotropism of certain viruses, and the selective reactivation and access of one virus by the trigeminal route or other routes to the CNS remain for further elucidation.

The route of access of virus to the CNS in primary infection is a subject of debate, especially in humans. Studies performed more than five decades ago defined pathways for HSV access to the brain in animals, including both the olfactory and trigeminal nerves among others [51]. However, which of these nerve tracts uniformly leads to HSV infection in the CNS of humans is not clear. The anatomic distribution of nerves from the olfactory tract into the limbic system, along with the recovery of virus from the temporal lobe (the site of apparent onset of HSE in the human brain), suggests that viral access to the CNS via this route is a tenable hypothesis. Reports in the literature have found electron microscopic evidence that suggests this has been the case in some individuals with HSE [52–55]. Animal model data support the contention that the olfactory tract provides one neurologic avenue for viral access to the CNS and causes localization of the infection in brain regions analogous to medial temporal structures in humans [56, 57]. Definitive proof of such progression in humans is lacking.

Reactivation of HSV, leading to focal HSE, is a similarly confusing problem from the standpoint of pathogenesis. Evidence of latent virus within infected brain tissue exists [58]; however, virus reactivation at that site remains purely hypothetical. Reactivation of virus peripherally (namely, in the olfactory bulb or the trigeminal ganglion) with subsequent neuronal transmission to the CNS has been suggested [51, 57, 59, 60]. Nevertheless, a relevant observation is that with recurrent herpes labialis, whereby reactivation of virus from the trigeminal ganglia occurs, HSE is a very uncommon event. Furthermore, HSE does not occur more frequently in immunocompromised patients. In addition, individuals who are seropositive for HSV and have brain tissue examined for the detection of HSV DNA by PCR will have detectable DNA in multiple areas of the brain and not just localized to the temporal lobe [25].

Host immunity plays an important, but undefined, role in the pathogenesis of HSE. Possibly, the CNS is particularly prone to HSV infection because intraneuronal spread may shelter virus from host defense mechanisms. HSE is no more common in the immunosuppressed host than in the normal host; however, when it does occur, the presentation is atypical, with a subacute but progressively deteriorating course [61].

More recently, a host genetic deficiency has been found to play a role in recurrent HSE but certainly does not exist in all patients [62].

4 Epidemiology

4.1 Herpes Simplex Virus, Type 1

The epidemiology of HSV infections is multifaceted. Because the focus of this book is CNS inflammation and infection, only a brief review of non-CNS HSV infections follows. The reader is referred to more complete reviews [13, 63–65]. HSV infections are distributed worldwide and have been reported in both developed and developing countries, including remote Brazilian tribes [66]. Animal vectors for human HSV infections have not been described; therefore, humans remain the sole reservoir for transmission of these viruses to other humans during close personal contact. There is no seasonal variation in the incidence of infection. Because infection is rarely fatal, and because these viruses become latent, more than two-thirds of the world's population can have recurrent HSV infections and can transmit HSV during episodes of reactivation. HSV disease ranges from totally asymptomatic in most patients to sporadic, severe, and life-threatening disease in a few infants, children, and adults. With clinical illness, oropharyngeal disease, namely gingivostomatitis, usually is the manifestation. The identification of primary gingivostomatitis that was proven to be caused by HSV infection [67, 68] led to the definition of the natural history of infection, including the appearance of neutralizing antibodies [69], absence of virus shedding in children younger than 6 months [70], and a higher rate of occurrence among individuals of lower socioeconomic status. Contemporary surveys document the viral shedding data, ranging from 2 to 5 % [71–78].

Antibody surveys have helped clarify the epidemiology of HSV infection. Geographic location, socioeconomic status, and age all influence the acquisition of HSV infection [67, 79–82]. In developing countries, seroconversion occurs early in life. In Brazilian Indians, HSV antibodies are detectable in more than 95 % of children by the age of 15 years [83]. Similarly, serologic studies performed in New Orleans demonstrated acquisition of antibodies in more than 90 % of children by the age of 15 years [84]. In developing countries, such as Uruguay, or in lower socioeconomic populations in the central United States, the appearance of antibodies occurred at similar but lower frequencies [84–87]. By 5 years of age, approximately one-third of patients had seroconverted; this frequency increased to 70 to 80 % by early adolescence.

Middle-class individuals of industrialized societies acquired infection later in life. Seroconversion occurred during the first 5 years of life in 20 % of children; there was no significant increase until the second and third decades of life, at which time the prevalence of antibodies increased to 40 and 60 %, respectively [88, 89]. One study of university students demonstrated that seroconversion of susceptible individuals occurred at an annual frequency of approximately 5 to 10 % [90–92]. In summary, primary infection occurs very early in children of underdeveloped countries and in those of lower socioeconomic classes; however, in developed countries and more affluent classes, primary infection is delayed until adolescence or, perhaps, even adulthood. The frequency of direct person-to-person contact is the major mediator of acquisition of infection.

4.2 Herpes Simplex Virus, Type 2

Because HSV-2 infections are usually acquired through sexual contact, antibodies to this virus are rarely found before the age at onset of sexual activity. Although most genital HSV infections are caused by HSV-2, an ever-increasing proportion is attributable to HSV-1, now as high as 50 % of all new primary infections [93–97]. Approximately 1.5 million new cases of HSV-2 occur annually in the United States [98]. Genital HSV infections are not reportable in the United States [99]. Current estimates of infected individuals with genital herpes in the United States range from 40 to 60 million [99–101].

Women have the highest rates of infection, particularly prostitutes and others with multiple sex partners, including those with HIV infection. The incidence of genital HSV infections in both indigent women and those of middle and upper socioeconomic classes is significantly lower than the incidence found among women attending sexually transmitted disease clinics [102]. As with HSV-1 infections of the mouth, HSV-2 can be excreted in the absence of symptoms at the time of primary, initial, or recurrent infection [103, 104]. The actual frequency of asymptomatic excretion of HSV-2 in women by culture is approximately 3 to 5 % of all days, and by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) 15 to 20 %. Furthermore, some individuals can start and stop shedding multiple times during the same day [105]. Its occurrence creates a silent reservoir for transmission of infection [105, 106]. The appearance of HSV-2 antibodies reflects the time of exposure or more simply the acquisition of infection and is positively correlated with the onset of sexual activity [86, 87, 107]. However, crowded living conditions may indirectly contribute to antibody prevalence [108, 109]. If HSV-2 type-specific antibodies are sought in healthy women, there is a wide discrepancy in prevalence, ranging from averages of 10 % in England and Italy to 25 % in the United States and 77 % in Uganda [110, 111]. Up to 50 to 60 % of lower socioeconomic populations in the United States and elsewhere develop antibodies to HSV-2 by adulthood [11]. The reader is referred to a review for worldwide seroprevalence of HSV-2 [112]. Seroprevalence is a function of age, number of sexual partners, race, and marital status [113–115].

4.3 Latent Genital Herpes Simplex Virus Infections

Latent genital infection with subsequent reactivation is the largest reservoir for transmission of HSV-2. As with HSV-1 infection, recurrent HSV-2 infection can be either symptomatic or asymptomatic; however, recurrence is usually associated with a shorter duration of viral shedding and fewer lesions [93]. Several studies have implicated a frequency of recurrence as high as 60 % [107, 116]. The type of genital infection, HSV-1 versus HSV-2, is predictive of the frequency of recurrence [116–118], with HSV-1 infection recurring less frequently than HSV-2 [119, 120].

5 Herpes Simplex Encephalitis

5.1 Background

HSV infections of the CNS are among the most severe of all viral infections of the human brain. Currently, HSE is estimated to occur in approximately 1 per 250,000–500,000 individuals per year. At the University of Alabama at Birmingham, the diagnosis of HSE was proven by brain biopsy in an average of ten patients per year, for an incidence of approximately 1 in 300,000 individuals, an incidence similar to those in Sweden and England [121, 122]. With the advent of PCR for diagnostic purposes, HSE accounts for 10 to 20 % of viral infections of the CNS [123].

The economic cost of HSE is considerable, as estimated in 1983 for hospitalization alone of adults to be more than $25 million [124, 125]. The total medical cost is considerably higher because of the long-term care and support services required for many of the survivors.

HSE occurs throughout the year and in patients of all ages, with approximately one-third of cases occurring in patients younger than 20 years but older than 6 months and approximately one-half in patients older than 50 years [126]. Whites account for 95 % of patients with biopsy-proven disease. Both sexes are affected equally.

The severity of disease is best determined by the outcome of patients who have received either no therapy or an ineffective antiviral medication, such as idoxuridine or cytosine arabinoside. In such situations, mortality is in excess of 70 %; only approximately 2.5 % of all patients with confirmed disease (9.1 % of survivors) returned to normal function after recovery from their illness [127–131]. Because brain biopsy with isolation of HSV from brain tissue was the method of diagnosis in these early studies, a far broader spectrum of HSV infections of the CNS actually was thought to exist. However, with the more recent use of PCR for diagnosis of HSE, virtually all patients have a focal neurologic disease, suggesting a limited spectrum of disease [132].

5.2 Diagnosis

Several aspects relating to the diagnosis of HSE merit discussion: (a) the clinical presentation in regard to the sensitivity and specificity of various clinical characteristics, (b) the historical use of brain biopsy to establish the diagnosis, (c) conditions that mimic HSE, and (d) noninvasive means of diagnosis. Data from the NIAID CASG compare presentation and outcome for brain biopsy-positive and brain biopsy-negative patients [126].

Most patients with biopsy-proven HSE presented with a focal encephalopathic process, including (a) altered mentation and decreasing levels of consciousness with focal neurologic findings, (b) CSF pleocytosis and proteinosis, (c) the absence of bacterial and fungal pathogens in the CSF, and (d) focal electroencephalographic

(EEG), computed tomographic (CT), and/or magnetic resonance image (MRI) findings [126]. The frequency of headache and CSF pleocytosis is higher in patients with proven HSE than in patients with diseases that mimic HSE. Nearly uniformly, patients with HSE present with fever and personality change. Seizures, whether focal or generalized, occur in only approximately two-thirds of all patients with proven disease. Thus, the clinical findings of HSE are nonspecific and do not allow for empirical diagnosis of disease predicated solely on clinical presentation. Although clinical evidence of a localized temporal lobe lesion is often thought to indicate HSE, various other diseases can mimic this condition.

Examination of the CSF is indicated in patients with fever and altered mentation, provided it is not contraindicated because of increased intracranial pressure. In patients with HSE, CSF findings are nondiagnostic, being similar in patients with confirmed disease or diseases that mimic HSE. Both the CSF white blood cell (WBC) count (lymphocyte predominance) and the CSF protein level are elevated. The average CSF WBC count is 100 cells/μL; the protein averages approximately 100 mg/dL. Sequential evaluation of CSF specimens from patients with HSE indicates increasing cell counts and levels of protein. The presence of CSF red blood cells is not diagnostic for HSE and indeed is absent in 30 % of cases. Approximately 5 to 10 % of patients have a normal CSF formula on first evaluation.

Noninvasive neurodiagnostic studies support a presumptive diagnosis of HSE. These studies have included EEG, CT, and MRI. Focal changes of the EEG are characterized by spike and slow-wave activity and periodic lateralized epileptiform discharges, which arise from the temporal lobe [133–136]. Early in the disease, the abnormal electric activity usually involves one temporal lobe and then spreads to the contralateral temporal lobe as the disease evolves, usually over 7–10 days. The sensitivity of the EEG is approximately 84 %, but the specificity is only 32.5 %. CT scans initially show low-density areas with mass effect localized to the temporal lobe, which can progress to radiolucent and/or hemorrhagic lesions [137, 138]. Bitemporal disease is common in the absence of therapy, particularly late in the disease course. When these neurodiagnostic tests are used in combination, the sensitivity is enhanced; however, the specificity remains inadequate. None of these neurodiagnostic tests is uniformly satisfactory for diagnosing HSE. MRI detects evidence of HSE earlier than CT scan [139].

PCR detection of HSV DNA in the CSF has become the diagnostic procedure of choice. Brain biopsy is of value in confusing clinical presentations not been substantiated by follow-up studies of patients in the NIAID CASG.

5.3 Serologic Evaluation

Several strategies using antibody production as a means of diagnosing HSE have been utilized [71]. Because most encephalitic patients are HSV seropositive at presentation, seroconversion per se is usually not helpful because fever alone can reactivate labial herpes, resulting in antibody elevations. A fourfold rise in serum antibody was neither sensitive nor specific enough to be useful. A fourfold or greater

rise in CSF antibody occurred significantly more often within a month after onset of disease in patients with biopsy-proven HSE: 85 % versus 29 %. By 10 days after clinical presentation, however, only 50 % of brain biopsy-positive patients had a fourfold rise in CSF antibody. This test is useful only for retrospective diagnosis. The use of a ratio of serum to CSF antibody of 20 or less did not improve sensitivity during the first 10 days of disease.

5.4 PCR Detection of Viral DNA

PCR detection of HSV DNA in the CSF is the diagnostic method of choice [140–147]. Data from the NIAID CASG defined the sensitivity and specificity as 94 and 98 %, respectively. These CSF specimens were obtained from patients with biopsy-proven or biopsy-negative disease. Notably, the specificity would have been higher except that some tissue specimens were fixed in formalin, which killed infectious virus. HSV DNA persisted in 80 % of tested CSF specimens for 1 week or more.

5.5 Diseases That Mimic Herpes Simplex Encephalitis

In a compilation of the NIAID CASG data, 193 (45 %) of 432 patients undergoing brain biopsy for a focal encephalopathic process had HSE [148]. The remaining patients were evaluated for diseases that mimic HSE [148]. Thirty-eight had disease amenable to other forms of therapy, including brain abscess, tuberculosis, cryptococcal infection, and brain tumor. An additional 19 patients had diseases that were indirectly treatable, and another 38 patients had an alternative diagnosis established for which there was no current therapy, usually other viral infections. Thus, those diseases that mimic HSV infection of the CNS and that require immediate medical intervention should be considered if the PCR is negative for HSV DNA.

5.6 Therapy

The first antiviral drug reported as efficacious therapy of HSE was idoxuridine; however, it was soon proven both ineffective and toxic [127]. Subsequent therapeutic trials defined vidarabine as a useful medication for the management of biopsy-proven HSE [130, 131]; however, it has been replaced by acyclovir in the physician's armamentarium. During these studies, the variables of age, disease duration, and level of consciousness at the onset of therapy were proven major determinants of clinical outcome. Patients younger than 30 years and with a more normal level of consciousness (lethargic as opposed to comatose) were more likely to return to normal function than older patients, especially those who were semicomatose or

comatose. From these data, older patients (older than 30 years), whether comatose or semicomatose, had mortality rates that approached 70 %, a figure very similar to that encountered in the placebo recipients of the previously cited studies. If therapy is to be effective, it must be instituted before the onset of hemorrhagic necrosis of a dominant temporal lobe and significant deterioration of consciousness.

Acyclovir is superior to vidarabine for the treatment of HSE [149]. The NIAID CASG study defined a mortality of 55 % at 6 and 18 months after the initiation of treatment for vidarabine recipients versus 19 and 28 %, respectively, for the acyclovir group. Late deaths were not a consequence of either persistent or reactivated HSV infection but occurred in patients who were severely impaired as a consequence of their disease. Acyclovir decreases mortality to 19 % 6 months after therapy. Importantly, 38 % of patients, irrespective of age, return to normal function.

Previous studies indicated that age and level of consciousness influenced long-term outcome. A more objective reflection of level of consciousness is the Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS). Scores that approached normal predicted enhanced survival. When GCS score and age were assessed simultaneously, a GCS score of 6 or less predicted a poor therapeutic outcome, irrespective of the agent administered or of the age of the patient [149].

Regarding morbidity for acyclovir recipients, 38 % of patients returned to normal or with minor impairment, 9 % of patients had moderate sequelae, and 53 % of patients were left with severe impairment or died. Relapse of HSE has been reported, though not well documented, in a few patients following the administration of vidarabine [150–152] and acyclovir [152, 153]. Many patients were not afebrile at the conclusion of treatment, suggesting that a longer duration of therapy to a minimum of 14–21 days may be desirable.

Of acyclovir recipients, 10 % experienced an increased BUN level, and 6 % developed a creatinine level in excess of 2 mg/dL. No clinical evidence of toxicity was detected. The current therapy of choice for the management of HSE is acyclovir. This drug is administered at a dosage of 10 mg/kg every 8 h (30 mg/kg per day) for 14–21 days.

6 Neonatal Herpes Simplex Virus Infections

6.1 History

In 1941, Smith, Lennette, and Reames [6] reported the first case of HSV infection of the CNS, as noted earlier. This case occurred in a newborn with neonatal HSE. In 1952, Zuelzer, Wolf, and Stulbery [154] reviewed eight cases of disseminated HSV infection in neonates with involvement of most organs, including the brain in many instances. This report was followed shortly by others indicating the association between HSV infection of the newborn and necrotizing encephalitis, including the isolation of HSV in cell cultures from brain tissue.

6.2 Pathology and Pathogenesis

6.2.1 Pathology

Although the pathology of HSE is discussed earlier in this chapter, a few characteristics appear more commonly in the newborn. Gross examination of the brain often reveals encephalomalacia and hydranencephaly, which are the consequence of extensive hemorrhagic necrosis. Porencephaly, hydranencephaly, and multicystic lesions are often sequelae in neonates who survive for several weeks or months following neonatal HSV infection of the brain. The microscopic appearance of the brain is characterized by a mononuclear inflammation, necrosis, and hemorrhage.

6.2.2 Pathogenesis

In utero disease is likely a consequence of transplacental infection and usually involves skin, brain, eye, liver, and adrenals. More commonly, the fetus comes in contact with infected maternal genital secretions at the time of delivery. Viral replication in the newborn either remains limited to the portal of entry—namely, the skin, eye, or mouth—or progresses to involve various other organs, including the brain (resulting in encephalitis), causing life-threatening disease. Host mechanisms responsible for control of viral replication at the site of entry are unknown. For babies with encephalitis, intraneuronal transmission of virus provides a privileged site that may be impervious to circulating humoral and cell-mediated defense mechanisms. Thus, transplacental maternal antibodies may be of less value in the prevention of encephalitic forms of neonatal HSV infections. Disseminated infection is a consequence of viremia or secondary to extensive cell-to-cell spread, as occurs with pneumonitis after aspiration of infected secretions.

Neonatal HSE illustrates the two major pathogenic routes for virus access to the brain, namely, hematogenous and intraneuronal. For example, hematogenous spread of virus usually occurs with disseminated disease, and diffuse involvement of the brain ensues in 60 to 80 % of patients. In contrast, neuronal transmission probably results in the focal CNS disease encountered in babies with encephalitis only when no distal organ involvement is documented [155].

6.3 Times of Transmission of Infection

Neonatal HSV infection is acquired at one of three times: in utero, intrapartum, or postnatally. Regardless of the time or route of acquisition, the newborn is at risk of CNS disease. Certainly, the mother is the most common source of infection for the first two of these routes of transmission of infection to the newborn.

6.3.1 Intrauterine Infection

In utero acquisition of HSV infection is becoming increasingly documented [156–159]. Manifestations of disease acquired in utero include chorioretinitis, cutaneous aplasia, hydranencephaly, and encephalomalacia [160]. Risk factors associated with intrauterine transmission of infection are unknown; however, both primary and recurrent maternal infection can result in infection of the fetus in utero. In utero infection is the consequence of either transplacental or ascending infection.

6.3.2 Intrapartum Infection

The most common time of transmission of infection from mother to the fetus is intrapartum. Transmission occurs when the infant comes in contact with infected maternal genital secretions at delivery, accounting for 80 % of cases [161].

Prospective assessment of HSV excretion in the genital tract at delivery indicates that shedding can occur in 0.5–1.3 % of women [162]. Factors that influence intrapartum acquisition of infection by the fetus include: (a) type of maternal infection (primary vs. recurrent) [93, 163], (b) maternal antibody status [164–166], (c) duration of ruptured membranes [164], and (d) placement of a fetal scalp monitor in a woman excreting HSV [167, 168].

Primary infection is associated with (a) larger quantities of HSV replicating in the genital tract (>10^6 viral particles/0.2 mL of tissue culture inoculum) and (b) a period of viral excretion that on average persists for 3 weeks. In contrast, in women with recurrent genital infection, HSV is shed for an average of only 2–5 days and at lower concentrations (approximately 10^3/0.2 mL of tissue culture inoculum). Because of the larger quantity of virus and the longer period of viral excretion, primary maternal infection is associated with a higher rate of transmission to the fetus—estimated between 30 and 50 % [93, 163, 169]. Reflecting the type of maternal infection, the delivery of transplacental maternal antibody to the fetus influences both the severity of disease in the newborn and the likelihood of fetal infection [164–166, 170]. Lastly, placement of a fetal scalp monitor in women excreting virus has been shown to lead to fetal infection. Monitor placement should be discouraged in women with a history of genital herpes or visualized lesions.

The duration of ruptured membranes is reported to be an important indicator of risk for acquisition of neonatal infection. Recent data suggest that cesarean section decreases the incidence of infection in women with lesions present at delivery [169].

6.3.3 Postnatal Infection

The third route of transmission is postnatal acquisition [171–178]. Documented sources include the mother (including the breast as a source of virus [171–173]), the father (labial lesions) [174, 175], nosocomial transmission (nursery personnel or other babies) [176–178], and as a consequence of the Jewish tradition of circumcision, known as mitzba ba pa (sp, CDC).

6.4 Incidence and Presentation of Neonatal Infection

The incidence of neonatal HSV infection is about 1 in 3,000 (0.03 %) deliveries [155]. Overall, two-thirds of children with neonatal HSV infection develop disease of the CNS, and the disease may remain localized to the brain or become disseminated to involve various other organs. If untreated, newborns with disseminated disease have a mortality of 80 %, and newborns with disease limited to the CNS have a mortality of approximately 50 %.

Classification of newborns with HSV infection is mandatory for prognostic and therapeutic considerations [164, 179]. Babies with congenital infection, by definition, must be identified within 48 h of birth. Those babies who are infected (either during delivery or postnatally) are divided into three categories: (a) those with disease localized to the skin, eye, or mouth; (b) those having encephalitis with or without skin, eye, and/or mouth involvement; and (c) those having disseminated disease involving multiple organs, such as CNS, lung, liver, adrenals, skin, eye, and/or mouth. This chapter focuses on CNS disease and considers prospectively acquired data obtained through the NIAID CASG. All babies, irrespective of disease classification, should be considered at risk for CNS complications of infection. The presentation and outcome of infection (particularly prognosis after therapy) according to category vary significantly with regard to both mortality and morbidity.

6.5 Intrauterine Infection

Intrauterine infection is usually apparent at birth and is characterized by a triad of findings: (a) skin vesicles and/or scarring (cuteus aplasia), (b) eye disease (chorioretinitis, optic atrophy), and (c) brain disease (microcephaly, encephalomalacia, or hydranencephaly). Retinitis alone can be a presenting sign and should alert the pediatrician to the possibility of intrauterine HSV infection, although HSV infection is a less common cause of chorioretinitis relative to other congenital infections. The frequency of occurrence of intrauterine HSV infection has been estimated to range between 1 in 100,000 (0.001 %) and 1 in 200,000 (0.0005 %) deliveries [156].

6.6 Disseminated Infection

Disseminated HSV infection has the worst prognosis with regard to mortality. Children with disseminated infection usually present to tertiary medical centers for therapy between 9 and 11 days of life; however, signs of infection are, on average, usually present 4–5 days earlier.

The principal organs involved following disseminated infection are the liver, brain, and adrenals; however, infection can involve various other organs, including the larynx, trachea, lungs, esophagus, stomach, lower gastrointestinal tract, spleen, kidneys, pancreas, and heart. Constitutional signs and symptoms include irritability,

seizures, respiratory distress, jaundice, bleeding diatheses, and shock, in addition to a characteristic vesicular exanthem that is often considered pathognomonic for neonatal HSV infection.

The vesicular rash, as described later in this chapter, is particularly important in the diagnosis of HSV infection. Notably, about 20 % of children with disseminated neonatal HSV infection will not develop skin vesicles during the course of their illness [161, 164, 180]. In the absence of skin vesicles, the diagnosis becomes exceedingly difficult because the clinical signs are often vague and nonspecific, mimicking those of neonatal sepsis. Mortality in the absence of therapy exceeds 80 %; if therapy is instituted before CNS disease ensues, outcome is usually good. The most common cause of death in babies with disseminated disease is either HSV pneumonitis or disseminated intravascular coagulopathy.

Evaluation of the extent of disease is imperative, as with all cases of neonatal HSV infection. The clinical laboratory should be used to define hepatic enzyme elevation (serum alanine aminotransferase and AST), direct hyperbilirubinemia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, and bleeding diatheses. Unless contraindicated, examination of the CSF is imperative. In addition, chest roentgenograms, abdominal X-rays, EEG, and CT or MRI of the head can be judiciously and serially employed to determine the extent of disease. The radiographic picture of HSV lung disease is characterized by a diffuse interstitial pattern that progresses to a hemorrhagic pneumonitis. Pneumatosis intestinalis can be detected when gastrointestinal disease is present. Encephalitis is a common component of disseminated infection, occurring in about 75 % of these newborns. Serial evaluation of the CSF and noninvasive neurodiagnostic tests, as defined later in this chapter, will help assess the extent of brain disease.

6.7 Encephalitis

Infection of the CNS alone or in combination with disseminated disease presents with findings indicative of encephalitis. Overall, nearly 90 % of babies with brain infection caused by HSV have evidence of an acute neurologic syndrome. Brain infection can occur in one of two fashions: either as a component of multiorgan disseminated infection or as encephalitis only, with or without skin, eye, and mouth involvement. Nearly one-third of all babies with neonatal HSV infection have only the encephalitic component of disease.

Clinical manifestations of these two types of encephalitis include seizures (both focal and generalized), lethargy, irritability, tremors, poor feeding, temperature instability, bulging fontanel, and pyramidal tract signs. Whereas babies with disseminated infection often have skin vesicles in association with brain infection, the same is not true for babies with encephalitis alone. In this latter group, only approximately 60 % have skin vesicles at any time during the disease course [161, 164, 180–182]. Cultures of CSF yield virus in 25–40 % of all patients. Anticipated findings on CSF examination include pleocytosis and proteinosis (as high as 500–1,000 mg/dL). Although a few babies with CNS infection, demonstrated by brain biopsy, have been reported to have no abnormalities of their CSF, certainly this is very uncommon.

Serial CSF examinations provide a useful diagnostic approach because the infected newborn with brain disease demonstrates progressive increases in its protein content. The importance of CSF examinations in all infants is underscored by the finding that even subtle changes have been associated with significant developmental abnormalities [183]. An EEG, CT, or MRI can be very useful in defining the presence of CNS abnormalities. Death occurs in 50 % of babies with localized CNS disease who are not treated, and it is usually related to involvement of the brainstem. In the absence of antiviral therapy, with rare exceptions, survivors are left with neurologic impairment, and the long-term prognosis after either disseminated infection or encephalitis alone is particularly poor. Up to 50 % of surviving children have some degree of psychomotor retardation, often in association with microcephaly, hydranencephaly, porencephalic cysts, spasticity, blindness, chorioretinitis, or learning disabilities. Whether visceral or CNS damage can be progressive after initial clearance of the viral infection is unclear, but it is a possibility suggested by long-term assessment of children with skin, eye, or mouth disease [161, 164, 184] and more recently by a study of a group of babies with more severe disease [185].

Several points warrant reiteration. Clinical manifestations of disease in children with encephalitis alone are virtually identical to those findings that occur with brain infection in disseminated cases, in spite of the presumed differences in pathogenesis. For babies with encephalitis only, approximately 60 % develop evidence of a vesicular rash characteristic of HSV infection. Thus, a newborn with pleocytosis and proteinosis of the CSF but without a rash can easily be misdiagnosed as having bacterial or other viral infection unless HSV infection is carefully considered. In such circumstances, a history of genital lesions in the mother or her sexual partner may be very important in the incrimination of HSV as a cause of illness.

6.8 Skin, Eye, and/or Mouth Infection

Infection localized to the skin, eye, and/or mouth is associated with virtually no mortality. When infection is localized to the skin, the presence of discrete vesicles remains the hallmark of disease. Clusters of vesicles often appear initially upon the presenting part of the body that was in direct contact with the virus during birth. With time, the rash can progress to involve other areas of the body as well. Vesicles occur in 80 % of children with skin, eye, or mouth infection. Children with disease localized to the skin, eye, or mouth generally present at about 10 to 11 days of life. Those babies with skin lesions invariably suffer from recurrences whether therapy is administered or not. Although death is not associated with disease localized to the skin, eye, and/or mouth, approximately 30 % of these children eventually develop evidence of neurologic impairment in the absence of antiviral therapy, which can result in significant neurologic morbidity [160, 161, 184].

Infections involving the eye may manifest as keratoconjunctivitis or later chorioretinitis. The eye can be the only site of HSV involvement in the newborn [160]. Findings include keratoconjunctivitis, microphthalmia, or retinal dysplasia. In the presence of persistent disease and no therapy, chorioretinitis can result. Chorioretinitis

can be caused by either HSV-1 or HSV-2 [186–188]. Keratoconjunctivitis, even in the presence of therapy, can progress to chorioretinitis, cataracts, and retinal detachment. Cataracts have been detected on long-term follow-up of proven perinatally acquired HSV infections [189].

Long-term neurologic impairment has been encountered in children whose disease appeared localized to the skin, eye, and/or mouth. The significant findings include spastic quadriplegia, microcephaly, and blindness. Despite normal clinical and CSF examinations at the time these children completed antiviral therapy, neurologic impairment became apparent between 6 months and 1 year of life. In retrospect, when CSF from these babies was subjected to PCR analysis, evidence of HSV DNA was detected in virtually all of these children, indicating an asymptomatic infection of the CNS [190].

6.9 Diagnosis

The appropriate use of laboratory tools is essential if a diagnosis of HSV infection is to be achieved [191]. Virus isolation remains one of two definitive diagnostic methods. If skin lesions are present, a scraping of skin vesicles should be made and transferred (in appropriate virus transport media) to a diagnostic virology laboratory. Typing of an HSV isolate must be done for prognostic purposes.

Cytologic examination of cells from the maternal cervix or from the infant's skin, mouth, conjunctivae, or corneal lesions has a sensitivity of only approximately 60–70 % and, therefore, should not be the sole diagnostic determinant for infection in the newborn [11, 192]. Cellular material obtained by scraping the periphery of the base of lesions should be smeared on a glass slide and promptly fixed in cold ethanol. The slide can be stained according to the methods of Papanicolaou, Giemsa, or Wright before examination by a trained cytologist. Deployment of Giemsa or, alternatively, Tzanck smears likely will not demonstrate the presence of intranuclear inclusions. Intranuclear inclusions and multinucleated giant cells are indicative, but not diagnostic, of HSV infection. The use of HSV monoclonal antibodies for rapid diagnosis has gained widespread acceptance. These fluorescence studies should be performed by laboratories experienced in the procedure.

Serologic diagnosis of HSV infection is not of great clinical value. Therapeutic decisions cannot await the results of serologic studies. The inability to differentiate transplacentally acquired maternal immunoglobulin G from endogenously produced antibodies makes the assessment of the neonate's antibody status both difficult and of little value during acute infection. Commercially available serologic tests are now capable of distinguishing HSV-1 from HSV-2 antibodies. These assays are based on differences in glycoprotein gG1 and gG2 [193]. These are the only antibody assays that should be used. Serial antibody assessments may be useful if a mother without a history of HSV infection has a primary infection late in gestation and, therefore, transfers little or no antibody to the fetus.

The use of CT and MRI scans to define CNS disease is essential, even in the child who appears normal.

6.10 PCR Detection of Viral DNA

The other definitive diagnostic method is PCR detection of viral DNA, as discussed earlier in this chapter [140, 194, 195].

6.11 Treatment

6.11.1 Background

Of all the perinatally acquired infections, the one most likely to be amenable to successful therapy is that caused by HSV. Of children presenting with disease localized to the skin, eye, and/or mouth, approximately 70 % will progress to involve the CNS or result in disseminated infection [181]. When such events occur, the likelihood of an adequate outcome, even with efficacious drugs, is not optimal because many of these children will either die or be left with significant neurologic impairment. The following paragraphs summarize our knowledge of therapy [184, 196–199].

First, the overall mortality rate for babies with encephalitis or disseminated infection 1 year after treatment with high doses of acyclovir (20 mg/kg every 8 h for 21 days) is lower than that of prior studies of neonatal HSV infection that used lower doses [200]. There are no differences in either adverse effects or laboratory toxicity.

Second, irrespective of the therapeutic modality employed, there has been a significant increase in the number of babies who returned to normal function. This can be accounted for largely by the introduction of therapy before the development of encephalitis or disseminated disease [200]. Of the babies entered in a controlled trial comparing vidarabine with acyclovir in neonatal herpes simplex virus infection (Whitley, et al.), more than 48 % have disease localized to the skin, eye, and mouth [200]. This represents a threefold increase in the number of babies with skin, eye, and mouth involvement, when compared with that of previous studies and historic data ($p < .001$). The change in spectrum of disease presentation is most likely related to earlier diagnosis. The number of babies with encephalitis has remained fairly constant at approximately 30 %, whereas the number of babies with disseminated disease has decreased to 22 %. Nevertheless, improved morbidity by disease classification is unchanged for encephalitis.

Third, available data indicate that therapy has not been initiated any earlier in the most recent neonatal HSV studies [201] as compared to earlier studies [200]. However, the mean duration of disease for all children (irrespective of disease classification) entered into these studies was 4–5 days; therapy can, therefore, be instituted even earlier in the disease course. This "window" for earlier administration of therapy is significant if further advances in therapeutic outcome are to be achieved.

The existing database from the NIAID CASG has provided insight into those factors that influence outcome [202]. Those factors that have a major impact on outcome include disease classification, level of consciousness, time of initiation of therapy, virus type, and the virus type and frequency of skin recurrences for babies whose disease is localized to the skin, eye, and mouth. Our understanding of these

data implies that limitation of disease before there has been extensive multiorgan involvement or disease of the CNS is associated with the best prognosis. This information will be useful in developing therapeutic strategies and in counseling parents of children with neonatal HSV infection.

6.11.2 Long-Term Suppressive Therapy with Oral Acyclovir

The use of oral acyclovir therapy for prolonged periods for 6 months has recently been shown to improve neurologic outcome such that over 60 % of children with CNS disease returned to normal function. This finding implies the chronic replication of HSV in the brain [203].

6.11.3 Long-Term Follow-Up

Children with neonatal HSV infection require frequent and detailed long-term follow-up. Children with CNS or disseminated disease are at risk for neurologic impairment. Management of resultant seizure disorders is standard. Even children with skin, eye, and/or mouth disease are at risk for neurologic impairment and must be followed carefully.

Acknowledgments Some or all of the research reported in this chapter was supported by the National Center for Advancing Translational Research of the National Institutes of Health through the UAB Center for Clinical and Translational Science under award number UL1TR00165.

References

1. Mettler C. History of medicine. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill (Blakiston); 1947.
2. Astruc J. De Morbis Venereis Libri Sex. editor. Paris: G. Cavelier; 1736, p. 365.
3. Gruter W. Das herpesvirus, seine atiologische und klinische bedeutung. Munch Med Wschr. 1924;71:1058.
4. Goodpasture E. The axis-cylinders of peripheral nerves as portals of entry to the central nervous system for the virus of herpes simplex encephalitis in man. Am J Pathol. 1925;I: 11–28.
5. Commission M. Epidemic encephalitis: etiology, epidemiology, treatment. Report of a survey by the Mathewson Commission. New York, NY: Columbia University Press; 1929.
6. Smith MG, Lennette EH, Reames HR. Isolation of the virus of herpes simplex and the demonstration of intranuclear inclusions in a case of acute encephalitis. Am J Pathol. 1941;17: 55–68.
7. Meyer Jr M, Johnson R, Crawford I, Dascomb H, Rogers N. Central nervous system syndromes of "viral" etiology. Am J Med. 1960;29:334–47.
8. Zarafonetis CJD, Smodel MC, Adams JW, Haymaker V. Fatal herpes simplex encephalitis in man. Am J Pathol. 1944;20(3):429–45.
9. Nahmias AJ, Dowdle WR. Antigenic and biologic differences in herpesvirus hominis. Prog Med Virol. 1968;10:110–59.
10. Corey L, Spear P. Infections with herpes simplex viruses. N Engl J Med. 1986;314:686–91.

11. Nahmias AJ, Roizman B. Infection with herpes simplex viruses 1 and 2. N Engl J Med. 1973;289:667–74. 719–25;81–89.
12. Whitley RJ. Epidemiology of herpes simplex virus. In: Roizman B, editor. The herpesviruses. New York, NY: Plenum Publishing Company; 1985. p. 1–44.
13. Whitley RJ, Roizman B. Herpes simplex viruses. Lancet. 2001;357:1513–8.
14. Boos J, Sporadic EMM, Encephalitis I. Viral encephalitis: pathology, diagnosis and management. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific Publishers; 1986. p. 55–93.
15. Boos J, Kim JH. Biopsy histopathology in herpes simplex encephalitis and in encephalitis of undefined etiology. Yale J Biol Med. 1984;57:751–5.
16. Kapur N, Barker S, Burrows EH, Ellison D, Brice J, Illis LS, et al. Herpes simplex encephalitis: long term magnetic resonance imaging and neuropsychological profile. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 1994;57:1334–42.
17. Garcia JH, Colon LE, Whitley RJ, Kichara J, Holmes FJ. Diagnosis of viral encephalitis by brain biopsy. Semin Diagn Pathol. 1984;1:71–80.
18. Cook ML, Stevens JG. Pathogenesis of herpetic neuritis and ganglionitis in mice: evidence of intra-axonal transport of infection. Infect Immun. 1973;7:272–88.
19. Baringer JR. The biology of herpes simplex virus infection in humans. Surv Ophthalmol. 1976;21:171.
20. Pagano JS. Diseases and mechanisms of persistent DNA virus infection: latency and cellular transformation. J Infect Dis. 1975;132:209–23.
21. Roizman B. An inquiry into the mechanisms of recurrent herpes infections in man. In: Pollard M, editor. Perspectives in virology IV. New York, NY: Harper and Row Publishers; 1968. p. 283.
22. Roizman B, Sears A. An Inquiry into the mechanisms of herpes simplex virus latency. Annu Rev Microbiol. 1987;41:543–71.
23. Stevens JC. Latent herpes simplex virus and the nervous system. Curr Top Immunol. 1975;70:31–50.
24. Terni M. Infections due to herpes simplex virus, recurrent disease and problem of latency. G Maln Infett Parassit. 1971;23:433–67.
25. Baringer JR, Swoveland P. Recovery of herpes simplex virus from human trigeminal ganglions. N Engl J Med. 1973;288:648–50.
26. Bastian FO, Rabson AS, Yee CL. Herpesvirus hominis: isolation from human trigeminal ganglion. Science. 1972;178:306.
27. Hill TJ. Mechanisms involved in recurrent herpes simplex. In: Nahmias A, Dowdle WR, Schinazi R, editors. The human herpesvirus: an interdisciplinary perspective. Amsterdam: Elsevier/North-Holland; 1981. p. 241.
28. Nesburn AB, Cook ML, Stevens JG. Latent herpes simplex virus isolation from rabbit trigeminal ganglia between episodes of recurrent ocular infection. Arch Ophthalmol. 1972;88: 412–7.
29. Stevens JG, Cook ML. Latent herpes simplex virus in spinal ganglia. Science. 1971;173: 843–5.
30. Stevens JG, Cook ML. Latent herpes simplex virus in sensory ganglia. Perspect Virol. 1974;8:171.
31. Warren KG, Brown SM, Wrobelwska A, Gilden D, Koprowski H, Subak-Sharpe J. Isolation of latent herpes simplex virus from the superior cervical and vagus ganglions of human beings. N Engl J Med. 1978;298:1068–9.
32. Cushing H. Surgical aspects of major neuralgia of trigeminal nerve: report of 20 cases of operation upon the Gasserian ganglion with anatomic and physiologic notes on the consequences of its removal. JAMA. 1905;44:773–3379. 860–865, 920–929, 1002–8.
33. Goodpasture EW. Herpetic infections with special reference to involvement of the nervous system. Medicine. 1929;8:223–43.
34. Carlton CA, Kilbourne ED. Activation of latent herpes simplex by trigeminal sensory-root section. N Engl J Med. 1952;246:172.

35. Pazin GJ, Ho M, Jannetta PJ. Reactivation of herpes simplex virus after decompression of the trigeminal nerve root. J Infect Dis. 1978;138:405–9.
36. Pazin GJ, Armstrong JA, Lam MT, Tarr GC, Jannetta PJ, Ho M. Prevention of reactivation of herpes simplex virus infection by human leukocyte interferon after operation on the trigeminal route. N Engl J Med. 1979;301:225–30.
37. Ellison SA, Carlton CA, Rose HM. Studies of recurrent herpes simplex infections following section of the trigeminal nerve. J Infect Dis. 1959;105:161.
38. Walz MA, Price RW, Nortkins AL. Latent ganglionic infections with herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2: viral reactivation in vivo after neurectomy. Science. 1974;184:1185–7.
39. Kibrick S, Gooding GW. Pathogenesis of infection with special reference to nervous tissue. Slow, latent and temperate virus infections. NINBD monograph no. 2; 1965. pp 143–54.
40. Hill TJ, Field HJ, Roome APC. Intra-axonal location of herpes simplex virus particles. J Gen Virol. 1972;15:233–5.
41. Rector JT, Lausch RN, Oakes JE. Use of monoclonal antibodies for analysis of antibody-dependent immunity to ocular herpes simplex virus type 1 infection. Infect Immun. 1982; 38:168–74.
42. Segal AL, Katcher AH, Brightman VJ, Miller MF. Recurrent herpes labialis, recurrent aphthous ulcers and the menstrual cycles. J Dent Res. 1974;53:797–803.
43. Hill TJ. Herpes simplex virus latency. In: Roizman B, editor. The herpesviruses. New York, NY: Plenum Publishing; 1985. p. 175–240.
44. Baringer JR. Recovery of herpes simplex virus from human sacral ganglions. N Engl J Med. 1974;291:828.
45. Cabrera CV, Wholenberg C, Openshaw H, Rey-Mendez M, Puga A, Notkins AL. Herpes simplex virus DNA sequences in the CNS of latently infected mice. Nature. 1980;288: 288–90.
46. Fraser NW, Lawrence WC, Wroblewska A, Gilden DH, Koprowski H. Herpes simplex type 1 DNA in human brain tissue. Proc Natl Acad Sci. 1981;78:6461–5.
47. Selling B, Kibrick S. An outbreak of herpes simplex among wrestlers (herpes gladiatorum). N Engl J Med. 1964;270:979–82.
48. Warren KG, Gilden DH, Brown SM. Isolation of herpes simplex virus from human trigeminal ganglia, including ganglia from one patient with multiple sclerosis. Lancet. 1977;2:637–9.
49. Nahmias AJ, Whitley RJ, Visintine AN, Takei Y, Alford Jr CA. The National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases Collaborative Antiviral Study Group. Herpes simplex encephalitis: laboratory evaluations and their diagnostic significance. J Infect Dis. 1982; 145:829–36.
50. Whitley RJ, Lakeman AD, Nahmias AJ, Roizman B. DNA restriction-enzyme analysis of herpes simplex virus isolates obtained from patients with encephalitis. N Engl J Med. 1982;307:1060–2.
51. Johnson RT, Olson LC, Buescher EL. Herpes simplex virus infections of the nervous system. Problems in laboratory diagnosis. Arch Neurol. 1968;18(3):260–4.
52. Dinn JJ. Transolfactory spread of virus in herpes simplex encephalitis. Br Med J. 1980; 281:1392.
53. Ojeda VJ, Archer M, Robertson TA, Bucens MR. Necropsy study of olfactory portal of entry in herpes simplex encephalitis. Med J Aust. 1983;1:79–81.
54. Twomey JA, Barker CM, Robinson G, Howell DA. Olfactory mucosa in herpes simplex encephalitis. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 1979;42:983–7.
55. Whitley RJ. Therapeutic advances for severe and life-threatening herpes simplex virus infections. In: Lopez C, Roizman B, editors. Human herpesvirus infections. New York, NY: Raven; 1986. p. 153–64.
56. Schlitt M, Lakeman FD, Wilson ER, To A, Acoff R, Harsh GR, et al. A rabbit model of focal herpes simplex encephalitis. J Infect Dis. 1986;153:732–5.
57. Stroop WG, Schaefer DC. Production of encephalitis restricted to the temporal lobes by experimental reactivation of herpes simplex virus. J Infect Dis. 1986;153:721–31.

58. Rock DL, Frasher NW. Detection of HSV-1 genome in central nervous system of latently infected mice. Nature. 1983;302:523–31.
59. Davis LE, Johnson RT. An explanation for the localization of herpes simplex encephalitis. Ann Neurol. 1979;5:2–5.
60. Griffith JR, Kibrick S, Dodge PR, Richardson EP. Experimental herpes simplex encephalitis: electroencephalographic, clinical, virologic, and pathologic observations in the rabbit. Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol. 1967;23:263–7.
61. Barnes DW, Whitley RJ. CNS disease associated with varicella-zoster virus and herpes simplex virus infection. Neurol Clin. 1986;4(1):265–83.
62. Casanova JL, Tardieu M, Abel L. Genetic predisposition to herpetic meningo-encephalitis in children. Bull Acad Natl Med. 2010;194(6):915–22. Epub 2011/04/26. Predisposition genetique a l'encephalite herpetique chez l'enfant.
63. Whitley RJ. Herpes simplex viruses. In: Fields BN, Knipe DM, Chanock R, Hirsch M, Melnick J, Monath T, et al., editors. Fields virology. 2nd ed. New York, NY: Raven; 1990. p. 1843–87.
64. Fife KH, Corey L. Herpes simplex virus. In: Holmes KK, Mardh PA, Sparling PF, Wiesner PJ, Cates W, Lemon SM, et al., editors. Sexually transmitted diseases. 2nd ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill Publishers; 1990. p. 941–52.
65. Whitley RJ. Herpes simplex virus. In: Knipe DM, Howley RM, Grriffin D, Lamb R, Martin M, Straus SE, editors. Fields virology. 4th ed. New York: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2001. p. 2461–509.
66. Black FL. Infectious diseases in primitive societies. Science. 1975;187:515–8.
67. Burnet FM, Williams SW. Herpes simplex: new point of view. Med J Aust. 1939;1:637–40.
68. Dodd K, Johnston LM, Buddingh GJ. Herpetic stomatitis. J Pediatr. 1938;12:95.
69. Buddingh GH, Schrum DI, Lanier JC, Guidy DJ. Studies of the natural history of herpes simplex infections. Pediatrics. 1953;11:595.
70. Juretic M. Natural history of herpetic infection. Helv Paediatr Acta. 1966;21:356.
71. Cesario TC, Poland JD, Wulff H, Chin TD, Wenner HA. Six years experiences with herpes simplex virus in a children's home. Am J Epidemiol. 1969;90:416–22.
72. Douglas Jr RG, Couch RB. A prospective study of chronic herpes simplex virus infection and recurrent herpes labialis in humans. J Immunol. 1970;104:289–95.
73. Kloene W, Bang FB, Chakroborty SM, Cooper MR, Kulemann H, Shah KV, et al. A two year respiratory virus survey in four villages in West Bengal, India. Am J Epidemiol. 1970;92: 307–20.
74. Komorous JM, Wheeler CE, Briggaman RA, Caro L. Intrauterine herpes simplex infections. Arch Dermatol. 1977;113:918–22.
75. Lindgren KM, Douglas Jr RG, Couch RB. Significance of herpesvirus hominis in respiratory secretions of man. N Engl J Med. 1968;276:517–23.
76. Overall Jr JC. Antiviral chemotherapy of oral and genital herpes simplex virus infections. In: Nahmias AJ, Dowdle WR, Schinazi RE, editors. The human herpesviruses: an interdisciplinary perspective. Amsterdam: Elsevier/North-Holland; 1980. p. 447–65.
77. Stern H, Elek SD, Miller DM, Anderson HF. Herpetic Whitlow, a form of cross-infection in hospitals. Lancet. 1959;2:871.
78. Young SK, Rowe NH, Buchanan RA. A clinical study for the control of facial mucocutaneous herpes virus infections. I Characterization of natural history in a professional school population. Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol. 1976;41:498–507.
79. Scott TF, Steigman AJ, Convey JH. Acute infectious gingivostomatitis: etiology, epidemiology, and clinical pictures of a common disorder caused by the virus of herpes simplex. JAMA. 1941;117:999.
80. Stavaraky NM, Rawls WE, Chiavetta J, Donner AP, Wanklin JM. Sexual and socioeconomic factors affecting the risk of past infections with herpes simplex virus type 2. Am J Epidemiol. 1983;118:109–21.
81. Templeton AC. Generalized herpes simplex in malnourished children. J Clin Pathol. 1970;23:24–30.

82. Rawls WE, Campione-Piccardo J. Epidemiology of herpes simplex virus type 1 and 2. In: Nahmias A, Dowdle W, Schinazi R, editors. The human herpesviruses: an interdisciplinary perspective. Amsterdam: Elsevier/North-Holland; 1981. p. 137–52.
83. Bader C, Crumpacker CS, Schnipper LE, Ransel B, Clark JE, Arndt K, et al. The natural history of recurrent facial-oral infection with herpes simplex virus. J Infect Dis. 1978;138: 897–905.
84. Black FL, Hierholzer WJ, Pinheiro F, Evans AS, Woodall JP. Evidence for persistence of infectious agents in isolated human populations. Am J Epidemiol. 1974;100:230–50.
85. Nahmias AJ, Josey WE, Naib ZM, Luce C, Duffey C. Antibodies to herpesvirus hominis type 1 and 1 in humans. I Patients with genital herpetic infections. Am J Epidemiol. 1970; 91:539–46.
86. Nahmias AJ, Josey WE, Naib ZM, Luce CF, Fuest B. Antibodies to herpesvirus hominis types 1 and 2 in humans. II Women with cervical cancer. Am J Epidemiol. 1970;91:547–52.
87. Rawls WE, Tompkins WA, Melnick JL. The association of herpesvirus type 2 and carcinoma of the uterine cervix. Am J Epidemiol. 1969;89:547–54.
88. Sawanabori S. Acquisition of herpes simplex virus infection in Japan. Acta Paediatr Jpn Overseas Ed. 1973;15:16.
89. Wentworth BB, Alexander ER. Seroepidemiology of infections due to members of herpesvirus group. Am J Epidemiol. 1971;94:496–507.
90. Glezen WP, Fernald GW, Lohr JA. Acute respiratory disease of university students with special references to the etiologic role of herpesvirus hominis. Am J Epidemiol. 1975;101: 111–21.
91. Gibson JJ, Hornung CA, Alexander GR, Lee FK, Potts WA, Nahmias AJ. A cross-sectional study of herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2 in college students: occurrence and determinants of infection. J Infect Dis. 1990;162:306–12.
92. Evans AS, Dick EC. Acute pharyngitis and tonsillitis in University of Wisconsin students. JAMA. 1964;190:699–708.
93. Corey L, Adams HG, Brown ZA, Holmes KK. Genital herpes simplex virus infections: clinical manifestations, course and complications. Ann Intern Med. 1983;98:958–72.
94. Kalinyak JE, Fleagle G, Docherty JJ. Incidence and distribution of herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2 from genital lesions in college women. J Med Virol. 1977;1:175–81.
95. Smith IW, Peutherer JR, Robertson DH. Virological studies in genital herpes. Lancet. 1977; 2:1089–90.
96. Wolontis S, Jeansson S. Correlation of herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2 with clinical features of infection. J Infect Dis. 1977;135:28–33.
97. Bernstein DI, Bellamy AR, Hook 3rd EW, Levin MJ, Wald A, Ewell MG, et al. Epidemiology, clinical presentation, and antibody response to primary infection with herpes simplex virus type 1 and type 2 in young women. Clin Infect Dis. 2013;56(3):344–51. Epub 2012/10/23.
98. Armstrong GL, Schillinger J, Markowitz L, Nahmias AJ, Johnson RE, McQuillan GM, et al. Incidence of herpes simplex virus type 2 infection in the United States. Am J Epidemiol. 2001;153:912–20.
99. Institute of Medicine, Committee on issues and priorities for new vaccine development. Appendix I. Prospects for immunizing against Herpes Simplex Virus 1 and 2. New vaccine development establishing priorities: disease of importance in the United States. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 1985. pp. 280–312.
100. Corey L, Holmes K, Benedetti J, Critchlow C. Clinical course of genital herpes: Implications for therapeutic trials. In: Nahmias A, Dowdle WR, Schinazi R, editors. The human herpesviruses: an interdisciplinary perspective. Amsterdam: Elsevier/North Holland; 1981. p. 496–502.
101. Magder LS, Nahmias AJ, Johnson RE, Lee FK, Brooks C, Snowden C. The prevalence and distribution of herpes simplex virus type 1 and 2 antibodies in the United States population. N Engl J Med. 1989;321:7–12.
102. Ng ABP, Reagin JW, Yen SS. Herpes genitalis–clinical and cytopathologic experience with 256 patients. Obstet Gynecol. 1970;36:645.

103. Ekwo E, Wong YW, Myers M. Asymptomatic cervicovaginal shedding of herpes simplex virus. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1979;134:102–3.
104. Rattray MC, Corey L, Reeves WC, Vontver LA, Holmes KK. Recurrent genital herpes among women: symptomatic versus asymptomatic viral shedding. Br J Vener Dis. 1978;54:262–5.
105. Wald A, Zeh J, Selke S, Warren T, Ryncarz AJ, Ashley R, et al. Reactivation of genital herpes simplex virus type 2 infection in asymptomatic seropositive persons. N Engl J Med. 2000;342(12):844–50.
106. Wald A, Link K. Risk of human immunodeficiency virus infection in herpes simplex virus type 2-seropositive persons: a meta-analysis. J Infect Dis. 2002;185:45–52.
107. Adam E, Kaufman RH, Mirkovic RR, Melnick JL. Persistence of virus shedding in asymptomatic women after recovery from herpes genitalis. Obstet Gynecol. 1979;54:171–3.
108. Naib ZM, Nahmias AJ, Josey WE, Zaki SA. Relation of cytohistopathology of genital herpesvirus infection to cervical anaplasia. Cancer. 1973;33:1452–63.
109. Becker WB. The epidemiology of herpesvirus infection in three racial communities in Cape Town. S Afr Med J. 1966;40:109–11.
110. IHMF Monograph, editor. Herpesvirus infections in pregnancy. Management Strategies Workshop and 7th Annual Meeting; 1999; Seville, Spain.
111. Rawls WE, Adam E, Melnick JL. Geographical variation in the association of antibodies to herpesvirus type 2 and carcinoma of the cervix. In: Biggs PM, de The G, Payne LN, editors. Oncogenesis and herpesviruses. Lyon: Scientific Publication II, International Agency for Research on Cancer; 1972. p. 424–7.
112. IHMF. Strategies for interrupting the transmission of genital and neonatal HSV infection. Herpes. 2004;11(Supplement 3):129A–86.
113. Rawls WE, Gardner HL. Herpes genitalis: venereal aspects. Clin Obstet Gynecol. 1972; 15:912–8.
114. Rawls WE, Gardner HL, Flanders RW, Lowry SP, Kaufman RH, Melnick JL. Genital herpes in two social groups. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1971;110:682–9.
115. Rawls WE, Garfield CH, Seth P, Adam E. Serological and epidemiological considerations of the role of herpes simplex virus type 2 in cervical cancer. Cancer Res. 1976;36:829–35.
116. Chang TW, Fiumara NJ, Weinstein L. Genital herpes: some clinical and laboratory observations. JAMA. 1974;229:544–5.
117. Reeves WC, Corey L, Adams HG, Vontver LA, Holmes KK. Risk of recurrence after first episodes of genital herpes: relation to HSV type and antibody response. N Engl J Med. 1981;305:315–9.
118. Choi NW, Shettigara PT, Abu-Zeid HA, Nelson NA. Herpesvirus infection and cervical anaplasia: a seroepidemiological study. Int J Cancer. 1977;19:167–71.
119. Lafferty WE, Coombs RW, Benedetti J, Critchlow C, Corey L. Recurrences after oral and genital herpes simplex virus infection. Influence of site of infection and viral type. N Engl J Med. 1987;316:1444–9.
120. Corey L, Ashley R, Benedetti J, Selke S, editors. The effect of prior HSV-1 infection on the subsequent natural history of genital HSV-2. 28th interscience conference on antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy, 23–26 Oct 1988, Los Angeles, CA.
121. Longson M. The general nature of viral encephalitis in the United Kingdom. In: Ellis LS, editor. Viral diseases of the central nervous system. London: Bailliere Tindall; 1984. p. 19–31.
122. Skoldenberg B, Forsgren M, Alestig K, Bergstrom T, Burman L, Dahlqvist E, et al. Acyclovir versus vidarabine in herpes simplex encephalitis: a randomized multicentre study in consecutive Swedish patients. Lancet. 1984;2:707–11.
123. Corey L, Spear P. Infections with herpes simplex viruses. N Engl J Med. 1986;314:749–57.
124. Straus S, Rooney JF, Sever JL, Seilding M, Nusinoff-Lehrman S, Cremer K. Herpes simplex virus infection: biology. Treatment and prevention. Ann Intern Med. 1985;103:404–19.
125. Khetsuriani N, Holman RC, Anderson LJ. Burden of encephalitis-associated hospitalizations in the United States, 1988–1997. Clin Infect Dis. 2002;35:175–82.

126. Whitley RJ, Soong SJ, Linneman Jr C, Liu C, Pazin G, Alford CA. Herpes simplex encephalitis. Clinical assessment. JAMA. 1982;247(3):317–20.
127. Boston Interhospital Virus Study Group and the NIAID Sponsored Cooperative Antiviral Clinical Study, Chien LT, Whitley RJ, et al. Failure of high dose 5-deoxyuridine in the therapy of herpes simplex virus encephalitis: evidence of unacceptable toxicity. N Engl J Med. 1975;292:600–3.
128. Longson M. Le defi des encephalitis herpetiques. Ann Microbiol (Paris). 1979;130:5.
129. Longson MM, Bailey AS, Klapper P. Herpes encephalitis. In: Waterson AP, editor. Recent advances in clinical virology. New York, NY: Churchill Livingston; 1980. p. 147–57.
130. Whitley RJ, Soong S-J, Dolin R, Galasso GJ, Chien LT, Alford Jr CA, et al. Adenine arabinoside therapy of biopsy-proved herpes simplex encephalitis: National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases Collaborative Antiviral Study. N Engl J Med. 1977;297:289–94.
131. Whitley RJ, Soong S-J, Hirsch MS, Karchmer AW, Dolin R, Galasso G, et al. Herpes simplex encephalitis: vidarabine therapy and diagnostic problems. N Engl J Med. 1981;304:313–8.
132. Whitley RJ. Herpes virus of the central nervous system. International Herpes Management Forum Management Strategies Workshop, Paris. 2003.
133. Chien LT, Boehm RM, Robinson H, Liu C, Frenkel LD. Characteristic early electroencephalographic changes in herpes simplex encephalitis. Arch Neurol. 1977;34:361–4.
134. Miller JHD, Coey A. The EEG in necrotizing encephalitis. Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol. 1959;2:582–5.
135. Radermecker J. Significant electroencephalographic patterns in the detection and follow-up of cranio-cerebral traumas and encephalatides. Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol. 1970;29(1):98.
136. Smith JB, Westmoreland BF, Reagan TJ, Sandok BA. A distinctive clinical EEG profile in herpes simplex encephalitis. Mayo Clin Proc. 1975;50:469–74.
137. Enzmann DR, Ransom B, Norman D. Computed tomography of herpes simplex encephalitis. Radiology. 1978;129:419–25.
138. Zimmerman RD, Russell EJ, Leeds NE, Kaufman D. CT in the early diagnosis of herpes simplex encephalitis. Am J Roentgenol. 1980;134:61–6.
139. Schlesinger Y, Buller RS, Brunstrom JE, Moran CJ, Storch GA. Expanded spectrum of herpes simplex encephalitis in childhood. J Pediatr. 1995;126:234–41.
140. Rowley A, Lakeman F, Whitley R, Wolinsky S. Rapid detection of herpes simplex virus DNA in cerebrospinal fluid of patients with herpes simplex encephalitis. Lancet. 1990;335:440–1.
141. Kimura H, Aso K, Kuzushima K, Hanada N, Shibata M, Morishima T. Relapse of herpes simplex encephalitis in children. Pediatrics. 1992;89:891–4.
142. Aurelius E, Johansson B, Skoldenberg B, Staland A, Forsgren M. Rapid diagnosis of herpes simplex encephalitis by nested polymerase chain reaction assay of cerebrospinal fluid. Lancet. 1991;337(8735):189–92.
143. Aurelius E, Johansson B, Skoldenberg B, Forsgren M. Encephalitis in immunocompetent patients due to herpes simplex virus type 1 or 2 as determined by type-specific polymerase chain reaction and antibody assays of cerebrospinal fluid. J Med Virol. 1993;39:179–86.
144. Puchhammer-Stockl E, Heinz FX, Kundi M, Popow-Kraupp T, Grimm G, Millner MM, et al. Evaluation of the polymerase chain reaction for diagnosis of herpes simplex virus encephalitis. J Clin Microbiol. 1993;31:146–8.
145. Shoji H, Koga M, Kusuhara T, Kaji M, Ayabe M, Hino H, et al. Differentiation of herpes simplex virus 1 and 2 in cerebrospinal fluid of patients with HSV encephalitis and meningitis by stringent hybridization of PCR-amplified DNAs. J Neurol. 1994;241:526–30.
146. Sakrauski A, Weber B, Kessler HH, Pierer K, Doerr HW. Comparison of two hybridization assays for the rapid detection of PCR amplified HSV genome sequences from cerebrospinal fluid. J Virol Methods. 1994;50:175–84.
147. Lakeman FD, Whitley RJ. The National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases Collaborative Antiviral Study Group. Diagnosis of herpes simplex encephalitis: Application

of polymerase chain reaction to cerebrospinal fluid from brain biopsied patients and correlation with disease. J Infect Dis. 1995;172:857–63.
148. Whitley RJ, Cobbs CG, Alford CA, Soong SJ, Morawetz R, Benton JW, et al. Diseases that mimic herpes simplex encephalitis: diagnosis, presentation and outcome. JAMA. 1989;5:33–40.
149. Whitley RJ, Alford Jr CA, Hirsch MS, Schooley RT, Luby JP, Aoki FY, et al. Vidarabine versus acyclovir therapy of herpes simplex encephalitis. N Engl J Med. 1986;314:144–9.
150. Davis LE, McLaren LE. Relapsing herpes simplex encephalitis following antiviral therapy. Ann Neurol. 1983;13:192–5.
151. Dix RD, Baringer JR, Panitch HS, Rosenberg SH, Hagedorn J, Whaley J. Recurrent herpes simplex encephalitis: recovery of virus after Ara-A treatment. Ann Neurol. 1983;13:196–200.
152. Wang HS, Kuo MF, Huang SC, Chou ML. Choreoathetosis as an initial sign of relapsing of herpes simplex encephalitis. Pediatr Neurol. 1994;11:341–5.
153. VanLandingham KE, Marsteller HB, Ross GW, Hayden FG. Relapse of herpes simplex encephalitis after conventional acyclovir therapy. JAMA. 1988;259:1051–3.
154. Zuelzer WW, Wolf W, Stulbery CS. Herpes simplex virus as the cause of fulminating visceral disease and hepatitis in infancy. Am J Dis Child. 1952;83:421–39.
155. Whitley RJ. Herpes simplex virus infections of the central nervous system in children. Semin Neurol. 1982;2:87–97.
156. Baldwin S, Whitley RJ. Intrauterine herpes simplex virus infection. Teratology. 1989;39: 1–10.
157. Florman AL, Gershon AA, Blackett RP, Nahmias AJ. Intrauterine infection with herpes simplex virus: resultant congenital malformation. JAMA. 1973;225:129–32.
158. Hutto C, Arvin A, Jacobs R, Steele R, Stagno S, Lyrene R, et al. Intrauterine herpes simplex virus infections. J Pediatr. 1987;110:97–101.
159. South MA, Tompkins WA, Morris CR, Rawls WE. Congenital malformation of the central nervous system associated with genital type (type 2) herpesvirus. J Pediatr. 1969;75:13–8.
160. Whitley RJ, Hutto C. Neonatal herpes simplex virus infections. Pediatr Rev. 1985;7: 119–26.
161. Whitley RJ. Herpes simplex virus infections. In: Remington J, Klein J, editors. Infectious diseases of the fetus and newborn infants. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: W. B. Saunders Company; 1990. p. 282–305.
162. Stagno S, Whitley RJ. Herpesvirus infections of pregnancy. II Herpes simplex virus and varicella-zoster virus infections. N Engl J Med. 1985;313:1327–30.
163. Corey L. The diagnosis and treatment of genital herpes. JAMA. 1982;248:1041–9.
164. Nahmias AJ, Keyserling HL, Kerrick GM. Herpes simplex. In: Remington JS, Klein JO, editors. Infectious diseases of the fetus and newborn infant. Philadelphia, PA: W. B. Saunders Company; 1983. p. 636–78.
165. Prober CG, Sullender WM, Yasukawa LL, Au DS, Yeager AS, Arvin AM. Low risk of herpes simplex virus infections in neonates exposed to the virus at the time of vaginal delivery to mothers with recurrent genital herpes simplex virus infections. N Engl J Med. 1987;316: 240–4.
166. Yeager AS, Arvin AM, Urbani LJ, Kemp III JA. Relationship of antibody to outcome in neonatal herpes simplex infections. Infect Immun. 1980;29:532–8.
167. Kaye EM, Dooling EC. Neonatal herpes simplex meningoencephalitis associated with fetal monitor scalp electrodes. Neurology. 1981;31:1045–7.
168. Parvey LS, Chien LT. Neonatal herpes simplex virus infection introduced by fetal monitor scalp electrode. Pediatrics. 1980;65:1150–3.
169. Brown ZA, Wald A, Morrow RM, Selke S, Zeh J, Corey L. Effect of serologic status and cesarean delivery on transmission rates of herpes simplex virus from mother to infant. JAMA. 2003;289:203–9.
170. Kohl S, West MS, Prober CG, Sullender WM, Loo LS, Arvin AM. Neonatal antibody-dependent cellular cytoxic antibody levels are associated with the clinical presentation of neonatal herpes simplex virus infection. J Infect Dis. 1989;160:770–6.

171. Dunkle LM, Schmidt RR, O'Connor DM. Neonatal herpes simplex infection possibly acquired via maternal breast milk. Pediatrics. 1979;63:250–1.
172. Kibrick S. Herpes simplex virus in breast milk. Pediatrics. 1979;64:390–1.
173. Sullivan-Bolyai JZ, Fife KH, Jacobs RF, Miller Z, Corey L. Disseminated neonatal herpes simplex virus type 1 from a maternal breast lesion. Pediatrics. 1983;71:455–7.
174. Yeager AS, Ashley RL, Corey L. Transmission of herpes simplex virus from father to neonate. J Pediatr. 1983;103:905–7.
175. Douglas J, Schmidt O, Corey L. Acquisition of neonatal HSV-1 infection from a paternal source contact. J Pediatr. 1983;103:908–10.
176. Linnemann Jr CC, Buchman TG, Light IJ, Ballard JL, Roizman B. Transmission of herpes simplex virus type-1 in a nursery for the newborn: identification of viral species isolated by DNA fingerprinting. Lancet. 1978;1:964–6.
177. Light IJ. Postnatal acquisition of herpes simplex virus by the newborn infant: a review of the literature. Pediatrics. 1979;63:480–2.
178. Hammerberg O, Watts J, Chernesky M, Luchsinger I, Rawls W. An outbreak of herpes simplex virus type 1 in an intensive care nursery. Pediatr Infect Dis. 1983;2:290–4.
179. Nahmias AJ, Josey WE, Naib ZM, Freeman MG, Fernandez RJ, Wheeler JH. Perinatal risk associated with maternal genital herpes simplex virus infection. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1971;110:825–36.
180. Arvin AM, Yeager AS, Bruhn FW, Grossman M. Neonatal herpes simplex infection in the absence of mucocutaneous lesions. J Pediatr. 1982;100:715–21.
181. Whitley RJ, Nahmias AJ, Visitine AM, Fleming CL, Alford Jr CA. The National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases Collaborative Antiviral Study Group. The natural history of herpes simplex virus infection of mother and newborn. Pediatrics. 1980;66:489–94.
182. Yeager AS, Arvin AM. Reasons for the absence of a history of recurrent genital infections in mothers of neonates infected with herpes simplex virus. Pediatrics. 1984;73:188–93.
183. Mizrahi EM, Tharp BR. A unique electroencephalogram pattern in neonatal herpes simplex virus encephalitis. Neurology. 1981;31:164.
184. Whitley RJ, Nahmias AJ, Soong S-J, Galasso GG, Fleming CL, Alford Jr CA, et al. Vidarabine therapy of neonatal herpes simplex virus infection. Pediatrics. 1980;66:495–501.
185. Guttman LT, Wilfert CM, Eppes S. Herpes simplex virus encephalitis in children: analysis of cerebrospinal fluid and progressive neurodevelopmental deterioration. J Infect Dis. 1986;154:415–21.
186. Nahmias AJ, Visitine A, Caldwell A, Wilson C. Eye infections with herpes simplex viruses in neonates. Surv Ophthalmol. 1976;21:100–5.
187. Nahmias A, Hagler W. Ocular manifestations of herpes simplex in the newborn. Int Ophthalmol Clin. 1972;12:191–213.
188. Reested P, Hansen B. Chorioretinitis of the newborn with herpes simplex type 1: report of a case. Acta Ophthalmol. 1979;57:1096–100.
189. Cibis A, Burde RM. Herpes simplex virus induced congenital cataracts. Arch Ophthalmol. 1971;85:220–3.
190. Kimberlin DW, Lakeman FD, Arvin AM, Prober CG, Corey L, Powell DA, et al. Application of the polymerase chain reaction to the diagnosis and management of neonatal herpes simplex virus disease. National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases Collaborative Antiviral Study Group. J Infect Dis. 1996;174(6):1162–7. Epub 1996/12/01.
191. Corey L. Laboratory diagnosis of herpes simplex virus infections. Principles guiding the development of rapid diagnostic tests. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis. 1986;4(3 Suppl):111S–9. Epub 1986/03/01.
192. Boehm FH, Estes W, Wright PE, Growdon Jr JF. Management of genital herpes simplex virus infection occurring during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1980;141:735–40.
193. International Herpes Management Forum. Strategies for interrupting the transmission of genital and neonatal HSV infection. Herpes. 2004;11 Suppl 3:A129–86.

194. Kimberlin D, Powell D, Gruber W, Diaz P, Arvin A, Kumar M, et al. Administration of oral acyclovir suppressive therapy after neonatal herpes simplex virus disease limited to the skin, eyes and mouth: results of a phase I/II trial. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 1996;15(3):247–54. Epub 1996/03/01.
195. Hardy DA, Arvin AM, Yasukawa LL, Bronzan RN, Lewinsohn DM, Hensleigh PA, et al. Use of polymerase chain for successful identification of asymptomatic genital infection with herpes simplex virus in pregnant women in delivery. J Infect Dis. 1990;162:1031–5.
196. Whitley RJ, Corey L, Arvin A, Lakeman FD, Sumaya CV, Wright PF, et al. Changing presentation of herpes simplex virus infection in neonates. J Infect Dis. 1988;158:109–16.
197. Whitley RJ. Herpes simplex virus infections of the central nervous system: a review. Am J Med. 1988;85:61–7.
198. Whitley RJ, Yeager A, Kartus P, Bryson Y, Connor JD, Alford Jr CA, et al. Neonatal herpes simplex virus infection: follow-up evaluation of vidarabine therapy. Pediatrics. 1983;72:778–85.
199. Kimberlin DW, Lin CY, Jacobs RF, Powell DA, Corey L, Gruber WC, et al. Safety and efficacy of high-dose intravenous acyclovir in the management of neonatal herpes simplex virus infections. Pediatrics. 2001;108(2):230–8. Epub 2001/08/03.
200. Whitley RJ, Arvin A, Prober C, Burchett S, Corey L, Powell D, et al. A controlled trial comparing vidarabine with acyclovir in neonatal herpes simplex virus infection. N Engl J Med. 1991;324:444–9.
201. Kimberlin DW, Lin CY, Jacobs RF, Powell DA, Frenkel LM, Gruber WC, et al. Natural history of neonatal herpes simplex virus infections in the acyclovir era. Pediatrics. 2001;108(2):223–9. Epub 2001/08/03.
202. Whitley RJ, Arvin A, Prober C, Corey L, Burchett S, Plotkin S, et al. Predictors of morbidity and mortality in neonates with herpes simplex virus infections. N Engl J Med. 1991;324:450–4.
203. Kimberlin DW, Whitley RJ, Wan W, Powell DA, Storch G, Ahmed A, et al. Oral acyclovir suppression and neurodevelopment after neonatal herpes. N Engl J Med. 2011;365(14):1284–92. Epub 2011/10/14.

Congenital Cytomegalovirus Disease

Mark R. Schleiss

Abstract Of the myriad of congenitally and perinatally acquired infections that can impair the neurodevelopment of the infant, cytomegalovirus (CMV) is the most important. In the developed world, congenital CMV infection occurs in approximately 1 % of all pregnancies. Long-term neurodevelopmental disabilities include developmental delay, cerebral palsy, seizure disorders, and sensorineural hearing loss. This chapter summarizes the epidemiology and impact of congenital CMV on brain development. Hypotheses regarding the pathophysiology of CNS injury are reviewed. Prospects for intervention are also summarized.

Keywords Cytomegalovirus • Congenital cytomegalovirus infection • Cytomegalovirus vaccine • Cytomegalovirus neuropathogenesis • Sensorineural hearing loss • Inflammatory response • Cytomegalovirus immune evasion

1 Epidemiology of Congenital CMV Infection

Human cytomegalovirus (CMV) is a ubiquitous betaherpesvirus that replicates only in human cells. CMV infections are generally asymptomatic in immunocompetent individuals but produce a mononucleosis syndrome (heterophile negative) in approximately 10 % of primary infections in older children and adults [1–3]. Similar to other herpesviruses, CMV becomes latent after primary infection, but it may reactivate from latency, particularly in the setting of immune suppression, leading to disease in HIV-infected patients [4], or in solid organ or hematopoietic stem cell

M.R. Schleiss, M.D. (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Center for Infectious Diseases and Microbiology
Translational Research, University of Minnesota Medical School,
3-214 MTRF, 2001 6th Street SE, Minneapolis, MN 55455, USA
e-mail: schleiss@umn.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*, 291
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_14, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

transplant patients [5, 6]. Acquisition of infection typically requires intimate contact with body fluids (blood, urine, saliva, breast milk). There is no seasonality to infection. Patient populations with increased rates of primary infection include breastfeeding infants, sexually active adolescents, and childcare providers in group day care [7–13]. Seroprevalence is higher among nonwhites and among individuals of lower socioeconomic status [14].

From a public health perspective, the most important medical impact of CMV is the damage caused to the developing central nervous system (CNS) of a fetus when infection occurs in utero. A recent meta-analysis of published studies concluded that the overall birth prevalence of congenital CMV infection was approximately 0.65 %, although this study also noted that congenital infection rates varied considerably among different study populations [15]. This corresponds to over 60,000 congenital infections annually in the United States and Europe. Some of the risk factors for congenital CMV infection include nonwhite race, low socioeconomic status, premature birth, and neonatal intensive care unit admittance. The risk of fetal transmission appears to increase with gestational age, but neurological outcomes are more severe when infection occurs during the first trimester [16, 17]. However, viral transmission can occur during the entire gestation period, and adverse neurological outcomes may still be observed in the setting of infections acquired in late gestation [18], although CNS injury is much less common when fetal infections are acquired during this time point in pregnancy [19].

The prevalence of congenital CMV infection within a given population correlates directly with maternal CMV seroprevalence [20]. Indeed, preconception immunity to CMV does not confer complete protection against fetal transmission in subsequent pregnancies, although the risk of congenital CMV clearly is greater in the setting of a primary infection during pregnancy. Overall, transplacental transmission of virus occurs in about one-third of mothers with primary CMV infection [21–23], and approximately one-half of these infections acquired in utero result in a symptomatic clinical syndrome [24]. Fetal infection occurs in up to ~1.5 % of pregnancies in which there is preconception immunity [15], either due to reactivation of latent infection or, probably more commonly, due to maternal reinfection with novel strain variants of CMV [21, 25, 26]. Strain variation among clinical isolates of CMV is substantial, and the presence of preexisting maternal immunity does not appear to fully protect against different strains [27–29]. Importantly, preconception maternal immunity unfortunately does not completely protect the infected fetus from neurological injury and sequelae [30]. Indeed, in a study of 300 children with confirmed congenital CMV, investigators at the University of Alabama, Birmingham, found that the incidence of progressive hearing loss was not different in children born to mothers with preexisting immunity when compared to women who gave birth to infected newborns in the setting of a primary maternal infection during pregnancy [31]. Such observations complicate the conceptualization and design of a preventative CMV vaccine (reviewed later in this chapter). These observations suggest that infection prevention strategies should not only be targeted to seronegative but also to seropositive pregnant women.

Congenital CMV infection is the major infectious cause of birth defects and childhood neurodevelopmental disorders. Among the primary clinical manifestations associated with congenital CMV infection, the most devastating are those involving the developing CNS since, in contrast to other end-organ injury, CNS injury is generally believed to be irreversible. The presence of symptoms at birth in an infant with congenital CMV is an important harbinger of brain involvement and potential neurodevelopment sequelae. CNS injury and attendant long-term neurodevelopmental deficits are substantially more common in infants with symptoms at birth. The most commonly observed symptoms of CMV infection at birth are intrauterine growth retardation (IUGR), purpura, jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, microcephaly, hearing impairment, and thrombocytopenia [32]. While clinical signs due to abnormalities of the reticuloendothelial system (like anemia, hepatosplenomegaly, jaundice) are transient, neurological deficits either are evident at birth and typically persist for life or tend to become evident (as sensorineural hearing loss) in early childhood. Only 10–15 % of children with congenital CMV infection exhibit clinical signs at birth, although even children who appear asymptomatic at birth are at risk for neurodevelopmental sequelae [33]. Most children (60–90 %) with symptomatic infection, and 10–15 % of those with asymptomatic infection, develop one or more long-term neurological sequelae, such as mental retardation, psychomotor retardation, cerebral palsy, developmental delay, sensorineural hearing loss, and ophthalmologic abnormalities [32, 34, 35]. Current estimates indicate that approximately 8,000 children in the United States are affected each year with one or more neurological sequelae related to in utero acquisition of CMV infection. CMV exerts a far greater impact on neurodevelopmental outcomes than that of other, better-known childhood disorders, such as Down syndrome (4,000/year), fetal alcohol syndrome (5,000/year), or spina bifida (3,500/year), although public awareness of CMV remains low [36–38]. In light of the public health significance of CMV-related long-term neurological disabilities, increased attention needs to be devoted to the study of the neuropathogenesis of this infection. Accordingly, the development of effective interventions, such as vaccines, would have a substantial and major public health impact on the prevalence of childhood disabilities [39].

2 Pathogenesis of CNS Injury Induced by Congenital CMV

Given the intrinsic limitations of performing histopathological studies on brain tissue from infants with symptomatic congenital CMV infection, the pathogenesis of CNS injury must be indirectly investigated. Brain imaging studies, cell culture models of infection, and observations from the study of cytokine and host inflammatory responses in children with CMV-induced brain injury (including cerebral palsy) have provided insights into the pathogenesis of CNS injury. In addition, animal models of perinatal and congenital CMV infection have provided important additional information about mechanisms of pathogenesis. These studies are considered in this section of the review.

2.1 Imaging Studies

A number of imaging modalities have contributed to our understanding of the natural history and pathogenesis of congenital CMV. Of particular interest are the imaging studies that have been reported of the developing brain in the CMV-infected fetus. Serial ultrasonograms or cranial CT scans have proven useful in detecting the overt pathological alterations in the fetal brain of symptomatic children and can accurately predict development of cognitive and motor deficiencies [40–42]. Importantly, the absence of detectable lesions in an asymptomatic congenitally infected newborn does not provide complete reassurance against the eventual diagnosis of CNS injury, since infants with normal CNS imaging are nevertheless at risk for developing hearing loss later in life [41].

Fetal imaging studies can demonstrate structural brain abnormalities as early as 28 weeks of gestation, using either MR images or ultrasonograms. T2- and T1-weighted MRI scans of CMV-infected fetal brains have demonstrated white matter abnormalities reflective of acute responses to infection, such as the loss of intermediate zone layer, focal necrosis, and hemorrhage. Chronic lesions due to CMV infection can also be demonstrated, including ventricular dilatation, white matter gliosis, atrophy (volume loss), parenchymal cysts, ependymal cysts, calcifications, and cortical malformations, most notably polymicrogyria [43]. Fetal sonographic studies obtained between 22 and 37 weeks of gestation have also demonstrated structural brain changes attributable to CMV. Transvaginal ultrasonograms have been reported to show abnormal periventricular hyper-/hypoechogenicity, ventricular adhesions, cystic formation around the ventricles, ependymal protrusions, abnormal sulci formation, and hypoplasia of the corpus callosum [44]. Fetal imaging studies have been useful for establishing timelines for determining the embryologic sequence of CNS infection, and these findings may in turn be useful in predicting neurodevelopmental prognosis [45]. Lanari and colleagues recently compiled an elegant summary of the pattern of neurodevelopmental injury as a function of timing of acquisition of brain infection in utero. This review noted that lesions occurring prior to 18 weeks gestational age commonly include lissencephaly with thin cerebral cortex, cerebellar hypoplasia, ventriculomegaly, periventricular calcification, and delay in myelination. At 18–24 weeks, migrational abnormalities may occur, including polymicrogyria, schizencephaly, and periventricular cysts. Third trimester infections may be associated with central nervous system (CNS) lesions that may include delayed myelination, dysmyelination, calcification, and white matter disease [46].

Neonatal imaging of children with symptomatic CMV infection is typically associated with structural brain abnormalities similar to those described in the infected fetus. The most frequent of these is the presence of intracranial calcifications, present in approximately 70 % of cases [47]. Abnormal cranial ultrasonograms (demonstrating periventricular or parenchymal calcifications, or increased ventricular size) can be performed in the neonatal period in symptomatic congenitally infected infants and are able to both identify children with overt, acute CNS

injury as well as those at risk for later neurological deficits [41]. Ultrasonography, however, may miss more subtle CNS pathology in the neonate. Brain MRI of children with congenital CMV has revealed multiple intracranial pathologies, including white matter lesions, neuronal migration, and myelination abnormalities; polymicrogyria; cerebellar, cortical, and hippocampal dysplasia or hypoplasia; periventricular cysts; and ventriculomegaly [48, 49]. The finding of subtle white matter lesions with or without polymicrogyria and in combination with anterior temporal lobe cysts was described in a study of congenital CMV identified by PCR-based screening of Guthrie newborn screening cards [50]. Another recently reported study assessed the diagnostic and prognostic value of cerebral MRI in comparison to ultrasonography in predicting neurodevelopmental outcome in newborns with congenital CMV. Of note, MRI provided additional information beyond that which could be identified by ultrasound (white matter abnormalities in three cases, lissencephaly/polymicrogyria in one and a cyst of the temporal lobe in another one) in four infants who had abnormal findings in both exams. Even more significantly, three newborns had normal ultrasound exams, but had abnormal MRI exams documenting white matter abnormalities and, in one case, cerebellar hypoplasia [51]. Further studies will be required to identify the prognostic role of MRI, particularly with respect to the finding of white matter lesions currently not identifiable by ultrasonography. Figure 1 demonstrates an example of CNS pathology in an infant with symptomatic congenital CMV infection.

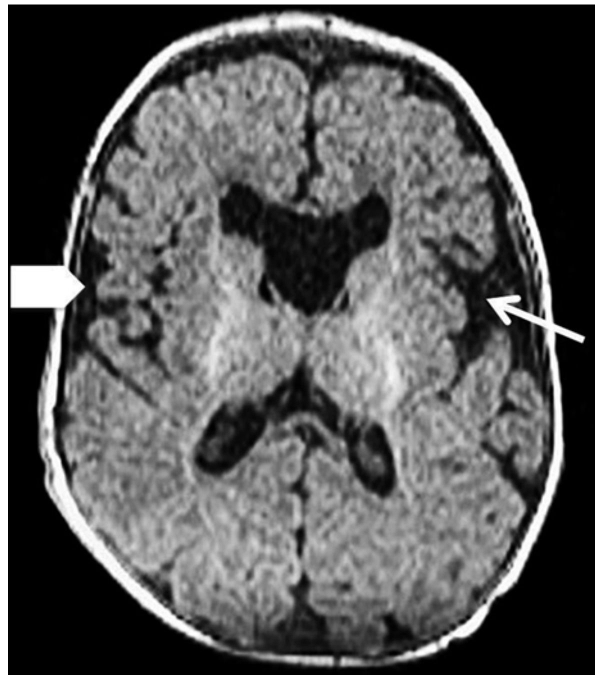


Fig. 1 T1-weighted brain MRI of infant with congenital CMV infection. Axial view is demonstrated. Findings include ventriculomegaly, loss of brain volume with prominence of sulci (*arrow*), pachygyria (*solid arrowhead*) on the surface, and very thin cortex. This infant went on to manifest a seizure disorder and profound neurodevelopmental delay

2.2 Cell Culture Models of CMV Infection

Although the developing brain is the major target for end-organ damage in the setting of congenital CMV infection, the precise cellular targets of infection remain incompletely characterized. Inclusion bodies in the brain have been detected during postmortem histological analysis of fatal cases of congenital CMV infection [52], but little or no histological data identifying the different cell types infected during congenital CMV infection has been reported. Cell culture models of human brain cells are therefore vital in attempting to elucidate the pathogenesis of fetal CNS injury. Both primary human cell culture systems and studies with brain-derived cell lines have demonstrated that practically all cell types in the brain have some degree of susceptibility to CMV infection. The current state of knowledge about CNS targets of infection, including the permissiveness of various cell types for full viral replication and the putative mediators of injury, is summarized in Table 1. Brain microvascular endothelial cells [53–55], astrocytes [56], neuronal cells [57], oligodendroglial cells [58], microglia/macrophages [59], and neural progenitor/stem cells (NPCs) [60] all have a propensity for CMV infection. However, these different cell types vary in their ability to support a complete viral replication cycle, with the permissivity of any given cell type for completion of the viral infection cycle limited by host and viral transcription factors and other elements regulating viral gene expression [47].

Of the cell types of the brain that can be infected with CMV, the astrocyte, the major cell type constituting about 70 % the brain, is the cell type most supportive of productive CMV replication. Primary human fetal astrocyte cultures support cytopathic viral replication, immediate early (IE) gene expression, and β-promoter (early gene) activity, and infectious virus is readily detectable in cell supernatants [56]. Notably, these cells, in association with brain microvasculature endothelial cells (BMVEC), form the blood–brain barrier, a structure that maintains the highly regulated solute, immunologic, and cellular microenvironment in the CNS [61]. Lytic viral replication is supported by BMVEC, which in turn promotes monocyte activation, migration, and infection in the CNS [62].

In contrast to astrocytes, primary differentiated human neurons have generally been found to be refractory to CMV replication, with some exceptions as noted below. Highly purified primary neuronal cultures (>90 % neurons) contain a small percentage of dividing astrocytes that support viral replication, but viral gene products cannot be detected in neurons [56]. The block in the viral replicative cycle appears to be at the level of the major immediate early promoter (MIEP), and not due to a defect in viral entry [60]. Experiments with undifferentiated human oligodendroglioma (HOG) cells, representative of immature oligodendrocytes, demonstrate that oligodendrocytes, like neurons, may not be fully permissive for CMV infection. However, CMV IE, US11, and glycoprotein B (gB) gene expression is induced in HOG cells upon differentiation with phorbol-myristate acetate (PMA), without production of viral progeny [58]. Some studies utilizing neural progenitor cells (NPCs) have demonstrated, following in vitro differentiation and enrichment, that neurons can support productive replication of CMV [63, 64]. Taken together, it appears that the state of cell differentiation as well as its functional status may modulate permissiveness

Table 1 CNS targets of CMV infection and pathogenic mechanisms. Impact of CMV infection on major cell types in the developing fetal CNS is summarized, and potential mechanisms mediating neuropathogenesis are noted

Cell type	Permissivity for infection	Cytokines and inflammatory mediators induced	Potential role(s) in neuropathogenesis
Astrocytes	Fully permissive for lytic replication	Predominant cytokine produced in infected astrocytes is TGF-β; CCL2, CXCL8, CCL3, and CCL5 are also produced	Plays key role in intercellular signaling and neuronal development; modulates synaptic activity within the nervous system; astrocyte signaling plays key role in microglial activation
Microvascular endothelial cells (BMVEC)	Fully permissive for lytic replication	Key cells in promoting spread; possible site of *trans*-endothelial entry of CMV into the brain	BMVEC participate in formation of blood–brain barrier (BBB); infection promotes monocyte activation, migration, infection
Pericytes	Fully permissive for lytic replication	CXCL8/IL-8, CXCL11/ITAC, CCL5/RANTES, TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6	Support BMVEC cells; contribute to BBB; infection contributes both to viral dissemination in CNS and neuroinflammation
Microglia	Abortive; not permissive for lytic replication	Respond to CMV by producing TNF-α, IL-6, CXCL10, CCL2, CCL3, CCL5	Reservoir for latent genome; origin from myeloid precursors; activation may play role in perturbation of neural cell development, oligodendrocyte maturation
Neural progenitor/stem cells (NPCs)	Fully permissive for lytic replication	CMV interferes with migration, proliferation, and differentiation into neurons and astrocytes; modifies cell cycle; modifies metabolism	Disruption of normal cellular processes of NPCs by CMV may be responsible for most structural and migratory abnormalities seen during congenital infection
Neurons	Uncertain; minimal evidence for permissive infection	Block in replication at level of immediate early transcriptional machinery; virus enters but does not complete life cycle	NPCs can be induced to undergo differentiation in cell culture, and under these conditions neurons may support productive viral replication

of neurons and oligodendrocytes to CMV brain infection in cell culture systems. The implications for in utero neuropathogenesis remain to be elucidated.

Microglia, the end-differentiated resident brain macrophages, also do not appear to support productive CMV infection [56]. However, CMV DNA has been demonstrated in infected microglial cells in the absence of detectable viral IE proteins [65, 66]. It has been proposed that brain microglia are replenished from bone marrow-derived

precursors that migrate into the brain [47]. It has been suggested that myeloid precursor cells may be a site for CMV latency and a vehicle of viral dissemination in the host [67–70]. Although myeloid precursors and monocytes are not typically productively infected by CMV [70], they support productive CMV infection at certain stages of differentiation [71]. In addition, endothelial cell-adapted viral strains have been shown to infect both macrophages and dendritic cells [72], a process which requires the CMV gene products essential for endothelial tropism, UL128, 130, and 131 [73]. These gene products have recently emerged as key candidates for CMV subunit vaccines [74]. It has been suggested that macrophages originating in the vascular space may be an important vehicle for trafficking of virus into the CNS in the developing fetal brain [47].

NPCs have emerged as cells of particular interest in the pathogenesis of congenital CMV-induced brain injury. These cells are predominantly located in the subventricular zone and subgranular zone of the hippocampus in the mammalian brain [47]. NPCs possess the ability to migrate, proliferate, and differentiate into neurons, astrocytes, and oligodendrocytes. Figure 2 provides a schematic model of the central role of these cells in CMV-induced neuropathogenesis. In the setting of CMV brain infection (including histopathological observations discerned from fatal congenital infections), it is well recognized that virus preferentially infects cells in the ventricular or subventricular regions [52, 75]. This anatomic distribution suggests the possibility that CMV replication may be particularly well adapted to replicate in the neural stem/precursor cells residing in this region. Several studies have demonstrated that human CMV replicates efficiently in undifferentiated human neural precursor cells in cell culture [60, 63, 64, 76, 77]. It has been proposed that the extent to which these cells are infected in utero may determine the outcome of CNS sequelae associated with congenital CMV infection [47].

CMV infection of human neural precursor cells appears to inhibit their differentiation into both neurons and astrocytes, an effect that may be mediated by virus-induced apoptosis in cells undergoing differentiation [76–78]. It has been proposed that CMV replication may inhibit neural precursor cell proliferation by altering cell cycle mechanisms [60, 79] and may perturb expression of genes related to neuronal metabolism and neuronal differentiation in NPCs [78]. Indeed, disruption of these cellular processes in neural precursor cells may account for a large portion of the structural and migratory abnormalities seen during congenital human CMV brain infection [47, 78]. A recent study in a cell culture model suggests that this susceptibility does not diminish with advancing brain development. In this study, NPC cultures derived at different gestational ages were evaluated after short (3–6) or extended (11–20) in vitro passage for viral entry efficiency, viral gene expression, virus-induced cytopathic effect, and release of progeny virus. Extended passage cultures showed evidence of increased viral entry and more efficient production of infectious progeny, suggesting that CMV infection in fetal brain may continue to result in neural cell loss even with advancing brain development [80]. These observations suggest that persistent CMV infection may continue to negatively impact brain development postnatally. Extended, long-term infect of NPCs postnatally pro-

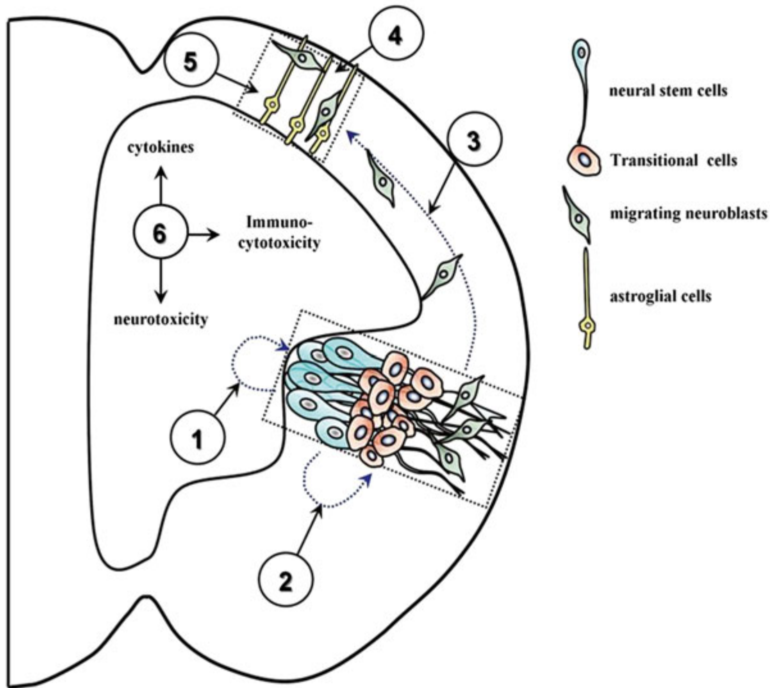


Fig. 2 Schematic representation of mechanisms of brain injury following infection with CMV. Neural stem cells (in *blue*), found along the lateral ventricular wall of the brain, are involved in the development of new neural circuits in the developing brain. These cells differentiate into new brain cells (astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, and neurons), either directly or via an intermediate transitional progenitor cell (*red cells*). Formation of new neural circuitry involves migration of neuroblasts (*green cells*), through a directed pathway that is supported in part by astroglial cells. CMV may potentially affect any or all of these stages: (*1*) Infection of neural stem cells may disrupt their ability to maintain a self-renewing cycle; (*2*) Differentiation of neural stem cells via the transitional cells and eventually neuroblasts may also be disrupted by CMV; (*3*) Brain infection affects the migratory patterns of neuroblasts, particularly during cortical and cerebellar development; (*4*) This presumably alters the migratory patterning of other specific brain structures, causing improper layering of the neocortex; (*5*) Since glial cells are also susceptible to CMV, functions of glia in directing neuronal layering patterns may be affected. (*6*) Finally, infection can induce a myriad of inflammatory mediators, including cytokines and chemokines, and elicit inflammatory cell infiltration. *Reproduced from* Cheeran et al., Neuropathogenesis of congenital CMV infection: Disease mechanisms and prospects for intervention. Clin Micro Rev 2009: 22, 99–126

vides a mechanism by which CMV could to continue to exert an impact on neurodevelopmental processes in early childhood in the context of congenital infection of the CNS. This aspect of CMV replication in NPCs provides reinforcement for clinical trials examining the impact of extended, long-term (6 months) valganciclovir therapy in infants with congenital CMV infection [81].

2.3 Role of Inflammatory Response

In addition to the direct damage to specific cell types conferred by fetal brain infection with CMV, the inflammatory response to infection also is also increasingly becoming recognized as a major contributing factor in the pathogenesis of brain injury. Autopsies of prenatally infected fetuses with CMV have confirmed the presence of a significant inflammatory response in addition to viral inclusions in the brain [82–86]. Upon autopsy, one study recently found that nearly all fetal organs infected with CMV had evidence of inflammatory infiltrate and found that the level of organ damage was associated with the level of inflammation; intriguingly, in addition to the damaging direct effects of viral brain infection and the attendant inflammatory response, hypoxic brain injury due to severe CMV placentitis was also postulated as a contributing factor in brain injury [83]. Tissue-specific viral load has been proposed to impact the magnitude of the inflammatory response. In one study, it was noted that tissue viral load was correlated to immune response; low CMV viral load elicited only a modest immune response with mild brain damage, while tissue containing high viral load had high levels of cytotoxic CD8+ T-lymphocytes, which are associated with immune-related structural damage [82]. In total, this evidence suggests that direct fetal infection with a neurotropic pathogen like CMV not only increases the risk of neurological sequelae mediated by factors such as lytic infection, disruption of neuronal migration, and increased apoptosis, but also through a cascade of events triggering a pathological fetal immune response.

A current view of mechanisms of neuroinflammation in adults revolves around the concept of "reactive microgliosis" [87]. Microglia can be activated in several different patterns, including classical activation (M1 phenotype), alternate activation (M2a phenotype), or acquired deactivation (M2b phenotype) [88, 89]. While the M1 phenotype appears to promote a deleterious, pro-inflammatory status, it has been proposed that the M2 phenotype could favor brain repair [90, 91]. In addition to promoting a pro-inflammatory milieu, developmental brain damage mechanisms can also be driven by microglial activation [92–95]. Systemic and brain inflammation driven by activated microglia in turn impacts the development of different neural cell populations, and influences oligodendrocyte maturation [96] and survival [97, 98]. CMV-driven release of cytokines, particularly IL-6, could impact proliferation and function of neural stem cells [99]. Migrating neurons can be compromised by the release of inflammatory factors released by activated microglia, potentially leading to neuronal cell death or abnormal neuronal migration, one of the hallmarks of CMV infection of the developing fetal brain [100].

A number of studies have attempted to define the precise cytokine responses associated with fetal brain infection with CMV, predominately using cell culture models. In one model of cultured human glial cells, derived from 16- to 20-week-old fetal brain tissue, response to CMV infection is heralded by expression of a number of immune mediators, including chemokines and cytokines [101]. Microglial cells respond to CMV infection by producing TNF-α and IL-6 as well as CXCL10, CCL2, CCL3, and CCL5 [102, 103]. Many of the cytokine responses of microglial cells appear to be driven by innate responses mediated by pattern

recognition receptors on microglia that recognize pathogen-associated molecular patterns [104]; for CMV, these ligands appear to be envelope glycoproteins gB and gH, which signal through Toll-like receptor (TLR) 2, and double-stranded RNA molecules generated during infection, which signal via TLR3 [105–109]. Chemokines and cytokines are also elicited by CMV infection of astrocytes. As noted, the chemokine response in astrocytes includes CCL2, CXCL8, CCL3, and CCL5 [102, 103]. In contrast, the cytokine response to CMV in astrocytes appears to be restricted to TGF-β, an anti-inflammatory cytokine [110]. Primary brain vascular pericytes have recently been shown to be a source of cytokine production in the context of CMV infection, including CXCL8/IL-8, CXCL11/ITAC, CCL5/RANTES, TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6 [111].

In addition to inducing the production of chemokines and cytokines following CMV infection of the fetal brain, the viral genome itself encodes homologs of several immunomodulatory proteins, including homologs of CXC (*UL146*, *147*) and CC (*UL128*) chemokines [112]. CMV also encodes functional homologs of chemokine receptor-like G-protein coupled receptors [113]. The role that such gene products play in the pathogenesis of fetal brain injury is unknown. CMV also encodes a functional homolog of the IL-10 gene. Transcription of this gene product has been shown to inhibit CXCL10 production in human microglial cells, a possible mechanism by which CMV genes contribute to evasion of host immune clearance [102].

3 CMV Fetal/Neonatal Brain Infection: Prospects for Intervention

Currently, there are limited interventions for the treatment and prevention of fetal and neonatal CMV brain infections. In women with primary CMV infections complicated by intrauterine transmission, the use of an anti-CMV high-titer immunoglobulin (HIG) has been associated with improved neurodevelopmental outcomes, including regression of fetal cerebral abnormalities for fetuses treated in utero [114, 115], although these studies are uncontrolled and proof of efficacy is still uncertain. A controlled, multicenter trial of ganciclovir in infants with congenital CMV infection and neurological findings at birth indicated that 6 weeks of intravenous therapy was associated with improved short-term and long-term audiologic outcomes [116]. In a follow-up study in which infants were administered serial neurodevelopmental screening examinations, ganciclovir therapy was associated with fewer developmental delays at 6 and 12 months, compared with untreated infants [117]. Based on these encouraging observations, a trial is currently being conducted that will compare 6 weeks to 6 months of therapy, using oral valganciclovir [81], toward the goal of ascertaining whether any additional neurodevelopmental benefit might be realized by longer treatment courses.

Ultimately, the best prospects for control of congenital CMV rest with the development of an effective preconception vaccine. Several candidate vaccines are in various stages of preclinical development, and some have advanced to clinical trials [118, 119]. Most vaccines currently being examined in human studies target envelope

glycoprotein B (gB) and various combinations of T-cell targets, including the pp65 (ppUL83) tegument protein and the major immediate early gene product-1 (IE1) [120]. The gB vaccine has demonstrated modest efficacy in a phase II study in young women of child-bearing age [121]. As previously noted, vaccine development has been complicated by the increasing recognition that women can become reinfected with new, novel strains of CMV during pregnancy and that these strains, in turn, can be transmitted to the fetus, resulting in attendant neurological injury and long-term sequelae [25, 122]. Ultimately, development of a CMV vaccine would therefore probably need to focus not only on prevention against primary infection in seronegative women, but also reinfection in seropositive women, in order to fully protect all infants against the neurodevelopmental sequelae of congenital infection.

References

1. Marshall GS, Starr SE, Witzleben CL, Gonczol E, Plotkin SA. Protracted mononucleosis-like illness associated with acquired cytomegalovirus infection in a previously healthy child: transient cellular immune defects and chronic hepatopathy. Pediatrics. 1991;87(4):556–62.
2. Rafailidis PI, Mourtzoukou EG, Varbobitis IC, Falagas ME. Severe cytomegalovirus infection in apparently immunocompetent patients: a systematic review. Virol J. 2008;5:47.
3. Cohen JI, Corey GR. Cytomegalovirus infection in the normal host. Medicine. 1985;64(2): 100–14.
4. Kovacs A, Schluchter M, Easley K, Demmler G, Shearer W, La Russa P, Pitt J, Cooper E, Goldfarb J, Hodes D, Kattan M, McIntosh K. Cytomegalovirus infection and HIV-1 disease progression in infants born to HIV-1-infected women. Pediatric Pulmonary and Cardiovascular Complications of Vertically Transmitted HIV Infection Study Group. N Engl J Med. 1999;341(2):77–84.
5. Boeckh M, Fries B, Nichols WG. Recent advances in the prevention of CMV infection and disease after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Pediatr Transplant. 2004;8 Suppl 5:19–27.
6. Razonable RR. Strategies for managing cytomegalovirus in transplant recipients. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2010;11(12):1983–97.
7. Collier AC, Handsfield HH, Ashley R, Roberts PL, DeRouen T, Meyers JD, Corey L. Cervical but not urinary excretion of cytomegalovirus is related to sexual activity and contraceptive practices in sexually active women. J Infect Dis. 1995;171(1):33–8.
8. Collier AC, Handsfield HH, Roberts PL, DeRouen T, Meyers JD, Leach L, Murphy VL, Verdon M, Corey L. Cytomegalovirus infection in women attending a sexually transmitted disease clinic. J Infect Dis. 1990;162(1):46–51.
9. Staras SA, Flanders WD, Dollard SC, Pass RF, McGowan Jr JE, Cannon MJ. Influence of sexual activity on cytomegalovirus seroprevalence in the United States, 1988–1994. Sex Transm Dis. 2008;35(5):472–9.
10. Murph JR, Baron JC, Brown CK, Ebelhack CL, Bale Jr JF. The occupational risk of cytomegalovirus infection among day-care providers. JAMA. 1991;265(5):603–8.
11. Pass RF, Hutto C, Ricks R, Cloud GA. Increased rate of cytomegalovirus infection among parents of children attending day-care centers. N Engl J Med. 1986;314(22):1414–8.
12. Schleiss MR. Role of breast milk in acquisition of cytomegalovirus infection: recent advances. Curr Opin Pediatr. 2006;18(1):48–52.
13. Joseph SA, Beliveau C, Muecke CJ, Rahme E, Soto JC, Flowerdew G, Johnston L, Langille D, Gyorkos TW. Cytomegalovirus as an occupational risk in daycare educators. Paediatr Child Health. 2006;11(7):401–7.

14. Bate SL, Dollard SC, Cannon MJ. Cytomegalovirus seroprevalence in the United States: the national health and nutrition examination surveys, 1988–2004. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50(11): 1439–47.
15. Kenneson A, Cannon MJ. Review and meta-analysis of the epidemiology of congenital cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection. Rev Med Virol. 2007;17(4):253–76.
16. Pass RF, Fowler KB, Boppana SB, Britt WJ, Stagno S. Congenital cytomegalovirus infection following first trimester maternal infection: symptoms at birth and outcome. J Clin Virol. 2006;35(2):216–20.
17. Picone O, Vauloup-Fellous C, Cordier AG, Guitton S, Senat MV, Fuchs F, Ayoubi JM, Grangeot Keros L, Benachi A. A series of 238 cytomegalovirus primary infections during pregnancy: description and outcome. Prenat Diagn. 2013;33:751–8.
18. Stagno S, Pass RF, Cloud G, Britt WJ, Henderson RE, Walton PD, Veren DA, Page F, Alford CA. Primary cytomegalovirus infection in pregnancy. Incidence, transmission to fetus, and clinical outcome. JAMA. 1986;256(14):1904–8.
19. Gindes L, Teperberg-Oikawa M, Sherman D, Pardo J, Rahav G. Congenital cytomegalovirus infection following primary maternal infection in the third trimester. BJOG. 2008;115(7): 830–5.
20. de Vries JJ, van Zwet EW, Dekker FW, Kroes AC, Verkerk PH, Vossen AC. The apparent paradox of maternal seropositivity as a risk factor for congenital cytomegalovirus infection: a population-based prediction model. Rev Med Virol. 2013;23(4):241–9.
21. Boppana SB, Rivera LB, Fowler KB, Mach M, Britt WJ. Intrauterine transmission of cytomegalovirus to infants of women with preconceptional immunity. N Engl J Med. 2001;344(18): 1366–71.
22. Fowler KB, Stagno S, Pass RF. Maternal immunity and prevention of congenital cytomegalovirus infection. JAMA. 2003;289(8):1008–11.
23. Fowler KB, Stagno S, Pass RF, Britt WJ, Boll TJ, Alford CA. The outcome of congenital cytomegalovirus infection in relation to maternal antibody status. N Engl J Med. 1992; 326(10):663–7.
24. Adler SP, Nigro G. Interrupting intrauterine transmission of cytomegalovirus. Rev Med Virol. 2006;16(2):69–71.
25. Yamamoto AY, Mussi-Pinhata MM, Boppana SB, Novak Z, Wagatsuma VM, Oliveira Pde F, Duarte G, Britt WJ. Human cytomegalovirus reinfection is associated with intrauterine transmission in a highly cytomegalovirus-immune maternal population. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2010;202(3):297. e1–8.
26. Ross SA, Arora N, Novak Z, Fowler KB, Britt WJ, Boppana SB. Cytomegalovirus reinfections in healthy seroimmune women. J Infect Dis. 2010;201(3):386–9.
27. Paradowska E, Jablonska A, Studzinska M, Suski P, Kasztelewicz B, Zawilinska B, Wisniewska-Ligier M, Dzierzanowska-Fangrat K, Wozniakowska-Gesicka T, Czech-Kowalska J, Lipka B, Kornacka M, Pawlik D, Tomasik T, Kosz-Vnenchak M, Lesnikowski ZJ. Distribution of cytomegalovirus gN variants and associated clinical sequelae in infants. J Clin Virol. 2013;58(1):271–5.
28. Kropff B, Burkhardt C, Schott J, Nentwich J, Fisch T, Britt W, Mach M. Glycoprotein N of human cytomegalovirus protects the virus from neutralizing antibodies. PLoS Pathog. 2012;8(10):e1002999.
29. Pati SK, Novak Z, Purser M, Arora N, Mach M, Britt WJ, Boppana SB. Strain-specific neutralizing antibody responses against human cytomegalovirus envelope glycoprotein N. Clin Vaccine Immunol. 2012;19(6):909–13.
30. Ross SA, Boppana SB. Congenital cytomegalovirus infection: outcome and diagnosis. Semin Pediatr Infect Dis. 2005;16(1):44–9.
31. Ross SA, Fowler KB, Ashrith G, Stagno S, Britt WJ, Pass RF, Boppana SB. Hearing loss in children with congenital cytomegalovirus infection born to mothers with preexisting immunity. J Pediatr. 2006;148(3):332–6.
32. Swanson EC, Schleiss MR. Congenital cytomegalovirus infection: new prospects for prevention and therapy. Pediatr Clin North Am. 2013;60(2):335–49.

33. Boppana SB, Fowler KB, Britt WJ, Stagno S, Pass RF. Symptomatic congenital cytomegalovirus infection in infants born to mothers with preexisting immunity to cytomegalovirus. Pediatrics. 1999;104(1 Pt 1):55–60.
34. Kylat RI, Kelly EN, Ford-Jones EL. Clinical findings and adverse outcome in neonates with symptomatic congenital cytomegalovirus (SCCMV) infection. Eur J Pediatr. 2006;165(11):773–8.
35. Gaytant MA, Steegers EA, Semmekrot BA, Merkus HM, Galama JM. Congenital cytomegalovirus infection: review of the epidemiology and outcome. Obstet Gynecol Surv. 2002;57(4):245–56.
36. Cannon MJ, Davis KF. Washing our hands of the congenital cytomegalovirus disease epidemic. BMC Public Health. 2005;5:70.
37. Cannon MJ, Westbrook K, Levis D, Schleiss MR, Thackeray R, Pass RF. Awareness of and behaviors related to child-to-mother transmission of cytomegalovirus. Prev Med. 2012;54(5):351–7.
38. Cordier AG, Guitton S, Vauloup-Fellous C, Grangeot-Keros L, Benachi A, Picone O. Awareness and knowledge of congenital cytomegalovirus infection among health care providers in France. J Clin Virol. 2012;55(2):158–63.
39. Arvin AM, Fast P, Myers M, Plotkin S, Rabinovich R. Vaccine development to prevent cytomegalovirus disease: report from the National Vaccine Advisory Committee. Clin Infect Dis. 2004;39(2):233–9.
40. Noyola DE, Demmler GJ, Nelson CT, Griesser C, Williamson WD, Atkins JT, Rozelle J, Turcich M, Llorente AM, Sellers-Vinson S, Reynolds A, Bale Jr JF, Gerson P, Yow MD. Early predictors of neurodevelopmental outcome in symptomatic congenital cytomegalovirus infection. J Pediatr. 2001;138(3):325–31.
41. Ancora G, Lanari M, Lazzarotto T, Venturi V, Tridapalli E, Sandri F, Menarini M, Ferretti E, Faldella G. Cranial ultrasound scanning and prediction of outcome in newborns with congenital cytomegalovirus infection. J Pediatr. 2007;150(2):157–61.
42. Boppana SB, Fowler KB, Vaid Y, Hedlund G, Stagno S, Britt WJ, Pass RF. Neuroradiographic findings in the newborn period and long-term outcome in children with symptomatic congenital cytomegalovirus infection. Pediatrics. 1997;99(3):409–14.
43. Barkovich AJ, Girard N. Fetal brain infections. Childs Nerv Syst. 2003;19(7–8):501–7.
44. Malinger G, Lev D, Zahalka N, Ben Aroia Z, Watemberg N, Kidron D, Sira LB, Lerman-Sagie T. Fetal cytomegalovirus infection of the brain: the spectrum of sonographic findings. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol. 2003;24(1):28–32.
45. Barkovich AJ, Lindan CE. Congenital cytomegalovirus infection of the brain: imaging analysis and embryologic considerations. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol. 1994;15(4):703–15.
46. Lanari M, Capretti MG, Lazzarotto T, Gabrielli L, Rizzollo S, Mostert M, Manzoni P. Neuroimaging in CMV congenital infected neonates: how and when. Early Hum Dev. 2012;88 Suppl 2:S3–5.
47. Cheeran MC, Lokensgard JR, Schleiss MR. Neuropathogenesis of congenital cytomegalovirus infection: disease mechanisms and prospects for intervention. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2009;22(1):99–126. Table of Contents.
48. Manara R, Balao L, Baracchini C, Drigo P, D'Elia R, Ruga EM. Brain magnetic resonance findings in symptomatic congenital cytomegalovirus infection. Pediatr Radiol. 2011;41(8):962–70.
49. Mavili E, Coskun A, Per H, Donmez H, Kumandas S, Yikilmaz A. Polymicrogyria: correlation of magnetic resonance imaging and clinical findings. Childs Nerv Syst. 2012;28(6):905–9.
50. van der Knaap MS, Vermeulen G, Barkhof F, Hart AA, Loeber JG, Weel JF. Pattern of white matter abnormalities at MR imaging: use of polymerase chain reaction testing of Guthrie cards to link pattern with congenital cytomegalovirus infection. Radiology. 2004;230(2):529–36.
51. Capretti MG, Lanari M, Tani G, Ancora G, Sciutti R, Marsico C, Lazzarotto T, Gabrielli L, Guerra B, Corvaglia L, Faldella G. Role of cerebral ultrasound and magnetic resonance imaging in newborns with congenital cytomegalovirus infection. Brain Dev. 2014;36(3):203–11.

52. Perlman JM, Argyle C. Lethal cytomegalovirus infection in preterm infants: clinical, radiological, and neuropathological findings. Ann Neurol. 1992;31(1):64–8.
53. Poland SD, Costello P, Dekaban GA, Rice GP. Cytomegalovirus in the brain: in vitro infection of human brain-derived cells. J Infect Dis. 1990;162(6):1252–62.
54. Lathey JL, Wiley CA, Verity MA, Nelson JA. Cultured human brain capillary endothelial cells are permissive for infection by human cytomegalovirus. Virology. 1990;176(1):266–73.
55. Fish KN, Soderberg-Naucler C, Mills LK, Stenglein S, Nelson JA. Human cytomegalovirus persistently infects aortic endothelial cells. J Virol. 1998;72(7):5661–8.
56. Lokensgard JR, Cheeran MC, Gekker G, Hu S, Chao CC, Peterson PK. Human cytomegalovirus replication and modulation of apoptosis in astrocytes. J Hum Virol. 1999;2(2):91–101.
57. Tsutsui Y, Kosugi I, Kawasaki H. Neuropathogenesis in cytomegalovirus infection: indication of the mechanisms using mouse models. Rev Med Virol. 2005;15(5):327–45.
58. Spiller OB, Borysiewicz LK, Morgan BP. Development of a model for cytomegalovirus infection of oligodendrocytes. J Gen Virol. 1997;78(Pt 12):3349–56.
59. Schut RL, Gekker G, Hu S, Chao CC, Pomeroy C, Jordan MC, Peterson PK. Cytomegalovirus replication in murine microglial cell cultures: suppression of permissive infection by interferon-gamma. J Infect Dis. 1994;169(5):1092–6.
60. Cheeran MC, Hu S, Ni HT, Sheng W, Palmquist JM, Peterson PK, Lokensgard JR. Neural precursor cell susceptibility to human cytomegalovirus diverges along glial or neuronal differentiation pathways. J Neurosci Res. 2005;82(6):839–50.
61. Abbott NJ, Ronnback L, Hansson E. Astrocyte-endothelial interactions at the blood-brain barrier. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2006;7(1):41–53.
62. Chan G, Nogalski MT, Bentz GL, Smith MS, Parmater A, Yurochko AD. PI3K-dependent upregulation of Mcl-1 by human cytomegalovirus is mediated by epidermal growth factor receptor and inhibits apoptosis in short-lived monocytes. J Immunol. 2010;184(6):3213–22.
63. McCarthy M, Auger D, Whittemore SR. Human cytomegalovirus causes productive infection and neuronal injury in differentiating fetal human central nervous system neuroepithelial precursor cells. J Hum Virol. 2000;3(4):215–28.
64. Luo MH, Schwartz PH, Fortunato EA. Neonatal neural progenitor cells and their neuronal and glial cell derivatives are fully permissive for human cytomegalovirus infection. J Virol. 2008;82(20):9994–10007.
65. Pulliam L, Moore D, West DC. Human cytomegalovirus induces IL-6 and TNF alpha from macrophages and microglial cells: possible role in neurotoxicity. J Neurovirol. 1995;1(2):219–27.
66. Pulliam L. Cytomegalovirus preferentially infects a monocyte derived macrophage/microglial cell in human brain cultures: neuropathology differs between strains. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1991;50(4):432–40.
67. Hahn G, Jores R, Mocarski ES. Cytomegalovirus remains latent in a common precursor of dendritic and myeloid cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1998;95(7):3937–42.
68. Jarvis MA, Nelson JA. Human cytomegalovirus persistence and latency in endothelial cells and macrophages. Curr Opin Microbiol. 2002;5(4):403–7.
69. Jarvis MA, Nelson JA. Mechanisms of human cytomegalovirus persistence and latency. Front Biosci. 2002;7:d1575–82.
70. Kondo K, Xu J, Mocarski ES. Human cytomegalovirus latent gene expression in granulocyte-macrophage progenitors in culture and in seropositive individuals. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1996;93(20):11137–42.
71. Soderberg-Naucler C, Streblow DN, Fish KN, Allan-Yorke J, Smith PP, Nelson JA. Reactivation of latent human cytomegalovirus in CD14(+) monocytes is differentiation dependent. J Virol. 2001;75(16):7543–54.
72. Sinzger C, Eberhardt K, Cavignac Y, Weinstock C, Kessler T, Jahn G, Davignon JL. Macrophage cultures are susceptible to lytic productive infection by endothelial-cell-propagated human cytomegalovirus strains and present viral IE1 protein to CD4+ T cells despite late downregulation of MHC class II molecules. J Gen Virol. 2006;87(Pt 7):1853–62.

73. Gerna G, Percivalle E, Lilleri D, Lozza L, Fornara C, Hahn G, Baldanti F, Revello MG. Dendritic-cell infection by human cytomegalovirus is restricted to strains carrying functional UL131-128 genes and mediates efficient viral antigen presentation to CD8+ T cells. J Gen Virol. 2005;86(Pt 2):275–84.
74. Fouts AE, Chan P, Stephan JP, Vandlen R, Feierbach B. Antibodies against the gH/gL/UL128/UL130/UL131 complex comprise the majority of the anti-cytomegalovirus (anti-CMV) neutralizing antibody response in CMV hyperimmune globulin. J Virol. 2012; 86(13):7444–7.
75. Schmidbauer M, Budka H, Ulrich W, Ambros P. Cytomegalovirus (CMV) disease of the brain in AIDS and connatal infection: a comparative study by histology, immunocytochemistry and in situ DNA hybridization. Acta Neuropathol. 1989;79(3):286–93.
76. Odeberg J, Wolmer N, Falci S, Westgren M, Seiger A, Soderberg-Naucler C. Human cytomegalovirus inhibits neuronal differentiation and induces apoptosis in human neural precursor cells. J Virol. 2006;80(18):8929–39.
77. Odeberg J, Wolmer N, Falci S, Westgren M, Sundtrom E, Seiger A, Soderberg-Naucler C. Late human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) proteins inhibit differentiation of human neural precursor cells into astrocytes. J Neurosci Res. 2007;85(3):583–93.
78. D'Aiuto L, Di Maio R, Heath B, Raimondi G, Milosevic J, Watson AM, Bamne M, Parks WT, Yang L, Lin B, Miki T, Mich-Basso JD, Arav-Boger R, Sibille E, Sabunciyan S, Yolken R, Nimgaonkar V. Human induced pluripotent stem cell-derived models to investigate human cytomegalovirus infection in neural cells. PLoS One. 2012;7(11):e49700.
79. Schleiss MR. Congenital cytomegalovirus infection: molecular mechanisms mediating viral pathogenesis. Infect Disord Drug Targets. 2011;11(5):449–65.
80. Pan X, Li XJ, Liu XJ, Yuan H, Li JF, Duan YL, Ye HQ, Fu YR, Qiao GH, Wu CC, Yang B, Tian XH, Hu KH, Miao LF, Chen XL, Zheng J, Rayner S, Schwartz PH, Britt WJ, Xu J, Luo MH. Later passage neural progenitor cells from neonatal brain are more permissive for human cytomegalovirus infection. J Virol. 2013;87(20):10968–79.
81. Nassetta L, Kimberlin D, Whitley R. Treatment of congenital cytomegalovirus infection: implications for future therapeutic strategies. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2009;63(5):862–7.
82. Gabrielli L, Bonasoni MP, Santini D, Piccirilli G, Chiereghin A, Petrisli E, Dolcetti R, Guerra B, Piccioli M, Lanari M, Landini MP, Lazzarotto T. Congenital cytomegalovirus infection: patterns of fetal brain damage. Clin Microbiol Infect. 2012;18(10):E419–27.
83. Gabrielli L, Bonasoni MP, Lazzarotto T, Lega S, Santini D, Foschini MP, Guerra B, Baccolini F, Piccirilli G, Chiereghin A, Petrisli E, Gardini G, Lanari M, Landini MP. Histological findings in foetuses congenitally infected by cytomegalovirus. J Clin Virol. 2009;46 Suppl 4:S16–21.
84. Teissier N, Delezoide AL, Mas AE, Khung-Savatovsky S, Bessieres B, Nardelli J, Vauloup-Fellous C, Picone O, Houhou N, Oury JF, Van Den Abbeele T, Gressens P, Adle-Biassette H. Inner ear lesions in congenital cytomegalovirus infection of human fetuses. Acta Neuropathol. 2011;122(6):763–74.
85. Tongsong T, Sukpan K, Wanapirak C, Phadungkiatwattna P. Fetal cytomegalovirus infection associated with cerebral hemorrhage, hydrops fetalis, and echogenic bowel: case report. Fetal Diagn Ther. 2008;23(3):169–72.
86. Pushpalatha LDJ, Kuruvilla S. Cytomegalovirus infection with lissencephaly. Indian J Pathol Microbiol. 2008;51(3):402–4.
87. Block ML, Zecca L, Hong JS. Microglia-mediated neurotoxicity: uncovering the molecular mechanisms. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2007;8(1):57–69.
88. Colton CA. Heterogeneity of microglial activation in the innate immune response in the brain. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2009;4(4):399–418.
89. Murray PJ, Wynn TA. Protective and pathogenic functions of macrophage subsets. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11(11):723–37.
90. Gensel JC, Kigerl KA, Mandrekar-Colucci SS, Gaudet AD, Popovich PG. Achieving CNS axon regeneration by manipulating convergent neuro-immune signaling. Cell Tissue Res. 2012;349(1):201–13.

91. Kigerl KA, Gensel JC, Ankeny DP, Alexander JK, Donnelly DJ, Popovich PG. Identification of two distinct macrophage subsets with divergent effects causing either neurotoxicity or regeneration in the injured mouse spinal cord. J Neurosci. 2009;29(43):13435–44.
92. Tahraoui SL, Marret S, Bodenant C, Leroux P, Dommergues MA, Evrard P, Gressens P. Central role of microglia in neonatal excitotoxic lesions of the murine periventricular white matter. Brain Pathol. 2001;11(1):56–71.
93. Chew LJ, Takanohashi A, Bell M. Microglia and inflammation: impact on developmental brain injuries. Ment Retard Dev Disabil Res Rev. 2006;12(2):105–12.
94. Dean JM, Wang X, Kaindl AM, Gressens P, Fleiss B, Hagberg H, Mallard C. Microglial MyD88 signaling regulates acute neuronal toxicity of LPS-stimulated microglia in vitro. Brain Behav Immun. 2010;24(5):776–83.
95. Verney C, Pogledic I, Biran V, Adle-Biassette H, Fallet-Bianco C, Gressens P. Microglial reaction in axonal crossroads is a hallmark of noncystic periventricular white matter injury in very preterm infants. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2012;71(3):251–64.
96. Favrais G, van de Looij Y, Fleiss B, Ramanantsoa N, Bonnin P, Stoltenburg-Didinger G, Lacaud A, Saliba E, Dammann O, Gallego J, Sizonenko S, Hagberg H, Lelievre V, Gressens P. Systemic inflammation disrupts the developmental program of white matter. Ann Neurol. 2011;70(4):550–65.
97. Li J, Baud O, Vartanian T, Volpe JJ, Rosenberg PA. Peroxynitrite generated by inducible nitric oxide synthase and NADPH oxidase mediates microglial toxicity to oligodendrocytes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102(28):9936–41.
98. Li J, Ramenaden ER, Peng J, Koito H, Volpe JJ, Rosenberg PA. Tumor necrosis factor alpha mediates lipopolysaccharide-induced microglial toxicity to developing oligodendrocytes when astrocytes are present. J Neurosci. 2008;28(20):5321–30.
99. Covey MV, Loporchio D, Buono KD, Levison SW. Opposite effect of inflammation on subventricular zone versus hippocampal precursors in brain injury. Ann Neurol. 2011;70(4):616–26.
100. Leviton A, Gressens P. Neuronal damage accompanies perinatal white-matter damage. Trends Neurosci. 2007;30(9):473–8.
101. Rock RB, Gekker G, Hu S, Sheng WS, Cheeran M, Lokensgard JR, Peterson PK. Role of microglia in central nervous system infections. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2004;17(4):942–64. Table of contents.
102. Cheeran MC, Hu S, Sheng WS, Peterson PK, Lokensgard JR. CXCL10 production from cytomegalovirus-stimulated microglia is regulated by both human and viral interleukin-10. J Virol. 2003;77(8):4502–15.
103. Cheeran MC, Hu S, Yager SL, Gekker G, Peterson PK, Lokensgard JR. Cytomegalovirus induces cytokine and chemokine production differentially in microglia and astrocytes: antiviral implications. J Neurovirol. 2001;7(2):135–47.
104. Kaushik DK, Gupta M, Basu A. Microglial response to viral challenges: every silver lining comes with a cloud. Front Biosci. 2011;16:2187–205.
105. Kang SH, Abdel-Massih RC, Brown RA, Dierkhising RA, Kremers WK, Razonable RR. Homozygosity for the toll-like receptor 2 R753Q single-nucleotide polymorphism is a risk factor for cytomegalovirus disease after liver transplantation. J Infect Dis. 2012;205(4):639–46.
106. Chaudhuri S, Lowen B, Chan G, Davey A, Riddell M, Guilbert LJ. Human cytomegalovirus interacts with toll-like receptor 2 and CD14 on syncytiotrophoblasts to stimulate expression of TNFalpha mRNA and apoptosis. Placenta. 2009;30(11):994–1001.
107. Juckem LK, Boehme KW, Feire AL, Compton T. Differential initiation of innate immune responses induced by human cytomegalovirus entry into fibroblast cells. J Immunol. 2008;180(7):4965–77.
108. Isaacson MK, Juckem LK, Compton T. Virus entry and innate immune activation. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol. 2008;325:85–100.
109. Mezger M, Bonin M, Kessler T, Gebhardt F, Einsele H, Loeffler J. Toll-like receptor 3 has no critical role during early immune response of human monocyte-derived dendritic cells after

infection with the human cytomegalovirus strain TB40E. Viral Immunol. 2009;22(6): 343–51.
110. Kossmann T, Morganti-Kossmann MC, Orenstein JM, Britt WJ, Wahl SM, Smith PD. Cytomegalovirus production by infected astrocytes correlates with transforming growth factor-beta release. J Infect Dis. 2003;187(4):534–41.
111. Alcendor DJ, Charest AM, Zhu WQ, Vigil HE, Knobel SM. Infection and upregulation of proinflammatory cytokines in human brain vascular pericytes by human cytomegalovirus. J Neuroinflammation. 2012;9:95.
112. Miller-Kittrell M, Sparer TE. Feeling manipulated: cytomegalovirus immune manipulation. Virol J. 2009;6:4.
113. Vink C, Smit MJ, Leurs R, Bruggeman CA. The role of cytomegalovirus-encoded homologs of G protein-coupled receptors and chemokines in manipulation of and evasion from the immune system. J Clin Virol. 2001;23(1–2):43–55.
114. Nigro G, Torre RL, Pentimalli H, Taverna P, Lituania M, de Tejada BM, Adler SP. Regression of fetal cerebral abnormalities by primary cytomegalovirus infection following hyperimmunoglobulin therapy. Prenat Diagn. 2008;28(6):512–7.
115. Nigro G, Adler SP, La Torre R, Best AM. Passive immunization during pregnancy for congenital cytomegalovirus infection. N Engl J Med. 2005;353(13):1350–62.
116. Kimberlin DW, Lin CY, Sanchez PJ, Demmler GJ, Dankner W, Shelton M, Jacobs RF, Vaudry W, Pass RF, Kiell JM, Soong SJ, Whitley RJ. Effect of ganciclovir therapy on hearing in symptomatic congenital cytomegalovirus disease involving the central nervous system: a randomized, controlled trial. J Pediatr. 2003;143(1):16–25.
117. Oliver SE, Cloud GA, Sanchez PJ, Demmler GJ, Dankner W, Shelton M, Jacobs RF, Vaudry W, Pass RF, Soong SJ, Whitley RJ, Kimberlin DW. Neurodevelopmental outcomes following ganciclovir therapy in symptomatic congenital cytomegalovirus infections involving the central nervous system. J Clin Virol. 2009;46 Suppl 4:S22–6.
118. Griffiths P, Plotkin S, Mocarski E, Pass R, Schleiss M, Krause P, Bialek S. Desirability and feasibility of a vaccine against cytomegalovirus. Vaccine. 2013;31 Suppl 2:B197–203.
119. Griffiths PD. Burden of disease associated with human cytomegalovirus and prospects for elimination by universal immunisation. Lancet Infect Dis. 2012;12(10):790–8.
120. Sung H, Schleiss MR. Update on the current status of cytomegalovirus vaccines. Expert Rev Vaccines. 2010;9(11):1303–14.
121. Pass RF, Zhang C, Evans A, Simpson T, Andrews W, Huang ML, Corey L, Hill J, Davis E, Flanigan C, Cloud G. Vaccine prevention of maternal cytomegalovirus infection. N Engl J Med. 2009;360(12):1191–9.
122. Mussi-Pinhata MM, Yamamoto AY, Moura Brito RM, de Lima Isaac M, de Carvalho e Oliveira PF, Boppana S, Britt WJ. Birth prevalence and natural history of congenital cytomegalovirus infection in a highly seroimmune population. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49(4): 522–8.

Japanese Encephalitis: A Tale of Inflammation and Degeneration in the Central Nervous System

Kallol Dutta and Anirban Basu

Abstract Over more than a century, many regions in Southeast Asia have been under the grip of a disease called Japanese encephalitis, which is caused by a vector-borne flavivirus. The origins of the disease can be traced to the frequent and multiple epidemics in the islands of Japan during the early twentieth century, which then rapidly spread to other countries. Currently, an estimated three billion people live in the JE endemic region, making this one of the most dreaded arboviral diseases. The JE virus is highly neuroinvasive, and once it reaches the central nervous system, it replicates rapidly in neurons and ultimately causes death. This initiates an inflammation cascade involving the glial cells which further complicates matters in the brain. The virus can specially arrest cell cycle in neuroprogenitor cells, thereby inhibiting their maturation. All these features cause debilitating symptoms and can be fatal in children. Survivors generally suffer from various neuropsychiatric sequelae and require prolonged rehabilitation measures to regain normalcy. There is no specific antiviral therapy available. To date, all therapeutic countermeasures have been supportive. Even though vaccination has led to a marked decrease in the incidence of this disease in several countries in the endemic zone, still epidemics of varied proportions are reported almost every year. In this chapter, our efforts have been focused on providing a general idea about the virus, a detailed analysis of the pathology of the disease, an insight into basic research in unraveling the molecular mechanisms of host responses, and a brief idea about the multiple efforts made over the years to find a cure for the disease.

K. Dutta (✉)
Centre de recherche de l'Institut universitaire en santé mentale de Québec,
Québec, QC, Canada G1J 2G3
e-mail: kallol.dutta.1@ulaval.ca

A. Basu
National Brain Research Centre, Manesar, Haryana 122051, India
e-mail: anirban@nbrc.ac.in

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_15, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

Keywords Japanese encephalitis • Flavivirus • Inflammation • Neurodegeneration • Neuropsychiatric sequelae

1 Prologue

The following paragraph is inspired by true events:

The first ray of sun kisses the dew covered grounds in a small idyllic village, somewhere in the eastern regions in India. This usually is the signal for beginning of an arduous life in the village where rice cultivation is a primary vocation for many. Here, every member of a family has their daily share of chores, but some cannot help. A man and his wife get ready to leave for work. Before leaving their hut, the man brings a "charpoy" out and lays it in the morning sun. Next, he carries out a little girl and places her on the "charpoy." After murmuring a few tender words of affection, the couple leaves for their daily toil. This girl, their daughter, was once a vivacious young child but now a mere memory of her former self. She is a telling victim of the dreaded JE virus that is commonly referred to as the "child-killer" in her part of the world. As the virus infected and multiplied in her body, it inflamed the tissues in her brain. Miraculously, she survived but the virus left her brain permanently damaged. Her ability to speak or comprehend is entirely lacking; the disease has paralyzed her limbs, thereby confining her to the cot. More importantly, the disease has crippled the family economically. In their part of the world, where the monthly family income can be less than $40, having a child with special needs leads to untold difficulties and a dark future.

2 What Is Japanese Encephalitis?

In the late nineteenth century, the islands of Japan were ravaged by a new kind of brain fever we commonly refer today as Japanese encephalitis (JE). To differentiate it from the then common von Economo disease or encephalitis lethargica or encephalitis A (an atypical form of encephalitis), this was initially termed as encephalitis B. The first outbreak suggestive of JE was recorded in 1871, and major epidemics occurred in 1924, 1935, and 1948. The largest of these outbreaks was in the year 1924 in which reportedly 6,000 people were affected with nearly 60 % case fatality ratio [1]. The virus was first isolated from human brain tissue in that year, and in 1934, the disease was transmitted experimentally to primates by intracerebral inoculation of infected human brain lysate [2]. The virus was classified as a member of the genus *Flavivirus* (family Flaviviridae) named after the prototype yellow fever virus (Latin; *flavus* = yellow). The genus consists of over 70 other closely related viral species [3].

The JE virion consists of a single strand of positive-sense RNA of about 11 kb, inside a nucleocapsid, and is surrounded by a glycoprotein-containing envelope.

The RNA comprises a short 5′ untranslated region (UTR), a longer 3′ UTR, and with a single open reading frame between them. It codes for a single polyprotein, which is translationally and posttranslationally cleaved by viral and host proteases into three structural proteins (core, C; pre-membrane, PrM; and envelope, E) and seven nonstructural (NS) proteins (NS1, NS2A, NS2B, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, and NS5). The C protein (12–14 kDa) is highly basic and combines with the RNA to form the nucleocapsid. The prM is closely associated with the E protein, forming a heterodimer, and is thought to act as a "chaperone" to it, impairing its function until after virion release. NS1 is a glycosylated protein; NS3 and NS5 are hydrophilic, whereas NS2A, NS2B, NS4A, and NS4B are hydrophobic. NS3 and NS5 are believed to be enzymatic components of the viral RNA replicase. They are localized in the cytoplasm and remain associated with intracellular membranes. NS5 possesses a methyltransferase-polymerase interface, while NS3 is actually a multifunctional viral enzyme that contains helicase and NTPase activities in its central region and a protease activity in its N terminus when associated with the viral cofactor NS2B [4–9]. The viral replication is initiated by the replication complex through a process of RNA-dependent RNA polymerization in the perinuclear endoplasmic reticulum membranes. Nonstructural proteins 3 and 5 are components of the replication complex, which associates with the 3′ noncoding region of genomic RNA to initiate viral replication. The core protein and NS5 interact with heterogeneous nuclear ribonucleoprotein A2 in the host cell to regulate replication [10]. The host cell DEAD box helicases DDX3 and DDX5 have been reported to regulate such processes by interacting with viral core NS3 and NS5 proteins [11, 12]. NS3 and NS5 interact with heat shock protein 70, eukaryotic elongation factor 1 alpha, and ras-related nuclear protein to form the replicase complex [13]. JEV is also reported to utilize the host cell ATP production machinery to drive its replication. Host cell fructose-bisphosphate aldolase A binds with JEV UTRs to drive viral replication, knocking down aldolase A reduced viral translation, genome replication, and viral production significantly [14].

The actual origin of this virus remains unclear, but comparative phylogenetic analysis with other flaviviruses points to a common ancestor of African origin [15]. However, owing to the fact that the Indonesia-Malaysia region is the only area where all the genotypes of the JE virus (JEV) are represented and also as the only region where the most divergent genotypes (IV and V) that are thought to represent the oldest lineages have so far been found, it could be assumed that the origins of the JEV lies there [16]. Among the five genotypes of the virus, IV and V are thought to be the oldest, from which the newer genotypes I, II, and III have evolved [17]. It has been observed over the ages that genotypes I and III occur mostly in epidemic regions, whereas II and IV are associated with endemic disease [18], but not always. There have been instances in the past where genotype III has been isolated from both endemic and epidemic regions [19, 20]. Also, the emergence of new genotypes in regions that are commonly associated with other genotypes are being reported frequently. For example, South Korea, Thailand, China, and India have been under the influence of genotype III virus for many decades, but later, the introduction of genotype I in their epidemic areas has been reported as well [21, 22]. It is now believed that genotype I is the dominant genotype in the entire Asian continent [23].

By 1938, it was established that the disease is spread by mosquito bites, especially those belonging to the *Culicine* species. However, it was not until the late 1950s when the entire enzootic life cycle of the virus was described [24–31]. The virus reportedly replicates within the salivary gland of the mosquito. The virions remain entrapped in intracellular vacuoles that are later released into the apical cavity of salivary gland cells through the fusion of these vacuoles with the apical plasma membrane. This process is associated with primary resynthesis of saliva in mosquitoes following their blood-feeding activity. Another type of shedding involves virus particles, either singly or in mass, being released directly through the apical plasma membrane [32]. An ideal nursery for these mosquitoes is stagnant water, such as in rice paddy fields which are found in most endemic regions. The majority of the population in rural Asia has been believed to be infected with the virus by early adulthood [33, 34]. Birds such as herons and pond egrets and bats serve as virus reservoirs or maintenance hosts, but the virus regularly spills over into pigs, members of the family Equidae (e.g., horses and donkeys), and humans. Interestingly, the Asiatic cattle egret's range dramatically expanded across Asia in the nineteenth century following changing agricultural practices [35], which coincides with the evolution and spread of the more recent JEV genotypes. Pigs are considered as the amplification hosts as viremia with resultant high titer. Due to the close proximity of pigs with human dwellings, these animals are considered a main component in the transmission cycle with respect to human infection [36]. Although the virus has occasionally been isolated from human peripheral blood [37], viremia is usually brief with low titers. As a result, humans are considered dead-end hosts from whom transmission does not normally occur.

According to reports, the current realm of JE endemic region extends from the islands of Japan in the east to Pakistan in the west [38] and parts of Russia (erstwhile USSR) in the north [39] to northern parts of Australia in the south [40, 41]. The rapid spread of the virus (it took only about a century to encompass the current endemic zone) is attributed to rapid globalization, climatic changes, and changes in agricultural practices [36, 42]. Based on the available facts, a further spread into the African continent or Mediterranean Europe cannot be effectively ruled out. Recently, studies have reported the detection of JEV RNA from mosquitoes in Italy [43] and also from birds in Italy and Spain which seem to support the hypothesis of long-distance spread of JEV from endemic countries [44, 45]. It is not uncommon for short-term travelers from non-endemic regions to be infected with JEV while visiting endemic countries [46–48]. However, since humans are considered as dead-end hosts of the virus, spread from infected humans is never a threat in virgin territories. The Americas are so far not considered to be under the threat of this disease. The only reported cases of Americans affected by JE are from visitors to endemic regions or servicemen posted in those regions [49, 50]. But if the virus ever makes it to the North American continent, it will not be lacking avian reservoirs, as some native species of birds have been shown to be capable of maintaining the virus within their bodies [51].

3 JE and Human Infection

Even after more than a century of its discovery, a lot remains unknown about the pathogenesis of the JEV. How the virus reaches the central nervous system (CNS) following peripheral inoculation or how it evades the host's immune system still remains enigmatic. Our inability to unravel its mysteries has led to vast and untold misery to masses. The prologue is but only one single story that haunts the lives of thousands of people across the entire Southeast Asia. Approximately 67,900 JE cases typically occur annually (overall incidence: 1.8 per 100,000), of which only about 10 % are reported to the World Health Organization. Approximately 33,900 (50 %) of these cases occur in China (excluding Taiwan), and approximately 51,000 (75 %) occur in children aged 0–14 years (incidence: 5.4 per 100,000). An estimated 55,000 (81 %) cases occur in areas with well-established or developing JE vaccination programs, while about 12,900 (19 %) occur in areas with minimal or no JE vaccination programs [52]. The estimated global impact from JE in 2002 was 709,000 disability-adjusted life years (DALYs), which is a measure of the disease burden expressed as the number of years lost due to ill health, disability, or early death. However, as the disease usually occurs in epidemics and there is considerable fluctuation in estimates of its global impact, the interpretation of these data needs to be carefully evaluated. In 1999, JE caused 1,046,000 DALYs; in the two subsequent years, it caused 426,000 and 767,000 DALYs, respectively. Underlying factors that might explain these fluctuations are contextual determinants (mainly environmental factors) and spillover effects into the human population, which trigger epidemics [53].

Adults living in the epidemic zones are often asymptomatic for this disease. However, it is reported that they may become symptomatic in cases of spread to virgin territories. Even though humans are incidental dead-end hosts, mother-to-child transmission of the virus has been reported [54, 55]. Of course, the clinical impact of such observations is yet to be evaluated stringently, but it is known that JEV persists in the human brain for 8–15 years after the onset of encephalitis [56]. Whether the virus reactivates during immunosuppression or has any long-term neuropathologic effects is yet unknown.

The neuropathology associated with JEV involves a combination of direct neuronal damage and indirect damage mediated by the generation of an inflammatory milieu in the CNS. In the following sections, we shall try to link available laboratory research reports along with clinical case studies so as to gain a better understanding of this disease.

3.1 The Journey from the Periphery to the CNS

Despite the enormity of the disease, not much is known about the exact mechanism of spread to the CNS [57]. However, studies regarding other flaviviral infections or in vitro studies have led us to believe that following intracutaneous inoculation via

a mosquito bite, the virus is taken up by Langerhans dendritic cells in the skin which carry the virus into the nearest draining lymph nodes [58]. From there, the virus enters the general circulation via the thoracic duct, where it probably infects cells of myeloid lineage. From the general circulation, the JEV is hypothesized to enter the CNS. There are three possible mechanisms by which the virus is thought to enter the CNS by crossing the blood–brain barrier (BBB):

(a) Passive transport across the endothelium
(b) Active replication in endothelial cells of the BBB
(c) By a "Trojan horse" mechanism in which the virus is carried into the brain by infected peripheral inflammatory cells [59]

Investigations in mouse models [60] and study of human autopsy samples [61, 62] have confirmed that the JEV infects and is able to replicate in peripheral organs such as the lymph nodes, spleen, kidney, and lungs before crossing the BBB. Hematogenous spread of the virus from the periphery to the CNS is supported by the observation that in intranasally JEV-inoculated monkeys, virus replication was widespread in the CNS, but not always identified in the olfactory bulb [63]. The hematogenous route into the CNS is also supported by observations that led to isolation of the virus from blood clots collected during the acute phase of infection [64]. As perivascular cuffing is a commonly reported observation in human infections of JEV, this could probably lead to influx of peripheral inflammatory cells into the CNS parenchyma. Inflammatory cells invading the parenchyma are shown to be predominantly macrophages with small numbers of T cells [65], though the role of these cells in transporting the virus from the periphery into the CNS remains ambiguous. Some in vitro studies have reported that JEV is capable of surviving within cells of monocyte/macrophage lineage for prolonged time periods [66, 67]. Also, it is known that JEV activates macrophages to secrete proinflammatory cytokines which a recent study proposes to be due to viral interaction with CLEC5A (a member of the myeloid C-type lectin family expressed on macrophages and neutrophils) thereby inducing DAP12 phosphorylation, a transmembrane adapter known to play a significant role in cytokine signaling [68].

Though human data are lacking, studies in a mouse model of JE have shown that there is upregulation of the cellular adhesion molecules ICAM and VCAM in the brain [69], which may be important in initiating adhesion and migration of neutrophils and macrophages [70]. This was also associated with elevated levels of MMP-9 in the brain which could also contribute to increased BBB permeability. Taken together, these findings could indicate a "Trojan horse" role of these cells at a later stage of infection. Further strengthening this hypothesis are the observations of the disruptive role of secreted cytokines on the BBB. In a mouse model, macrophage-derived neutrophil chemotactic factor was shown to alter the BBB permeability, in a dose-dependent manner [71]. Tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) and interleukin (IL)-8 which are involved in polymorphonuclear cell recruitment have also been reported to be elevated in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and serum of humans with JE and are higher in fatal than nonfatal cases [72, 73].

3.2 JEV Entry into Host Cells

How JEV actually infect neurons is not well understood either. There are a number of studies arguing about the mechanism of viral entry into host cells. Generally, most viruses are known to enter host cells either by membrane fusion or via receptor-mediated endocytosis or via direct insertion of genetic material. Now, the exact mechanism that is employed by the JEV may vary depending on the type of cell that it intends to infect. The entry of the virus into neurons has been reported to be via a clathrin-independent but caveola-mediated endocytosis mechanism which requires the involvement of dynamin and plasma membrane cholesterol at low cellular pH [74]. JEV binding to neuronal cells leads to rapid actin rearrangements and an intact and dynamic actin cytoskeleton. The small GTPase RhoA has also been reported to play an important role in viral entry [75]. However, in a different non-neuronal cell type such as fibroblasts, the mechanism can be entirely different in that entry could well be a clathrin-dependent one. Even in cells of epithelial lineage, JEV has been reported to enter through receptor-mediated endocytosis involving both clathrin-dependent and caveola-dependent pathways with low pH-triggered membrane fusion followed by replication in intracellular membrane structures [76]. In another study, vimentin, a class III intermediate filament protein, has been shown to be involved in viral entry in a porcine stable cell line [77]. An interesting observation utilizing neural stem/progenitor cells is the role of lipid rafts. Lipid rafts are specialized membrane domains enriched in certain lipid cholesterol and proteins that can be utilized by the virus to gain entry into the stem cells in the neurogenic regions of the brain [78]. Lipid rafts have also been shown to be associated with Hsp70 that expressed on cell surface to facilitate JEV entry, albeit this mechanism was reported in a non-neuronal cell line [79]. Although microglial cells are believed to be sparingly infected by the virus in vivo, in vitro studies have pointed out multiple receptor proteins, especially the surface glycoprotein CD4, which may mediate the entry of JEV [80]. This observation could be of significance as the role of peripheral monocyte/macrophages in viral dissemination has been discussed in the earlier section.

3.3 Neuropathology of JE

Over the last century, multiple investigations, involving human autopsy samples or animal models or even in vitro studies with neuronal cell lines, have shown conclusively that JEV infection leads to massive neuronal death. Initial human autopsy studies had identified severe damage to nerve cells and the brain parenchyma including minute necroses, softening, and perivascular cuffing. The majority of the lesions were observed in the diencephalon and the mesencephalon [62]. These observations were confirmed from investigations of several autopsy samples in the early 1960s. It was observed that these changes were scattered widely from the cerebrum, cerebellum, and brain stem to the spinal cord and most prominently in the cerebral cortex, thalamus, and substantia nigra. Direct neuronal death due to JEV infection has been

shown to be apoptotic in nature. The tumor necrosis factor receptor (TNFR)-associated death domain (TRADD) has been suggested to be the crucial signal adaptor that mediates all intracellular responses from TNFR-1. Using an in vitro approach, it has been shown that the altered expression of TNFR-1 and TRADD following JEV infection regulates the downstream apoptotic cascades [81, 82]. Recent evidence also indicates that the NS3 helicase and protease domains of JEV may activate caspase-9-/caspase-3-dependent and caspase-9-/caspase-3-independent cascades to trigger cell death [83]. However, even though the infected neurons eventually die, evidence suggests a possible intracellular antiviral response or an innate immune response against the virus. In cultured neuroblastoma cell lines, it has been reported that the far upstream element (FUSE) binding protein 1 binds with JEV 5′ and 3′ untranslated regions and functions as a host anti-JEV defense molecule by repressing viral protein expression [84]. The innate immune reaction is mounted following viral recognition through retinoic-acid-inducible gene I (RIG-I) and its downstream adapter stimulator of interferon gene (STING; less commonly known as MPYS or ERIS or TMEM173 or MITA) [85, 86]. The role of toll-like receptors in the mounting of an innate immune defense mechanism against JEV in neurons is yet unknown but possible. Another interesting observation that points to the virus's immune evasion strategy was the activation of autophagy in neuroblastoma cell lines. It was found that JEV infection leads to the accumulation of microtubule-associated protein 1 light chain 3-II protein and GFP-LC3 puncta in vitro and an increase in autophagosomes/autolysosomes in vivo. The fusion between autophagosomes and lysosomes was shown to be essential for viral replication [87].

Even in the early days of investigation, it was known that this disease was accompanied by inflammation in the CNS. The overall inflammatory changes in the CNS involved a marked increase in the number of glial cells. This led early investigators to believe that Japanese encephalitis was a "generalized toxic inflammation." However, it should be kept in perspective that this was before the isolation of the causative agent for the disease, i.e., the JEV. The brain is a unique organ where the movement of cells or molecules is restricted by the BBB. The selectively permeable nature of the barrier makes the brain somewhat "immunocompromised," even though that concept has been critically challenged in the past decade or so. Though the fact that immune cells from the periphery do infiltrate into the CNS at different stages of the disease, the initial inflammation is now known to be due to the activity of resident immune cells, i.e., the glia. Microglia and the astrocytes have been reported to play crucial roles following JEV infection. In animal models as well as in vitro models of JE, it has been reported that there is microglial activation characterized by distinct morphological changes along with heightened release of proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines such as TNF-α, IL-6, MCP-1, IFN-γ and IL-1β, and other mediators. Region-specific analyses showed that the release of these mediators was highest in the hippocampus region [88]. This inflammatory milieu in the brain has severe detrimental effect on neurons, leading to their death. Neuronal death also acts as a stimulator for further microglial activation, thereby creating a vicious cycle. Even though it is difficult to ascertain the extent of direct viral killing or a "bystander" death, the net effect of JEV infection remains neuronal death. Astrocytes, on the other hand, also respond to the infection by increasing

cytokine production, lactic acid release, and glucose mobilization [89] even though this does not confer significant neuroprotection [90].

The role of microRNAs (miR) in disease progression and modulation is currently an area in which a lot of research has been focused. Clues from human postmortem JE cases suggest that miR-155 may be involved in the modulation of neuroinflammatory response during JEV infection via negative regulation of Src homology 2-containing inositol phosphatase-1 (SHIP1) expression [91]. Also, in vitro studies have shown that by inhibition of the anti-inflammatory tumor necrosis factor alpha-induced protein 3, miR-29b regulates JEV-induced microglia activation [92].

3.4 JE from a Clinical Perspective

Infection with JEV may be asymptomatic or manifest as a mild febrile illness, aseptic meningitis [93–95], or classic severe meningomyeloencephalitis. The incubation period of JE varies, and a recent meta-analysis of various published record shows that in JE the median incubation period is 8.4 days (95 % CI: 5.1–9.4) which falls within the 5–15-day incubation period often referenced [96]. The average case fatality rate is approximately 25 %, with 50 % having neuropsychiatric sequelae and 25 % recovering fully. Long-term sequelae in survivors include weakness, ataxia, tremors, athetoid movements, paralysis, memory loss, and abnormal emotional behavior [97]. Based on the clinical observations, the disease can be conveniently classified into three stages:

(a) *A prodromal stage with clinical features common to many other unrelated diseases, which precedes any signs of involvement of the CNS*

The essential features of the prodromal stage are generalized malaise, headache, and fever often associated with nausea. These symptoms are common to various other diseases that are not even related to flaviviral infections, and thus, a clinical diagnosis at this stage is practically impossible. A good example is the characterization of some US military personnel serving during the Korean conflict, to be suffering from war neurosis when they were actually infected with JEV [98]. The onset of this stage may be abrupt (1–6 h), acute (6–24 h), or subacute (2–5 days). In more than 75 % of patients, the onset is subacute. Although spontaneous recovery (the so-called abortive encephalitis) is known following this stage, the disease usually progresses to the acute encephalitis phase [99].

(b) *An acute encephalitic stage marked by CNS signs and hyperthermia*

The acute encephalitis stage is marked by continuous fever, nuchal rigidity, convulsions, altered sensorium progressing in many cases to coma, focal CNS signs, polymorphonuclear leukocytosis in the peripheral blood, and CSF changes marked by pleocytosis with a normal or raised glucose or protein content and the presence of immune complexes [100, 101]. Seizures occur in approximately 85 % of children and 10 % of adults with JE [102]. Continuous unremitting seizures lasting longer than 30 min (status epilepticus) or multiple recurrent seizures are common in JE. Also, subtle motor status epilepticus, in

which the only clinical manifestation might be the twitching of a finger or eyebrow, is common in JE [103]. Approximately 50 % of the patients with JE suffer from a high CSF opening pressure. Brain swelling is a common feature that is observed during autopsy [65], with cerebellar tonsillar and hippocampal uncal herniation observed in some cases [104]. Multiple uncontrolled seizures may be associated with this raised intracranial pressure.

Movement disorders are common in JE, both in the acute encephalitis stages and also in survivors with neuropsychiatric sequelae [105]. The characteristic features include masklike faces, abulia, tremors, and cogwheel rigidity that bear striking similarity to Parkinson's disease so much so that it had even led to the generation of a JEV-induced rat model of Parkinson's disease [106]. Other movement disorders include generalized rigidity, jaw dystonias, opisthotonus, choreoathetosis, orofacial dyskinesias (involuntary tongue protrusions), oromandibular dystonia, myoclonic jerks, and opsoclonus myoclonus [107, 108]. The role of the basal ganglia, particularly the thalamus and the substantia nigra, has for long been considered to be significant in eliciting such responses [109, 110].

Magnetic resonance imaging techniques, such as diffusion-weighted imaging and magnetic resonance spectroscopy, have been utilized by several investigators to correlate the clinical features of JE [111]. MRI reveals prominent changes in the thalamus, basal ganglia, substantia nigra, cerebellum, pons, cerebral cortex, and spinal cord. These MRI lesions are generally hypointense on T1 and hyperintense on T2 and on fluid attenuation inversion recovery (FLAIR) sequence. The thalamic lesions may be of mixed intensity on T1 and T2 in the subacute stage and may suggest hemorrhagic changes. Follow-up MRI after several months reveals shrinkage of acute lesions which are hypointense on T1 and T2 sequences [112]. In a comparative study of CT and MRI, CT scan was abnormal in 55.3 %; MRI was abnormal in all patients and revealed lesions in the thalamus in 94 %, basal ganglia in 35 %, midbrain in 58 %, pons in 26 %, and cerebellum and cerebral cortex in 19 % each [113, 114]. In JE, involvement of the temporal lobe has also been reported in approximately 17 % of the patients, but all of them had thalamic and substantia nigra involvement [115]. Abnormal high-intensity lesions in the bilateral pulvinar and gray matter, with an abnormal appearance mimicking the pulvinar sign, were observed by diffusion-weighted brain magnetic resonance imaging [116]. Single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) analysis of JE patients shows thalamic hyperperfusion in the acute stage which is replaced by hypoperfusion in the subacute or chronic stage [117, 118]. EEG recordings during the acute stage were found to be grossly abnormal. The outstanding features are diminution of electrical activity, dysrhythmia, and slowing with periodic lateralized epileptiform discharges (PLEDS). In some patients, intention tremors and ataxia that are indicative of cerebellar involvement are observed. Other focal neurological signs include that of encephalomyelitis, such as cranial nerve palsies, upper motor neuron weakness (in 30–50 % of patients), and flaccid limb weakness, with reduced or absent reflexes, which is often associated with respiratory or bulbar paralysis [119]. The combination of upper and lower motor neuron

damage can lead to bizarre mixtures of clinical signs that can change hourly during the acute stage [120]. JEV can also cause a poliomyelitis-like acute flaccid paralysis, in fully conscious patients [121].

(c) *A late stage marked either by complete recovery or the persistence of mild to severe cognitive dysfunction or motor disabilities for several years or entire life, as a result of irreversible CNS damage*

The late stage of the disease begins when active inflammation is at an end, i.e., when the body temperature is normal and the neurological signs are stationary or tending to improve. When the encephalitic stage is short, recovery occurs rapidly and the patient becomes normal within 2–4 weeks from the onset of illness. However, a prolonged encephalitic stage corresponds to slower recovery or prolonged sequelae of the disease. The neuropsychiatric problems in the survivors (in about 50 % cases) include learning and memory deficits, behavioral abnormalities, and speech disorders. These observations have been the result of several studies over the years [122–128]. However, all these studies have been either in children or young adults, the number of post-JE cases was small, and the different types of observed neuropsychiatric disorders were highly variable. A 14-year follow-up study with 688 adult survivors of the disease has recently characterized the symptoms that are commonly seen at this stage [129, 130]. This study observed that nearly 97 % of all the survivors suffered from neurological deficits during the time of their initial discharge from the hospital. Of the remaining 3 % who were discharged without any apparent deficits, about 20 % of the patients had to be readmitted within a couple of months for bizarre movements of the limbs without any other apparent symptoms associated with the acute phase of JE, such as fever and paralysis. However, these patients had assaultive behaviors, euphoria, and delusions of grandeur with mirror writing. They improved with symptomatic treatment but needed full constant care for 6 months and intermittent help for further 6 months before becoming normal. It was also observed that subjects suffered from seizures; psychological disturbances, such as delusions (both persecution and grandeur, suggestive of diffuse involvement of the frontal and temporal lobes), visual hallucinations, and euphoria; and emotional instability (in the form of spontaneous laughing or crying). Classical features of depression were also noticed. When these subjects were treated with pharmacological agents (phenobarbitone and phenytoin for seizures; chlorpromazine along with diazepam for psychological disturbances; amitriptyline for depression), the rate of alleviation of these disorders was very high. The subjects were also diagnosed with impaired intelligence associated with a general lack of concentration and impaired capacity for reasoning and judgment. Speech disturbances, including dysphasia; dyscalculia; apraxia; agnosia; and constructional apraxia were noted initially but these features gradually diminished between 5 and 14 years of follow-up. The extrapyramidal and pyramidal features present in many of the subjects were reduced due to proper rehabilitation. A new observation that came out of this study was hypothalamic disturbances, which included sleep, appetite, and libido. However, most of these features regressed to normal values over different time periods.

The cellular or molecular basis of the persistence of these changes is not well understood. Since JEV predominantly infects children who are in a dynamic state of brain development, any insult on the CNS may have consequences later in life. Since JEV infection leads to massive neuronal death, effective CNS repair processes which restore the neuronal loss are imperative for complete recovery from JE. In the postnatal/adult CNS, neuronal regeneration is primarily dependent on the pool of neural stem/progenitor cells (NSPCs) and their ability to generate cells of both neuronal and astrocytic lineage. It is hypothesized that JEV infection and the associated inflammation disrupt the NSPC pool in the germinal niches and their efficacy of generating functional neurons, thereby stalling neuronal repair. The lack of functional CNS repair/regeneration possibly culminates in long-term neurological consequences in JE survivors. In animal model and in vitro models of JE, it has been shown that NSPCs are permissive to infection, which leads to their growth retardation. The pathophysiological relevance of these observations was supported by a profound decrement in actively proliferating NSPCs in the subventricular zone (SVZ) of JEV-infected animals. Infection of the NSPCs and suppression of their proliferation may be primarily responsible for dysregulated neurogenesis and the development of cognitive deficits in survivors of JE [131, 132].

3.5 Other Complications Associated with JE

Most of the symptoms associated with JE are also common in various other diseases. Due to the close genetic similarity of flaviviruses, some or most of these clinical characteristics are common to all human flaviviral infections, thereby making differential diagnosis difficult. Other than flaviviral infections, encephalitis due to other viral infections or nonviral causes may also be characterized with some of these features. JE has also been associated with other diseases. Cysticercosis is a risk factor for JE that is attributed to the disruption of the BBB [133, 134]. JEV infection may also predispose to Guillain-Barré syndrome in endemic areas [135]. Inflammation-mediated damage to the spinal cord is not a common feature associated with JE. However, there have been case reports of acute transverse myelitis affecting spinal segments in patients who were found to be seropositive for JEV antigen [136, 137]. Mild encephalopathy with a reversible splenial lesion has also been reported from a single patient [138]. A recent report also characterizes acute disseminated encephalomyelitis in an adult patient 21 days post recovery from JE. The clinical symptoms and abnormal brain lesions on MRI improved gradually after the combination of high-dose intravenous methylprednisolone and oral steroid therapy [139]. Cerebral venous sinus thrombosis, or presence of blood clot in venous (dural) sinuses into which venous blood from the brain flows via the deep cerebral veins, is an uncommon phenomenon with unknown etiology in 20–25 % of patients. This has also been reported from a male patient in China who had also tested positive for JE [140].

4 Therapeutic Approaches to JE

Prophylactic approaches to counter JEV have been in practice for many decades now and have proved quite effective in controlling this disease. A detailed description of the current vaccines that are in use for the prevention of JE can be found in the recent open-access review article by Yun and Lee [141]. However, despite vaccination attempts in several countries by various government as well as nongovernment agencies, cases of JE are still being reported every year. A therapeutic intervention to cure the disease is thus necessary to effectively counter JE. The common approach to hunt for a cure against any pathogenic organism or entity is targeted in two basic avenues: (1) interfering with the organism's entry into the host cell and (2) disrupting the host cell machinery, so as to prevent its replication within the cell. Over the years, innumerous efforts have been made and are still being made to find an effective chemotherapeutic agent to effectively cure JE. A detailed discussion of all such endeavors is beyond the scope of this chapter. But since the cures have been targeted keeping in mind the pathogenesis of the disease, a brief description is merited for a better understanding of the disease as a whole. In the following few pages, we have tried to encompass all known therapeutic endeavors against JE to date. These have been categorized according to the supposed mechanism of action of these agents. As the readers will note, these agents vary from natural compounds to synthetic drugs/chemicals or even oligonucleotides targeted for antisense therapy. Investigators are even in the process of synthesizing derivatives containing the backbone of naturally occurring lupin alkaloid and sparteine, which act as protein secondary structure mimetics, and show that these compounds exhibit antiviral properties [142]. A point to be noted here is that the drugs/compounds mentioned in the following tables are arranged merely in alphabetical order and thus bear no relation to their potency or efficacy in treating JE.

Table 1 depicts some of the drugs/compounds that have been investigated as viral replication inhibitors. Of the following compounds, ribavirin has been tried in a human clinical trial but with little or no promising results [143].

Because CNS inflammation is a hallmark of JE, much effort has been concentrated in modulating inflammatory processes that could limit neuronal loss in the brain. Also, since neuronal death in JE has been proven to be apoptotic in nature, it is quite natural that antiapoptotic agents would also be considered as potential therapeutic agents. Since neuronal death itself acts as a secondary trigger for inflammation in the brain, anti-inflammatory and antiapoptotic drugs/compounds have been included in Table 2.

Of all the compounds mentioned in Table 2, minocycline is currently undergoing a phase II double-blind clinical trial in JE patients. This trail has been already registered to the Clinical Trials Registry of India [registry # CTRI/2010/091/006143]. More details regarding this can be obtained from http://ctri.nic.in/Clinicaltrials/showallp.php?mid1=2529&EncHid=&userName=minocycline. The study is currently in the process of patient recruitment. Out of 250 adults screened, 86 have been enrolled, and out of 445 children screened, 148 have been enrolled for this trial to date.

Table 1 Viral replication inhibitors

Name of compound	Chemical nature	Mechanism of action predicted to be associated with JE
– [144]	microRNA-like polycistrons	Single microRNA-like polycistrons simultaneously expressing effective siRNAs under a single RNA polymerase II promoter to inhibit JEV replication
2-Deoxy-D-glucose and 3-deazauridine [145–147]	Competitors of glucose and uridine	Interference with the synthesis of JEV glycoprotein, DNA, and RNA
2-Methylnaphtho[2,3-*b*] furan-4,9-dione 2-(1-Hydroxyethyl)-analog of naphtho[2,3-*b*] furan-4,9-dione 2-Methyl-5(or 8)-hydroxy-analog naphtho[2,3-*b*] furan-4,9-dione [148]	Furanonaphthoquinone derivatives	Inhibits replication through inhibition of viral RNA and protein synthesis
4-Hydroxypanduratin A [149]	Secondary metabolite of the plant *Boesenbergia pandurata*	Based on computational modeling; predicted to inhibit NS2B/NS3 protease activity that is essential for polyprotein processing and replication
DNAzyme [150]	Single-stranded oligodeoxynucleotides with Mg^{2+}-dependent enzymatic activity	Cleaves the direct repeat sequences within the 3′-noncoding region of JEV RNA, leading to inhibition of virus replication
Monocyte chemoattractant protein 1-induced protein 1 [151]	RNA-binding nuclease	Possesses RNAse activity that targets and degrades viral RNA
Mycophenolic acid [152]	Immunosuppressant drug metabolized from mycophenolate(derived from the fungus *Penicillium stoloniferum*)	Probable replication inhibitor; detailed mechanism lacking
Nitazoxanide [153]	Thiazolide antiprotozoal agent	Speculated to target host functions that are essential for JEV replication
Pentoxifylline [154]	Methylxanthine derivative	Probably by hampering the virus assembly and/or release

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Name of compound	Chemical nature	Mechanism of action predicted to be associated with JE
Pokeweed antiviral protein [155]	N-glycosidase ribosomal-inactivating protein isolated from *Phytolacca americana*	Inhibits replication by depurination of JEV genomic RNA
PPMO [156]	Peptide-based morpholino oligomers	Blocks JEV 3′ cyclization sequence, thereby inhibiting replication
Ribavirin [157, 158]	Guanosine analogue	May act by inhibiting inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase, required for de novo guanine synthesis
SCH-16 [159]	*N*-methylisatin-β-thiosemicarbazone derivative	Yet to be defined
shN8010 [160]	Small hairpin RNA (shRNA) against viral NS5	Blocks activity of viral NS5 which is a major component of the viral RNA replicase complex associated with the 3′ noncoding region of genomic RNA in the initiation of viral replication
Suramin [161]	Polysulfonated naphthylurea compound	Inhibit replication by blocking production of viral E and NS3 proteins
Vivo-morpholino [162]	Octagunidiumdendrimer-based morpholino oligonucleotide	Targets 3′ or 5′ untranslated regions of the JEV genome, thereby inhibiting replication

Interferon-α is a glycoprotein cytokine that is produced naturally by immune cells of the body in response to viral infections, including JEV, and has been seen as a promising antiviral candidate [172]. By themselves, interferons are not directly antiviral but induce production of effector proteins in cells, which inhibit various stages of viral replication, assembly, or release [173–176]. Table 3 lists the potential anti-JE actions of interferon-α or interferon inducers.

Contrary to its promising in vitro results, in real life, interferon-α had no significant effect in alleviating JE pathology. Two clinical trials have been conducted using recombinant human interferon alpha to date, but with no beneficial effect in JE. It may be effective at a higher dose or through a different route or in combination with other drugs. However, the resulting cost of treatment may be prohibitive in developing countries within the JE endemic region [181, 182].

The final group of compounds ranges from hormones to extracts of natural compounds to recombinant proteins (Table 4). All of these have been shown to be effective to varying extents in vitro or in vivo, but none is close to reaching clinical trials at the current stage.

Table 2 Anti-inflammatory and/or antiapoptotic substances

Name of compound	Chemical nature	Mechanism of action predicted to be associated with JE
Aspirin Indomethacin Sodium salicylate [163]	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs	Cyclooxygenase inhibitors; modulates intracellular MAP kinase pathway following JEV infection
Arctigenin [164]	Phenylpropanoid dibenzylbutyrolactone lignan	Decrease neuronal apoptosis, microglial activation, active caspase activity, and induction of proinflammatory mediators in the brain
Etanercept [165]	TNF-α inhibitor	Reduces neuroinflammation and restores BBB integrity
Fenofibrate [166]	Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-α agonist	Helps in detoxification of the potent proinflammatory eicosanoid leukotriene B(4) and inhibits other proinflammatory activity
Minocycline [60, 69, 167–169]	Semisynthetic tetracycline antibiotic	Reduces neuronal apoptosis, microglial activation, active caspase activity, proinflammatory mediator release in brain, ameliorates intracellular oxidative stress, and decreases viral titer; imparts protection to blood–brain barrier
Rosmarinic acid [170]	Polyphenolic compound	Reduces viral replication in mouse brain; ameliorates secondary inflammation resulting from microglial activation
Tilapia hepcidin 1–5 [171]	Antimicrobial peptide from tilapia fish (*Oreochromis mossambicus*)	Reduces neuronal apoptosis, microglial activation, and reduces proinflammatory mediators.

Table 3 Interferon and interferon inducers

Name of compound	Chemical nature	Mechanism of action predicted to be associated with JE
Aloe emodin [177, 178]	Anthraquinone	Upregulates the expression of interferon-stimulated genes such as dsRNA-activated protein kinase and 2′,5′-oligoisoadenylate synthase; activates of nitric oxide production
Carboxymethylacridanone [179]	Acridine derivative	Acts probably by upregulating expression of interferon-stimulated genes
Interferon alpha [180]	Glycoprotein cytokine	Critical part of the innate immune facet; leads to induction of effectors which affect viral survival

Table 4 Other compounds with varying mechanism of actions

Name of compound	Chemical nature	Mechanism of action predicted to be associated with JE
Astragali radix [183–185]	Extract from the root of *Astragalus membranaceus* Bunge; consists of polysaccharides and flavonoids	Protective effect possibly due to nonspecific mechanisms
Bafilomycin A1 [186]	Macrolide antibiotic isolated from *Streptomyces griseus sulphureus* sp.	Inhibits vacuolar-type proton pump; inhibits pH-triggered membrane fusion of endocytosed JEV thereby preventing replication
Baicalein [187]	Flavonoid	Prevents viral adsorption to cells; may be anti-replicative
Cholesterol [188]	Steroid metabolite	Prevents JEV infection possibly by hindering viral entry at fusion and RNA uncoating steps
Curcumin [189]	Natural polyphenolic compound	Inhibits production of infective viral particles by the inhibition of UPS; decreases cellular reactive oxygen species level; restores cellular membrane integrity; decreases pro-apoptotic signaling molecules
Dehydroepiandrosterone [190, 191]	Adrenal-derived steroid hormone	Probably by modulating signaling pathways of extracellular signal-regulated protein kinase
Diethyldithiocarbamate [192]	Organosulfur compound	Possibly by production of nitric oxide via induction of iNOS activity that is meditated by circulating macrophage-derived factor
rEDIII [193, 194]	Domain III of recombinant virus envelope protein	Inhibits viral entry to cells
Filipin III [188]	Part of polyene macrolide antibiotic isolated from *S. filipinensis*	Chelates cholesterol; inhibits replication and viral entry into host
Griffithsin [195]	Antiviral peptide of algal origin	Believed to inhibit entry of the virus into cells at early stages
Heparan sulfate from shrimp (*Penaeus brasiliensis*) head [196]	Proteoglycan	Yet to be defined in detail
Indirubin [197]	Compound from methanolic extract of *Isatis indigotica*	Inhibits viral attachment with cell membrane

(continued)

Table 4 (continued)

Name of compound	Chemical nature	Mechanism of action predicted to be associated with JE
Lactoferrin [198]	Iron-binding glycoprotein	Inhibits JEV entry into host cell by binding directly to the virus particle or to membrane-bound heparan sulfate
Methyl-β-cyclodextrin [188]	Cyclic oligosaccharide	Disrupts lipid raft formation by depleting cholesterol; inhibits replication and viral entry into host
N-nonyl-deoxynojirimycin [199]	Glucosidase inhibitor	Blocks the trimming step of N-linked glycosylation
Nitric oxide [200]	Gaseous hormone	Possibly inhibits viral replication; yet to be defined in detail
NSK [201]	A tripeptide found in loop 3 of domain 3 of JEV E protein	Inhibits viral entry into cells
P3 [202]	Peptide inhibitor of domain III of JEV envelope protein (E)	Intervenes between the interaction of E DIII and its cognate host cell receptor
PI 88 [203]	Sulfated phosphomanno-oligosaccharide	Causes steric hindrance to JEV attachment to host cells; may possess immunomodulatory activity
Sulfated polysaccharide extracts from *Ulva lactuca* [204]	Sulfated polysaccharide extracts from *Ulva lactuca* (algae)	Blocks viral adsorption in cells; may act as anti-inflammatory compound

5 Conclusion

The availability of prophylactic measures against JEV has not been entirely successful in deterring the spread of this disease or affecting susceptible individuals in epidemic zones. Most of this sad fact can be blamed on poor vaccination strategies or lack of general awareness in the populace regarding the severity of this disease. Thus, even with a century of knowledge, there are still parts of the world where frequent epidemics of JE are common. A coordinated strategy needs to be promulgated involving all concerned agencies and individuals dedicated to countering this disease.

References

1. Hiroyama T. Epidemiology of Japanese encephalitis (in Japanese). Saishin-Igaku. 1962;17: 1272–80.
2. Hayashi M. Ubertragung des virus von encephalitis epidemica auf Affen. Proc Imp Acad Tokyo. 1934;10:41–4.

3. Rosen L. The natural history of Japanese encephalitis virus. Annu Rev Microbiol. 1986;40:395–414.
4. Lu G, Gong P. Crystal Structure of the full-length Japanese encephalitis virus NS5 reveals a conserved methyltransferase-polymerase interface. PLoS Pathog. 2013;9(8):e1003549.
5. Chen CJ, et al. RNA-protein interactions: involvement of NS3, NS5, and 3′ noncoding regions of Japanese encephalitis virus genomic RNA. J Virol. 1997;71(5):3466–73.
6. Edward Z, Takegami T. Localization and functions of Japanese encephalitis virus nonstructural proteins NS3 and NS5 for viral RNA synthesis in the infected cells. Microbiol Immunol. 1993;37(3):239–43.
7. Kuo MD, et al. Characterization of the NTPase activity of Japanese encephalitis virus NS3 protein. J Gen Virol. 1996;77(Pt 9):2077–84.
8. Jan LR, et al. Processing of Japanese encephalitis virus non-structural proteins: NS2B-NS3 complex and heterologous proteases. J Gen Virol. 1995;76(Pt 3):573–80.
9. Chang YS, et al. Membrane permeabilization by small hydrophobic nonstructural proteins of Japanese encephalitis virus. J Virol. 1999;73(8):6257–64.
10. Katoh H, et al. Heterogeneous nuclear ribonucleoprotein A2 participates in the replication of Japanese encephalitis virus through an interaction with viral proteins and RNA. J Virol. 2011;85(21):10976–88.
11. Li C, et al. The DEAD-box RNA helicase DDX5 acts as a positive regulator of Japanese encephalitis virus replication by binding to viral 3′ UTR. Antiviral Res. 2013;100(2): 487–99.
12. Li C, et al. Cellular DDX3 regulates Japanese encephalitis virus replication by interacting with viral un-translated regions. Virology. 2014;449:70–81.
13. Ye J, et al. Heat shock protein 70 is associated with replicase complex of Japanese encephalitis virus and positively regulates viral genome replication. PLoS One. 2013;8(9):e75188.
14. Tien CF, et al. Inhibition of aldolase A blocks biogenesis of ATP and attenuates Japanese encephalitis virus production. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2014;443(2):464–9.
15. Gould EA. Evolution of the Japanese encephalitis serocomplex viruses. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol. 2002;267:391–404.
16. Solomon T, et al. Origin and evolution of Japanese encephalitis virus in southeast Asia. J Virol. 2003;77(5):3091–8.
17. Mohammed MA, et al. Molecular phylogenetic and evolutionary analyses of Muar strain of Japanese encephalitis virus reveal it is the missing fifth genotype. Infect Genet Evol. 2011;11(5):855–62.
18. Schuh AJ, et al. Genetic characterization of early isolates of Japanese encephalitis virus: genotype II has been circulating since at least 1951. J Gen Virol. 2010;91(Pt 1):95–102.
19. Solomon T, et al. Japanese encephalitis. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2000;68(4): 405–15.
20. Huong VT, Ha DQ, Deubel V. Genetic study of Japanese encephalitis viruses from Vietnam. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1993;49(5):538–44.
21. Fulmali PV, et al. Introduction of Japanese encephalitis virus genotype I, India. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011;17(2):319–21.
22. Sarkar A, et al. Molecular evidence for the occurrence of Japanese encephalitis virus genotype I and III infection associated with acute encephalitis in patients of West Bengal, India, 2010. Virol J. 2012;9:271.
23. Schuh AJ, et al. Dynamics of the emergence and establishment of a newly dominant genotype of Japanese encephalitis virus throughout Asia. J Virol. 2014;88:4522–32.
24. Scherer WF, et al. Ecologic studies of Japanese encephalitis virus in Japan. III. Mosquito factors. Zootropism and vertical flight of *Culex tritaeniorhynchus* with observations on variations in collections from animal-baited traps in different habitats. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1959;8:665–77.
25. Scherer WF, Buescher EL, McClure HE. Ecologic studies of Japanese encephalitis virus in Japan. V. Avian factors. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1959;8:689–97.
26. Scherer WF, et al. Ecologic studies of Japanese encephalitis virus in Japan. VIII. Survey for infection of wild rodents. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1959;8:716–8.

27. Scherer WF, et al. Ecologic studies of Japanese encephalitis virus in Japan. VII. Human infection. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1959;8:707–15.
28. Scherer WF, et al. Ecologic studies of Japanese encephalitis virus in Japan. VI. Swine infection. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1959;8:698–706.
29. Buescher EL, Scherer WF. Ecologic studies of Japanese encephalitis virus in Japan. IX. Epidemiologic correlations and conclusions. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1959;8:719–22.
30. Buescher EL, et al. Ecologic studies of Japanese encephalitis virus in Japan. IV. Avian infection. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1959;8:678–88.
31. Buescher EL, et al. Ecologic studies of Japanese encephalitis virus in Japan. II. Mosquito infection. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1959;8:651–64.
32. Takahashi M, Suzuki K. Japanese encephalitis virus in mosquito salivary glands. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1979;28(1):122–35.
33. Solomon T. Recent advances in Japanese encephalitis. J Neurovirol. 2003;9(2):274–83.
34. Hoke CH, et al. Protection against Japanese encephalitis by inactivated vaccines. N Engl J Med. 1988;319(10):608–14.
35. Hancock J, Kushlan J. The herons handbook. New York, NY: Harper and Row; 1984.
36. Ghosh D, Basu A. Japanese encephalitis-a pathological and clinical perspective. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2009;3(9):e437.
37. Chan YC, Loh TF. Isolation of Japanese encephalitis virus from the blood of a child in Singapore. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1966;15(4):567–72.
38. Igarashi A, et al. Detection of west Nile and Japanese encephalitis viral genome sequences in cerebrospinal fluid from acute encephalitis cases in Karachi, Pakistan. Microbiol Immunol. 1994;38(10):827–30.
39. Grascenkov NI. Japanese encephalitis in the USSR. Bull World Health Organ. 1964;30:161–72.
40. Hanna JN, et al. Japanese encephalitis in north Queensland, Australia, 1998. Med J Aust. 1999;170(11):533–6.
41. Hanna JN, et al. An outbreak of Japanese encephalitis in the Torres Strait, Australia, 1995. Med J Aust. 1996;165(5):256–60.
42. Bai L, Morton LC, Liu Q. Climate change and mosquito-borne diseases in China: a review. Global Health. 2013;9(1):10.
43. Ravanini P, et al. Japanese encephalitis virus RNA detected in *Culex pipiens* mosquitoes in Italy. Euro Surveill. 2012;17(28).
44. Garcia-Bocanegra I, et al. Serosurvey of West nile virus and other flaviviruses of the Japanese encephalitis antigenic complex in birds from Andalusia, southern Spain. Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis. 2011;11(8):1107–13.
45. Platonov A, et al. Does the Japanese encephalitis virus (JEV) represent a threat for human health in Europe? Detection of JEV RNA sequences in birds collected in Italy. Euro Surveill. 2012;17(32) pii: 20241.
46. Doti P, et al. A case of Japanese encephalitis in a 20 year-old Spanish sportsman, February 2013. Euro Surveill. 2013;18(35):20573.
47. Lagarde S, et al. Japanese encephalitis in a French traveler to Nepal. J Neurovirol. 2014;20(1):99–102.
48. Tappe D, et al. Two laboratory-confirmed cases of Japanese encephalitis imported to Germany by travelers returning from Southeast Asia. J Clin Virol. 2012;54(3):282–5.
49. Zimmerman HM. The pathology of Japanese B encephalitis. Am J Pathol. 1946;22:965–91.
50. Sabin AB, Schlesinger RW, et al. Japanese B encephalitis in American soldiers in Korea. Am J Hyg. 1947;46(3):356–75.
51. Nemeth N, et al. North American birds as potential amplifying hosts of Japanese encephalitis virus. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2012;87(4):760–7.
52. Campbell GL, et al. Estimated global incidence of Japanese encephalitis: a systematic review. Bull World Health Organ. 2011;89(10):766–74. 774A-774E.
53. Erlanger TE, et al. Past, present, and future of Japanese encephalitis. Emerg Infect Dis. 2009;15(1):1–7.

54. Chaturvedi UC, et al. Transplacental infection with Japanese encephalitis virus. J Infect Dis. 1980;141(6):712–5.
55. Mathur A, Arora KL, Chaturvedi UC. Congenital infection of mice with Japanese encephalitis virus. Infect Immun. 1981;34(1):26–9.
56. Shiraki H. Japanese encephalitis. In: Debre R, Celers J, editors. Clinical virology. Philadelphia, PA: W.B. Saunders; 1970. p. 155–75.
57. Myint KS, et al. Unravelling the neuropathogenesis of Japanese encephalitis. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2007;101(10):955–6.
58. Johnston LJ, Halliday GM, King NJ. Langerhans cells migrate to local lymph nodes following cutaneous infection with an arbovirus. J Invest Dermatol. 2000;114(3):560–8.
59. Diamond MS. Evasion of innate and adaptive immunity by flaviviruses. Immunol Cell Biol. 2003;81(3):196–206.
60. Dutta K, et al. Minocycline differentially modulates viral infection and persistence in an experimental model of Japanese encephalitis. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2010;5(4): 553–65.
61. Mukherji AK, Biswas SK. Histopathological studies of brains (and other viscera) from cases of JE virus encephalitis during 1973 epidemic at Bankura. Indian J Med Res. 1976;64(8): 1143–9.
62. Miyake M. The pathology of Japanese encephalitis. A review. Bull World Health Organ. 1964;30:153–60.
63. Myint KS, et al. Production of lethal infection that resembles fatal human disease by intranasal inoculation of macaques with Japanese encephalitis virus. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1999; 60(3):338–42.
64. Sapkal GN, et al. Detection and isolation of Japanese encephalitis virus from blood clots collected during the acute phase of infection. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2007;77(6):1139–45.
65. Johnson RT, et al. Japanese encephalitis: immunocytochemical studies of viral antigen and inflammatory cells in fatal cases. Ann Neurol. 1985;18(5):567–73.
66. Dutta K, et al. Minocycline differentially modulates macrophage mediated peripheral immune response following Japanese encephalitis virus infection. Immunobiology. 2010; 215(11):884–93.
67. Aleyas AG, et al. Functional modulation of dendritic cells and macrophages by Japanese encephalitis virus through MyD88 adaptor molecule-dependent and -independent pathways. J Immunol. 2009;183(4):2462–74.
68. Chen ST, et al. CLEC5A regulates Japanese encephalitis virus-induced neuroinflammation and lethality. PLoS Pathog. 2012;8(4):e1002655.
69. Mishra MK, et al. Understanding the molecular mechanism of blood–brain barrier damage in an experimental model of Japanese encephalitis: correlation with minocycline administration as a therapeutic agent. Neurochem Int. 2009;55(8):717–23.
70. Lai CY, et al. Endothelial Japanese encephalitis virus infection enhances migration and adhesion of leukocytes to brain microvascular endothelia via MEK-dependent expression of ICAM1 and the CINC and RANTES chemokines. J Neurochem. 2012;123(2):250–61.
71. Mathur A, Khanna N, Chaturvedi UC. Breakdown of blood–brain barrier by virus-induced cytokine during Japanese encephalitis virus infection. Int J Exp Pathol. 1992;73(5):603–11.
72. Ravi V, et al. Correlation of tumor necrosis factor levels in the serum and cerebrospinal fluid with clinical outcome in Japanese encephalitis patients. J Med Virol. 1997;51(2):132–6.
73. Singh A, Kulshreshtha R, Mathur A. Secretion of the chemokine interleukin-8 during Japanese encephalitis virus infection. J Med Microbiol. 2000;49(7):607–12.
74. Zhu YZ, et al. Japanese encephalitis virus enters rat neuroblastoma cells via a pH-dependent, dynamin and caveola-mediated endocytosis pathway. J Virol. 2012;86(24):13407–22.
75. Kalia M, et al. Japanese encephalitis virus infects neuronal cells through a clathrin-independent endocytic mechanism. J Virol. 2013;87(1):148–62.
76. Nawa M, et al. Interference in Japanese encephalitis virus infection of vero cells by a cationic amphiphilic drug, chlorpromazine. J Gen Virol. 2003;84(Pt 7):1737–41.

77. Das S, Ravi V, Desai A. Japanese encephalitis virus interacts with vimentin to facilitate its entry into porcine kidney cell line. Virus Res. 2011;160(1–2):404–8.
78. Das S, Chakraborty S, Basu A. Critical role of lipid rafts in virus entry and activation of phosphoinositide 3′ kinase/Akt signaling during early stages of Japanese encephalitis virus infection in neural stem/progenitor cells. J Neurochem. 2010;115(2):537–49.
79. Zhu YZ, et al. Association of heat-shock protein 70 with lipid rafts is required for Japanese encephalitis virus infection in Huh7 cells. J Gen Virol. 2012;93(Pt 1):61–71.
80. Thongtan T, et al. Characterization of putative Japanese encephalitis virus receptor molecules on microglial cells. J Med Virol. 2012;84(4):615–23.
81. Swarup V, et al. Tumor necrosis factor receptor-1-induced neuronal death by TRADD contributes to the pathogenesis of Japanese encephalitis. J Neurochem. 2007;103(2):771–83.
82. Swarup V, et al. Tumor necrosis factor receptor-associated death domain mediated neuronal death contributes to the glial activation and subsequent neuroinflammation in Japanese encephalitis. Neurochem Int. 2008;52(7):1310–21.
83. Yiang GT, et al. The NS3 protease and helicase domains of Japanese encephalitis virus trigger cell death via caspase dependent and independent pathways. Mol Med Rep. 2013;7(3):826–30.
84. Chien HL, Liao CL, Lin YL. FUSE binding protein 1 interacts with untranslated regions of Japanese encephalitis virus RNA and negatively regulates viral replication. J Virol. 2011;85(10):4698–706.
85. Nazmi A, Dutta K, Basu A. RIG-I mediates innate immune response in mouse neurons following Japanese encephalitis virus infection. PLoS One. 2011;6(6):e21761.
86. Nazmi A, et al. STING mediates neuronal innate immune response following Japanese encephalitis virus infection. Sci Rep. 2012;2:347.
87. Jin R, et al. Japanese encephalitis virus activates autophagy as a viral immune evasion strategy. PLoS One. 2013;8(1):e52909.
88. Ghoshal A, et al. Proinflammatory mediators released by activated microglia induces neuronal death in Japanese encephalitis. Glia. 2007;55(5):483–96.
89. Chen CJ, et al. Astrocytic alteration induced by Japanese encephalitis virus infection. Neuroreport. 2000;11(9):1933–7.
90. Mishra MK, et al. Neuroprotection conferred by astrocytes is insufficient to protect animals from succumbing to Japanese encephalitis. Neurochem Int. 2007;50(5):764–73.
91. Thounaojam MC, et al. MicroRNA-155 regulates japanese encephalitis virus induced inflammatory response by targeting src homology 2-containing inositol phosphatase-1 (SHIP1). J Virol. 2014;88:4798–810.
92. Thounaojam MC, et al. MicroRNA-29b modulates Japanese encephalitis virus-induced microglia activation by targeting tumor necrosis factor alpha-induced protein 3. J Neurochem. 2013;129:143–54.
93. Jeurissen A, Strauven T. A case of aseptic meningitis due to Japanese encephalitis virus in a traveller returning from the Philippines. Acta Neurol Belg. 2011;111(2):143–5.
94. Hosokawa T, et al. Case report of aseptic meningitis due to Japanese encephalitis virus. Rinsho Shinkeigaku. 2007;47(2–3):109–11.
95. Kuwayama M, et al. Japanese encephalitis virus in meningitis patients, Japan. Emerg Infect Dis. 2005;11(3):471–3.
96. Rudolph KE, et al. Incubation periods of mosquito-borne viral infections: a systematic review. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2014;90(5):882–91.
97. Simpson TW, Meiklejohn G. Sequelae of Japanese B encephalitis. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1947;27(6):727–31.
98. Solomon T, Vaughn DW. Pathogenesis and clinical features of Japanese encephalitis and West Nile virus infections. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol. 2002;267:171–94.
99. Gourie-Devi M, Ravi V, Shankar SK. Japanese encephalitis: an overview. In: Rose FC, editor. Recent advances in tropical neurology. Amsterdam: Elsevier Sciences B.V.; 1995. p. 217–35.
100. Kakoti G, et al. Clinical profile and outcome of Japanese encephalitis in children admitted with acute encephalitis syndrome. Biomed Res Int. 2013;2013:152656.

101. Desai A, et al. Detection of immune complexes in the CSF of Japanese encephalitis patients: correlation of findings with outcome. Intervirology. 1994;37(6):352–5.
102. Kumar R, et al. Clinical features & prognostic indicators of Japanese encephalitis in children in Lucknow (India). Indian J Med Res. 1990;91:321–7.
103. Solomon T, et al. Seizures and raised intracranial pressure in Vietnamese patients with Japanese encephalitis. Brain. 2002;125(Pt 5):1084–93.
104. Desai A, et al. Japanese encephalitis virus antigen in the human brain and its topographic distribution. Acta Neuropathol. 1995;89(4):368–73.
105. Carroll E, Sanchez-Ramos J. Hyperkinetic movement disorders associated with HIV and other viral infections. Handb Clin Neurol. 2011;100:323–34.
106. Ogata A, et al. A rat model of Parkinson's disease induced by Japanese encephalitis virus. J Neurovirol. 1997;3(2):141–7.
107. Misra UK, Kalita J. Movement disorders in Japanese encephalitis. J Neurol. 1997;244(5): 299–303.
108. Kalita J, Misra UK, Pradhan PK. Oromandibular dystonia in encephalitis. J Neurol Sci. 2011;304(1–2):107–10.
109. Kumar A. Isolated involvement of substantia nigra in Japanese encephalitis. J Indian Med Assoc. 2010;108(8):525, 527.
110. Basumatary LJ, et al. Clinical and radiological spectrum of Japanese encephalitis. J Neurol Sci. 2013;325(1–2):15–21.
111. Maschke M, et al. Update on neuroimaging in infectious central nervous system disease. Curr Opin Neurol. 2004;17(4):475–80.
112. Misra UK, Kalita J. Overview: Japanese encephalitis. Prog Neurobiol. 2010;91(2):108–20.
113. Kalita J, Misra UK. Comparison of CT scan and MRI findings in the diagnosis of Japanese encephalitis. J Neurol Sci. 2000;174(1):3–8.
114. Kalita J, Misra UK. Markedly severe dystonia in Japanese encephalitis. Mov Disord. 2000;15(6):1168–72.
115. Handique SK, et al. Temporal lobe involvement in Japanese encephalitis: problems in differential diagnosis. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol. 2006;27(5):1027–31.
116. Toshio S, et al. Encephalitis associated with positive anti-GluR antibodies showing abnormal appearance in basal ganglia, pulvinar and gray matter on MRI–case report. Rinsho Shinkeigaku. 2011;51(3):192–6.
117. Kimura K, et al. Single-photon emission CT findings in acute Japanese encephalitis. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol. 1997;18(3):465–9.
118. Kalita J, Das BK, Misra UK. SPECT studies of regional cerebral blood flow in 8 patients with Japanese encephalitis in subacute and chronic stage. Acta Neurol Scand. 1999;99(4):213–8.
119. Misra UK, Kalita J. Anterior horn cells are also involved in Japanese encephalitis. Acta Neurol Scand. 1997;96(2):114–7.
120. Solomon T, Ooi MH, Mallewa M. Chapter 10 viral infections of lower motor neurons. Handb Clin Neurol. 2007;82:179–206.
121. Chung CC, et al. Acute flaccid paralysis as an unusual presenting symptom of Japanese encephalitis: a case report and review of the literature. Infection. 2007;35(1):30–2.
122. Ding D, et al. Long-term disability from acute childhood Japanese encephalitis in Shanghai, China. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2007;77(3):528–33.
123. Ooi MH, et al. The epidemiology, clinical features, and long-term prognosis of Japanese encephalitis in Central Sarawak, Malaysia, 1997–2005. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;47(4):458–68.
124. Goto A. A long duration follow-up study of Japanese encephalitis. Folia Psychiatr Neurol Jpn. 1962;64:236–66.
125. Goto A. A long duration follow-up study of encephalitis Japonica. Folia Psychiatr Neurol Jpn. 1964;17:326–34.
126. Goto A. A long term follow-up study of encephalitis japonica–prognostic observations of 43 personal cases fifteen years after the onset. Seishin Shinkeigaku Zasshi. 1966;68(1):44–59.
127. Goto A. Sequelae of Japanese encephalitis from the viewpoint of neuropsychiatry. Shinkei Kenkyu No Shimpo. 1967;11(2):329–51.

128. Schneider RJ, et al. Clinical sequelae after Japanese encephalitis: a one year follow-up study in Thailand. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 1974;5(4):560–8.
129. Sarkari NB, et al. Japanese encephalitis (JE). Part I: clinical profile of 1,282 adult acute cases of four epidemics. J Neurol. 2012;259(1):47–57.
130. Sarkari NB, et al. Japanese encephalitis (JE) part II: 14 years' follow-up of survivors. J Neurol. 2012;259(1):58–69.
131. Das S, Ghosh D, Basu A. Japanese encephalitis virus induce immuno-competency in neural stem/progenitor cells. PLoS One. 2009;4(12):e8134.
132. Das S, Basu A. Japanese encephalitis virus infects neural progenitor cells and decreases their proliferation. J Neurochem. 2008;106(4):1624–36.
133. Desai A, et al. Co-existence of cerebral cysticercosis with Japanese encephalitis: a prognostic modulator. Epidemiol Infect. 1997;118(2):165–71.
134. Liu YF, Teng CL, Liu K. Cerebral cysticercosis as a factor aggravating Japanese B encephalitis. Chin Med J. 1957;75(12):1010–7.
135. Ravi V, et al. Association of Japanese encephalitis virus infection with Guillain-Barre syndrome in endemic areas of south India. Acta Neurol Scand. 1994;90(1):67–72.
136. Ankur Nandan V, et al. Acute transverse myelitis (ascending myelitis) as the initial manifestation of Japanese encephalitis: a rare presentation. Case Rep Infect Dis. 2013;2013:487659.
137. Verma R, et al. Acute transverse myelitis following Japanese encephalitis viral infection: an uncommon complication of a common disease. BMJ Case Rep. 2012. pii: bcr2012007094. doi: 10.1136/bcr-2012-007094.
138. Man BL., Fu YP. The first case of mild encephalopathy with a reversible splenial lesion due to Japanese encephalitis virus infection. BMJ Case Rep. 2013. pii: bcr2013200988. doi: 10.1136/bcr-2013-200988.
139. Chen WL, et al. A possible case of acute disseminated encephalomyelitis after Japanese encephalitis. Acta Neurol Taiwan. 2013;22(4):169–73.
140. Jia M, et al. Japanese encephalitis accompanied by cerebral venous sinus thrombosis: a case report. BMC Neurol. 2012;12:43.
141. Yun SI, Lee YM. Japanese encephalitis: the virus and vaccines. Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2014;10(2):263–79.
142. Haridas V, et al. Bispidine-amino acid conjugates act as a novel scaffold for the design of antivirals that block Japanese encephalitis virus replication. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2013;7(1):e2005.
143. Kumar R, et al. Randomized, controlled trial of oral ribavirin for Japanese encephalitis in children in Uttar Pradesh, India. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;48(4):400–6.
144. Wu Z, et al. Broad-spectrum antiviral activity of RNA interference against four genotypes of Japanese encephalitis virus based on single microRNA polycistrons. PLoS One. 2011; 6(10):e26304.
145. Woodman DR, Williams JC. Effects of 2-deoxy-D-glucose and 3 deazauridine individually and in combination on the replication of Japanese B encephalitis virus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1977;11(3):475–81.
146. Kaluza G, Scholtissek C, Rott R. Inhibition of the multiplication of enveloped RNA-viruses by glucosamine and 2-deoxy-D-glucose. J Gen Virol. 1972;14(3):251–9.
147. Klenk HD, Scholtissek C, Rott R. Inhibition of glycoprotein biosynthesis of influenza virus by D-glucosamine and 2-deoxy-D-glucose. Virology. 1972;49(3):723–34.
148. Takegami T, et al. Inhibitory effect of furanonaphthoquinone derivatives on the replication of Japanese encephalitis virus. Antiviral Res. 1998;37(1):37–45.
149. Seniya C, et al. Antiviral potential of 4-hydroxypanduratin A, secondary metabolite of Fingerroot, Boesenbergia pandurata (Schult.), towards Japanese encephalitis virus NS2B/NS3 protease. Bioinformation. 2013;9(1):54–60.
150. Appaiahgari MB, Vrati S. DNAzyme-mediated inhibition of Japanese encephalitis virus replication in mouse brain. Mol Ther. 2007;15(9):1593–9.
151. Lin RJ, et al. MCPIP1 ribonuclease exhibits broad-spectrum antiviral effects through viral RNA binding and degradation. Nucleic Acids Res. 2013;41(5):3314–26.

152. Sebastian L, et al. Mycophenolic acid inhibits replication of Japanese encephalitis virus. Chemotherapy. 2011;57(1):56–61.
153. Shi Z, et al. Nitazoxanide inhibits the replication of Japanese encephalitis virus in cultured cells and in a mouse model. Virol J. 2014;11:10.
154. Sebastian L, et al. Pentoxifylline inhibits replication of Japanese encephalitis virus: a comparative study with ribavirin. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2009;33(2):168–73.
155. Ishag HZ, et al. Inhibition of Japanese encephalitis virus infection in vitro and in vivo by pokeweed antiviral protein. Virus Res. 2013;171(1):89–96.
156. Anantpadma M, Stein DA, Vrati S. Inhibition of Japanese encephalitis virus replication in cultured cells and mice by a peptide-conjugated morpholino oligomer. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65(5):953–61.
157. Huggins JW, Robins RK, Canonico PG. Synergistic antiviral effects of ribavirin and the C-nucleoside analogs tiazofurin and selenazofurin against togaviruses, bunyaviruses, and arenaviruses. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1984;26(4):476–80.
158. Sebastian L, et al. Combination of N-methylisatin-beta-thiosemicarbazone derivative (SCH16) with ribavirin and mycophenolic acid potentiates the antiviral activity of SCH16 against Japanese encephalitis virus in vitro. Lett Appl Microbiol. 2012;55(3):234–9.
159. Sebastian L, et al. N-methylisatin-beta-thiosemicarbazone derivative (SCH 16) is an inhibitor of Japanese encephalitis virus infection in vitro and in vivo. Virol J. 2008;5:64.
160. Anantpadma M, Vrati S. siRNA-mediated suppression of Japanese encephalitis virus replication in cultured cells and mice. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2012;67(2):444–51.
161. Xu K, et al. Suramin inhibits the in vitro expression of encephalitis B virus proteins NS3 and E. J Huazhong Univ Sci Technolog Med Sci. 2003;23(4):375–9.
162. Nazmi A, Dutta K, Basu A. Antiviral and neuroprotective role of octaguanidinium dendrimer-conjugated morpholino oligomers in Japanese encephalitis. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2010; 4(11):e892.
163. Chen CJ, et al. Suppression of Japanese encephalitis virus infection by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. J Gen Virol. 2002;83(Pt 8):1897–905.
164. Swarup V, et al. Novel strategy for treatment of Japanese encephalitis using arctigenin, a plant lignan. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2008;61(3):679–88.
165. Ye J, et al. Etanercept reduces neuroinflammation and lethality in mouse model of Japanese encephalitis. J Infect Dis. 2014.
166. Sehgal N, et al. Fenofibrate reduces mortality and precludes neurological deficits in survivors in murine model of Japanese encephalitis viral infection. PLoS One. 2012;7(4):e35427.
167. Mishra MK, Basu A. Minocycline neuroprotects, reduces microglial activation, inhibits caspase 3 induction, and viral replication following Japanese encephalitis. J Neurochem. 2008;105(5):1582–95.
168. Mishra MK, et al. Antioxidant potential of minocycline in Japanese encephalitis virus infection in murine neuroblastoma cells: correlation with membrane fluidity and cell death. Neurochem Int. 2009;54(7):464–70.
169. Yik SY, et al. Neuroprotective effects of minocycline on double-stranded RNA-induced neurotoxicity in cultured cortical neurons. Hong Kong Med J. 2012;18 Suppl 2:42–4.
170. Swarup V, et al. Antiviral and anti-inflammatory effects of rosmarinic acid in an experimental murine model of Japanese encephalitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51(9):3367–70.
171. Huang HN, et al. Modulation of the immune-related gene responses to protect mice against Japanese encephalitis virus using the antimicrobial peptide, tilapia hepcidin 1-5. Biomaterials. 2011;32(28):6804–14.
172. Burke DS, Morill JC. Levels of interferon in the plasma and cerebrospinal fluid of patients with acute Japanese encephalitis. J Infect Dis. 1987;155(4):797–9.
173. Fensterl V, Sen GC. Interferons and viral infections. Biofactors. 2009;35(1):14–20.
174. Blanc M, et al. Host defense against viral infection involves interferon mediated down-regulation of sterol biosynthesis. PLoS Biol. 2011;9(3):e1000598.
175. Zhou X, et al. Interferon induced IFIT family genes in host antiviral defense. Int J Biol Sci. 2013;9(2):200–8.

176. Houglum JE. Interferon: mechanisms of action and clinical value. Clin Pharm. 1983;2(1): 20–8.
177. Chang SJ, et al. Antiviral activity of Rheum palmatum methanol extract and chrysophanol against Japanese encephalitis virus. Arch Pharm Res. 2014.
178. Lin CW, et al. Aloe-emodin is an interferon-inducing agent with antiviral activity against Japanese encephalitis virus and enterovirus 71. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2008;32(4):355–9.
179. Taylor JL, Schoenherr C, Grossberg SE. Protection against Japanese encephalitis virus in mice and hamsters by treatment with carboxymethylacridanone, a potent interferon inducer. J Infect Dis. 1980;142(3):394–9.
180. Harinasuta C, Wasi C, Vithanomsat S. The effect of interferon on Japanese encephalitis virus in vitro. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 1984;15(4):564–8.
181. Harinasuta C, Nimmanitya S, Titsyakorn U. The effect of interferon-alpha A on two cases of Japanese encephalitis in Thailand. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health. 1985;16(2): 332–6.
182. Solomon T, et al. Interferon alfa-2a in Japanese encephalitis: a randomised double-blind placebo-controlled trial. Lancet. 2003;361(9360):821–6.
183. Kajimura K, et al. Protective effect of astragali radix by oral administration against Japanese encephalitis virus infection in mice. Biol Pharm Bull. 1996;19(9):1166–9.
184. Kajimura K, et al. Protective effect of astragali radix by intraperitoneal injection against Japanese encephalitis virus infection in mice. Biol Pharm Bull. 1996;19(6):855–9.
185. Toda S, Shirataki Y. Inhibitory effects of astragali radix, a crude drug in Oriental medicines, on lipid peroxidation and protein oxidative modification by copper. J Ethnopharmacol. 1999;68(1–3):331–3.
186. Andoh T, et al. Effect of bafilomycin A1 on the growth of Japanese encephalitis virus in vero cells. J Neurovirol. 1998;4(6):627–31.
187. Johari J, et al. Antiviral activity of baicalein and quercetin against the Japanese encephalitis virus. Int J Mol Sci. 2012;13(12):16785–95.
188. Lee CJ, et al. Cholesterol effectively blocks entry of flavivirus. J Virol. 2008;82(13): 6470–80.
189. Dutta K, Ghosh D, Basu A. Curcumin protects neuronal cells from Japanese encephalitis virus-mediated cell death and also inhibits infective viral particle formation by dysregulation of ubiquitin-proteasome system. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2009;4(3):328–37.
190. Ben-Nathan D, et al. Protection by dehydroepiandrosterone in mice infected with viral encephalitis. Arch Virol. 1991;120(3–4):263–71.
191. Chang CC, et al. Antiviral effect of dehydroepiandrosterone on Japanese encephalitis virus infection. J Gen Virol. 2005;86(Pt 9):2513–23.
192. Saxena SK, Mathur A, Srivastava RC. Inhibition of Japanese encephalitis virus infection by diethyldithiocarbamate is independent of its antioxidant potential. Antivir Chem Chemother. 2003;14(2):91–8.
193. Li C, et al. Inhibition of Japanese encephalitis virus entry into the cells by the envelope glycoprotein domain III (EDIII) and the loop3 peptide derived from EDIII. Antiviral Res. 2012;94(2):179–83.
194. Fan J, et al. Inhibition of Japanese encephalitis virus infection by flavivirus recombinant E protein domain III. Virol Sin. 2013;28(3):152–60.
195. Ishag HZ, et al. Griffithsin inhibits Japanese encephalitis virus infection in vitro and in vivo. Arch Virol. 2013;158(2):349–58.
196. Chen J, et al. Unique heparan sulfate from shrimp heads exhibits a strong inhibitory effect on infections by dengue virus and Japanese encephalitis virus. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2011;412(1):136–42.
197. Chang SJ, et al. Antiviral activity of Isatis indigotica extract and Its derived Indirubin against Japanese encephalitis virus. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med. 2012;2012:925830.
198. Chien YJ, et al. Bovine lactoferrin inhibits Japanese encephalitis virus by binding to heparan sulfate and receptor for low density lipoprotein. Virology. 2008;379(1):143–51.

199. Wu SF, et al. Antiviral effects of an iminosugar derivative on flavivirus infections. J Virol. 2002;76(8):3596–604.
200. Lin YL, et al. Inhibition of Japanese encephalitis virus infection by nitric oxide: antiviral effect of nitric oxide on RNA virus replication. J Virol. 1997;71(7):5227–35.
201. Li C, et al. A tripeptide (NSK) inhibits Japanese encephalitis virus infection in vitro and in vivo. Arch Virol. 2013.
202. Zu X, et al. Peptide inhibitor of Japanese encephalitis virus infection targeting envelope protein domain III. Antiviral Res. 2014;104:7–14.
203. Lee E, et al. Antiviral effect of the heparan sulfate mimetic, PI-88, against dengue and encephalitic flaviviruses. Antiviral Res. 2006;69(1):31–8.
204. Chiu YH, et al. Inhibition of Japanese encephalitis virus infection by the sulfated polysaccharide extracts from Ulva lactuca. Mar Biotechnol (NY). 2012;14(4):468–78.

The Biology and Clinical Consequence of Infection with the Human Polyomavirus JCV

G. von Geldern, M.J. Barhams, and E.O. Major

Abstract This chapter gives an overview over the biology and the clinical consequences of infection with the human polyomavirus JCV. Current data as well as those aspects that are not yet fully understood are explained.

JCV virus is a human polyomavirus that leads to an asymptomatic infection in a large percentage of healthy individuals and can lead to a latent infection of the kidneys or the bone marrow. JCV reactivation and lytic infection of oligodendrocytes in the brain lead to a devastating demyelinating disease called progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML). PML typically occurs in patients with an impaired cellular immune response due to an underlying disease such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection or a systemic malignancy or due to treatment with immunomodulatory therapies. While supporting the recovery of the patient's immune system (either by giving antiretroviral therapy in HIV-infected patients or by stopping the immunomodulatory therapies leading to PML) is currently the only known effective therapeutic intervention, the response of the immune system can lead to clinical and radiographic worsening known as immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS). The clinical and biological consequences of neuroinflammation in this viral infection are presented in this chapter.

G. von Geldern, M.D.
Section of Infections of the Nervous System, NINDS, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

M.J. Barhams, M.H.S.A.
Office of Director, NHLBI, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA

E.O. Major, Ph.D. (✉)
Laboratory of Molecular Medicine and Neuroscience, NINDS, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, USA
e-mail: majorg@ninds.nih.gov; Gene.Major@nih.hhs.gov

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_16, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

Keywords Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy • JC virus • Polyomavirus • Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) • Multiple sclerosis • Natalizumab • Immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS)

1 Introduction

In 1972, two different human polyomaviruses were isolated from a lymphoma patient with a CNS demyelinating disease: JC virus (JCV) from the brain of a patient with progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML) and BK virus (BKV) from a kidney transplant recipient with fulminant polyomavirus-associated nephropathy (PVAN). Both viruses were named from the initials of the patients from whom they were isolated. Although JCV and BKV were shown to be nearly 75 % homologous at both the nucleotide and amino acid level, these new polyomaviruses demonstrated very different characteristics for kinetics of growth, host range, and pathologies [1]. Both JCV and BKV infections are almost exclusively found in individuals with impaired cell-mediated immune responses. Since then, there have been at least four more human polyomaviruses identified including Merkel cell from rare skin carcinomas, Ki and Wu from the respiratory tract, and Trp from trichoplasia skin lesions [2]. All human polyomaviruses, however, are globally ubiquitous, infecting the majority of the population in the early years and maintaining latency in nearly half the population as evidence of viral DNA identification in urinary excretions. This is a common feature of all primate, rodent, and avian polyomaviruses. JCV however is the only human polyomavirus that is predominantly neurotropic and neurovirulent, targeting the myelin-producing cell in the human brain causing a slowly progressing lytic infection of the oligodendrocyte resulting in widespread loss of myelin in the brain. Although many attempts have been made to model PML in rodents and nonhuman primates, there are currently no animal models to study JCV lytic infection. Also, there are no antiviral agents to inhibit JCV infection nor effective treatments for PML. Studies of the biology and pathogenesis of JCV in its human host remain difficult challenges for laboratory and clinical investigations.

2 The Biology of the JC Virus

2.1 Cellular Host Range and Molecular Factors for Productive Infection

Epidemiological studies indicate that seroconversion to positive antibody status occurs early in childhood starting at 4–5 years with increasing prevalence in the population. By the fifth decade, 60–75 % of the population is seropositive although

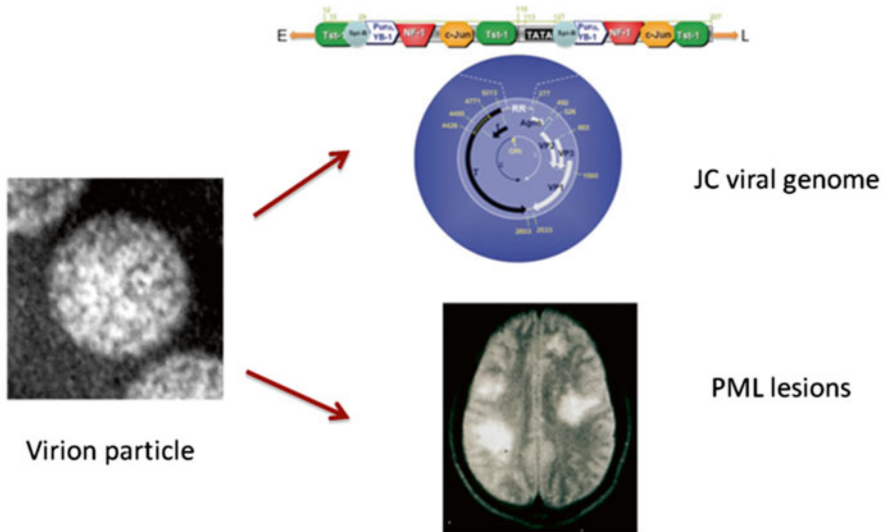


Fig. 1 JC virus characteristics. On the *left*, an electron microscopic picture of a virion particle is shown. The structure of the JC viral genome is depicted on the *right upper part* of this figure with the regions encoding for the early T protein, the noncoding regulatory region (promoter enhancer), and the late capsid proteins VP1, VP2, and VP3. The *lower right corner* of the picture shows lesions caused by JCV as seen on an MRI

antibody levels can rise or decline over time [3]. It is obvious, however, that initial infection that accounts for seroconversion or maintaining high titers of antibody does not occur in the brain. JCV can establish latency in uroepithelial cells and be excreted into the urine at high concentrations without pathogenic consequences unlike BKV. There is no clear understanding of this observation. What is interesting, however, is the genotype of the urine-excreted variant. In Fig. 1, the JCV genome is shown as a closed circular, double-stranded DNA of 5.13 kilobases, packaged into a naked, icosahedral 40-nm virion particle. There are two protein-coding regions for the early proteins, T and t, that have multiple functions for DNA replication and control over cellular metabolism that are synthesized from transcripts on one strand. Capsid proteins VP1, VP2, and VP3 are synthesized from transcripts on the opposite strand. The intergenic region between the 5′ start sequences of the early and late genes is the noncoding regulatory region or NCRR whose nucleotides have the origin for DNA replication, the transcription binding protein sites, and enhancer sequences for transcription efficiency also seen in Fig. 2. In the urine-excreted or archetype variant, the nucleotide sequences show a linear 200-base-pair arrangement. In pathological tissues such as the brain and cerebrospinal fluid, the nucleotide sequences show direct tandem repeats of 98 or fewer nucleotides with frequent deletions and duplication known as the prototype variant. A number of DNA-binding proteins have been identified on the NCRR as shown in Fig. 1 extending from the origin of DNA replication to nucleotide 50 that are essential for virus growth including those for the TATA-binding proteins and NF-1 class X [4].

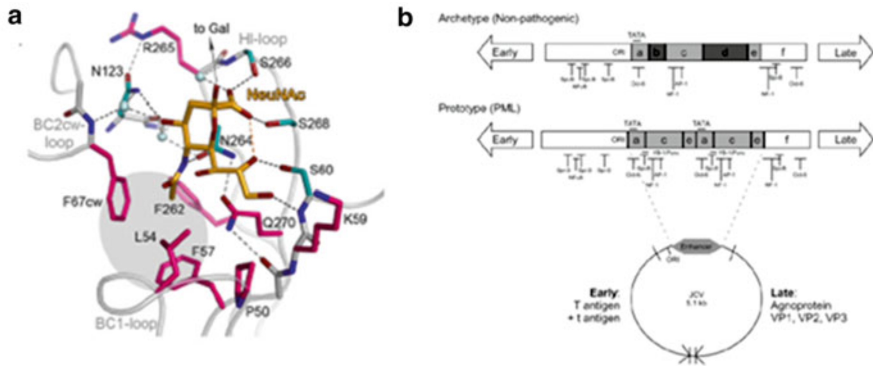


Fig. 2 Viral factors that may favor JCV infection. Part (**a**) shows the amino acid residues for the viral capsid protein VP1, which is responsible for binding to host cells; sequences for VP1 can be altered following latency. Part (**b**) shows two variations of the noncoding regulatory sequences. The nonpathogenic archetype, which is typically found in kidney tissue and contains no tandem repeats, is depicted *above*, whereas the pathogenic prototype, which is found in affected tissues in PML and which contains direct tandem repeat structures, is shown *below*

There has been considerable interest in determining the contributions to cellular host range between the NCRR and the capsid VP1 protein that binds cell receptors. The comparison between these two regions of the viral genome is shown in Fig. 2. The three-dimensional crystallographic structure shows the amino acid domains in color that interact with sialic residues on cell surface membranes for virion attachment [5]. In addition to sialic acids, the key receptor for JCV, the 5HT2A serotonin receptor plays a secondary role in attachments and particle entry [6]. Virions enter the cell cytoplasm and traffic to endosomes using clathrin-coated pits and are then transported to the nuclear membrane as disrupted particles. Viral DNA enters the nucleus that is then transcribed using host DNA-binding factors starting with early region for T proteins. The NCRR plays a key role in viral susceptibility since it contains the transcription binding sites for factors that initiate T protein mRNA and synthesis. The T protein then binds the origin of DNA replication on the 5′ region of the NCRR that interacts with cellular DNA alpha polymerase to form protein complexes for viral DNA synthesis. It is thought that an increase in the amount of viral DNA then allows transcription of mRNA for viral capsid proteins and then virion assembly—all in the nucleus. The current working models suggest that those factors that are necessary for JCV growth in uroepithelial cells bind to the archetype arrangement of the NCRR and those factors for JCV growth in glial cells and some immune system cells bind to prototype arrangement of the NCRR that leads to lytic infection and PML [7].

In cell culture studies and in clinical tissue samples, JCV multiplication is evident in oligodendrocytes and astrocytes in the brain and in CD34+ and CD19+ cells in the bone marrow and peripheral blood, as well as stromal cells in tonsils and B cells in the spleen [8, 9].

2.2 Presence of JCV in Infected Individuals

Without an animal model of JCV lytic infection resulting in PML, tracking virus in tissues requires samples mostly from infected patients, notably those with PML. Nothing is known about the initial site or timing of infection. However, since the majority of the population worldwide demonstrates antibodies to JCV, it is assumed that respiratory inhalation and/or ingestion is the primary route of infection. There are several major techniques used to identify JCV in tissues: quantitative polymerase chain reaction, qPCR, and in situ DNA hybridization that detects the viral genome and immunocytochemistry for viral proteins [10]. For the laboratory confirmatory diagnosis of PML, real-time qPCR assays are done detecting viral DNA in the cerebrospinal fluid of suspected PML patients. One assay currently used at the National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS), a validated/certified assay in the Laboratory of Molecular Medicine and Neuroscience (LMMN), is the multiplex qPCR that not only quantitates the level of viral DNA but also distinguishes whether the JCV variant is the more pathogenic prototype from the non-pathogenic archetype genotype [11]. Typically in PML patients, the brain and CSF will show the prototype, while the urine will show the archetype. Plasma or serum of patients may have both but, during the course of active infection leading to PML, will shift from archetype to prototype. In HIV patients, approximately 20 % can be viremic at some time although only 3 % will develop PML. Approximately 2 % of healthy individuals may be viremic at some time point and seem to clear infection. This observation is not surprising since JCV is ubiquitous in all parts of the world. It is surprising, however, that nearly 30 % of the population excretes JCV in urine without pathological consequences.

3 The Pathogenesis of JCV Demyelinating Infection

3.1 Viral Variants and Latency

The principal cells in which JCV DNA has been detected during infection are the uroepithelial cells in the kidney, CD34+ cells in the bone marrow, CD20+ cells in peripheral blood, and oligodendrocytes in the brain. Figure 3 shows nuclear location of replicating DNA using in situ DNA hybridization with a highly specific viral DNA probe and diaminobenzidine as the chromophore (brown) staining [10]. The bone marrow biopsy shown in Fig. 3 was taken 4 years prior to the development of PML in a Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome patient. The NCRR of the variant in the bone marrow was the prototype and nearly identical to what was seen in the B cells and brain taken at the time of PML diagnosis. Observations such as these and in other cases have led to the hypothesis that bone marrow may harbor latent JCV in hematopoietic cells for long periods [12]. If such latently infected cells migrate into the peripheral circulation and differentiate toward a B-cell lineage, then it is possible

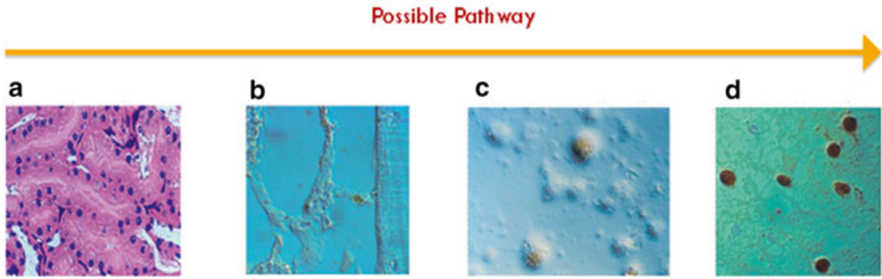


Fig. 3 Possible pathway of JCV in the body. Depicted are tissues shown to contain JC virus. (**a**) Shows the kidney tissue (which usually contains archetype JCV), **b** shows the bone marrow (which usually contains prototype JCV), **c** shows the peripheral blood (which can contain archetype and/or prototype), and **d** shows oligodendrocytes in the brain (which contain prototype)

that JCV can reactivate to slowly multiply as such cells begin the expression of factors that favor viral growth [4]. This pathway is thought to account for the development of PML in multiple sclerosis patients treated with natalizumab, a monoclonal antibody that blocks the alpha 4 cell surface integrin VLA 4 to VCAM, vascular cell adhesion molecule, preventing homing of CD+ 34-positive cells in the bone marrow and extravasation of inflammatory cells into the brain [13]. Certainly, JCV maintains decades-long periods of latency in the kidney with the NCRR archetype variant. If that is the predecessor to the pathogenic prototype, then virions released from the kidney may find their way to lymphoid tissues in which genotypic alterations or rearrangements occur to produce the prototype NCRR. This is also a plausible pathway that may occur in some patients [13].

3.2 Trafficking of Virus from Sites of Latency to the Brain

There is little evidence of how JCV enters the brain from peripheral sites of infection. Two possibilities are possible and not mutually exclusive. Since cell-free virus can be found in the blood, it is possible that JCV can cross the blood-brain barrier and enter the brain parenchyma, directly infecting astrocytes and its primary target, the oligodendrocyte. JCV may also be carried into the brain within a cell such as B cells seen in blood. JCV does not seem to infect monocytes or T lymphocytes that bring other viruses into the brain like HIV-1 and cytomegalovirus (CMV). There have been reports of viral latency in the brain that reactivates due to lack of immune surveillance [14]. However, that observation does not address the low incidence of PML in the many thousands of patients with substantial immune suppression like AIDS, organ transplants, cancer, and rheumatic diseases. Mechanisms of viral entry into the brain remain mostly unknown, requiring better cell culture and clinical studies.

3.3 Predictive Markers for Active JCV Infection

Although PML is considered a rare disease using the NIH criterion for prevalence, of 200,000 cases, the reports of PML have increased substantially over the last 10 years. In fact, PML is now considered a complication of not only HIV-1 infection and an AIDS defining illness but also a risk associated with a number of therapies for other diseases [15]. Consequently assessing that risk becomes a critical issue for patient treatment. Investigations have focused on defining biomarkers that identify active JCV infection in high-risk patients. Three JCV-linked factors for active infection that have well-developed assays have been described including the presence and rise of antiviral antibodies, viremia during the course of a risk treatment, and identification of T-cell responses to JCV multiple antigens [16]. In addition to these markers, molecular factors needed for infection in specific target cells like DNA-binding proteins for viral mRNA transcription may have a useful role, but their detection has not been reduced to a practical assay methodology. Detection of specific antibodies to JCV is a marker for prior exposure. Any increase in the antibody levels would indicate either an active or recent infection. ELISA, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, is the most routine technique used to measure antibodies and their levels. There are several such assays in clinical use for JCV that both detect antibody and measure its levels using the viral VP1 capsid protein as the antigen [17, 18]. The VP1 protein makes up the majority of virion structure and receptor for cell attachment. Plasma/serum levels of antibody can be monitored over time in patients to determine not only serostatus but also whether there is a rise in antibody levels. Most frequently, patients about to enter treatment with a drug or biological with a PML risk would have antibody levels determined. Samples that test seronegative however can be confounding since antibody levels can change over time from negative to positive. And in some cases, patients may not develop detectable antibodies but still have been exposed or have an active infection [19, 20]. Consequently, other markers should be used to assess those patients' JCV status.

Recently, CD4 and CD8 T-cell responses have been measured using viral peptides across the entire viral genome. Healthy individuals and MS patients treated with natalizumab showed both T-cell responses to all viral proteins including the nonstructural T proteins and agno and all three capsid proteins. Some of these individuals who had T-cell responses did not have antibody [21]. Assays for T-cell responses require more blood than antibody assays and use flow cytometric analysis and cytokine measurement following viral peptide contact. However, these assays have become routine in many laboratories and so do not present a difficult obstacle for assessment. In combination with serology assays, measurement of cell immune response to JCV provides a more complete analysis of not only exposure but also the ability of the patient to mount an appropriate immune response.

The advantage of measuring immune responses is their relative stability over time. However, they do not reflect direct measurement of JCV infection at times of greatest risk for PML. The advances in qPCR methods that are specific to ultrasensitive detection of viral DNA, ten copies of the genome per ml of sample, have led to the

laboratory confirmation of PML in many cases that may not have been accurately diagnosed. The current multiplex qPCR assay developed at NINDS requires small volumes of blood, CSF, urine, or cells in tissue samples. As a risk-monitoring assay, detection of viral DNA in the plasma or serum in a patient with an underlying disease that is a risk for PML can lead to substantial concern. If the individual remains viremic over weeks or months, particularly with the pathogenic variant, and shows any increase in the amount of viral DNA, then the risk for PML is elevated. At present there are no data that statistically measures that risk, i.e., percent of patients with viremia who develop PML. However, most patients show viremia at the time of PML diagnosis. It is possible to monitor patients then over time using these markers, antibody levels, T-cell responses, and viremia measured from one blood sample. As more data are collected on these patient populations, it may be possible to use a checklist of factors that reflect the risk in which combinations of "checks" can become a quantifiable number.

4 The Clinical Pattern of JCV-Induced PML

4.1 Patients at Risk for PML: Underlying Diseases and Medications

Exposure to JCV occurs in a large proportion of the population [3, 22], but the virus is thought to lead to PML almost exclusively in individuals with an impaired immune system. Some case reports of patients with PML without any apparent immunodeficiency exist [23], but they are the exception, and in most cases, an occult immunodeficiency-like idiopathic CD4+ lymphocytopenia or liver cirrhosis is eventually discovered. However, not all immunocompromised patients develop PML. Some diseases or medications affecting the immune system are more commonly associated with PML than others, and understanding these connections may help us in our understanding of the pathogenesis of PML. The initial description of PML was in a patient with lymphoma [24], and the majority of published cases in the mid-1980s described lymphoproliferative diseases as the underlying disease [25]. The incidence of PML increased significantly with the beginning of the HIV epidemic in the 1990s, and despite antiretroviral therapy, PML is still seen in up to 5 % of HIV-infected individuals [26].

Additionally, since 2004, a number of drugs have been found to be associated with the development of PML. Natalizumab, a monoclonal anti-integrin antibody used for the treatment of MS, is perhaps the most prominent of these immunomodulatory agents found to lead to an increased risk of developing PML [27]. However, other immunomodulatory medications used for the treatment of rheumatological, neurological, or oncological diseases, especially monoclonal antibodies like rituximab, efalizumab, and brentuximab, have been reported to be associated with PML [12, 28]. Patients undergoing bone marrow or solid organ transplant have also been described to develop PML. These patients are often immunocompromised due to

the disease leading to transplant (e.g., kidney or liver failure, leukemia) and are furthermore often on multiple immunosuppressive agents. The exact rate of PML in these patients is difficult to assess. One multicenter study reported a rate of 1 in 1,000 patients undergoing lung or heart transplant [29]. It is challenging to get an accurate assessment of the actual risk associated with each of these underlying diseases or predisposing medications as PML is not a reportable disease, and our knowledge about the incidence and prevalence of PML is limited.

4.2 Diagnosis

An accurate diagnosis of PML can be challenging, especially in patients with other underlying neurological diseases like MS, which like PML is a multifocal demyelinating disease. In the early years of understanding the disease, the diagnosis of PML was usually based on brain biopsy showing typical histological findings (demyelination, multinuclear bizarre astrocytes, oligodendroglial nuclear inclusions; see below). Since JCV was identified as the virus causing PML, laboratory methods have been established that together with clinical and radiological findings can help establish the diagnosis of PML without the need for an invasive brain biopsy. A recent consensus statement from the American Academy of Neurology (AAN) Neuroinfectious Disease Section recommends to base the diagnosis of PML on a triad of compatible clinical features, compatible imaging findings, and a presence of JCV in the CSF by PCR. In cases where JCV can be detected in the CSF but the clinical or imaging findings are not typical, the AAN assigns a diagnosis of probable PML. If only clinical and imaging factors are present but the JCV in the CSF is non-detectable or if the CSF is positive but both clinical and MRI findings are atypical, a diagnosis of possible PML is suggested.

The typical clinical findings seen in PML are discussed in the next section of this chapter. Imaging used for the diagnosis of PML is mainly magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the brain. A recent study evaluating the MRIs of 22 patients with natalizumab-associated PML identified typical PML lesions as large (>3 cm), subcortical, T2 or fluid-attenuated inversion recovery (FLAIR) hyperintense, T1 hypointense, and diffusion hyperintense lesions, with a sharp border toward the gray matter and an ill-defined border toward the white matter on T2-weighted images [30]. An example of these typical MRI findings can be seen in Fig. 4. While PML lesions in HIV-infected individuals are usually not contrast enhancing, 41 % of the natalizumab-associated PML cases in this study were found to have contrast enhancement on the first scan at clinical presentation. However, these patients all had clinically diagnosed immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS). This complication is described in more detail in Sect. 5.1 of this chapter. Magnetic resonance spectroscopy of the brain has been suggested by some to add information, but most studies to date have not found this technique helpful [31, 32]. Positron emission tomography can in some cases help to differentiate between lymphoma and PML but is also not commonly used in the diagnosis of PML [32].

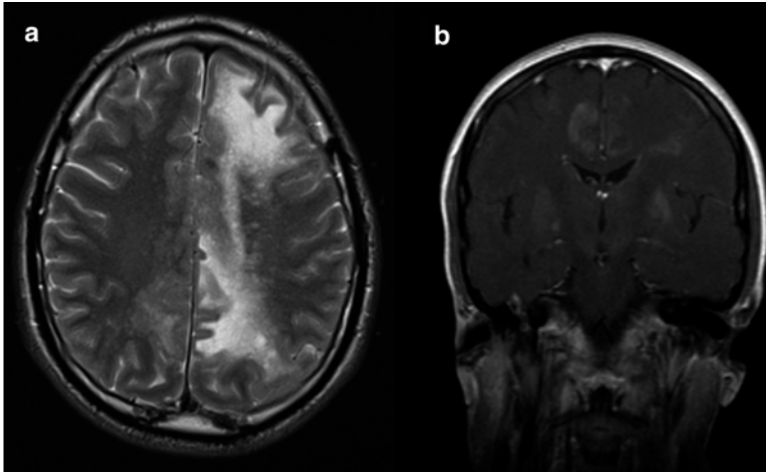


Fig. 4 MRI findings in PML. Panel (**a**) shows an axial T2-weighted image with large multifocal hyperintense lesions with an ill-defined border toward the white matter. Panel (**b**) shows a coronal T1-weighted post-contrast image which demonstrates faint, patchy contrast enhancement in multifocal PML lesions in a patient with IRIS

4.3 Clinical Manifestations

Symptoms in this multifocal disease can be varied, depending on the location of the lesions and the extent of demyelination. As in other brain diseases, patients can present with hemiparesis, ataxia, or visual changes. In contrast to other multifocal demyelinating CNS diseases like MS, optic neuritis and spinal cord involvement are not typically seen [33]. However, there are some rare reports of PML lesions in the spinal cord either by imaging or by histology at autopsy. Unlike MS but similar to acute disseminated encephalomyelitis (ADEM), another demyelinating syndrome more commonly seen in children, changes in alertness, behavior, and cognition are common in PML. In fact, about 50 % of patients with PML exhibit mental status changes at diagnosis [34]. Seizures are also frequently seen in PML and can be the initial presenting feature. About 20 % of patients in multiple different case series describing PML associated with HIV, lymphoproliferative disease, or immunomodulatory medications develop seizures, typically within the first few months, if not at presentation [34, 35]. This is somewhat surprising, since seizures are generally thought to arise from the cortical gray matter but PML patients with seizures are often found to have lesions immediately adjacent to the cortex.

4.4 Histopathology

While the development of JCV PCR detection in the CSF has replaced brain biopsy as the most important diagnostic tool in PML care, evaluation of brain tissue is still

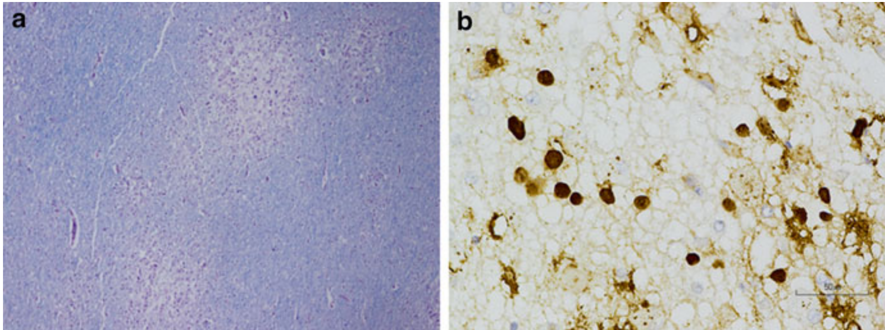


Fig. 5 Histopathology in PML. Panel (**a**) shows multifocal demyelination of the brain (hematoxylin-eosin staining). Panel (**b**) shows evidence of JCV detected by immunohistochemistry

done in cases of diagnostic uncertainty, especially when recurrence of lymphoma is a differential consideration or in cases of IRIS. Analysis of brain tissue can also increase our pathophysiological understanding of the disease. Biopsy or autopsy material of patients with PML is characterized by the combination of multifocal demyelination, bizarre astrocytes with hyperchromatic nuclei, and nuclear inclusions in oligodendrocytes in the white matter. When demyelination is extensive, necrosis can also be seen [36]. Lymphocyte infiltrates are not typically seen in PML lesions, unless there is presence of immune reconstitution (see the following section). Immunostaining can demonstrate presence of JCV capsid antigen, primarily in the white matter and typically in oligodendrocytes and to a lesser degree in astrocytes. Detection of JCV DNA in infected tissue with in situ hybridization or in situ PCR may be more sensitive and specific than immunohistochemistry [36]. In addition to causing the infection of oligodendrocytes characteristic for PML, JCV has also been reported by some to infect neurons, especially the granule cell neurons in the cerebellum. Histopathologically, granule cell neuropathy is characterized by hypochromatic granule cells with enlarged nuclei [37]. Significant gliosis is seen throughout the cerebellar cortex with relative sparing of the Purkinje cell and molecular layers [38]. Examples of typical demyelination and immunohistochemistry of autopsy brain tissue of a patient with PML are depicted in Fig. 5.

5 Treatment and Prognosis of PML

5.1 Inflammation and IRIS

In some patients with PML, rapidly worsening neurological symptoms, fever, and seizures develop. This clinical worsening is thought to be due to an improvement of immune function called immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS). IRIS occurs in 10–20 % of HIV patients that are started on antiretrovirals and in most patients with natalizumab (up to 90 %). HIV patients are at an increased risk

of developing IRIS if they are antiretroviral naïve and have a CD4 count of less than 50 cells/mm^3 [39]. IRIS typically develops about 3–12 weeks after antiretrovirals or plasma exchange to remove natalizumab are initiated, but in some cases, IRIS can develop up to 6 months after the initiation of antiretroviral therapy [42]. On MRI, there may be enhancement detected due to the local inflammation and breakdown of the blood-brain barrier. However, only in about 50 % of clinically or biopsy-diagnosed IRIS have contrast enhancement on MRI [39]. Edema or mass effect may also be seen on imaging. In the most severe cases, the inflammation and subsequent edema can lead to cerebral herniation and death. Analysis of brain biopsy samples of PML patients with and without IRIS shows an increase in cytotoxic CD8 T cells in patients with IRIS. This is associated with a better control of JCV dissemination but at the cost of oligodendrocyte cell death and demyelination [40, 41].

While there are no randomized trials assessing the best management of IRIS, most physicians use corticosteroids to dampen the immune response and avoid deleterious cerebral edema. A retrospective analysis of 54 patients with PML-IRIS in the setting of HIV infection showed that corticosteroids, especially if administered early and for a prolonged period of time, may improve survival [42].

5.2 Immune Responsiveness: T and B Cells

The immune system encompasses humoral, mainly B cell driven, as well as cellular, mainly T cell driven, immunity. The role of these components of the immune system in the development of and the recovery from PML is not fully understood, but there are many clues that can help answer this question. T-cell-mediated immune response appears to be a significant risk factor for developing PML as a deficit in CD4+ T cells is a prominent component of HIV infection. Rituximab, a drug that depletes B cells but not T cells, however, has also been found to be associated with PML risk, albeit at a lower rate than HIV infection [12]. A recent study showed that natalizumab-treated MS patients with PML have absent or aberrant JCV-specific T-cell responses compared with non-PML MS patients, indicating that changes in T-cell-mediated control of JCV replication may contribute to the risk of developing PML [21].

While brain biopsy or autopsy samples of PML without IRIS generally do not reveal many lymphocytes, in patients with IRIS, there are usually infiltrates with predominately cytotoxic CD8 T cells present. Plasma cells or macrophages can also be seen, but B cells or immunoglobulin deposits are uncommon, suggesting a mainly cellular immune response to PML at least in the case of IRIS [40, 41].

5.3 Treatment Targets: Failures and Future Directions

Several agents have been proposed as treatments for PML, but no specific anti-JCV therapy has been proven to have clinical efficacy to date. On the basis of in vitro experiments demonstrating inhibition of JCV replication as well as anecdotal case

reports, intravenous and intrathecal cytarabine were tested in a clinical trial but neither form of application was found to be beneficial [43, 44]. Although cidofovir is not effective against JCV in cell culture, case reports and retrospective case series implicated efficacy in both HIV-positive and HIV-negative patients with PML. However, subsequent studies demonstrated no survival benefit and no improvement in residual disability at 12 months [45, 46]. Since JCV infection of glial cells is at least partially mediated through the serotonergic receptor 5-hydroxytryptamine receptor 2A (5HT2A) and several 5HT2A receptor antagonists blocked JCV infection of glial cells in vivo [6], the serotonin receptor blocker mirtazapine has been used off-label in a number of cases. No rigorous placebo-controlled trials have been undertaken, but analysis of the existing case series does not show any statistically significant clinical benefit [47]. A screen of chemical compounds indicated that the antimalarial drug mefloquine can inhibit JCV replication in vitro [48]. However, despite anecdotal reports of the beneficial effect of mefloquine, a multicenter clinical trial could not demonstrate an effect of mefloquine on CSF JCV titers, clinical, or MRI findings [49]. None of these agents is therefore recommended for the therapy of PML.

Since no specific therapy for PML has been identified, the main approach to treatment currently consists of a reversal of the immune suppression interfering with the normal host response to JCV. Treatment strategies depend on the patient's underlying predisposing condition. In HIV-infected individuals, antiretroviral therapy (ART) is the most important aspect of PML management. In patients who are not on ART, this should be started immediately. For patients on ART but with detectable HIV viral load, antiretroviral resistance should be investigated, and their ART regimen should be optimized to accomplish viral suppression. More problematic are patients who develop PML despite successful viral suppression on ART. In these patients, intensification of their antiretroviral regimen with special attention to the CNS penetrance of their ART should be considered, though the effectiveness of this approach requires further study. While no study directly comparing the outcome of patients receiving ART and those not receiving ART in the setting of PML has been done, the comparison of the clinical outcomes of patients receiving ART and historic controls prior to the availability of ART shows a dramatic improvement in survival from 10 to 50 % when antiretrovirals were given [50]. In patients who develop PML due to treatment with immunomodulatory medications like natalizumab, removal of the immunomodulatory drug with plasmapheresis or immunoabsorption is generally recommended [34]. In patients with other underlying immune deficits (like idiopathic CD4+ lymphocytopenia or hematologic malignancy), however, restoring the immune system in a timely manner can be challenging or impossible. Immunomodulation with interferon alpha has been implicated after a retrospective analysis suggested improved mortality in HIV-infected patients with PML, though a subsequent study did not support a benefit of this treatment. Anecdotal reports suggested a benefit of interleukin-2 therapy, though no controlled trials have substantiated this claim. In summary, only initiation of antiretroviral therapy in HIV-infected individuals and discontinuation or removal of immunomodulatory or immunosuppressive medications can currently be recommended given the existing evidence.

As discussed above, immune reconstitution achieved by initiation of ART or removal of immunomodulatory medications is often associated with the development of IRIS. Corticosteroids are currently the mainstay of management of clinically significant IRIS, though further data are needed to establish the optimal dose and duration of this therapy.

5.4 PML Prognosis and JCV Persistence

The prognosis of PML is generally thought to be poor, though survival depends on the underlying condition. Before antiretrovirals were available, the mortality in HIV-infected individuals was about 90 %, whereas the outcome is significantly improved when viral load suppression is achieved with antiretrovirals [50]. A retrospective study assessing 87 patients with PML, mainly associated with HIV, showed no survival benefit for the 27 individuals who developed IRIS [39]. In patients who develop PML due to immunomodulatory therapy, mortality can be close to 90 % as in the reported cases of rituximab [12] or as low as 22 % as reported for natalizumab. This may be in part due to the fact that most PML cases associated with rituximab occur in patients with lymphoma and therefore worse general heath at baseline compared to MS patients who receive natalizumab. However, outside of survival, it is important to note that many natalizumab-treated patients who survive PML have significant residual disability [34].

Since we do not currently have specific treatments for PML and our main approach is to promote restoration of the immune system (while managing IRIS if it occurs), what happens with JCV in the brain is an interesting question. A small retrospective study analyzed serial CSF samples of a cohort with natalizumab-associated PML and found persistence of JCV in the CSF for 3 years or longer in more than 50 % of patients [51].

5.5 Epilogue

As summarized in this chapter, PML is a devastating demyelinating disease of the brain that typically occurs in individuals with an impaired immune system. The natural history of this disease and the role different risk factors play in the development and in the course of this disease are not sufficiently understood. As several new monoclonal antibodies and other immunomodulatory drugs are currently being developed and new medications have recently been implicated as risk factors for developing PML, the epidemiology of PML may be changing. Since PML is not a reportable disease, there are no publically available data to better study this disease. An additional challenge to the development of a unified approach to the diagnosis and management of PML is that patients with PML can be seen by physicians from different specialties like neurology, hematology-oncology, dermatology,

gastroenterology, transplant medicine, or rheumatology. To improve our understanding of the epidemiology and underlying pathophysiology of PML, a group of experts from different institutions (Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN; Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH; Massachusetts General Hospital, Cambridge, MS; Center for Disease Control and Surveillance, Atlanta, GA; Washington University, St. Louis, MO; and NINDS, NIH, Bethesda, MD) has formed a steering committee and initiated and implemented a web-based disease registry for PML (https://pmlregistry.ninds.nih.gov). Health-care providers from around the world can enter anonymized clinical, radiographic, laboratory, and demographic data as well as treatment strategies and outcomes on their patients with PML, regardless of the underlying etiology. The data in this registry is stored on a secure server and administered by a team at the NIH. Researchers can request access to the data by contacting the steering committee, and a summary of the epidemiological data will be posted annually on the registry website. Additionally, the website serves as an informational source for providers as well as for patients and their families.

References

1. Imperiale M, Major EO. Polyomaviruses. In: Knipe DM, Howley PM, editors. Fields virology. 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams and Wilkins; 2007. p. 2263–98.
2. Feltkamp MC, Kazem S, van der Meijden E, Lauber C, Gorbalenya AE. From Stockholm to Malawi: recent developments in studying human polyomaviruses. J Gen Virol. 2013;94(Pt 3): 482–96. PubMed PMID: 23255626.
3. Egli A, Infanti L, Dumoulin A, Buser A, Samaridis J, Stebler C, et al. Prevalence of polyomavirus BK and JC infection and replication in 400 healthy blood donors. J Infect Dis. 2009;199(6):837–46.
4. Ferenczy MW, Marshall LJ, Nelson CD, Atwood WJ, Nath A, Khalili K, et al. Molecular biology, epidemiology, and pathogenesis of progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy, the JC virus-induced demyelinating disease of the human brain. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2012;25(3):471–506. PubMed PMID: 22763635. Pubmed Central PMCID: 3416490.
5. Maginnis MS, Stroh LJ, Gee GV, O'Hara BA, Derdowski A, Stehle T, et al. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy-associated mutations in the JC polyomavirus capsid disrupt lactoseries tetrasaccharide c binding. MBio. 2013;4(3):e00247–13. PubMed PMID: 23760462. Pubmed Central PMCID: 3685208.
6. Elphick GF, Querbes W, Jordan JA, Gee GV, Eash S, Manley K, et al. The human polyomavirus, JCV, uses serotonin receptors to infect cells. Science. 2004;306(5700):1380–3. PubMed PMID: 15550673.
7. Major EO, Elder G, Houff SA. Glial cells of the human developing brain and B cells of the immune system share a common DNA binding factor for recognition of the regulatory sequences of the human polyomavirus JCV. J Neurosci Res. 1990;27(4):461–71.
8. Monaco MC, Gravell M, Tornatore CS, Major EO. JC virus infection of hematopoietic progenitor cells, primary B lymphocytes, and tonsillar stromal cells: implications for viral latency. J Virol. 1996;70(10):7004–12.
9. Monaco MC, Sabath BF, Durham LC, Major EO. JC virus multiplication in human hematopoietic progenitor cells requires the NF-1 class D transcription factor. J Virol. 2001;75(20):9687–95. PubMed PMID: 11559801. Pubmed Central PMCID: 114540.
10. Tan CS, Dezube BJ, Bhargava P, Autissier P, Wuthrich C, Miller J, et al. Detection of JC virus DNA and proteins in the bone marrow of HIV-positive and HIV-negative patients: implications

for viral latency and neurotropic transformation. J Infect Dis. 2009;199(6):881–8. PubMed PMID: 19434914. Pubmed Central PMCID: 2893283.

11. Ryschkewitsch CF, Jensen PN, Major EO. Multiplex qPCR assay for ultra sensitive detection of JCV DNA with simultaneous identification of genotypes that discriminates non-virulent from virulent variants. J Clin Virol. 2013;57(3):243–8. PubMed PMID: 23619054. Pubmed Central PMCID: 3698945.
12. Carson KR, Focosi D, Major EO, Petrini M, Richey EA, West DP, et al. Monoclonal antibody-associated progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy in patients treated with rituximab, natalizumab, and efalizumab: a Review from the Research on Adverse Drug Events and Reports (RADAR) Project. Lancet Oncol. 2009;10:816–24.
13. Major EO. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in patients on immunomodulatory therapies. Annu Rev Med. 2010;61:35–47. PubMed PMID: 19719397.
14. Tan CS, Ellis LC, Wuthrich C, Ngo L, Broge Jr TA, Saint-Aubyn J, et al. JC virus latency in the brain and extraneural organs of patients with and without progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. J Virol. 2010;84(18):9200–9. PubMed PMID: 20610709. Pubmed Central PMCID: 2937633.
15. Major EO, Douek DC. Risk factors for rare diseases can be risky to define: PML and natalizumab. Neurology. 2013;81(10):858–9. PubMed PMID: 23925759.
16. Ryschkewitsch CF, Jensen PN, Monaco MC, Major EO. JC virus persistence following progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in multiple sclerosis patients treated with natalizumab. Ann Neurol. 2010;68(3):384–91. PubMed PMID: 20818792. Pubmed Central PMCID: 3739486.
17. Hamilton RS, Gravell M, Major EO. Comparison of antibody titers determined by hemagglutination inhibition and enzyme immunoassay for JC virus and BK virus. J Clin Microbiol. 2000;38:105–9.
18. Gorelik L, Lerner M, Bixler S, Crossman M, Schlain B, Simon K, et al. Anti-JC virus antibodies: implications for PML risk stratification. Ann Neurol. 2010;68(3):295–303. PubMed PMID: 20737510.
19. Berger JR, Houff SA, Gurwell J, Vega N, Miller CS, Danaher RJ. JC virus antibody status underestimates infection rates. Ann Neurol. 2013;74(1):84–90. PubMed PMID: 23526716. Pubmed Central PMCID: 3737275.
20. Major EO, Frohman E, Douek D. JC viremia in natalizumab treated patients with multiple sclerosis. New Engl J Med. 2013;368:2240–1.
21. Perkins MR, Ryschkewitsch C, Liebner JC, Monaco MC, Himelfarb D, Ireland S, et al. Changes in JC virus-specific T cell responses during natalizumab treatment and in natalizumab-associated progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. PLoS Pathog. 2012;8(11):e1003014. PubMed PMID: 23144619. Pubmed Central PMCID: 3493478.
22. Kean JM, Rao S, Wang M, Garcea RL. Seroepidemiology of human polyomaviruses. PLoS Pathog. 2009;5(3):e1000363. PubMed PMID: 19325891. Pubmed Central PMCID: 2655709.
23. Gheuens S, Pierone G, Peeters P, Koralnik IJ. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in individuals with minimal or occult immunosuppression. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2010;81(3):247–54. PubMed PMID: 19828476. Pubmed Central PMCID: 2889486.
24. Astrom K-E, Mancall Jr SL, EPR. Progressive multifocal leuko-encephalopathy a hitherto unrecognized complication of chronic lymphatic leukemia and Hodgkin's disease. Brain. 1958;81(1):93–111.
25. Berger JR, Pall L, Lanska D, Whiteman M. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in patients with HIV infection. J Neurovirol. 1998;4:59–68.
26. Sacktor N. The epidemiology of human immunodeficiency virus-associated neurological disease in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. J Neurovirol. 2002;8 Suppl 2:115–21. PubMed PMID: 12491162.
27. Langer-Gould A, Green AJ, Bollen AW, Pelletier D. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in a patient treated with natalizumab. N Engl J Med. 2005;353:375–81.

28. von Geldern G, Calabresi PA, Newsome SD. PML-IRIS in a patient treated with Brentuximab. Neurology. 2012;79:2075–7.
29. Mateen FJ, Muralidharan R, Carone M, van de Beek D, Harrison DM, Aksamit AJ, et al. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in transplant recipients. Ann Neurol. 2011; 70(2):305–22. PubMed PMID: 21823157.
30. Yousry TA, Pelletier D, Cadavid D, Gass A, Richert ND, Radue EW, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging pattern in natalizumab-associated progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. Ann Neurol. 2012;72(5):779–87. PubMed PMID: 23280794.
31. Berghoff M, Dassinger B, Iwinska-Zelder J, Giraldo M, Bilgin S, Kaps M, et al. A case of natalizumab-associated progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy-role for advanced MRI? Clin Neuroradiol. Accessed on 27, 2013. PubMed PMID: 23532437.
32. Westwood TD, Hogan C, Julyan PJ, Coutts G, Bonington S, Carrington B, et al. Utility of FDG-PETCT and magnetic resonance spectroscopy in differentiating between cerebral lymphoma and non-malignant CNS lesions in HIV-infected patients. Eur J Radiol. 2013;82(8):e374–9. PubMed PMID: 23578921.
33. Boster A, Hreha S, Berger JR, Bao F, Penmesta F, Tselis A, Endress C, Zak I, Perumal J, Caon C, Vazquez J, Tyler KL, Racke MK, Millis S, Khan O. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy and relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis. Arch Neurol. 2009;66(5):593–9.
34. DA Clifford DB, Simpson DM, Arendt G, Giovannoni G, Nath A. Natalizumab-associated progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in patients with multiple sclerosis: lessons from 28 cases. Lancet Neurol. 2011;9(4):438–46.
35. Lima MA, Drislane FW, Koralnik IJ. Seizures and their outcome in progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. Neurology. 2006;66(2):262–4. PubMed PMID: 16434670.
36. Aksamit AJ, Gendelman HE, Orenstein JM, Pezeshkpour GH. AIDS-associated progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML): comparison to non-AIDS PML with in situ hybridization and immunohistochemistry. Neurology. 1990;40(7):1073–8.
37. Tan CS, Koralnik IJ. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy and other disorders caused by JC virus: clinical features and pathogenesis. Lancet Neurol. 2010;9(4):425–37.
38. Keith J, Bilbao J, Baskind R. JC virus granular neuronopathy and rhombencephalic progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy: case report and review of the literature. Neuropathology. 2012;32(3):280–4. PubMed PMID: 21981108.
39. Harrison DM, Newsome SD, Skolasky RL, McArthur JC, Nath A. Immune reconstitution is not a prognostic factor in progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. J Neuroimmunol. 2011;238(1–2):81–6. PubMed PMID: 21840066.
40. Martin-Blondel G, Bauer J, Cuvinciuc V, Uro-Coste E, Debard A, Massip P, et al. In situ evidence of JC virus control by CD8+ T cells in PML-IRIS during HIV infection. Neurology. 2013;81(11):964–70.
41. Metz I, Radue EW, Oterino A, Kumpfel T, Wiendl H, Schippling S, et al. Pathology of immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome in multiple sclerosis with natalizumab-associated progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. Acta Neuropathol. 2012;123(2):235–45. PubMed PMID: 22057786. Pubmed Central PMCID: 3259335.
42. Tan K, Roda R, Ostrow L, McArthur J, Nath A. PML-IRIS in patients with HIV infection—clinical manifestations and treatment with steroids. Neurology. 2009;72:1458–64.
43. Hall CD, Dafni U, Simpson D, Clifford D, Wetherill PE, Cohen B, McArthur J, Hollander H, Yainnoutsos C, Major E, Millar L, Timpone J, and the AIDS Clinical Trials Group 243 Team. Failure of cytarabine in progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy associated with human immunodeficiency virus infection. N Engl J Med. 1998;338:1345–51.
44. De Luca A, Giancola ML, Cingolani A, Ammassari A, Gillini L, Murri R, Antinori A. Clinical and virological monitoring during treatment with intrathecal cytarabine in patients with AIDS-associated progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. Clin Infect Dis. 1999;28:624–8.
45. De Luca A, Ammassari A, Pezzotti P, Cinque P, Gasnault J, Berenguer J, et al. Cidofovir in addition to antiretroviral treatment is not effective for AIDS-associated progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy: a multicohort analysis. AIDS. 2008;22(14):1759–67. PubMed PMID: 18753934.

46. Marra CM, Rajicic N, Barker DE, Cohen BA, Clifford D, Donovan Post MJ, Ruiz A, Bowen BC, Huang M, Queen-Baker J, Andersen J, Kelly S, Shriver S, and the Adult AIDS Clinical Trials Group 363 Team. A pilot study of cidofovir for progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in AIDS. AIDS. 2002;16:1791–7.
47. Marzocchetti A, Tompkins T, Clifford DB, Gandhi RT, Kesari S, Berger JR, et al. Determinants of survival in progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. Neurology. 2009;73(19):1551–8. PubMed PMID: 19901246. Pubmed Central PMCID: 2777072.
48. Brickelmaier M, Lugovskoy A, Kartikeyan R, Reviriego-Mendoza MM, Allaire N, Simon K, et al. Identification and characterization of mefloquine efficacy against JC virus in vitro. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53(5):1840–9. PubMed PMID: 19258267. Pubmed Central PMCID: 2681498.
49. Clifford DB, Nath A, Cinque P, Brew BJ, Zivadinov R, Gorelik L, et al. A study of mefloquine treatment for progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy: results and exploration of predictors of PML outcomes. J Neurovirol. 2013;19(4):351–8. PubMed PMID: 23733308.
50. Clifford DB, Yiannoutsos C, Glicksman M, Simpson DM, Singer EJ, Piliero PJ, et al. HAART improves prognosis in HIV-associated progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. Neurology. 1999;52:623–5.
51. Ryschkewitsch CFJP, Monaco MC, Major EO. JC virus persistence following progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in multiple sclerosis patients treated with natalizumab. Ann Neurol. 2010;68:384–91.

Role of Retrovirus-Induced Transactivator Proteins in Neuroinflammatory Disease

Gregory Antell, Michael R. Nonnemacher, Vanessa Pirrone, and Brian Wigdahl

Abstract Human immunodeficiency virus type I (HIV-1) and human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 (HTLV-1) lead to acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and adult T-cell leukemia, respectively, and these viruses have also been identified as the etiologic agents of HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders (HAND) and HTLV-1-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP). Pathogenic processes associated with these diseases are due to HIV-1 and HTLV-1 infecting not only cells of the host immune system but also cells of the central nervous system (CNS). For each of these viruses (HIV-1 and HTLV-1), the major viral regulatory proteins, Tat and Tax, respectively, have been shown to be implicated as extracellular neurotoxic proteins. This chapter will provide an overview of the structure and function of Tat and Tax and describe their role in viral replication focusing on their interaction with their viral promoters. Information will then be presented that describes known modifications of these important regulatory and neurotoxic proteins and the current understanding with respect to how these proteins are secreted into the extracellular environment. The specific roles that Tat and Tax play as extracellular proteins especially their role in neuropathogenesis are discussed with a focus on comparing their functional similarities and differences. Finally, the review will discuss the immune response in the CNS with respect to these two essential viral transactivator proteins.

Keywords HIV-1 • HTLV-1 • Tat • Tax • Neuropathogenesis • HAND • HAM/TSP

G. Antell • M.R. Nonnemacher • V. Pirrone • B. Wigdahl, Ph.D. (✉)
Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Drexel University College of Medicine, 245 N. 15th Street, Philadelphia, PA 19102, USA

Center for Molecular Virology and Translational Neuroscience, Institute for Molecular Medicine and Infectious Disease, Philadelphia, PA 19102, USA
e-mail: bwigdahl@drexelmed.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_17, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

1 Introduction

Human immunodeficiency virus type I (HIV-1) and human T-cell leukemia virus type I (HTLV-1) have both been shown to infect not only cells of the host immune system but also cells of the central nervous system (CNS) [1, 2]. As members of the retrovirus family, HIV-1 and HTLV-1 contain RNA genomes and hijack the host cell transcriptional machinery in order to synthesize viral proteins and replicate within human host cell targets. Infection with HIV-1 and HTLV-1 can lead to acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and adult T-cell leukemia, respectively, and these viruses have also been identified as the etiologic agents of HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders (HAND) and HTLV-1-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP). While HIV-1 and HTLV-1 CNS infection do not cause acutely fatal diseases, the resulting neurological problems persist as chronic conditions that cause a wide range of neurological abnormalities and remain relevant medical concerns [3–5]. With no successful vaccine existing for HIV-1 or HTLV-1 and antiretroviral drugs having a reduced efficacy on targets within the CNS, investigation into the causes and consequences of retroviral-induced neurodegeneration remains a prominent research focus [6–8].

1.1 HIV-1-Associated Neurological Disorders

Since the adoption of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), the symptomology of HIV-1 disease has been increasingly transformed from a devastating attack on the peripheral immune system to a chronic disease that continues to involve pathogenesis in the CNS [3, 5]. As a result, most AIDS-defining illnesses have seen a dramatic decrease in both severity and frequency, in addition to reduced viral loads and increased $CD4^+$ T-cell counts in HIV-1-infected individuals [9, 10]. In contrast to this trend, HAND have increased in prevalence although the most severe form of HAND, HIV-1-associated dementia (HAD), has become much less common [3, 11]. The other manifestations of HAND consist of asymptomatic neurocognitive impairment and HIV-associated mild neurocognitive disorder [12]. These conditions are distinguished on the basis of the severity of cognitive dysfunction, with symptoms including memory loss, impaired coordination, and reduced adherence to medication regimens [13]. HAND are also often accompanied by HIV encephalitis (HIVE), a brain pathology caused by immune activation of microglia and macrophages in response to HIV-1 infection and associated with poor prognosis [14]. In addition to activating an antiviral immune response within the CNS, the production of HIV-1 proteins also leads to neurotoxicity through direct and indirect mechanisms. Of particular interest is the HIV-1 transactivator protein Tat, which in addition to driving viral transcription also functions as an extracellular neurotoxic protein, as discussed below [15].

1.2 HTLV-1-Associated Myelopathy/Tropical Spastic Paraparesis

HAM/TSP is a chronic and progressive inflammatory disease of the CNS [16]. The disease is primarily a demyelinating disease of the spinal cord caused by the overstimulation and dysfunction of the immune compartment [17]. Especially prominent in the neuropathogenesis of HAM/TSP is the cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL) response to the HTLV-1 transactivator protein, Tax, and increased expression of inflammatory cytokines and chemokines [18–21]. HAM/TSP does not present in all HTLV-1-infected patients, and the pathogenesis of the disease remains poorly understood [4]. A wide variety of factors likely contribute to whether an HTLV-1-infected individual will develop HAM/TSP including the mode of infection, viral strain, and human leukocyte antigen (HLA) subtype [22–27]. Clinically, HAM/TSP may result in a variety of symptoms including urinary incontinence, lower back pain, sexual dysfunction, and weakness of the lower limbs (paraparesis), for which it is named [28, 29]. These symptoms are consistent with the majority of neuronal damage being found in the corticospinal tract [30]. The disease typically progresses through two stages, an initial inflammatory disorder and a chronic long-term degenerative stage [31]. The acute phase is characterized by infiltrating lymphocytes and the release of proinflammatory cytokines, while chronic disease is marked by the accumulation of $CD8^+$ T cells in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and peripheral blood and at lesions within the spinal cord [32].

1.3 Significance of HIV-1 Tat and HTLV-1 Tax in Neurodegenerative Disease

The molecular and cellular mechanisms responsible for neurodegenerative disease during HIV-1 and HTLV-1 infections are complex and multifaceted [17]. In particular, the viral transactivator proteins Tat and Tax play significant roles due to their requirement in viral replication and known toxic properties to a wide variety of CNS cells [33–36]. Notably, Tat can be continually produced by HIV-1-infected cells located in the CNS despite the widespread use of HAART, demonstrating that neurologic vulnerability to this protein persists in the HAART era [15]. It has also been demonstrated that HIV-1 Tat can contribute to HAND by modifying amyloid precursor protein processing and increasing amyloid beta production [37]. Because Tat and Tax are essential for viral replication, in addition to demonstrating neurotoxic properties, both proteins remain central to the development of effective HIV-1 and HTLV-1 therapies. This review will focus on the multidimensional roles and requirements of Tat and Tax in pathogenesis in the CNS, with a particular focus on their functional similarities and differences.

2 Structure of HIV-1 Tat and HTLV-1 Tax Proteins

2.1 *Tat Structure and Functional Domains*

HIV-1 Tat is a predominantly nuclear, multifunctional protein that is essential for productive viral replication and processive transcription from the HIV-1 promoter, termed the long terminal repeat (LTR). The protein typically consists of 101 amino acids encoded by two exons, the first encoding residues 1–72 and the second encoding residues 73–101 [38, 39]. Notably, while 86-amino-acid laboratory strains of Tat (LAI, HXB2, NL4-3) are most commonly used for in vitro experimentation, this form represents a truncated protein relative to the majority of clinical isolates that maintain a 101-amino-acid full-length structure [40, 41].

Tat consists of six major functional domains (Fig. 1) as determined by mutational analysis, with the first five being encoded by exon 1 [42]. Located at the N-terminus of the protein are the acidic domain (residues 1–21), the cysteine-rich domain (residues 22–37), and the core domain (residues 38–48). Together, these three domains function as the minimal region of Tat required for transactivation of the LTR. While the acidic domain is functionally robust with respect to single-residue mutations, changes in positions 25–40 are generally deleterious to Tat-mediated transactivation, particularly the conserved cysteine residues at positions 22, 25, 27, and 37 [15, 43]. Of importance to posttranslational modifications of Tat in this region is the lysine residue at position 28, which functions in the stabilization of the Tat–cyclinT1–TAR

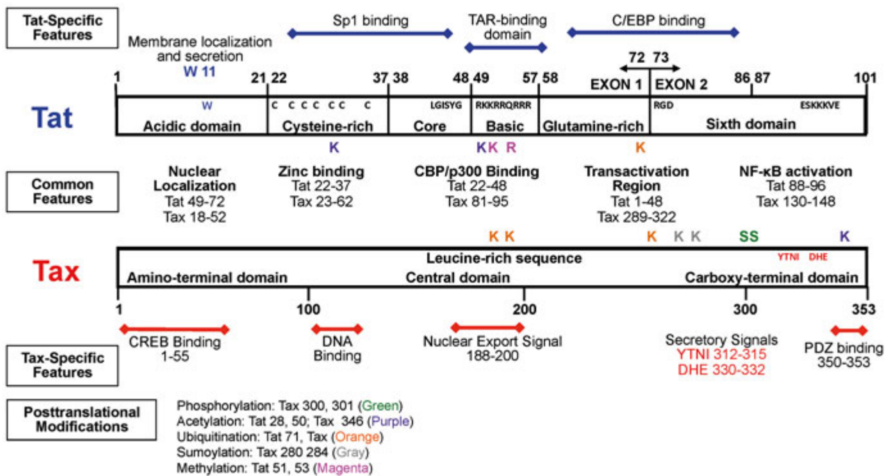


Fig. 1 Functional comparison of HIV-1 Tat and HTLV-1 Tax protein primary structures. The major functional and protein–protein interaction domains of HIV-1 Tat (*blue*) and HTLV-1 Tax (*red*) are highlighted, with the common features of the two proteins displayed in the *middle*. Important amino acid residues and sequences are designated, as well as sites of posttranslational modifications

(transactivation response element) complex in the early stages of transactivation [44]. Furthermore, position 31 of Tat mediates neurotoxicity, as the cysteine residue at this position is involved in binding of neuronal *N*-methyl-D-ASPARTATE (NMDA) glutamate receptors [45]. Importantly, the cysteine region has been shown to play a role in synaptodendritic injury [46]. The fourth domain (residues 49–57) contains the well-conserved arginine-rich motif $_{49}$RKKRRQRRR$_{57}$ that functions as the TAR-binding domain [47, 48]. This domain has also been referred to as the basic domain and has been shown to be required for the uptake of extracellular Tat (residues 48–60) as well as nuclear localization [38, 49]. The fifth domain (residues 58–72) is a glutamine-rich region that demonstrates the greatest amount of genetic variability and functions in both nuclear localization and Tat-mediated apoptosis of T cells [43].

The sixth domain (residues 73–101) of Tat has been shown to be the only domain encoded by the second exon and has gained attention for a variety of functions [50]. Most relevant to this review is the enhancement of HIV-1 replication in cells of the monocyte–macrophage lineage [51]. Additionally, the sixth domain contains an RGD motif and a highly conserved ESKKKVE motif, which are thought to function in integrin binding and optimal in vivo replication, respectively [52, 53]. Tat exon II also contains conserved glutamic acid and lysine residues that are believed to function in the activation of nuclear factor-κB (NF-κB) in T cells [54]. Finally, it has been proposed that Tat exon II plays a role in the dysregulation of the blood–brain barrier (BBB) resulting in increased levels of inflammatory cytokines and toxic viral proteins in the CNS [41].

Although the sequence of Tat is relatively well conserved, as an HIV-1 protein it still has demonstrated a significant amount of genetic variation that impacts its function and role in HIV-1 neuropathogenesis [43]. Tat is also a flexible and inherently disordered protein, allowing it to spatially adapt to a wide variety of binding partners [55]. The crystal structure of Tat complexed with positive transcription elongation factor b (P-TEFb) demonstrates extensive surface contact at the protein interface made possible by the plasticity of Tat and induced conformational changes to P-TEFb [56]. Structural changes as a result of Tat contact are likely present in other Tat-binding partners as well, possibly providing an assortment of potential drug targets that can mitigate Tat-induced pathogenesis.

2.2 Tax Structure and Functional Domains

Tax is an HTLV-1 protein consisting of 353 amino acids that has been shown to function predominantly as a transactivator protein but also interfaces with a variety of cellular proteins, pathways, and processes [57, 58]. In parallel with functional analyses of Tat, Tax has also been studied via mutational analysis demonstrating that most mutations do not significantly alter Tax function [59]. The major functional regions of HTLV-1 Tax (Fig. 1) are more loosely annotated than Tat and are generally referred to as the amino-terminal, central, and carboxy-terminal domains. To date, no crystal structure of HTLV-1 Tax or its complexes has been reported.

The amino-terminus of Tax is cysteine- and histidine-rich, resulting in the formation of overlapping zinc-finger motifs essential for transactivation of the HTLV-1 LTR [60]. Also functioning in transactivation in this region are domains facilitating the interaction with the transcription factor cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) response element-binding protein (CREB), the coactivators CREB-binding protein (CBP), and p300 and for contact with DNA [61–66]. The amino-terminal domain of Tax has largely been shown to be responsible for cellular localization as well and has been shown to contain a unique nuclear localization signal (NLS) (residues 18–52) required for Tax to locate to the nucleus [67, 68]. Studies have also shown the central domain of Tax to contain a leucine-rich sequence region that can also function as the nuclear export signal (NES) (residues 188–202), allowing the protein to travel between the nucleus and cytoplasm [69]. Importantly, the Tax NES is concealed in the context of the full-length protein, suggesting a mechanism by which posttranslational modifications or interaction with other proteins may be required for nuclear export [69, 70]. The carboxy-terminus of Tax has been shown to host additional domains required for transcriptional activation (residues 289–322) [71]. This includes domains responsible for the interaction with CBP and p300/CBP-associated factor (p/CAF) [61, 72]. The secretory signals of Tax are also present in the carboxy-terminal domain, and these signals are critical to the demonstrated functional role of Tax as an extracellular and neurotoxic protein [17, 73]. Finally, proper in vivo function of Tax has been shown to be dependent upon dimerization of the protein for processes such as the assembly of the transcriptional machinery at the HTLV-1 LTR and nuclear transport [74, 75]. Dimer formation has been shown to be largely dependent upon the zinc-binding domain in the amino-terminus in addition to three distinct sequences located throughout the central domain [76].

3 Viral Replication and Transactivation of the HIV-1 and HTLV-1 Promoters

Chronic retroviral infection and disease is dependent on continuous or intermittent viral replication and/or production of viral proteins that can induce pathologic consequences. In the case of HTLV-1, some of the pathologic consequences may involve an oncogenic state induced by the activity of Tax and other proteins produced during the course of viral replication in the T-cell population. Accordingly, the mechanisms of viral promoter transactivation remain important in the understanding of retroviral pathogenesis. Both Tat and Tax are categorized as transactivator proteins and facilitate the binding of cellular transcription factors to their respective LTRs in order to fuel processive and productive viral replication (Fig. 2). Productive HIV-1 and HTLV-1 infection can also occur beyond the primary target of $CD4^+$ T cells. The susceptible cell populations extend to $CD34^+$ bone marrow progenitor cells, dendritic cells (DCs), astrocytes, microglia, and cells of the monocyte–macrophage lineage [32, 77].

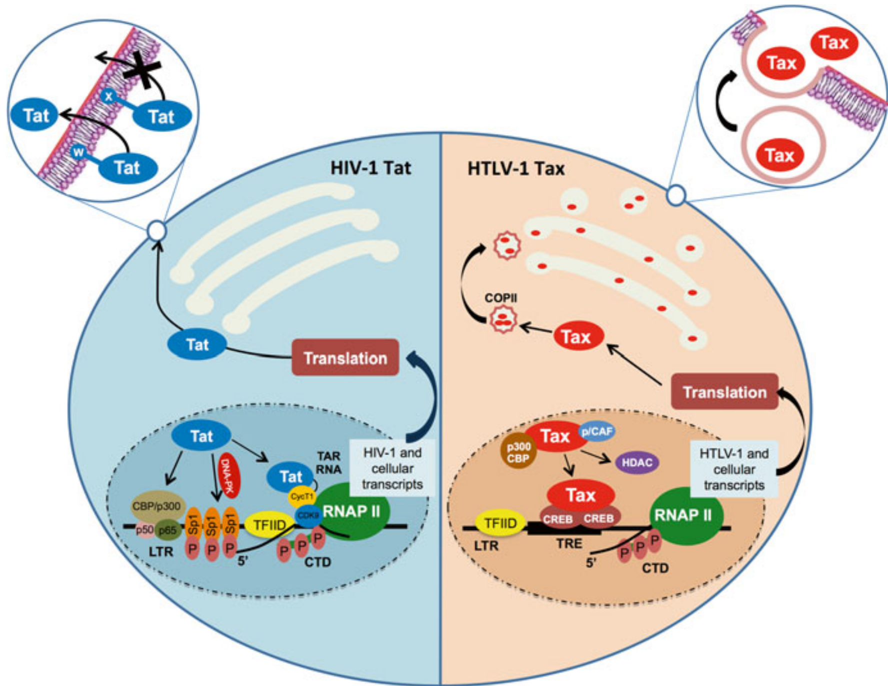


Fig. 2 HIV-1 Tat- and HTLV-1 Tax-mediated transcription and secretory pathways. Tat mediates processive transcription by binding to the "UCU" bulge of the nascent RNA TAR element and recruiting multiple transcription factors and cofactors. Tat associates with P-TEFb, a protein complex consisting of cyclinT1 and CDK9 responsible for the hyperphosphorylation of the carboxy-terminal domain tail of RNA Pol II (RNAP). Tat also mediates recruitment of coactivators CBP/p300 and the kinase DNA-PK, which interface with cellular transcription factors. Tat secretion occurs via an unconventional mechanism that utilizes neither endosomes nor the ER/Golgi apparatus. Critical to Tat secretion is the tryptophan (W) at position 11, which functions in cellular membrane insertion and results in reduced secretion when mutated (X). Tax-mediated transcription occurs via Tax binding to the TRE-1 domain of the LTR and the recruitment of CREB to the CRE-like element of TRE-1. Tax also recruits the chromatin-remodeling factors p300/CBP, P/CAF, and histone deacetylase (HDAC), which are essential for transcriptional regulation. Tax has been demonstrated to localize within the ER and Golgi apparatus. Tax secretion is controlled by two putative signaling sequences in the carboxy-terminal domain (CTD), DHE and YTNI, the first of which mediates concentration of Tax into COPII vesicles for transport from the ER to the Golgi. *TFIID* transcription factor IID

3.1 Tat-Mediated Transactivation of the HIV-1 LTR

HIV-1 transcription is controlled principally by Tat and consists of an early, Tat-independent phase and a late, Tat-dependent phase [78, 79]. Initially, viral transcription produces predominantly short, aborted RNA transcripts of 30–50 nucleotides owing to the inefficiency of RNA polymerase II (RNA Pol II) [80]. However, in spite of the overall inefficient elongation, longer transcripts are also produced at low abundance and encode for early regulatory proteins such as Tat [81]. As the concentration

of intracellular Tat rises beyond threshold levels, it fuels a positive feedback mechanism in which the protein has been shown to be capable of effectively transactivating the HIV-1 LTR and producing full-length transcripts. Therefore, stochastic fluctuations in Tat gene expression can be thought of as a molecular switch that works on the level of elongation and is responsible for full-length HIV-1 mRNA transcripts [82, 83].

Tat functions by binding to the "UCU" bulge of the HIV-1 TAR element, a cis-acting RNA enhancer and stem–loop structure located at the 5′ end of all viral transcripts [33, 47, 84–86]. The Tat–TAR interaction is critically important with respect to tethering Tat and allowing for recruitment of the host transcriptional machinery. However, it is important to note that in astrocytes Tat has been shown to be capable of transactivating the LTR in the absence of the TAR region [87]. Specifically, Tat associates with P-TEFb, a protein kinase complex consisting of cyclinT1 and cyclin-dependent kinase 9 (CDK9) [88, 89]. A conformational change to P-TEFb as a result of Tat binding has been shown to be responsible for the activation of CDK9 and results in the hyperphosphorylation of the carboxy-terminal domain of RNA Pol II and the promotion of transcription elongation [56, 88–91]. Transcription from the HIV-1 LTR can be further regulated through interactions with host transcription factors that can enhance or repress this process as well as by genetic variation in the HIV-1 LTR [92–94].

3.2 Tax-Mediated Transactivation of the HTLV-1 LTR

Congruent with the role of Tat in HIV-1, Tax interfaces with the host transcriptional machinery and cellular transcription factors to promote viral gene expression and productive viral replication [35, 95]. Essential to transcriptional transactivation is the binding of Tax to the Tax-responsive element 1 (TRE-1), which has been shown to consist of three 21-base pair TREs located in the U3 region of the LTR [96, 97]. Each of the repeating 21-base pair elements is in turn composed of three domains, termed A, B, and C. The B domain has been shown to be important to transactivation because it contains a conserved core sequence (TGACGTCA) and flanking 5′ and 3′ G/C-rich sequences that closely resemble a cAMP response element (CRE) [98]. Tax recruits the transcription factors CREB and serum response factor to the CRE-like element of the HTLV-1 LTR, resulting in facilitated transcription [97, 99]. The association of Tax with homodimeric CREB results in the formation of a stabilizing ternary complex at the binding domains of TRE-1 [98].

Tax has been shown to independently recruit the chromatin-remodeling factors p300/CREB-binding protein (p300/CBP) and p300/CBP-associated factor (P/CAF) to the CREB/DNA complex [62]. These coactivators bind to two specific Tax regions located at the amino- and carboxy-termini of the protein, respectively, and are essential in transcription initiation [98]. While CREB is activated via the cAMP-dependent protein kinase A signaling pathway, Tax also regulates transcription by activating the NF-κB and ATF/CREB cellular signaling pathways, demonstrating that both the direct and indirect interaction of Tax with cellular transcription factors may influence transactivation of the viral LTR and regulation of cellular transcription

[100–102]. Recent studies have demonstrated that Tax reduces histone protein transcript levels in addition to mediating the downregulation of microRNAs (miRNAs) that function in chromatin remodeling [103]. Combined, these studies emphasize the sophisticated coordination of HTLV-1 Tax, miRNAs, and chromatin remodeling in the regulation of retroviral transcription and replication.

4 Posttranslational Modifications

Following translation, Tat and Tax are subjected to a variety of posttranslational modifications (PTMs) that may alter the tertiary structure and activity of the protein. The importance of these alterations in mediating viral replication highlights the importance of PTM-associated enzymes in the HIV-1 Tat and HTLV-1 Tax interactomes [104]. Such modifications have been demonstrated to be necessary for optimal transcriptional activity of both Tat and Tax and by extension are relevant to the persistence of neuroinflammation.

4.1 HIV-1 Tat Posttranslational Modifications

Acetylation and deacetylation of Tat is a reversible process performed by the acetyltransferase activities of p300 and P/CAF, important HIV-1 transcriptional coactivators, and the deacetylase activity of class III deacetylase sirtuin 1 (SIRT1) [105–107]. These modifications have been found to occur in the arginine-rich and cysteine-rich domains of Tat, specifically at lysine positions 28 and 50 [105, 108]. Importantly, mutations of lysine at these positions or inhibition of SIRT1 reduce transactivation ability and inhibit HIV-1 replication [107, 109]. Furthermore, inhibition of SIRT1 has also resulted in a reduction in Tat transactivation. The protein–protein interactions of Tat differ according to whether Tat is acetylated at lysine position 50 as well. As previously discussed, nonacetylated Tat binds with the cyclinT1 component of P-TEFb via the cysteine-rich domain, and this complex cooperatively binds to TAR RNA using the arginine-rich domain of Tat. However, once acetylated, Tat dissociates from TAR RNA and cyclinT1 and binds instead with RNA Pol II and P/CAF [105, 108, 110, 111]. Accordingly, the dynamic acetylation of Tat appears to be essential for Tat to function in both the early and late transactivation stages, and the manipulation of this process has been considered for the development of new therapeutic strategies [112, 113].

Ubiquitination and methylation have also been observed as important posttranslational modifications of HIV-1 Tat capable of altering transactivation. Of particular importance to the transactivation ability of Tat is lysine 71, a highly conserved residue that functions as the principal ubiquitination target site and may contribute to cyclinT1 binding in the early stages of HIV-1 transcription rather than proteasomal degradation [109]. Methylation of Tat proceeds through the catalytic activity of protein arginine methyltransferases (PRMTs) such as PRMT6 in the arginine-rich region, in addition

to lysine position 51 by methyltransferases Set7/9 (KMT7) [114–116]. Arginine methylation results in reduced transactivation, likely as a consequence of disrupted binding with P/CAF. The extent of methylation plays a role in determining whether Tat will be recycled or tagged for degradation, as the reversibility of this modification has been shown to depend on whether an arginine residue is mono- or di-methylated [104].

4.2 HTLV-1 Tax Posttranslational Modifications

Tax protein also undergoes various posttranslational modifications that can influence disease progression and protein functionality. The principal modifications observed include sumoylation, ubiquitination, acetylation, and phosphorylation [70]. Five lysine residues within the central domain of Tax, designated K4–K8, are targets for polyubiquitination. Similar to Tat, this modification does not trigger proteasomal degradation and is likely necessary for activation of the NF-κB pathway. Alternatively, lysine residues at positions 280 and 284 of Tax can be monoubiquitinated, leading to nuclear export [117]. These residues also function as polysumoylation sites, and polysumoylated Tax likely works in concert with ubiquitinated Tax to activate the NF-κB pathway [118, 119]. Acetylation of Tax occurs via p300 acetyltransferase activity at lysine position 346 within the C-terminal domain of Tax. This modification has also been demonstrated to promote activation of the NF-κB pathway [120]. Tax is also a phosphoprotein, with serine residues 300 and 301 within the transactivation domain being the primary phosphorylation targets [121, 122]. Phosphorylation of Tax at these positions is critical for Tax nuclear localization and transcriptional activity. Notably, Tax phosphorylation appears to be a prerequisite for Tax ubiquitination, polysumoylation, and acetylation [70].

5 Cellular Localization and Secretion

Tat and Tax are multifunctional proteins that can localize to multiple cell compartments. While their role as transactivating proteins requires localization to the cell nucleus, both proteins can also be found in the cytoplasm. Most important to neuroinflammation, Tat and Tax are also secreted into the extracellular environment where they interact with multiple CNS cell types and activate a variety of cellular and immune responses.

5.1 HIV-1 Tat Cellular Localization

The role of exogenous Tat is well established, and the protein can enter a variety of cell types present in the CNS [123, 124]. Both clathrin and caveolar pathways have been proposed for extracellular Tat uptake, consistent with the ability of Tat to bind

to the endocytic receptors CXCR4, heparan sulfate proteoglycans, and lipoprotein receptor-related protein—the primary receptor involved in internalization [125–130]. Importantly, the endocytic pathway utilized by Tat is likely cell-type dependent, as caveolae are absent in T cells [131].

It is well established that Tat is required for HIV-1 transcription and therefore is capable of reaching the nucleus. The arginine-rich basic domain of Tat is responsible for nuclear import as the mutation or deletion of this domain inhibits transport to the nucleus as well as HIV-1 transcription [49, 132, 133]. As previously reviewed, the majority of mechanistic studies of nuclear import have attached the Tat basic domain to β-galactosidase, glutathione S-transferase, or green fluorescent protein, demonstrating that the basic domain is not only necessary but also sufficient for nuclear import [55]. However, nuclear import studies utilizing the full-length Tat protein have yet to be performed, limiting the extent to which these results can be applied to the actions of full-length Tat. This shortcoming is critical, as binding partners of Tat, such as NF-κB-α inhibitor (IκBα) and human I-mfa domain-containing protein, can interfere with nuclear import by promoting nuclear export and cytoplasmic sequestration, respectively [134, 135].

5.2 HIV-1 Tat Secretion

Tat has been shown to be released by infected monocytes, glial cells, and astrocytes in addition to infected lymphocytes [136–139]. Overall, Tat secretion is a productive process, with approximately two-thirds of cellular Tat being exported over the life span of an HIV-1-infected T cell [140]. Secreted Tat is biologically active and capable of transcellular activation of the HIV-1 LTR in addition to its extensive effects as an extracellular protein [140, 141]. Additionally, release of Tat by infected cells occurs optimally in low-serum conditions, such as the brain environment [139]. The secretion of Tat occurs via an unconventional mechanism that utilizes neither endosomes nor the endoplasmic reticulum (ER)/Golgi apparatus. Tat, however, does bind tightly to plasma membrane-embedded PI[4,5]P_2 in the cell membrane. Most critical to this process is the tryptophan residue at Tat position 11, as it functions in membrane insertion. Tat mutants without this residue remain predominantly in the cytoplasm and are weakly secreted [140]. The exact mechanism by which Tat localizes to the cell membrane is unknown, but localization of Tat likely is dependent upon cell type [55, 140].

5.3 HTLV-1 Tax Cellular Localization

HTLV-1 Tax localization to the nucleus is well known because of its transactivation activity [35, 95]. However, Tax is also localized in the cytoplasm of infected cells and may shuttle between the nuclear and cytosolic compartments [142]. The shuttling of Tax between the nucleus and cytoplasm is predominantly controlled by the

nuclear localization signal (NLS) found in the amino-terminus of the protein and the leucine-rich nuclear export signal (NES) found at the carboxy-terminus, respectively [67, 69]. The balance between nuclear localization and export hinges on the masking of the NES by protein–protein interactions or posttranslational modifications to Tax, allowing the NLS to function as the dominant cellular localization signal [121, 143].

5.4 HTLV-1 Tax Secretion

Previously, Tax has been shown to associate with the ER and Golgi apparatus, with cytoplasmic transport progressing via secretory vesicles shuttled by kinesin motor proteins along microtubules [144]. In contrast to HIV-1 Tat, which lacks a formal secretory pathway, secretion of Tax is largely controlled by two putative secretory signals located in the carboxy-terminal domain of Tax, DHE and YTNI, that are responsible for the interaction of Tax with cellular secretory proteins [73]. Specifically, DHE functions as a DXE signal required for the concentration of Tax into coat protein complex II (COPII) vesicles, which are responsible for mediating transport of proteins from the ER to the Golgi [145]. Tax has also been demonstrated to interact with multiple other proteins associated with secretion [73, 146]. Among its other roles, secreted Tax interacts with calreticulin (CRT) and is proposed to play a role in the axonal degeneration associated with HAM/TSP [147].

6 Presence and Diversity of Tat and Tax in the CNS

HIV-1 Tat is pervasive in the brain and has been detected in patients with HIVE [126, 148–150]. The protein has also been linked to neurological impairment by the observation that Tat mRNA is detectable in patients with HIVE but absent in those without dementia [150]. Specifically, Tat has been observed in the cytoplasm of microglial cells and perivascular macrophages, which are likely HIV-1-infected cells. Importantly Tat is also found in the nuclei of neurons and oligodendrocytes, further demonstrating the ability of Tat to affect and enter additional cells of the CNS [126, 148]. Furthermore, sequence analysis of Tat has demonstrated compartmentalization in brain versus lymphoid tissue [151]. Brain-derived sequences demonstrate higher nonsynonymous/synonymous and transversion mutation rates in HAND patients and display phylogenetic clustering within clinical groups [152]. These observations are critical, as brain-derived Tat from HAD patients has a decreased ability to transactivate the LTR and may exert pathogenic effects as a result of Tat mutations [153]. However, a recent study has shown that despite the heterogeneity of Tat in the brain, the transactivation function is conserved in Tat relative to the non-CNS compartment [154]. Overall, genetic compartmentalization of HIV-1 Tat between CNS and lymphoid tissue likely reflects altered requirements for HIV-1 replication in cells of monocytic lineage and brain-specific immune surveillance.

Extracellular Tax may be found to accumulate in the peripheral blood and CSF of HAM/TSP patients as well [155]. Tax expression levels have been shown to be higher in CSF cells than in peripheral blood mononuclear cells among HTLV-1 patients overall, and HTLV-1 mRNA levels correlate with disease severity in HAM/TSP patients, suggesting a role for exogenous Tax in HAM/TSP pathogenesis [156, 157]. Multiple subgroups of Tax have been identified, with one group, taxA, found to have a higher incidence among HAM/TSP patients [158, 159]. However, these results have been disputed by other research, demonstrating the need for greater sampling in order to validate the ability to predict disease progression on the basis of Tax sequence [160].

7 Neuroinflammatory Effects of Tat and Tax on CNS Cellular Targets

Extracellular Tat and Tax proteins have been thought to play a large role in the pathogenesis of both HAND and HAM/TSP, as these proteins can cause both direct and indirect damage to cells of the CNS [15, 17]. The effects of Tat and Tax on cells of the CNS include altered gene transcription, direct neurotoxicity, induction of neuroinflammatory cytokine secretion, increased immune cell trafficking, and disruption of the BBB (Table 1).

7.1 Effects of Extracellular HIV-1 Tat

Tat has been shown to cause the loss of neurons both in vitro and in vivo, with the greatest neurotoxicity in the brain occurring in the striatum, dentate gyrus, and the CA3 region of the hippocampus [161–164]. This observation is consistent with the role of NMDA receptors in mediating Tat excitotoxicity in neurons, as these brain regions are rich in NMDA receptors [165]. Importantly, reduced toxicity of subtype C Tat has been attributed to a cysteine-to-serine mutation at position 31, although this position does not affect binding to NMDA receptors [45]. Accordingly, it has been proposed that the cysteine residue is required for NMDA activation, with other regions functioning in receptor binding [45]. Additionally, Tat-induced phosphorylation of the NMDA receptor and dopamine D1 receptor pathways has also been implicated in Tat neurotoxicity, with Tat upregulating proapoptotic signaling pathways mediated via D1/NMDA receptor interaction [166, 167]. Tat also causes excitotoxicity in neurons through the interaction with both NMDA receptors and glutamate receptors, with the latter being implicated in the process of neuronal death [17]. Studies using a Tat-transgenic mice model have shown that the constitutive expression of Tat in brain generates a latent excitatory state that may exacerbate the development of HAND [168]. In response to Tat, intracellular calcium levels in neurons dramatically rise as a result of release by inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate (IP3)

Table 1 Impact of transactivation proteins HIV-1 Tat and HTLV-1 Tax on resident cells of the CNS

CNS cell type	HIV-1 Tat	HTLV-1 Tax
Neurons	• Dopamine transmission and D1 receptors are implicated in Tat neurotoxicity [166] • NMDA receptor levels correlate with Tat-induced apoptosis [165] • Elevation of intracellular calcium, mitochondrial calcium uptake, and generation of reactive oxygen species in response to Tat [167, 170]	• Induction of TNF-α in cells exposed to Tax [36] • Axonal degeneration accompanies demyelination due to axonal oligodendrocyte damage [207, 213]
Astrocytes	• Dysregulation of glutamate homeostasis [180] • TAR-independent transactivation [87] • Induction of nitric oxide synthase [182] • Production of CCL2/MCP-1 for monocyte recruitment [184]	• Dysregulation of glutamate uptake and catabolism [203] • Tax RNA detected in astrocytes [200] • Induction of proinflammatory cytokines IL-1α, IL-1β, TNF-α, TNF-β, and IL-6 in astrogliomas [212] • Sensitization of astrocytomas to apoptosis [212]
Microglial cells	• Increased secretion of chemokines including CCL2 [173] • Induces increase in intracellular calcium [177] • Induces a migratory phenotype via CCL2/MCP-1 [185]	• Secretion of proinflammatory cytokines TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6 [196] • Upregulation of proinflammatory cytokine profile [197]
Dendritic cells	• Tat induces chemokine expression in dendritic cells, resulting in T-cell and macrophage recruitment [176] • Tat enhances maturation, function, and antigen presentation [187]	• Internalize extracellular Tax and mediate the priming of the anti-Tax CTL response [256] • Activation in response to Tax, resulting in constant antigen presentation and T-cell proliferation [257]
Monocyte-macrophages	• TNF-α production via NF-κB pathway in response to Tat [172]	• Tax RNA expression detected, suggesting role as a possible reservoir [201]

and the subsequent influx of extracellular calcium via a glutamate receptor-mediated mechanism [169]. This increased concentration results in the mitochondrial uptake of Tat, the generation of reactive oxygen species, and eventually Tat-induced toxicity and apoptosis [34, 170]. Synaptodendritic damage is also observed in HAND and cognitive decline, with HIV-1 Tat having been demonstrated to increase the frequency of inhibitory synaptic connections in rat hippocampal neurons [171].

The toxic effect of Tat is not limited to neurons, as astrocytes, DCs, macrophages, and microglia also produce proinflammatory mediators, reactive oxygen and nitrogen species, and excitatory amino acids that contribute to neuropathogenesis in response to Tat [172–177]. Of great importance is the secretion of tumor necrosis

factor-α (TNF-α) by these cells in response to Tat, owing to its neurotoxicity [178, 179]. One of the primary functions of astrocytes is to regulate extracellular glutamate levels in the brain, and TNF-α secretion by monocytic cells has been shown to disrupt glutamate metabolism, resulting in dysregulated glutamate homeostasis and neuronal damage [180]. Tat also activates astrocytes and induces the production of chemokines and nitric oxide; however, astrocytes do not apoptose unless cocultured with neurons, suggesting that Tat-induced apoptosis requires a signal from NMDAR-expressing neurons [181–183]. Extracellular Tat has been shown to induce production of monocyte chemoattractant factor-1 (MCP-1)/CCL-2 in human fetal astrocytes and microglial cells [184, 185]. The MCP-1/CCL-2 functions in the recruitment of monocytic cells to sites of inflammation in the CNS and the trafficking of monocytes across the BBB. This mechanism is consistent with findings that individuals with HIVE and HAD have elevated levels of CCL2 in CSF [186]. Tax also has been shown to promote the maturation of DCs, resulting in enhanced antigen presentation [187]. In astrocytes, CCL5 expression is upregulated by Tat, through a pathway that involves AP-1, C/EBPα, and C/EBPβ [188]. Finally, HIV-1 Tat displays important properties related to HIV-1 coreceptor usage and cell tropism. The ability of Tat to bind the CXCR4 chemokine receptor suggests that it may function as a virion antagonist pressuring CXCR4-utilizing HIV-1 strains to evolve towards CCR5 tropism [189]. As a result, Tat production may influence increased targeting of cells of the monocyte–macrophage lineage in the CNS. Furthermore, Tat can induce CXCR4 expression on both lymphocytes and monocyte/macrophages and CCR5 expression on monocyte/macrophages [190], which can result in increased viral replication.

7.2 Effects of Extracellular HTLV-1 Tax

Principally, the accumulation of extracellular Tax may result in the cytokine-mediated destruction of neuronal tissue via both autocrine and paracrine mechanisms [17]. Proinflammatory cytokines found to exist at elevated concentrations in the CNS of HAM/TSP patients include interferon (IFN)-γ, TNF-α, interleukin (IL)-1 and IL-6, and granulocyte–macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) [191–194]. In human neuronal cells exposed to Tax, TNF-α has been produced at a concentration similar to that of HTLV-1-infected T cells [36, 195]. Within the CNS, cytokine secretion is not limited to neurons as adult microglial cells also demonstrate a proinflammatory response and produce TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6 in response to Tax [196, 197]. Importantly, HTLV-1-infected microglial cells cannot produce IL-1β, stressing the importance of a paracrine mechanism in a Tax-induced inflammatory response [196]. HTLV-1 Tax RNA has been detected in astrocytes as well as monocytes, suggesting that these cells may also be a source of extracellular Tax and could potentially serve as a viral reservoir [198–201]. The HTLV-1 Tax oncoprotein stimulates reactive oxygen species (ROS) production through multiple mechanisms and interactions. ROS production is normally inhibited by antistress host factors such as ubiquitin-specific protease 10 (USP10); however, this activity is attenuated by Tax [202]. Tax also has been found to dysregulate glutamate uptake and

catabolism in astrocytes, potentially leading to neuronal and oligodendrocyte death [203]. As a consequence of the various inflammatory responses caused by Tax, the BBB may also be altered, resulting in increased lymphocyte trafficking into the CNS [204, 205]. Tax is also an important factor in the dysregulation of autophagy in HTLV-1-infected T cells, as it leads to the recruitment of autophagic molecular complexes containing Beclin1 and Bif-1 to lipid raft microdomains [206].

Demyelination of neurons is observed among HAM/TSP patients and can be directly attributed to extracellular Tax protein [36, 207]. Myelin functions in the insulation of axons and is responsible for the speed and accuracy of neuronal action potential impulses [208]. Oligodendrocytes, being the myelinating cell type of the CNS, are sensitive to TNF-α but also secrete the proinflammatory cytokines IL-1β, TNF-α, TNF-β, and IL-6 in response to HTLV-1 Tax transduction [207, 209–212]. Overall, it is unclear whether axonal oligodendrocyte damage occurs prior to axonal degeneration ("outside-in theory") or if the opposite scenario occurs ("inside-out theory") [32, 213]. Additionally, the expression of Tax causes the activation and proliferation of T cells, with increased ratios of T helper 1 (Th1) effector cells to regulatory T cells (Tregs) observed in PBMCs of HLTV-1-infected patients with HAM/TSP [214]. CD39 and CD25 co-expression can be used to identify regulatory ($CD39^+CD25^+$) and effector ($CD39^+CD25^-$) T-cell subsets, with CD39 upregulation being suggested as a surrogate diagnostic marker of HAM/TSP progression potentially attributable to Tax expression [215].

8 The Adaptive Immune Response in the CNS

8.1 Immune Surveillance in the Central Nervous System

The CNS is shielded from the free diffusion of circulating molecules, cells, and pathogens by the BBB, which has been reviewed in detail previously [41, 216]. Importantly, the BBB can be disrupted as a result of HIV-1 and HTLV-1 infection and proteins, including Tat and Tax. Both circulating lymphocytes and microglia, the resident macrophages of the CNS, contribute to the immune surveillance of the CNS in order to maintain optimal function and protection. Consistent with the critical role of the BBB, cellular immune surveillance can vary according to CNS region, with the highest concentration of cells located near areas with reduced tight junctions of the BBB [217]. Peripheral immune cells, such as perivascular macrophages and meningeal DCs, are strategically located along the BBB and function in antigen presentation and surveying the periphery for foreign antigens [218]. Within the CNS, microglial cells are the principal mediators of homeostasis and the primary defenders of the CNS parenchyma against infection and injury [218, 219]. Because of the minimal overlap and motility of microglia, the entire extracellular environment of the CNS is continuously sampled even when these microglial cells exist in a presumed resting state [220]. Despite these inherent immune protections of the

brain, HIV-1 and HTLV-1 infection of the CNS remains extremely common [1, 16]. The unique microenvironment and immune surveillance within the brain allows viruses to enjoy immune privilege owing to the relative absence of adaptive immune cells, such as B and T cells, and inherent mechanisms that limit neuroinflammation in order to protect nonrenewable neuronal pathways [77, 221]. Overall, the number of T cells infiltrating the healthy CNS is small relative to peripheral organs, owing to reduced interaction with endothelial adhesion molecules and leukocyte rolling in the brain [222].

8.2 HIV-1 Tat Antibody Response

A Tat-targeting antibody response is found in nearly 50 % of seropositive HIV-1 patients [223]. However, this antibody response does not appear to prevent disease progression even though anti-Tat antibodies have been shown to inhibit viral replication in vitro [224, 225]. Uninfected individuals have natural IgM antibodies against the Tat epitopes located in the cysteine-rich and basic domains that contribute to HIV-1 pathogenesis resistance [226]. Genetic variation likely plays an important role in an anti-Tat antibody response, as subtype C Tat variants demonstrate the ability to avoid an antibody response via mutation while maintaining transactivation ability [223]. Researchers recently reported that anti-Tat antibody titers are higher in individuals without HAND than in those who display neurocognitive impairment, even among those with higher viral loads and lower $CD4^+$ T-cell counts [227]. Tat immune complexes have been shown to interact with NMDA receptors and prevent excitotoxicity in a novel host defense mechanism, an effect that does not occur in the presence of either Tat or antibody alone [228]. This observation, in conjunction with the high anti-Tat antibody levels detected among patients with long-term nonprogressing disease as compared with patients with rapidly progressing disease, has fueled continued interest in developing a Tat vaccine for the prevention of HAND [229–233].

8.3 HIV-1 Tat Cytotoxic T-Lymphocyte Response

The natural time course of HIV-1 infection consists of an initial acute stage in which viremia peaks, followed by a sharp decline in viral load resulting from the natural antiviral CTL response [234, 235]. CTLs recognize and destroy cells that present foreign epitopes in the context of class I major histocompatibility complex (MHC-I) molecules on the cell surface. These epitopes are created by the cleavage of viral proteins by the proteasome, which are then delivered to MHC-I molecules on the cell membrane by the transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP) [236]. The diverse population of quasispecies that emerge as a result of HIV-1 replication provides an abundant substrate for the selective pressures that favor the most genetically

fit variants. The CTL component of the adaptive immune system is particularly prominent in shaping viral evolution, as mutations are selected for that decrease MHC-I binding and CTL recognition [237, 238]. In principle, viruses could rapidly eliminate all of their CTL epitopes. However, this does not occur because the need to evade the immune response is counterbalanced by the need to maintain functionality and the ability to replicate [239, 240]. These competing influences indicate that toggling mutations between more functional sequences that display epitopes and less functional sequences that can evade the host immune response occur in HIV-1 [241].

While the majority of analyses on the HIV-1-specific CTL response initially focused on structural proteins, researchers are now exploring early regulatory genes such as Tat and Rev in more detail. Significantly, Tat is frequently targeted by CTLs, representing a selective pressure after the onset of the asymptomatic period of infection [242, 243]. The HIV-1 CTL epitope repertoire across multiple HLAs has been analyzed on the basis of their "size of immune repertoire" (SIR) score [244]. This study demonstrated that HIV-1 removes $CD8^+$ CTL epitopes as an evasion strategy and that regulatory proteins such as Tat have low SIR scores in comparison with late virion-associated genes [244]. The evolution of HIV-1 Tat over time may be due either to escape mutations from the host immune response or to mutations that confer enhanced viral replication ability. One study suggests that the primary determinant is the former, with Tat mutants that emerge over time displaying no significant difference in transactivation ability [242]. The CTL response within the brain has been shown to be distinct from that of the peripheral blood in simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV) studies [245]. SIV studies have also demonstrated that the persistence of a CTL response in the brain is associated with increased levels of IL-15 and the absence of IL-2 [246]. Accordingly, the anti-Tat CTL response within the brain may contribute to a unique cytokine environment.

8.4 HTLV-1 Tax Antibody Response

The presence of an anti-Tax antibody response has been well established among individuals infected with HTLV-1 [247]. The percentage of individuals expressing anti-Tax antibody as well as the level of anti-Tax antibody titers have been demonstrated to be significantly greater in HAM/TSP patients compared with asymptomatic HTLV-1 carriers [247, 248]. In contrast, anti-Tax levels have been demonstrated to be low for HTLV-1 patients with a diagnosis of adult T-cell leukemia, stressing the role of the Tax-specific antibody response in HAM/TSP pathogenesis [249, 250]. In addition to conferring an increased risk of developing HAM/TSP, the presence of anti-Tax antibody has been shown to correlate with increased proviral loads and the potential for the virus to replicate [251]. Notably, the resistance to apoptosis conferred by HTLV-1 Tax production is reversed by the presence of anti-Tax antibodies [252]. Together, these observations demonstrate that a robust anti-Tax antibody response may be a contributing factor in neuropathogenesis.

8.5 HTLV-1 Tax CTL Response

HTLV-1 Tax and HBZ protein have been associated with HTLV-1 disease progression due to their roles in inducing cellular proliferation and the CTL-mediated immune response. Accordingly, Tax mRNA expression levels have been identified as the best marker to estimate risk for the development of HAM/TSP [253]. Tax exists as an extracellular protein within the CNS, and as a result it can be internalized and made available for immune recognition by antigen-presenting cells. Accordingly, DCs play a major role in directing the anti-Tax cellular immune response, and their rapid maturation is associated with HAM/TSP stimulation of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells [254, 255]. Recently DCs have been shown to successfully mediate the priming of the anti-Tax CTL response both in vitro and in vivo [256]. Tax plays a central role in this process, as DCs exposed to Tax undergo activation, resulting in T-cell proliferation [257]. CTLs specific for HTLV-1 Tax are the primary proliferating cell type observed in the CSF of HAM/TSP patients [155, 258]. In particular, the Tax_{11-19} epitope is recognized and targeted by infiltrating CTLs, and the continual activation of these cells suggests that viral replication and production of HTLV-1 proteins persist in the CNS [259]. The expanding population of activated $CD8^+$ T cells is believed to contribute to the CNS damage via the lysis of Tax-presenting cells and the ensuing release of proinflammatory molecules. Additionally, infiltrating CTLs are an important source of proinflammatory mediators, including IFN-γ, TNF-α, IL-16, matrix metalloproteinase-9, macrophage inflammatory protein-1α, and macrophage inflammatory protein-1β [260]. Molecular mimicry contributes to neuronal damage in HAM/TSP as well, as the CTL response directed against Tax also demonstrates cross-reactivity to cells displaying the heterogeneous ribonuclear protein-A1 antigen in the CNS [261]. Although a high frequency of HTLV-1-specific CTLs correlates with risk of HTLV-1-associated inflammation, host and viral immunogenetics suggest that a strong CTL response is associated with a low risk of HAM/TSP. As a result, the avidity of the CTL response is essential to controlling HTLV-1 neuropathology, as efficient control of HTLV-1 infection depends on the lytic efficiency of HTLV-1-targeting CTLs [262].

9 Conclusion

HIV-1 Tat and HTLV-1 Tax are analogous proteins in terms of both virologic function and the ability to stimulate a neuroinflammatory response as extracellular proteins. However, these proteins are also distinct with respect to their role in disease progression. Tax is the dominant force in HAM/TSP, whereas Tat-mediated neuroinflammation comprises only one aspect of HIV-1 neuroinflammation. The multifaceted and complex interactomes of Tat and Tax have been studied in detail, elucidating a vast network of viral and cellular protein interactions that control nearly every aspect of Tat- and Tax-induced neuropathogenesis, including

transcriptional regulation, secretion, posttranslational processing, neurotoxicity, and immune recognition [43, 57]. As previously discussed, particular Tat and Tax mutations can significantly alter protein–protein interactions, with the effects potentially resonating throughout these intricate protein networks and contributing to neuropathogenesis. Given the low fidelity of HIV-1 and HTLV-1 reverse transcriptase, genetic variation is a pervasive attribute of retroviral proteins that influences not only drug resistance but also protein functionality. Accordingly, the selection of escape mutations within Tat and Tax epitopes likely affects both viral evolution and the extent of the neuroinflammatory response. Future research must be cognizant of the differences between the anti-Tat and anti-Tax immune responses on either side of the blood–brain barrier, as this will likely shape the persistence and selection of particular HIV-1 quasispecies within the brain compartment. Accordingly, Tat and Tax variants that are selected for on the basis of optimal survival within the cells of the CNS may demonstrate a unique set of characteristics that contribute to the progression of HAND and HAM/TSP.

References

1. Gonzalez-Scarano F, Martin-Garcia J. The neuropathogenesis of AIDS. Nat Rev Immunol. 2005;5:69.
2. Jacobson J. Immunopathogenesis of human T cell lymphotropic virus type I-associated neurologic disease. J Infect Dis. 2002;186 Suppl 2:187.
3. McArthur JC. HIV dementia: an evolving disease. J Neuroimmunol. 2004;157:3.
4. Pillat MM, Bauer ME, de Oliveira AC, Ulrich H, Casseb J. HTLV-1-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP): still an obscure disease. Cent Nerv Syst Agents Med Chem. 2011;11:239.
5. Sacktor N, et al. HIV-associated cognitive impairment before and after the advent of combination therapy. J Neurovirol. 2002;8:136.
6. Churchill M, Nath A. Where does HIV hide? A focus on the central nervous system. Curr Opin HIV AIDS. 2013;8:165.
7. Walker BD, Burton DR. Toward an AIDS vaccine. Science. 2008;320:760.
8. Goncalves DU, et al. Epidemiology, treatment, and prevention of human T-cell leukemia virus type 1-associated diseases. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2010;23:577.
9. Hunt PW, et al. Continued CD4 cell count increases in HIV-infected adults experiencing 4 years of viral suppression on antiretroviral therapy. AIDS. 2003;17:1907.
10. Li TS, et al. Long-lasting recovery in CD4 T-cell function and viral-load reduction after highly active antiretroviral therapy in advanced HIV-1 disease. Lancet. 1998;351:1682.
11. Nath A, et al. Evolution of HIV dementia with HIV infection. Int Rev Psychiatry. 2008;20:25.
12. Cherner M, et al. Neuropathologic confirmation of definitional criteria for human immunodeficiency virus-associated neurocognitive disorders. J Neurovirol. 2007;13:23.
13. Andrade AS, et al. Relationships among neurocognitive status, medication adherence measured by pharmacy refill records, and virologic suppression in HIV-infected persons. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2012(Nov 29).
14. Gray F, et al. Neuropathology and neurodegeneration in human immunodeficiency virus infection Pathogenesis of HIV-induced lesions of the brain, correlations with HIV-associated disorders and modifications according to treatments. Clin Neuropathol. 2001;20:146.
15. Li W, Li G, Steiner J, Nath A. Role of Tat protein in HIV neuropathogenesis. Neurotox Res. 2009;16:205.

16. Gessain A, Mahieux R. Tropical spastic paraparesis and HTLV-1 associated myelopathy: clinical, epidemiological, virological and therapeutic aspects. Rev Neurol. 2012;168:257.
17. Irish BP, et al. Molecular mechanisms of neurodegenerative diseases induced by human retroviruses: a review. Am J Infect Dis. 2009;5:231.
18. Ahuja J, Lepoutre V, Wigdahl B, Khan ZK, Jain P. Induction of pro-inflammatory cytokines by human T-cell leukemia virus type-1 Tax protein as determined by multiplexed cytokine protein array analyses of human dendritic cells. Biomed Pharmacother. 2007;61:201.
19. Guerreiro JB, et al. Levels of serum chemokines discriminate clinical myelopathy associated with human T lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-1)/tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP) disease from HTLV-1 carrier state. Clin Exp Immunol. 2006;145:296.
20. Kannagi M, et al. Target epitope in the Tax protein of human T-cell leukemia virus type I recognized by class I major histocompatibility complex-restricted cytotoxic T cells. J Virol. 1992;66:2928.
21. Parker CE, Daenke S, Nightingale S, Bangham CR. Activated, HTLV-1-specific cytotoxic T-lymphocytes are found in healthy seropositives as well as in patients with tropical spastic paraparesis. Virology. 1992;188:628.
22. Jeffery KJ, et al. The influence of HLA class I alleles and heterozygosity on the outcome of human T cell lymphotropic virus type I infection. J Immunol. 2000;165:7278.
23. Rafatpanah H, et al. Association between HLA-DRB1*01 and HLA-Cw*08 and outcome following HTLV-I infection. Iran J Immunol. 2007;4:94.
24. Sabouri AH, et al. Differences in viral and host genetic risk factors for development of human T-cell lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-1)-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis between Iranian and Japanese HTLV-1-infected individuals. J Gen Virol. 2005;86:773.
25. Niewiesk S, et al. The transactivator gene of human T-cell leukemia virus type I is more variable within and between healthy carriers than patients with tropical spastic paraparesis. J Virol. 1994;68:6778.
26. Daenke S, Nightingale S, Cruickshank JK, Bangham CR. Sequence variants of human T-cell lymphotropic virus type I from patients with tropical spastic paraparesis and adult T-cell leukemia do not distinguish neurological from leukemic isolates. J Virol. 1990;64:1278.
27. Grant C, et al. Human T cell leukemia virus type I and neurologic disease: events in bone marrow, peripheral blood, and central nervous system during normal immune surveillance and neuroinflammation. J Cell Physiol. 2002;190:133.
28. Nakagawa M, et al. HTLV-I-associated myelopathy: analysis of 213 patients based on clinical features and laboratory findings. J Neurovirol. 1995;1:50.
29. Shibasaki H, et al. Clinical picture of HTLV-I associated myelopathy. J Neurol Sci. 1988;87:15.
30. Araujo AQ, Andrade-Filho AS, Castro-Costa CM, Menna-Barreto M, Almeida SM. HTLV-I-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis in Brazil: a nationwide survey. HAM/TSP Brazilian Study Group. J Acquir Immune Def Syn Hum Retrovirol. 1998;19:536.
31. Araujo AQ, Leite AC, Dultra SV, Andrada-Serpa MJ. Progression of neurological disability in HTLV-I-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP). J Neurol Sci. 1995;129:147.
32. Lepoutre V, Jain P, Quann K, Wigdahl B, Khan ZK. Role of resident CNS cell populations in HTLV-1-associated neuroinflammatory disease. Front Biosci. 2009;14:1152.
33. Karn J, Stoltzfus CM. Transcriptional and posttranscriptional regulation of HIV-1 gene expression. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med. 2012;2:a006916.
34. New DR, Ma M, Epstein LG, Nath A, Gelbard HA. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 Tat protein induces death by apoptosis in primary human neuron cultures. J Neurovirol. 1997;3:168.
35. Park RE, Haseltine WA, Rosen CA. A nuclear factor is required for transactivation of HTLV-I gene expression. Oncogene. 1988;3:275.
36. Cowan EP, Alexander RK, Daniel S, Kashanchi F, Brady JN. Induction of tumor necrosis factor alpha in human neuronal cells by extracellular human T-cell lymphotropic virus type 1 Tax. J Virol. 1997;71:6982.

37. Kim J, Yoon JH, Kim YS. HIV-1 Tat interacts with and regulates the localization and processing of amyloid precursor protein. PLoS One. 2013;8:e77972.
38. Jeang KT, Xiao H, Rich EA. Multifaceted activities of the HIV-1 transactivator of transcription, Tat. J Biol Chem. 1999;274:28837.
39. Ruben S, et al. Structural and functional characterization of human immunodeficiency virus tat protein. J Virol. 1989;63:1.
40. Myers G, Korber BT, Foley BT, Jeang K-T, Mellors JW, Wain-Hobson S. Human retroviruses and AIDS: a compilation and analysis of nucleic acid and amino acid sequences. Los Alamos, NM: Los Alamos National Laboratory, Theoretical Biology and Biophysics Group; 1996.
41. Strazza M, Pirrone V, Wigdahl B, Nonnemacher MR. Breaking down the barrier: the effects of HIV-1 on the blood–brain barrier. Brain Res. 2011;1399:96.
42. Kuppuswamy M, Subramanian T, Srinivasan A, Chinnadurai G. Multiple functional domains of Tat, the trans-activator of HIV-1, defined by mutational analysis. Nucleic Acids Res. 1989;17:3551.
43. Li L, et al. Impact of Tat genetic variation on HIV-1 disease. Adv Virol. 2012;2012:123605.
44. D'Orso I, Frankel AD. Tat acetylation modulates assembly of a viral-host RNA-protein transcription complex. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106:3101.
45. Li W, et al. NMDA receptor activation by HIV-Tat protein is clade dependent. J Neurosci. 2008;28:12190.
46. Bertrand SJ, Aksenova MV, Mactutus CF, Booze RM. HIV-1 Tat protein variants: critical role for the cysteine region in synaptodendritic injury. Exp Neurol. 2013;248:228.
47. Dingwall C, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus 1 tat protein binds trans-activation-responsive region (TAR) RNA in vitro. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1989;86:6925.
48. Roy S, Delling U, Chen CH, Rosen CA, Sonenberg N. A bulge structure in HIV-1 TAR RNA is required for Tat binding and Tat-mediated trans-activation. Genes Dev. 1990;4:1365.
49. Vives E, Brodin P, Lebleu B. A truncated HIV-1 Tat protein basic domain rapidly translocates through the plasma membrane and accumulates in the cell nucleus. J Biol Chem. 1997;272:16010.
50. Lopez-Huertas MR, et al. Modifications in host cell cytoskeleton structure and function mediated by intracellular HIV-1 Tat protein are greatly dependent on the second coding exon. Nucleic Acids Res. 2010;38:3287.
51. Neuveut C, Scoggins RM, Camerini D, Markham RB, Jeang KT. Requirement for the second coding exon of Tat in the optimal replication of macrophage-tropic HIV-1. J Biomed Sci. 2003;10:651.
52. Smith SM, et al. An in vivo replication-important function in the second coding exon of Tat is constrained against mutation despite cytotoxic T lymphocyte selection. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:44816.
53. Barillari G, Gendelman R, Gallo RC, Ensoli B. The Tat protein of human immunodeficiency virus type 1, a growth factor for AIDS Kaposi sarcoma and cytokine-activated vascular cells, induces adhesion of the same cell types by using integrin receptors recognizing the RGD amino acid sequence. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993;90:7941.
54. Mahlknecht U, Dichamp I, Varin A, Van Lint C, Herbein G. NF-kappaB-dependent control of HIV-1 transcription by the second coding exon of Tat in T cells. J Leukoc Biol. 2008;83:718.
55. Debaisieux S, Rayne F, Yezid H, Beaumelle B. The ins and outs of HIV-1 Tat. Traffic. 2012;13:355.
56. Tahirov TH, et al. Crystal structure of HIV-1 Tat complexed with human P-TEFb. Nature. 2010;465:747.
57. Boxus M, et al. The HTLV-1 Tax interactome. Retrovirology. 2008;5:76.
58. Ng PW, et al. Genome-wide expression changes induced by HTLV-1 Tax: evidence for MLK-3 mixed lineage kinase involvement in Tax-mediated NF-kappaB activation. Oncogene. 2001;20:4484.
59. Semmes OJ, Jeang KT. Mutational analysis of human T-cell leukemia virus type I Tax: regions necessary for function determined with 47 mutant proteins. J Virol. 1992;66:7183.

60. Semmes OJ, Jeang KT. HTLV-I Tax is a zinc-binding protein: role of zinc in Tax structure and function. Virology. 1992;188:754.
61. Bex F, Yin MJ, Burny A, Gaynor RB. Differential transcriptional activation by human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 Tax mutants is mediated by distinct interactions with CREB binding protein and p300. Mol Cell Biol. 1998;18:2392.
62. Harrod R, et al. An exposed KID-like domain in human T-cell lymphotropic virus type 1 Tax is responsible for the recruitment of coactivators CBP/p300. Mol Cell Biol. 1998;18:5052.
63. Georges SA, et al. Tax recruitment of CBP/p300, via the KIX domain, reveals a potent requirement for acetyltransferase activity that is chromatin dependent and histone tail independent. Mol Cell Biol. 2003;23:3392.
64. Goren I, Semmes OJ, Jeang KT, Moelling K. The amino terminus of Tax is required for interaction with the cyclic AMP response element binding protein. J Virol. 1995;69:5806.
65. Kimzey AL, Dynan WS. Identification of a human T-cell leukemia virus type I tax peptide in contact with DNA. J Biol Chem. 1999;274:34226.
66. Yin MJ, Paulssen EJ, Seeler JS, Gaynor RB. Protein domains involved in both in vivo and in vitro interactions between human T-cell leukemia virus type I tax and CREB. J Virol. 1995;69:3420.
67. Smith MR, Greene WC. Characterization of a novel nuclear localization signal in the HTLV-I tax transactivator protein. Virology. 1992;187:316.
68. Gitlin SD, Lindholm PF, Marriott SJ, Brady JN. Transdominant human T-cell lymphotropic virus type I TAX1 mutant that fails to localize to the nucleus. J Virol. 1991;65:2612.
69. Alefantis T, Barmak K, Harhaj EW, Grant C, Wigdahl B. Characterization of a nuclear export signal within the human T cell leukemia virus type I transactivator protein Tax. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:21814.
70. Lodewick J, Lamsoul I, Bex F. Move or die: the fate of the Tax oncoprotein of HTLV-1. Viruses. 2011;3:829.
71. Semmes OJ, Jeang KT. Definition of a minimal activation domain in human T-cell leukemia virus type I Tax. J Virol. 1995;69:1827.
72. Jiang H, et al. PCAF interacts with tax and stimulates tax transactivation in a histone acetyltransferase-independent manner. Mol Cell Biol. 1999;19:8136.
73. Jain P, et al. Identification of human T cell leukemia virus type 1 tax amino acid signals and cellular factors involved in secretion of the viral oncoprotein. J Biol Chem. 2007;282:34581.
74. Tie F, Adya N, Greene WC, Giam CZ. Interaction of the human T-lymphotropic virus type 1 Tax dimer with CREB and the viral 21-base-pair repeat. J Virol. 1996;70:8368.
75. Fryrear KA, Durkin SS, Gupta SK, Tiedebohl JB, Semmes OJ. Dimerization and a novel Tax speckled structure localization signal are required for Tax nuclear localization. J Virol. 2009;83:5339.
76. Basbous J, Bazarbachi A, Granier C, Devaux C, Mesnard JM. The central region of human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 Tax protein contains distinct domains involved in subunit dimerization. J Virol. 2003;77:13028.
77. Persidsky Y, Poluektova L. Immune privilege and HIV-1 persistence in the CNS. Immunol Rev. 2006;213:180.
78. Brady J, Kashanchi F. Tat gets the "green" light on transcription initiation. Retrovirology. 2005;2:69.
79. Rosen CA, Terwilliger E, Dayton A, Sodroski JG, Haseltine WA. Intragenic cis-acting art gene-responsive sequences of the human immunodeficiency virus. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1988;85:2071.
80. Parada CA, Roeder RG. Enhanced processivity of RNA polymerase II triggered by Tat-induced phosphorylation of its carboxy-terminal domain. Nature. 1996;384:375.
81. Yedavalli VS, Benkirane M, Jeang KT. Tat and trans-activation-responsive (TAR) RNA-independent induction of HIV-1 long terminal repeat by human and murine cyclin T1 requires Sp1. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:6404.
82. Karn J. The molecular biology of HIV latency: breaking and restoring the Tat-dependent transcriptional circuit. Curr Opin HIV AIDS. 2011;6:4.

83. Weinberger LS, Burnett JC, Toettcher JE, Arkin AP, Schaffer DV. Stochastic gene expression in a lentiviral positive-feedback loop: HIV-1 Tat fluctuations drive phenotypic diversity. Cell. 2005;122:169.
84. Berkhout B, Silverman RH, Jeang KT. Tat trans-activates the human immunodeficiency virus through a nascent RNA target. Cell. 1989;59:273.
85. Laspia MF, Rice AP, Mathews MB. HIV-1 Tat protein increases transcriptional initiation and stabilizes elongation. Cell. 1989;59:283.
86. Selby MJ, Bain ES, Luciw PA, Peterlin BM. Structure, sequence, and position of the stem-loop in tar determine transcriptional elongation by tat through the HIV-1 long terminal repeat. Genes Dev. 1989;3:547.
87. Taylor JP, Khalili K. Activation of HIV-1 transcription by Tat in cells derived from the CNS: evidence for the participation of NF-kappa B – a review. Adv Neuroimmunol. 1994;4:291.
88. Wei P, Garber ME, Fang SM, Fischer WH, Jones KA. A novel CDK9-associated C-type cyclin interacts directly with HIV-1 Tat and mediates its high-affinity, loop-specific binding to TAR RNA. Cell. 1998;92:451.
89. Zhu Y, et al. Transcription elongation factor P-TEFb is required for HIV-1 tat transactivation in vitro. Genes Dev. 1997;11:2622.
90. Zhou Q, Chen D, Pierstorff E, Luo K. Transcription elongation factor P-TEFb mediates Tat activation of HIV-1 transcription at multiple stages. EMBO J. 1998;17:3681.
91. Deng L, Ammosova T, Pumfery A, Kashanchi F, Nekhai S. HIV-1 Tat interaction with RNA polymerase II C-terminal domain (CTD) and a dynamic association with CDK2 induce CTD phosphorylation and transcription from HIV-1 promoter. J Biol Chem. 2002;277:33922.
92. Li L, et al. Development of co-selected single nucleotide polymorphisms in the viral promoter precedes the onset of human immunodeficiency virus type 1-associated neurocognitive impairment. J Neurovirol. 2011;17:92.
93. Nonnemacher MR, Irish BP, Liu Y, Mauger D, Wigdahl B. Specific sequence configurations of HIV-1 LTR G/C box array result in altered recruitment of Sp isoforms and correlate with disease progression. J Neuroimmunol. 2004;157:39.
94. Shah S, Nonnemacher MR, Pirrone V, Wigdahl B. Innate and adaptive factors regulating human immunodeficiency virus type 1 genomic activation. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2010;5:278.
95. Giam CZ, Xu YL. HTLV-I tax gene product activates transcription via pre-existing cellular factors and cAMP responsive element. J Biol Chem. 1989;264:15236.
96. Beimling P, Moelling K. Direct interaction of CREB protein with 21 bp Tax-response elements of HTLV-ILTR. Oncogene. 1992;7:257.
97. Zhao LJ, Giam CZ. Human T-cell lymphotropic virus type I (HTLV-I) transcriptional activator, Tax, enhances CREB binding to HTLV-I 21-base-pair repeats by protein-protein interaction. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1992;89:7070.
98. Lenzmeier BA, Giebler HA, Nyborg JK. Human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 Tax requires direct access to DNA for recruitment of CREB binding protein to the viral promoter. Mol Cell Biol. 1998;18:721.
99. Suzuki T, Fujisawa JI, Toita M, Yoshida M. The trans-activator tax of human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 (HTLV-1) interacts with cAMP-responsive element (CRE) binding and CRE modulator proteins that bind to the 21-base-pair enhancer of HTLV-1. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993;90:610.
100. Sun SC, Elwood J, Beraud C, Greene WC. Human T-cell leukemia virus type I Tax activation of NF-kappa B/Rel involves phosphorylation and degradation of I kappa B alpha and RelA (p65)-mediated induction of the c-rel gene. Mol Cell Biol. 1994;14:7377.
101. Chrivia JC, et al. Phosphorylated CREB binds specifically to the nuclear protein CBP. Nature. 1993;365:855.
102. Gonzalez GA, Montminy MR. Cyclic AMP stimulates somatostatin gene transcription by phosphorylation of CREB at serine 133. Cell. 1989;59:675.
103. Rahman S, et al. HTLV-1 Tax mediated downregulation of miRNAs associated with chromatin remodeling factors in T cells with stably integrated viral promoter. PLoS One. 2012;7:e34490.

104. Hetzer C, Dormeyer W, Schnolzer M, Ott M. Decoding Tat: the biology of HIV Tat post-translational modifications. Microbes Infect Inst Pasteur. 2005;7:1364.
105. Kiernan RE, et al. HIV-1 tat transcriptional activity is regulated by acetylation. EMBO J. 1999;18:6106.
106. Ott M, et al. Acetylation of the HIV-1 Tat protein by p300 is important for its transcriptional activity. Curr Biol. 1999;9:1489.
107. Pagans S, et al. SIRT1 regulates HIV transcription via Tat deacetylation. PLoS Biol. 2005;3:e41.
108. Kaehlcke K, et al. Acetylation of Tat defines a cyclinT1-independent step in HIV transactivation. Mol Cell. 2003;12:167.
109. Bres V, et al. A non-proteolytic role for ubiquitin in Tat-mediated transactivation of the HIV-1 promoter. Nat Cell Biol. 2003;5:754.
110. Dorr A, et al. Transcriptional synergy between Tat and PCAF is dependent on the binding of acetylated Tat to the PCAF bromodomain. EMBO J. 2002;21:2715.
111. Mujtaba S, et al. Structural basis of lysine-acetylated HIV-1 Tat recognition by PCAF bromodomain. Mol Cell. 2002;9:575.
112. Balasubramanyam K, et al. Curcumin, a novel p300/CREB-binding protein-specific inhibitor of acetyltransferase, represses the acetylation of histone/nonhistone proteins and histone acetyltransferase-dependent chromatin transcription. J Biol Chem. 2004;279:51163.
113. Zeng L, et al. Selective small molecules blocking HIV-1 Tat and coactivator PCAF association. J Am Chem Soc. 2005;127:2376.
114. Boulanger MC, et al. Methylation of Tat by PRMT6 regulates human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gene expression. J Virol. 2005;79:124.
115. Pagans S, et al. The cellular lysine methyltransferase Set7/9-KMT7 binds HIV-1 TAR RNA, monomethylates the viral transactivator Tat, and enhances HIV transcription. Cell Host Microbe. 2010;7:234.
116. Pagans S, Sakane N, Schnolzer M, Ott M. Characterization of HIV Tat modifications using novel methyl-lysine-specific antibodies. Methods. 2011;53:91.
117. Gatza ML, Dayaram T, Marriott SJ. Ubiquitination of HTLV-I Tax in response to DNA damage regulates nuclear complex formation and nuclear export. Retrovirology. 2007;4:95.
118. Lamsoul I, et al. Exclusive ubiquitination and sumoylation on overlapping lysine residues mediate NF-kappaB activation by the human T-cell leukemia virus tax oncoprotein. Mol Cell Biol. 2005;25:10391.
119. Nasr R, et al. Tax ubiquitylation and sumoylation control critical cytoplasmic and nuclear steps of NF-kappaB activation. Blood. 2006;107:4021.
120. Lodewick J, et al. Acetylation of the human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 Tax oncoprotein by p300 promotes activation of the NF-kappaB pathway. Virology. 2009;386:68.
121. Bex F, Murphy K, Wattiez R, Burny A, Gaynor RB. Phosphorylation of the human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 transactivator tax on adjacent serine residues is critical for tax activation. J Virol. 1999;73:738.
122. Durkin SS, Ward MD, Fryrear KA, Semmes OJ. Site-specific phosphorylation differentiates active from inactive forms of the human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 Tax oncoprotein. J Biol Chem. 2006;281:31705.
123. Frankel AD, Pabo CO. Cellular uptake of the tat protein from human immunodeficiency virus. Cell. 1988;55:1189.
124. Mann DA, Frankel AD. Endocytosis and targeting of exogenous HIV-1 Tat protein. EMBO J. 1991;10:1733.
125. Ghezzi S, et al. Inhibition of CXCR4-dependent HIV-1 infection by extracellular HIV-1 Tat. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2000;270:992.
126. Liu Y, et al. Uptake of HIV-1 tat protein mediated by low-density lipoprotein receptor-related protein disrupts the neuronal metabolic balance of the receptor ligands. Nat Med. 2000;6:1380.
127. Tyagi M, Rusnati M, Presta M, Giacca M. Internalization of HIV-1 tat requires cell surface heparan sulfate proteoglycans. J Biol Chem. 2001;276:3254.
128. Ferrari A, et al. Caveolae-mediated internalization of extracellular HIV-1 tat fusion proteins visualized in real time. Mol Ther J Am Soc Gene Ther. 2003;8:284.

129. Vendeville A, et al. HIV-1 Tat enters T cells using coated pits before translocating from acidified endosomes and eliciting biological responses. Mol Biol Cell. 2004;15:2347.
130. Fittipaldi A, et al. Cell membrane lipid rafts mediate caveolar endocytosis of HIV-1 Tat fusion proteins. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:34141.
131. Fra AM, Williamson E, Simons K, Parton RG. Detergent-insoluble glycolipid microdomains in lymphocytes in the absence of caveolae. J Biol Chem. 1994;269:30745.
132. Hauber J, Malim MH, Cullen BR. Mutational analysis of the conserved basic domain of human immunodeficiency virus tat protein. J Virol. 1989;63:1181.
133. Meredith LW, Sivakumaran H, Major L, Suhrbier A, Harrich D. Potent inhibition of HIV-1 replication by a Tat mutant. PLoS One. 2009;4:e7769.
134. Gautier VW, Sheehy N, Duffy M, Hashimoto K, Hall WW. Direct interaction of the human I-mfa domain-containing protein, HIC, with HIV-1 Tat results in cytoplasmic sequestration and control of Tat activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102:16362.
135. Puca A, et al. IkappaB-alpha represses the transcriptional activity of the HIV-1 Tat transactivator by promoting its nuclear export. J Biol Chem. 2007;282:37146.
136. Johnston JB, et al. HIV-1 Tat neurotoxicity is prevented by matrix metalloproteinase inhibitors. Ann Neurol. 2001;49:230.
137. Bruce-Keller AJ, et al. Synaptic transport of human immunodeficiency virus-Tat protein causes neurotoxicity and gliosis in rat brain. J Neurosci. 2003;23:8417.
138. Chauhan A, et al. Intracellular human immunodeficiency virus Tat expression in astrocytes promotes astrocyte survival but induces potent neurotoxicity at distant sites via axonal transport. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:13512.
139. Ensoli B, et al. Release, uptake, and effects of extracellular human immunodeficiency virus type 1 Tat protein on cell growth and viral transactivation. J Virol. 1993;67:277.
140. Rayne F, et al. Phosphatidylinositol-(4,5)-bisphosphate enables efficient secretion of HIV-1 Tat by infected T-cells. EMBO J. 2010;29:1348.
141. Thomas CA, Dobkin J, Weinberger OK. TAT-mediated transcellular activation of HIV-1 long terminal repeat directed gene expression by HIV-1-infected peripheral blood mononuclear cells. J Immunol. 1994;153:3831.
142. Alefantis T, Jain P, Ahuja J, Mostoller K, Wigdahl B. HTLV-1 Tax nucleocytoplasmic shuttling, interaction with the secretory pathway, extracellular signaling, and implications for neurologic disease. J Biomed Sci. 2005;12:961.
143. Fontes JD, Strawhecker JM, Bills ND, Lewis RE, Hinrichs SH. Phorbol esters modulate the phosphorylation of human T-cell leukemia virus type I Tax. J Virol. 1993;67:4436.
144. Alefantis T, et al. Secretion of the human T cell leukemia virus type I transactivator protein tax. J Biol Chem. 2005;280:17353.
145. Lippincott-Schwartz J, Roberts TH, Hirschberg K. Secretory protein trafficking and organelle dynamics in living cells. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol. 2000;16:557.
146. Alefantis T, Flaig KE, Wigdahl B, Jain P. Interaction of HTLV-1 Tax protein with calreticulin: implications for Tax nuclear export and secretion. Biomed Pharmacother. 2007;61:194.
147. Medina F, et al. Tax posttranslational modifications and interaction with calreticulin in MT-2 cells and human peripheral blood mononuclear cells of human T cell lymphotropic virus type-I-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis patients. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 2014(Jan 24).
148. Del Valle L, et al. Detection of HIV-1 Tat and JCV capsid protein, VP1, in AIDS brain with progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. J Neurovirol. 2000;6:221.
149. Hofman FM, Dohadwala MM, Wright AD, Hinton DR, Walker SM. Exogenous tat protein activates central nervous system-derived endothelial cells. J Neuroimmunol. 1994;54:19.
150. Hudson L, et al. Detection of the human immunodeficiency virus regulatory protein tat in CNS tissues. J Neurovirol. 2000;6:145.
151. Thomas ER, et al. High frequency of defective vpu compared with tat and rev genes in brain from patients with HIV type 1-associated dementia. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 2007;23:575.
152. Bratanich AC, et al. Brain-derived HIV-1 tat sequences from AIDS patients with dementia show increased molecular heterogeneity. J Neurovirol. 1998;4:387.

153. Boven LA, et al. Brain-derived human immunodeficiency virus-1 Tat exerts differential effects on LTR transactivation and neuroimmune activation. J Neurovirol. 2007;13:173.
154. Cowley D, Gray LR, Wesselingh SL, Gorry PR, Churchill MJ. Genetic and functional heterogeneity of CNS-derived tat alleles from patients with HIV-associated dementia. J Neurovirol. 2011;17:70.
155. Cartier L, Ramirez E. Presence of HTLV-I Tax protein in cerebrospinal fluid from HAM/TSP patients. Arch Virol. 2005;150:743.
156. Moritoyo T, et al. Detection of human T-lymphotropic virus type I p40tax protein in cerebrospinal fluid cells from patients with human T-lymphotropic virus type I-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis. J Neurovirol. 1999;5:241.
157. Yamano Y, et al. Correlation of human T-cell lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-1) mRNA with proviral DNA load, virus-specific CD8(+) T cells, and disease severity in HTLV-1-associated myelopathy (HAM/TSP). Blood. 2002;99:88.
158. Furukawa Y, et al. Phylogenetic subgroups of human T cell lymphotropic virus (HTLV) type I in the tax gene and their association with different risks for HTLV-I-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis. J Infect Dis. 2000;182:1343.
159. Iniguez AM, et al. Correlation of HTLV-1 Tax genetic diversity with HTLV-1 associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis progression and HTLV-1a genotypes in an HTLV-1 endemic region in Argentina. J Med Virol. 2010;82:1438.
160. Casseb J, et al. Lack of tax diversity for tropical spastic paraparesis/human T-cell lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-I) associated myelopathy development in HTLV-I-infected subjects in Sao Paulo. Braz Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz. 2006;101:273.
161. Hayman M, et al. Neurotoxicity of peptide analogues of the transactivating protein tat from Maedi-Visna virus and human immunodeficiency virus. Neuroscience. 1993;53:1.
162. Jones M, Olafson K, Del Bigio MR, Peeling J, Nath A. Intraventricular injection of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) tat protein causes inflammation, gliosis, apoptosis, and ventricular enlargement. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1998;57:563.
163. Magnuson DS, Knudsen BE, Geiger JD, Brownstone RM, Nath A. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 tat activates non-N-methyl-D-aspartate excitatory amino acid receptors and causes neurotoxicity. Ann Neurol. 1995;37:373.
164. Campbell GR, Watkins JD, Loret EP, Spector SA. Differential induction of rat neuronal excitotoxic cell death by human immunodeficiency virus type 1 clade B and C tat proteins. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 2011;27:647.
165. Eugenin EA, et al. Differences in NMDA receptor expression during human development determine the response of neurons to HIV-tat-mediated neurotoxicity. Neurotox Res. 2011;19:138.
166. Silvers JM, Aksenova MV, Aksenov MY, Mactutus CF, Booze RM. Neurotoxicity of HIV-1 Tat protein: involvement of D1 dopamine receptor. Neurotoxicology. 2007;28:1184.
167. Haughey NJ, Nath A, Mattson MP, Slevin JT, Geiger JD. HIV-1 Tat through phosphorylation of NMDA receptors potentiates glutamate excitotoxicity. J Neurochem. 2001;78:457.
168. Zucchini S, et al. Increased excitability in tat-transgenic mice: role of tat in HIV-related neurological disorders. Neurobiol Dis. 2013;55:110.
169. Haughey NJ, Holden CP, Nath A, Geiger JD. Involvement of inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate-regulated stores of intracellular calcium in calcium dysregulation and neuron cell death caused by HIV-1 protein tat. J Neurochem. 1999;73:1363.
170. Kruman II A, Nath MP. Mattson, HIV-1 protein Tat induces apoptosis of hippocampal neurons by a mechanism involving caspase activation, calcium overload, and oxidative stress. Exp Neurol. 1998;154:276.
171. Hargus NJ, Thayer SA. Human immunodeficiency virus-1 Tat protein increases the number of inhibitory synapses between hippocampal neurons in culture. J Neurosci. 2013;33:17908.
172. Chen P, Mayne M, Power C, Nath A. The Tat protein of HIV-1 induces tumor necrosis factor-alpha production. Implications for HIV-1-associated neurological diseases. J Biol Chem. 1997;272:22385.
173. D'Aversa TG, Yu KO, Berman JW. Expression of chemokines by human fetal microglia after treatment with the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 protein Tat. J Neurovirol. 2004;10:86.

174. Kutsch O, Oh J, Nath A, Benveniste EN. Induction of the chemokines interleukin-8 and IP-10 by human immunodeficiency virus type 1 tat in astrocytes. J Virol. 2000;74:9214.
175. Kaul M, Garden GA, Lipton SA. Pathways to neuronal injury and apoptosis in HIV-associated dementia. Nature. 2001;410:988.
176. Izmailova E, et al. HIV-1 Tat reprograms immature dendritic cells to express chemoattractants for activated T cells and macrophages. Nat Med. 2003;9:191.
177. Sheng WS, Hu S, Hegg CC, Thayer SA, Peterson PK. Activation of human microglial cells by HIV-1 gp41 and Tat proteins. Clin Immunol. 2000;96:243.
178. Buscemi L, Ramonet D, Geiger JD. Human immunodeficiency virus type-1 protein Tat induces tumor necrosis factor-alpha-mediated neurotoxicity. Neurobiol Dis. 2007;26:661.
179. New DR, Maggirwar SB, Epstein LG, Dewhurst S, Gelbard HA. HIV-1 Tat induces neuronal death via tumor necrosis factor-alpha and activation of non-N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors by a NFkappaB-independent mechanism. J Biol Chem. 1998;273:17852.
180. Fine SM, et al. Tumor necrosis factor alpha inhibits glutamate uptake by primary human astrocytes Implications for pathogenesis of HIV-1 dementia. J Biol Chem. 1996;271:15303.
181. Eugenin EA, D'Aversa TG, Lopez L, Calderon TM, Berman JW. MCP-1 (CCL2) protects human neurons and astrocytes from NMDA or HIV-tat-induced apoptosis. J Neurochem. 2003;85:1299.
182. Liu X, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) tat induces nitric-oxide synthase in human astroglia. J Biol Chem. 2002;277:39312.
183. McManus CM, et al. Chemokine and chemokine-receptor expression in human glial elements: induction by the HIV protein, Tat, and chemokine autoregulation. Am J Pathol. 2000;156:1441.
184. Conant K, et al. Induction of monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 in HIV-1 Tat-stimulated astrocytes and elevation in AIDS dementia. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1998;95:3117.
185. Eugenin EA, Dyer G, Calderon TM, Berman JW. HIV-1 tat protein induces a migratory phenotype in human fetal microglia by a CCL2 (MCP-1)-dependent mechanism: possible role in NeuroAIDS. Glia. 2005;49:501.
186. Cinque P, et al. Elevated cerebrospinal fluid levels of monocyte chemotactic protein-1 correlate with HIV-1 encephalitis and local viral replication. AIDS. 1998;12:1327.
187. Fanales-Belasio E, et al. Native HIV-1 Tat protein targets monocyte-derived dendritic cells and enhances their maturation, function, and antigen-specific T cell responses. J Immunol. 2002;168:197.
188. Nookala AR, Shah A, Noel RJ, Kumar A. HIV-1 Tat-mediated induction of CCL5 in astrocytes involves NF-kappaB, AP-1, C/EBPalpha and C/EBPgamma transcription factors and JAK, PI3K/Akt and p38 MAPK signaling pathways. PLoS One. 2013;8:e78855.
189. Xiao H, et al. Selective CXCR4 antagonism by Tat: implications for in vivo expansion of coreceptor use by HIV-1. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2000;97:11466.
190. Weiss JM, Nath A, Major EO, Berman JW. HIV-1 Tat induces monocyte chemoattractant protein-1-mediated monocyte transmigration across a model of the human blood-brain barrier and up-regulates CCR5 expression on human monocytes. J Immunol. 1999;163:2953.
191. Kuroda Y, Matsui M. Cerebrospinal fluid interferon-gamma is increased in HTLV-I-associated myelopathy. J Neuroimmunol. 1993;42:223.
192. Kuroda Y, Matsui M, Takashima H, Kurohara K. Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor and interleukin-1 increase in cerebrospinal fluid, but not in serum, of HTLV-I-associated myelopathy. J Neuroimmunol. 1993;45:133.
193. Nishimoto N, et al. Elevated levels of interleukin-6 in serum and cerebrospinal fluid of HTLV-I-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis. J Neurol Sci. 1990;97:183.
194. Ohbo K, Sugamura K, Sekizawa T, Kogure K. Interleukin-6 in cerebrospinal fluid of HTLV-I-associated myelopathy. Neurology. 1991;41:594.
195. Brady JN. Extracellular Tax1 protein stimulates NF-kB and expression of NF-kB-responsive Ig kappa and TNF beta genes in lymphoid cells. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1992;8:724.
196. Dhib-Jalbut S, et al. Extracellular human T-cell lymphotropic virus type I Tax protein induces cytokine production in adult human microglial cells. Ann Neurol. 1994;36:787.

197. Wrzesinski S, et al. HTLV type 1 Tax transduction in microglial cells and astrocytes by lentiviral vectors. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 2000;16:1771.
198. Lehky TJ, et al. Detection of human T-lymphotropic virus type I (HTLV-I) tax RNA in the central nervous system of HTLV-I-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis patients by in situ hybridization. Ann Neurol. 1995;37:167.
199. Kramer-Hammerle S, Rothenaigner I, Wolff H, Bell JE, Brack-Werner R. Cells of the central nervous system as targets and reservoirs of the human immunodeficiency virus. Virus Res. 2005;111:194.
200. Szymocha R, et al. Long-term effects of HTLV-1 on brain astrocytes: sustained expression of Tax-1 associated with synthesis of inflammatory mediators. J Neurovirol. 2000;6:350.
201. Koyanagi Y, et al. In vivo infection of human T-cell leukemia virus type I in non-T cells. Virology. 1993;196:25.
202. Takahashi M, et al. HTLV-1 Tax oncoprotein stimulates ROS production and apoptosis in T cells by interacting with USP10. Blood. 2013;122:715.
203. Szymocha R, et al. Human T-cell lymphotropic virus type 1-infected T lymphocytes impair catabolism and uptake of glutamate by astrocytes via Tax-1 and tumor necrosis factor alpha. J Virol. 2000;74:6433.
204. Dhawan S, et al. Increased expression of alpha 4 beta 1 and alpha 5 beta 1 integrins on HTLV-I-infected lymphocytes. Virology. 1993;197:778.
205. Furuya T, et al. Heightened transmigrating activity of CD4-positive T cells through reconstituted basement membrane in patients with human T-lymphotropic virus type I-associated myelopathy. Proc Assoc Am Physicians. 1997;109:228.
206. Ren T, et al. HTLV-1 Tax deregulates autophagy by recruiting autophagic molecules into lipid raft microdomains. Oncogene. 2013(Dec 23).
207. Selmaj KW, Raine CS. Tumor necrosis factor mediates myelin and oligodendrocyte damage in vitro. Ann Neurol. 1988;23:339.
208. Griffiths I, et al. Axonal swellings and degeneration in mice lacking the major proteolipid of myelin. Science. 1998;280:1610.
209. Osame M. Pathological mechanisms of human T-cell lymphotropic virus type I-associated myelopathy (HAM/TSP). J Neurovirol. 2002;8:359.
210. Selmaj K, Raine CS, Farooq M, Norton WT, Brosnan CF. Cytokine cytotoxicity against oligodendrocytes. Apoptosis induced by lymphotoxin. J Immunol. 1991;147:1522.
211. D'Souza S, Alinauskas K, McCrea E, Goodyer C, Antel JP. Differential susceptibility of human CNS-derived cell populations to TNF-dependent and independent immune-mediated injury. J Neurosci. 1995;15:7293.
212. Banerjee P, et al. Proinflammatory cytokine gene induction by human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 (HTLV-1) and HTLV-2 Tax in primary human glial cells. J Virol. 2007;81:1690.
213. Tsunoda I, Fujinami RS. Inside-out versus outside-in models for virus induced demyelination: axonal damage triggering demyelination. Springer Semin Immunopathol. 2002;24:105.
214. Barros N, et al. CD4+ T cell subsets and Tax expression in HTLV-1 associated diseases. Pathogens Global Health. 2013;107:202.
215. Leal FE, et al. Expansion in CD39(+) CD4(+) immunoregulatory t cells and rarity of Th17 cells in HTLV-1 infected patients is associated with neurological complications. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 2013;7:e2028.
216. Ousman SS, Kubes P. Immune surveillance in the central nervous system. Nat Neurosci. 2012;15:1096.
217. Hickey WF, Hsu BL, Kimura H. T-lymphocyte entry into the central nervous system. J Neurosci Res. 1991;28:254.
218. Hickey WF. Basic principles of immunological surveillance of the normal central nervous system. Glia. 2001;36:118.
219. Hayes GM, Woodroofe MN, Cuzner ML. Microglia are the major cell type expressing MHC class II in human white matter. J Neurol Sci. 1987;80:25.
220. Nimmerjahn A, Kirchhoff F, Helmchen F. Resting microglial cells are highly dynamic surveillants of brain parenchyma in vivo. Science. 2005;308:1314.

221. Peterlin BM, Trono D. Hide, shield and strike back: how HIV-infected cells avoid immune eradication. Nat Rev Immunol. 2003;3:97.
222. Carvalho-Tavares J, et al. A role for platelets and endothelial selectins in tumor necrosis factor-alpha-induced leukocyte recruitment in the brain microvasculature. Circ Res. 2000;87:1141.
223. Campbell GR, et al. Tat mutations in an African cohort that do not prevent transactivation but change its immunogenic properties. Vaccine. 2007;25:8441.
224. Re MC, et al. Effect of antibody to HIV-1 Tat protein on viral replication in vitro and progression of HIV-1 disease in vivo. J Acquir Immune Def Syn Hum Retrovirol. 1995;10:408.
225. Steinaa L, Sorensen AM, Nielsen JO, Hansen JE. Antibody to HIV-1 Tat protein inhibits the replication of virus in culture. Arch Virol. 1994;139:263.
226. Rodman TC, Pruslin FH, To SE, Winston R. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) Tat-reactive antibodies present in normal HIV-negative sera and depleted in HIV-positive sera. Identification of the epitope. J Exp Med. 1992;175:1247.
227. Bachani M, Sacktor N, McArthur JC, Nath A, Rumbaugh J. Detection of anti-tat antibodies in CSF of individuals with HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders. J Neurovirol. 2013;19:82.
228. Rumbaugh JA, et al. HIV immune complexes prevent excitotoxicity by interaction with NMDA receptors. Neurobiol Dis. 2012;49C:169.
229. Campbell GR, Loret EP. What does the structure-function relationship of the HIV-1 Tat protein teach us about developing an AIDS vaccine? Retrovirology. 2009;6:50.
230. Goldstein G. HIV-1 Tat protein as a potential AIDS vaccine. Nat Med. 1996;2:960.
231. Goldstein G, Chicca JJ. Exploratory clinical studies of a synthetic HIV-1 Tat epitope vaccine in asymptomatic treatment-naive and antiretroviral-controlled HIV-1 infected subjects plus healthy uninfected subjects. Hum Vacc Immunother. 2012;8:479.
232. Rezza G, et al. The presence of anti-Tat antibodies is predictive of long-term nonprogression to AIDS or severe immunodeficiency: findings in a cohort of HIV-1 seroconverters. J Infect Dis. 2005;191:1321.
233. Zagury JF, et al. Antibodies to the HIV-1 Tat protein correlated with nonprogression to AIDS: a rationale for the use of Tat toxoid as an HIV-1 vaccine. J Hum Virol. 1998;1:282.
234. Borrow P, Lewicki H, Hahn BH, Shaw GM, Oldstone MB. Virus-specific CD8+ cytotoxic T-lymphocyte activity associated with control of viremia in primary human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. J Virol. 1994;68:6103.
235. Koup RA, et al. Temporal association of cellular immune responses with the initial control of viremia in primary human immunodeficiency virus type 1 syndrome. J Virol. 1994;68:4650.
236. Blum JS, Wearsch PA, Cresswell P. Pathways of antigen processing. Annu Rev Immunol. 2013(Jan 3).
237. Allen TM, et al. Selective escape from CD8+ T-cell responses represents a major driving force of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) sequence diversity and reveals constraints on HIV-1 evolution. J Virol. 2005;79:13239.
238. Evans DT, et al. Virus-specific cytotoxic T-lymphocyte responses select for amino-acid variation in simian immunodeficiency virus Env and Nef. Nat Med. 1999;5:1270.
239. Altman JD, Feinberg MB. HIV escape: there and back again. Nat Med. 2004;10:229.
240. Li B, et al. Rapid reversion of sequence polymorphisms dominates early human immunodeficiency virus type 1 evolution. J Virol. 2007;81:193.
241. Delport W, Scheffler K, Seoighe C. Frequent toggling between alternative amino acids is driven by selection in HIV-1. PLoS Pathog. 2008;4:e1000242.
242. Guillon C, Stankovic K, Ataman-Onal Y, Biron F, Verrier B. Evidence for CTL-mediated selection of Tat and Rev mutants after the onset of the asymptomatic period during HIV type 1 infection. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 2006;22:1283.
243. Addo MM, et al. The HIV-1 regulatory proteins Tat and Rev are frequently targeted by cytotoxic T lymphocytes derived from HIV-1-infected individuals. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98:1781.
244. Vider-Shalit T, Almani M, Sarid R, Louzoun Y. The HIV hide and seek game: an immunogenomic analysis of the HIV epitope repertoire. AIDS. 2009;23:1311.

245. von Herrath M, Oldstone MB, Fox HS. Simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV)-specific CTL in cerebrospinal fluid and brains of SIV-infected rhesus macaques. J Immunol. 1995;154:5582.
246. Marcondes MC, et al. Enrichment and persistence of virus-specific CTL in the brain of simian immunodeficiency virus-infected monkeys is associated with a unique cytokine environment. J Immunol. 2007;178:5812.
247. Rudolph DL, Coligan JE, Lal RB. Detection of antibodies to trans-activator protein (p40taxI) of human T-cell lymphotropic virus type I by a synthetic peptide-based assay. Clin Diagn Lab Immunol. 1994;1:176.
248. Burbelo PD, et al. Anti-HTLV antibody profiling reveals an antibody signature for HTLV-I-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP). Retrovirology. 2008;5:96.
249. Akimoto M, et al. Anti-HTLV-1 tax antibody and tax-specific cytotoxic T lymphocyte are associated with a reduction in HTLV-1 proviral load in asymptomatic carriers. J Med Virol. 2007;79:977.
250. Hisada M, et al. Risk factors for adult T-cell leukemia among carriers of human T-lymphotropic virus type I. Blood. 1998;92:3557.
251. Lydy SL, Conner ME, Marriott SJ. Relationship between anti-Tax antibody responses and cocultivatable virus in HTLV-I-infected rabbits. Virology. 1998;250:60.
252. Copeland KF, Haaksma AG, Goudsmit J, Krammer PH, Heeney JL. Inhibition of apoptosis in T cells expressing human T cell leukemia virus type I Tax. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1994;10:1259.
253. Andrade RG, et al. Strong correlation between tax and HBZ mRNA expression in HAM/TSP patients: distinct markers for the neurologic disease. J Clin Virol. 2013;56:135.
254. Ali A, et al. Dendritic cells infected in vitro with human T cell leukaemia/lymphoma virus type-1 (HTLV-1); enhanced lymphocytic proliferation and tropical spastic paraparesis. Clin Exp Immunol. 1993;94:32.
255. Makino M, Shimokubo S, Wakamatsu SI, Izumo S, Baba M. The role of human T-lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-1)-infected dendritic cells in the development of HTLV-1-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis. J Virol. 1999;73:4575.
256. Manuel SL, et al. Presentation of human T cell leukemia virus type 1 (HTLV-1) Tax protein by dendritic cells: the underlying mechanism of HTLV-1-associated neuroinflammatory disease. J Leukoc Biol. 2009;86:1205.
257. Jain P, et al. Modulation of dendritic cell maturation and function by the Tax protein of human T cell leukemia virus type 1. J Leukoc Biol. 2007;82:44.
258. Jacobson S, et al. HTLV-I-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes in the cerebrospinal fluid of patients with HTLV-I-associated neurological disease. Ann Neurol. 1992;32:651.
259. Sakai JA, Nagai M, Brennan MB, Mora CA, Jacobson S. In vitro spontaneous lymphoproliferation in patients with human T-cell lymphotropic virus type I-associated neurologic disease: predominant expansion of CD8+ T cells. Blood. 2001;98:1506.
260. Biddison WE, et al. Human T cell leukemia virus type I (HTLV-I)-specific CD8+ CTL clones from patients with HTLV-I-associated neurologic disease secrete proinflammatory cytokines, chemokines, and matrix metalloproteinase. J Immunol. 1997;159:2018.
261. Levin MC, et al. Autoimmunity due to molecular mimicry as a cause of neurological disease. Nat Med. 2002;8:509.
262. Kattan T, et al. The avidity and lytic efficiency of the CTL response to HTLV-1. J Immunol. 2009;182:5723.

Immunopathogenesis of Bacterial Meningitis

Uwe Koedel, Matthias Klein, and Hans-Walter Pfister

Abstract Despite effective antimicrobial therapy, case-fatality rates and neurologic sequelae of bacterial meningitis remain unacceptably high. Adverse outcomes are related primarily to neurologic complications occurring secondary to meningitis. These complications are mainly a consequence of a hyper-inflammatory reaction to bacterial infection of the subarachnoid space. The harmful inflammatory response is initiated by the recognition of bacterial products through pattern recognition receptors such as toll-like receptors. Their activation leads to a MyD88-dependent production of multiple pro-inflammatory factors like cytokines of the interleukin-1 family or terminal complement products. Subsequently, huge numbers of neutrophils are recruited to the site of infection where they release their antimicrobial arsenal, e.g., oxidants. This can cause collateral damage to brain tissue, resulting in the liberation of endogenous danger molecules. Their presence is also recognized by host pattern recognition receptors and, in consequence, mediates an aggravation and propagation of the hyper-inflammatory response. Based on this knowledge, the most promising targets for adjunctive therapy of bacterial meningitis seem to be limiting the release of bacterial products and interfering with the generation of key pro-inflammatory host factors.

Keywords Pneumococcal meningitis • Toll-like receptors • Interleukin • Anaphylatoxin • High-mobility group box 1 protein • Pneumolysin • Daptomycin

U. Koedel (✉) • M. Klein • H.-W. Pfister
Department of Neurology, University Clinic of Grosshadern, Ludwig-Maximilians-University, Marchioninistr. 15, Munich 81377, Germany
e-mail: Uwe.Koedel@med.uni-muenchen.de

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_18, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

Abbreviations

C	Complement
CSF	Cerebrospinal fluid
DAMP	Danger-associated molecular pattern
HMGB1	High-mobility group box 1 protein
IL	Interleukin
LTA	Lipoteichoic acid
MAC	Membrane attack complex
MMP	Matrix metalloproteinase
MyD88	Myeloid differentiation primary response gene 88 protein
NF	Nuclear factor
NLR	NOD-like receptor
NLRP3	The NLR family, pyrin domain-containing protein 3
NOD	Nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain
PG	Peptidoglycan
PLY	Pneumolysin
PRR	Pattern recognition receptor
RAGE	Receptor for advanced glycosylation end products
TLR	Toll-like receptor
TNF	Tumor necrosis factor

1 Introduction

Bacterial meningitis remains a serious threat to global health. Every year, meningococcal meningitis epidemics threaten millions of people in the African meningitis belt. In this area, close to 1,000,000 cases were reported in the last 20 years. Of these cases, approximately 100,000 died, with another 100,000–200,000 developing neurological sequelae [1]. Aside from epidemics, at least 1.2 million cases of endemic bacterial meningitis are estimated to occur worldwide each year with 135,000 deaths [2]. This makes bacterial meningitis one of the top ten infectious causes of death on Earth. Three species, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Neisseria meningitidis*, and *S. agalactiae*, are responsible for most cases of bacterial meningitis. Among these bacteria, only *N. meningitidis* is able to generate epidemics. *S. agalactiae* is the predominant pathogen among newborns, *N. meningitidis* among children 2–18 years old, and *S. pneumoniae* among adults [3, 4]. Pneumococcal meningitis has the worst prognosis: even with the best medical care and the use of modern antibiotics (plus adjuvant dexamethasone therapy), still about 15 % of the patients with pneumococcal meningitis die of the disease and up to one-third of survivors remain with neurologic deficits [4–7]. Unfortunate courses of the disease are mainly due to intracranial complications occurring secondary to meningitis, notably cerebrovascular alterations such as vasculitis, vasospasm, or venous thrombosis as well as hydrocephalus

and brain edema [8–10]. These alterations result in hypoperfusion and increased intracranial pressure, frequently leading to cerebral ischemia and/or herniation [11, 12]. Nearly 60 years ago, the hypothesis that these complications occur predominantly as a consequence of a hyper-inflammatory reaction within the central nervous system was formulated [13]. This hypothesis became the rationale for treating patients suffering from bacterial meningitis with immunosuppressive corticosteroids. Nowadays, dexamethasone is recommended for adjunctive therapy in selected patients, namely, in adults who suffer from pneumococcal meningitis and have not yet received antimicrobial treatment. Adjunctive dexamethasone is, however, far from giving complete protection. It only halves mortality and has only marginal effects on neurologic sequelae. Furthermore, a positive effect of dexamethasone was not found in studies performed in low-income countries (for review, see [14, 15]). Thus, there still is the urgent need for additional treatment strategies which can further reduce the adverse outcome of the disease. It is likely that the key will lie in more pathophysiologically targeted approaches. The scope of this article is to summarize the current knowledge on the pathophysiology of bacterial meningitis, using the example of pneumococcal meningitis which is the experimentally best characterized subtype, and to provide an outlook on promising therapeutic approaches.

2 Pathophysiology of Pneumococcal Meningitis

2.1 Survival of Pathogens in the CSF

Pneumococcal meningitis typically develops when bacteria enter the subarachnoid space from the blood compartment (hematogenous meningitis; predominant route in neonates and children) or through continuous spread of infection from a nearby focus (the mostly used route in adults). The subarachnoid space is the space between the arachnoid mater and the pia mater, which contains cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). From an immunological point of view, the subarachnoid space is a special compartment of the body. The subarachnoid space lacks a fully organized drainage by lymphatic vessels [16]. Moreover, soluble pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) like complement factors that perceive the presence of bacteria and mediate their uptake by phagocytes are virtually absent [17, 18]. Additionally, highly specialized blood–CSF barriers seclude the subarachnoid space from the blood circulation and impede the entry of most blood components like soluble PRRs into the CSF [19]. Even in the presence of bacterial meningitis, which is regularly associated with damage to blood–CSF barriers, concentrations of soluble PRRs remain far below those found in serum [20]. In contrast to this humoral deficit, functionally active macrophages, dendritic cells, and mast cells are present in tissues lining the CSF, namely, the choroid plexus, the perivascular spaces, and the leptomeninges [21, 22]. These cells are potential candidates for sensing the invasion of bacteria into the CSF through their cellular PRRs [21, 22]. The PRRs are expressed on the surface (like toll-like

receptor (TLR) 2), within endosomes (like TLR9), and in the cytoplasm nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain (Nod)-like receptors (NLRs) of these cells. Activation of PRRs can initiate an inflammatory response by activating specific transcription factors (like nuclear factor (NF)-κB) and subsequently stimulating the synthesis and release of a variety of cytokines. However, the reactivity of the immune cells is probably restricted by diverse immunosuppressive factors that are constitutively expressed in the CSF, like members of the transforming growth factor family, cystatin C, or tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-related apoptosis-inducing ligand [23–26]. As a consequence, when bacteria reach the subarachnoid space, they can multiply easily, reaching similar high titers (up to 10^9 colony-forming units (CFU)/ml) as under bacterial culture conditions [27]. Bacteria like *S. pneumoniae* undergo autolysis when they are injured by a hostile environment or attain the stationary phase of growth. Hence, pneumococcal degradation products are liberated into the extracellular milieu. Their recognition by PRRs is the starting shot for the host inflammatory reaction. All in all, the CSF space exhibits a defective humoral (but not cellular) immunity which allows bacteria to prosper. This leads to the generation of large quantities of bacterial products and, as a result, a massive inflammatory reaction in the subarachnoid space.

2.2 Initiation of the Immune Response

In landmark experiments in the 1980s, the major pneumococcal cell wall components peptidoglycan (PG) and lipoteichoic acid (LTA) were indicated to be the key activators of the host immune response during meningitis (Fig. 1) [28, 29]. In a rabbit model, intracisternal injection of pneumococcal PG or LTA was sufficient to induce meningeal inflammation and to cause clinical symptoms of meningitis [30]. Accordingly, in patients with pneumococcal meningitis, mortality and morbidity from the disease were significantly associated with high LTA concentrations in the CSF [31]. In the last 15 years, the mechanisms underlying immune activation by pneumococcal cell wall components have been clarified to a great extent. First insight came from overexpression assays in cell lines: when the pattern recognition receptor TLR2 was ectopically expressed in fibroblast cell lines, the cells became responsive to pneumococcal degradation products or live *S. pneumoniae* [32, 33]. In further experimental series, the pneumococcal cell wall components PG and LTA were identified as the key ligands for TLR2 [34]. Moreover, TLR4, also located at the cell surface, was reported to interact with the pneumococcal toxin pneumolysin (PLY) [35, 36], but this finding was questioned later by other groups [37, 38]. In addition, TLR9 was described to sense the presence of genomic DNA from *S. pneumoniae* [39]. More recently, TLR13 was implicated in the recognition of pneumococcal RNA [40]. Investigations on isolated macrophages of gene-deficient mice demonstrated that single deficiencies of TLR2, TLR4, or TLR9 had no significant impact on pneumococci-induced macrophage activation. The combined loss of TLR2, TLR4, and TLR9, however, resulted in a marked reduction in cytokine

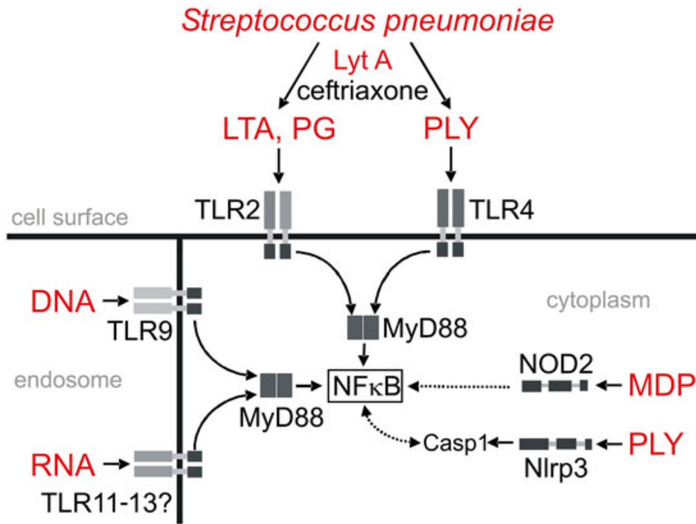


Fig. 1 A simplified model for the recognition of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* by pattern recognition receptors. See text for details. *Lyt A N*-acetylmuramoyl-L-alanine amidase (autolysin), *LTA* lipoteichoic acid, *PG* peptidoglycan, *PLY* pneumolysin, *MDP* muramyl dipeptide, *TLR* toll-like receptor, *Nod2* nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain (Nod)-like receptor 2, *Nlrp3* Nod-like receptor family, pyrin domain-containing protein 3, *NF* nuclear factor

production by macrophages upon exposure to *S. pneumoniae* [41]. It is also noteworthy that macrophages become nearly unresponsive to Gram-positive bacteria when they have defects in endosomal TLR signalling in addition to the lack of TLR2 and TLR4 [40]. Besides endosomal TLRs, NLRs likely contribute to the immune activation in response to internalized pneumococci. This is supported by the following observations: (1) Opitz et al. [42] reported that viable *S. pneumoniae* are capable of invading human fibroblasts. (2) Genetic complementation studies in human fibroblasts revealed that NF-κB activation induced by *S. pneumoniae* depends on the NLR Nod2. (3) By using primary cells from gene-deficient mice, NOD2 was found necessary for mounting a maximal inflammatory responses of microglial cells and astrocytes to live *S. pneumoniae* [43]. (4) Apart from NOD2, the NLR family, pyrin domain-containing protein 3 (NLRP3) was implicated as a sensor for pneumolysin and was capable of mediating interleukin (IL)-1β production by macrophages following challenge with pneumolysin or viable *S. pneumoniae* that express pneumolysin [37, 38, 44]. Collectively, these in vitro findings suggest that *S. pneumoniae* is sensed by immunocompetent cells through TLRs and NLRs in a cooperative manner. Thereby, extracellular bacterial components are sensed in a synergistic fashion by TLR2 and TLR4, while internalized bacterial fragments are recognized by endosomal TLRs and NOD2.

Substantial in vivo evidence for the involvement of TLRs in pneumococcal meningitis came from studies in mice lacking functional MyD88 which is kind of a bottleneck in the signalling cascades of all TLRs except TLR3. In an adult mouse

model of pneumococcal meningitis, MyD88-deficient mice exhibited a defective host immune response inside the CSF, as evidenced by a substantial abrogation of the expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines (e.g., IL-1β), chemokines, and complement factors in the brain and, hence, an insufficient neutrophil infiltration [45]. By utilizing mice with single or combined deficiencies of cell surface and endosomal TLRs, our group was able to demonstrate that TLR2, TLR4, and TLR11, TLR12 or TLR13 (but not TLR3, TLR7, and TLR9) are crucial for mounting an immune response in the CSF in pneumococcal meningitis [41] (unpublished data). This is deduced from the following constellation of findings: first, infected TLR2-TLR4-double-deficient mice showed a 50 % reduction in CSF leukocyte counts and a selective cytokine production, whereas the single deficiency of neither TLR2 nor TLR4 had any substantial impact on meningeal inflammation. Moreover, additional TLR9 or TLR3-TLR7-TLR9 deficiency did not result in a significant further attenuation of the inflammatory reaction as observed in TLR2-TLR4-double-deficient mice [41] (unpublished data). In addition, infected Unc93b1 mutant mice that lack endosomal TLR signalling (TLR3, TLR7, TLR9, TLR11, TLR12, TLR13) exhibited an inflammatory phenotype comparable to that of TLR2-TLR4-double-deficient mice. Finally, the combined loss of endosomal TLR signalling, TLR2, and TLR4 was accompanied by a reduction of CSF pleocytosis by about 75 % (unpublished data). This reduction is quite similar to that observed in MyD88-deficient mice [45]. The fact that MyD88 deficiency was paralleled by a strong but incomplete inhibition of the host immune response argues for the presence of additional PRRs in the recognition of *S. pneumoniae* in vivo. Genetic association studies showed an increased risk for pneumococcal infections in humans with complement (C) deficiencies [46]. Moreover, studies in animal models demonstrated the importance of an intact C system for a successful host defense against systemic pneumococcal infections like pneumonia and sepsis [47]. Accordingly, in a mouse model of pneumococcal meningitis, mice lacking the complement factors C1q or C3 displayed an enhanced bacterial outgrowth in the brain, which was associated with an attenuated innate immune response [48]. As mentioned above, complement concentrations are rather low in the CSF under normal conditions but increased substantially during the course of meningitis. The increase in C concentrations, however, occurs in a MyD88-dependent manner, arguing against a role of C factors as initial sensors of pneumococcal infection. Other potential sensors for pneumococcal infection of the subarachnoid space include NOD2 and NLRP3, as indicated by in vitro data [43]. This concept is strengthened by findings in mouse models where (1) increases in brain levels of the inflammatory cytokine TNFα and the chemokine CCL3 that were observed after intracerebral *S. pneumoniae* inoculation were virtually absent in NOD2-deficient mice and (2) the infiltration of leukocytes into the subarachnoid space following intracisternal pneumococcal infection was significantly lower in NLRP3-deficient mice than in wild-type mice [43, 44].

All in all, the presence of *S. pneumoniae* in the subarachnoid space seems to be initially recognized by TLR2, TLR4, a currently unidentified endosomal TLR (possibly TLR13) as well as other PRRs like NOD2 and NLRP3. Their engagement leads to the activation of transcription factors like NF-κB [49] and, as a conse-

quence, the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and complement factors [45, 48]. These host mediators, in turn, seem to be critical for the amplification of inflammation in pneumococcal meningitis, as described in the following section.

2.3 Amplification and Propagation of the Immune Response

2.3.1 Role of IL-1 Family Cytokines in Pneumococcal Meningitis

Among the cytokines that have been implicated in the amplification and perpetuation of meningeal inflammation, IL-1 family cytokines are prominent (Fig. 2) (for detailed information about this cytokine family, see [50]). Elevated concentrations of IL-1β and IL-18 were observed in CSF samples withdrawn from patients with bacterial meningitis on hospital admission. High CSF IL-1β (but not IL-18) levels were found to be significantly associated with high CSF leukocyte numbers and an adverse clinical outcome [51, 52]. In animal models, intracisternal injection of recombinant IL-1β was sufficient for inducing meningitis [53, 54], and antibodies directed against IL-1β attenuated meningeal inflammation after intracisternal pneumococcal infection [55]. In line with the latter finding, mice lacking the IL-1 receptor type 1 exhibited less profound inflammatory infiltrates in the leptomeninges and lower brain cytokines levels than wild-type mice in a mouse model of hematogenous pneumococcal meningitis [56]. In this model, IL-18-deficient mice also showed a suppressed inflammatory response, as evidenced by a less profound inflammatory infiltrate around the meninges as well as lower brain cytokine and chemokine concentrations [57]. Accordingly, using a mouse model in which *S. pneumoniae* is instilled directly into the CSF, we observed that (1) IL-1 receptor

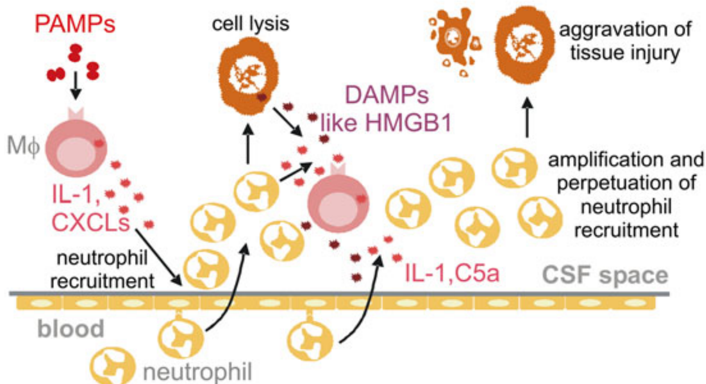


Fig. 2 Schematic diagram of the key steps in the pathophysiological cascade of pneumococcal meningitis. See text for details. *CSF* cerebrospinal fluid space, *PAMPs* pathogen-associated molecular patterns, *DAMPs* danger-associated molecular patterns, *HMGB1* high-mobility group box 1 protein, *IL* interleukin, *C5a* complement component C5a, *CXCLs* chemokines

blockade (by anakinra) significantly attenuated meningeal inflammation and (2) IL-18 neutralization (using recombinant IL-18 binding protein) in addition to IL-1 receptor blockade resulted in a further reduction of CSF pleocytosis [44]. Moreover, mice lacking caspase-1 which is crucial for the generation of active IL-1β and IL-18 showed a strongly diminished inflammatory host response, and treatment of rats with a broad spectrum caspase inhibitor resulted in a marked attenuation of meningeal inflammation [58]. Similarly, Braun et al. reported that this inhibitor also attenuated leukocyte influx into the CSF in rabbits with pneumococcal meningitis [59].

Combined, these data provide substantial evidence for IL-1 family cytokines as key regulators of inflammation. On the one hand, they may boost TLR-induced inflammation by forming a positive feedback loop involving IL-1 receptors and MyD88, the adapter molecule shared by IL-1β, IL-18, and most TLRs. On the other hand, IL-1 family cytokines may contribute to the perpetuation of inflammation. This hypothesis is deduced from our observation that treatment with IL-1β-neutralizing antibodies when started at 21 h after pneumococcal infection (in combination with the antibiotic ceftriaxone) is still effective in reducing meningeal inflammation. In contrast, co-application of ceftriaxone with antibodies directed against both TLR2 and TLR4 had no impact on the host immune response, arguing against a major role of these signalling receptors in established pneumococcal meningitis [60].

2.3.2 Role of the Anaphylatoxin C5a in Pneumococcal Meningitis

Apart from complement opsonins (like C1q or C3b), the complement activation cascade yields soluble factors known as anaphylatoxins (like C3a and C5a) and ends in the formation of the terminal complement complex (C5b-9) [61, 62]. The anaphylatoxins are generally considered pro-inflammatory polypeptides. Their effector functions include chemotaxis and activation of granulocytes, mast cells, and macrophages [63]. C5b-9 causes cytolysis through the formation of the membrane attack complex (MAC), and sub-lytic MAC and soluble C5b-9 also possess a multitude of non-cytolytic immune functions [64]. Markedly elevated C5a and C5b-9 concentrations were detected in the CSF of meningitis patients and in brain lysates of infected mice that correlated with CSF leukocyte counts [60]. In rabbits, intracisternal injection of C5a caused a rapid influx of leukocytes into the CSF [65]. Similarly, intracerebroventricular application of C5b-9 resulted in the production of cytokines (like IL-1β), chemokines, and subsequent accumulation of neutrophils in the CSF [66]. Moreover, the chemotactic activity of CSF samples obtained from rabbits with pneumococcal meningitis could be inhibited by treatment with antibodies to native human C5 [67]. In experiments using mouse strains with selected complement deficiencies, C5a was singled out to be crucial for the propagation of the inflammatory response in pneumococcal meningitis. The deficiency of the receptor for C5a (but not the receptor for C3a or of C6) was associated with a profound reduction of brain cytokine/chemokine expression and in CSF pleocytosis [60]. In addition, treatment of mice with neutralizing antibodies directed against C5,

irrespective if started prior or 24 h after infection, dampened the host immune response, suggesting that C5a acts both as an early and late mediator of inflammation in pneumococcal meningitis.

All in all, as a consequence of release of IL-1 family cytokines and C5a, large numbers of neutrophils are recruited into the subarachnoid space. The recruitment of neutrophils to sites of infection is required for an effective host defense against invading pathogens. However, their defense mechanisms that destroy or digest pathogens can also be deleterious to host tissue.

2.4 Maintenance of the Immune Response

Stressed or injured cells can release alarm signals (so-called danger-associated molecular patterns, DAMPs) that can orchestrate inflammation [68, 69]. Well-known DAMPs include heat shock proteins, S100 proteins, and high-mobility group box 1 protein (HMGB1) [70]. HMGB1 is a ubiquitously expressed, highly conserved nuclear protein with multiple intracellular functions including stabilizing nucleosome structure and facilitating DNA bending [71]. It can be actively secreted by macrophages upon stimulation with PAMPs or pro-inflammatory cytokines (through a nonconventional pathway which requires inflammasome assembly and caspase-1 activation [72]) or passively released from dying cells following nuclear and cell membrane disintegration (for review, see [71, 73, 74]). Extracellular HMGB1 behaves much like a cytokine. HMGB1, by itself and/or by forming complexes with exogenous or endogenous pro-inflammatory molecules, can induce and enhance the production of cytokines and chemokines. In addition, HMGB1 can promote chemotaxis and accumulation of granulocytes at inflammatory sites (for review, see [71, 73, 74]). Recently, two case studies reported that HMGB1 levels were significantly elevated in CSF samples from children with bacterial meningitis as compared to those from children with no or aseptic meningitis [75, 76]. Correspondingly, we detected large quantities of HMGB1 in the CSF of adult patients with pneumococcal meningitis as well as in mice subjected to pneumococcal meningitis [77]. In the mouse model, we further observed a substantial rise in CSF HMGB1 between 24 and 45 h after infection, pointing at a possible role of this protein in advanced rather than in early stages of the disease. Accordingly, in the mouse model, treatment with the HMGB1 antagonists, ethyl pyruvate or Box A protein, had no effect on the development of meningitis but led to better resolution of inflammation during antibiotic therapy. Additional experiments using gene-deficient mice and murine neutrophils provided evidence that HMGB1 acts as a chemoattractant for neutrophils in a RAGE (receptor for advanced glycosylation end products)-dependent fashion. Moreover, by using macrophages, we observed that the release of HMGB1 from these cells upon challenge with *S. pneumoniae* is passive in nature. All in all, these data suggest that HMGB1, presumably released from dying cells, acts as a propagator of inflammation in pneumococcal meningitis. This may provide an explanation for the empiric observation that inflammation can persist over days even though

antibiotic therapy sterilizes the CSF quickly and is paralleled by a fast reduction in CSF pneumococcal fragments (within hours) [78–82]. This delay in the resolution of inflammation may be the consequence of a vicious cycle in which inflammation-induced cell injury leads to the release of endogenous DAMPs that drive the inflammatory response, causing further damage.

3 Mechanisms of Brain Injury in Pneumococcal Meningitis

Accumulation of neutrophils at sites of infection is required for an effective host defense. However, activated neutrophils secrete a large arsenal of cytotoxic agents which can also damage host cells. Over 50 years ago, Johnson and colleagues [13] were the first to hypothesize that, in pneumococcal meningitis, the inflammatory response does more harm than good. The validity of this hypothesis was established by studies in animal models of the disease. First strong evidence for a harmful role of neutrophils in bacterial meningitis came from studies with antibodies against adhesion-promoting receptors of neutrophils. In a rabbit model, intravenous injection of anti-CD18 antibodies was reported to effectively block the development of pleocytosis in the CSF of animals challenged intracisternally with living *S. pneumoniae* or pneumococcal cell wall components [30]. This effect was associated with protection from blood–brain barrier injury. Therapy with anti-CD18 antibodies also prevented development of brain edema and death in animals infected with a lethal dose of *S. pneumoniae* [30]. Similarly, in a mouse model, parenteral treatment with anti-CD18 antibodies effectively inhibited leukocyte recruitment to the CSF and attenuated hippocampal injury 24 h after instillation of pneumococcal cell wall components into the lumbar spinal channel [26]. These findings were strengthened by results of mouse studies in which neutrophils were depleted by cell-specific antibodies [26, 60, 83]. The elimination of neutrophils resulted in a dramatic reduction of meningeal inflammation, as indicated by markedly lower CSF leukocyte numbers and brain cytokine concentrations. This was paralleled by significant reductions in intracranial pressure, blood–brain barrier breaching, and intracerebral bleeding (due to vasculitis) [44, 60, 83]. Combined, these studies implicated neutrophils to be major effector cells of brain injury in pneumococcal meningitis.

Among the effector molecules in the neutrophils' arsenal are strong oxidants like peroxynitrite and proteolytic enzymes such as matrix metalloproteinase (MMP). Oxygen radicals can exert a vast variety of cytotoxic effects, e.g., through lipid peroxidation, DNA strand breakage, or mitochondrial damage. Oxidative alterations to vital macromolecules such as membrane phospholipids, DNA, or proteins were detected in brain samples obtained from both patients who died from meningitis and in animal models of meningitis (for review, see [84]). In humans with bacterial meningitis, high-grade oxidative stress as indicated by high CSF levels of biomarkers of oxidative stress such as nitrotyrosine was significantly associated with an adverse outcome of the disease [85]. Accordingly, studies in rodent models provided substantial evidence that antioxidant therapy can be protective against

meningitis-associated brain injury (for review, see [84]). Besides oxygen radicals, proteolytic enzymes like MMP are released from activated neutrophils. Abnormal production and activation of these proteases can result in blood–brain barrier breaching and neuronal cell death [86]. High concentrations of MMP-9 were found in CSF samples of patients and animals with bacterial meningitis (for review, see [87]). Thereby, CSF MMP-9 concentrations were significantly higher in patients who developed neurologic sequelae than those who fully recovered. Moreover, experimental studies conducted in animal models of pneumococcal meningitis showed that MMP inhibitors (like GM6001 and BB-1101) are capable of reducing brain damage, neurologic sequelae, and mortality from pneumococcal meningitis.

Taken together, meningitis-associated brain damage is predominantly due to the massive accumulation of neutrophils inside the central nervous system whose antimicrobial weapons, namely, oxidants and MMPs, cause collateral damage to host cells.

4 Potential Targets for Therapy

New ideas for adjunctive therapy have emerged from studies on the mechanisms underlying meningitis-associated brain pathology. The principle behind novel treatment strategies is to reduce CNS inflammation by interfering at critical steps of the inflammation cascade which compromise (1) release of inflammatory bacterial products (PAMPs), (2) recognition of these PAMPs, (3) amplification and perpetuation of the immune response, as well as, (4) generation and release of cytotoxic agents (see also reviews [15, 88]). The following section will highlight two promising approaches for adjunctive therapy of pneumococcal meningitis, namely, the coadministration of non-bacteriolytic antibiotics as well as neutralizing antibodies directed against C5.

4.1 Limiting the Release of Inflammatory Bacterial Products

During conventional treatment of pneumococcal meningitis with β-lactam antibiotics, large amounts of pneumococcal cell wall degradation products are liberated into the CSF. As a consequence, the inflammatory host reaction is boosted, potentially causing additional harm to host tissues. Therefore, non-bacteriolytic antibiotics like daptomycin may represent a promising option for meningitis therapy. Daptomycin appears to insert into the cell membrane of Gram-positive cells, leading to pore formation and cellular depolarization, resulting in an arrest of DNA, RNA, and protein synthesis, and subsequently in non-lytic cell death [89]. In a rabbit model of pneumococcal meningitis, daptomycin monotherapy was superior to ceftriaxone monotherapy and was highly efficacious in sterilizing the CSF [82]. Administration of dexamethasone prior to daptomycin affected the antibacterial activity of

daptomycin only marginally, either as monotherapy or combined with ceftriaxone, although the penetration of daptomycin into inflamed meninges was significantly reduced by two-thirds [90, 91]. In an infant rat model of pneumococcal meningitis, daptomycin monotherapy was demonstrated to clear pneumococci more rapidly from the CSF than ceftriaxone, to attenuate CSF inflammation, and to prevent the development of cortical injury [92, 93]. Since daptomycin (due to a lack of efficacy in pneumococcal pneumonia) is not a candidate for monotherapy of pneumococcal meningitis, supplementary studies assessed whether combining daptomycin with ceftriaxone is superior to ceftriaxone monotherapy. In an infant rat model, the combination therapy was accompanied with reduced inflammation, less brain damage, and improved hearing capacity [94]. The neuroprotective efficacy of this therapeutic approach was recently confirmed by our group in an adult mouse model (unpublished data). Open questions like the comparison of the antibiotic co-treatment with co-therapies consisting of dexamethasone and ceftriaxone (current standard therapy) as well as of daptomycin, dexamethasone, and ceftriaxone underline the need of further experimental investigations before clinical trials can be attempted. Moreover, human data on the CSF penetration of daptomycin are scarce. A recent study reported that mean concentrations of daptomycin in the CSF after a single intravenous dose (10 mg/kg) were significantly lower in patients than that previously reported in animal studies [95]. In order to better characterize the CSF penetration of this drug, additional pharmacokinetic studies evaluating multiple and/or higher dosages of daptomycin are necessary in humans, especially in those suffering from pneumococcal meningitis.

4.2 Neutralizing Endogenous C5a Activity

The anaphylatoxin C5a was identified to be a key player in the inflammatory cascade of pneumococcal meningitis. Both genetic deficiency of the receptor of C5a and pharmacologic neutralization of C5 resulted in a marked reduction of meningeal inflammation but also of meningitis-associated neuropathologic alterations like blood–brain barrier disruption or cerebral hemorrhages [60]. Interestingly, in adults with bacterial meningitis (including pneumococcal meningitis), high CSF C5a levels were associated with death and an unfavorable outcome [60]. Therefore, C5a was hypothesized to be a promising target for adjunctive therapy in pneumococcal meningitis. In line with this hypothesis, adjuvant treatment with a monoclonal antibody directed against C5 was completely protective against death due to pneumococcal meningitis in an adult mouse model. Moreover, this treatment strategy was effective in dampening meningitis-induced neuropathologic alterations. Its efficacy was clearly superior to that of adjuvant dexamethasone [60]. Since anti-C5 antibodies are already licensed for clinical use (e.g., in patients with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria), adjuvant therapy with anti-C5 antibodies may be a promising therapeutic approach for patients with bacterial meningitis. However, this treatment

approach still needs to be evaluated in meningitis models that measure neurologic (long-term) sequelae and/or use other meningitis pathogens (especially *Neisseria meningitidis* which can be killed by the membrane attack complex whose formation is blocked by anti-C5 antibodies). Moreover, data on its efficacy in combination with dexamethasone are lacking.

5 Conclusion

During the past two decades, great progress has been made in our understanding on the immunopathogenesis of pneumococcal meningitis. Mechanisms of immune activation, amplification, and perpetuation just as well as causes of meningitis-associated brain damage have been largely unveiled. This knowledge provides the basis for the development of novel strategies for treatment of this disease. Two novel therapeutic approaches have been recently evaluated in animal models of pneumococcal meningitis, namely, killing bacteria without lysing them and blocking the pro-inflammatory activity of C5a in combination with antibiotic therapy. Early results from experimental studies are very encouraging. However, there is still a difficult way to go until the ultimate goal of helping patients with meningitis is reached. First of all, animal studies are needed to assess the efficacy of these strategies when applied together with steroids—a prerequisite for clinical trials as steroids are part of the standard therapy for bacterial meningitis. Moreover, it has to be investigated whether and how novel therapeutic strategies affect the outcome of meningitis due to pathogens other than pneumococci as well as in special patient groups. This appears necessary in consideration of the observation that steroids are ineffective in less developed countries or in patients suffering from meningitis due to pathogens other than *S. pneumoniae*. Additionally, different pharmacologic issues, like the CSF penetration of daptomycin in humans, have to be clarified. It has also to be checked whether a successful treatment of bacterial meningitis requires the simultaneous targeting of multiple steps of the pathophysiologic cascade, like killing bacteria softly and blocking critical steps in the inflammatory cascade. Even when a therapeutic approach has been proven highly beneficial in animal models, its translation into the clinical practice will be challenging since the recruitment of sufficient number of patients requires a multicenter study design. Moreover, patient cohorts are usually relatively heterogeneous (with regard to the causative agent or the degree and type of comorbidities). However, the promising data from animal models, coupled with the still unfavorable prognosis in humans, should be incentive enough for researchers and physicians to follow this path all the way to the end.

Acknowledgment The authors' research is funded by the German Research Foundation, the German Ministry for Research and Education, the Else Kroener-Fresenius-Foundation, the Research and Education Program of the University of Munich, and Novartis Pharmaceuticals.

References

1. World Health Organization. Global Health Observatory: Number of suspected meningitis cases and deaths reported. http://www.who.int/gho/epidemic_diseases/meningitis/suspected_cases_deaths_text/en/2013.
2. World Health Organization. Epidemic meningococcal disease. WHO Fact Sheet 105, 1998.
3. Schuchat A, Robinson K, Wenger JD, Harrison LH, Farley M, Reingold AL, et al. Bacterial meningitis in the United States in 1995. Active Surveillance Team. N Engl J Med. 1997;337:970–6.
4. Thigpen MC, Whitney CG, Messonnier NE, Zell ER, Lynfield R, Hadler JL, et al. Bacterial meningitis in the United States, 1998–2007. N Engl J Med. 2011;364:2016–25.
5. De Gans J, Van de Beek D. Dexamethasone in adults with bacterial meningitis. N Engl J Med. 2002;347:1549–56.
6. Schmidt H, Heimann B, Djukic M, Mazurek C, Fels C, Wallesch CW, et al. Neuropsychological sequelae of bacterial and viral meningitis. Brain. 2006;129:333–45.
7. Ramakrishnan M, Ulland AJ, Steinhardt LC, Moisi JC, Were F, Levine OS. Sequelae due to bacterial meningitis among African children: a systematic literature review. BMC Med. 2009;7:47.
8. Kastenbauer S, Pfister HW. Pneumococcal meningitis in adults: spectrum of complications and prognostic factors in a series of 87 cases. Brain. 2003;126:1015–25.
9. Van de Beek D, De Gans J, Spanjaard L, Weisfelt M, Reitsma JB, Vermeulen M. Clinical features and prognostic factors in adults with bacterial meningitis. N Engl J Med. 2004;351:1849–59.
10. Katchanov J, Siebert E, Endres M, Klingebiel R. Focal parenchymal lesions in community-acquired bacterial meningitis in adults: a clinico-radiological study. Neuroradiology. 2009;51: 723–9.
11. Pfister HW, Feiden W, Einhäupl KM. Spectrum of complications during bacterial meningitis in adults. Arch Neurol. 1993;505:575–81.
12. Schut ES, Lucas MJ, Brouwer MC, Vergouwen MD, van der Ende A, van de Beek D. Cerebral infarction in adults with bacterial meningitis. Neurocrit Care. 2011;16:421–7.
13. Perry FE, Elson CJ, Greenham LW, Catterall JR. Interference with the oxidative response of neutrophils by *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. Thorax. 1993;48:364–9.
14. Brouwer MC, McIntyre P, de Gans J, Prasad K, van de Beek D. Corticosteroids for acute bacterial meningitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2010;9, CD004405.
15. Van de Beek D, Brouwer MC, Thwaites GE, Tunkel AR. Advances in treatment of bacterial meningitis. Lancet. 2012;380:1693–702.
16. Johnston M, Zakharov A, Papaiconomou C, Salmasi G, Armstrong D. Evidence of connections between cerebrospinal fluid and nasal lymphatic vessels in humans, non-human primates and other mammalian species. Cerebrospinal Fluid Res. 2004;1:2.
17. Dujardin BC, Driedijk PC, Roijers AF, Out TA. The determination of the complement components C1q, C4 and C3 in serum and cerebrospinal fluid by radioimmunoassay. J Immunol Methods. 1985;80:227–37.
18. Stahel PF, Nadal D, Pfister HW, Paradisis PM, Barnum SR. Complement C3 and factor B cerebrospinal fluid concentrations in bacterial and aseptic meningitis. Lancet. 1997;349: 1886–7.
19. Pachter JS, De Vries HE, Fabry Z. The blood-brain barrier and its role in immune privilege in the central nervous system. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2003;62:593–604.
20. Smith H, Bannister B, O'Shea MJ. Cerebrospinal fluid immunoglobulins in meningitis. Lancet. 1977;2:591–3.
21. Pashenkov M, Link H. Dendritic cells and immune responses in the central nervous system. Trends Immunol. 2002;23:69–70.
22. Guillemin GJ, Brew BJ. Microglia, macrophages, perivascular macrophages, and pericytes: a review of function and identification. J Leukoc Biol. 2004;75:388–97.
23. Niederkorn JY. See no evil, hear no evil, do no evil: the lessons of immune privilege. Nat Immunol. 2006;7:354–9.

24. Gordon LB, Nolan SC, Ksander BR, Knopf PM, Harling-Berg CJ. Normal cerebrospinal fluid suppresses the in vitro development of cytotoxic T cells: role of the brain microenvironment in CNS immune regulation. J Neuroimmunol. 1998;88:77–84.
25. Nagai A, Terashima M, Sheikh AM, Notsu Y, Shimode K, Yamaguchi S, et al. Involvement of cystatin C in pathophysiology of CNS diseases. Front Biosci. 2008;13:3470–9.
26. Hoffmann O, Priller J, Prozorovski T, Schulze-Topphoff U, Baeva N, Lunemann JD, et al. TRAIL limits excessive host immune responses in bacterial meningitis. J Clin Invest. 2007;117:2004–13.
27. Small PM, Tauber MG, Hackbarth CJ, Sande MA. Influence of body temperature on bacterial growth rates in experimental pneumococcal meningitis in rabbits. Infect Immun. 1986;52:484–7.
28. Tuomanen E, Tomasz A, Hengstler B, Zak O. The relative role of bacterial cell wall and capsule in the induction of inflammation in pneumococcal meningitis. J Infect Dis. 1985;151:535–40.
29. Tuomanen E, Hengstler B, Zak O, Tomasz A. Induction of meningeal inflammation by diverse bacterial cell walls. Eur J Clin Microbiol. 1986;5:682–4.
30. Tuomanen EI, Saukkonen K, Sande S, Cioffe C, Wright SD. Reduction of inflammation, tissue damage, and mortality in bacterial meningitis in rabbits treated with monoclonal antibodies against adhesion-promoting receptors of leukocytes. J Exp Med. 1989;170:959–69.
31. Schneider O, Michel U, Zysk G, Dubuis O, Nau R. Clinical outcome in pneumococcal meningitis correlates with CSF lipoteichoic acid concentrations. Neurology. 1999;53:1584–7.
32. Yoshimura A, Lien E, Ingalls RR, Tuomanen E, Dziarski R, Golenbock D. Cutting edge: recognition of Gram-positive bacterial cell wall components by the innate immune system occurs via Toll-like receptor 2. J Immunol. 1999;163:1–5.
33. Koedel U, Angele B, Rupprecht T, Wagner H, Roggenkamp A, Pfister HW, et al. Toll-like receptor 2 participates in mediation of immune response in experimental pneumococcal meningitis. J Immunol. 2003;170:438–44.
34. Schroder NW, Morath S, Alexander C, Hamann L, Hartung T, Zahringer U, et al. Lipoteichoic acid (LTA) of S. pneumoniae and S. aureus activates immune cells via toll-like receptor (TLR)-2, LPS binding protein (LBP) and CD14 while TLR-4 and MD-2 are not involved. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:15587–94.
35. Malley R, Henneke P, Morse SC, Cieslewicz MJ, Lipsitch M, Thompson CM, et al. Recognition of pneumolysin by Toll-like receptor 4 confers resistance to pneumococcal infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100:1966–71.
36. Shoma S, Tsuchiya K, Kawamura I, Nomura T, Hara H, Uchiyama R, et al. Critical involvement of pneumolysin in production of IL-1α and caspase-1-dependent cytokines in infection with Streptococcus pneumoniae in vitro: a novel function of pneumolysin in caspase-1 activation. Infect Immun. 2008;76:1547–57.
37. McNeela EA, Burke A, Neill DR, Baxter C, Fernandes VE, Ferreira D, et al. Pneumolysin activates the NLRP3 inflammasome and promotes proinflammatory cytokines independently of TLR4. PLoS Pathog. 2010;6:e1001191.
38. Witzenrath M, Pache F, Lorenz D, Koppe U, Gutbier B, Tabeling C, et al. The NLRP3 inflammasome is differentially activated by pneumolysin variants and contributes to host defense in pneumococcal pneumonia. J Immunol. 2011;187:434–40.
39. Mogensen TH, Paludan SR, Kilian M, Ostergaard L. Live Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, and Neisseria meningitidis activate the inflammatory response through Toll-like receptors 2, 4, and 9 in species-specific patterns. J Leukoc Biol. 2006;80:267–77.
40. Oldenburg M, Kruger A, Ferstl R, Kaufmann A, Nees G, Sigmund A, et al. TLR13 recognizes bacterial 23S rRNA devoid of erythromycin resistance-forming modification. Science. 2012;337:1111–5.
41. Klein M, Angele B, Pfister HW, Wagner H, Koedel U, Kirschning CJ. Detection of pneumococcal infection of the central nervous system depends upon TLR2 and TLR4. J Infect Dis. 2008;198:1028–36.
42. Opitz B, Puschel A, Schmeck B, Hocke AC, Rosseau S, Hammerschmidt S, et al. Nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain proteins are innate immune receptors for internalized Streptococcus pneumoniae. J Biol Chem. 2004;279:36426–32.

43. Liu X, Chauhan VS, Young AB, Marriott I. NOD2 mediates inflammatory responses of primary murine glia to Streptococcus pneumoniae. Glia. 2010;58:839–47.
44. Hoegen T, Tremel N, Klein M, Angele B, Wagner H, Kirschning C, et al. The NLRP3 inflammasome contributes to brain injury in pneumococcal meningitis and is activated through ATP-dependent lysosomal cathepsin B release. J Immunol. 2011;187:5440–51.
45. Koedel U, Rupprecht T, Angele B, Heesemann J, Wagner H, Pfister HW, et al. MyD88 is required for mounting a robust host immune response to Streptococcus pneumoniae in the CNS. Brain. 2004;127:1437–45.
46. Brouwer MC, de Gans J, Heckenberg SG, Zwinderman AH, van der Poll T, van de Beek D. Host genetic susceptibility to pneumococcal and meningococcal disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet Infect Dis. 2009;9:31–44.
47. Bogaert D, Thompson CM, Trzcinski K, Malley R, Lipsitch M. The role of complement in innate and adaptive immunity to pneumococcal colonization and sepsis in a murine model. Vaccine. 2010;28:681–5.
48. Rupprecht TA, Angele B, Klein M, Heesemann J, Pfister HW, Botto M, et al. Complement C1q and C3 are critical for the innate immune response to Streptococcus pneumoniae in the central nervous system. J Immunol. 2007;178:1861–9.
49. Koedel U, Bayerlein I, Paul R, Sporer B, Pfister HW. Pharmacological interference with NF-B activation attenuates central nervous system complications in experimental pneumococcal meningitis. J Infect Dis. 2000;182:1437–45.
50. Dinarello CA. Immunological and inflammatory functions of the interleukin-1 family. Annu Rev Immunol. 2009;27:519–50.
51. Mustafa MM, Lebel MH, Ramilo O, Olsen KD, Reisch JS, Beutler B, et al. Correlation of interleukin-1 beta and cachectin concentrations in cerebrospinal fluid and outcome from bacterial meningitis. J Pediatr. 1989;115:208–13.
52. Fassbender K, Mielke O, Bertsch T, Muehlhauser F, Hennerici M, Kurimoto M, et al. Interferon-gamma-inducing factor (IL-18) and interferon-gamma in inflammatory CNS diseases. Neurology. 1999;53:1104–6.
53. Quagliarello VJ, Wispelwey B, Long WJJ, Scheld WM. Recombinant human interleukin-1 induces meningitis and blood-brain barrier injury in the rat. Characterization and comparison with tumor necrosis factor. J Clin Invest. 1991;87:1360–6.
54. Ramilo O, Saez-Llorens X, Mertsola J, Jafari H, Olsen KD, Hansen EJ, et al. Tumor necrosis factor alpha/cachectin and interleukin 1 beta initiate meningeal inflammation. J Exp Med. 1990;172:497–507.
55. Saukkonen K, Sande S, Cioffe C, Wolpe S, Sherrry B, Cerami A, et al. The role of cytokines in the generation of inflammation and tissue damage in experimental pneumococcal meningitis. J Exp Med. 1990;171:439–48.
56. Zwijnenburg PJ, Van der Poll T, Florquin S, Roord JJ, Van Furth AM. IL-1 receptor type 1 gene-deficient mice demonstrate an impaired host defense against pneumococcal meningitis. J Immunol. 2003;170:4724–30.
57. Zwijnenburg PJ, Van der Poll T, Florquin S, Akira S, Takeda K, Roord JJ, et al. Interleukin-18 gene-deficient mice show enhanced defense and reduced inflammation during pneumococcal meningitis. J Neuroimmunol. 2003;138:31–7.
58. Koedel U, Winkler F, Angele B, Fontana A, Flavell RA, Pfister HW. Role of caspase-1 in experimental pneumococcal meningitis: evidence from pharmacologic caspase inhibition and caspase-1-deficient mice. Ann Neurol. 2002;51:319–29.
59. Braun JS, Novak R, Herzog K-H, Bodner SM, Cleveland JL, Tuomanen EI. Neuroprotection by a caspase inhibitor in acute bacterial meningitis. Nat Med. 1999;5:298–302.
60. Woehrl B, Brouwer MC, Murr C, Heckenberg SG, Baas F, Pfister HW, et al. Complement component 5 contributes to poor disease outcome in humans and mice with pneumococcal meningitis. J Clin Invest. 2011;121:3943–53.
61. Ehrnthaller C, Ignatius A, Gebhard F, Huber-Lang M. New insights of an old defense system: structure, function, and clinical relevance of the complement system. Mol Med. 2011;17:317–29.

62. Trouw LA, Daha MR. Role of complement in innate immunity and host defense. Immunol Lett. 2011;138:35–7.
63. Klos A, Tenner AJ, Johswich KO, Ager RR, Reis ES, Kohl J. The role of the anaphylatoxins in health and disease. Mol Immunol. 2009;46:2753–66.
64. Woodruff TM, Nandakumar KS, Tedesco F. Inhibiting the C5-C5a receptor axis. Mol Immunol. 2011;48:1631–42.
65. Kadurugamuwa JL, Hengstler B, Bray MA, Zak O. Inhibition of complement-factor-C5a-induced inflammatory reactions by prostaglandin E2 in experimental meningitis. J Infect Dis. 1989;160:715–9.
66. Casarsa C, De Luigi A, Pausa M, De Simoni MG, Tedesco F. Intracerebroventricular injection of the terminal complement complex causes inflammatory reaction in the rat brain. Eur J Immunol. 2003;33:1260–70.
67. Ernst JD, Hartiala KT, Goldstein IM, Sande MA. Complement (C5)-derived chemotactic activity accounts for accumulation of polymorphonuclear leukocytes in cerebrospinal fluid of rabbits with pneumococcal meningitis. Infect Immun. 1984;46:81–6.
68. Matzinger P. Friendly and dangerous signals: is the tissue in control? Nat Immunol. 2007;8:11–3.
69. Kono H, Rock KL. How dying cells alert the immune system to danger. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8:279–89.
70. Bianchi ME. DAMPs, PAMPs and alarmins: all we need to know about danger. J Leukoc Biol. 2007;81:1–5.
71. Andersson U, Tracey KJ. HMGB1 is a therapeutic target for sterile inflammation and infection. Annu Rev Immunol. 2011;29:139–62.
72. Lamkanfi M, Sarkar A, Vande WL, Vitari AC, Amer AO, Wewers MD, et al. Inflammasome-dependent release of the alarmin HMGB1 in endotoxemia. J Immunol. 2010;185:4385–92.
73. Bianchi ME. HMGB1 loves company. J Leukoc Biol. 2009;86:573–6.
74. Harris HE, Andersson U, Pisetsky DS. HMGB1: a multifunctional alarmin driving autoimmune and inflammatory disease. Nat Rev Rheumatol. 2012;8:195–202.
75. Tang D, Kang R, Cao L, Zhang G, Yu Y, Xiao W, et al. A pilot study to detect high mobility group box 1 and heat shock protein 72 in cerebrospinal fluid of pediatric patients with meningitis. Crit Care Med. 2008;36:291–5.
76. Asano T, Ichiki K, Koizumi S, Kaizu K, Hatori T, Mashiko K, et al. High mobility group box 1 in cerebrospinal fluid from several neurological diseases at early time points. Int J Neurosci. 2011;121:480–4.
77. Höhne C, Wenzel M, Angele B, Hammerschmidt S, Häcker H, Klein M, et al. High mobility group box 1 prolongs inflammation and worsens disease in pneumococcal meningitis. Brain. 2013. doi:10.1093/brain/awt064.
78. Blazer S, Berant M, Alon U. Bacterial meningitis. Effect of antibiotic treatment on cerebrospinal fluid. Am J Clin Pathol. 1983;80:386–7.
79. Viallon A, Guyomarc'h P, Guyomarc'h S, Tardy B, Robert F, Marjollet O, et al. Decrease in serum procalcitonin levels over time during treatment of acute bacterial meningitis. Crit Care. 2005;9:R344–50.
80. Kanegaye JT, Soliemanzadeh P, Bradley JS. Lumbar puncture in pediatric bacterial meningitis: defining the time interval for recovery of cerebrospinal fluid pathogens after parenteral antibiotic pretreatment. Pediatrics. 2001;108:1169–74.
81. Gerber J, Pohl K, Sander V, Bunkowski S, Nau R. Rifampin followed by ceftriaxone for experimental meningitis decreases lipoteichoic acid concentrations in cerebrospinal fluid and reduces neuronal damage in comparison to ceftriaxone alone. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2003;47:1313–7.
82. Stucki A, Cottagnoud M, Winkelmann V, Schaffner T, Cottagnoud P. Daptomycin produces an enhanced bactericidal activity compared to ceftriaxone, measured by [3H]choline release in the cerebrospinal fluid, in experimental meningitis due to a penicillin-resistant pneumococcal strain without lysing its cell wall. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:2249–52.

83. Koedel U, Frankenberg T, Kirschnek S, Obermaier B, Hacker H, Paul R, et al. Apoptosis is essential for neutrophil functional shutdown and determines tissue damage in experimental pneumococcal meningitis. PLoS Pathog. 2009;5:e1000461.
84. Klein M, Koedel U, Pfister HW. Oxidative stress in pneumococcal meningitis: a future target for adjunctive therapy? Prog Neurobiol. 2006;80:269–80.
85. Kastenbauer S, Koedel U, Becker BF, Pfister HW. Oxidative stress in bacterial meningitis in humans. Neurology. 2002;58:186–91.
86. Rosenberg GA. Matrix metalloproteinases and their multiple roles in neurodegenerative diseases. Lancet Neurol. 2009;8:205–16.
87. Leppert D, Lindberg RL, Kappos L, Leib SL. Matrix metalloproteinases: multifunctional effectors of inflammation in multiple sclerosis and bacterial meningitis. Brain Res Brain Res Rev. 2001;36:249–57.
88. Woehrl B, Klein M, Grandgirard D, Koedel U, Leib S. Bacterial meningitis: current therapy and possible future treatment options. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2011;9:1053–65.
89. Straus SK, Hancock RE. Mode of action of the new antibiotic for Gram-positive pathogens daptomycin: comparison with cationic antimicrobial peptides and lipopeptides. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2006;1758:1215–23.
90. Egermann U, Stanga Z, Ramin A, Acosta F, Stucki A, Gerber P, et al. Combination of daptomycin plus ceftriaxone is more active than vancomycin plus ceftriaxone in experimental meningitis after addition of dexamethasone. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2009;53:3030–3.
91. Mook-Kanamori BB, Rouse MS, Kang CI, van de Beek D, Steckelberg JM, Patel R. Daptomycin in experimental murine pneumococcal meningitis. BMC Infect Dis. 2009;9:50.
92. Grandgirard D, Schurch C, Cottagnoud P, Leib SL. Prevention of brain injury by the nonbacteriolytic antibiotic daptomycin in experimental pneumococcal meningitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2007;51:2173–8.
93. Grandgirard D, Oberson K, Buhlmann A, Gaumann R, Leib SL. Attenuation of cerebrospinal fluid inflammation by the non-bacteriolytic antibiotic daptomycin vs. ceftriaxone in experimental pneumococcal meningitis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2010;54:1323–6.
94. Ramos TN, Wohler JE, Barnum SR. Deletion of both the C3a and C5a receptors fails to protect against experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Neurosci Lett. 2009;467:234–6.
95. Kullar R, Chin JN, Edwards DJ, Parker D, Coplin WM, Rybak MJ. Pharmacokinetics of single-dose daptomycin in patients with suspected or confirmed neurological infections. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2011;55:3505–9.

Cerebral Malaria

Gregory S. Park and Chandy C. John

Abstract Cerebral malaria (CM), defined as the presence of *P. falciparum* asexual stages on peripheral blood smear in a person with coma and no other cause for encephalopathy, is estimated to affect more than 800,000 people a year and has a 15–20 % mortality rate. CM predominantly affects children <5 years of age in Africa, but in Southeast Asia it is more common in adolescents and adults. Approximately 25 % of African children with CM develop long-term cognitive impairment. The pathogenesis of cerebral malaria appears to involve several components. The primary factor in pathogenesis of CM is thought to be sequestration, a blockage of microcirculatory vessels in the brain by parasitized red blood cells, along with lesser numbers of leukocytes and platelets. Other factors that appear to be involved in pathogenesis include systemic and central nervous system (CNS) production of proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines, including tumor necrosis factor, interferon-γ, and RANTES; release of free heme during hemolysis; endothelial activation leading to blood–brain barrier breakdown; CNS nitric oxide production; and genetic polymorphisms (e.g., sickle cell trait) that alter these responses or protect in other ways from severe disease. Murine models of cerebral malaria have provided new insights into the disease, but the difference in the parasite species and the host response has limited translation of findings from murine models into human CM studies. Nonhuman primate models are closer to human

G.S. Park
Division of Global Pediatrics, University of Minnesota Medical School,
2001 6TH ST SE, 3-206 MTRF, Minneapolis, MN 55455, USA
e-mail: parkx479@umn.edu

C.C. John, M.D., M.P.H. (✉)
Division of Global Pediatrics, University of Minnesota Medical School,
717 Delaware St SE, Rm 366, Minneapolis, MN 55414, USA
e-mail: ccj@umn.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_19, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

disease, but are limited by cost and ethical concerns. Therapies currently being studied for adjunctive therapy in CM include arginine (a donor of nitric oxide), inhaled nitric oxide, and recombinant erythropoietin. The potential benefits and harm of each therapy require close study, as many areas of CM pathogenesis remain unclear. Further studies are required, particularly in human disease, to better understand pathogenesis so that effective adjunctive therapy for this illness can be developed.

Keywords Cerebral malaria • *Plasmodium falciparum* • Human • Animal • Murine • Experimental • Model • Inflammation • Sequestration

Abbreviations

ANG1	Angiopoietin-1
ANG2	Angiopoietin-2
BBB	Blood–brain barrier
CM	Cerebral malaria
CNS	Central nervous system
CSF	Cerebral spinal fluid
EC	Endothelial cell
ECM	Experimental cerebral malaria
EDHF	Endothelium-derived hyperpolarization factor
EPO	Erythropoietin
ET-1	Endothelin-1
G6PD	Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase
GPI	Glycosylphosphatidylinositol
HO	Heme oxygenase
ICAM-1	Intercellular adhesion molecule-1
iNOS	Inducible nitric oxide synthase
LT	Lymphotoxin
MT	Metallothionein
NK	Natural killer
NO	Nitric oxide
P	Plasmodium
PfEMP-1	*P. falciparum* erythrocyte membrane protein-1
pRBC	Parasitized red blood cell
SNP	Single nucleotide polymorphisms
TLR	Toll-like receptor
VCAM-1	Vascular cell-adhesion molecule-1
VWF	von Willebrand factor
WHO	World Health Organization

1 Introduction

Five *Plasmodium* parasites have been implicated in causing malaria in humans: *P. falciparum*, *P. vivax*, *P. ovale*, *P. malariae*, and *P. knowlesi*. Of these, it is estimated that 90 % of cases involve infections with *P. falciparum* [1]. There were an estimated 1.24 million deaths [2] and 219 million cases of malaria in 2010 [1], and 58 % of deaths were in children less than 5 years old [2].

Cerebral malaria (CM) is among the deadliest forms of severe malaria, with mortality of 15–20 % [3]. CM is clinically defined as coma with the presence of asexual forms of *P. falciparum* on peripheral blood smears and no other cause of encephalopathy [4, 5]. *P. falciparum* infections are confined to the intravascular space of the brain, and there is no cerebral spinal fluid (CSF) leukocytosis in children with CM, though proinflammatory cytokines are present [6]. In this respect, CM differs from viral or bacterial CNS infections [4]. Cognitive impairments and neurological deficits afflict children who survive CM. Neurological consequences of CM include visual and hearing impairments, hemiparesis, ataxia, and speech and language impairments, which occur in 25–40 % of children at the time of discharge, but resolve in all but ~4 % of children by 6-month follow-up. Twenty-five percent of children who survive CM survivors have evidence of long-term cognitive impairments and neurological deficits, including spasticity, behavior problems, and epilepsy [7–10]. In adults that recover from CM, <5 % have neurological deficits, and the deficits are different from those observed in children. CM primarily affects children in sub-Saharan Africa but typically affects adolescents and adults in Southeast Asia. The clinical features of CM (other than coma) may differ between children and adults, and those clinical signs that are shared typically vary in frequency [7, 11]. The pathogenesis of CM is not completely understood, but is thought to involve the intersection of the immune response to *P. falciparum* replication and the sequestration of infected and uninfected erythrocytes in the microvasculature [12]. The mechanisms that are involved in the pathogenesis of CM are broadly categorized into mechanical obstruction, cytokine responses, inflammation, and hemostasis.

Cerebral capillary sequestration and retinopathy are associated with fatal CM and are a hallmark of the brain pathology of children who die of CM [12]. Sequestration of parasitized red blood cells (pRBCs) occurs in vital organs, including the brain (gray and white matter), kidney, heart, lung, and intestine [12, 13]. Additionally, autopsy studies of the brains from patients diagnosed with CM have shown lymphocyte margination of capillary endothelial cells (ECs) and lymphocytes and monocytes extravasating into the interstitium [14]. Children in sub-Saharan Africa with CM sequester platelets and leukocytes in addition to pRBCs [15], while in adults in Southeast Asia, pRBCs in the brain microvasculature are linked to coma and axonal damage [16, 17]. Several factors contribute to sequestration. First and foremost is the cytoadherence of pRBCs to ECs through *P. falciparum* erythrocyte membrane protein-1 (PfEMP-1) interactions with host receptors such as intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1), vascular cell-adhesion molecule-1 (VCAM-1), CD36, CD31, NCAM, and gC1qR/HABP1/p32 [18–20].

Binding of pRBCs and/or proinflammatory cytokine stimulation to ECs results in their activation and the release of a host of molecules that can lead to a dysregulation of hemostasis and a procoagulant state [21, 22]. In addition, uninfected RBCs can adhere to pRBCs to form rosettes [23], pRBCs can bind platelets to form clumps [24, 25], and upon infection there is a decrease in pRBC deformability due to alterations in the cytoplasmic skeleton, changes in membrane fluidity, and a more spherical morphology [26, 27]. Regardless of the many likely contributors, the principal trigger of sequestration is still not clear.

Activation of the cerebral endothelium is likely a critical factor in the pathophysiology of CM. After activation, ECs release ultra-large von Willebrand factor (VWF) multimers, angiopoietin-2 (ANG2), and increase the cell surface expression of ICAM-1, VCAM-1, P-selectin, and E-selectin. VWF provides an additive mechanism of sequestration by mediating the binding of pRBCs to ECs via platelets and CD36 [19, 28]. Angiopoietin-1 (ANG1) is the agonistic ligand of TIE2, and ANG2 is the antagonistic ligand of TIE2. Quiescent endothelial cells constitutively express ANG1 and TIE2. Upon release from EC activation, ANG2 antagonizes the ANG1-TIE2 interaction resulting in a facilitation of the responsiveness of ECs to cytokines, particularly TNF [29]. ANG2 stores in ECs vary but are significant in the microvessels of the brain [30], and elevated levels of ANG2 have been associated with severe malaria. Endothelial cells can also influence the cerebrovascular tone through the release of endothelin-1 (ET-1), prostaglandin $F_2\alpha$, thromboxane A_2, nitric oxide (NO), endothelium-derived hyperpolarization factor (EDHF), prostacyclin, and prostaglandin E_2 [31]. Thus, activation of ECs results in the release of factors that likely contribute to sequestration, cytokine release, inflammation, hypoxia, and dysregulated hemostasis. Activation of ECs by pRBC binding may also induce EC apoptosis [32].

2 Animal Models of Cerebral Malaria

There are several experimental CM (ECM) animal models used to study human CM, but the majority of studies are in either rodents or nonhuman primates. A problem central to all animal models of malaria is that no model shows the exact pathology of human disease, and pathology is dependent on parasite strain, host, inoculation dose, and timing of the infection. Of note, *P. falciparum* is not infective to most animals used in CM models, and other *Plasmodium* strains differ from *P. falciparum* in many ways, including a lack of knob formation [33, 34], which is critical to development of sequestration. Additionally, many animal models use inbred animals, and the clinical signs observed in any specific model do not reflect the spectrum of disease outcomes in a diverse genetic human population. Development of an animal model for CM is also complicated by variability in the cerebral pathophysiology and complications of human CM in adults and children [35–37]. For example, in classical human CM, brain pathology demonstrates capillary pRBC sequestration, cerebral ring hemorrhages, and cerebral edema. However, sequestration has been observed in individuals without defined CM [38], and some children fit the WHO

definition of CM but do not have sequestration [12]. Further, cerebral edema is not present in some children and adults with CM [37, 39], and elevated lumbar puncture opening pressures, which are present in 80 % of children with CM, are much less common in adults [40]. It has been suggested that what some consider a weakness in animal models may actually be a strength as the diversity in animal models may in some ways reflect the diversity of infection in humans [41].

Specific murine models of CM demonstrate a pathology of sequestration and hemorrhage that is similar in some respects to that of human CM, though no murine model to date completely mimics the changes seen with sequestration in human CM. In murine ECM, the species of parasites most often used are *Plasmodium chabaudi*, *Plasmodium berghei*, *Plasmodium yoelii*, and *Plasmodium vinkei vinkei*. *P. chabaudi* can cause lethal and nonlethal infections depending on the strain of mouse, but lethality is due to hemolysis. The *P. yoelii* strain 17XL has been studied in CF1 mice, and the *P. berghei* strain K173 has been studied in C57BL/Rij mice [42]. The pathological features in the *P. yoelii* 17XL model are sequestered pRBCs in the brain microvasculature and neurological issues, associated with high levels of parasitemia. The *P. yoelii* 17XLNL (nonlethal) strain has been further used in vaccine research to investigate immune responses [43]. *P. berghei* K173 can also show some signs of murine ECM, including early levels of IFN-γ, but disease is dependent on the mouse strain, how parasites are introduced, and the inoculation dose [44, 45].

The most common murine ECM model uses the *P. berghei* ANKA strain in several strains of mice, mostly C57BL/6 (6J or 6N) or CBA mice. The *P. berghei* ANKA strain murine ECM model has been extensively studied for over 20 years [46]. The disease course of *P. berghei* ANKA in C57BL/6 mice from a range of inoculum doses is described as a rapid progression toward death after an encephalopathy accompanied by seizures and respiratory distress. There is a reduction in mobility, with ataxia seen at 6 days postinoculation, followed by paralysis, convulsions, coma, and death within 7–10 days postinoculation in the presence of low parasitemia and any survivors dying in the second week postinoculation from hyperparasitemia and severe anemia [36, 47, 48]. There is also an increase in EC expression of ICAM-1, VCAM-1, and P-selectin in murine ECM suggesting activation of the endothelial cells similar to that seen in human CM [43]. Sequestration involves a mix of leukocytes and few pRBCs. The leukocyte population consists of a mix of macrophages and dendritic cells, T cells, B cells, neutrophils, and natural killer (NK) cells [49]. *P. berghei* ANKA infection also results in a disruption of the blood–brain barrier (BBB) [50, 51].

Many of the observed human CM systemic immune responses have been demonstrated in murine ECM using *P. berghei* ANKA. The use of the murine ECM model has allowed for the testing of specific mechanisms behind the observed immune responses. For example, the importance of cytokines and the strength of the proinflammatory response have been investigated through depleting key cell populations involved in early trigger events or through disrupting downstream cytokine signaling. Overall, the murine ECM model implicates Th1 responses but not Th2 responses. Specifically, NK cells and CD8+ T cells are essential components to murine ECM, and CD8+ T cells are the principle effector cells [49]. NK cells, IFN-γ

and IFN-γR signaling, are required for the migration and sequestration of CD8+ T cells in the brains of mice [52, 53], and migration is also influenced by NK T cells [54]. Movement of the CD8+ T cells to the brain happens in a malarial antigen-specific manner, and sequestered CD8+ T cells damage cerebral ECs and disrupt the BBB [55]. CD4+ T cells also contribute to murine ECM, with CD4+ αβ T cell populations higher in mice with ECM. However, depletion studies show that depending on the mouse strain, CD4+ T cells may be involved in either or both the induction or effector phase of ECM [55]. B cells do not appear to be involved in murine ECM as B cell-deficient mice show ECM and B cell antigen presentation is not required [56]. Finally, γδ T cell numbers are higher in mice with ECM [49], but their role in ECM may not be necessary or may involve inducing ECM. For, mice are protected if γδ T cells are depleted at 0 or 3 day postinoculation, but ECM can manifest if depletion of γδT cells is delayed to 5 days postinoculation [57].

The role of cytokines, chemokines, and chemokine receptors in *P. berghei* ANKA ECM seems to revolve around the effects of IFN-γ. ECM can be prevented in *P. berghei* ANKA-infected mice by neutralizing IFN-γ [58], and IFN-γ is necessary for the trafficking to and sequestration of leukocytes in the brain. Cytokines and chemokines secreted by sequestered monocytes include TNF, IP-10, MCP-1, and RANTES, but levels can vary depending on the mouse strain infected [59]. Sequestered neutrophils also secrete cytokines and chemokines such as IL-12_p40, IL-18, IFN-γ, TNF, MIP-1α, MIG, and IP-10.

Studies investigating pathogenesis have shown that TNF, lymphotoxin (LT)-α, and TNFRII are also important in murine ECM [60–62]. Neuropathologic studies of murine ECM have shown neuronal and endothelial apoptosis, with cerebral hemorrhages and no topographical pattern [63], that were associated with cognitive impairments [64]. Studies have further shown that *P. berghei* infections result in a breakdown of the BBB and are associated with brain edema and enlarged perivascular spaces [65–70]. It is likely that ECs are activated by proinflammatory cytokines such as TNF, LT-α, or IFN-γ. However, breakdown of the BBB on the "blood" or EC side is most likely a result of the killing of ECs by CD8+ T cells that have migrated to the brain [55]. On the brain side, activation of microglia and astrocytes may further worsen BBB breakdown. Murine ECM studies show increases in glial fibrillary acidic protein astrocytes, microglia, and activated caspase 3+ apoptotic astrocytes [71]. Activated glia secrete proinflammatory cytokines, NO, platelet-activating factor, quinolinic acid, and matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs). MMPs are known to degrade tight junction proteins and basal lamina proteins leading to BBB leakage [72]. Observed increases in intracellular metallothionein (MT)-1 and MT-II in astrocytes and microglia may reflect the need for protection against oxidative stress and apoptosis, and these cysteine-rich proteins may also reduce edema and modulate proinflammatory cytokine expression [63].

Despite the many similarities between human CM and murine ECM, important differences remain [46]. The most important difference is that in human CM, sequestration is dominated by pRBC, with additional contributions from leukocytes and platelets, while in murine ECM, leukocytes and platelets dominate the pathology, with varying and often low frequencies of pRBC [73–76]. For example, some studies with luciferase-expressing *P. berghei* ANKA do not demonstrate

sequestration in the brain, whereas they do show a degree of sequestration in the brain [36, 76]. Other murine ECM studies have shown that sequestration of pRBCs is regulated by CD8+ T cells and IFN-γ [77]. Indeed, murine ECM is T cell dependent, as ECM does not happen in nude mice, αβ-TCR knockouts, and mice depleted of CD4+ T cells [78]. In humans with CM, however, the role of T cells has not been fully characterized, but T cells have not been clearly implicated as a primary agent in CM. Further, autopsy immunohistochemistry of brain from CM children do not show leukocyte numbers similar to those seen in murine ECM. Thus, murine ECM pathology is dominated by a pattern of inflammation, something not seen nearly to the same extent in pathological studies of human CM.

Primate models are also used in studies of CM. Primate models of CM have used *Plasmodium knowlesi*, *Plasmodium coatneyi*, *Plasmodium fragile*, and *Plasmodium cynomolgi* or human species and strains that have been adapted to a specific simian species. Both New World and Old World monkeys have been used in primate models, such as rhesus macaques (*Macaca mulatta*), squirrel monkeys (*Saimiri sciureus*), and owl monkeys (*Aotus spp.*). *P. knowlesi* infections in rhesus monkeys can be severe and result in a breakdown of the BBB and cerebral edema. Though traditionally thought of as a primate *Plasmodium*, *P. knowlesi* can infect humans and can cause severe disease, and it may serve as a model for adult CM in Southeast Asia [79, 80]. *P. coatneyi* infections in rhesus monkeys can result in coma, with binding of pRBCs on ECs, sequestration of pRBCs in the brain, and increased expression of CD36, ICAM-1, and thrombospondin [81–83]. In addition, the *P. coatneyi* model shows a decrease in cerebral microcirculation [84]. However, earlier studies of *P. coatneyi* infections did not produce sufficient clinical data for a full evaluation of the model. Other studies have begun to address this and have shown pathology similar to what is observed in human CM, including multiorgan sequestration, proinflammatory cytokine and chemokine responses (IFN-γ, IL-6, TNF, MIP-1β, MCP-1), increased fibrinogen levels, and increased coagulopathy [85, 86]. Another potential CM model is *P. falciparum* infections of Saimiri monkeys. Studies with this model have shown sequestration of pRBCs in the brain [87], and brain EC lines from this model showed increases in ICAM-1 and CD36 upon stimulation with TNF [88]. Primate models may present a more relevant model to study CM, but they are difficult to conduct, due to cost and ethical concerns, so study findings from these models have been limited when compared to murine models.

3 The Systemic Immune Response in Human Cerebral Malaria

While it may be a specific parasite genotype that substantially influences the host immune response [89], severe disease is associated with a Th1 cytokine response, and protection is associated with Th2-type responses through both antibody actions and cell-mediated immunity. Typically, protective immunity comes with repeated exposures [90], with some protection from severe disease from as little as one or

two exposures [91]. Cerebral malaria often manifests in children in endemic regions of Africa between the ages of 6 months and 5 years, whereas CM in Southeast Asia typically presents in adolescents and young adults [92, 93]. The reasons for these differences are unclear, but may partly relate to differences in transmission intensity in the areas.

Study of pathophysiology in human CM at the brain level have been limited to date to autopsy studies and to a lesser extent studies of cerebrospinal fluid. Even autopsy studies carry the limitation of studying brain tissue only in individuals who died of CM. The pathological processes in these individuals may not be identical to those in individuals who survive CM. Results from autopsy and cerebrospinal fluid studies are summarized in the next section ("The Central Nervous System Response in Human CM"). Functional imaging studies such as functional magnetic resonance imaging or positron emission tomography of the brain are generally cost prohibitive for the low-income countries in which CM typically occurs.

A number of studies have assessed how systemic changes in samples from peripheral blood (plasma, serum, mononuclear cells) may relate to the pathogenesis of CM in humans. It has been proposed that a previous exposure may prime the Th1 response for an extreme proinflammatory immune response that results in CM [93]. To this end, TNF has been extensively examined in CM. TNF initiates inflammation [94, 95], activates ECs, and induces the release of other cytokines, including IL-6, IL-10, IFN-γ, and IL-1β. TNF release is thought to follow early IFN-γ release, which is induced by IL-12 and IL-18 stimulation from macrophages or dendritic cells [96].

In CM, peripheral blood CD4+ T cells are reduced [97], but there is an increase in CD4+ TCR Vβ21.3 cells [98]. However, CD4+ T cells have not been clearly implicated in the pathogenesis of CM [36]. Major sources of IFN-γ in individuals with CM include γδ TCR+ T cells and NK cells [99, 100]. In CM, a strong inflammatory Th1 response is not balanced by regulatory T cell ($CD4^{+}CD25^{hi}FOXP3^{+}CD127^{-/low}$) function. $CD25^{-}FOXP3^{-}CD45RO^{+}$ effector T cells are the major source of IL-10 [101].

Inflammation during CM may be due to host or parasite factors, including host genetic factors that regulate the inflammatory response [102, 103]. During the course of blood-stage replication, host and parasite products are released into the plasma after schizont rupture and can initiate innate immune responses by interacting with various host receptors on a variety of cells. The glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) of *P. falciparum*, similar to endotoxin, binds to toll-like receptor (TLR) 2 and TLR4 on dendritic cells, macrophages, ECs, and adipocytes and induces the secretion of proinflammatory Th1 cytokines (TNF, IL-1, and IL-12). GPI also binds CD1d and Vα-Vβ8 T-cell receptor on natural killer cells to induce Th1 or Th2 cytokine production. Additionally, schizogeny releases hemozoin, hemoglobin, and erythrocyte arginase. Both hemozoin and hemoglobin can stimulate a cytokine cascade, including TNF and IL-12, and the Th2 cytokine IL-10 [104, 105]. Hemozoin can also suppress leukocyte proliferation [106] and affect monocyte/macrophage phagocytosis and MHC class II expression [106, 107], potentially inhibiting the immune system's ability to deal with parasite replication. Free hemoglobin in the blood is typically bound by haptoglobin to form a complex recognized by CD163 and apolipoprotein

A-1 on monocytes or macrophages [108, 109]. The complex is then internalized by these cells, often in the liver and spleen, and broken down by heme oxygenase (HO). If not bound by haptoglobin, hemoglobin scavenges NO and is oxidized into methemoglobin and nitrate. Erythrocyte arginase can use up stores of L-arginine, which is the source of NO, thus potentially increasing hemoglobin levels. If not scavenged by physiological protective mechanisms, hemoglobin and heme can trigger proinflammatory responses, such as the increases in peripheral blood TNF, IL-1, and IL-6 levels observed in children with CM [6, 110], and have pro-oxidant effects. Cytoadhesion of pRBCs and EC activation can also recruit monocytes resulting in the production of TNF [111] and can activate NF-kB signal transduction to increase proinflammatory chemokines and cytokines [112]. Thus, through mechanisms such as GPI, hemozoin, heme, hemoglobin, or adhesion activation, a proinflammatory cascade and innate immune response begins or is enhanced, and the resulting inflammation may be a strong prognosticator of disease severity.

Protection against severe disease, including CM, also relates in part to host genetic factors that may or may not involve the immune system. Numerous studies have documented host promoter and gene polymorphisms associated with protection against severe malaria. Such polymorphisms have included promoters and/or genes including red cell components, TLRs, immune system factors and/or receptors, reactive oxygen species regulators, EC surface receptors, and hemostasis elements (reviewed in [113]). Inherited genetic disorders of red cell components that can confer resistance or susceptibility include sickle cell trait, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency, and thalassemia. Sickle cell trait provides the strongest protection against severe malaria, as has been reviewed in multiple studies. The genetic mutations in disorders that affect red cell surface antigens, enzymes, hemoglobin, or the red cell cytoskeleton may inhibit parasite replication. For example, G6PD deficiency can result in hemolytic anemia and vulnerability to oxidative stress due to reduced levels of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate. However, G6PD deficiency may also confer protection from malaria by reducing parasite growth through an increase in surface markers that target the pRBC for phagocytosis [113, 114]. Heme oxygenase (HO) is involved in the breakdown of free heme into biliverdin, iron, and carbon monoxide. HO is generally considered cytoprotective, The promoter of *HMOX1* has a (GT)n repeat polymorphism that can affect expression. Higher numbers of the (GT)n repeat result in lower expression, and lower numbers of the repeat have higher expression of HO-1. Conflicting results have associated severe malaria to both low [115, 116] and higher [117] numbers of (GT)n repeats. Polymorphisms in TLRs have been identified that alter TLR expression (TLR2, TLR9) or the ligand-binding site (TLR4) and have been associated with altered cytokine responses in children with CM [118] and with increased risk for severe malaria [119]. A number of gene and promoter single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) for the genes regulating cytokines such as LT-α, TNF, IFN-γ, IL-12, IL-4, IL-1, and IL-10 have also been associated with protection or susceptibility to symptomatic and sometimes severe malaria (reviewed in [113]). Thus, host genetic factors appear to play an important role in susceptibility to CM.

4 The Central Nervous System Response in Human Cerebral Malaria

Assessment of the CNS response in human CM has largely been limited to autopsy and cerebrospinal fluid findings, though recently in vitro models of the BBB have provided some additional understanding of potential mechanisms in CM. The pathways through which vascular and CNS responses to *P. falciparum* may lead to CM are outlined in Fig. 1. Mechanisms by which CM may result in neurological sequelae

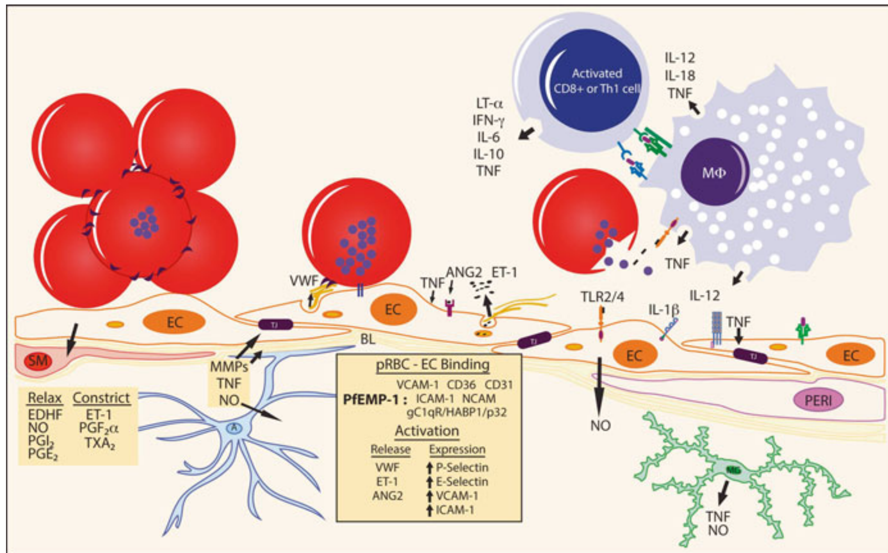


Fig. 1 Mechanisms of cerebral malaria pathogenesis. Several factors likely contribute to the pathogenesis of CM including mechanical obstruction, cytokine responses, inflammation, and a dysregulation of hemostasis. Ultimately, sequestration of parasitized RBCs (pRBCs) is associated with human CM. Uninfected and pRBCs can adhere with platelets to form rosettes, which may obstruct the cerebral microvasculature. The binding of pRBCs through PfEMP-1 to multiple endothelial cell (EC) receptors may also result in sequestration or in EC activation, which may exacerbate sequestration through the EC binding of pRBCs via platelets, CD36, and ultra-large von Willebrand factor (VWF) and through increased expression of EC receptors (ICAM-1, VCAM-1). EC activation also results in the release of angiopoeitin-2 (ANG2), endothelin-1 (ET-1), and other factors that affect vascular tone via signaling to smooth muscle (SM). In addition, ANG2 can increase EC responsiveness to TNF (among other cytokines). Inflammatory cytokine responses to toll-like receptor (TLR) 2 or TLR4 binding of parasite glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) on macrophages (MΦ) or ECs may initiate or compound EC activation. MHC class I or class II activation of CD8+ or Th1 cells (respectively) may also initiate or compound inflammatory cytokine responses. Schizont rupture also releases hemozoin and hemoglobin, which can contribute further to the cytokine cascade. TNF and EC binding of pRBCs can activate ECs, potentially increasing the permeability of the blood–brain barrier, opening tight junctions (TJ), and inducing apoptosis. Factors released from stimulated glial cells can have both protective and harmful effects on the brain side. Astrocytes (A) can produce metalloproteinases (MMPs), which may degrade tight junction and basal lamina (BL) proteins. Microglia (MG), astrocytes, and pericytes (PERI) may produce TNF and NO, which can have both neuroprotective and neurotoxic effects

include the movement of cytokines and other molecules into the brain through a break in the BBB, or through active or passive transport through the BBB, or production of these factors from a signal transduction event in the brain. Early autopsy studies did not find evidence of breakdown of the BBB in CM [120], but more recent studies have documented that a degree of breakdown in the BBB does occur in human CM [121–123], though the breakdown is less severe than that seen in bacterial or viral CNS infections [124]. Other studies have shown that levels of several proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines, including TNF, are elevated in the CSF, though CSF levels do not correlate with serum levels [6]. These studies demonstrate that there remains some compartmentalization of cytokine expression between the blood and brain in CM, suggesting that cytokine levels in the brain may be due to a combination of CNS production and systemic production that crosses the BBB.

The mechanisms underlying a breakdown of the BBB may include a physical process in which occluded microvessels create a local hypertension that leads to a break in the tight junctions of the ECs and subsequent hemorrhage. Another potential mechanism is cell signaling that disrupts EC homeostasis or leads directly to EC death. A number of factors in severe malaria can be detrimental to ECs or to maintaining BBB function or tone, such as cytokines, parasite products, red blood cell components, and reactive oxygen species. TNF and IFN-γ are elevated in human CM [94, 95, 125] and can activate ECs and increase the permeability of the BBB [12, 126–128]. Decreased levels of TGF-β, an anti-inflammatory Th2 cytokine that has neuroprotective effects, have been associated with human CM [129]. However, TGF-β1 also can be released from platelets and induce apoptosis in ECs [130]. Another mechanism that may contribute to the breakdown of the BBB is binding of pRBCs to ECs. In vitro models show a transfer of parasite membrane and antigens to ECs that results in EC activation and in the opening of intercellular junctions [131], and other in vitro studies have shown that pRBC binding can induce apoptosis [32, 132, 133]. Finally, immunohistochemistry studies of human CM autopsy tissues show a decrease in the tight junction proteins ZO-1 and occludin and the focal adhesion protein vinculin in areas of pRBC sequestration [122].

ECs are linked together by tight junctions and anchored to the extracellular matrix and, along with pericytes, astrocytes, and neurons, make up the BBB. An interesting component to the BBB that is often overlooked is the role of the pericyte in human CM. Recent publications have implicated pericytes as the regulator of BBB through regulated gene expression of ECs and through interactions with astrocyte end-feet [134]. Pericytes are distributed along the wall of the precapillary arterioles, capillaries, and postcapillary venules at higher ratios to endothelial cells in the brain than in other organs and at higher ratios in the retina than the brain [135]. The functional role of pericytes also extends to phagocytosis, immunomodulation, regulation of the microcirculatory blood flow, and blood coagulation [135, 136]. Pericytes express ICAM-1 and VCAM-1, cytokines and chemokines, and NO, and they can process and present antigens to T cells [135, 137]. The functional overlap between pericytes and the mechanisms important in human CM warrant further investigation into their role.

In children with CM, a compromised BBB is associated with ring hemorrhages, and ring hemorrhages are associated with axonal and myelin damage [123].

Autopsy studies confirmed the results of previous studies investigating CSF levels of tau and S100B, which had suggested that axonal injury was contributing to the neuropathogenesis of CM [138]. Adults with CM also show ring hemorrhages with axonal injury and myelin damage by immunohistochemistry. Further, the severity of axonal injury distinguished between adult CM patients and those with severe malaria without CNS manifestations, but other factors, such as demyelination, microglial cell or astrocyte responses, and the presence of leukocytes, did not distinguish between individuals who died of severe malaria with vs. without CNS clinical manifestations [17]. Two other features often observed in children and adults with CM are severe metabolic acidosis and hypoglycemia. Metabolic acidosis and hypoglycemia are also associated with neurological symptoms in non-CM severe malaria and are contributors to axonal degeneration [139]. In addition, hypoglycemia and hypoxia have the potential to contribute to axonal injury to CM [140, 141], and autopsy studies suggest a correlation between one or both factors and brain injury in CM [138, 142].

Cytokine responses are thought to be responsible for some of the observed cerebral pathology and neurological sequelae seen in CM [6]. TNF from glial cells can maintain synaptic strength at excitatory synapses [143], but it can also inhibit glutamate transporters and lead to microglial cell death [144]. Higher levels of CSF TNF were associated with neurological and neurocognitive sequelae 6 months after an episode of CM in Ugandan children [6], suggesting that TNF plays primarily a neurotoxic role in CM. CNS NO production may also be important in CM. In the CNS, NO can be neuroprotective, but overexpressed NO can be neurotoxic and may contribute to a breakdown of the BBB [145]. Data from human CM studies on CNS NO is limited and contradictory. A Zambian study of children with CM showed higher CSF NO levels in children who died vs. survivors [146], while a study of Ghanaian children showed no difference in CSF NO levels in children who died vs. survivors [147]. In addition, an autopsy study showed elevated inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) in the brain blood vessels of children who died of CM. The authors speculated that NO might contribute to mortality or severe disease via increased vascular dilatation leading to cerebral pressure and eventual hemorrhage in the brain microvasculature [148]. However, NO can diffuse through cell membranes, and it is a known vasodilator and can also inhibit platelet and leukocyte adhesion to ECs [145, 149, 150]. NO also assists in the regulation of neuronal cell proliferation and differentiation and can affect neurotransmission [151, 152]. Additionally, NO production may have a role in learning and memory [153]. These findings suggest that NO production could also be neuroprotective, in amounts below a threshold level of toxicity. A recent study of Ugandan children documented elevated CSF NO levels in children with CM as compared to control children, and there was a trend toward long-term neuroprotection in children with CM with elevated levels of CSF NO (C. John, unpublished data). At present, it is unclear whether NO treatment will be helpful or harmful to the CNS in severe malaria, though there is ample evidence that it could be helpful systemically in severe malaria [154–156]. A current trial of inhaled NO for severe malaria, including CM, may help to answer this question [157].

5 Potential Treatments and Interventions

Treatments given prior to development of neurological signs prevent murine ECM, but treatment prior to development of neurological signs is not possible in human CM, in which presence of coma is part of the disease definition. Thus, treatments must be able to reverse CM to be useful in humans. To date, no therapies based on murine ECM or in vitro cell culture studies have translated to successful adjunctive therapies for treating human CM [158]. A number of possibilities are being considered, and NO and erythropoietin (EPO) have moved into early clinical trials.

Murine ECM and human CM studies suggest that low bioavailability of NO contributes to disease, and the administration of exogenous NO (via L-arginine) is protective in mice and improves endothelial dysfunction in humans [154, 155, 159]. As noted earlier, NO can be neuroprotective, and NO administration could theoretically mitigate the effects of many mechanisms implicated in human CM. NO could reduce sequestration by several mechanisms: (1) by vasodilation, which could reduce mechanical obstruction due to reduction in deformability or morphologic changes in pRBC; (2) through inhibition of platelet aggregation and adhesion [160] and inhibition of factor XIII [161], all of which would reduce the procoagulant state; (3) by providing more substrate to be scavenged by free hemoglobin [109] and reducing hemoglobin inhibition of ADAMTS13 activity [162]; and (4) by reduction of the expression of VCAM-1, ICAM-1, and endothelial leukocyte adhesion molecule 1 [108]. Reduction of free hemoglobin by NO could also decrease proinflammatory cytokine responses. Given the potential danger of excessive NO, clinical trials with varying amounts and methods of NO administration are required to determine if and how NO can be used as adjunctive therapy in CM. Trials of L-arginine and inhaled NO are currently ongoing.

EPO is a cytoprotective agent in the vascular system and neuroprotective agent in the brain, showing protection in experimental models for a wide range of pathological conditions. However, EPO appears to have a threshold effect from which it moves from protecting to damaging via apoptosis. EPO is also a mediator of ischemic preconditioning, and EPO receptor is upregulated during an ischemic event. In addition, EPO receptor is further upregulated by the presence of EPO during hypoxia. Thus, the threshold at which EPO becomes damaging shifts lower during a hypoxic insult because an increase in EPO receptor delivers more EPO to the brain [163]. Due to the combination of anemia, sequestration, and activation of the endothelium anemia typically seen in human CM, it is possible that a cytoprotective treatment that induces NO production and is traditionally used for anemia may assist in BBB stability and EC protection. In murine ECM, mice were protected from *P. berghei* ANKA infection with EPO [164, 165], and higher levels of EPO have been associated with protection from death and neurological sequelae in children with CM [166]. However, some human CM studies have not shown associations of EPO levels with clinical manifestations [167], and there have been a number of studies in other disease processes showing increases in mortality in a dose-dependent manner with EPO administration [163]. Thus, studies have provided

evidence that EPO could be beneficial in CM, but there is also considerable potential for neurotoxicity and systemic toxicity in the proinflammatory and procoagulant milieu of CM. For example, a large study of individuals with stroke treated with EPO documented increased mortality with EPO treatment [168]. An early clinical trial of EPO treatment in children with CM showed no increase in mortality or short-term adverse events with EPO treatment [169], but the sample size was small, follow-up was short, and the ability to detect adverse events limited. In light of the harm seen with EPO treatment in stroke and cardiac trials also showing no benefit and potential harm [170], EPO therapy for CM should be approached with caution. Newer EPO analogs which target neuroprotection but do not stimulate erythropoiesis may have more promise in CM, and other neurological diseases are in the early stages of phase I trials at present [171].

6 Future Directions

The mechanisms behind the neuropathophysiology of CM are likely multifactorial. Sequestration in the cerebral microvasculature appears to be important in the pathophysiology of human CM, whether as a consequence of or a co-initiator of inflammation. Additionally, brain endothelial cell activation is likely a critical component to the neuropathology of human CM. It seems clear now that there are focal breaks in the BBB in human CM and that these play a role in the pathogenesis of CM, but the extent of that role is not yet defined.

Additional studies on the roles of endothelial activation, NO, proinflammatory cytokines, cerebral edema, and other factors noted previously are needed in human CM because the paucity of clear data in this area has left a gap in the ability to rationally develop interventions to prevent or ameliorate the effects of human CM. Animal studies have provided insight into some areas of CM pathogenesis, and improvement in animal models could eventually provide a better way to do early testing of adjunctive therapies, but the translation of interventions that were successful in ECM to human CM has been disappointing. In vitro models using human cell lines may provide an additional way to assess the pathophysiology of human CM. Studies of the long-term neurological and cognitive consequences of CM are critical, because it is important to consider how these could be prevented in survivors of CM, and no interventions can be considered without knowledge of the pathways that lead to neurocognitive sequelae. It is hoped that with advances in all of these areas, interventions to decrease short- and long-term complications of CM will be developed. Finally, the ultimate prevention of CM lies in reduction and eventual elimination of malaria from an area, a goal that is a steppingstone toward the larger goal of malaria eradication. It is imperative that we continue to work on ways to reduce morbidity and mortality from CM and other forms of severe malaria, as they continue to affect millions of children every year, but success in the greater goal of malaria control and elimination will lead to fewer cases of complicated malaria and therefore less need for adjunctive therapy. Both goals, better therapy for

severe malaria and better prevention of malaria, must be addressed with continued strong support from funding agencies and ministries of health if we are to decrease the burden of severe malaria and CM morbidity.

References

1. WHO. World malaria report 2012. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 2012.
2. Murray CJ, Rosenfeld LC, Lim SS, Andrews KG, Foreman KJ, Haring D, et al. Global malaria mortality between 1980 and 2010: a systematic analysis. Lancet. 2012;379(9814):413–31. PubMed PMID: 22305225.
3. Hien TT, Day NPJ, Phu NH, Mai NTH, Chau TTH, Loc PP, et al. A controlled trial of Artemether or quinine in Vietnamese adults with severe falciparum malaria. N Engl J Med. 1996;335(2):76–83. PubMed PMID: 8649493.
4. WHO. Severe falciparum malaria. World Health Organization, communicable diseases cluster. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 2000;94 Suppl 1:S1–90. PubMed PMID: 11103309.
5. Newton CR, Krishna S. Severe falciparum malaria in children: current understanding of pathophysiology and supportive treatment. Pharmacol Ther. 1998;79(1):1–53. PubMed PMID: 9719344.
6. John CC, Panoskaltsis-Mortari A, Opoka RO, Park GS, Orchard PJ, Jurek AM, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid cytokine levels and cognitive impairment in cerebral malaria. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2008;78(2):198–205. PubMed PMID: 18256412.
7. Idro R, Jenkins NE, Newton CR. Pathogenesis, clinical features, and neurological outcome of cerebral malaria. Lancet Neurol. 2005;4(12):827–40. PubMed PMID: 16297841.
8. Idro R, Kakooza-Mwesige A, Balyejjussa S, Mirembe G, Mugasha C, Tugumisirize J, et al. Severe neurological sequelae and behaviour problems after cerebral malaria in Ugandan children. BMC Res Notes. 2010;3:104. PubMed PMID: 20398391, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2861066.
9. Idro R, Marsh K, John CC, Newton CR. Cerebral malaria: mechanisms of brain injury and strategies for improved neurocognitive outcome. Pediatr Res. 2010;68(4):267–74. PubMed PMID: 20606600, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3056312.
10. Boivin MJ, Bangirana P, Byarugaba J, Opoka RO, Idro R, Jurek AM, et al. Cognitive impairment after cerebral malaria in children: a prospective study. Pediatrics. 2007;119(2):e360–6. PubMed PMID: 17224457, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2743741.
11. Newton CR, Warrell DA. Neurological manifestations of falciparum malaria. Ann Neurol. 1998;43(6):695–702. PubMed PMID: 9629838.
12. Haldar K, Murphy SC, Milner DA, Taylor TE. Malaria: mechanisms of erythrocytic infection and pathological correlates of severe disease. Annu Rev Pathol. 2007;2:217–49. PubMed PMID: 18039099.
13. Berendt AR, Ferguson DJ, Gardner J, Turner G, Rowe A, McCormick C, et al. Molecular mechanisms of sequestration in malaria. Parasitology. 1994;108(Suppl):S19–28. PubMed PMID: 8084651.
14. Patnaik JK, Das BS, Mishra SK, Mohanty S, Satpathy SK, Mohanty D. Vascular clogging, mononuclear cell margination, and enhanced vascular permeability in the pathogenesis of human cerebral malaria. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1994;51(5):642–7. PubMed PMID: 7985757.
15. Grau GE, Mackenzie CD, Carr RA, Redard M, Pizzolato G, Allasia C, et al. Platelet accumulation in brain microvessels in fatal pediatric cerebral malaria. J Infect Dis. 2003;187(3):461–6. PubMed PMID: 12552430.
16. Ponsford MJ, Medana IM, Prapansilp P, Hien TT, Lee SJ, Dondorp AM, et al. Sequestration and microvascular congestion are associated with coma in human cerebral malaria. J Infect Dis. 2012;205(4):663–71. PubMed PMID: 22207648, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3266137.

17. Medana IM, Day NP, Hien TT, Mai NT, Bethell D, Phu NH, et al. Axonal injury in cerebral malaria. Am J Pathol. 2002;160(2):655–66. PubMed PMID: 11839586, Pubmed Central PMCID: 1850649.
18. Cooke BM, Morris-Jones S, Greenwood BM, Nash GB. Mechanisms of cytoadhesion of flowing, parasitized red blood cells from Gambian children with falciparum malaria. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1995;53(1):29–35. PubMed PMID: 7542844.
19. Newbold C, Warn P, Black G, Berendt A, Craig A, Snow B, et al. Receptor-specific adhesion and clinical disease in Plasmodium falciparum. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1997;57(4):389–98. PubMed PMID: 9347951.
20. Chakravorty SJ, Hughes KR, Craig AG. Host response to cytoadherence in Plasmodium falciparum. Biochem Soc Trans. 2008;36(Pt 2):221–8. PubMed PMID: 18363564.
21. Park GS, Ireland KF, Opoka RO, John CC. Evidence of endothelial activation in asymptomatic plasmodium falciparum parasitemia and effect of blood group on levels of von Willebrand factor in malaria. J Pediatr Infect Dis Soc. 2012;1(1):16–25.
22. van der Heyde HC, Nolan J, Combes V, Gramaglia I, Grau GE. A unified hypothesis for the genesis of cerebral malaria: sequestration, inflammation and hemostasis leading to microcirculatory dysfunction. Trends Parasitol. 2006;22(11):503–8. PubMed PMID: 16979941.
23. Handunnetti SM, David PH, Perera KL, Mendis KN. Uninfected erythrocytes form "rosettes" around Plasmodium falciparum infected erythrocytes. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1989;40(2): 115–8. PubMed PMID: 2645800.
24. Pain A, Ferguson DJ, Kai O, Urban BC, Lowe B, Marsh K, et al. Platelet-mediated clumping of Plasmodium falciparum-infected erythrocytes is a common adhesive phenotype and is associated with severe malaria. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98(4):1805–10. PubMed PMID: 11172032, Pubmed Central PMCID: 29338.
25. Chotivanich K, Sritabal J, Udomsangpetch R, Newton P, Stepniewska KA, Ruangveerayuth R, et al. Platelet-induced autoagglutination of Plasmodium falciparum-infected red blood cells and disease severity in Thailand. J Infect Dis. 2004;189(6):1052–5. PubMed PMID: 14999609.
26. Cooke BM, Mohandas N, Coppel RL. Malaria and the red blood cell membrane. Semin Hematol. 2004;41(2):173–88. PubMed PMID: 15071793.
27. Ahlqvist J. Decreased red cell deformability and vascular obstruction in falciparum malaria illustrated by a fatal case. Scand J Haematol. 1985;35(5):531–5. PubMed PMID: 3911374.
28. Bridges DJ, Bunn J, van Mourik JA, Grau G, Preston RJ, Molyneux M, et al. Rapid activation of endothelial cells enables Plasmodium falciparum adhesion to platelet-decorated von Willebrand factor strings. Blood. 2010;115(7):1472–4. PubMed PMID: 19897581, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2840836.
29. Augustin HG, Koh GY, Thurston G, Alitalo K. Control of vascular morphogenesis and homeostasis through the angiopoietin-Tie system. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2009;10(3): 165–77. PubMed PMID: 19234476.
30. Fiedler U, Reiss Y, Scharpfenecker M, Grunow V, Koidl S, Thurston G, et al. Angiopoietin-2 sensitizes endothelial cells to TNF-alpha and has a crucial role in the induction of inflammation. Nat Med. 2006;12(2):235–9. PubMed PMID: 16462802.
31. Andresen J, Shafi NI, Bryan Jr RM. Endothelial influences on cerebrovascular tone. J Appl Physiol. 2006;100(1):318–27. PubMed PMID: 16357085.
32. Toure FS, Ouwe-Missi-Oukem-Boyer O, Bisvigou U, Moussa O, Rogier C, Pino P, et al. Apoptosis: a potential triggering mechanism of neurological manifestation in Plasmodium falciparum malaria. Parasite Immunol. 2008;30(1):47–51. PubMed PMID: 18086016.
33. Maier AG, Rug M, O'Neill MT, Brown M, Chakravorty S, Szestak T, et al. Exported proteins required for virulence and rigidity of Plasmodium falciparum-infected human erythrocytes. Cell. 2008;134(1):48–61. PubMed PMID: 18614010, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2568870.
34. Maier AG, Cooke BM, Cowman AF, Tilley L. Malaria parasite proteins that remodel the host erythrocyte. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2009;7(5):341–54. PubMed PMID: 19369950.
35. Mishra SK, Wiese L. Advances in the management of cerebral malaria in adults. Curr Opin Neurol. 2009;22(3):302–7. PubMed PMID: 19434799.

36. de Souza JB, Hafalla JC, Riley EM, Couper KN. Cerebral malaria: why experimental murine models are required to understand the pathogenesis of disease. Parasitology. 2010;137(5): 755–72. PubMed PMID: 20028608.
37. Taylor TE, Fu WJ, Carr RA, Whitten RO, Mueller JS, Fosiko NG, et al. Differentiating the pathologies of cerebral malaria by postmortem parasite counts. Nat Med. 2004;10(2):143–5. PubMed PMID: 14745442.
38. Seydel KB, Milner Jr DA, Kamiza SB, Molyneux ME, Taylor TE. The distribution and intensity of parasite sequestration in comatose Malawian children. J Infect Dis. 2006;194(2):208–15. PubMed PMID: 16779727, Pubmed Central PMCID: 1515074.
39. Looareesuwan S, Wilairatana P, Krishna S, Kendall B, Vannaphan S, Viravan C, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging of the brain in patients with cerebral malaria. Clin Infect Dis. 1995;21(2):300–9. PubMed PMID: 8562735.
40. White NJ. Lumbar puncture in cerebral malaria. Lancet. 1991;338(8767):640–1. PubMed PMID: 1679182.
41. Langhorne J, Buffet P, Galinski M, Good M, Harty J, Leroy D, et al. The relevance of non-human primate and rodent malaria models for humans. Malar J. 2011;10(1):23. PubMed PMID: 21288352, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3041720.
42. Curfs JH, Schetters TP, Hermsen CC, Jerusalem CR, van Zon AA, Eling WM. Immunological aspects of cerebral lesions in murine malaria. Clin Exp Immunol. 1989;75(1):136–40. PubMed PMID: 2649283, Pubmed Central PMCID: 1541862.
43. Schofield L, Grau GE. Immunological processes in malaria pathogenesis. Nat Rev Immunol. 2005;5(9):722–35. PubMed PMID: 16138104.
44. Mitchell AJ, Hansen AM, Hee L, Ball HJ, Potter SM, Walker JC, et al. Early cytokine production is associated with protection from murine cerebral malaria. Infect Immun. 2005;73(9):5645–53. PubMed PMID: 16113282, Pubmed Central PMCID: 1231146.
45. Curfs JH, van der Meide PH, Billiau A, Meuwissen JH, Eling WM. Plasmodium berghei: recombinant interferon-gamma and the development of parasitemia and cerebral lesions in malaria-infected mice. Exp Parasitol. 1993;77(2):212–23. PubMed PMID: 8375490.
46. White NJ, Turner GD, Medana IM, Dondorp AM, Day NP. The murine cerebral malaria phenomenon. Trends Parasitol. 2010;26(1):11–5. PubMed PMID: 19932638, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2807032.
47. Engwerda C, Belnoue E, Gruner AC, Renia L. Experimental models of cerebral malaria. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol. 2005;297:103–43. PubMed PMID: 16265904.
48. de Souza JB, Riley EM. Cerebral malaria: the contribution of studies in animal models to our understanding of immunopathogenesis. Microbes Infect. 2002;4(3):291–300. PubMed PMID: 11909739.
49. Belnoue E, Kayibanda M, Vigario AM, Deschemin JC, van Rooijen N, Viguier M, et al. On the pathogenic role of brain-sequestered alphabeta CD8+ T cells in experimental cerebral malaria. J Immunol. 2002;169(11):6369–75. PubMed PMID: 12444144.
50. Lou J, Lucas R, Grau GE. Pathogenesis of cerebral malaria: recent experimental data and possible applications for humans. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2001;14(4):810–20. Table of contents, PubMed PMID: 11585786, Pubmed Central PMCID: 89004.
51. Ma N, Hunt NH, Madigan MC, Chan-Ling T. Correlation between enhanced vascular permeability, up-regulation of cellular adhesion molecules and monocyte adhesion to the endothelium in the retina during the development of fatal murine cerebral malaria. Am J Pathol. 1996;149(5):1745–62. PubMed PMID: 8909263, Pubmed Central PMCID: 1865264.
52. Hansen DS, Bernard NJ, Nie CQ, Schofield L. NK cells stimulate recruitment of CXCR3+ T cells to the brain during Plasmodium berghei-mediated cerebral malaria. J Immunol. 2007;178(9):5779–88. PubMed PMID: 17442962.
53. Belnoue E, Potter SM, Rosa DS, Mauduit M, Gruner AC, Kayibanda M, et al. Control of pathogenic CD8+ T cell migration to the brain by IFN-gamma during experimental cerebral malaria. Parasite Immunol. 2008;30(10):544–53. PubMed PMID: 18665903.
54. Hansen DS, Siomos MA, Buckingham L, Scalzo AA, Schofield L. Regulation of murine cerebral malaria pathogenesis by CD1d-restricted NKT cells and the natural killer complex. Immunity. 2003;18(3):391–402. PubMed PMID: 12648456.

55. Renia L, Potter SM, Mauduit M, Rosa DS, Kayibanda M, Deschemin JC, et al. Pathogenic T cells in cerebral malaria. Int J Parasitol. 2006;36(5):547–54. PubMed PMID: 16600241.
56. Yanez DM, Manning DD, Cooley AJ, Weidanz WP, van der Heyde HC. Participation of lymphocyte subpopulations in the pathogenesis of experimental murine cerebral malaria. J Immunol. 1996;157(4):1620–4. PubMed PMID: 8759747.
57. Yanez DM, Batchelder J, van der Heyde HC, Manning DD, Weidanz WP. Gamma delta T-cell function in pathogenesis of cerebral malaria in mice infected with Plasmodium berghei ANKA. Infect Immun. 1999;67(1):446–8. PubMed PMID: 9864254, Pubmed Central PMCID: 96335.
58. Grau GE, Heremans H, Piguet PF, Pointaire P, Lambert PH, Billiau A, et al. Monoclonal antibody against interferon gamma can prevent experimental cerebral malaria and its associated overproduction of tumor necrosis factor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1989; 86(14):5572–4. PubMed PMID: 2501793, Pubmed Central PMCID: 297664.
59. Hanum PS, Hayano M, Kojima S. Cytokine and chemokine responses in a cerebral malaria-susceptible or -resistant strain of mice to Plasmodium berghei ANKA infection: early chemokine expression in the brain. Int Immunol. 2003;15(5):633–40. PubMed PMID: 12697663.
60. Engwerda CR, Mynott TL, Sawhney S, De Souza JB, Bickle QD, Kaye PM. Locally up-regulated lymphotoxin alpha, not systemic tumor necrosis factor alpha, is the principle mediator of murine cerebral malaria. J Exp Med. 2002;195(10):1371–7. PubMed PMID: 12021316, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2193758.
61. Lucas R, Lou JN, Juillard P, Moore M, Bluethmann H, Grau GE. Respective role of TNF receptors in the development of experimental cerebral malaria. J Neuroimmunol. 1997;72(2):143–8. PubMed PMID: 9042106.
62. Grau GE, Fajardo LF, Piguet PF, Allet B, Lambert PH, Vassalli P. Tumor necrosis factor (cachectin) as an essential mediator in murine cerebral malaria. Science. 1987;237(4819):1210–2. PubMed PMID: 3306918.
63. Wiese L, Kurtzhals JA, Penkowa M. Neuronal apoptosis, metallothionein expression and proinflammatory responses during cerebral malaria in mice. Exp Neurol. 2006;200(1): 216–26. PubMed PMID: 16624296.
64. Desruisseaux MS, Gulinello M, Smith DN, Lee SC, Tsuji M, Weiss LM, et al. Cognitive dysfunction in mice infected with Plasmodium berghei strain ANKA. J Infect Dis. 2008;197(11):1621–7. PubMed PMID: 18419550, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2692506.
65. Migasena P, Maegraith BG. The movement of the dye (disulphine blue) from blood into brain tissue examined by dye method in normal and Plasmodium berghei infected mice. Med J Malaya. 1968;22(3):252. PubMed PMID: 4234391.
66. Ma N, Madigan MC, Chan-Ling T, Hunt NH. Compromised blood-nerve barrier, astrogliosis, and myelin disruption in optic nerves during fatal murine cerebral malaria. Glia. 1997;19(2):135–51. PubMed PMID: 9034830.
67. Thumwood CM, Hunt NH, Clark IA, Cowden WB. Breakdown of the blood-brain barrier in murine cerebral malaria. Parasitology. 1988;96(Pt 3):579–89. PubMed PMID: 2457201.
68. van der Heyde HC, Bauer P, Sun G, Chang WL, Yin L, Fuseler J, et al. Assessing vascular permeability during experimental cerebral malaria by a radiolabeled monoclonal antibody technique. Infect Immun. 2001;69(5):3460–5. PubMed PMID: 11292776, Pubmed Central PMCID: 98312.
69. Ampawong S, Combes V, Hunt NH, Radford J, Chan-Ling T, Pongponratn E, et al. Quantitation of brain edema and localisation of aquaporin 4 expression in relation to susceptibility to experimental cerebral malaria. Int J Clin Exp Pathol. 2011;4(6):566–74. PubMed PMID: 21904632, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3160608.
70. Penet MF, Viola A, Confort-Gouny S, Le Fur Y, Duhamel G, Kober F, et al. Imaging experimental cerebral malaria in vivo: significant role of ischemic brain edema. J Neurosci. 2005;25(32):7352–8. PubMed PMID: 16093385.
71. Szklarczyk A, Stins M, Milward EA, Ryu H, Fitzsimmons C, Sullivan D, et al. Glial activation and matrix metalloproteinase release in cerebral malaria. J Neurovirol. 2007;13(1):2–10. PubMed PMID: 17454443.

72. Lakhan SE, Kirchgessner A, Tepper D, Leonard A. Matrix metalloproteinases and blood-brain barrier disruption in acute ischemic stroke. Front Neurol. 2013;4:32. PubMed PMID: 23565108, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3615191.
73. Rest JR. Cerebral malaria in inbred mice. I. A new model and its pathology. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1982;76(3):410–5. PubMed PMID: 7051459.
74. Riley EM, Couper KN, Helmby H, Hafalla JC, de Souza JB, Langhorne J, et al. Neuropathogenesis of human and murine malaria. Trends Parasitol. 2010;26(6):277–8. PubMed PMID: 20338809.
75. Baptista FG, Pamplona A, Pena AC, Mota MM, Pied S, Vigario AM. Accumulation of Plasmodium berghei-infected red blood cells in the brain is crucial for the development of cerebral malaria in mice. Infect Immun. 2010;78(9):4033–9. PubMed PMID: 20605973, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2937458.
76. Franke-Fayard B, Janse CJ, Cunha-Rodrigues M, Ramesar J, Buscher P, Que I, et al. Murine malaria parasite sequestration: CD36 is the major receptor, but cerebral pathology is unlinked to sequestration. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102(32):11468–73. PubMed PMID: 16051702, Pubmed Central PMCID: 1183563.
77. Amante FH, Haque A, Stanley AC, Rivera Fde L, Randall LM, Wilson YA, et al. Immune-mediated mechanisms of parasite tissue sequestration during experimental cerebral malaria. J Immunol. 2010;185(6):3632–42. PubMed PMID: 20720206.
78. Grau GE, Piguet PF, Engers HD, Louis JA, Vassalli P, Lambert PH. L3T4+ T lymphocytes play a major role in the pathogenesis of murine cerebral malaria. J Immunol. 1986;137(7): 2348–54. PubMed PMID: 3093572.
79. Cox-Singh J, Hiu J, Lucas SB, Divis PC, Zulkarnaen M, Chandran P, et al. Severe malaria - a case of fatal Plasmodium knowlesi infection with post-mortem findings: a case report. Malar J. 2010;9:10. PubMed PMID: 20064229, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2818646.
80. Cox-Singh J, Singh B, Daneshvar C, Planche T, Parker-Williams J, Krishna S. Anti-inflammatory cytokines predominate in acute human Plasmodium knowlesi infections. PLoS One. 2011;6(6):e20541. PubMed PMID: 21687657, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3110641.
81. Fujioka H, Millet P, Maeno Y, Nakazawa S, Ito Y, Howard RJ, et al. A nonhuman primate model for human cerebral malaria: rhesus monkeys experimentally infected with Plasmodium fragile. Exp Parasitol. 1994;78(4):371–6. PubMed PMID: 7515825.
82. Nakano Y, Fujioka H, Luc KD, Rabbege JR, Todd GD, Collins WE, et al. A correlation of the sequestration rate of Plasmodium coatneyi-infected erythrocytes in cerebral and subcutaneous tissues of a rhesus monkey. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1996;55(3):311–4. PubMed PMID: 8842121.
83. Smith CD, Brown AE, Nakazawa S, Fujioka H, Aikawa M. Multi-organ erythrocyte sequestration and ligand expression in rhesus monkeys infected with Plasmodium coatneyi malaria. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1996;55(4):379–83. PubMed PMID: 8916792.
84. Kawai S, Sugiyama M. Imaging analysis of the brain in a primate model of cerebral malaria. Acta Trop. 2010;114(3):152–6. PubMed PMID: 19467218.
85. Moreno A, Cabrera-Mora M, Garcia A, Orkin J, Strobert E, Barnwell JW, et al. Plasmodium coatneyi in rhesus macaques replicates the multi-systemic dysfunction of severe malaria in humans. Infect Immun. 2013;81(6):1889–904. PubMed PMID: 23509137.
86. Tongren JE, Yang C, Collins WE, Sullivan JS, Lal AA, Xiao L. Expression of proinflammatory cytokines in four regions of the brain in Macaque mulatta (rhesus) monkeys infected with Plasmodium coatneyi. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2000;62(4):530–4. PubMed PMID: 11220773.
87. Gysin J, Aikawa M, Tourneur N, Tegoshi T. Experimental Plasmodium falciparum cerebral malaria in the squirrel monkey Saimiri sciureus. Exp Parasitol. 1992;75(4):390–8. PubMed PMID: 1493871.
88. Robert C, Peyrol S, Pouvelle B, Gay-Andrieu F, Gysin J. Ultrastructural aspects of Plasmodium falciparum-infected erythrocyte adherence to endothelial cells of Saimiri brain microvasculature. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1996;54(2):169–77. PubMed PMID: 8619443.
89. Hill AV, Allsopp CE, Kwiatkowski D, Anstey NM, Twumasi P, Rowe PA, et al. Common west African HLA antigens are associated with protection from severe malaria. Nature. 1991;352(6336):595–600. PubMed PMID: 1865923.

90. Bull PC, Lowe BS, Kortok M, Molyneux CS, Newbold CI, Marsh K. Parasite antigens on the infected red cell surface are targets for naturally acquired immunity to malaria. Nat Med. 1998;4(3):358–60. PubMed PMID: 9500614.
91. Gupta S, Snow RW, Donnelly CA, Marsh K, Newbold C. Immunity to non-cerebral severe malaria is acquired after one or two infections. Nat Med. 1999;5(3):340–3. PubMed PMID: 10086393.
92. Snow RW, Nahlen B, Palmer A, Donnelly CA, Gupta S, Marsh K. Risk of severe malaria among African infants: direct evidence of clinical protection during early infancy. J Infect Dis. 1998;177(3):819–22. PubMed PMID: 9498474.
93. Riley EM. Is T-cell priming required for initiation of pathology in malaria infections? Immunol Today. 1999;20(5):228–33. PubMed PMID: 10322302.
94. Grau GE, Piguet PF, Vassalli P, Lambert PH. Tumor-necrosis factor and other cytokines in cerebral malaria: experimental and clinical data. Immunol Rev. 1989;112:49–70. PubMed PMID: 2575074.
95. Kwiatkowski D, Hill AV, Sambou I, Twumasi P, Castracane J, Manogue KR, et al. TNF concentration in fatal cerebral, non-fatal cerebral, and uncomplicated Plasmodium falciparum malaria. Lancet. 1990;336(8725):1201–4. PubMed PMID: 1978068.
96. Dodoo D, Omer FM, Todd J, Akanmori BD, Koram KA, Riley EM. Absolute levels and ratios of proinflammatory and anti-inflammatory cytokine production in vitro predict clinical immunity to Plasmodium falciparum malaria. J Infect Dis. 2002;185(7):971–9. PubMed PMID: 11920322.
97. Elhassan IM, Hviid L, Satti G, Akerstrom B, Jakobsen PH, Jensen JB, et al. Evidence of endothelial inflammation, T cell activation, and T cell reallocation in uncomplicated Plasmodium falciparum malaria. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1994;51(3):372–9. PubMed PMID: 7524374.
98. Loizon S, Boeuf P, Tetteh JK, Goka B, Obeng-Adjei G, Kurtzhals JA, et al. V beta profiles in African children with acute cerebral or uncomplicated malaria: very focused changes among a remarkable global stability. Microbes Infect. 2007;9(11):1252–9. PubMed PMID: 17890120.
99. Artavanis-Tsakonas K, Riley EM. Innate immune response to malaria: rapid induction of IFN-gamma from human NK cells by live Plasmodium falciparum-infected erythrocytes. J Immunol. 2002;169(6):2956–63. PubMed PMID: 12218109.
100. Waterfall M, Black A, Riley E. Gammadelta+ T cells preferentially respond to live rather than killed malaria parasites. Infect Immun. 1998;66(5):2393–8. PubMed PMID: 9573139, Pubmed Central PMCID: 108213.
101. Walther M, Jeffries D, Finney OC, Njie M, Ebonyi A, Deininger S, et al. Distinct roles for FOXP3 and FOXP3 CD4 T cells in regulating cellular immunity to uncomplicated and severe Plasmodium falciparum malaria. PLoS Pathog. 2009;5(4):e1000364. PubMed PMID: 19343213, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2658808.
102. McGuire W, Hill AV, Allsopp CE, Greenwood BM, Kwiatkowski D. Variation in the TNF-alpha promoter region associated with susceptibility to cerebral malaria. Nature. 1994; 371(6497):508–10. PubMed PMID: 7935762.
103. Riley EM, Wahl S, Perkins DJ, Schofield L. Regulating immunity to malaria. Parasite Immunol. 2006;28(1–2):35–49. PubMed PMID: 16438675.
104. Sherry BA, Alava G, Tracey KJ, Martiney J, Cerami A, Slater AF. Malaria-specific metabolite hemozoin mediates the release of several potent endogenous pyrogens (TNF, MIP-1 alpha, and MIP-1 beta) in vitro, and altered thermoregulation in vivo. J Inflamm. 1995;45(2):85–96. PubMed PMID: 7583361.
105. Coban C, Ishii KJ, Kawai T, Hemmi H, Sato S, Uematsu S, et al. Toll-like receptor 9 mediates innate immune activation by the malaria pigment hemozoin. J Exp Med. 2005;201(1):19–25. PubMed PMID: 15630134, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2212757.
106. Deshpande P, Shastry P. Modulation of cytokine profiles by malaria pigment – hemozoin: role of IL-10 in suppression of proliferative responses of mitogen stimulated human PBMC. Cytokine. 2004;28(6):205–13. PubMed PMID: 15566949.
107. Schwarzer E, Turrini F, Ulliers D, Giribaldi G, Ginsburg H, Arese P. Impairment of macrophage functions after ingestion of Plasmodium falciparum-infected erythrocytes or isolated

malarial pigment. J Exp Med. 1992;176(4):1033–41. PubMed PMID: 1402649, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2119406.
108. Rother RP, Bell L, Hillmen P, Gladwin MT. The clinical sequelae of intravascular hemolysis and extracellular plasma hemoglobin: a novel mechanism of human disease. JAMA. 2005;293(13):1653–62. PubMed PMID: 15811985.
109. Lee SK, Ding JL. A perspective on the role of extracellular hemoglobin on the innate immune system. DNA Cell Biol. 2013;32(2):36–40. PubMed PMID: 23249270, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3557431.
110. John CC, Opika-Opoka R, Byarugaba J, Idro R, Boivin MJ. Low levels of RANTES are associated with mortality in children with cerebral malaria. J Infect Dis. 2006;194(6):837–45. PubMed PMID: 16941352.
111. Moxon CA, Heyderman RS, Wassmer SC. Dysregulation of coagulation in cerebral malaria. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 2009;166(2):99–108. PubMed PMID: 19450727.
112. Tripathi AK, Sha W, Shulaev V, Stins MF, Sullivan Jr DJ. Plasmodium falciparum-infected erythrocytes induce NF-kappaB regulated inflammatory pathways in human cerebral endothelium. Blood. 2009;114(19):4243–52. PubMed PMID: 19713460, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2925626.
113. de Mendonca VR, Goncalves MS, Barral-Netto M. The host genetic diversity in malaria infection. J Trop Med. 2012;2012:940616. PubMed PMID: 23316245, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3532872.
114. Cappadoro M, Giribaldi G, O'Brien E, Turrini F, Mannu F, Ulliers D, et al. Early phagocytosis of glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD)-deficient erythrocytes parasitized by Plasmodium falciparum may explain malaria protection in G6PD deficiency. Blood. 1998;92(7):2527–34. PubMed PMID: 9746794.
115. Sambo MR, Trovoada MJ, Benchimol C, Quinhentos V, Goncalves L, Velosa R, et al. Transforming growth factor beta 2 and heme oxygenase 1 genes are risk factors for the cerebral malaria syndrome in Angolan children. PLoS One. 2010;5(6):e11141. PubMed PMID: 20585394, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2886838.
116. Takeda M, Kikuchi M, Ubalee R, Na-Bangchang K, Ruangweerayut R, Shibahara S, et al. Microsatellite polymorphism in the heme oxygenase-1 gene promoter is associated with susceptibility to cerebral malaria in Myanmar. Jpn J Infect Dis. 2005;58(5):268–71. PubMed PMID: 16249618.
117. Mendonca VR, Luz NF, Santos NJ, Borges VM, Goncalves MS, Andrade BB, et al. Association between the haptoglobin and heme oxygenase 1 genetic profiles and soluble CD163 in susceptibility to and severity of human malaria. Infect Immun. 2012;80(4):1445–54. PubMed PMID: 22290142, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3318432.
118. Sam-Agudu NA, Greene JA, Opoka RO, Kazura JW, Boivin MJ, Zimmerman PA, et al. TLR9 polymorphisms are associated with altered IFN-gamma levels in children with cerebral malaria. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2010;82(4):548–55. PubMed PMID: 20348497, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2844552.
119. Mockenhaupt FP, Cramer JP, Hamann L, Stegemann MS, Eckert J, Oh NR, et al. Toll-like receptor (TLR) polymorphisms in African children: common TLR-4 variants predispose to severe malaria. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2006;103(1):177–82. PubMed PMID: 16371473, Pubmed Central PMCID: 1324982.
120. Warrell DA, Looareesuwan S, Phillips RE, White NJ, Warrell MJ, Chapel HM, et al. Function of the blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier in human cerebral malaria: rejection of the permeability hypothesis. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 1986;35(5):882–9. PubMed PMID: 2429567.
121. Brown H, Hien TT, Day N, Mai NT, Chuong LV, Chau TT, et al. Evidence of blood-brain barrier dysfunction in human cerebral malaria. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 1999;25(4): 331–40. PubMed PMID: 10476050.
122. Brown H, Rogerson S, Taylor T, Tembo M, Mwenechanya J, Molyneux M, et al. Blood-brain barrier function in cerebral malaria in Malawian children. Am J Trop Med Hyg. 2001; 64(3–4):207–13. PubMed PMID: 11442219.
123. Dorovini-Zis K, Schmidt K, Huynh H, Fu W, Whitten RO, Milner D, et al. The neuropathology of fatal cerebral malaria in Malawian children. Am J Pathol. 2011;178(5):2146–58. PubMed PMID: 21514429, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3081150.

124. Renia L, Wu Howland S, Claser C, Charlotte Gruner A, Suwanarusk R, Hui Teo T, et al. Cerebral malaria: mysteries at the blood-brain barrier. Virulence. 2012;3(2):193–201. PubMed PMID: 22460644, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3396698.
125. Clark IA, Cowden WB. Roles of TNF in malaria and other parasitic infections. Immunol Ser. 1992;56:365–407. PubMed PMID: 1550869.
126. Wong D, Dorovini-Zis K, Vincent SR. Cytokines, nitric oxide, and cGMP modulate the permeability of an in vitro model of the human blood-brain barrier. Exp Neurol. 2004;190(2):446–55. PubMed PMID: 15530883.
127. Yuan SY. Signal transduction pathways in enhanced microvascular permeability. Microcirculation. 2000;7(6 Pt 1):395–403. PubMed PMID: 11142336.
128. Wassmer SC, Combes V, Candal FJ, Juhan-Vague I, Grau GE. Platelets potentiate brain endothelial alterations induced by Plasmodium falciparum. Infect Immun. 2006;74(1):645–53. PubMed PMID: 16369021, Pubmed Central PMCID: 1346683.
129. Esamai F, Ernerudh J, Janols H, Welin S, Ekerfelt C, Mining S, et al. Cerebral malaria in children: serum and cerebrospinal fluid TNF-alpha and TGF-beta levels and their relationship to clinical outcome. J Trop Pediatr. 2003;49(4):216–23. PubMed PMID: 12929882.
130. Wassmer SC, de Souza JB, Frere C, Candal FJ, Juhan-Vague I, Grau GE. TGF-beta1 released from activated platelets can induce TNF-stimulated human brain endothelium apoptosis: a new mechanism for microvascular lesion during cerebral malaria. J Immunol. 2006;176(2): 1180–4. PubMed PMID: 16394007.
131. Jambou R, Combes V, Jambou MJ, Weksler BB, Couraud PO, Grau GE. Plasmodium falciparum adhesion on human brain microvascular endothelial cells involves transmigration-like cup formation and induces opening of intercellular junctions. PLoS Pathog. 2010;6(7): e1001021. PubMed PMID: 20686652.
132. Pino P, Taoufiq Z, Nitcheu J, Vouldoukis I, Mazier D. Blood-brain barrier breakdown during cerebral malaria: suicide or murder? Thromb Haemost. 2005;94(2):336–40. PubMed PMID: 16113823.
133. Pino P, Vouldoukis I, Kolb JP, Mahmoudi N, Desportes-Livage I, Bricaire F, et al. Plasmodium falciparum – infected erythrocyte adhesion induces caspase activation and apoptosis in human endothelial cells. J Infect Dis. 2003;187(8):1283–90. PubMed PMID: 12696008.
134. Armulik A, Genove G, Mae M, Nisancioglu MH, Wallgard E, Niaudet C, et al. Pericytes regulate the blood-brain barrier. Nature. 2010;468(7323):557–61. PubMed PMID: 20944627.
135. Sa-Pereira I, Brites D, Brito MA. Neurovascular unit: a focus on pericytes. Mol Neurobiol. 2012;45(2):327–47. PubMed PMID: 22371274.
136. Dalkara T, Gursoy-Ozdemir Y, Yemisci M. Brain microvascular pericytes in health and disease. Acta Neuropathol. 2011;122(1):1–9. PubMed PMID: 21656168.
137. Kovac A, Erickson MA, Banks WA. Brain microvascular pericytes are immunoactive in culture: cytokine, chemokine, nitric oxide, and LRP-1 expression in response to lipopolysaccharide. J Neuroinflammation. 2011;8:139. PubMed PMID: 21995440, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3207972.
138. Medana IM, Idro R, Newton CR. Axonal and astrocyte injury markers in the cerebrospinal fluid of Kenyan children with severe malaria. J Neurol Sci. 2007;258(1–2):93–8. PubMed PMID: 17459417.
139. Stirling DP, Stys PK. Mechanisms of axonal injury: internodal nanocomplexes and calcium deregulation. Trends Mol Med. 2010;16(4):160–70. PubMed PMID: 20207196, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2976657.
140. Dolinak D, Smith C, Graham DI. Hypoglycaemia is a cause of axonal injury. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 2000;26(5):448–53. PubMed PMID: 11054185.
141. Kaur B, Rutty GN, Timperley WR. The possible role of hypoxia in the formation of axonal bulbs. J Clin Pathol. 1999;52(3):203–9. PubMed PMID: 10450180, Pubmed Central PMCID: 501080.
142. Schluesener HJ, Kremsner PG, Meyermann R. Widespread expression of MRP8 and MRP14 in human cerebral malaria by microglial cells. Acta Neuropathol. 1998;96(6):575–80. PubMed PMID: 9845287.

143. Beattie EC, Stellwagen D, Morishita W, Bresnahan JC, Ha BK, Von Zastrow M, et al. Control of synaptic strength by glial TNFalpha. Science. 2002;295(5563):2282–5. PubMed PMID: 11910117.
144. Pickering M, Cumiskey D, O'Connor JJ. Actions of TNF-alpha on glutamatergic synaptic transmission in the central nervous system. Exp Physiol. 2005;90(5):663–70. PubMed PMID: 15944202.
145. Li N, Worthmann H, Deb M, Chen S, Weissenborn K. Nitric oxide (NO) and asymmetric dimethylarginine (ADMA): their pathophysiological role and involvement in intracerebral hemorrhage. Neurol Res. 2011;33(5):541–8. PubMed PMID: 21669125.
146. Weiss G, Thuma PE, Biemba G, Mabeza G, Werner ER, Gordeuk VR. Cerebrospinal fluid levels of biopterin, nitric oxide metabolites, and immune activation markers and the clinical course of human cerebral malaria. J Infect Dis. 1998;177(4):1064–8. PubMed PMID: 9534983.
147. Agbenyega T, Angus B, Bedu-Addo G, Baffoe-Bonnie B, Griffin G, Vallance P, et al. Plasma nitrogen oxides and blood lactate concentrations in Ghanaian children with malaria. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg. 1997;91(3):298–302. PubMed PMID: 9231201.
148. Clark IA, Awburn MM, Whitten RO, Harper CG, Liomba NG, Molyneux ME, et al. Tissue distribution of migration inhibitory factor and inducible nitric oxide synthase in falciparum malaria and sepsis in African children. Malar J. 2003;2:6. PubMed PMID: 12716455, Pubmed Central PMCID: 154094.
149. Wolf A, Zalpour C, Theilmeier G, Wang BY, Ma A, Anderson B, et al. Dietary L-arginine supplementation normalizes platelet aggregation in hypercholesterolemic humans. J Am Coll Cardiol. 1997;29(3):479–85. PubMed PMID: 9060881.
150. Kubes P, Suzuki M, Granger DN. Nitric oxide: an endogenous modulator of leukocyte adhesion. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1991;88(11):4651–5. PubMed PMID: 1675786, Pubmed Central PMCID: 51723.
151. Garthwaite J. Concepts of neural nitric oxide-mediated transmission. Eur J Neurosci. 2008;27(11):2783–802. PubMed PMID: 18588525, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2610389.
152. Guix FX, Uribesalgo I, Coma M, Munoz FJ. The physiology and pathophysiology of nitric oxide in the brain. Prog Neurobiol. 2005;76(2):126–52. PubMed PMID: 16115721.
153. Contestabile A. Role of nitric oxide in cerebellar development and function: focus on granule neurons. Cerebellum. 2012;11(1):50–61. PubMed PMID: 21104176.
154. Yeo TW, Lampah DA, Gitawati R, Tjitra E, Kenangalem E, McNeil YR, et al. Impaired nitric oxide bioavailability and L-arginine reversible endothelial dysfunction in adults with falciparum malaria. J Exp Med. 2007;204(11):2693–704. PubMed PMID: 17954570, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2118490.
155. Yeo TW, Lampah DA, Gitawati R, Tjitra E, Kenangalem E, McNeil YR, et al. Recovery of endothelial function in severe falciparum malaria: relationship with improvement in plasma L-arginine and blood lactate concentrations. J Infect Dis. 2008;198(4):602–8. PubMed PMID: 18605903, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2709993.
156. Yeo TW, Lampah DA, Gitawati R, Tjitra E, Kenangalem E, Piera K, et al. Angiopoietin-2 is associated with decreased endothelial nitric oxide and poor clinical outcome in severe falciparum malaria. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(44):17097–102. PubMed PMID: 18957536.
157. Hawkes M, Opoka RO, Namasopo S, Miller C, Thorpe KE, Lavery JV, et al. Inhaled nitric oxide for the adjunctive therapy of severe malaria: protocol for a randomized controlled trial. Trials. 2011;12:176. PubMed PMID: 21752262, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3151218.
158. Higgins SJ, Kain KC, Liles WC. Immunopathogenesis of falciparum malaria: implications for adjunctive therapy in the management of severe and cerebral malaria. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther. 2011;9(9):803–19. PubMed PMID: 21905788.
159. Gramaglia I, Sobolewski P, Meays D, Contreras R, Nolan JP, Frangos JA, et al. Low nitric oxide bioavailability contributes to the genesis of experimental cerebral malaria. Nat Med. 2006;12(12):1417–22. PubMed PMID: 17099710.

160. Ferroni P, Vazzana N, Riondino S, Cuccurullo C, Guadagni F, Davi G. Platelet function in health and disease: from molecular mechanisms, redox considerations to novel therapeutic opportunities. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2012;17(10):1447–85. PubMed PMID: 22458931.
161. Bernassola F, Rossi A, Melino G. Regulation of transglutaminases by nitric oxide. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1999;887:83–91. PubMed PMID: 10668466.
162. Zhou Z, Yee DL, Guchhait P. Molecular link between intravascular hemolysis and vascular occlusion in sickle cell disease. Curr Vasc Pharmacol. 2012;10(6):756–61. PubMed PMID: 22272904.
163. Buhrer C, Felderhoff-Mueser U, Wellmann S. Erythropoietin and ischemic conditioning – why two good things may be bad. Acta Paediatr. 2007;96(6):787–9. PubMed PMID: 17537001.
164. Kaiser K, Texier A, Ferrandiz J, Buguet A, Meiller A, Latour C, et al. Recombinant human erythropoietin prevents the death of mice during cerebral malaria. J Infect Dis. 2006;193(7):987–95. PubMed PMID: 16518761.
165. Wiese L, Hempel C, Penkowa M, Kirkby N, Kurtzhals JA. Recombinant human erythropoietin increases survival and reduces neuronal apoptosis in a murine model of cerebral malaria. Malar J. 2008;7:3. PubMed PMID: 18179698.
166. Casals-Pascual C, Idro R, Gicheru N, Gwer S, Kitsao B, Gitau E, et al. High levels of erythropoietin are associated with protection against neurological sequelae in African children with cerebral malaria. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(7):2634–9. PubMed PMID: 18263734.
167. Medana IM, Day NP, Hien TT, White NJ, Turner GD. Erythropoietin and its receptors in the brainstem of adults with fatal falciparum malaria. Malar J. 2009;8:261. PubMed PMID: 19930602, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2785829.
168. Ehrenreich H, Weissenborn K, Prange H, Schneider D, Weimar C, Wartenberg K, et al. Recombinant human erythropoietin in the treatment of acute ischemic stroke. Stroke. 2009;40(12):e647–56. PubMed PMID: 19834012.
169. Picot S, Bienvenu AL, Konate S, Sissoko S, Barry A, Diarra E, et al. Safety of epoietin beta-quinine drug combination in children with cerebral malaria in Mali. Malar J. 2009;8:169. PubMed PMID: 19630971, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2723129.
170. Najjar SS, Rao SV, Melloni C, Raman SV, Povsic TJ, Melton L, et al. Intravenous erythropoietin in patients with ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction: REVEAL: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA. 2011;305(18):1863–72. PubMed PMID: 21558517, Pubmed Central PMCID: 3486644.
171. Lapchak PA. Erythropoietin molecules to treat acute ischemic stroke: a translational dilemma! Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2010;19(10):1179–86. PubMed PMID: 20828227, Pubmed Central PMCID: 2947745.

Part IV
Drugs of Abuse and NeuroAIDS

HIV and Cocaine Interplay in HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Disorders

Honghong Yao, Crystal Bethel-Brown, and Shilpa J. Buch

Abstract While antiretrovirals are becoming the gold standard in HIV care and are effective in suppressing viremia, the relative inability of these drugs to penetrate the blood-brain barrier, the latency of HIV in the tissues, and the increased life span of individuals on therapy often lead to complications of HIV in the central nervous system (CNS) termed as HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders (HAND). Among the individuals inflicted with HAND, almost 30 % have a history of substance abuse. Among the commonly abused drugs, cocaine is the most widely used and has emerged as a key contributor to the seroprevalence and progression of HIV infection. Both epidemiological and laboratory-based studies demonstrate that cocaine promotes HIV replication and has multifaceted deleterious effects on the various cells of the CNS resulting in a disrupted blood-brain barrier, enhanced glial activation, and neurotoxicity. Effects of cocaine alone or in combination with HIV proteins lead to augmented neuropathogenesis. This review summarizes current understanding of the diverse effects of cocaine on the various cells of the CNS and how the drug synergizes with HIV and HIV proteins to exacerbate neurotoxicity.

Keywords HIV • AIDS • Cocaine • Glial cell • HIV-1-associated neurocognitive disorders • CNS • Non-opioid receptor

---

H. Yao
Department of Pharmacology, Medical School of Southeast University,
Nanjing, Jiangsu 210009, China

Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience,
University of Nebraska Medical Center, 985880 Nebraska Medical Center (DRC 8011),
Omaha, NE 68198-5880, USA

C. Bethel-Brown • S.J. Buch, Ph.D. (✉)
Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience,
University of Nebraska Medical Center, 985880 Nebraska Medical Center (DRC 8011),
Omaha, NE 68198-5880, USA
e-mail: sbuch@unmc.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_20, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

1 Introduction

HIV infection remains a critical health and socioeconomic problem worldwide. Currently there are over 34 million individuals worldwide living with HIV with almost 1.4 million that have died due to HIV-related complications as reported by WHO in 2011. While the majority of infections and related mortality are found in sub-Saharan Africa, HIV infection continues to be a burgeoning problem in other parts of the world as well. It is estimated that in the United States, there are over one million persons living with HIV with approximately 50,000 new infections each year. The advent of effective antiretroviral therapy (ART) in 1996 has considerably improved the lives of those infected with HIV, with the control of systemic virus replication leading to increased longevity. Paradoxically, however, increased longevity coupled with ART toxicity, low-level chronic activation, and limited penetration of the drugs into the CNS results in premature aging of the infected individuals with the brain as a sanctuary for persistent latent virus. Often the undesired effect of long-term usage of ART or ART interruption is associated with increased prevalence of HIV-associated cognitive disorders (HAND) affecting almost 30 % of infected individuals. The spectrum of HAND can range from asymptomatic neurocognitive impairment to minor cognitive motor disorders and in extreme cases HIV-associated dementia (less than 7 % of patients).

HIV infection is associated with various comorbidities including but not limited to substance abuse. In fact, intravenous drug using (IVDU) individuals form a significant proportion of the at risk of HIV population primarily due to needle sharing. Use of illicit drugs and HIV-1 infection are two intertwined global health epidemics. It has been estimated that in the United States HIV-1 infection is one of the leading causes of death among 25–44-year-olds, with IVDU accounting for almost one-third of all newly diagnosed cases. According to the National Youth Risk Behavior Survey in 2007, at least 3.3 % American teenagers (aged 14–17) had some form of cocaine abuse history during their lifetime. Previous reports have identified that use of crack cocaine is a risk factor for acquisition of HIV infection and is also associated independently with exacerbated progression to AIDS [1–3]. While it is well recognized that cocaine and other recreational drugs affect the addiction pathways in the brain leading to dependence, it is becoming increasingly clear that these drugs alone or in conjunction with HIV and HIV proteins can also exert physiological and molecular effects that are distinct from the addiction pathways. Cocaine abuse can thus be envisioned to contribute to progression of clinical AIDS via its interplay with HIV and HIV proteins.

Both HIV and cocaine target the brain while also impairing the functions of macrophages and $CD4^+$ lymphocytes [4–8]. Cocaine is also known to enhance HIV-1 expression in these cells [9–13] and is known to cause impairment of immune functions [9, 14–16]. It has been postulated that cocaine could aid as a cofactor in the pathogenesis of HIV infection and in the susceptibility and progression of HAND [1–3]. Of the commonly abused drugs, cocaine abuse (by multiple routes) has been linked more commonly to increased incidence of HIV seroprevalence and progression

to AIDS [17–21]. Both epidemiological and laboratory-based studies demonstrate that cocaine promotes HIV replication and has multiple deleterious effects on various cells of the CNS resulting in a disrupted blood-brain barrier, enhanced glial activation, and neurotoxicity. This chapter summarizes current understanding of the interplay of HIV infection and cocaine in modulating enhanced pathogenesis of HAND.

2 Cocaine Potentiates HIV-1 Replication

Since cocaine abuse exacerbates HIV infection, it was hypothesized that cocaine could play a direct role in HIV replication. Elegant studies by Peterson et al. demonstrated that in cocultures of peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) from healthy donors infected with a clinical isolate of HIV-1, cocaine stimulated replication of the virus [22, 23]. These authors demonstrated that HIV replication, measured by the release of HIV p24 antigen in cell culture fluids, was significantly upregulated in activated cells compared to cells that were not activated but exposed to cocaine [22]. In this study a critical role of the pleiotropic cytokine transforming growth factor (TGF)-β was implicated in cocaine-mediated induction of virus replication. Based on the role of immune activation in pathogenesis of HIV infection [24–26], these cell-based studies suggested clinical relevance of cocaine in augmenting disease pathogenesis.

Since cellular activation rather than virus replication is critical for HIV-associated pathogenesis, the authors also sought to understand the role of cell activation in cocaine-mediated upregulation of virus replication. In this study PBMCs stimulated with or without cytomegalovirus (CMV) were pretreated with cocaine followed by coculturing in the presence of HIV-infected PBMCs, and supernatants were monitored for HIV p24 antigen as an index of virus replication [23]. These findings demonstrated that although cocaine by itself failed to trigger HIV-1 replication, it was able to enhance virus replication in the presence of other activation signals such as CMV [27–30].

Since macrophages promote HIV replication, effect of cocaine on potentiation of virus replication in these cells was also investigated. Cocaine markedly enhanced virus production in simian human immunodeficiency virus (SHIV)-infected monocyte-derived macrophages (MDMs). Interestingly, even in U1 cells, a chronically infected promonocytic cell line harboring a latent virus genome, cocaine was able to enhance virus replication in these cells, thereby underscoring the role of cocaine in pushing the virus out of latency. This property of cocaine could have serious ramifications in HIV-infected individuals on ART as they harbor reservoirs of latent virus in various tissues [22, 23, 31]. In addition to enhancing virus replication, cocaine was also able to induce upregulation of the macrophage activation marker, human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-DR, in MDMs. Taken together, cocaine usage in an HIV-infected individual could lead to increased virus replication in both the productive as well as latently infected cells while also upregulating cellular activation culminating ultimately into perpetuation of an inflammatory cascade within the CNS [31].

The interaction of cocaine with HIV observed in cell culture studies has also been validated in the rodent model system using a hybrid mouse model (huPBL-SCID mouse) infected with HIV-1 in the presence or absence of cocaine. Systemic cocaine administration in this model correlated with upregulation of HIV-1 replication in human peripheral blood leukocytes (PBL), downregulation of $CD4^+$ cells, and increased circulating virus load [12]. The mechanism of cocaine-mediated upregulation of virus involved upregulation of CCR5 expression in the peritoneal cells of HIV-infected, cocaine-treated huPBL-SCID mice with a subsequent increase in the numbers of virally infected cells.

Cocaine is known to interact with σ-1R [32, 33], a class of non-opioid receptors that are localized specifically at the endoplasmic reticulum (ER)/mitochondrial interface commonly termed as the mitochondrion-associated ER membrane or the MAM. σ-1R are known to function as molecular chaperones that are critical for maintaining the activity of the IP3 receptor [32]. It has been shown that following stimulation with stimuli such as cocaine, σ-1R can translocate to the plasma membrane [34, 35]. Owing to this translocation, σ-1R can in turn regulate the expression and functions of other diverse receptors or ion channels present on the cell membrane [35–37]. In the huPBL-SCID model using the pharmacological blocker of σ-1R, Roth et al. [38] demonstrated that cocaine mediated its effects on virus replication via the σ-1R.

2.1 HIV Replication in Microglia: Role of σ-1R

Cocaine-mediated potentiation on HIV replication has also been investigated in another myeloid cell type in the CNS, namely, microglia which are the resident macrophages of the brain and the target cells for virus replication in the brain [39]. Microglia play a pivotal role in defense against toxic stimuli as well as in various pathogenic states including HIV-1 infection of the CNS. Consistent with the role of cocaine in promoting systemic virus replication in the PBMCs and macrophages, cocaine also augmented virus replication in microglial cells infected with HIV [9, 11, 12, 23]. Furthermore, it was also demonstrated that κ-opioid receptor ligands, that are known to suppress neurochemical and neurobehavioral responses to cocaine, inhibited cocaine-induced potentiation of HIV-1 replication in microglial cells. This effect was mediated by down-modulation of CCR5, a coreceptor of HIV-1, involving the extracellular signal-regulated kinase 1/2 [40]. Intriguingly, similar to findings reported in PHA-activated PBMCs, cocaine-mediated upregulation of HIV-1 replication in microglia also involved the binding of cocaine to its cognate σ-1R and the cytokine TGF-β [41].

2.2 HIV Replication in Astrocytes

It has become evident in recent years that astrocytes previously thought of as refractory to HIV infection are also susceptible to HIV-1 infection in the presence of relevant cytokines [42–47]. Astrocytes are integral components of the CNS since they

maintain a homeostatic environment and actively participate in bidirectional communication with neurons and microglia [42, 48, 49]. Following initial infection with HIV-1, astrocytes exhibit a transient surge of viral replication that subsequently diminishes to low levels and often persists [42–44]. It has been estimated that up to 20 % of astrocytes can be infected with the virus in HIV-infected patients making these cells a potential reservoir for the latent virus [43]. The effect of cocaine on astrocytes in the context of HIV-1 infection has been reported by Nair et al. [39]. Previous studies have demonstrated that in normal human astrocytes pretreatment with cocaine prior to HIV-1 infection significantly upregulated viral replication as assessed by a significant increase in LTR-R/U5 gene expression [39], representing early stages of reverse transcription of HIV-1. Furthermore, exposure of astrocytes to cocaine exhibited increased virus replication at day 15 postinfection with a concomitant upregulation of viral proteins. Specifically, induction of these proteins, that are critical in the neuropathogenesis of HIV-1 infection, comprised the intracellular signaling molecules, translation elongation factor, and molecular chaperones [39]. These findings suggested that the response of astrocytes to cocaine and/or HIV-1 can lead to increased viral load and subsequent toxicity in the CNS.

3 Effect of Cocaine on Glial Functions in the CNS

3.1 Microglia

Microglia play a critical role in host defense. However, if the response of these cells is unabated, it can lead to the deleterious effects as had been observed in HIV-1-associated neuroinflammation and neuropathogenesis. Cocaine-mediated induction of the chemokine MCP-1/CCL2 has been demonstrated in rodent microglia. This effect of cocaine is transduced via the translocation of the σ-1R to the lipid raft microdomains of the plasma membrane, with subsequent sequential activation of Src, mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs) and phosphatidylinositol-3′ kinase (PI3K)/Akt, and nuclear translocation of the nuclear factor kappa B (NF-κB). This ultimately culminates into binding of NF-κB to the promoter of MCP-1 leading to transcription of the chemokine [50]. Functional implication of cocaine-induced MCP-1 expression was validated using in vitro assays of monocyte transmigration across the human brain microvascular endothelial cells (HBMECs). In these assays conditioned media from cocaine-exposed microglia increased monocyte transmigration, an effect that was blocked by antagonists to CCR2 or σ-1R. These findings were also corroborated in vivo wherein cocaine injections in mice resulted in increased monocyte transmigration in the CNS, and this effect was attenuated in mice pretreated with the σ-1R antagonist. Interestingly, cocaine-mediated transmigratory effects were not observed in CCR2 knockout mice as expected. These findings led to the conclusion that cocaine-mediated induction of MCP-1 accelerates monocyte extravasation across the endothelium which could have a possible role in increased neuroinflammation associated with cocaine abuse in HIV-infected individuals [50].

In addition to upregulating inflammatory chemokines, exposure of microglial cells (BV2 or rat primary microglia) to a higher dose of exogenous cocaine has been shown to result in apoptosis with a concomitant generation of intracellular reactive oxygen species. Intriguingly, endoplasmic reticulum (ER) signaling mediators such as PERK, Elf2α, and CHOP were involved in decreased cell viability induced by cocaine as evidence by the fact that blockage of CHOP expression significantly ameliorated cocaine-mediated cell death. These findings thus underscore the importance of ER stress in modulating cocaine-induced microglial cell toxicity [51]. Understanding the link between ER stress, oxidative stress, and apoptosis could lead to the development of therapeutic strategies targeting cocaine-mediated microglial death/dysfunction.

3.2 Astroglia

In addition to enhancing virus replication in astroglial cells in vitro, cocaine administration in mice also resulted in increased proliferation and expression of glial fibrillar acidic protein (GFAP) in the dentate gyrus [52], suggesting thereby that cocaine abuse correlated with activation of astrocytes. Since cellular activation is a hallmark of HAND, this could have implications for development of disease progression in cocaine abusers that are HIV infected. In addition to inducing cell activation, cocaine has also been shown to potentiate toxicity of the viral envelope gp120 in rat primary astrocytes via upregulation of oxidative stress [53]. Molecular mechanisms involved in this process included activation of the JNK, p38, ERK/ MAPK, and NF-kB pathways [53].

4 Effect of Cocaine on Neurotoxicity

It is well recognized that although neurons are susceptible to the affects of HIV, the virus does not infect these cells per se. Various elegant studies have demonstrated that viral protein products such as the transactivator protein (Tat) and the envelope (gp120), which are released from the infected cells, can exert neurotoxicity in both in vitro and in vivo model systems [54–60]. Interestingly, ample evidence now suggests that cocaine can amplify the neurotoxic responses of viral proteins leading to enhancement of neurotoxicity in the CNS [56, 61–63]. The mechanism by which cocaine potentiates HIV protein toxicity involves augmentation of oxidative stress [64, 65] and activation of caspase-3 pathways. The downstream cell signaling pathways involved in this process included activation of JNK, p38, ERK/ MAPK, and NF-kB pathways [66]. In vivo evidence for cocaine-mediated potentiation of gp120 neurotoxicity was validated by Bagetta et al. [67]. These authors demonstrated that injection of rats with cocaine in combination with intracerebral ventricle injection

of recombinant HIV gp120 resulted in induction of expression of inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) expression with concomitant increase in neuronal apoptosis in the neocortex. Furthermore, this effect was ameliorated in animals pretreated with an iNOS inhibitor, thereby underscoring the role of iNOS in gp120 and cocaine-mediated apoptosis of neurons. Consistent with the findings on gp120, cocaine also potentiated Tat-mediated neurotoxicity in hippocampal neurons, an effect that was ameliorated by a D1 dopamine receptor antagonist [68]. These studies thus imply that cocaine exerts its neurotoxicity in the setting of more than one HIV protein, thus manifesting an increased ability to exert neurotoxicity within the CNS.

5 Effect of Cocaine on the Blood-Brain Barrier (BBB)

The BBB plays an essential role in the development of HAND since it serves as the conduit by which free virus and/or infected immune cells enter the brain from the circulatory system [69–71]. It has been shown that cocaine can enhance HIV-1 neuroinvasion in HAND via either its direct effect on human brain microvascular endothelial cells (HBMECs) or through its paracrine effects on the BBB via release of the pro-inflammatory cytokines [1, 72–74]. One mechanism of cocaine-mediated increase in leukocyte migration across the endothelium is via upregulation of adhesion molecules such as intracellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1), vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 (VCAM-1), and E-selectin [72, 75]. Upregulation of yet another adhesion molecule—activated leukocyte adhesion molecule (ALCAM)—has also been demonstrated in HBMECs exposed to cocaine. In these cells following cocaine treatment, σ-1R translocated to the plasma membrane with subsequent phosphorylation of platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF)-β receptor. Involvement of mitogen-activated protein kinases, Akt, and NF-κB pathways subsequently resulted in induction of ALCAM expression. Expressed ALCAM, in turn, was essential for monocyte adhesion and migration, and these effects were ameliorated in cells or animals pretreated with an ALCAM neutralizing antibody.

In addition to upregulation of adhesion molecules, cocaine also increased the permeability of brain endothelial cells by regulating the expression of the vascular permeant PDGF-B [76]. Recent findings have also identified PDGF-B chain as a new member of the Notch target gene in HBMECs, thereby lending importance to the role of Notch signaling as one of the key players in the maintenance of BBB integrity. It has been shown that cocaine-mediated activation of Notch1 signaling leading to targeted upregulated expression of PDGF-B involved activation of the downstream effector CSL, providing the first evidence of involvement of Notch1 activation in cocaine-mediated regulation of PDGF-B expression [77]. Deeper understanding of the regulation by cocaine of endothelial barrier permeability could provide insights into the development of potential therapeutic targets for neuroinflammation associated with HIV infection and/or cocaine abuse.

6 Concluding Remarks

In summary, cocaine can be classified as a multifactorial agent that mediates its effects on several pathways in HIV-1 infected cells. Not only does the drug promote virus replication in PBMCs, macrophages, microglia, and astrocytes, but it can also modulate glial function and activation. Cocaine also causes interactive neurotoxicity with viral proteins, Tat and gp120, thereby exacerbating neuronal apoptosis. Additionally, cocaine exerts potent effects on microvascular permeability leading to increased influx of virus-infected inflammatory cells in the brain parenchyma. In summary, cocaine abuse in HIV-1-infected individuals exerts deleterious effects on the CNS resulting in exacerbated disease pathogenesis via multiple pathways.

Acknowledgements This work was supported by grants DA020392, DA023397, DA033614, DA024442 (S.B.), and DA030285 (H.Y.) from the National Institutes of Health.

References

1. Fiala M, Gan XH, Zhang L, House SD, Newton T, Graves MC, et al. Cocaine enhances monocyte migration across the blood-brain barrier. Cocaine's connection to AIDS dementia and vasculitis? Adv Exp Med Biol. 1998;437:199–205.
2. Larrat EP, Zierler S. Entangled epidemics: cocaine use and HIV disease. J Psychoactive Drugs. 1993;25(3):207–21.
3. Webber MP, Schoenbaum EE, Gourevitch MN, Buono D, Klein RS. A prospective study of HIV disease progression in female and male drug users. AIDS. 1999;13(2):257–62.
4. Klein TW, Matsui K, Newton CA, Young J, Widen RE, Friedman H. Cocaine suppresses proliferation of phytohemagglutinin-activated human peripheral blood T-cells. Int J Immunopharmacol. 1993;15(1):77–86.
5. Mao JT, Huang M, Wang J, Sharma S, Tashkin DP, Dubinett SM. Cocaine down-regulates IL-2-induced peripheral blood lymphocyte IL-8 and IFN-gamma production. Cell Immunol. 1996;172(2):217–23.
6. Baldwin GC, Tashkin DP, Buckley DM, Park AN, Dubinett SM, Roth MD. Marijuana and cocaine impair alveolar macrophage function and cytokine production. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 1997;156(5):1606–13.
7. Eisenstein TK, Hilburger ME. Opioid modulation of immune responses: effects on phagocyte and lymphoid cell populations. J Neuroimmunol. 1998;83(1–2):36–44.
8. Friedman H, Newton C, Klein TW. Microbial infections, immunomodulation, and drugs of abuse. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2003;16(2):209–19.
9. Bagasra O, Pomerantz RJ. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication in peripheral blood mononuclear cells in the presence of cocaine. J Infect Dis. 1993;168(5):1157–64.
10. Peterson PK, Sharp BM, Gekker G, Portoghese PS, Sannerud K, Balfour HH. Morphine promotes the growth of HIV-1 in human peripheral blood mononuclear cell cocultures. AIDS. 1990;4(9):869–73.
11. Nair MPN, Mahajan S, Hou J, Sweet AM, Schwartz SA. The stress hormone, cortisol, synergizes with HIV-1 gp-120 to induce apoptosis of normal human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. Cell Mol Biol (Noisy-le-grand). 2000;46(7):1227–38.

12. Roth MD, Tashkin DP, Choi R, Jamieson BD, Zack JA, Baldwin GC. Cocaine enhances human immunodeficiency virus replication in a model of severe combined immunodeficient mice implanted with human peripheral blood leukocytes. J Infect Dis. 2002;185(5):701–5.
13. Steele AD, Henderson EE, Rogers TJ. Mu-opioid modulation of HIV-1 coreceptor expression and HIV-1 replication. Virology. 2003;309(1):99–107.
14. Bagasra O, Forman L. Functional analysis of lymphocytes subpopulations in experimental cocaine abuse. I Dose-dependent activation of lymphocyte subsets. Clin Exp Immunol. 1989;77(2):289–93.
15. Donahoe RM, Nicholson JK, Madden JJ, Donahoe F, Shafer DA, Gordon D, et al. Coordinate and independent effects of heroin, cocaine, and alcohol abuse on T-cell E-rosette formation and antigenic marker expression. Clin Immunol Immunopathol. 1986;41(2):254–64.
16. Van Dyke C, Stesin A, Jones R, Chuntharapai A, Seaman W. Cocaine increases natural killer cell activity. J Clin Invest. 1986;77(4):1387–90.
17. Anthony JC, Vlahov D, Nelson KE, Cohn S, Astemborski J, Solomon L. New evidence on intravenous cocaine use and the risk of infection with human immunodeficiency virus type 1. Am J Epidemiol. 1991;134(10):1175–89.
18. Baldwin GC, Roth MD, Tashkin DP. Acute and chronic effects of cocaine on the immune system and the possible link to AIDS. J Neuroimmunol. 1998;83(1–2):133–8.
19. Chaisson RE, Bacchetti P, Osmond D, Brodie B, Sande MA, Moss AR. Cocaine use and HIV infection in intravenous drug users in San Francisco. JAMA. 1989;261(4):561–5.
20. Doherty MC, Garfein RS, Monterroso E, Brown D, Vlahov D. Correlates of HIV infection among young adult short-term injection drug users. AIDS. 2000;14(6):717–26.
21. Chiasson MA, Stoneburner RL, Hildebrandt DS, Ewing WE, Telzak EE, Jaffe HW. Heterosexual transmission of HIV-1 associated with the use of smokable freebase cocaine (crack). AIDS. 1991;5(9):1121–6.
22. Peterson PK, Gekker G, Chao CC, Schut R, Molitor TW, Balfour HH. Cocaine potentiates HIV-1 replication in human peripheral blood mononuclear cell cocultures. Involvement of transforming growth factor-beta. J Immunol. 1991;146(1):81–4.
23. Peterson PK, Gekker G, Chao CC, Schut R, Verhoef J, Edelman CK, et al. Cocaine amplifies HIV-1 replication in cytomegalovirus-stimulated peripheral blood mononuclear cell cocultures. J Immunol. 1992;149(2):676–80.
24. Rosenberg ZF, Fauci AS. Induction of expression of HIV in latently or chronically infected cells. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1989;5(1):1–4.
25. Levy JA. Human immunodeficiency viruses and the pathogenesis of AIDS. JAMA. 1989;261(20):2997–3006.
26. Gallo RC. Mechanism of disease induction by HIV. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 1990;3(4): 380–9.
27. Drew WL. Cytomegalovirus infection in patients with AIDS. J Infect Dis. 1988;158(2): 449–56.
28. Jacobson MA, Mills J. Serious cytomegalovirus disease in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). Clinical findings, diagnosis, and treatment. Ann Intern Med. 1988;108(4): 585–94.
29. Schooley RT. Cytomegalovirus in the setting of infection with human immunodeficiency virus. Rev Infect Dis. 1990;12 Suppl 7:S811–9.
30. Skolnik PR, Kosloff BR, Hirsch MS. Bidirectional interactions between human immunodeficiency virus type 1 and cytomegalovirus. J Infect Dis. 1988;157(3):508–14.
31. Dhillon NK, Williams R, Peng F, Tsai YJ, Dhillon S, Nicolay B, et al. Cocaine-mediated enhancement of virus replication in macrophages: implications for human immunodeficiency virus-associated dementia. J Neurovirol. 2007;13(6):483–95.
32. Hayashi T, Su TP. Sigma-1 receptor chaperones at the ER-mitochondrion interface regulate Ca(2+) signaling and cell survival. Cell. 2007;131(3):596–610.
33. Sharkey J, Glen KA, Wolfe S, Kuhar MJ. Cocaine binding at sigma receptors. Eur J Pharmacol. 1988;149(1–2):171–4.

34. Hayashi T, Su TP. Sigma-1 receptors (sigma(1) binding sites) form raft-like microdomains and target lipid droplets on the endoplasmic reticulum: roles in endoplasmic reticulum lipid compartmentalization and export. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2003;306(2):718–25.
35. Su TP, Hayashi T, Maurice T, Buch S, Ruoho AE. The sigma-1 receptor chaperone as an inter-organelle signaling modulator. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2010;31(12):557–66.
36. Aydar E, Palmer CP, Klyachko VA, Jackson MB. The sigma receptor as a ligand-regulated auxiliary potassium channel subunit. Neuron. 2002;34(3):399–410.
37. Navarro G, Moreno E, Aymerich M, Marcellino D, McCormick PJ, Mallol J, et al. Direct involvement of sigma-1 receptors in the dopamine D1 receptor-mediated effects of cocaine. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2010;107(43):18676–81.
38. Roth MD, Whittaker KM, Choi R, Tashkin DP, Baldwin GC. Cocaine and sigma-1 receptors modulate HIV infection, chemokine receptors, and the HPA axis in the huPBL-SCID model. J Leukoc Biol. 2005;78(6):1198–203.
39. Reynolds JL, Mahajan SD, Bindukumar B, Sykes D, Schwartz SA, Nair MP. Proteomic analysis of the effects of cocaine on the enhancement of HIV-1 replication in normal human astrocytes (NHA). Brain Res. 2006;1123(1):226–36.
40. Gekker G, Hu S, Wentland MP, Bidlack JM, Lokensgard JR, Peterson PK. Kappa-opioid receptor ligands inhibit cocaine-induced HIV-1 expression in microglial cells. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2004;309(2):600–6.
41. Gekker G, Hu S, Sheng WS, Rock RB, Lokensgard JR, Peterson PK. Cocaine-induced HIV-1 expression in microglia involves sigma-1 receptors and transforming growth factor-beta1. Int Immunopharmacol. 2006;6(6):1029–33.
42. Brack-Werner R. Astrocytes: HIV cellular reservoirs and important participants in neuropathogenesis. AIDS. 1999;13(1):1–22.
43. Canki M, Thai JN, Chao W, Ghorpade A, Potash MJ, Volsky DJ. Highly productive infection with pseudotyped human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) indicates no intracellular restrictions to HIV-1 replication in primary human astrocytes. J Virol. 2001;75(17):7925–33.
44. Conant K, Tornatore C, Atwood W, Meyers K, Traub R, Major EO. In vivo and in vitro infection of the astrocyte by HIV-1. Adv Neuroimmunol. 1994;4(3):287–9.
45. Carroll-Anzinger D, Al-Harthi L. Gamma interferon primes productive human immunodeficiency virus infection in astrocytes. J Virol. 2006;80(1):541–4.
46. Carroll-Anzinger D, Kumar A, Adarichev V, Kashanchi F, Al-Harthi L. Human immunodeficiency virus-restricted replication in astrocytes and the ability of gamma interferon to modulate this restriction are regulated by a downstream effector of the Wnt signaling pathway. J Virol. 2007;81(11):5864–71.
47. Churchill MJ, Wesselingh SL, Cowley D, Pardo CA, McArthur JC, Brew BJ, et al. Extensive astrocyte infection is prominent in human immunodeficiency virus-associated dementia. Ann Neurol. 2009;66(2):253–8.
48. Dong Y, Benveniste EN. Immune function of astrocytes. Glia. 2001;36(2):180–90.
49. Hansson E, Ronnback L. Glial neuronal signaling in the central nervous system. FASEB J. 2003;17(3):341–8.
50. Yao H, Yang Y, Kim KJ, Bethel-Brown C, Gong N, Funa K, et al. Molecular mechanisms involving sigma receptor-mediated induction of MCP-1: implication for increased monocyte transmigration. Blood. 2010;115(23):4951–62.
51. Costa BM, Yao H, Yang L, Buch S. Role of endoplasmic reticulum (er) stress in cocaine-induced microglial cell death. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2013;8(3):705–14.
52. Fattore L, Puddu MC, Picciau S, Cappai A, Fratta W, Serra GP, et al. Astroglial in vivo response to cocaine in mouse dentate gyrus: a quantitative and qualitative analysis by confocal microscopy. Neuroscience. 2002;110(1):1–6.
53. Yang Y, Yao H, Lu Y, Wang C, Buch S. Cocaine potentiates astrocyte toxicity mediated by human immunodeficiency virus (HIV-1) protein gp120. PLoS One. 2010;5(10):e13427.
54. New DR, Ma M, Epstein LG, Nath A, Gelbard HA. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 Tat protein induces death by apoptosis in primary human neuron cultures. J Neurovirol. 1997;3(2):168–73.

55. Bansal AK, Mactutus CF, Nath A, Maragos W, Hauser KF, Booze RM. Neurotoxicity of HIV-1 proteins gp120 and Tat in the rat striatum. Brain Res. 2000;879(1–2):42–9.
56. Gurwell JA, Nath A, Sun Q, Zhang J, Martin KM, Chen Y, et al. Synergistic neurotoxicity of opioids and human immunodeficiency virus-1 Tat protein in striatal neurons in vitro. Neuroscience. 2001;102(3):555–63.
57. Savio T, Levi G. Neurotoxicity of HIV coat protein gp120, NMDA receptors, and protein kinase C: a study with rat cerebellar granule cell cultures. J Neurosci Res. 1993;34(3):265–72.
58. Lipton SA, Sucher NJ, Kaiser PK, Dreyer EB. Synergistic effects of HIV coat protein and NMDA receptor-mediated neurotoxicity. Neuron. 1991;7(1):111–8.
59. Kaul M, Garden GA, Lipton SA. Pathways to neuronal injury and apoptosis in HIV-associated dementia. Nature. 2001;410(6831):988–94.
60. Kaul M, Lipton SA. Chemokines and activated macrophages in HIV gp120-induced neuronal apoptosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1999;96(14):8212–6.
61. Turchan J, Anderson C, Hauser KF, Sun Q, Zhang J, Liu Y, et al. Estrogen protects against the synergistic toxicity by HIV proteins, methamphetamine and cocaine. BMC Neurosci. 2001;2(1):3.
62. Nath A, Hauser KF, Wojna V, Booze RM, Maragos W, Prendergast M, et al. Molecular basis for interactions of HIV and drugs of abuse. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2002;31 Suppl 2:S62–9.
63. Maragos WF, Young KL, Turchan JT, Guseva M, Pauly JR, Nath A, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus-1 Tat protein and methamphetamine interact synergistically to impair striatal dopaminergic function. J Neurochem. 2002;83(4):955–63.
64. Nath A, Anderson C, Jones M, Maragos W, Booze R, Mactutus C, et al. Neurotoxicity and dysfunction of dopaminergic systems associated with AIDS dementia. J Psychopharmacol. 2000;14(3):222–7.
65. Koutsilieri E, Gotz ME, Sopper S, Sauer U, Demuth M, ter Meulen V, et al. Regulation of glutathione and cell toxicity following exposure to neurotropic substances and human immunodeficiency virus-1 in vitro. J Neurovirol. 1997;3(5):342–9.
66. Yao H, Allen JE, Zhu X, Callen S, Buch S. Cocaine and human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp120 mediate neurotoxicity through overlapping signaling pathways. J Neurovirol. 2009;15(2):164–75.
67. Bagetta G, Piccirilli S, Del Duca C, Morrone LA, Rombola L, Nappi G, et al. Inducible nitric oxide synthase is involved in the mechanisms of cocaine enhanced neuronal apoptosis induced by HIV-1 gp120 in the neocortex of rat. Neurosci Lett. 2004;356(3):183–6.
68. Aksenov MY, Aksenova MV, Nath A, Ray PD, Mactutus CF, Booze RM. Cocaine-mediated enhancement of Tat toxicity in rat hippocampal cell cultures: the role of oxidative stress and D1 dopamine receptor. Neurotoxicology. 2006;27(2):217–28.
69. Banks WA, Farr SA, Morley JE. Permeability of the blood-brain barrier to albumin and insulin in the young and aged SAMP8 mouse. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2000;55(12):B601–6.
70. Persidsky Y, Stins M, Way D, Witte MH, Weinand M, Kim KS, et al. A model for monocyte migration through the blood-brain barrier during HIV-1 encephalitis. J Immunol. 1997;158(7):3499–510.
71. Nottet HS, Persidsky Y, Sasseville VG, Nukuna AN, Bock P, Zhai QH, et al. Mechanisms for the transendothelial migration of HIV-1-infected monocytes into brain. J Immunol. 1996;156(3):1284–95.
72. Gan X, Zhang L, Berger O, Stins MF, Way D, Taub DD, et al. Cocaine enhances brain endothelial adhesion molecules and leukocyte migration. Clin Immunol. 1999;91(1):68–76.
73. Lee YW, Hennig B, Fiala M, Kim KS, Toborek M. Cocaine activates redox-regulated transcription factors and induces TNF-alpha expression in human brain endothelial cells. Brain Res. 2001;920(1–2):125–33.
74. Chang SL, Bersig J, Felix B, Fiala M, House SD. Chronic cocaine alters hemodynamics and leukocyte-endothelial interactions in rat mesenteric venules. Life Sci. 2000;66(24):2357–69.

75. Gan X, Zhang L, Newton T, Chang SL, Ling W, Kermani V, et al. Cocaine infusion increases interferon-gamma and decreases interleukin-10 in cocaine-dependent subjects. Clin Immunol Immunopathol. 1998;89(2):181–90.
76. Su EJ, Fredriksson L, Geyer M, Folestad E, Cale J, Andrae J, et al. Activation of PDGF-CC by tissue plasminogen activator impairs blood-brain barrier integrity during ischemic stroke. Nat Med. 2008;14(7):731–7.
77. Yao H, Duan M, Hu G, Buch S. Platelet-derived growth factor B chain is a novel target gene of cocaine-mediated Notch1 signaling: implications for HIV-associated neurological disorders. J Neurosci. 2011;31(35):12449–54.

Methamphetamine Neurotoxicity and Neuroinflammatory Processes

Nicole A. Northrop and Bryan K. Yamamoto

Abstract Methamphetamine (Meth) is a widely abused psychostimulant known to cause neurotoxicity. Traditionally, the toxic effects of Meth were thought to be restricted to dopaminergic and serotonergic axon terminals, but more recently the targets of Meth have been found to include dopaminergic and GABAergic neurons, brain endothelial cells, and the liver. In addition to the neuronal and nonneuronal targets of Meth, mechanisms responsible for damage including oxidative stress, excitotoxicity, and mitochondrial dysfunction will be discussed. The focus of this chapter will be to integrate the known targets of Meth and mechanisms of Meth-induced damage with more recently identified neuroinflammatory markers found after exposure to Meth. Various inflammatory mediators and their temporal expression after Meth exposure will be reviewed as well as supporting evidence for the role of neuroinflammation in Meth-induced damage.

Keywords Methamphetamine • Neuroinflammation • Neurotoxicity • Cyclooxygenase (COX) • Cytokines • Microglia • Striatum • Motor proteins

1 Methamphetamine Neurotoxicity and Neuroinflammatory Processes

Methamphetamine (Meth) is a widely abused psychostimulant traditionally thought to selectively damage dopamine (DA) and serotonin (5-HT) neuron terminals. The nature of the damage to the DA and 5-HT system, the established mechanisms associated with this damage, and the more recently identified targets of Meth will be discussed in

N.A. Northrop, Ph.D. • B.K. Yamamoto, Ph.D. (✉)
Department of Neurosciences, University of Toledo Health Science Campus,
3000 Arlington Avenue, Toledo, OH 43614, USA
e-mail: Bryan.Yamamoto@utoledo.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_21, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

this chapter. These observations will be evaluated and integrated within the context of a role for neuroinflammation and how it underlies the neurotoxic profile of Meth.

2 Meth-Induced Toxicity

It is well accepted that Meth use causes damage to terminals of DA and 5-HT neurons in rodents, nonhuman primates, and humans. Positron emission tomography (PET) and proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) studies of abstinent Meth users illustrate that Meth produces long-term neuronal damage, marked by decreases in the DA transporter (DAT) [1–3] and the 5-HT transporter (SERT) [4] that persist for up to 3 years. PET and MRS observations in abstinent Meth users are substantiated by studies of human postmortem brain tissue and illustrate decreases in DA, tyrosine hydroxylase (TH), and DAT in the caudate-putamen and nucleus accumbens [5–7] and SERT in the frontal cortex [8].

The long-term neuronal damage caused by Meth in humans is supported by rodent models. Meth-induced long-term neurotoxicity in mice and rats is also reflected by decreases in DAT, SERT, the vesicular monoamine transporter 2 (VMAT2), TH and tryptophan hydroxylase (TPH) immunoreactivity, and DA and 5-HT tissue content in brain areas densely innervated by DA and 5-HT terminals, such as the striatum, hippocampus, and prefrontal cortex [9–12]. Furthermore, complete recovery of all presynaptic dopaminergic parameters, including DA tissue content, DA uptake, and evoked DA release from the striatum, does not occur until 12 months after the neurotoxic regimen of Meth [13]. Collectively, both rodent and human studies indicate long-lasting monoaminergic damage caused by Meth.

More recent studies have suggested Meth-induced damage extends beyond the damage to DA and 5-HT terminals. A broader scope of injury is indicated by decreases in the neuronal marker *N*-acetylaspartate [14, 15], a loss of gray matter, decreased volume of the hippocampus, and hypertrophy of white matter in the human brain [16]. In addition, rodent studies have shown that Meth produces damage to cell bodies and does not specifically target dopaminergic or serotonergic terminals [17–23]. Although decreased TH staining has been observed in the substantia nigra after Meth administration [24–27], it remains unclear whether Meth causes death of DA neurons or simply downregulates protein expression of TH in the substantia nigra [24, 26]. In addition, Meth increases caspase-mediated proteolysis and TUNEL staining in areas of the striatum and hippocampus [17–19]. A study by Zhu and Angulo [20] co-localized TUNEL staining with dopamine- and cAMP-regulated phosphoprotein (DARPP-32), parvalbumin, and choline acetyltransferase in the striatum after Meth administration. These data indicated that 21 % of DARPP-32-positive projection neurons, 45 % of parvalbumin-positive γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) interneurons, and 29 % of cholinergic interneurons undergo apoptosis after a single administration of 30 mg/kg Meth to mice [20]. In addition, glutamatergic neurons in the somatosensory cortex are also decreased after treatment of rats with a binge regimen of Meth (10 mg/kg, ip, q 2 h 4×) [21].

Therefore, the toxic effects of Meth are not specific to DA and 5-HT neurons but include damage to GABAergic, cholinergic, and glutamatergic neurons.

Other recent studies have illustrated that the toxic effects of Meth are not limited to neurons. Meth produces damage to brain microvascular endothelial cells in culture by decreasing expression of the tight junction proteins occludin, claudin-5, and zonula occludens (ZO) [28, 29]. Moreover, the in vivo exposure of Meth to mice and rats also produces a decrease in expression of tight junction proteins including occludin, claudin-5, and ZO [30, 31]. These observations are paralleled by the extravasation of Evan's blue-bound albumin, endogenous IgG, or 10,000 kDa FITC-dextran from the cerebral vasculature into the brain parenchyma [30–35] and illustrate that Meth causes disruption of the blood–brain barrier (BBB).

The liver is a more recently identified target of Meth that can have an impact on the brain. Administration of a neurotoxic dose of Meth produces increases in the liver enzymes, aspartate aminotransferase (AST), and alanine aminotransferase (ALT), which are released into the circulation upon damage to the liver [36]. The consequence of such damage decreases the metabolism of ammonia with a subsequent elevation of plasma and brain ammonia concentrations that promotes glutamate-mediated excitotoxicity [36, 37]. Overall, the above studies illustrate that the toxic effects of Meth extend well beyond neurons to include other cells such as endothelial cells of brain capillaries and hepatocytes.

3 Established Mechanisms of Meth Neurotoxicity

Many of the long-term neurotoxic effects of Meth are the consequences of its acute actions. These include neurotransmitter release, hyperthermia, oxidative stress, and mitochondrial dysfunction, all of which have been demonstrated to contribute independently or convergently to monoaminergic terminal damage.

Hyperthermia plays a prominent role in the toxic effects of Meth [38–40]. This is evidenced by the fact that Meth-induced monoaminergic terminal damage is not observed in the absence of Meth-induced hyperthermia [39, 41]. Furthermore, pharmacological interventions that attenuate hyperthermia also attenuate Meth-induced monoaminergic damage. Antagonism of NMDA receptors using MK-801 or D1 or D2 dopaminergic receptors using SCH23390 and haloperidol, respectively, prevents Meth-induced hyperthermia and toxicity; however, when hyperthermia is maintained in the presence of these pharmacological agents, toxicity remains [39, 42]. Hyperthermia is also highly correlated with the extent of Meth-induced BBB disruption [33, 34]. In contrast, several studies suggest that hyperthermia is not the sole mechanism, since pharmacological interventions that do not alter hyperthermia are capable of attenuating Meth toxicity [31, 43–46].

The role of oxidative stress in Meth-induced monoaminergic terminal damage and BBB disruption is also well established. Meth increases ROS [47, 48], whereas the attenuation of oxidative stress prevents Meth toxicity. Meth also produces an increase in oxidized glutathione that is indicative of oxidative stress resulting from

the interaction of hydroxyl radicals with the endogenous antioxidant glutathione [49]. Conversely, antioxidants such as *N*-acetyl-L-cysteine, ascorbic acid, and vitamin E attenuate Meth-induced striatal DA and 5-HT depletions [50–52]. In addition, mice that overexpress Cu/ZnSOD or MnSOD are refractory to the striatal damage produced by Meth [53–56], whereas inhibition of SOD enhances Meth-induced DA and 5-HT depletions in the rat striatum [51]. The effects of oxidative stress can also impact cells other than neurons. The antioxidant Trolox attenuates the decreases in occludin and transendothelial electrical resistance (TEER) of primary human brain microvascular cells as well as Meth-induced increases in extravasation of fluorescein into mouse brain tissue that are suggestive of a compromise in the BBB [28]. Collectively, oxidative stress has been convincingly shown to mediate damage to monoamine terminals and the BBB.

Some of the oxidative damage to cells produced by Meth can be attributed to neurotransmitter activity such as the direct actions of oxidative products of DA metabolism and the activation of glutamate receptors. Inhibition of these processes can attenuate Meth-induced oxidative stress and toxicity. For example, inhibition of DA synthesis with α-methyl-ρ-tyrosine treatment attenuates Meth-induced oxidation of DA and DA depletions [57–59]. Dopamine-induced oxidative stress to DA terminals by Meth can result from a dysfunction in VMAT2 and the inability to sequester DA into vesicles, with a resultant increase in cytosolic DA and DA-derived free radicals [60, 61]. In addition, the activation of glutamate receptors, the subsequent increase in reactive nitrogen species (RNS), and the ensuing toxicity to monoamine terminals can be prevented by nitric oxide synthase (NOS) inhibitors [61–63] or by nNOS knockout [64, 65]. Furthermore, inhibition of glutamate release from the corticostriatal pathway or blockade of glutamate receptors prevents Meth-induced damage to striatal DA terminals [66–70]. Thus, there is substantial evidence for the role of DA and glutamate in Meth-induced monoaminergic terminal damage.

Altered mitochondrial function and bioenergetics also contribute to Meth neurotoxicity. Decreases in levels of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) are observed acutely in the brain after high-dose Meth administration [71]. The decreases in ATP are potentiated by inhibition of glucose uptake and utilization, both of which are associated with an enhancement of long-term decreases in tissue content of DA in the striatum [71]. A role for energy impairment is further substantiated by findings showing that Meth toxicity is potentiated by metabolic inhibitors. For example, central administration of Meth, which alone does not produce toxicity, synergizes with the mitochondrial complex II inhibitor, malonate, to deplete striatal DA [72]. Conversely, Meth toxicity is attenuated by supplementation with the energy substrates, ubiquinone and nicotinamide, when administered after exposure to Meth suggesting an ongoing and protracted but reversible mitochondrial dysfunction that contributes to the long-term depletions in striatal DA content [73]. Subsequent studies have provided a more direct association between mitochondrial function and Meth toxicity. The first investigation of Meth-induced alterations in the function of specific ETC complexes was by Burrows et al. [74], illustrating that Meth decreases levels of cytochrome oxidase, a marker of ETC complex IV activity. In addition, studies demonstrate changes in other mitochondrial electron transport chain complexes. Specifically, a decrease in complex II–III but not I–III activity was observed

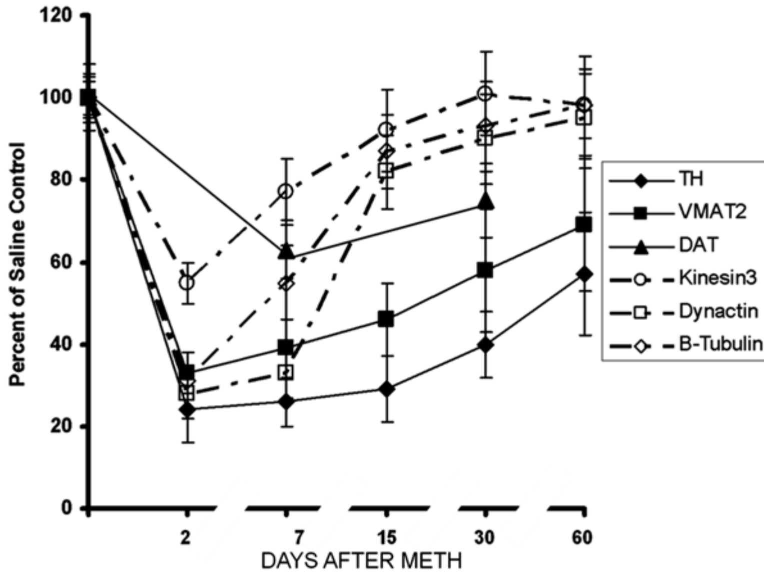


Fig. 1 Alterations in striatal proteins after Meth exposure. Rats were treated with Meth (10 mg/kg, ip, q 2 h 4×) and killed by live decapitation at the indicated time points. Motor proteins (*dashed lines*) and proteins associated with dopaminergic terminals (*solid lines*) were measured via Western blot in whole striatal homogenates. The motor proteins kinesin3, dynactin, and **β**-tubulin are significantly decreased compared to saline-treated controls at 2 and 7 days, and not significantly different from controls at 15, 30, or 60 days. The dopaminergic terminal-associated proteins, TH, VMAT2, and DAT, are significantly decreased at 2, 7, 15, 30, and 60 days after Meth treatment, compared to saline-treated controls (adapted from [77])

in the striatum after Meth [75]. This effect was attributed to glutamate since the NMDA antagonist MK-801 blocked the Meth-induced decreases in complex II–III activity. A role for RNS, specifically $ONOO^-$, was also demonstrated. In vitro application of $ONOO^-$ decreased complex II activity, and the $ONOO^-$ scavenger blocked Meth-induced decreases in complex II–III activity measured ex vivo, implicating a role for glutamate-mediated $ONOO^-$ production in Meth-induced decreases in mitochondrial activity through excitotoxic processes [75].

The above mechanisms have been focused on the degenerative changes to nerve terminals and/or axons. Indeed, Fink-Heimer silver grain staining studies [76] are suggestive of damage to axons with a resultant loss of phenotypic markers of nerve terminals such as the DAT, SERT, and VMAT2. Our recent findings indicate that there is also a loss of motor proteins that could disrupt the transport of DAT and VMAT2 as well as TH to nerve terminals resulting in a decreased dopaminergic phenotype. Figure 1 shows that there are decreases in the motor proteins kinesin and dynactin as well as the axonal protein β-tubulin that recover before the gradual return of DAT, VMAT2, and TH to control values [77]. These results suggest that mechanisms involving motor and axonal transport proteins are not only involved in the toxicity but may be important in the apparent recovery of dopaminergic terminals from the toxic effects of METH.

4 Neuroinflammation and the Neurotoxicity of Meth

The underpinnings that mediate the neurotoxicity to Meth have been evaluated and considered independently, but it is apparent that most of them share common mechanisms. For example, inhibition of NMDA receptors with MK-801 prevents Meth-induced hyperthermia, increases in protein nitrosylation, decreases in mitochondrial complex II–III activity, and damage to monoaminergic terminals in the striatum [39, 66, 75, 78]. In addition, the damage caused by local administration of ammonia and Meth is attenuated by the AMPA antagonist GYKI 52466 [36]. These data suggest an interaction and convergence of glutamate, hyperthermia, mitochondrial dysfunction, oxidative stress, and dopaminergic damage, all of which are likely consequences of neuroinflammation.

Neuroinflammation often accompanies the actions of Meth and is a consequence of the oxidative stress evidenced by increased ROS and RNS, as well as increased extracellular glutamate and/or ammonia that are observed shortly after exposure to Meth. The neuroinflammation is marked by activated microglia and astrocytes [15, 79, 80], whereas antioxidants and free radical scavengers such as edaravone and sulforaphane can prevent Meth-induced astrocytic and microglial activation, respectively [81, 82]. Meth-induced neuroinflammation may also be mediated by glutamate. In fact, exposure to glutamate, kainate, or NMDA activates microglia and produces pro-inflammatory cytokines [83–85]. Conversely, antagonism of NMDA receptors with MK-801 and dextromethorphan attenuates Meth-induced microglial activation [86]. Lastly, Meth-induced neuroinflammation may be a result of liver damage [87] and the resultant increases in brain ammonia concentrations [36]. Increases in microglial and astrocytic activation and pro-inflammatory cytokines are evident in rodent models of acute liver failure [88]. Similarly, chronic, moderate hyperammonemia created by feeding rats an ammonium-containing diet activates microglia and increases IL-1β, iNOS, and prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) [89]. Ammonia can also potentiate the effects of inflammatory cytokines on mitochondrial permeability transition [90] and swelling of cultured astrocytes [91].

As with the neuroinflammatory response that occurs in other neurodegenerative diseases, the neuroinflammation produced by Meth is similar to that of the innate immune response in the periphery. Loftis et al. [92] found that abstinent Meth users have long-lasting immune dysfunction as measured by increased mRNA expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines in blood. In addition, PET scans of human Meth users indicate prominent microglial activation in the brain [15, 93]. These observations in humans are substantiated by rodent experiments that also observe glial activation [80, 94–96] and increases in inflammatory mediators in various brain regions after Meth administration [92, 97–101]. See Table 1 for a summary of the neuroinflammatory mediators altered after Meth exposure.

Microglial cells are the resident brain macrophages and along with astrocytes are traditionally thought to be the initial responders to an immunological challenge in the brain [105]. Along these lines, microglial and astrocytic activations are observed after exposure to neurotoxic doses of Meth in rodents. Activation of microglia is first observed around 24 h, peaks around 48 h, and returns to basal levels around 7–8 days after Meth [80, 95, 96, 102]. On the other hand, activation of astrocytes after Meth is

Table 1 List of neuroinflammatory mediators increased by Meth exposure

Time point after meth exposure	Common neuroinflammatory mediators increased by meth exposure	Meth treatment type	Reference
30 min	TNFα mRNA in hippocampus and frontal cortex	Single dose	[100]
	IL-6 mRNA in frontal cortex and striatum	Single dose	[102]
1 h	IL-1β mRNA in hypothalamus	Single dose	[97]
	IL-6 mRNA in hippocampus	Single dose	[102]
	IL-6 mRNA in striatum	Single dose	[103]
	TNFRI protein	Single dose	[102]
	GFAP	Single dose	[102]
12 h	IL-1β protein in striatum	Single dose	[103]
	TNFα mRNA in striatum	Single dose	[101, 103]
	TNFR1 and TNFR2 mRNA	Single dose	[101]
	TNFR1 protein	Single dose	[102]
1 day	Microglia	Binge dosing	[100]
	GFAP	Single dose	[100]
		Binge dosing	[79]
	COX-2	Binge dosing	[86, 99]
2 days	Microglia	Binge dosing	[80, 95, 96]
	GFAP	Binge dosing	[79]
3 days	GFAP	Binge dosing	[21, 79, 101]
	COX-2	Binge dosing	[104]
7 days	GFAP	Binge dosing	[79]
	Microglia	Single dose	[102]
	TNFα protein in hippocampus	Single dose	[102]
21 days	GFAP	Bing dosing	[79]

The inflammatory mediators are listed according to the time point at which they have been observed, and the Meth treatment paradigm and references are indicated

more protracted than Meth-induced microglial activation. For example, a neurotoxic binge regimen of Meth (10 mg/kg, q 2 h, ip, 4×) administered to mice or rats produces an increase in glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP) that is observed as early as 24 h, peaks around 48 h in the striatum and 72 h in the cortex, and lasts up to 21 days after Meth exposure [79]. The time course of astrocytic activation is slightly different after exposure to a single high dose of Meth. A single injection of high-dose Meth (30 mg/kg) increases GFAP immunoreactivity from 1 to 24 h after exposure but is not observed 3 or 7 days later [102]. Overall, it is clear that neurotoxic doses of Meth induce activation of both microglia and astrocytes to produce a neuroinflammatory state regardless of the temporal responses of microglia and astrocytes to Meth exposure.

Neurons may also play a role in the inflammatory process in the brain [106, 107]. Neurons and glia can be stimulated by many factors, including ROS and RNS that are known to be increased after Meth. ROS and RNS increase NFKB or AP1 translocation to the nucleus [108] and subsequent release of neuroinflammatory mediators including cytokines and chemokines, as well as increases in cyclooxygenase (COX), prostaglandins, and cell surface receptors for inflammatory molecules, such as cytokine receptors and toll-like receptors (TLRs) [106, 109, 110]. Interleukin-1β (IL-1β) mRNA transcripts are increased in the hypothalamus at 1 h after a single

intraperitoneal injection of 10 or 15 mg/kg Meth [97]. Although Meth-induced IL-1β mRNA expression in the striatum and hippocampus is not observed within 1 h after Meth [100], IL-1β protein expression in the striatum is observed 12 h after Meth exposure [103]. Collectively, these findings indicate that Meth induces IL-1β mRNA and protein expression in a dose-, time-, and brain region-dependent manner.

Meth-induced increases in mRNA expression of other pro-inflammatory cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor α (TNFα) and interleukin-6 (IL-6) are also brain region dependent, increase within minutes after Meth exposure, and last for hours. Increased expression of TNFα mRNA in the hippocampus and frontal cortex occurs as early as 30 min after Meth exposure [100]; however, increased TNFα mRNA expression in the striatum is not observed until 12 h after Meth exposure [101, 103]. While most studies have observed immediate changes in cytokine gene transcripts, Goncalves et al. [102] observed an increase in TNFα protein in the hippocampus 7 days, but not at 1 h or 3 days, after exposure to a single high dose of Meth. Other evidence supporting the time- and region-dependent activation of pro-inflammatory mediators has been reported. IL-6 mRNA expression is increased in the hippocampus, striatum, and frontal cortex. Increases in gene transcripts of IL-6 in the frontal cortex and striatum are observed within 30 min, while that in the hippocampus is observed at 1 h after Meth exposure [100]. The Meth-induced increases in IL-6 mRNA expression in the striatum last at least 12 h after exposure to Meth [101, 103]. O'Callaghan et al. [103] also identified an increase in the IL-6 class cytokines oncostatin M (OSM) and leukemia inhibitory factor (LIF) and the chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 2 (CCL2), also known as monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (MCP-1) in the striatum 12 h after a single 20 mg/kg dose of Meth.

In addition to increases in cytokines, the expression of cytokine receptors is increased after Meth. Protein expression and mRNA of the TNFα receptors, TNFR1 and TNFR2, are observed as early as 1 h and as late as 24 h after Meth exposure [101, 102]. Therefore, it appears that an increase in activity of the pro-inflammatory cytokines, chemokines, and their receptors after exposure to Meth occurs in a time-dependent manner within the same brain regions that exhibit monoaminergic terminal damage to Meth.

The cellular source of the cytokines and chemokines and the location of their receptors that are affected by Meth remain unclear. Meth can directly activate microglia and astrocytes in culture [111–113]; however, the stimulation of cytokine release from these cells by Meth is variable. Meth directly activates astrocytes in culture to produce IL-6 and IL-8 [111] and induces an increase in IL-1β, TNFα, and IL-6 mRNA expression in HAPI microglial cells [112], but does not affect IL-1β or TNFα mRNA expression in BV2 microglial cells [113]. While it was originally thought that cytokines and chemokines were released only from glial cells in the brain, it is now known that neurons can also participate in the inflammatory response [114–117] and may be the source of Meth-induced cytokines and chemokines. In fact, when dopaminergic cells in culture are treated with Meth, gene transcripts for cytokines are increased within these cells [118]. These data and findings indicating that the induction of cytokine and chemokine mRNA transcripts typically occurs much earlier than glial activation suggest that Meth acts initially to produce a cytokine response from neurons rather than glial cells, the latter being activated subsequently by cytokines or chemokines to produce additional inflammatory mediators that perpetuate the immune response.

Cyclooxygenase (COX) is another inflammatory mediator induced by Meth. COX is the enzyme that converts arachidonic acid (AA) into prostaglandin H2 (PGH2), which subsequently is converted to other prostaglandins and thromboxanes and can participate in the neuroinflammatory responses produced by Meth. The protein expression of COX-2, but not COX-1, is induced by Meth in the striatum within 24 h [99] and can be observed as long as 72 h later [104]. No studies have identified the trigger or the cellular source of Meth-induced COX-2 expression; however, Meth induces COX-2 protein expression likely in neurons, glia, and even BBB endothelial cells [31, 99, 104] through the activation of NFKB by proinflammatory cytokines and ROS [119, 120].

No studies have observed an increase in the products of COX activity, namely, the prostaglandins and thromboxanes, even though it is known that Meth produces an increase in COX-2 expression. Thomas and Kuhn [99] observed no change in PGE2 expression when COX-2 was increased in the striatum after Meth. Changes in thromboxanes have yet to be evaluated. Despite the finding that prostaglandins do not appear to be increased by Meth via the prostaglandin synthase activity of COX, the peroxidase activity of COX may be increased and result in oxidant formation and perhaps DA quinones that have been implicated in the toxic effects of Meth [121, 122].

In addition to prostaglandins, thromboxane, and cytokine receptors, toll-like receptors (TLRs), on both glia and neurons, are other cell surface receptors that likely mediate the inflammatory response [123]. TLRs recognize pathogen-associated molecular patterns common to microorganisms [124] but are also activated by endogenous ligands such as reactive oxygen species, heat shock proteins, and extracellular matrix components [125, 126]. Endogenous ligands of the TLRs, such as ROS and heat shock proteins, exist in the brain, and TLRs are associated with some neurodegenerative processes, such as Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, and epilepsy [127–129]. While no evidence exists for the increased expression of TLRs by Meth, Meth increases ROS [47, 48] and HSP70 [130, 131], both of which are known to activate TLR4 [125] and produce downstream activation of the transcription factors NFκB and AP1 [132]. This signaling cascade is similar to IL-1 receptor activation, which causes and potentiates neuroinflammation.

Lastly, the complement protein cascade system also has been implicated in several neurodegenerative disease states [133], but its relationship to Meth toxicity has yet to be evaluated. Since the complement system is intimately involved in microglial activation through its effects on complement receptors on microglia, it is reasonable to postulate that it plays an important role in the neurodegenerative causes or consequences of Meth toxicity.

5 Neuroinflammation: A Cause or Consequence of Meth-Induced Toxicity

Meth-induced monoaminergic damage has been associated with microglial activation, and lack of microglial activation is typically associated with lack of monoaminergic damage. Neurotoxic doses of Meth produce microglial activation, and

microglial activation precedes damage to DA and 5-HT terminals [80, 95, 96]. In addition, pharmacological inhibition of NMDA receptors with MK-801 prevents Meth-induced microglial activation and damage to DA and 5-HT terminals, suggesting that microglia may play a role in Meth-induced terminal damage. On the other hand, a dose of Meth (2 mg/kg) that does not produce long-term decreases in DA and 5-HT tissue content produces a slight but significant increase in microglial activation [96]. This finding indicates that microglial activation can occur at low doses of Meth that do not cause DA and 5-HT terminal damage and suggests that a dose-dependent threshold of microglial activation is required for damage to occur.

Activation of astrocytes may also be involved in Meth-induced damage. As mentioned previously, doses of Meth that produce dopaminergic and serotonergic damage also produce an increase in the astrocytic marker GFAP [39, 79]. Furthermore, prevention of Meth-induced increases in GFAP by MK-801 also prevents decreases in TH and DA tissue content [79], suggesting a role for astrocytes in mediating the toxicity to Meth. However, the Meth-induced decreases in DA and 5-HT tissue content and TH occur prior to increases in GFAP [79] and suggest that astrocytes can be activated in response to or as a consequence of Meth-induced terminal damage and could play a role in limiting monoaminergic terminal damage. For example, it is thought that astrocytes play a protective role in multiple sclerosis by releasing anti-inflammatory cytokines and limiting T-cell activation [134]. In addition, ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF)-mediated activation of astrocytes 2 days prior to kainate treatment significantly attenuates epileptic activity and hippocampal neuronal death [135]. More relevant to Meth-induced monoaminergic damage, astrocytes release molecules, such as 14,15-epoxyeicosatrienoic acid, a metabolite of arachidonic acid, which protects DA neurons in culture from oxidative damage induced by hydrogen peroxide [136]. Together these data suggest a protective rather than a destructive role for astrocytes in Meth-induced monoaminergic terminal damage.

The role of inflammatory cytokines in Meth-induced damage is also undefined. The findings that pro-inflammatory cytokines are increased within minutes after Meth exposure suggest a causative role for cytokines in mediating the long-term damage produced by Meth. Consistent with these findings is that monoaminergic terminal damage is prevented in IL-6 knockout mice [44]. On the other hand, TNFα seems to reduce Meth-induced dopaminergic toxicity as intrastriatal injections of TNFα attenuated Meth-induced increases in extracellular DA, potentiated DA uptake into vesicles, and prevented Meth-induced decreases in DA tissue content and TH [137]. Moreover, TNFα knockout mice exhibit enhanced Meth-induced DA depletions and hyperthermia [137]. Therefore, it remains unclear whether the seemingly protective role of TNFα is due to the direct pharmacological effects of TNFα or due to the attenuation of Meth-induced hyperthermia. The role of IL-1 is also unclear. Treatment with the interleukin-1 receptor antagonist, IL-1ra, attenuates Meth-induced lethality and peak body temperature, but does not prevent Meth-induced DA depletions [39]. Thus, it remains unclear whether cytokines prevent or mediate Meth-induced damage and point to the fact that there may be distinct roles for each of the cytokines.

The mediators of Meth-induced damage may be downstream from the action of the inflammatory cytokines. The COX inhibitor indomethacin prevents Meth-induced decreases in neuronal-specific class III beta-tubulin (Tuj-1) in the hippocampus [102]. Furthermore, the nonspecific COX inhibitor, ketoprofen, and an antagonist of the substance P receptor, NK1, attenuate Meth-induced increases in microglial cells and decreases in DAT [138–140]. However, the attenuation of Meth-induced DA depletions in COX-2 knockout mice is associated with attenuation of hyperthermia and may not be due solely to the deletion of COX-2 [99]. Furthermore, although the broad-spectrum anti-inflammatory minocycline inhibits microglial activation and attenuates Meth-induced increases in markers of neuroinflammation identified by gliosis and increased mRNA transcripts of inflammatory cytokines, it does not attenuate Meth-induced decreases in DA tissue content [101]. Thus, while anti-inflammatory drugs have successfully mitigated some markers of Meth-induced damage, no studies have shown that an anti-inflammatory drug can successfully prevent Meth-induced DA or 5-HT depletions independent of hyperthermia.

It remains to be determined how the relatively generalized effects of glial activation and neuroinflammation can explain the specific effects of Meth on DA and 5-HT terminals. Clearly, neuroinflammation per se does not cause specific damage to DA and 5-HT terminals, but we have hypothesized that in the presence of the more selective pharmacodynamic actions of Meth (e.g., at DAT and SERT), neuroinflammatory mediators can synergize with Meth to selectively render DA and 5-HT terminals vulnerable [141]. Regardless, evidence exists for the role of Meth-induced neuroinflammation in damage to neurons other than the monoaminergic terminals. Depletion of glutamate-positive neurons in the somatosensory cortex is associated with an increase in GFAP [21]. In addition, death of GABAergic and cholinergic neurons in the striatum is mediated by substance P, an inflammatory mediator, and its actions at the NK1 receptor, as evidenced by the prevention of cell death in the striatum after NK1 receptor antagonism [142] or ablation of NK1 receptor-containing neurons [143]. Consequently, Meth-induced neuroinflammation may play a role beyond that of toxicity to monoaminergic terminals.

Neuroinflammation could have independent or indirect effects that can potentiate Meth-induced damage even though it may not play a direct role in Meth toxicity. Local administration of lipopolysaccharide (LPS) into the striatum prior to Meth exposure results in an enhancement of Meth-induced decreases in TH and DA tissue content and increases in DA turnover and neuroinflammation as measured by gliosis and increases in IFNγ, IL-1β, TNFα, and COX-2 expression while having no effects on the serotonergic or noradrenergic systems in the striatum [144]. In addition, prior exposure to chronic unpredictable stress or chronic corticosterone administration enhances Meth-induced neuroinflammation, monoaminergic damage [103, 122], and BBB function [31]. Moreover, the COX inhibitor ketoprofen or the prostaglandin EP1 receptor antagonist SC-51089 prevents the long-term monoaminergic and/or BBB damage caused by serial exposure to chronic unpredictable stress and Meth [31, 122]. Collectively, preexistent neuroinflammation appears to potentiate Meth-induced damage to both monoaminergic terminals and the BBB.

6 Conclusion

Neuroinflammation plays a key role in the neurotoxic effects of Meth and is most likely both a cause and a consequence of Meth-induced damage. This dual involvement for neuroinflammation is evidenced by its role in initiating a perpetual cycle of oxidative and excitotoxic mechanisms that culminate in additional inflammatory effects and eventual toxicity to neurons and perhaps glia. As there are multiple inflammatory mediators and pathways, so are there multiple endpoints reflective of damage produced by Meth. It remains to be determined whether specific inflammatory mediators are responsible for the specific neurotoxicities associated with Meth. Further investigation is warranted into how neuroinflammation directly contributes to the toxicity as well as being a point of convergence of previously identified mechanisms of Meth toxicity. Regardless, there is strong evidence that neuroinflammation can enhance Meth-induced damage and strongly suggests that neuroinflammation is a factor in the comorbidity associated with stimulant abuse and contributes to Meth-induced brain injury and cognitive impairments.

Acknowledgement Sources of Support: DA07606 and DA035499

Disclaimer Neither author has any conflicts of interest.

References

1. McCann UD, Wong DF, Yokoi F, Villemagne V, Dannals RF, Ricaurte GA. Reduced striatal dopamine transporter density in abstinent methamphetamine and methcathinone users: evidence from positron emission tomography studies with [11C]WIN-35,428. J Neurosci. 1998;18(20):8417–22.
2. Volkow ND, Chang L, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Franceschi D, Sedler M, Gatley SJ, Miller E, Hitzemann R, Ding YS, Logan J. Loss of dopamine transporters in methamphetamine abusers recovers with protracted abstinence. J Neurosci. 2001;21(23):9414–8. 21/23/9414 [pii].
3. Volkow ND, Chang L, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Leonido-Yee M, Franceschi D, Sedler MJ, Gatley SJ, Hitzemann R, Ding YS, Logan J, Wong C, Miller EN. Association of dopamine transporter reduction with psychomotor impairment in methamphetamine abusers. Am J Psychiatry. 2001;158(3):377–82.
4. Sekine Y, Ouchi Y, Takei N, Yoshikawa E, Nakamura K, Futatsubashi M, Okada H, Minabe Y, Suzuki K, Iwata Y, Tsuchiya KJ, Tsukada H, Iyo M, Mori N. Brain serotonin transporter density and aggression in abstinent methamphetamine abusers. Arch Gen Psychiatry. 2006;63(1):90–100. doi:10.1001/archpsyc.63.1.90. 63/1/90 [pii].
5. Wilson JM, Kalasinsky KS, Levey AI, Bergeron C, Reiber G, Anthony RM, Schmunk GA, Shannak K, Haycock JW, Kish SJ. Striatal dopamine nerve terminal markers in human, chronic methamphetamine users. Nat Med. 1996;2(6):699–703.
6. Kitamura O, Tokunaga I, Gotohda T, Kubo S. Immunohistochemical investigation of dopaminergic terminal markers and caspase-3 activation in the striatum of human methamphetamine users. Int J Legal Med. 2007;121(3):163–8. doi:10.1007/s00414-006-0087-9.
7. Moszczynska A, Fitzmaurice P, Ang L, Kalasinsky KS, Schmunk GA, Peretti FJ, Aiken SS, Wickham DJ, Kish SJ. Why is parkinsonism not a feature of human methamphetamine users? Brain. 2004;127(Pt 2):363–70. doi:10.1093/brain/awh046. awh046 [pii].

8. Kish SJ, Fitzmaurice PS, Boileau I, Schmunk GA, Ang LC, Furukawa Y, Chang LJ, Wickham DJ, Sherwin A, Tong J. Brain serotonin transporter in human methamphetamine users. Psychopharmacology (Berl). 2009;202(4):649–61. doi:10.1007/s00213-008-1346-x.
9. Hotchkiss AJ, Gibb JW. Long-term effects of multiple doses of methamphetamine on tryptophan hydroxylase and tyrosine hydroxylase activity in rat brain. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1980;214(2):257–62.
10. Ricaurte GA, Schuster CR, Seiden LS. Long-term effects of repeated methylamphetamine administration on dopamine and serotonin neurons in the rat brain: a regional study. Brain Res. 1980;193(1):153–63. 0006-8993(80)90952-X [pii].
11. Wagner GC, Ricaurte GA, Seiden LS, Schuster CR, Miller RJ, Westley J. Long-lasting depletions of striatal dopamine and loss of dopamine uptake sites following repeated administration of methamphetamine. Brain Res. 1980;181(1):151–60. 0006-8993(80)91265-2 [pii].
12. Eyerman DJ, Yamamoto BK. Lobeline attenuates methamphetamine-induced changes in vesicular monoamine transporter 2 immunoreactivity and monoamine depletions in the striatum. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2005;312(1):160–9. doi:10.1124/jpet.104.072264. jpet.104.072264 [pii].
13. Cass WA, Manning MW. Recovery of presynaptic dopaminergic functioning in rats treated with neurotoxic doses of methamphetamine. J Neurosci. 1999;19(17):7653–60.
14. Ernst T, Chang L, Leonido-Yee M, Speck O. Evidence for long-term neurotoxicity associated with methamphetamine abuse: a 1H MRS study. Neurology. 2000;54(6):1344–9.
15. Chang L, Ernst T, Speck O, Grob CS. Additive effects of HIV and chronic methamphetamine use on brain metabolite abnormalities. Am J Psychiatry. 2005;162(2):361–9. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.162.2.361. 162/2/361 [pii].
16. Thompson PM, Hayashi KM, Simon SL, Geaga JA, Hong MS, Sui Y, Lee JY, Toga AW, Ling W, London ED. Structural abnormalities in the brains of human subjects who use methamphetamine. J Neurosci. 2004;24(26):6028–36. doi:10.1523/JNEUROSCI.0713-04.2004. 24/26/6028 [pii].
17. Warren MW, Kobeissy FH, Liu MC, Hayes RL, Gold MS, Wang KK. Concurrent calpain and caspase-3 mediated proteolysis of alpha II-spectrin and tau in rat brain after methamphetamine exposure: a similar profile to traumatic brain injury. Life Sci. 2005;78(3):301–9. doi:10.1016/j.lfs.2005.04.058. S0024-3205(05)00694-6 [pii].
18. Schmued LC, Bowyer JF. Methamphetamine exposure can produce neuronal degeneration in mouse hippocampal remnants. Brain Res. 1997;759(1):135–40. S0006-8993(97)00173-X [pii].
19. Deng X, Wang Y, Chou J, Cadet JL. Methamphetamine causes widespread apoptosis in the mouse brain: evidence from using an improved TUNEL histochemical method. Brain Res Mol Brain Res. 2001;93(1):64–9. S0169328X0100184X [pii].
20. Zhu JP, Xu W, Angulo JA. Methamphetamine-induced cell death: selective vulnerability in neuronal subpopulations of the striatum in mice. Neuroscience. 2006;140(2):607–22. doi:10.1016/j.neuroscience.2006.02.055. S0306-4522(06)00210-7 [pii].
21. Pu C, Broening HW, Vorhees CV. Effect of methamphetamine on glutamate-positive neurons in the adult and developing rat somatosensory cortex. Synapse. 1996;23(4):328–34. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1098-2396(199608)23:4<328::AID-SYN11>3.0.CO;2-T.
22. Eisch AJ, Marshall JF. Methamphetamine neurotoxicity: dissociation of striatal dopamine terminal damage from parietal cortical cell body injury. Synapse. 1998;30(4):433–45. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1098-2396(199812)30:4<433::AID-SYN10>3.0.CO;2-O.
23. Yu J, Wang J, Cadet JL, Angulo JA. Histological evidence supporting a role for the striatal neurokinin-1 receptor in methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity in the mouse brain. Brain Res. 2004;1007(1–2):124–31. doi:10.1016/j.brainres.2004.01.077. S0006899304002574 [pii].
24. Kogan FJ, Nichols WK, Gibb JW. Influence of methamphetamine on nigral and striatal tyrosine hydroxylase activity and on striatal dopamine levels. Eur J Pharmacol. 1976;36(2):363–71.
25. Sonsalla PK, Jochnowitz ND, Zeevalk GD, Oostveen JA, Hall ED. Treatment of mice with methamphetamine produces cell loss in the substantia nigra. Brain Res. 1996;738(1):172–5. 0006-8993(96)00995-X [pii].

26. Shepard JD, Chuang DT, Shaham Y, Morales M. Effect of methamphetamine self-administration on tyrosine hydroxylase and dopamine transporter levels in mesolimbic and nigrostriatal dopamine pathways of the rat. Psychopharmacology (Berl). 2006;185(4):505–13. doi:10.1007/s00213-006-0316-4.
27. Nichols NR, Masters JN, Finch CE. Changes in gene expression in hippocampus in response to glucocorticoids and stress. Brain Res Bull. 1990;24(5):659–62. 0361-9230(90)90004-J [pii].
28. Ramirez SH, Potula R, Fan S, Eidem T, Papugani A, Reichenbach N, Dykstra H, Weksler BB, Romero IA, Couraud PO, Persidsky Y. Methamphetamine disrupts blood-brain barrier function by induction of oxidative stress in brain endothelial cells. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab. 2009;29(12):1933–45. doi:10.1038/jcbfm.2009.112. jcbfm2009112 [pii].
29. Mahajan SD, Aalinkeel R, Sykes DE, Reynolds JL, Bindukumar B, Adal A, Qi M, Toh J, Xu G, Prasad PN, Schwartz SA. Methamphetamine alters blood brain barrier permeability via the modulation of tight junction expression: implication for HIV-1 neuropathogenesis in the context of drug abuse. Brain Res. 2008;1203:133–48. doi:10.1016/j.brainres.2008.01.093. S0006-8993(08)00306-5 [pii].
30. Martins T, Baptista S, Goncalves J, Leal E, Milhazes N, Borges F, Ribeiro CF, Quintela O, Lendoiro E, Lopez-Rivadulla M, Ambrosio AF, Silva AP. Methamphetamine transiently increases the blood-brain barrier permeability in the hippocampus: role of tight junction proteins and matrix metalloproteinase-9. Brain Res. 2011;1411:28–40. doi:10.1016/j.brainres.2011.07.013. S0006-8993(11)01271-6 [pii].
31. Northrop NA, Yamamoto BK. Persistent neuroinflammatory effects of serial exposure to stress and methamphetamine on the blood-brain barrier. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2012;7(4):951–68. doi:10.1007/s11481-012-9391-y.
32. Kiyatkin EA, Sharma HS. Acute methamphetamine intoxication brain hyperthermia, blood-brain barrier, brain edema, and morphological cell abnormalities. Int Rev Neurobiol. 2009;88:65–100. doi:10.1016/S0074-7742(09)88004-5. S0074-7742(09)88004-5 [pii].
33. Bowyer JF, Ali S. High doses of methamphetamine that cause disruption of the blood-brain barrier in limbic regions produce extensive neuronal degeneration in mouse hippocampus. Synapse. 2006;60(7):521–32. doi:10.1002/syn.20324.
34. Kiyatkin EA, Brown PL, Sharma HS. Brain edema and breakdown of the blood-brain barrier during methamphetamine intoxication: critical role of brain hyperthermia. Eur J Neurosci. 2007;26(5):1242–53. doi:10.1111/j.1460-9568.2007.05741.x. EJN5741 [pii].
35. Kiyatkin EA, Sharma HS. Permeability of the blood-brain barrier depends on brain temperature. Neuroscience. 2009;161(3):926–39. doi:10.1016/j.neuroscience.2009.04.004. S0306-4522(09)00578-8 [pii].
36. Halpin LE, Yamamoto BK. Peripheral ammonia as a mediator of methamphetamine neurotoxicity. J Neurosci. 2012;32(38):13155–63. doi:10.1523/JNEUROSCI.2530-12.2012. 32/38/13155 [pii].
37. Halpin LE, Northrop NA, Yamamoto BK. Ammonia mediates methamphetamine-induced increases in glutamate and excitotoxicity. Neuropsychopharmacology. 2014;39(4):1031–8. doi:10.1038/npp.2013.306. npp2013306 [pii].
38. Bowyer JF, Tank AW, Newport GD, Slikker Jr W, Ali SF, Holson RR. The influence of environmental temperature on the transient effects of methamphetamine on dopamine levels and dopamine release in rat striatum. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1992;260(2):817–24.
39. Bowyer JF, Davies DL, Schmued L, Broening HW, Newport GD, Slikker Jr W, Holson RR. Further studies of the role of hyperthermia in methamphetamine neurotoxicity. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1994;268(3):1571–80.
40. Xie T, McCann UD, Kim S, Yuan J, Ricaurte GA. Effect of temperature on dopamine transporter function and intracellular accumulation of methamphetamine: implications for methamphetamine-induced dopaminergic neurotoxicity. J Neurosci. 2000;20(20):7838–45. 20/20/7838 [pii].
41. Bowyer JF, Newport GD, Lipe GW, Frame LT. A further evaluation of the effects of K + depolarization on glutamate-evoked [3H]dopamine release from striatal slices. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1992;261(1):72–80.

42. Albers DS, Sonsalla PK. Methamphetamine-induced hyperthermia and dopaminergic neurotoxicity in mice: pharmacological profile of protective and nonprotective agents. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1995;275(3):1104–14.
43. Itzhak Y, Martin JL, Ail SF. nNOS inhibitors attenuate methamphetamine-induced dopaminergic neurotoxicity but not hyperthermia in mice. Neuroreport. 2000;11(13):2943–6.
44. Ladenheim B, Krasnova IN, Deng X, Oyler JM, Polettini A, Moran TH, Huestis MA, Cadet JL. Methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity is attenuated in transgenic mice with a null mutation for interleukin-6. Mol Pharmacol. 2000;58(6):1247–56.
45. Callahan BT, Cord BJ, Yuan J, McCann UD, Ricaurte GA. Inhibitors of Na(+)/H(+) and Na(+)/Ca(2+) exchange potentiate methamphetamine-induced dopamine neurotoxicity: possible role of ionic dysregulation in methamphetamine neurotoxicity. J Neurochem. 2001;77(5):1348–62.
46. Sanchez V, Zeini M, Camarero J, O'Shea E, Bosca L, Green AR, Colado MI. The nNOS inhibitor, AR-R17477AR, prevents the loss of NF68 immunoreactivity induced by methamphetamine in the mouse striatum. J Neurochem. 2003;85(2):515–24. 1714 [pii].
47. Yamamoto BK, Zhu W. The effects of methamphetamine on the production of free radicals and oxidative stress. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1998;287(1):107–14.
48. Giovanni A, Liang LP, Hastings TG, Zigmond MJ. Estimating hydroxyl radical content in rat brain using systemic and intraventricular salicylate: impact of methamphetamine. J Neurochem. 1995;64(4):1819–25.
49. Harold C, Wallace T, Friedman R, Gudelsky G, Yamamoto B. Methamphetamine selectively alters brain glutathione. Eur J Pharmacol. 2000;400(1):99–102. S0014-2999(00)00392-7 [pii].
50. Wagner GC, Carelli RM, Jarvis MF. Pretreatment with ascorbic acid attenuates the neurotoxic effects of methamphetamine in rats. Res Commun Chem Pathol Pharmacol. 1985;47(2):221–8.
51. De Vito MJ, Wagner GC. Methamphetamine-induced neuronal damage: a possible role for free radicals. Neuropharmacology. 1989;28(10):1145–50.
52. Fukami G, Hashimoto K, Koike K, Okamura N, Shimizu E, Iyo M. Effect of antioxidant N-acetyl-L-cysteine on behavioral changes and neurotoxicity in rats after administration of methamphetamine. Brain Res. 2004;1016(1):90–5. doi:10.1016/j.brainres.2004.04.072. S0006899304007164 [pii].
53. Maragos WF, Jakel R, Chesnut D, Pocernich CB, Butterfield DA, St Clair D, Cass WA. Methamphetamine toxicity is attenuated in mice that overexpress human manganese superoxide dismutase. Brain Res. 2000;878(1–2):218–22. S0006-8993(00)02707-4 [pii].
54. Cadet JL, Ali S, Epstein C. Involvement of oxygen-based radicals in methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity: evidence from the use of CuZnSOD transgenic mice. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1994;738:388–91.
55. Cadet JL, Sheng P, Ali S, Rothman R, Carlson E, Epstein C. Attenuation of methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity in copper/zinc superoxide dismutase transgenic mice. J Neurochem. 1994;62(1):380–3.
56. Hirata H, Ladenheim B, Rothman RB, Epstein C, Cadet JL. Methamphetamine-induced serotonin neurotoxicity is mediated by superoxide radicals. Brain Res. 1995;677(2):345–7. 0006-8993(95)00218-F [pii].
57. Axt KJ, Commins DL, Vosmer G, Seiden LS. alpha-Methyl-p-tyrosine pretreatment partially prevents methamphetamine-induced endogenous neurotoxin formation. Brain Res. 1990;515(1–2):269–76. 0006-8993(90)90606-C [pii].
58. Metzger RR, Haughey HM, Wilkins DG, Gibb JW, Hanson GR, Fleckenstein AE. Methamphetamine-induced rapid decrease in dopamine transporter function: role of dopamine and hyperthermia. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2000;295(3):1077–85.
59. Yuan J, Darvas M, Sotak B, Hatzidimitriou G, McCann UD, Palmiter RD, Ricaurte GA. Dopamine is not essential for the development of methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity. J Neurochem. 2010;114(4):1135–42. doi:10.1111/j.1471-4159.2010.06839.x. JNC6839 [pii].
60. Fumagalli F, Gainetdinov RR, Wang YM, Valenzano KJ, Miller GW, Caron MG. Increased methamphetamine neurotoxicity in heterozygous vesicular monoamine transporter 2 knockout mice. J Neurosci. 1999;19(7):2424–31.

61. Eyerman DJ, Yamamoto BK. A rapid oxidation and persistent decrease in the vesicular monoamine transporter 2 after methamphetamine. J Neurochem. 2007;103(3):1219–27. doi:10.1111/j.1471-4159.2007.04837.x. JNC4837 [pii].
62. Abekawa T, Ohmori T, Koyama T. Effects of nitric oxide synthesis inhibition on methamphetamine-induced dopaminergic and serotonergic neurotoxicity in the rat brain. J Neural Transm. 1996;103(6):671–80.
63. Imam SZ, el-Yazal J, Newport GD, Itzhak Y, Cadet JL, Slikker Jr W, Ali SF. Methamphetamine-induced dopaminergic neurotoxicity: role of peroxynitrite and neuroprotective role of antioxidants and peroxynitrite decomposition catalysts. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2001;939:366–80.
64. Imam SZ, Newport GD, Itzhak Y, Cadet JL, Islam F, Slikker Jr W, Ali SF. Peroxynitrite plays a role in methamphetamine-induced dopaminergic neurotoxicity: evidence from mice lacking neuronal nitric oxide synthase gene or overexpressing copper-zinc superoxide dismutase. J Neurochem. 2001;76(3):745–9.
65. Itzhak Y, Gandia C, Huang PL, Ali SF. Resistance of neuronal nitric oxide synthase-deficient mice to methamphetamine-induced dopaminergic neurotoxicity. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1998;284(3):1040–7.
66. Sonsalla PK, Riordan DE, Heikkila RE. Competitive and noncompetitive antagonists at N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors protect against methamphetamine-induced dopaminergic damage in mice. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1991;256(2):506–12.
67. Stephans SE, Yamamoto BK. Methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity: roles for glutamate and dopamine efflux. Synapse. 1994;17(3):203–9. doi:10.1002/syn.890170310.
68. Battaglia G, Fornai F, Busceti CL, Aloisi G, Cerrito F, De Blasi A, Melchiorri D, Nicoletti F. Selective blockade of mGlu5 metabotropic glutamate receptors is protective against methamphetamine neurotoxicity. J Neurosci. 2002;22(6):2135–41. 22/6/2135 [pii].
69. Mark KA, Soghomonian JJ, Yamamoto BK. High-dose methamphetamine acutely activates the striatonigral pathway to increase striatal glutamate and mediate long-term dopamine toxicity. J Neurosci. 2004;24(50):11449–56. doi:10.1523/JNEUROSCI.3597-04.2004. 24/50/11449 [pii].
70. Northrop NA, Smith LP, Yamamoto BK, Eyerman DJ. Regulation of glutamate release by alpha7 nicotinic receptors: differential role in methamphetamine-induced damage to dopaminergic and serotonergic terminals. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2011;336(3):900–7. doi:10.1124/jpet.110.177287. jpet.110.177287 [pii].
71. Chan P, Di Monte DA, Luo JJ, DeLanney LE, Irwin I, Langston JW. Rapid ATP loss caused by methamphetamine in the mouse striatum: relationship between energy impairment and dopaminergic neurotoxicity. J Neurochem. 1994;62(6):2484–7.
72. Burrows KB, Nixdorf WL, Yamamoto BK. Central administration of methamphetamine synergizes with metabolic inhibition to deplete striatal monoamines. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2000;292(3):853–60.
73. Stephans SE, Whittingham TS, Douglas AJ, Lust WD, Yamamoto BK. Substrates of energy metabolism attenuate methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity in striatum. J Neurochem. 1998;71(2):613–21.
74. Burrows KB, Gudelsky G, Yamamoto BK. Rapid and transient inhibition of mitochondrial function following methamphetamine or 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine administration. Eur J Pharmacol. 2000;398(1):11–8. S0014-2999(00)00264-8 [pii].
75. Brown JM, Quinton MS, Yamamoto BK. Methamphetamine-induced inhibition of mitochondrial complex II: roles of glutamate and peroxynitrite. J Neurochem. 2005;95(2):429–36. doi:10.1111/j.1471-4159.2005.03379.x. JNC3379 [pii].
76. Ricaurte GA, Seiden LS, Schuster CR. Further evidence that amphetamines produce long-lasting dopamine neurochemical deficits by destroying dopamine nerve fibers. Brain Res. 1984;303(2):359–64. 0006-8993(84)91221-6 [pii].
77. Yang FC, Yamamoto BK. The time course of monoamine markers and axonal protein changes in the rat brain after methamphetamine exposure. Program No. 372.15. 2011 Neuroscience meeting planner. Washington, DC: Society for Neuroscience; 2011. Online.
78. Johnson M, Hanson GR, Gibb JW. Effect of MK-801 on the decrease in tryptophan hydroxylase induced by methamphetamine and its methylenedioxy analog. Eur J Pharmacol. 1989;165(2–3):315–8. 0014-2999(89)90728-0 [pii].

79. O'Callaghan JP, Miller DB. Neurotoxicity profiles of substituted amphetamines in the C57BL/6J mouse. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1994;270(2):741–51.
80. Thomas DM, Dowgiert J, Geddes TJ, Francescutti-Verbeem D, Liu X, Kuhn DM. Microglial activation is a pharmacologically specific marker for the neurotoxic amphetamines. Neurosci Lett. 2004;367(3):349–54. doi:10.1016/j.neulet.2004.06.065. S0304-3940(04)00767-0 [pii].
81. Kawasaki T, Ishihara K, Ago Y, Nakamura S, Itoh S, Baba A, Matsuda T. Protective effect of the radical scavenger edaravone against methamphetamine-induced dopaminergic neurotoxicity in mouse striatum. Eur J Pharmacol. 2006;542(1–3):92–9. doi:10.1016/j.ejphar.2006.05.012. S0014-2999(06)00506-1 [pii].
82. Chen H, Wu J, Zhang J, Fujita Y, Ishima T, Iyo M, Hashimoto K. Protective effects of the antioxidant sulforaphane on behavioral changes and neurotoxicity in mice after the administration of methamphetamine. Psychopharmacology (Berl). 2012;222(1):37–45. doi:10.1007/s00213-011-2619-3.
83. Chaparro-Huerta V, Rivera-Cervantes MC, Flores-Soto ME, Gomez-Pinedo U, Beas-Zarate C. Proinflammatory cytokines and apoptosis following glutamate-induced excitotoxicity mediated by p38 MAPK in the hippocampus of neonatal rats. J Neuroimmunol. 2005;165(1–2):53–62. doi:10.1016/j.jneuroim.2005.04.025. S0165-5728(05)00199-2 [pii].
84. de Bock F, Dornand J, Rondouin G. Release of TNF alpha in the rat hippocampus following epileptic seizures and excitotoxic neuronal damage. Neuroreport. 1996;7(6):1125–9.
85. Vezzani A, Conti M, De Luigi A, Ravizza T, Moneta D, Marchesi F, De Simoni MG. Interleukin-1beta immunoreactivity and microglia are enhanced in the rat hippocampus by focal kainate application: functional evidence for enhancement of electrographic seizures. J Neurosci. 1999;19(12):5054–65.
86. Thomas DM, Kuhn DM. MK-801 and dextromethorphan block microglial activation and protect against methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity. Brain Res. 2005;1050(1–2):190–8. doi:10.1016/j.brainres.2005.05.049. S0006-8993(05)00811-5 [pii].
87. Halpin LE, Gunning WT, Yamamoto BK. Methamphetamine causes acute hyperthermia-dependent liver damage. Pharmacol Res Perspect. 2013;1(1):e0008. doi:10.1002/prp2.8.
88. Bemeur C, Butterworth RF. Liver-brain proinflammatory signalling in acute liver failure: role in the pathogenesis of hepatic encephalopathy and brain edema. Metab Brain Dis. 2012;28(2):145–50. doi:10.1007/s11011-012-9361-3.
89. Rodrigo R, Cauli O, Gomez-Pinedo U, Agusti A, Hernandez-Rabaza V, Garcia-Verdugo JM, Felipo V. Hyperammonemia induces neuroinflammation that contributes to cognitive impairment in rats with hepatic encephalopathy. Gastroenterology. 2010;139(2):675–84. doi:10.1053/j.gastro.2010.03.040. S0016-5085(10)00395-1 [pii].
90. Alvarez VM, Rama Rao KV, Brahmbhatt M, Norenberg MD. Interaction between cytokines and ammonia in the mitochondrial permeability transition in cultured astrocytes. J Neurosci Res. 2011;89(12):2028–40. doi:10.1002/jnr.22708.
91. Rama Rao KV, Jayakumar AR, Tong X, Alvarez VM, Norenberg MD. Marked potentiation of cell swelling by cytokines in ammonia-sensitized cultured astrocytes. J Neuroinflammation. 2010;7:66. doi:10.1186/1742-2094-7-66. 1742-2094-7-66 [pii].
92. Loftis JM, Choi D, Hoffman W, Huckans MS. Methamphetamine causes persistent immune dysregulation: a cross-species, translational report. Neurotox Res. 2011;20(1):59–68. doi:10.1007/s12640-010-9223-x.
93. Sekine Y, Ouchi Y, Sugihara G, Takei N, Yoshikawa E, Nakamura K, Iwata Y, Tsuchiya KJ, Suda S, Suzuki K, Kawai M, Takebayashi K, Yamamoto S, Matsuzaki H, Ueki T, Mori N, Gold MS, Cadet JL. Methamphetamine causes microglial activation in the brains of human abusers. J Neurosci. 2008;28(22):5756–61. doi:10.1523/JNEUROSCI.1179-08.2008. 28/22/5756 [pii].
94. Escubedo E, Guitart L, Sureda FX, Jimenez A, Pubill D, Pallas M, Camins A, Camarasa J. Microgliosis and down-regulation of adenosine transporter induced by methamphetamine in rats. Brain Res. 1998;814(1–2):120–6. S0006-8993(98)01065-8 [pii].
95. LaVoie MJ, Card JP, Hastings TG. Microglial activation precedes dopamine terminal pathology in methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity. Exp Neurol. 2004;187(1):47–57. doi:10.1016/j.expneurol.2004.01.010. S0014488604000202 [pii].

96. Thomas DM, Walker PD, Benjamins JA, Geddes TJ, Kuhn DM. Methamphetamine neurotoxicity in dopamine nerve endings of the striatum is associated with microglial activation. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2004;311(1):1–7. doi:10.1124/jpet.104.070961. jpet.104.070961 [pii].
97. Yamaguchi T, Kuraishi Y, Minami M, Nakai S, Hirai Y, Satoh M. Methamphetamine-induced expression of interleukin-1 beta mRNA in the rat hypothalamus. Neurosci Lett. 1991;128(1):90–2. 0304-3940(91)90766-M [pii].
98. Flora G, Lee YW, Nath A, Maragos W, Hennig B, Toborek M. Methamphetamine-induced TNF-alpha gene expression and activation of AP-1 in discrete regions of mouse brain: potential role of reactive oxygen intermediates and lipid peroxidation. Neuromolecular Med. 2002;2(1):71–85. doi:10.1385/NMM:2:1:71. NMM:2:1:71 [pii].
99. Thomas DM, Kuhn DM. Cyclooxygenase-2 is an obligatory factor in methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2005;313(2):870–6. doi:10.1124/jpet.104.080242. jpet.104.080242 [pii].
100. Goncalves J, Martins T, Ferreira R, Milhazes N, Borges F, Ribeiro CF, Malva JO, Macedo TR, Silva AP. Methamphetamine-induced early increase of IL-6 and TNF-alpha mRNA expression in the mouse brain. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2008;1139:103–11. doi:10.1196/annals.1432.043. NYAS1139043 [pii].
101. Sriram K, Miller DB, O'Callaghan JP. Minocycline attenuates microglial activation but fails to mitigate striatal dopaminergic neurotoxicity: role of tumor necrosis factor-alpha. J Neurochem. 2006;96(3):706–18. doi:10.1111/j.1471-4159.2005.03566.x. JNC3566 [pii].
102. Goncalves J, Baptista S, Martins T, Milhazes N, Borges F, Ribeiro CF, Malva JO, Silva AP. Methamphetamine-induced neuroinflammation and neuronal dysfunction in the mice hippocampus: preventive effect of indomethacin. Eur J Neurosci. 2010;31(2):315–26. doi:10.1111/j.1460-9568.2009.07059.x. EJN7059 [pii].
103. Kelly KA, Miller DB, Bowyer JF, O'Callaghan JP. Chronic exposure to corticosterone enhances the neuroinflammatory and neurotoxic responses to methamphetamine. J Neurochem. 2012;122(5):995–1009. doi:10.1111/j.1471-4159.2012.07864.x.
104. Kita T, Shimada K, Mastunari Y, Wagner GC, Kubo K, Nakashima T. Methamphetamine-induced striatal dopamine neurotoxicity and cyclooxygenase-2 protein expression in BALB/c mice. Neuropharmacology. 2000;39(3):399–406. S0028390899001756 [pii].
105. Chang RC, Chiu K, Ho YS, So KF. Modulation of neuroimmune responses on glia in the central nervous system: implication in therapeutic intervention against neuroinflammation. Cell Mol Immunol. 2009;6(5):317–26. doi:10.1038/cmi.2009.42.
106. Lucin KM, Wyss-Coray T. Immune activation in brain aging and neurodegeneration: too much or too little? Neuron. 2009;64(1):110–22. doi:10.1016/j.neuron.2009.08.039. S0896-6273(09)00677-1 [pii].
107. Carnevale D, De Simone R, Minghetti L. Microglia-neuron interaction in inflammatory and degenerative diseases: role of cholinergic and noradrenergic systems. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets. 2007;6(6):388–97.
108. Sen CK, Packer L. Antioxidant and redox regulation of gene transcription. FASEB J. 1996;10(7):709–20.
109. Brown GC. Mechanisms of inflammatory neurodegeneration: iNOS and NADPH oxidase. Biochem Soc Trans. 2007;35(Pt 5):1119–21. doi:10.1042/BST0351119. BST0351119 [pii].
110. Jia Z, Misra HP. Reactive oxygen species in in vitro pesticide-induced neuronal cell (SH-SY5Y) cytotoxicity: role of NFkappaB and caspase-3. Free Radic Biol Med. 2007;42(2):288–98. doi:10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2006.10.047. S0891-5849(06)00693-9 [pii].
111. Shah A, Silverstein PS, Singh DP, Kumar A. Involvement of metabotropic glutamate receptor 5, AKT/PI3K signaling and NF-kappaB pathway in methamphetamine-mediated increase in IL-6 and IL-8 expression in astrocytes. J Neuroinflammation. 2012;9:52. doi:10.1186/1742-2094-9-52. 1742-2094-9-52 [pii].
112. Tocharus J, Khonthun C, Chongthammakun S, Govitrapong P. Melatonin attenuates methamphetamine-induced overexpression of pro-inflammatory cytokines in microglial cell lines. J Pineal Res. 2010;48(4):347–52. doi:10.1111/j.1600-079X.2010.00761.x. JPI761 [pii].

113. Shanks RA, Anderson JR, Taylor JR, Lloyd SA. Amphetamine and methamphetamine have a direct and differential effect on BV2 microglia cells. Bull Exp Biol Med. 2012;154(2):228–32.
114. Di Loreto S, Balestrino M, Pellegrini P, Berghella AM, Del Beato T, Di Marco F, Adorno D. Blockade of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor prevents hypoxic neuronal death and cytokine release. Neuroimmunomodulation. 1997;4(4):195–9.
115. Acarin L, Gonzalez B, Castellano B. Neuronal, astroglial and microglial cytokine expression after an excitotoxic lesion in the immature rat brain. Eur J Neurosci. 2000;12(10):3505–20. ejn226 [pii].
116. Allan SM, Rothwell NJ. Cytokines and acute neurodegeneration. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2001;2(10):734–44. doi:10.1038/35094583.
117. Freidin M, Bennett MV, Kessler JA. Cultured sympathetic neurons synthesize and release the cytokine interleukin 1 beta. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1992;89(21):10440–3.
118. Asanuma M, Miyazaki I, Higashi Y, Tsuji T, Ogawa N. Specific gene expression and possible involvement of inflammation in methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2004;1025:69–75. doi:10.1196/annals.1316.009. 1025/1/69 [pii].
119. Asanuma M, Cadet JL. Methamphetamine-induced increase in striatal NF-kappaB DNA-binding activity is attenuated in superoxide dismutase transgenic mice. Brain Res Mol Brain Res. 1998;60(2):305–9. S0169328X98001880 [pii].
120. Lee YW, Hennig B, Yao J, Toborek M. Methamphetamine induces AP-1 and NF-kappaB binding and transactivation in human brain endothelial cells. J Neurosci Res. 2001;66(4): 583–91. doi:10.1002/jnr.1248.
121. Hastings TG. Enzymatic oxidation of dopamine: the role of prostaglandin H synthase. J Neurochem. 1995;64(2):919–24.
122. Northrop NA, Yamamoto BK. Cyclooxygenase activity contributes to the monoaminergic damage caused by serial exposure to stress and methamphetamine. Neuropharmacology. 2013;72:96–105. doi:10.1016/j.neuropharm.2013.04.040. S0028-3908(13)00186-X [pii].
123. Kielian T. Toll-like receptors in central nervous system glial inflammation and homeostasis. J Neurosci Res. 2006;83(5):711–30. doi:10.1002/jnr.20767.
124. Kaisho T, Akira S. Toll-like receptors and their signaling mechanism in innate immunity. Acta Odontol Scand. 2001;59(3):124–30.
125. Ryan KA, Smith Jr MF, Sanders MK, Ernst PB. Reactive oxygen and nitrogen species differentially regulate Toll-like receptor 4-mediated activation of NF-kappa B and interleukin-8 expression. Infect Immun. 2004;72(4):2123–30.
126. Yu L, Wang L, Chen S. Endogenous toll-like receptor ligands and their biological significance. J Cell Mol Med. 2010;14(11):2592–603. doi:10.1111/j.1582-4934.2010.01127.x. JCMM1127 [pii].
127. Stefanova N, Reindl M, Neumann M, Kahle PJ, Poewe W, Wenning GK. Microglial activation mediates neurodegeneration related to oligodendroglial alpha-synucleinopathy: implications for multiple system atrophy. Mov Disord. 2007;22(15):2196–203. doi:10.1002/mds.21671.
128. Walter S, Letiembre M, Liu Y, Heine H, Penke B, Hao W, Bode B, Manietta N, Walter J, Schulz-Schuffer W, Fassbender K. Role of the toll-like receptor 4 in neuroinflammation in Alzheimer's disease. Cell Physiol Biochem. 2007;20(6):947–56. doi:10.1159/000110455. 110455 [pii].
129. Vezzani A, Maroso M, Balosso S, Sanchez MA, Bartfai T. IL-1 receptor/Toll-like receptor signaling in infection, inflammation, stress and neurodegeneration couples hyperexcitability and seizures. Brain Behav Immun. 2011;25(7):1281–9. doi:10.1016/j.bbi.2011.03.018. S0889-1591(11)00111-5 [pii].
130. Yu X, Imam SZ, Newport GD, Slikker Jr W, Ali SF. Ibogaine blocked methamphetamine-induced hyperthermia and induction of heat shock protein in mice. Brain Res. 1999; 823(1–2):213–6. S0006-8993(99)01154-3 [pii].
131. Kiyatkin EA, Sharma HS. Expression of heat shock protein (HSP 72 kDa) during acute methamphetamine intoxication depends on brain hyperthermia: neurotoxicity or neuroprotection? J Neural Transm. 2011;118(1):47–60. doi:10.1007/s00702-010-0477-5.

132. Akira S, Takeda K. Toll-like receptor signalling. Nat Rev Immunol. 2004;4(7):499–511. doi:10.1038/nri1391.
133. Stephan AH, Barres BA, Stevens B. The complement system: an unexpected role in synaptic pruning during development and disease. Annu Rev Neurosci. 2012;35:369–89. doi:10.1146/annurev-neuro-061010-113810.
134. Nair A, Frederick TJ, Miller SD. Astrocytes in multiple sclerosis: a product of their environment. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2008;65(17):2702–20. doi:10.1007/s00018-008-8059-5.
135. Bechstein M, Haussler U, Neef M, Hofmann HD, Kirsch M, Haas CA. CNTF-mediated preactivation of astrocytes attenuates neuronal damage and epileptiform activity in experimental epilepsy. Exp Neurol. 2012;236(1):141–50. doi:10.1016/j.expneurol.2012.04.009. S0014-4886(12)00161-6 [pii].
136. Terashvili M, Sarkar P, Nostrand MV, Falck JR, Harder DR. The protective effect of astrocyte-derived 14,15-epoxyeicosatrienoic acid on hydrogen peroxide-induced cell injury in astrocyte-dopaminergic neuronal cell line co-culture. Neuroscience. 2012;223:68–76. doi:10.1016/j.neuroscience.2012.07.045. S0306-4522(12)00770-1 [pii].
137. Nakajima A, Yamada K, Nagai T, Uchiyama T, Miyamoto Y, Mamiya T, He J, Nitta A, Mizuno M, Tran MH, Seto A, Yoshimura M, Kitaichi K, Hasegawa T, Saito K, Yamada Y, Seishima M, Sekikawa K, Kim HC, Nabeshima T. Role of tumor necrosis factor-alpha in methamphetamine-induced drug dependence and neurotoxicity. J Neurosci. 2004;24(9):2212–25. doi:10.1523/JNEUROSCI.4847-03.2004. 24/9/2212 [pii].
138. Asanuma M, Tsuji T, Miyazaki I, Miyoshi K, Ogawa N. Methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity in mouse brain is attenuated by ketoprofen, a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug. Neurosci Lett. 2003;352(1):13–6. S0304394003010012 [pii].
139. Angulo JA, Angulo N, Yu J. Antagonists of the neurokinin-1 or dopamine D1 receptors confer protection from methamphetamine on dopamine terminals of the mouse striatum. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2004;1025:171–80. doi:10.1196/annals.1316.022. 1025/1/171 [pii].
140. Loonam TM, Noailles PA, Yu J, Zhu JP, Angulo JA. Substance P and cholecystokinin regulate neurochemical responses to cocaine and methamphetamine in the striatum. Life Sci. 2003;73(6):727–39. S002432050300393X [pii].
141. Yamamoto BK, Raudensky J. The role of oxidative stress, metabolic compromise, and inflammation in neuronal injury produced by amphetamine-related drugs of abuse. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2008;3(4):203–17. doi:10.1007/s11481-008-9121-7.
142. Zhu J, Xu W, Wang J, Ali SF, Angulo JA. The neurokinin-1 receptor modulates the methamphetamine-induced striatal apoptosis and nitric oxide formation in mice. J Neurochem. 2009;111(3):656–68. doi:10.1111/j.1471-4159.2009.06330.x. JNC6330 [pii].
143. Zhu JP, Xu W, Angulo JA. Distinct mechanisms mediating methamphetamine-induced neuronal apoptosis and dopamine terminal damage share the neuropeptide substance p in the striatum of mice. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2006;1074:135–48. doi:10.1196/annals.1369.013. 1074/1/135 [pii].
144. Jung BD, Shin EJ, Nguyen XK, Jin CH, Bach JH, Park SJ, Nah SY, Wie MB, Bing G, Kim HC. Potentiation of methamphetamine neurotoxicity by intrastriatal lipopolysaccharide administration. Neurochem Int. 2010;56(2):229–44. doi:10.1016/j.neuint.2009.10.005. S0197-0186(09)00295-2 [pii].

Drugs of Abuse and NeuroAIDS: Opiates

Thomas J. Rogers

Abstract Opiate abuse is a major global health problem, due in part to the fact that the HIV infection often occurs with intravenous drug abuse. There is strong clinical and preclinical evidence that opiate abuse promotes the neurodegeneration that can occur in association with HIV infection. Morphine or heroin can exert direct neurotoxic effects on neuronal cells and alter neuronal function. In addition, opiate administration after the virus infection has been established can exacerbate the neurotoxic properties of some of the HIV products. This can include the induction of pro-inflammatory mediators including both cytokines and chemokines and a loss of blood–brain barrier integrity. It is also clear that the activation of opioid receptors by agonists like morphine can initiate cross-talk interactions with other receptors, most notably the chemokine receptors CCR5 and CXCR4. Opiates clearly exert both pro- and anti-inflammatory activity, and our understanding of how these opposing influences are balanced in both the brain and periphery is rapidly advancing.

Keywords Opiate • Morphine • Heroin • Neurodegeneration • Blood–brain barrier • HIV-1 • Co-receptor • Heterologous desensitization • Glutamate • Chemokine

1 Introduction

Opiate drug abuse is a major contributing factor to the global AIDS epidemic. It is likely that over a third of the HIV infections in the USA can be linked to intravenous drug abuse, and global estimates suggest that almost 20 % of intravenous drug abusers are infected with HIV [1–4]. Chronic opioid abuse is a growing problem, due in

T.J. Rogers, Ph.D. (✉)
Center for Inflammation, Translational and Clinical Lung Research,
Temple University School of Medicine, 3500 N. Broad Street, Philadelphia, PA 19140, USA
e-mail: rogerst@temple.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_22, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

part to the increase in the misuse of prescription opioid drugs in the USA [3]. Opioid abuse is associated with a decline in resistance to a number of opportunistic infections, and both direct and indirect processes are responsible for these immunosuppressive effects (reviewed in [5–7]). Work reported by a number of investigators, based on both clinical and laboratory research, has documented the capacity of heroin (or morphine) to inhibit adaptive and innate immune responses [5, 6, 8–10]. Moreover, experimental animal research shows that opioid administration leads to an increase in susceptibility to a number of infectious agents, including *Candida albicans*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, herpes virus, murine leukemia virus, and *Toxoplasma gondii* [11–19]. However, the effect of chronic opioid administration on resistance to HIV infection is less clear. Experimental animal studies carried out with SIV have provided conflicting results, and this is almost certainly due, in part, to inconsistencies in the properties of the viral strain and the dose of morphine administered [20–23].

It is important to recognize that the immunosuppressive activity of the opioids is not universal, since it is clear that these drugs can have strong pro-inflammatory properties in certain circumstances. For example, current evidence suggests that opiates promote the neuropathology which can be associated with HIV infection by increasing the toxicity of some of the HIV proteins, particularly in the brain [24]. The neurotoxicity of the opiates is likely due to an elevation in the expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines in the brain [24, 25]. There is also evidence that opioid administration results in the degradation of the integrity of the blood–brain barrier (BBB), which may promote the exposure of the brain to additional pro-inflammatory cytokines which may more easily pass across the BBB [24, 26]. These studies are consistent with clinical evidence which suggests that opiate abuse leads to higher rates of encephalopathy in HIV-infected patients, compared to infected nondrug abusers [27, 28].

2 Opiates and Opioid Receptors

Opium, derived from the seedpods of *Papaver somniferum*, has been utilized for medicinal purposes since prehistoric times. Heroin, or diacetylmorphine, is chemically synthesized from opium and is one of the common opiates employed by intravenous drug abusers. Heroin is metabolized to morphine, 6-monoacetylmorphine, morphine-6-β-D-glucuronide, and morphine-3-β-D-glucuronide. While morphine is utilized widely as an analgesic and is the major bioactive heroin metabolite, several of the metabolites also possess opiate activity [29]. Endogenous opioid peptides, including endomorphins 1 and 2, leu- and met-enkephalin, and dynorphin, are produced in both the brain and in the periphery, and levels of opioid peptides appear to increase in response to inflammatory stimuli [30]. The regulation of endogenous peptide expression in the periphery by leukocytes is not well defined, and this information is important for our understanding of the regulation of the immune system by opioids.

There are three opioid receptors, and these are designated μ-, κ-, and δ-opioid receptors (MOR, KOR, and DOR) [5, 31]. Each of these receptors is expressed

within the central and peripheral nervous system, although the relative expression may vary depending on the specific tissue site. The opioid receptors are also expressed by leukocytes, and molecular analysis of the opioid receptors expressed by leukocytes shows they are identical to those expressed in the CNS [32–34]. Experimental work on the modulation of the immune response is often conducted with one or more synthetic opioids, and these can have the advantage of being more receptor selective and/or possess a higher affinity for the respective opioid receptor type. The experimental use of these agonists can offer a major advantage in conducting experiments to understand the role of specific opioid receptors in the immune response, since opioid drugs of abuse are not highly receptor selective. For example, morphine has predominant binding activity for MOR but also activates both KOR and DOR. This means that the effects induced by morphine may be mediated by combinations of opioid receptor types. This can represent a critical issue since MOR and KOR can mediate opposing activities for cells of the immune system [35, 36].

3 Direct Mechanisms of Neurotoxicity of Opioids

The μ-opioids, particularly with chronic administration, can manifest detectable neurotoxic activity in the absence of other toxic stimuli. The overt toxicity of morphine appears to be modest [37], but it should be noted that there is evidence that this μ-opioid, and others, can directly induce neurotoxic effects. Mu opioids including both morphine and fentanyl exert direct toxic effects on Purkinje cells in vitro, and fentanyl administration to rats in vivo induces damage to the limbic system and exacerbates cerebral ischemia in the forebrain [38–40]. Finally, μ-opioids exert a proapoptotic effect when combined at relatively low doses with various other apoptotic agents [41–45]. There is evidence of astrogliosis in heroin abusers [46], and the dopaminergic function of tyrosine hydroxylase terminals in the nucleus accumbens is inhibited [47]. Chronic morphine or heroin administration to rodents results in reduced striatal levels of synaptic dopamine and dopamine transporter [48–50]. These effects in the brain have been associated with the accumulation of perivascular infiltrates of macrophages and lymphocytes, suggesting that at least a part of the toxicity in these studies was the result of a low level of inflammatory activity in regions of brain tissue. Of course, other mechanisms are almost certainly involved in the manifestation of the gliosis just described, including the recent observation of hyperphosphorylated tau in the hippocampal neurons of heroin abusers [51, 52].

Opioids may promote toxic effects in the brain by inducing a pro-inflammatory response. This is somewhat counterintuitive, since opioid administration has been well documented to exert immunosuppressive activity (reviewed in [5]). However, an evaluation of published work from a number of investigators shows that opioid receptor activation can exert pleomorphic effects on the immune system, particularly with respect to the inflammatory response. Studies to determine the effects of morphine, and other μ-opioids, on the production of pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokines have produced conflicting results, and this is almost certainly due to the

highly variable experimental systems employed for these studies (reviewed in [5, 36]). For example, morphine administration results in a reduction in the expression of interferon γ (IFNγ) and interleukin-2 (IL), cytokines that are critical for both acute inflammatory responses and adaptive immunity [53, 54]. Roy and her colleagues [55–57] working with both human blood leukocytes and murine splenocytes have shown that morphine polarizes toward a Th2 response, which would be expected to be less inflammatory. Sacerdote and her colleagues [58] have studied the effects of subcutaneous morphine administration on peritoneal macrophage function and reported a reduction in both baseline and lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-induced levels of IL-1β, tumor necrosis factor-α (TNFα), and IL-12. Recent work has also shown that morphine inhibits the expression of TNFα and IL-6 produced by human monocytes in response to bacterial peptidoglycan, but these effects required high concentrations of the opioid (10–100 μM) [59].

In contrast to these results, there are several reports which show that morphine, or other μ-opioids, induces the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines. Peng et al. [60] have reported an increase in the expression of both IL-12 and TNFα from murine peritoneal macrophages following morphine administration. These results are consistent with results with relatively low doses of morphine which show an increase in the expression of the pro-inflammatory cytokines IL-6 and TNFα, an effect which was due to the activation of the highly pro-inflammatory transcription factor NF-κB [61]. The latter results are particularly interesting in that the same investigation suggested that high morphine doses are inhibitory, suggesting that pharmacological doses of this drug may promote a more pro-inflammatory immune activity.

Morphine and other μ-opioids have been reported to upregulate NF-κB activity in neuronal cells. Treatment of rat cerebral cortex neurons with the MOR-selective agonist [D-ala^2, *N*-Me-Phe^4, Gly-ol^5]enkephalin (DAMGO) induces NF-κB activation [62], and morphine treatment of the NT2-N neuronal cell line induced NF-κB promoter activity [63]. The activation of NF-κB has significant implications since it is critical for the expression of a large number of pro-inflammatory cytokines, including IL-1β, IL-6, and TNFα, and the chemokines CXCL8, CCL2, and CCL5 [64–70]. Both morphine [61] and the endogenous μ-opioids endomorphin 1 and endomorphin 2 [71] have been shown to upregulate NF-κB activity in monocyte/macrophage cell populations. More recently, our laboratory has reported the upregulation of NF-κB functional activity following administration of nanomolar concentrations of DAMGO to primary human peripheral blood leukocytes and MOR-transfected HEK293 cells [72]. Moreover, we found that the induction of NF-κB activity was essential for the opioid induction of the pro-inflammatory chemokine CCL2. Finally, the latter studies showed that the MOR-initiated signaling pathway for the induction of NF-κB is dependent on the activation of PKCζ, and treatment with a PKCζ-specific pseudosubstrate inhibitor blocks both the MOR-induced activation of NF-κB and the induction of CCL2 expression. Our studies have shown that the activation of MOR initiates a signaling pathway which results in the potent activation of PKCζ, and this atypical protein kinase C is involved in regulating multiple leukocyte functional activities [72, 73]. Previous studies have shown that PKCζ directly phosphorylates IKKβ, activating IKKβ, leading to the degradation of IκB [74, 75].

Morphine also induces the expression of TGFβ [76] in human peripheral blood leukocytes, and while this cytokine exhibits pleiotropic activities for the immune system, it is predominantly immunosuppressive. Given the immunosuppressive nature of this cytokine, it is possible that at least some of the reported negative effects of morphine on cytokine expression may be mediated by the production of TGFβ. We have found that TGFβ expression is induced following DAMGO administration to either human peripheral blood leukocytes or purified blood monocytes [77]. Our studies have shown that DAMGO also induces expression of both CCL5 and CXCR4 by human peripheral blood T cells and monocytes [78, 79], and we have recently shown that the upregulation of both CCL5 and CXCR4 is dependent on the initial production of TGFβ by these cell populations [77]. Moreover, these studies showed that both T cells and monocytes respond to TGFβ treatment by upregulating CCL5 and CXCR4 expression. These results are interesting in view of the anti-inflammatory effects of TGFβ, since this cytokine is necessary for the upregulation of a pro-inflammatory chemokine (CCL5) and a potentially pro-inflammatory chemokine receptor (CXCR4).

In addition to the potential pro-inflammatory effects of morphine, this opioid has been shown to promote neurodegeneration by weakening the integrity of the blood–brain barrier (BBB). Mahajan et al. [24], working with an in vitro BBB model, have shown that morphine inhibits the expression of the tight-junction zona occludin (ZO) proteins, ZO-1 and occludin, and increases the expression of junctional adhesion molecule (JAM)-1, leading to an increase in BBB permeability. These studies also showed that morphine induces an increase in the transmigration of peripheral blood leukocytes, suggesting the potential for increased traffic of inflammatory leukocytes into the brain with morphine administration. More recent studies have shown that morphine induces the expression of platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) from brain microvascular endothelial cells in an in vitro model of the BBB [80]. This cytokine is a potent mitogen, exhibits chemoattractant activity, is highly pro-fibrotic, and has been reported to impair BBB integrity during ischemic stroke [81, 82]. The mechanism of BBB impairment mediated by PDGF is not clear, but it is known that PDGF is preferentially produced within the immune system by alternatively activated (M2) macrophages [83].

4 Neurodegeneration Mediated by Opiates in Association with HIV

A review of the effects of HIV infection, or the impact of HIV products, on the process of neurodegeneration is beyond the scope of this review. These issues will be discussed at length in other chapters of this book. However, the intersection between the neurodegenerative activity of opiates and HIV products will be discussed.

There is growing evidence that the combination of HIV infection and opiate drug abuse creates a heightened level of neurodegeneration compared with HIV or opiate use alone. Of course, mu opiates are well documented to alter the functional activity of neurons, microglia, astrocytes, neuronal precursors, and oligodendrocytes [84–99]. This is not altogether surprising, since each of these cell populations expresses MOR,

albeit with diverse levels of expression in the various regions of the brain. However, the combination of HIV infection (and the release of HIV products into the brain milieu), with mu opiates, appears to target primarily the astrocytes and microglia and induce much greater pro-inflammatory and neurotoxic activity (reviewed in [100]).

4.1 Glial and Neuronal Cell Populations

Microglia play a critical role in HIV neuropathogenesis, and extensive activation of these cells (and infiltrating perivascular macrophages) is a common feature of the neurodegeneration associated with HIV infection [101, 102]. It is well known that the presence of activated macrophages and/or microglia correlates with the severity of the HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders (HAND); in fact, this correlation is stronger than the number of HIV-infected cells or viral load [103–106]. Both macrophages and microglia are subject to regulation mediated through opioid receptors, and these cells can exhibit substantial changes in functional activity with opiate administration. Experimental animal work has shown that systemic treatment with morphine induces an increase in the infiltration at sites of intrastriatal Tat injection [89]. These results are in agreement with published findings which show an association between increased numbers of microglia in the gray matter of the thalamus and hippocampus and encephalitis in opiate abusers [107]. Moreover, the accumulation of microglia expressing major histocompatibility complex type II (MHC II) and CD68 is increased in opiate abusers, when compared with non-abusers [108].

Astrocytes perform an essential set of functions in the development and maintenance of the brain and are important for the integrity of the BBB. Astrocytes are not susceptible to productive HIV infection (unlike macrophages and microglia), but these cells are important targets for the neurotoxic products of HIV. Astrocytes can exacerbate the neurodegenerative effects of HIV products by releasing mediators with potential toxicity such as nitric oxide, neurotransmitters, and pro-inflammatory cytokines, and collectively these serve to promote the HIV-mediated neuropathology. Of course, astrocytes also express opioid receptors, and morphine can augment, or accelerate, the neurotoxic activity of certain HIV products. For example, morphine administration together with HIV Tat can result in augmented cytokine and chemokine expression and, potentially, astrocyte death [90, 99]. Astrocytes are a major source of several of the chemokines within the brain, and opiate modulation of the expression of these mediators is an important aspect of the intersection between opioid receptors and the inflammatory response. The effects of opiates in combination with either HIV infection, or HIV products, will be discussed below.

The neurodegeneration observed in association with HIV infection leads to synaptodendritic injury which resembles the damage observed in other neurological diseases including Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis [109–111]. The normal synaptodendritic network is characterized by highly complex and branching dendrites. However, in HIV encephalitis, the dendrites exhibit pruning, with dendritic beading, atrophy, and vacuolization [112].

Nevertheless, while this damage is typically sublethal, it is likely to contribute to the neurobehavioral deficits which are characteristic of HAND [113, 114]. At the same time, neuronal loss is a characteristic of HIV-associated neuropathology, and this is likely due to bystander effects mediated by reactive oxygen species and other neurotoxic products released from astrocytes and microglia [115–118]. Nevertheless, recent reports suggest that opiate abuse exacerbates the HIV-induced synaptodendritic damage and promotes the development of more severe neurobehavioral abnormalities [100, 119]. It should be pointed out that several reports have described the ability of MOR agonists to lessen the complexity of dendrites and diminish the density of dendritic spines [38, 120, 121].

Neurons appear to be directly susceptible to the HIV products Tat, gp120, and vpr, and the release of these products into the brain interstitium can result in neuronal damage [122–126]. Since neurons are not a source of productive HIV infection, the source of these products is primarily perivascular macrophages and microglial cell populations. This serves to highlight the fact that HIV-associated neurodegeneration is the product of glial transmission of neurotoxic products to the neuron [100]. Because the microglia express opioid receptors, these cells respond to treatment with exogenous opioid agonists and exhibit altered glial cell function. Recent reports suggest that opiate exposure reduces the level of HIV products which are required to trigger more pronounced neuropathology [87, 127]. Moreover, these studies show that morphine administration exacerbates the neurotoxicity of HIV Tat and gp120.

It is clear that μ-opioid agonists can also promote a neurodegenerative outcome through indirect effects mediated through changes in the levels of various neurotransmitters. For example, HIV Tat activates astrocytes leading to potent cytokine and inflammatory mediator release leading to restrictive glutamate uptake [90, 128]. HIV gp120 induces a similar astrocyte inflammatory response, and the combination of either of these HIV products and morphine enhances these responses, exacerbates the glutamate release, and reduces the glutamate excitotoxic threshold [129, 130]. In addition, several drugs of abuse, including the opiates, induce an increase in the levels of dopamine in the CNS. Morphine induces a twofold increase in levels of dopamine in the nucleus accumbens and caudate nucleus in rats [131]. Recent reports suggest that an elevated dopamine level, or administration of exogenous dopamine, alters monocyte/macrophage and T cell function [132–134]. Moreover, recent work suggests that dopamine administration promotes the replication of HIV in primary human macrophages [133]. In addition, the administration of either L-DOPA (the precursor of dopamine) or selegiline (inhibitor of dopamine catabolism) to SIV-infected macaques increases the SIV load in the brain [135, 136].

4.2 Inflammation and Immune Activation

As mentioned above, the capacity of MOR agonists to modulate the expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines has been the subject of a great deal of research (reviewed in [5]). The influence of opiates on chemokine expression is particularly important

because these chemotactic cytokines are likely to be critical in the development of HIV-associated neurodegeneration. On the one hand, these factors are important for the traffic of infected monocytes across the BBB, and these cytokines may also promote the migration of infected T cells to lymph nodes to promote contact with noninfected target cells. The chemokines CCL2, CCL3, CCL4, CCL5, and CX3CL1 are chemokines that have been identified as contributors to the traffic of monocytes across the BBB, and CX3CL1 is particularly important for the migration of CD16+ monocytes that are highly susceptible to HIV infection [118, 137]. This relatively minor monocyte subpopulation that expresses both CD14 and CD16 has been reported to expand during HIV infection [138–143], and increased percentages of these cells correlate with HAD [144]. Monocytes and macrophages expressing high levels of CD16+ have been reported to be preferentially infected with HIV in brain tissue at autopsy [137]. In addition, the expression of the HIV co-receptor CCR5 is elevated on the CD16+ monocyte subset [145]. Recent analysis of monocyte subsets suggests that CD14+ CD16 cells exhibit a greater pro-inflammatory capacity, and the CD14+ 16+ cells possess strong responsiveness to viral pattern recognition epitopes and perform "patrolling" activity [146].

It is widely accepted that CCL2 is critically involved in directing the migration of infected monocytes across the BBB [147, 148]. With the accumulating inflammation in the underlying brain tissue, there is activation of the vascular endothelial cells in the BBB and secretion of IL-6 [149]. It is likely that the IL-6 produced at the BBB accelerates the transit of monocytes across the BBB. Both the virus infection and the accumulation of viral products induce elevated CCL2 expression from both the perivascular macrophages and astrocytes [150]. With greater accumulation of infected monocytes and macrophages, there is an expanding source of additional CCL2, resulting in biological amplification of the neuroinflammatory response.

As mentioned above, we have examined the effect of opiate administration on the expression of CCL2 by human peripheral blood leukocytes and purified monocytes [72, 77, 78]. In additional analysis, we also observed a significant induction of the chemokines CCL5 and CXCL10 following mu opiate treatment in vitro, and we suggest that the expression of these chemokines could promote the trafficking of noninfected target monocytes or T cells to the site of infected cell populations [78]. These results are consistent with more recent studies with mice which show that the combination of morphine and HIV Tat treatment of astrocytes upregulates the expression of the chemokines CCL2, CCL3, and CCL5 [88, 90]. These results suggest that the accumulation of Tat in the brain drives a pro-inflammatory chemokine response, and this response is accelerated by the administration of morphine. Additional studies showed that the morphine exacerbation of Tat-induced CCL2 expression is diminished in CCL5-knockout mice, suggesting that the regulation of CCL2 expression is mediated through a CCL5-dependent cooperative expression process [96]. It should be pointed out that these results are in contrast to a report showing downregulation of the expression of both CCL2 and CCL4 following morphine treatment of normal human astrocytes [151]. Additional work will be required to explain the divergent results in these studies.

Inflammation is a fundamental component of the neurodegenerative processes that are responsible for HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders. It is becoming apparent that elements of systemic inflammation are an important part of HIV pathogenesis, both in the CNS and the periphery [152–155]. Recent studies show that systemic inflammation promotes the development of HAND, and the augmentation of the pathology in the CNS can be independent of HIV replication [118, 147, 156]. For example, a recent analysis of a cohort of 922 HIV-infected subjects (the Study of Fat Redistribution and Metabolic Change in HIV infection [FRAM] study cohort) has shown that the pro-inflammatory biomarkers fibrinogen and C reactive protein (CRP) are significant and independent predictors of mortality [155]. Indeed, this study showed that these measures of inflammation retained predictive significance independent of circulating CD4 counts. A second study with the Strategies for Management of Antiretroviral Therapy trial showed a significant association for the inflammatory biomarkers IL-6, D-dimer, and CRP with mortality [157]. The persistent evidence of immune activation in these subjects, in the current highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) era, has been proposed as a significant contributor to disease progression [158]. The fact that chronic systemic inflammation is strongly associated with morbidity and mortality suggests that anti-inflammatory therapeutics may be beneficial as an adjunct to the standard ARV therapy currently in use.

The immune activation state that occurs with HIV infection and neurodegeneration is due in large part to the microbial translocation that is now believed to be common in these patients. Results from studies reported by Brenchley et al. [159] suggest that during HIV infection, a breakdown in the follicle-associated epithelium in the gut occurs, and this leads to translocation of gut flora through the gut wall, resulting in entry of microbial products into the bloodstream. This process is associated with depletion of leukocytes from the Peyer's patches and a loss of lymphocytes from the lamina propria and mucosa-associated tissue (MALT). In healthy adults, approximately 80 % of the total lymphocytes of the body are contained within the MALT, and depletion of cells from these lymphoid structures can result in a substantial reduction of T cells following infection [160]. Recent analysis has shown that circulating LPS, LPS-binding protein, and sCD14 levels correlate significantly with progression of the disease, and monocytes obtained from these individuals exhibit a refractory response to LPS stimulation in vitro, suggesting that these cells had been stimulated in vivo with LPS [159, 161, 162]. It is now apparent that the toll-like receptor family is an important contributor to the persistent immune activation. This is not surprising given the entry of microbial components into the bloodstream following the gastrointestinal damage, but in addition, viral toll ligands also participate in the activation of TLR7 [163, 164]. Work with mice has demonstrated that sustained activation of TLR7 induces a state of chronic immune activation which resembles immune activation associated with HIV infection [165].

Studies reported by Hillburger et al. [166] have shown that mice treated with morphine using slow-release pellets develop bacterial sepsis as a likely result of microbial translocation. This study is particularly significant given the critical role for microbial translocation in the process of immune activation observed with HIV infection. However, this study did not examine the combined effect of morphine and

HIV infection on the process of microbial translocation, and additional work on this issue would be valuable for our understanding of the influence of opiate use on immune status in HIV-infected patients.

The immune system is programmed to control the development of an inflammatory response, in part, through the production of immunosuppressive mediators such as IL-10 and TGFβ. Indeed, both TGFβ1 and IL-10 are upregulated in the CNS of patients who suffer with neurodegenerative diseases such as multiple sclerosis and Alzheimer's disease, and TGFβ is upregulated in the CNS of patients with AIDS [167–170]. Analysis of brain tissue shows that TGFβ is readily detectable in macrophages, astrocytes, and microglial cells in the frontal cortex in patients with AIDS [170, 171]. The production of TGFβ in the CNS is considered anti-inflammatory and protective since there is evidence that it attenuates the level of astrocytosis which is characteristic of brain tissue in patients with HIV-associated dementia. In vitro analysis with astrocyte cultures shows that TGFβ inhibits cell proliferation and reduces glutamine synthetase [170]. Administration of TGFβ to microglial cell cultures results in downregulation of proliferation in response to either GM-CSF or M-CSF, and TGFβ inhibits the microglial expression of a number of pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines including IL-1, TNFα, CCL5, and CXCL8 [170, 171]. Moreover, TGFβ appears to inhibit expression of both complement factor 3 and inducible nitric oxide synthase, two potentially neurotoxic factors [172–175], and there are several reports which show that TGFβ inhibits microglial free radical production [176, 177]. Finally, TGFβ has been shown to inhibit HIV gp120-induced neuronal death, as well as calcium overloading, providing a degree of neuroprotection in HIV-infected brain tissue [178].

Based on reports from several investigators, the activation of MOR by opioid agonists appears to target TGFβ expression in leukocytes. For example, morphine treatment of human peripheral blood leukocytes downregulates the LPS- or PHA-induced expression of TNFα, and this effect is attenuated with the addition of anti-TGFβ antibodies [179]. In addition, morphine administration to human peripheral blood leukocytes upregulates TGFβ expression in response to either PHA or LPS [76]. More recently we observed that both human peripheral blood mononuclear cells and isolated peripheral blood monocytes upregulate TGFβ expression following activation of MOR [77]. It should be pointed out that TGFβ can exert pro-inflammatory activity in certain circumstances. For example, we have recently reported that mu opiates induce the expression of the pro-inflammatory chemokine CCL5, and the induction of expression is dependent on the initial expression of TGFβ [77]. In addition, TGFβ induces chemoattractant activity for monocytes and upregulates the expression of LFA-1 and the fibronectin receptor on monocytes [180–182]. These effects would be expected to promote adhesion of monocytes to endothelial cells and potentially promote traffic of monocytes across the BBB. Finally, there is evidence that TGFβ can induce monocyte expression of several pro-inflammatory cytokines [180, 183, 184]. While it is clear that the dominant role of TGFβ is to dampen the inflammatory response, it should be appreciated that the network of cytokines both in the periphery and in the brain can be quite complex, and TGFβ may exert a combination of effects as a part of a neurodegenerative disease process.

4.3 Interactions Between Opioid and Chemokine Receptors

It is well established that the chemokine receptors CCR5 and CXCR4 are the major HIV-1 co-receptors, and HIV strains can be distinguished based on the use of these co-receptors for target cell attachment and infection. The gp120 region of the HIV gp160 envelope protein possesses the capacity for binding to CD4, and one or more of the co-receptors, and this dictates cellular tropism for the virus. Virtually all HIV isolates from brain tissue use CCR5 rather than CXCR4 for viral attachment and are predominantly monocyte/macrophage tropic (R5 strains). Both of these chemokine receptors, and their chemokine ligands, are constitutively expressed in the brain.

Curiously, it appears that the expression of neuronal CXCR4 is upregulated, while the expression of CCR5 is reduced, in patients with HAND [185]. Both CXCR4 and CXCL12 are critical contributors to the development of the brain and play important roles in the maturation and maintenance of neuronal function in both the developing and adult brain [186, 187]. In the mature adult brain, CXCL12 has been shown to downregulate the expression of proapoptotic pathways and enhance neuronal survival [188, 189]. The role of CXCR4 in maintaining neuronal homeostasis is also mediated by modulation of the subunit composition of the NMDA receptor. Activation of CXCR4 leads to a reduction in the NR2B subunit of the NMDA receptor, and this substantially reduces excitotoxicity [190]. While X4 gp120 binds and activates CXCR4, the resulting signaling pathway is not identical to that which is induced by CXCL12 [191, 192]. Most notably, gp120 induces signaling elements which promote apoptosis and lead to a greater level of neuronal damage and cell death [193, 194].

Chronic morphine administration has recently been shown to inhibit the expression of the MAP kinases ERK1/2 and potentially attenuate the antiapoptotic activity of these kinases [195]. Moreover, morphine induces apoptosis in several regions of the brain, including both the frontal cortex and hippocampus [196]. Morphine has also been reported to significantly diminish dendritic spine complexity by reducing dendrite length and spine density [121, 197, 198]. Recent studies suggest that morphine mediates these effects on dendrite structure by attenuating the activity of the neurogenic differentiation 1 transcription factor (NeuroD), which is required for maintenance of dendritic spine stability [199]. As mentioned above, dendritic injury is a common feature of HAND, and evidence that morphine promotes dendritic simplification has significant implications.

The opioid receptors have the capacity to interact with the chemokine receptors that are expressed both within the CNS and in the periphery. We have reported studies which show that the activation of MOR leads to a significant upregulation of CCR5 and CXCR4 expression by human peripheral blood monocytes and T cell lymphoblasts [79]. This increase in the expression of CCR5 and CXCR4 was associated with an increase in susceptibility to infection with R5 and X4 strains of HIV-1, respectively [79]. These results are consistent with earlier work which has demonstrated that upregulation of co-receptor expression results in a corresponding increase in HIV replication [200, 201]. Treatment with morphine has also been reported to upregulate the expression of the chemokine receptors CCR2b, CCR3, and CCR5 by normal human astrocytes [151].

In addition to the capacity of the opiates to regulate the *expression* of chemokine receptors, there is considerable evidence that chemokine receptor *function* can be regulated through the action of opioid receptors. One of the mechanisms for the regulation of G protein-coupled receptor (GPCR) function is heterologous desensitization, a process in which the activation of one GPCR by its ligand results in the cross-inactivation of a second (unrelated) GPCR in the absence of the ligand for the second receptor (reviewed in [202]). Our laboratory and others have demonstrated that MOR can mediate cross-desensitization of several chemokine receptors, including CCR1, CCR2, CCR5, CXCR1, and CXCR2 [203, 204]. The biochemical basis for these interactions involves the sequential activation of multiple kinases, which leads to the activation of one or more members of the second messenger-dependent kinase family [202]. In the signaling pathway between MOR and CCR5, we have found that MOR activates PKCζ and this kinase phosphorylates and inactivates CCR5 within a period of less than 10 min [73]. The desensitization of CCR5 induced by MOR inhibits CCR5 function as measured by loss of chemotactic activity or a calcium mobilization response. In addition, HIV co-receptor function for cross-desensitized CCR5 is also lost when analyzed with R5 (but not X4) strains of HIV-1 [204].

Examination of the cross-talk between a number of GPCRs has led to the conclusion that there is a hierarchy which defines the interactions between these receptors [202]. In general, some GPCRs are strong cross-desensitizers but tend to be less sensitive as targets for the desensitization. On the other hand, certain GPCRs exhibit the opposite characteristics. For example, the formyl peptide receptor (FPR) is a relatively strong desensitizer, but this GPCR is difficult to cross-desensitize. Our laboratory has examined the interaction between MOR and CXCR4, and we have found that MOR is unable to cross-desensitize this receptor through this second messenger-dependent kinase pathway [204]. However, the Meucci laboratory [194] has described a cross-talk process in neuronal cells in which the activation of MOR results in inactivation of CXCR4, based on the loss of CXCR4 signaling activity. Their studies showed that the cross-desensitization induced through MOR resulted in the loss of the neuroprotective activity of CXCR4 in NMDA neurotoxicity studies. These results suggest that the cross-talk induced through activation of MOR would be very likely to contribute to the neurodegeneration associated with HIV infection.

We have reported results which show that the cross-desensitization between MOR and some susceptible chemokine receptors is bidirectional [205]. These studies show that MOR is cross-desensitized by CCR2, CCR5, CCR7, CX3CR1, and CXCR4, but not by CXCR1 or CXCR2. Moreover, the activation of CCR1, CCR5, or CXCR4 results in the loss of MOR-mediated analgesic activity in vivo [205–207]. These results suggest that in situations where the levels of pro-inflammatory chemokines are elevated in the brain, the threshold for sensation of pain is reduced. Clearly the neuroinflammation that is associated with HIV infection involves significantly increased levels of many pro-inflammatory chemokines. It is well known that heightened pain sensitivity (hyperalgesia) is associated with systemic inflammatory "flu-like" symptoms that include joint and muscle pain, fever, and somnolence [208, 209].

Finally, the results from our laboratory indicate that the MOR-induced cross-desensitization of CCR5 is apparent within 10–15 min and persists for at least 4–6 h. As mentioned above, this results in a loss of CCR5 co-receptor activity and a substantial reduction in susceptibility to R5 HIV infection [204]. The cross-desensitization of CCR5 can be prolonged if the MOR activation is sustained, but with acute opioid administration, the loss of co-receptor function is lost for the first several hours. This is followed by an *increase* in co-receptor function and increased R5 HIV susceptibility at 24–48 h [79], and this persists for several days. This suggests that the impact of opiates on R5 HIV susceptibility is likely to be complex, with confounding influences occurring at the level of co-receptor function.

5 Conclusion

The administration of opiates in the drug abuse population, in the context of HIV infection, promotes most of the neurodegenerative processes that take place as a part of the underlying viral infection. The brain would appear to be particularly susceptible to these effects because of the abundant number of cells which express MOR at relatively high levels. While opiates like morphine can exacerbate (or attenuate, depending on the conditions) systemic inflammatory processes, the data for the effects of these opiates would appear to be much less certain for the brain. The cells of the immune system in the periphery express much lower levels of the opioid receptors, and the impact of opiate administration is much more variable outside of the CNS. However, there are still many issues which need to be resolved in terms of the influence of opiate abuse on the development and progression of HIV-associated neurodegeneration. Of course, analysis of the progression of the disease in this organ is difficult because of the absence of tissue for longitudinal studies. Moreover, the drug-abusing population is very diverse, and controlled studies are extremely difficult because of the absence of subjects who do not abuse additional drugs. In fact, perhaps the most important questions that remain to be addressed will involve analysis of the effects of drug combinations, since this situation is much more relevant to the actual condition of patients. The most common drug combinations which should be studied are the combinations of opiates with tobacco or alcohol. The effects of these drug combinations on neurodegeneration in the context of HIV infection are almost entirely unknown.

References

1. Mathers BM, Degenhardt L, Ali H, Wiessing L, Hickman M, Mattick RP, et al. HIV prevention, treatment, and care services for people who inject drugs: a systematic review of global, regional, and national coverage. Lancet. 2010;375:1014–28.
2. Vlahov D, Robertson AM, Strathdee SA. Prevention of HIV infection among injection drug users in resource-limited settings. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;50 Suppl 3:S114–21.

3. Compton WM, Volkow ND. Abuse of prescription drugs and the risk of addiction. Drug Alcohol Depend. 2006;83 Suppl 1:S4–7.
4. Donahoe RM, Vlahov D. Opiates as potential cofactors in progression of HIV-1 infections to AIDS. J Neuroimmunol. 1998;83:77–87.
5. Finley MJ, Happel CM, Kaminsky DE, Rogers TJ. Opioid and nociceptin receptors regulate cytokine and cytokine receptor expression. Cell Immunol. 2008;252:146–54.
6. McCarthy L, Wetzel M, Sliker JK, Eisenstein TK, Rogers TJ. Opioids, opioid receptors, and the immune response. Drug Alcohol Depend. 2001;62:111–23.
7. Dutta R, Roy S. Mechanism(s) involved in opioid drug abuse modulation of HAND. Curr HIV Res. 2012;10:469–77.
8. Madera-Salcedo IK, Cruz SL, Gonzalez-Espinosa C. Morphine decreases early peritoneal innate immunity responses in Swiss-Webster and C57BL6/J mice through the inhibition of mast cell TNF- release. J Neuroimmunol. 2011;232:101–7.
9. Novick DM, Ochshorn M, Ghali V, Croxson TS, Mercer WD, Chiorazzi N, et al. Natural killer cell activity and lymphocyte subsets in parenteral heroin abusers and long-term methadone maintenance patients. J Pharmacol Exp Therapeut. 1989;250:606–10.
10. Kreek MJ, Khuri E, Flomenberg N, Albeck H, Ochshorn M. Immune status of unselected methadone maintained former heroin addicts. Progress Clin Biol Res. 1990;328:445–8.
11. Roy S, Ninkovic J, Banerjee S, Charboneau RG, Das S, Dutta R, et al. Opioid drug abuse and modulation of immune function: consequences in the susceptibility to opportunistic infections. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2011;6:442–65.
12. Wang J, Barke RA, Charboneau R, Roy S. Morphine impairs host innate immune response and increases susceptibility to Streptococcus pneumoniae lung infection. J Immunol. 2005; 174:426–34.
13. MacFarlane AS, Peng X, Meissler Jr JJ, Rogers TJ, Geller EB, et al. Morphine increases susceptibility to oral Salmonella typhimurium infection. J Infect Dis. 2000;181:1350–8.
14. Tubaro E, Borelli G, Croce C, Cavallo G, Santiangeli C. Effect of morphine on resistance to infection. J Infect Dis. 1983;148:656–66.
15. Chao CC, Sharp BM, Pomeroy C, Filice GA, Peterson PK. Lethality of morphine in mice infected with Toxoplasma gondii. J Pharmacol Exp Therapeut. 1990;252:605–9.
16. Risdahl JM, Peterson PK, Chao CC, Pijoan C, Molitor TW. Effects of morphine dependence on the pathogenesis of swine herpesvirus infection. J Infect Dis. 1993;167:1281–7.
17. Starec M, Rouveix B, Sinet M, Chau F, Desforges B, Pocidalo JJ, et al. Immune status and survival of opiate- and cocaine-treated mice infected with Friend virus. J Pharmacol Exp Therapeut. 1991;259:745–50.
18. Wang J, Barke RA, Charboneau R, Schwendener R, Roy S. Morphine induces defects in early response of alveolar macrophages to Streptococcus pneumoniae by modulating TLR9-NF-kappa B signaling. J Immunol. 2008;180:3594–600.
19. Brack A, Rittner HL, Stein C. Immunosuppressive effects of opioids – clinical relevance. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2011;6:490–502.
20. Donahoe RM, O'Neil SP, Marsteller FA, Novembre FJ, Anderson DC, Lankford-Turner P, et al. Probable deceleration of progression of Simian AIDS affected by opiate dependency: studies with a rhesus macaque/SIVsmm9 model. JAIDS. 2009;50:241–9.
21. Chuang RY, Chuang LF, Li Y, Kung HF, Killam Jr KF. SIV mutations detected in morphine-treated Macaca mulatta following SIVmac239 infection. Adv Exp Med Biol. 1995;373:175–81.
22. Marcario JK, Riazi M, Adany I, Kenjale H, Fleming K, Marquis J, et al. Effect of morphine on the neuropathogenesis of SIVmac infection in Indian Rhesus Macaques. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2008;3:12–25.
23. Kumar R, Torres C, Yamamura Y, Rodriguez I, Martinez M, Staprans S, et al. Modulation by morphine of viral set point in rhesus macaques infected with simian immunodeficiency virus and simian-human immunodeficiency virus. J Virol. 2004;78:11425–8.

24. Mahajan SD, Aalinkeel R, Sykes DE, Reynolds JL, Bindukumar B, Fernandez SF, et al. Tight junction regulation by morphine and HIV-1 tat modulates blood-brain barrier permeability. J Clin Immunol. 2008;28:528–41.
25. Bokhari SM, Yao H, Bethel-Brown C, Fuwang P, Williams R, Dhillon NK, et al. Morphine enhances Tat-induced activation in murine microglia. J Neurovirol. 2009;15(3):219–28.
26. Lynch JL, Banks WA. Opiate modulation of IL-1alpha, IL-2, and TNF-alpha transport across the blood-brain barrier. Brain Behav Immun. 2008;22:1096–102.
27. Martinez AJ, Sell M, Mitrovics T, Stoltenburg-Didinger G, Iglesias-Rozas JR, Giraldo-Velasquez MA, et al. The neuropathology and epidemiology of AIDS. A Berlin experience. A review of 200 cases. Pathol Res Pract. 1995;191:427–43.
28. Bell JE, Donaldson YK, Lowrie S, McKenzie CA, Elton RA, Chiswick A, et al. Influence of risk group and zidovudine therapy on the development of HIV encephalitis and cognitive impairment in AIDS patients. Aids. 1996;10:493–9.
29. Platt DM, Grech DM, Rowlett JK, Spealman RD. Discriminative stimulus effects of morphine in squirrel monkeys: stimulants, opioids, and stimulant-opioid combinations. J Pharmacol Exp Therapeut. 1999;290:1092–100.
30. Stein C, Schafer M, Machelska H. Attacking pain at its source: new perspectives on opioids. Nat Med. 2003;9:1003–8.
31. Banerjee A, Strazza M, Wigdahl B, Pirrone V, Meucci O, Nonnemacher MR, et al. Role of mu-opioids as cofactors in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 disease progression and neuropathogenesis. J Neurovirol. 2011;17:291–302.
32. Belkowski SM, Zhu J, Liu-Chen LY, Eisenstein TK, Adler MW, et al. Sequence of kappa-opioid receptor cDNA in the R1.1 thymoma cell line. J Neuroimmunol. 1995;62:113–7.
33. Alicea C, Belkowski SM, Sliker JK, Zhu J, Liu-Chen LY, Eisenstein TK, et al. Characterization of kappa-opioid receptor transcripts expressed by T cells and macrophages. J Neuroimmunol. 1998;91:55–62.
34. Chuang TK, Killam Jr KF, Chuang LF, Kung HF, Sheng WS, et al. Mu opioid receptor gene expression in immune cells. Biochem Biophys Res Comm. 1995;216:922–30.
35. Bohn LM, Belcheva MM, Coscia CJ. Mu-opioid agonist inhibition of kappa-opioid receptor-stimulated extracellular signal-regulated kinase phosphorylation is dynamin-dependent in C6 glioma cells. J Neurochem. 2000;74:574–81.
36. Rogers TJ, Peterson PK. Opioid G protein-coupled receptors: signals at the crossroads of inflammation. Trends Immunol. 2003;24:116–21.
37. Rogers RD, Everitt BJ, Baldacchino A, Blackshaw AJ, Swainson R, Wynne K, et al. Dissociable deficits in the decision-making cognition of chronic amphetamine abusers, opiate abusers, patients with focal damage to prefrontal cortex, and tryptophan-depleted normal volunteers: evidence for monoaminergic mechanisms. Neuropsychopharmacology. 1999;20:322–39.
38. Hauser KF, Gurwell JA, Turbek CS. Morphine inhibits Purkinje cell survival and dendritic differentiation in organotypic cultures of the mouse cerebellum. Exp Neurol. 1994;130: 95–105.
39. Kofke WA, Garman RH, Stiller RL, Rose ME, Garman R. Opioid neurotoxicity: fentanyl dose-response effects in rats. Anesthesia Analgesia. 1996;83:1298–306.
40. Kofke WA, Garman RH, Garman R, Rose ME. Opioid neurotoxicity: fentanyl-induced exacerbation of cerebral ischemia in rats. Brain Res. 1999;818:326–34.
41. Singhal PC, Sharma P, Kapasi AA, Reddy K, Franki N, Gibbons N. Morphine enhances macrophage apoptosis. J Immunol. 1998;160:1886–93.
42. Nair MP, Schwartz SA, Polasani R, Hou J, Sweet A, Chadha KC. Immunoregulatory effects of morphine on human lymphocytes. Clin Diagn Lab Immunol. 1997;4:127–32.
43. Yin DL, Ren XH, Zheng ZL, Pu L, Jiang LZ, Ma L, et al. Etorphine inhibits cell growth and induces apoptosis in SK-N-SH cells: involvement of pertussis toxin-sensitive G proteins. Neurosci Res Suppl. 1997;29:121–7.
44. Singhal PC, Reddy K, Franki N, Sanwal V, Gibbons N. Morphine induces splenocyte apoptosis and enhanced mRNA expression of cathepsin-B. Inflammation. 1997;21:609–17.

45. Singhal PC, Kapasi AA, Reddy K, Franki N, Gibbons N, Ding G. Morphine promotes apoptosis in Jurkat cells. J Leuk Biol. 1999;66:650–8.
46. Buttner A. Review: the neuropathology of drug abuse. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 2011;37: 118–34.
47. Kish SJ, Kalasinsky KS, Derkach P, Schmunk GA, Guttman M, Ang L, et al. Striatal dopaminergic and serotonergic markers in human heroin users. Neuropsychopharmacology. 2001;24: 561–7.
48. Acquas E, Carboni E, Di CG. Profound depression of mesolimbic dopamine release after morphine withdrawal in dependent rats. Eur J Pharmacol. 1991;193:133–4.
49. Crippens D, Robinson TE. Withdrawal from morphine or amphetamine: different effects on dopamine in the ventral-medial striatum studied with microdialysis. Brain Res. 1994;650:56–62.
50. Simantov R. Chronic morphine alters dopamine transporter density in the rat brain: possible role in the mechanism of drug addiction. Neurosci Lett. 1993;163:121–4.
51. Anthony IC, Norrby KE, Dingwall T, Carnie FW, Millar T, Arango JC, et al. Predisposition to accelerated Alzheimer-related changes in the brains of human immunodeficiency virus negative opiate abusers. Brain. 2010;133:12–98.
52. Ramage SN, Anthony IC, Carnie FW, Busuttil A, Robertson R, Bell JE, et al. Hyperphosphorylated tau and amyloid precursor protein deposition is increased in the brains of young drug abusers. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 2005;31:439–48.
53. Peterson PK, Sharp B, Gekker G, Brummitt C, Keane WF. Opioid-mediated suppression of interferon-gamma production by cultured peripheral blood mononuclear cells. J Clin Invest. 1987;80:824–31.
54. Lysle DT, Coussons ME, Watts VJ, Bennett EH, Dykstra LA. Morphine-induced alterations of immune status: dose dependency, compartment specificity and antagonism by naltrexone. J Pharmacol Exp Therapeut. 1993;265:1071–8.
55. Roy S, Balasubramanian S, Sumandeep S, Charboneau R, Wang J, Melnyk D, et al. Morphine directs T cells toward T(H2) differentiation. Surgery. 2001;130:304–9.
56. Roy S, Wang J, Gupta S, Charboneau R, Loh HH, Barke RA. Chronic morphine treatment differentiates T helper cells to Th2 effector cells by modulating transcription factors GATA 3 and T-bet. J Neuroimmunol. 2004;147:78–81.
57. Roy S, Wang J, Kelschenbach J, Koodie L, Martin J. Modulation of immune function by morphine: implications for susceptibility to infection. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2006;1:77–89.
58. Martucci C, Franchi S, Lattuada D, Panerai AE, Sacerdote P. Differential involvement of RelB in morphine-induced modulation of chemotaxis, NO, and cytokine production in murine macrophages and lymphocytes. J Leuk Biol. 2007;81:344–54.
59. Bonnet MP, Beloeil H, Benhamou D, Mazoit JX, Asehnoune K. The mu opioid receptor mediates morphine-induced tumor necrosis factor and interleukin-6 inhibition in toll-like receptor 2-stimulated monocytes. Anesthesia Analgesia. 2008;106:1142–9.
60. Peng X, Mosser DM, Adler MW, Rogers TJ, Meissler Jr JJ, Eisenstein TK. Morphine enhances interleukin-12 and the production of other pro-inflammatory cytokines in mouse peritoneal macrophages. J Leuk Biol. 2000;68:723–8.
61. Roy S, Cain KJ, Chapin RB, Charboneau RG, Barke RA. Morphine modulates NF kappa B activation in macrophages. Biochem Biophys Res Comm. 1998;245:392–6.
62. Hou YN, Vlaskovska M, Cebers G, Kasakov L, Liljequist S, Terenius L, et al. A mu-receptor opioid agonist induces AP-1 and NF-kappa B transcription factor activity in primary cultures of rat cortical neurons. Neurosci Lett. 1996;212:159–62.
63. Wang X, Douglas SD, Commons KG, Pleasure DE, Lai J, Ho C, et al. A non-peptide substance P antagonist (CP-96,345) inhibits morphine-induced NF-kappa B promoter activation in human NT2-N neurons. J Neurosci Res. 2004;75:544–53.
64. Kuprash DV, Udalova IA, Turetskaya RL, Rice NR, Nedospasov SA. Conserved kappa B element located downstream of the tumor necrosis factor alpha gene: distinct NF-kappa B binding pattern and enhancer activity in LPS activated murine macrophages. Oncogene. 1995;11:97–106.

65. Martin T, Cardarelli PM, Parry GC, Felts KA, Cobb RR. Cytokine induction of monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 gene expression in human endothelial cells depends on the cooperative action of NF-kappa B and AP-1. Eur J Immunol. 1997;27:1091–7.
66. Moriuchi H, Moriuchi M, Fauci AS. Nuclear factor-kappa B potently up-regulates the promoter activity of RANTES, a chemokine that blocks HIV infection. J Immunol. 1997;158: 3483–91.
67. Mukaida N, Okamoto S, Ishikawa Y, Matsushima K. Molecular mechanism of interleukin-8 gene expression. J Leuk Biol. 1994;56:554–8.
68. Stein B, Baldwin Jr AS. Distinct mechanisms for regulation of the interleukin-8 gene involve synergism and cooperativity between C/EBP and NF-kappa B. Mol Cell Biol. 1993;13:7191–8.
69. Hiscott J, Marois J, Garoufalis J, D'Addario M, Roulston A, Kwan I, et al. Characterization of a functional NF-kappa B site in the human interleukin 1 beta promoter: evidence for a positive autoregulatory loop. Mol Cell Biol. 1993;13:6231–40.
70. Galien R, Evans HF, Garcia T. Involvement of CCAAT/enhancer-binding protein and nuclear factor-kappa B binding sites in interleukin-6 promoter inhibition by estrogens. Mol Endocrinol. 1996;10:713–22.
71. Azuma Y, Ohura K. Endomorphins 1 and 2 inhibit IL-10 and IL-12 production and innate immune functions, and potentiate NF-kappaB DNA binding in THP-1 differentiated to macrophage-like cells. Scand J Immunol. 2002;56:260–9.
72. Happel C, Kutzler M, Rogers TJ. Opioid-induced chemokine expression requires NF-kB activity: the role of PKC. J Leuk Biol. 2011;89:301–9.
73. Song C, Rahim RT, Davey PC, Bednar F, Bardi G, Zhang L, et al. Protein kinase Czeta mediates μ-opioid receptor-induced cross-desensitization of chemokine receptor CCR5. J Biol Chem. 2011;286:20354–65.
74. Chen LF, Greene WC. Shaping the nuclear action of NF-kappaB. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2004;5:392–401.
75. Law PY, Loh HH, Wei LN. Insights into the receptor transcription and signaling: implications in opioid tolerance and dependence. Neuropharmacology. 2004;47 Suppl 1:300–11.
76. Chao CC, Hu S, Molitor TW, Zhou Y, Murtaugh MP, Tsang M, et al. Morphine potentiates transforming growth factor-beta release from human peripheral blood mononuclear cell cultures. J Pharmacol Exp Therapeut. 1992;262:19–24.
77. Happel C, Steele AD, Finley MJ, Kutzler MA, Rogers TJ. DAMGO-induced expression of chemokines and chemokine receptors: the role of TGF-β1. J Leukoc Biol. 2008;83:956–63.
78. Wetzel MA, Steele AD, Eisenstein TK, Adler MW, Henderson EE, Rogers TJ. Mu-opioid induction of monocyte chemoattractant protein-1, RANTES, and IFN-gamma-inducible protein-10 expression in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. J Immunol. 2000;165:6519–24.
79. Steele AD, Henderson EE, Rogers TJ. Mu-opioid modulation of HIV-1 coreceptor expression and HIV-1 replication. Virology. 2003;309:99–107.
80. Wen H, Lu Y, Yao H, Buch S, Wen H, Lu Y, et al. Morphine induces expression of platelet-derived growth factor in human brain microvascular endothelial cells: implication for vascular permeability. PLoS One. 2011;6:e21707.
81. Bonner JC. Regulation of PDGF and its receptors in fibrotic diseases. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2004;15:255–73.
82. Su EJ, Fredriksson L, Geyer M, Folestad E, Cale J, Andrae J, et al. Activation of PDGF-CC by tissue plasminogen activator impairs blood-brain barrier integrity during ischemic stroke. Nat Med. 2008;14:731–7.
83. Song E, Ouyang N, Horbelt M, Antus B, Wang M, Exton MS. Influence of alternatively and classically activated macrophages on fibrogenic activities of human fibroblasts. Cell Immunol. 2000;204:19–28.
84. Gupta S, Knight AG, Gupta S, Knapp PE, Hauser KF, Keller JN, et al. HIV-Tat elicits microglial glutamate release: role of NAPDH oxidase and the cystine-glutamate antiporter. Neurosci Lett. 2010;485:233–6.

85. Turchan-Cholewo J, Liu Y, Gartner S, Reid R, Jie C, Peng X, et al. Increased vulnerability of ApoE4 neurons to HIV proteins and opiates: protection by diosgenin and L-deprenyl. Neurobiol Dis. 2006;23:109–19.
86. Malik S, Khalique H, Buch S, Seth P, Malik S, Khalique H, et al. A growth factor attenuates HIV-1 Tat and morphine induced damage to human neurons: implication in HIV/AIDS-drug abuse cases. PLoS One. 2011;6:e18116.
87. Hu S, Sheng WS, Lokensgard JR, Peterson PK. Morphine potentiates HIV-1 gp120-induced neuronal apoptosis. J Infect Dis. 2005;191:886–9.
88. El-Hage N, Bruce-Keller AJ, Yakovleva T, Bazov I, Bakalkin G, Knapp PE, et al. Morphine exacerbates HIV-1 Tat-induced cytokine production in astrocytes through convergent effects on [Ca(2+)](i), NF-kappaB trafficking and transcription. PLoS One. 2008;3:e4093.
89. El-Hage N, Wu G, Wang J, Ambati J, Knapp PE, Reed JL, et al. HIV-1 Tat and opiate-induced changes in astrocytes promote chemotaxis of microglia through the expression of MCP-1 and alternative chemokines. Glia. 2006;53:132–46.
90. El-Hage N, Gurwell JA, Singh IN, Knapp PE, Nath A, Hauser KF. Synergistic increases in intracellular Ca2+, and the release of MCP-1, RANTES, and IL-6 by astrocytes treated with opiates and HIV-1 Tat. Glia. 2005;50:91–106.
91. Stiene-Martin A, Zhou R, Hauser KF. Regional, developmental, and cell cycle-dependent differences in mu, delta, and kappa-opioid receptor expression among cultured mouse astrocytes. Glia. 1998;22:249–59.
92. Gurwell JA, Duncan MJ, Maderspach K, Stiene-Martin A, Elde RP, Hauser KF. kappa-opioid receptor expression defines a phenotypically distinct subpopulation of astroglia: relationship to Ca2+ mobilization, development, and the antiproliferative effect of opioids. Brain Res. 1996;737:175–87.
93. Hauser KF, Stiene-Martin A, Mattson MP, Elde RP, Ryan SE, Godleske CC. mu-Opioid receptor-induced Ca2+ mobilization and astroglial development: morphine inhibits DNA synthesis and stimulates cellular hypertrophy through a Ca(2+)-dependent mechanism. Brain Res. 1996;720:191–203.
94. Stiene-Martin A, Mattson MP, Hauser KF. Opiates selectively increase intracellular calcium in developing type-1 astrocytes: role of calcium in morphine-induced morphologic differentiation. Brain Res Dev Brain Res. 1993;76:189–96.
95. Turchan-Cholewo J, Dimayuga FO, Ding Q, Keller JN, Hauser KF, Knapp PE, et al. Cell-specific actions of HIV-Tat and morphine on opioid receptor expression in glia. J Neurosci Res. 2008;86:2100–10.
96. El-Hage N, Bruce-Keller AJ, Knapp PE, Hauser KF. CCL5/RANTES gene deletion attenuates opioid-induced increases in glial CCL2/MCP-1 immunoreactivity and activation in HIV-1 Tat-exposed mice. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2008;3:275–85.
97. Hauser KF, Hahn YK, Adjan VV, Zou S, Buch SK, Nath A, et al. HIV-1 Tat and morphine have interactive effects on oligodendrocyte survival and morphology. Glia. 2009;57:194–206.
98. Buch SK, Khurdayan VK, Lutz SE, Knapp PE, El-Hage N, Hauser KF. Glial-restricted precursors: patterns of expression of opioid receptors and relationship to human immunodeficiency virus-1 Tat and morphine susceptibility in vitro. Neuroscience. 2007;146:1546–54.
99. Khurdayan VK, Buch S, El-Hage N, Lutz SE, Goebel SM, Singh IN, et al. Preferential vulnerability of astroglia and glial precursors to combined opioid and HIV-1 Tat exposure in vitro. Eur J Neurosci. 2004;19:3171–82.
100. Hauser KF, Fitting S, Dever SM, Podhaizer EM, Knapp PE. Opiate drug use and the pathophysiology of neuroAIDS. Curr HIV Res. 2012;10:435–52.
101. Kaul M, Garden GA, Lipton SA. Pathways to neuronal injury and apoptosis in HIV-associated dementia. Nature. 2001;410:988–94.
102. Persidsky Y, Gendelman HE. Mononuclear phagocyte immunity and the neuropathogenesis of HIV-1 infection. J Leuk Biol. 2003;74:691–701.
103. Tyor WR, Wesselingh SL, Griffin JW, McArthur JC, Griffin DE. Unifying hypothesis for the pathogenesis of HIV-associated dementia complex, vacuolar myelopathy, and sensory neuropathy. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr Hum Retrovirol. 1995;9:379–88.

104. Glass JD, Fedor H, Wesselingh SL, McArthur JC. Immunocytochemical quantitation of human immunodeficiency virus in the brain: correlations with dementia. Ann Neurol. 1995;38:755–62.
105. Gonzalez-Scarano F, Martin-Garcia J. The neuropathogenesis of AIDS. Nat Rev Immunol. 2005;5:69–81.
106. Adle-Biassette H, Chretien F, Wingertsmann L, Hery C, Ereau T, Scaravilli F, et al. Neuronal apoptosis does not correlate with dementia in HIV infection but is related to microglial activation and axonal damage. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 1999;25:123–33.
107. Arango JC, Simmonds P, Brettle RP, Bell JE. Does drug abuse influence the microglial response in AIDS and HIV encephalitis? Aids. 2004;18 Suppl 1:S69–74.
108. Anthony IC, Ramage SN, Carnie FW, Simmonds P, Bell JE. Does drug abuse alter microglial phenotype and cell turnover in the context of advancing HIV infection? Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 2005;31:325–38.
109. Masliah E. Mechanisms of synaptic pathology in Alzheimer's disease. J Neural Transm Suppl. 1998;53:147–58.
110. Masliah E, Mallory M, Hansen L, DeTeresa R, Alford M, Terry R. Synaptic and neuritic alterations during the progression of Alzheimer's disease. Neurosci Lett. 1994;174:67–72.
111. Law AJ, Weickert CS, Hyde TM, Kleinman JE, Harrison PJ. Reduced spinophilin but not microtubule-associated protein 2 expression in the hippocampal formation in schizophrenia and mood disorders: molecular evidence for a pathology of dendritic spines. Am J Psychiatr. 2004;161:1848–55.
112. Masliah E, Heaton RK, Marcotte TD, Ellis RJ, Wiley CA, Mallory M, et al. Dendritic injury is a pathological substrate for human immunodeficiency virus-related cognitive disorders. HNRC Group. The HIV Neurobehavioral Research Center. Ann Neurol. 1997;42:963–72.
113. Everall IP, Everall IP. Neuronal damage - recent issues and implications for therapy. J Neurovirol. 2000;6 Suppl 1:S103–5.
114. Everall IP, Heaton RK, Marcotte TD, Ellis RJ, McCutchan JA, Atkinson JH, et al. Cortical synaptic density is reduced in mild to moderate human immunodeficiency virus neurocognitive disorder. HNRC Group. HIV Neurobehavioral Research Center. Brain Pathol. 1999;9: 209–17.
115. Agrawal L, Louboutin JP, Marusich E, Reyes BA, Van Bockstaele EJ, Strayer DS. Dopaminergic neurotoxicity of HIV-1 gp120: reactive oxygen species as signaling intermediates. Brain Res. 2010;1306:116–30.
116. Gray F, Adle-Biassette H, Brion F, Ereau T, le Maner I, Levy V, et al. Neuronal apoptosis in human immunodeficiency virus infection. J Neurovirol. 2000;6 Suppl 1:S38–43.
117. Gray F, Adle-Biassette H, Chretien F, Lorin dG, Force G, Keohane C. Neuropathology and neurodegeneration in human immunodeficiency virus infection. Pathogenesis of HIV-induced lesions of the brain, correlations with HIV-associated disorders and modifications according to treatments. Clin Neuropathol. 2001;20:146–55.
118. Grovit-Ferbas K, Harris-White ME. Thinking about HIV: the intersection of virus, neuroinflammation and cognitive dysfunction. Immunologic Res. 2010;48:40–58.
119. Fitting S, Xu R, Bull C, Buch SK, El-Hage N, Nath A, et al. Interactive comorbidity between opioid drug abuse and HIV-1 Tat: chronic exposure augments spine loss and sublethal dendritic pathology in striatal neurons. Am J Pathol. 2010;177:1397–410.
120. Robinson TE, Kolb B. Structural plasticity associated with exposure to drugs of abuse. Neuropharmacology. 2004;47 Suppl 1:33–46.
121. Robinson TE, Kolb B. Morphine alters the structure of neurons in the nucleus accumbens and neocortex of rats. Synapse. 1999;33:160–2.
122. Nath A. Pathobiology of human immunodeficiency virus dementia. Semin Neurol. 1999;19:113–27.
123. Dreyer EB, Kaiser PK, Offermann JT, Lipton SA. HIV-1 coat protein neurotoxicity prevented by calcium channel antagonists. Science. 1990;248:364–7.
124. Haughey NJ, Holden CP, Nath A, Geiger JD. Involvement of inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate-regulated stores of intracellular calcium in calcium dysregulation and neuron cell death caused by HIV-1 protein tat. J Neurochem. 1999;73:1363–74.

125. Piller SC, Jans P, Gage PW, Jans DA. Extracellular HIV-1 virus protein R causes a large inward current and cell death in cultured hippocampal neurons: implications for AIDS pathology. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1998;95:4595–600.
126. Mattson MP, Haughey NJ, Nath A. Cell death in HIV dementia. Cell Death Differ. 2005;12 Suppl 1:893–904 [Review] [173 refs].
127. Gurwell JA, Nath A, Sun Q, Zhang J, Martin KM, Chen Y, et al. Synergistic neurotoxicity of opioids and human immunodeficiency virus-1 Tat protein in striatal neurons in vitro. Neuroscience. 2001;102:555–63.
128. Zou S, Fitting S, Hahn YK, Welch SP, El-Hage N, Hauser KF, et al. Morphine potentiates neurodegenerative effects of HIV-1 Tat through actions at u-opioid receptor-expressing glia. Brain. 2011;134:12–31.
129. Podhaizer EM, Zou S, Fitting S, Samano KL, El-Hage N, Knapp PE, et al. Morphine and gp120 toxic interactions in striatal neurons are dependent on HIV-1 strain. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2012;7:877–91.
130. Johnson SW, North RA. Opioids excite dopamine neurons by hyperpolarization of local interneurons. J Neurosci. 1992;12:483–8.
131. Di CG, Imperato A. Drugs abused by humans preferentially increase synaptic dopamine concentrations in the mesolimbic system of freely moving rats. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1988;85:5274–8.
132. Levite M. Neurotransmitters activate T-cells and elicit crucial functions via neurotransmitter receptors. Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2008;8:460–71.
133. Gaskill PJ, Calderon TM, Luers AJ, Eugenin EA, Javitch JA, Berman JW. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection of human macrophages is increased by dopamine: a bridge between HIV-associated neurologic disorders and drug abuse. Am J Pathol. 2009;175: 1148–59.
134. Gaskill PJ, Carvallo L, Eugenin EA, Berman JW. Characterization and function of the human macrophage dopaminergic system: implications for CNS disease and drug abuse. J Neuroinflammation. 2012;9:203.
135. Czub S, Koutsilieri E, Sopper S, Czub M, Stahl-Hennig C, Muller JG, et al. Enhancement of central nervous system pathology in early simian immunodeficiency virus infection by dopaminergic drugs. Acta Neuropathol. 2001;101:85–91.
136. Czub S, Czub M, Koutsilieri E, Sopper S, Villinger F, Muller JG, et al. Modulation of simian immunodeficiency virus neuropathology by dopaminergic drugs. Acta Neuropathol. 2004;107:216–26.
137. Dunfee R, Thomas ER, Gorry PR, Wang J, Ancuta P, Gabuzda D, et al. Mechanisms of HIV-1 neurotropism. Curr HIV Res. 2006;4:267–78.
138. Thieblemont N, Weiss L, Sadeghi HM, Estcourt C, Haeffner-Cavaillon N. CD14lowCD16high: a cytokine-producing monocyte subset which expands during human immunodeficiency virus infection. Eur J Immunol. 1995;25:3418–24.
139. Allen JB, Wong HL, Guyre PM, Simon GL, Wahl SM. Association of circulating receptor Fc gamma RIII-positive monocytes in AIDS patients with elevated levels of transforming growth factor-beta. J Clin Invest. 1991;87:1773–9.
140. Locher C, Vanham G, Kestens L, Kruger M, Ceuppens JL, Vingerhoets J, et al. Expression patterns of Fc gamma receptors, HLA-DR and selected adhesion molecules on monocytes from normal and HIV-infected individuals. Clin Exp Immunol. 1994;98:115–22.
141. Nockher WA, Bergmann L, Scherberich JE. Increased soluble CD14 serum levels and altered CD14 expression of peripheral blood monocytes in HIV-infected patients. Clin Exp Immunol. 1994;98:369–74.
142. Dunne J, Feighery C, Whelan A. Beta-2-microglobulin, neopterin and monocyte Fc gamma receptors in opportunistic infections of HIV-positive patients. Br J Biomed Sci. 1996;53:263–9.
143. Ancuta P, Weiss L, Haeffner-Cavaillon N. CD14+CD16++ cells derived in vitro from peripheral blood monocytes exhibit phenotypic and functional dendritic cell-like characteristics. Eur J Immunol. 2000;30:1872–83.

144. Pulliam L, Gascon R, Stubblebine M, McGuire D, McGrath MS. Unique monocyte subset in patients with AIDS dementia. Lancet. 1997;349:692–5.
145. Weber C, Belge KU, von Hundelshausen P, Draude G, Steppich B, Mack M, et al. Differential chemokine receptor expression and function in human monocyte subpopulations. J Leuk Biol. 2000;67:699–704.
146. Geissmann F, Gordon S, Hume DA, Mowat AM, Randolph GJ, Geissmann F, et al. Unravelling mononuclear phagocyte heterogeneity. Nat Rev Immunol. 2010;10:453–60.
147. Kraft-Terry SD, Buch SJ, Fox HS, Gendelman HE. A coat of many colors: neuroimmune crosstalk in human immunodeficiency virus infection. Neuron. 2009;64:133–45.
148. Peng F, Dhillon NK, Yao H, Zhu X, Williams R, Buch S, et al. Mechanisms of platelet-derived growth factor-mediated neuroprotection – implications in HIV dementia. Eur J Neurosci. 2008;28:1255–64.
149. Chaudhuri A, Yang B, Gendelman HE, Persidsky Y, Kanmogne GD. STAT1 signaling modulates HIV-1-induced inflammatory responses and leukocyte transmigration across the blood-brain barrier. Blood. 2008;111:2062–72.
150. Eugenin EA, Osiecki K, Lopez L, Goldstein H, Calderon TM, Berman JW. CCL2/monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 mediates enhanced transmigration of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected leukocytes across the blood-brain barrier: a potential mechanism of HIV-CNS invasion and NeuroAIDS. J Neurosci. 2006;26:1098–106.
151. Mahajan SD, Schwartz SA, Aalinkeel R, Chawda RP, Sykes DE, Nair MP. Morphine modulates chemokine gene regulation in normal human astrocytes. Clin Immunol. 2005;115:323–32.
152. Deeks SG. Immune dysfunction, inflammation, and accelerated aging in patients on antiretroviral therapy. Top HIV Med. 2009;17:118–23.
153. Neuhaus J, Jacobs Jr DR, Baker JV, Calmy A, Duprez D, La RA, et al. Markers of inflammation, coagulation, and renal function are elevated in adults with HIV infection. J Infect Dis. 2010;201:1788–95.
154. Reingold J, Wanke C, Kotler D, Lewis C, Tracy R, Heymsfield S, et al. Association of HIV infection and HIV/HCV coinfection with C-reactive protein levels: the fat redistribution and metabolic change in HIV infection (FRAM) study. JAIDS. 2008;48:142–8.
155. Tien PC, Choi AI, Zolopa AR, Benson C, Tracy R, Scherzer R, et al. Inflammation and mortality in HIV-infected adults: analysis of the FRAM study cohort. JAIDS. 2010;55: 316–22.
156. Kaul M, Lipton SA. Mechanisms of neuroimmunity and neurodegeneration associated with HIV-1 infection and AIDS. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2006;1:138–51.
157. Kuller LH, Tracy R, Belloso W, De WS, Drummond F, Lane HC, et al. Inflammatory and coagulation biomarkers and mortality in patients with HIV infection. PLoS Med. 2008;5:e203.
158. Gannon P, Khan MZ, Kolson DL. Current understanding of HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders pathogenesis. Curr Opin Neurol. 2011;24:275–83.
159. Brenchley JM, Price DA, Schacker TW, Asher TE, Silvestri G, Rao S, et al. Microbial translocation is a cause of systemic immune activation in chronic HIV infection. Nat Med. 2006;12:1365–71.
160. Wallet MA, Rodriguez CA, Yin L, Saporta S, Chinratanapisit S, Hou W, et al. Microbial translocation induces persistent macrophage activation unrelated to HIV-1 levels or T-cell activation following therapy. Aids. 2010;24:1281–90.
161. Jiang W, Lederman MM, Hunt P, Sieg SF, Haley K, Rodriguez B, et al. Plasma levels of bacterial DNA correlate with immune activation and the magnitude of immune restoration in persons with antiretroviral-treated HIV infection. J Infect Dis. 2009;199:1177–85.
162. Brenchley JM, Price DA, Douek DC. HIV disease: fallout from a mucosal catastrophe? Nat Immunol. 2006;7:235–9.
163. Meier A, Alter G, Frahm N, Sidhu H, Li B, Bagchi A, et al. MyD88-dependent immune activation mediated by human immunodeficiency virus type 1-encoded Toll-like receptor ligands. J Virol. 2007;81:8180–91.
164. Beignon AS, McKenna K, Skoberne M, Manches O, Dasilva I, Kavanagh DG, et al. Endocytosis of HIV-1 activates plasmacytoid dendritic cells via Toll-like receptor-viral RNA interactions. J Clin Invest. 2005;115:3265–75.

165. Baenziger S, Heikenwalder M, Johansen P, Schlaepfer E, Hofer U, Miller RC, et al. Triggering TLR7 in mice induces immune activation and lymphoid system disruption, resembling HIV-mediated pathology. Blood. 2009;113:377–88.
166. Hilburger ME, Adler MW, Truant AL, Meissler Jr JJ, Satishchandran V, Rogers TJ, et al. Morphine induces sepsis in mice. J Infect Dis. 1997;176:183–8.
167. Peress NS, Perillo E, Seidman RJ. Glial transforming growth factor (TGF)-beta isotypes in multiple sclerosis: differential glial expression of TGF-beta 1, 2 and 3 isotypes in multiple sclerosis. J Neuroimmunol. 1996;71:115–23.
168. Carrieri PB, Provitera V, De RT, Tartaglia G, Gorga F, Perrella O. Profile of cerebrospinal fluid and serum cytokines in patients with relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis: a correlation with clinical activity. Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol. 1998;20:373–82.
169. Wyss-Coray T, Lin C, Yan F, Yu GQ, Rohde M, McConlogue L, et al. TGF-beta1 promotes microglial amyloid-beta clearance and reduces plaque burden in transgenic mice. Nat Med. 2001;7:612–8.
170. Vitkovic L, Maeda S, Sternberg E. Anti-inflammatory cytokines: expression and action in the brain. [Review] [205 refs]. Neuroimmunomodulation. 2001;9:295–312.
171. Benveniste EN. Cytokine actions in the central nervous system. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 1998;9:259–75.
172. Barnum SR, Jones JL. Transforming growth factor-beta 1 inhibits inflammatory cytokine-induced C3 gene expression in astrocytes. J Immunol. 1994;152:765–73.
173. Vodovotz Y, Geiser AG, Chesler L, Letterio JJ, Campbell A, Lucia MS, et al. Spontaneously increased production of nitric oxide and aberrant expression of the inducible nitric oxide synthase in vivo in the transforming growth factor beta 1 null mouse. J Exp Med. 1996;183:2337–42.
174. Park SK, Grzybicki D, Lin HL, Murphy S. Modulation of inducible nitric oxide synthase expression in astroglial cells. Neuropharmacology. 1994;33:1419–23.
175. Bottner M, Krieglstein K, Unsicker K. The transforming growth factor-betas: structure, signaling, and roles in nervous system development and functions. J Neurochem. 2000;75: 2227–40.
176. Chao CC, Hu S, Peterson PK. Modulation of human microglial cell superoxide production by cytokines. J Leuk Biol. 1995;58:65–70.
177. Hu S, Sheng WS, Peterson PK, Chao CC. Cytokine modulation of murine microglial cell superoxide production. Glia. 1995;13:45–50.
178. Meucci O, Miller RJ. gp120-induced neurotoxicity in hippocampal pyramidal neuron cultures: protective action of TGF-beta1. J Neurosci. 1996;16:4080–8.
179. Chao CC, Molitor TW, Close K, Hu S, Peterson PK. Morphine inhibits the release of tumor necrosis factor in human peripheral blood mononuclear cell cultures. Int J Immunopharmacol. 1993;15:447–53.
180. Wahl SM, Hunt DA, Wakefield LM, Cartney-Francis N, Wahl LM, Roberts AB, et al. Transforming growth factor type beta induces monocyte chemotaxis and growth factor production. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1987;84:5788–92.
181. Wiseman DM, Polverini PJ, Kamp DW, Leibovich SJ. Transforming growth factor-beta (TGF beta) is chemotactic for human monocytes and induces their expression of angiogenic activity. Biochem Biophys Res Comm. 1988;157:793–800.
182. Wahl SM, Allen JB, Weeks BS, Wong HL, Klotman PE. Transforming growth factor beta enhances integrin expression and type IV collagenase secretion in human monocytes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993;90:4577–81.
183. Riddick CA, Serio KJ, Hodulik CR, Ring WL, Regan MS, Bigby TD. TGF-beta increases leukotriene C4 synthase expression in the monocyte-like cell line, THP-1. J Immunol. 1999;162:1101–7.
184. Turner M, Chantry D, Feldmann M. Transforming growth factor beta induces the production of interleukin 6 by human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. Cytokine. 1990;2:211–6.
185. Petito CK, Roberts B, Cantando JD, Rabinstein A, Duncan R. Hippocampal injury and alterations in neuronal chemokine co-receptor expression in patients with AIDS. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2001;60:377–85.

186. Li M, Ransohoff RM. Multiple roles of chemokine CXCL12 in the central nervous system: a migration from immunology to neurobiology. Prog Neurobiol. 2008;84:116–31.
187. Lazarini F, Tham TN, Casanova P, Arenzana-Seisdedos F, Dubois-Dalcq M. Role of the alpha-chemokine stromal cell-derived factor (SDF-1) in the developing and mature central nervous system. Glia. 2003;42:139–48.
188. Khan MZ, Brandimarti R, Shimizu S, Nicolai J, Crowe E, Meucci O. The chemokine CXCL12 promotes survival of postmitotic neurons by regulating Rb protein. Cell Death Differ. 2008;15:1663–72.
189. Cardone MH, Roy N, Stennicke HR, Salvesen GS, Franke TF, Stanbridge E, et al. Regulation of cell death protease caspase-9 by phosphorylation. Science. 1998;282:1318–21.
190. Nicolai J, Burbassi S, Rubin J, Meucci O. CXCL12 inhibits expression of the NMDA receptor's NR2B subunit through a histone deacetylase-dependent pathway contributing to neuronal survival. Cell Death Disease. 2010;1:e33.
191. Khan MZ, Brandimarti R, Patel JP, Huynh N, Wang J, Huang Z, et al. Apoptotic and anti-apoptotic effects of CXCR4: is it a matter of intrinsic efficacy? Implications for HIV neuropathogenesis. AIDS Res Hum Retrovirus. 2004;20:1063–71.
192. Toth PT, Ren D, Miller RJ. Regulation of CXCR4 receptor dimerization by the chemokine SDF-1alpha and the HIV-1 coat protein gp120: a fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) study. J Pharmacol Exp Therapeut. 2004;310:8–17.
193. Festa L, Meucci O. Effects of opiates and HIV proteins on neurons: the role of ferritin heavy chain and a potential for synergism. Curr HIV Res. 2012;10:453–62.
194. Patel JP, Sengupta R, Bardi G, Khan MZ, Mullen-Przeworski A, Meucci O. Modulation of neuronal CXCR4 by the micro-opioid agonist DAMGO. J Neurovirol. 2006;12:492–500.
195. Ferrer-Alcon M, Garcia-Fuster MJ, La HR, Garcia-Sevilla JA. Long-term regulation of signalling components of adenylyl cyclase and mitogen-activated protein kinase in the prefrontal cortex of human opiate addicts. J Neurochem. 2004;90:220–30.
196. Atici S, Cinel L, Cinel I, Doruk N, Aktekin M, Akca A, et al. Opioid neurotoxicity: comparison of morphine and tramadol in an experimental rat model. Int J Neurosci. 2004;114:1001–11.
197. Liao D, Lin H, Law PY, Loh HH. Mu-opioid receptors modulate the stability of dendritic spines. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102:1725–30.
198. Li Y, Wang H, Niu L, Zhou Y. Chronic morphine exposure alters the dendritic morphology of pyramidal neurons in visual cortex of rats. Neurosci Lett. 2007;418:227–31.
199. Zheng H, Zeng Y, Chu J, Kam AY, Loh HH, Law PY. Modulations of NeuroD activity contribute to the differential effects of morphine and fentanyl on dendritic spine stability. J Neurosci. 2010;30:8102–10.
200. Tuttle DL, Harrison JK, Anders C, Sleasman JW, Goodenow MM. Expression of CCR5 increases during monocyte differentiation and directly mediates macrophage susceptibility to infection by human immunodeficiency virus type 1. J Virol. 1998;72:4962–9.
201. Secchiero P, Zella D, Capitani S, Gallo RC, Zauli G. Extracellular HIV-1 tat protein up-regulates the expression of surface CXC-chemokine receptor 4 in resting CD4+ T cells. J Immunol. 1999;162:2427–31.
202. Steele AD, Szabo I, Bednar F, Rogers TJ. Interactions between opioid and chemokine receptors: heterologous desensitization. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2002;13:209–22.
203. Grimm MC, Ben Baruch A, Taub DD, Howard OM, Resau JH, Wang JM, et al. Opiates transdeactivate chemokine receptors: delta and mu opiate receptor-mediated heterologous desensitization. J Exp Med. 1998;188:317–25.
204. Szabo I, Wetzel MA, Zhang N, Steele AD, Kaminsky DE, Chen C, et al. Selective inactivation of CCR5 and decreased infectivity of R5 HIV-1 strains mediated by opioid-induced heterologous desensitization. J Leuk Biol. 2003;74:1074–82.
205. Szabo I, Chen XH, Xin L, Adler MW, Howard OM, Oppenheim JJ, et al. Heterologous desensitization of opioid receptors by chemokines inhibits chemotaxis and enhances the perception of pain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99:10276–81.

206. Chen X, Geller EB, Rogers TJ, Adler MW. The chemokine CX3CL1/fractalkine interferes with the antinociceptive effect induced by opioid agonists in the periaqueductal grey of rats. Brain Res. 2007;1153:52–7.
207. Chen X, Geller EB, Rogers TJ, Adler MW, Chen X, Geller EB, et al. Rapid heterologous desensitization of antinociceptive activity between mu or delta opioid receptors and chemokine receptors in rats. Drug Alcohol Depend. 2007;88:36–41.
208. Watkins LR, Maier SF, Goehler LE. Immune activation: the role of pro-inflammatory cytokines in inflammation, illness responses and pathological pain states. Pain. 1995;63:289–302.
209. Junger H, Sorkin LS. Nociceptive and inflammatory effects of subcutaneous TNFalpha. Pain. 2000;85:145–51.

Cannabinoids

Paige S. Katz, Scott Edwards, and Patricia E. Molina

Abstract Cannabinoids play a significant role in several physiological and pathophysiological processes including cognitive and immune function. Reports have identified cannabinoids as a potential pharmacological therapy for treatment of neuroinflammation following injury or neuroinflammatory diseases. Cannabinoids, whether phytocannabinoids, endocannabinoids, or synthetic analogs, signal primarily through two cannabinoid receptors, CB1 and CB2. These lipophilic compounds easily cross the blood–brain barrier and have low levels of toxicity. This chapter reviews the current understanding of the endocannabinoid system and the potential therapeutic applications for treatment of traumatic brain injury, HIV encephalitis, Alzheimer's disease, multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, and chronic pain.

Keywords Alzheimer's • Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis • Cannabinoids • Endocannabinoids • Cannabinoid receptors • HIV encephalitis • Multiple sclerosis • Traumatic brain injury

Abbreviations

Δ9-THC	Δ9-THC-tetrahydrocannabinol
2-AG	2-Arachidonoylglycerol
Aβ	β-Amyloid
AD	Alzheimer's disease

P.S. Katz • S. Edwards • P.E. Molina, M.D., Ph.D. (✉)
Department of Physiology, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, 1901 Perdido Street, New Orleans, LA 70112-1393, USA

Alcohol and Drug Abuse Center of Excellence, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, 1901 Perdido Street, New Orleans, LA 70112-1393, USA
e-mail: pmolin@lsuhsc.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*, 487
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_23, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

AEA	Arachidonoyl ethanolamide or anandamide
AIDS	Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
ALS	Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
BBB	Blood–brain barrier
CB1	Cannabinoid receptor 1
CB2	Cannabinoid receptor 2
CBD	Cannabidiol
CBN	Cannabinol
CNS	Central nervous system
ERK	Extracellular signal-regulated kinase
FAAH	Fatty acid amide hydrolase
FAK	Focal adhesion kinase
FALS	Familial ALS
GABA	Gamma-aminobutyric acid
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
HIVE	HIV encephalitis
IL	Interleukin
JNK	c-Jun N-terminal kinase
LPS	Lipopolysaccharide
MAGL	Monoacylglycerol lipase
MS	Multiple sclerosis
NAPE	*N*-Arachidonoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine
NAT	*N*-Acetyltransferase
NFTs	Neurofibrillary tangles
NK	Natural killer
PI3-K	Phosphatidylinositide 3-kinase
PKB	Protein kinase B
PLC	Phospholipase C
PLD	Phospholipase D
PPAR	Proliferator-activated receptor
SALS	Sporadic ALS
SIV	Simian immunodeficiency virus
TBI	Traumatic brain injury
TNF-α	Tumor necrosis factor-α
VCAM-1	Vascular cell adhesion molecule-1

1 Introduction

The *Cannabis sativa* plant (i.e., marijuana) contains over 60 different chemical constituents called cannabinoids. The cannabinoids include cannabinol, cannabidiol, Δ8-THC-tetrahydrocannabinol, as well as the major psychoactive constituent Δ9-THC-tetrahydrocannabinol (Δ9-THC). These compounds are known to induce euphoria, impaired perception and memory, and mild sedation. An endogenous

cannabinoid system consisting of arachidonoyl ethanolamide (anandamide; AEA) and 2-arachidonoylglycerol (2-AG), derivatives of arachidonic acid, has also been described. These endocannabinoids, like those that are plant derived, signal through two principal cannabinoid G-protein-coupled transmembrane receptors; the CB1 receptor expressed throughout the brain, and the CB2 receptor distributed predominantly in cells and tissues of the immune system. In addition to the plant-derived and endocannabinoids, synthetic cannabinoids have been under intense investigation to determine their pharmacological actions and further understand the physiological role of the cannabinoid system. Several reports on their psychoactive effects have more recently been followed by reports of their analgesic, antiemetic, and orexigenic effects. Moreover, several lines of evidence have also demonstrated their role in immunomodulation, suggesting their potential for therapeutic use in chronic inflammatory diseases. Thus, advanced understanding of cannabinoid pharmacology, major cannabinoid receptor subtypes (CB1 and CB2), and their expression levels and localization (CB2 predominantly on B lymphocytes, macrophages, and natural killer cells), in addition to identification of endogenous cannabinoids (AEA and 2-AG), suggests that in addition to the neurobehavioral effects, cannabinoids may have a potential role in modulating immune response and specifically neuroimmune response to injury, disease, and aging.

2 Cannabinoids

2.1 Phytocannabinoids

Cannabis sativa is a flowering plant, commonly called marijuana, that contains over 400 different chemicals of which 60 are collectively called cannabinoids [1, 2]. The primary plant-derived cannabinoids include Δ9-THC-tetrahydrocannabinol (Δ9-THC), cannabinol (CBN), and cannabidiol (CBD). Cannabinoids are highly lipophilic compounds that share structural and chemical similarities and are found mainly in the resin secreted from the flowering portions of the plant. Reports on the medicinal properties of cannabis date to over 5,000 years ago, as evidenced by descriptions in Chinese texts from the third millennium BC where it was recommended for malaria, constipation, rheumatic pains, and female disorders [3]. In addition, references to cannabis use as a therapeutic agent to alter mood, cognitive function, and memory have been found in Assyrian records, Egyptian hieroglyphics, and Greek and Roman medical texts [3, 4]. CBN was the first phytocannabinoid to be isolated, and its structure was elucidated in the early 1930s followed in 1964 by the elucidation of Δ9-THC's structure and later its synthesis [5, 6]. Clinical pharmacology studies increased once the structure of Δ9-THC was elucidated and analytical techniques were available to measure its concentrations [7–9]. Moreover, it led to the synthesis and testing of active cannabimimetic analogs, of which the dimethylheptyl derivative

of 11-hydroxy-Δ8-THC (HU-210) has been shown to have a much higher affinity for cannabinoid receptors than Δ9-THC [10]. Pharmacological preclinical and clinical studies have determined that Δ9-THC is the major psychoactive constituent, CBN has lower psychotropic activity than Δ9-THC, and CBD has no psychotropic activity [7, 11, 12].

Cannabis is the most widely cultivated, trafficked, and abused illicit drug [13]. Recreational cannabis consumption can be through smoking or inhalation or through lacing of food products, with smoking being the most common route of cannabis recreational use. The systemic level of cannabinoids achieved varies according to the route of consumption, frequency of intake, and overall amount or potency of the drug consumed. Cannabis is often rolled into joints resulting in wide variation of the concentrations achieved partly due to the range of Δ9-THC concentrations found in smoking preparations (0.3–13 %), due to the source and quality of cannabis, as well as due to loss in the smoke or pyrolysis and to exhalation from the pulmonary dead space [2, 14, 15]. Oral cannabis ingestion in the form of baked goods like cakes or cookies is also associated with loss through digestion.

Pharmacokinetics of Δ9-THC varies based on the route of administration, with smoking (inhalation) and intravenous (i.v.) having the fastest onset when compared to oral administration [16, 17]. Comparative studies of Δ9-THC—intravenous, smoked, and oral administration—indicate that peak plasma concentrations are achieved faster (3 min) following intravenous or smoked delivery than following oral ingestion (60–90 min) [16]. Following cannabis smoking or inhalation, aerosolized Δ9-THC is rapidly absorbed within seconds resulting in rapid and efficient delivery to the brain due to its lipid solubility. Cognitive, mood, and behavioral effects are apparent within minutes and can last for up to 2–3 h. Controlled studies have demonstrated that Δ9-THC administration to humans produces a spectrum of effects, including increased pulse rate, decreased blood pressure, muscle weakening, increased appetite, euphoria followed by drowsiness, depersonalization, altered time sense, decreased memory recollection, decreased hearing discrimination, and sharper distorted visual signals [2]. Nevertheless, due to the encouraging findings from several preclinical studies, synthetic analogs of Δ9-THC have been developed and subjected to clinical trials for several disease conditions [18]. Nabilone and dronabinol are used clinically for treatment of several conditions including attenuation of cancer chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting and appetite stimulation in human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS) patients [19, 20]. More recently, Sativex, a combination of Δ9-THC and cannabidiol, available as an oral spray and proposed to produce less psychotropic effects than Δ9-THC, has been approved to treat pain and spasticity in multiple sclerosis (MS) patients [21]. Additional routes of cannabinoid administration that have been tested under different clinical conditions include intravenous, rectal, and sublingual [22]. Cannabinoids are hydrophobic and are retained in adipose tissue when consumed or administered chronically. Release into the circulation can continue after cessation of consumption, accounting for a relatively long half-life (1–3 days) in the body. Δ9 undergoes phase I hepatic detoxification mainly by hepatic cytochrome P450 isoenzymes [17].

2.2 Endocannabinoids

The endocannabinoid system consists of lipid-derived mediators, cannabinoid receptors, uptake receptors, and enzymes involved in their synthesis and degradation. Endocannabinoids were discovered approximately 60 years after the discovery of Δ9-THC and almost 10 years after identification of CB receptors. Endocannabinoids are amides, esters, and ethers of long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids derived from arachidonic acid with short half-lives that likely function as neuromodulators at or near their site of synthesis. The first endocannabinoid isolated and described in 1992 was *N*-arachidonoyl ethanolamine (anandamide; AEA) [23]. The second endocannabinoid, 2-arachidonoylglycerol (2-AG) [24, 25], was identified soon after, and a third endocannabinoid, 2-arachidonyl glyceryl ether, was reported almost a decade later [26]. More is known about AEA and 2-AG [27, 28], and studies have shown 2-AG to be the more abundant and bioactive endocannabinoid in the brain [29, 30]. These endocannabinoids are the primary endogenous agonists of the CB1 and CB2 receptors [31, 32], and their behavioral and physiological effects are similar to those of Δ9-THC [33, 34].

Unlike preformed and packaged neurotransmitters, endocannabinoids are synthesized in postsynaptic neurons "on demand" from distinct phospholipid precursors in response to specific stimuli. Biosynthesis of endocannabinoids from arachidonic acid is stimulated by increased intracellular calcium concentration resulting from either neuronal depolarization or activation of G_q-coupled metabotropic receptors [35]. While the endocannabinoids have similar chemical structures, their biosynthesis occurs through distinct pathways. Biosynthesis of AEA involves two enzymatic reactions; the first reaction is mediated by *N*-acetyltransferase (NAT) generating an intermediate *N*-arachidonoyl phosphatidylethanolamine (NAPE), followed by cleavage of membrane-bound NAPE by phospholipase D (PLD) to form AEA [25, 36] (Fig. 1). 2-AG synthesis is produced by the cleavage of inositol-1,2-diacylglycerol, by phospholipase C (PLC) to form 1,2-diacylglycerol (DAG) or 2-arachidonoyl-lysophospholipid, followed by hydrolysis by DAG lipase or lysophospholipase, respectively (Fig. 1). Once released, endocannabinoids undergo quick deactivation through cellular uptake through a selective membrane transporter followed by enzymatic degradation mediated by fatty acid amide hydrolase (FAAH) for AEA and by both FAAH and a serine hydrolase, monoacylglycerol lipase (MAGL) [27, 37–40] (Fig. 1).

2.3 Cannabinoid Receptor Signaling

Cloning of the first cannabinoid receptor was completed in 1990 from rat cerebral cortex. Originally named the "neuronal" cannabinoid receptor, it was later renamed CB1 [41]. A few years later, a second receptor, CB2, was cloned and deemed the "peripheral" cannabinoid receptor based on its initial identification in the spleen [42]. While the amino acid sequence of the CB1 receptor is highly conserved across

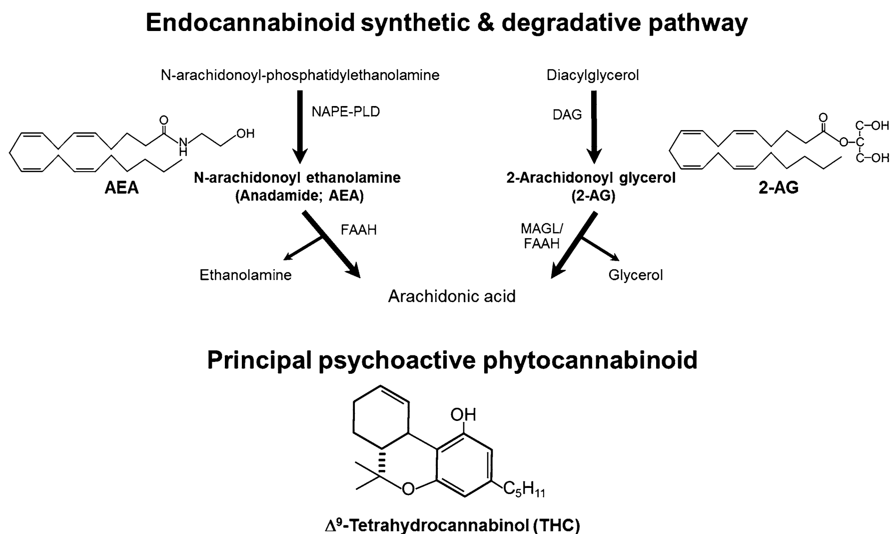
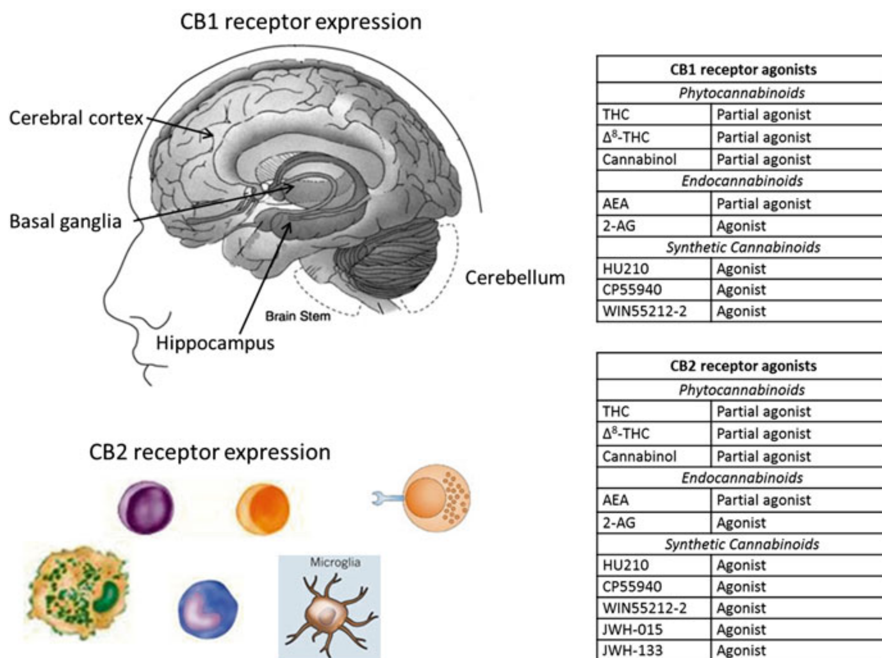


Fig. 1 The endocannabinoids *N*-arachidonoyl ethanolamine (anadamide; AEA) and 2-arachidonoylglycerol (2-AG) are synthesized from phospholipid precursors, *N*-arachidonoyl phosphatidylethanolamine (NAPE) and diacylglycerols (DAGs). Anandamide is formed from the N-arachidoylation of phosphatidylethanolamine by *N*-acyltransferases followed by transformation of NAPE into anandamide by a *N-acyl-phosphatidylethanolamine*-selective phosphodiesterase (NAPE-PLD). 2-AG is produced by the hydrolysis of DAGs via sn-1-selective DAG lipases (DAGLs) alpha and beta. Following cellular reuptake, anandamide is metabolized via fatty acid amide hydrolase (FAAH) and 2-AG via monoacylglycerol lipase (MAGL). CB1 and CB2 receptors are the most studied molecular targets for anandamide and 2-AG. Anandamide has the highest affinity, whereas 2-AG has the highest efficacy. In the brain CB1 receptors are often expressed in presynaptic terminals so that endocannabinoids participate in retrograde signaling, inhibiting neurotransmitter release

mammalian species, the CB2 receptor's amino acid sequence in not conserved. Human CB1 and CB2 receptors share only 48 % amino acid homology [43]. Cannabinoid receptors are $G_{i/o}$-protein-coupled receptors that result in dose-dependent adenylate cyclase inhibition upon ligand binding [44–46]. Cannabinoids can induce activation of members of all three multifunctional MAPK families including extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK) [47–49], c-Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) [50], and p38 [51]. CB1 and CB2 receptor-dependent signal transduction attenuates adenylate cyclase and cAMP production [52], activates mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPK) and focal adhesion kinase (FAK), and stimulates phosphatidylinositide 3-kinase/protein kinase B (PI3-K/PKB) [53]. In addition, activation of CB1 receptors inhibits different types of calcium (Ca^{2+}) channels, activates certain potassium (K^+) channels, and suppresses neurotransmitter release [54]. This is of particular relevance to endocannabinoid signaling, resulting from binding to presynaptic CB1 cannabinoid receptors leading to inhibition of voltage-sensitive Ca^{2+} channels and activation of K^+ channels [55]. Thus, endocannabinoids act through retrograde signaling to blunt membrane depolarization and exocytosis of neurotransmitters such as glutamate, dopamine, and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA).



CB1 receptor agonists	
Phytocannabinoids	
THC	Partial agonist
Δ^8-THC	Partial agonist
Cannabinol	Partial agonist
Endocannabinoids	
AEA	Partial agonist
2-AG	Agonist
Synthetic Cannabinoids	
HU210	Agonist
CP55940	Agonist
WIN55212-2	Agonist

CB2 receptor agonists	
Phytocannabinoids	
THC	Partial agonist
Δ^8-THC	Partial agonist
Cannabinol	Partial agonist
Endocannabinoids	
AEA	Partial agonist
2-AG	Agonist
Synthetic Cannabinoids	
HU210	Agonist
CP55940	Agonist
WIN55212-2	Agonist
JWH-015	Agonist
JWH-133	Agonist

Fig. 2 Distribution of cannabinoid receptor expression relevant to neuroimmunomodulatory effects. The CB1 receptor, the mediator of cannabis-induced neurobehavioral effects, is preferentially expressed in the brain localized to the basal ganglia, hippocampus, cerebellum, cerebral cortex, and brain stem. Localization of CB2 is predominantly in the immune system cells including B lymphocytes, macrophages, monocytes, and natural killer (NK) cells, in addition to CB2 receptors that are expressed in peripheral tissues like the thymus and tonsils, and primarily mediates anti-inflammatory and immune-modulated-dependent actions. Principal ligands for CB1 and CB2 receptors are summarized. Walter L, Stella N. Cannabinoids and neuroinflammation. Br J Pharmacol. 2004; 141: 775–785

The CB1 receptor is preferentially expressed in the brain and has been identified as the mediator of cannabis-induced neurobehavioral effects [56–58]. Radiolabeling studies have demonstrated specific binding sites in the brain, with expression localized to the basal ganglia, hippocampus, cerebellum, cerebral cortex, and brain stem [56, 57, 59] (Fig. 2). CB1 receptors are expressed on neuronal dendritic spines and axon terminals, on mature oligodendrocytes and their progenitors, and on astrocytes [60–62]. Localization of CB2 is predominantly in the immune system cells including B lymphocytes, macrophages, monocytes, and natural killer (NK) cells, in addition to peripheral tissues like the thymus and tonsils, and primarily mediates anti-inflammatory and immune-modulated-dependent actions [42] (Fig. 2). More recent studies have identified expression of the CB2 receptors in specific regions of the brain, spinal cord, and dorsal root ganglia and cells including oligodendrocytes and their progenitors, cerebellar neurons, and microglia. Overall central nervous system (CNS) expression levels of CB2 are lower than that of CB1 receptors [52, 61, 63]. Additional evidence suggests the existence of an additional cannabinoid receptor, but to date the lack of strong pharmacological and functional data has failed to confirm its identity.

2.4 Physiological Effects of Cannabinoids

Cannabinoid signaling through both the CB1 and CB2 receptors plays a significant role in several physiological and pathophysiological processes including cognitive and immune function [64]. The psychotropic effects of cannabis, commonly known as a feeling of "high," are mediated primarily via the CB1 receptor [65]. Cannabinoids have been shown to inhibit nociception, suppress motor activity, impair cognitive processes and short-term memory, and reduce body temperature [58, 66]. Contrasting reports have shown cannabinoids to induce aggressive behavior, hyperalgesia, increased motor activity, and elevation of body temperature [67–69]. These contrasting reports on cannabinoids in the CNS highlighting both inhibitory and stimulatory actions could be due to dose-dependent effects, with low CNS concentrations inducing stimulatory and higher concentrations inducing the conventional inhibitory effects [70, 71].

Cannabinoids, including Δ9-THC, have been shown to have significant immunomodulatory effects on cytokine production and lymphocyte phenotype, function and survival, as well as cell-mediated immunity [72–76]. In addition, cannabinoids have been reported to render protection from injury resulting from release of toxic mediators by infected cells [77–80]. For example, pulmonary alveolar macrophages of moderate cannabis smokers show suppressed antimicrobial activity, cytokine production, and cytokine responsiveness [81, 82]. Similar immunosuppressant effects on lymphocyte and alveolar macrophage function have been reported in nonhuman primates [83]. Early studies using mice and rats or rat and human immune cell cultures treated with Δ9-THC demonstrated suppression of cytotoxic T cell killing and phagocytosis and killing by macrophages [84–86]. Furthermore, the potential of cannabinoids to regulate the activation and balance of human Th1/Th2 cells by a CB2 receptor-dependent pathway has been supported by findings from several studies [87, 88]. Thus, CB2 receptor agonists have been proposed as effective therapeutic agents in chronic inflammatory diseases, such as inflammatory bowel disease, multiple sclerosis, HIV-1 infections, stroke, and Alzheimer's disease (AD), to name a few [64]. Not all clinical studies have demonstrated efficacy, which could be partly due to receptor specificity in the current compounds [89].

2.5 Cannabinoid Modulation of Neuroinflammation: Importance of Microglia

Neuroinflammation is a complex physiological process which involves removal of the injurious stimuli and culminates in repair of damaged tissue. Neuroinflammatory responses primarily involve neurons and glia (microglia, astrocytes, and oligodendrocytes). Glial cells play an active role supporting neurons and can also respond to stress and insults by inducing inflammatory processes to protect the brain. Specifically, following an injury and or insult, microglia, the resident macrophages in the CNS, actively migrate and proliferate, phagocytose and process antigens, and

upon activation synthesize and secrete proinflammatory cytokines including interleukin (IL)-1, IL-6, and tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α). Anti-inflammatory processes are activated in an effort to maintain homeostasis and counteract any excessive inflammation. When disrupted, this balance in glial activation results in severe chronic neuroinflammation, which if left uncontrolled promotes and propagates neurodegeneration. Evidence strongly suggests that activation of microglia and astrocytes and the accompanying increased expression of proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines often are associated with disease-, trauma-, and toxicant-induced damage to the CNS. While there are multiple risk factors for the development of neurodegenerative diseases, including genetic vulnerability, age, and the presence of chronic disease states (hypertension, diabetes, metabolic syndrome, obesity), several lines of evidence suggest that neuroinflammation is an underlying common mechanism during the initial stages of disease as well as throughout disease progression in several conditions including traumatic brain injury [90], chronic pain [91, 92], HIV encephalitis [93], multiple sclerosis (MS) [94] and neurodegenerative diseases such as AD [95], and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) [96]. Increasingly, reports in the literature strongly support an anti-inflammatory role of the cannabinoid system, with potential of modulation of progression of these inflammatory diseases [62, 97–100].

The importance of microglia as a central player in progression from neuroinflammation to neurodegeneration has received considerable attention [101]. Microglia primed by prior insults or genetically predisposed to vigorously respond to subsequent inflammatory insults lead to neuronal damage and dysfunction underlying several disease states. Cannabinoid receptors are highly expressed in microglial cells [102], and several lines of evidence indicate that a significant number of their neuroprotective effects are mediated through CB receptors on microglial cells. Several mechanisms are involved in cannabinoid modulation of microglial function including decreased cytokine production, chemotaxis, oxidative stress, and excitotoxicity [103, 104]. Hence, disease states characterized by chronic neuroinflammation progressing to neurodegeneration have been studied in preclinical and clinical settings to determine the potential role of cannabinoids in exerting protection or amelioration of disease progression. Salient findings supporting a role for cannabinoid modulation of disease are summarized in the following section.

2.6 Cannabinoid Immunomodulation in Disease Processes

2.6.1 Traumatic Brain Injury

Brain damage following traumatic brain injury (TBI) results from mechanical disruption of the brain tissue followed by an acute inflammatory response, breakdown of the blood–brain barrier (BBB), edema formation and swelling, infiltration of peripheral blood cells, and microglial activation of resident immunocompetent cells. This process leads to intrathecal release of numerous immune mediators such

as cytokines and chemokines. The neuroinflammatory cascade characterized by activation of astrocytes and microglia and an increased production of immune mediators, together with the excitotoxic and oxidative responses, are the principal underlying mechanisms of cell injury [105]. Although the early inflammatory response plays an important role in tissue repair and recovery [106], its sustained duration contributes both to the acute pathologic processes following TBI including cerebral edema and the longer-term neuronal damage and cognitive impairment [107]. Thus, timely modulation of neuroinflammation without interfering with the reparative contribution of activated glia is likely to improve outcomes. Reports in the literature indicate that CB agonists decrease glutamatergic toxicity, oxidative stress, inflammation, and brain edema [108]. Furthermore, the synthetic, nonpsychotropic cannabinoid HU-211 (dexanabinol) has been reported to effectively improve motor function recovery, reduce BBB breakdown, and attenuate cerebral edema in a model of closed head injury in rodents [109]. These preclinical findings have been confirmed in phase II clinical trials in severe closed head injury [110] but have not been confirmed in phase III clinical trials [111]. CB neuroprotective effects have also been reported in other injury models including optic nerve crush and global and focal ischemia [112]. Attenuation of proinflammatory responses has been identified as a potential mechanism responsible for improved outcomes [113]. The administration of the endocannabinoid 2-AG has also been shown to reduce brain edema and hippocampal cell death and to improve clinical recovery from closed head injury [114]. However, improvements are largely lost after the first 24 h following injury, and better outcomes were observed when the availability of endocannabinoids was enhanced by coadministration of glycerol esters, which are thought to inhibit their uptake and hydrolysis. Thus, endocannabinoid's short half-life limits their utility as a therapeutic intervention, but approaches that delay their degradation may be more effective in providing neuroprotection [115].

The BBB has emerged as an important site of cannabinoid immunomodulation. In vitro studies have demonstrated that synthetic cannabinoids downregulate vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 (VCAM-1) in brain endothelial cell cultures [116]. CBD, in particular, has received much attention recently due to its distinct actions and potential for anti-inflammatory effects. The ability of CBD to function as an inverse agonist at both CB1 and CB2 receptors and in addition to inhibit FAAH, the major enzyme for endocannabinoid breakdown, makes it an attractive therapeutic agent. CBD exerts immunosuppressive actions on macrophages and microglial cells and attenuates oxidative and nitrosative stress and has been shown to attenuate transendothelial migration of monocytes and barrier disruption [117].

2.6.2 Alzheimer's Disease

Alzheimer's disease (AD), the most common neurodegenerative disease, involves neuronal cell death, progressive cognitive decline, and senile dementia. The series of events and the underlying mechanisms remain poorly understood. The neuropathology of AD includes formation of extracellular *β-amyloid (A*β) plaques on neurons and intracellular neurofibrillary tangles (NFTs). The combined formation of

plaques and NFTs is accompanied by select neuronal and synaptic loss, neuronal death, and gliosis in the cortex and limbic system [118–120]. Neuroinflammation is present early in the disease and progresses to cognitive impairment with accelerated formation of amyloid plaques and NFTs. AD is characterized by extracellular accumulation of the Aβ as amyloid deposits preferentially in the hippocampus. Aß deposits promote inflammation, caspase activation, and oxidative stress [121] and are often surrounded by activated microglia and astrocytes increasing local inflammation [122]. Preclinical studies show that subchronic administration of cannabinoids attenuates proinflammatory cytokine gene expression in β-amyloid-injected mice and modulates microglial cell function, suggesting protective effects from AD pathology. Similarly, central cannabinoid agonist (WIN55212-2) administration has been shown to effectively prevent Aβ-induced microglial activation, cognitive impairment, and apoptosis [123]. More recent studies have provided evidence that cannabinoids inhibit the rise in microglial intracellular calcium resulting from high ATP concentrations such as those resulting from cell death and moreover and decrease the lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-mediated nitric oxide release [124]. In vitro studies also provide support for the role of microglia in the immunoprotective effects produced by cannabinoid agonists, involving inhibition of Aβ-induced activation and reduced neurotoxicity [125]. This is further supported by studies demonstrating CB2-mediated removal of Aß deposits in human brain sections through microglial-mediated mechanisms. Moreover, those studies showed upregulation of CB2 receptor expression in microglial cells located in the vicinity of plaques. Similar cannabinoid receptor upregulation has been reported in brains of patients with HIV encephalitis as discussed below. The proposed mechanism for cannabinoid-mediated amelioration of AD-like symptoms in preclinical models involves suppressed localized inflammation and enhanced microglial-mediated Aß phagocytosis [126]. An additional target for cannabinoid-mediated neuroimmunomodulation recently identified is the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPAR). PPAR agonists have been shown to improve cell survival, attenuate inflammatory responses, reduce amyloid plaque burden, and reverse behavioral impairment associated with AD [127–129]. Results from a rodent model of AD indicate that the neuroprotective effects attributed to synthetic cannabinoid agonists involve both CB1 and CB2 receptors and activation of PPAR-γ [130].

2.6.3 HIV Encephalitis

The approval of medicinal cannabis and the synthetic cannabinoid dronabinol for the treatment of anorexia in HIV/AIDS patients has raised the possibility of cannabinoid modulation of HIV disease progression. The rigorous examination of the impact of chronic cannabinoid administration on the course and progression of HIV infection is virtually impossible. Few clinical studies have attempted to obtain insight into this comorbid condition, and observations have been limited to the effects of short-term THC administration (21 days) [131]. While short-term use of cannabinoids, either oral or smoked, does not substantially elevate viral load in HIV-infected individuals receiving stable antiretroviral regimens, no significant

advantageous effects have been reported in the clinical literature. However, more recent investigations have provided significant evidence of cannabinoid modulation of multiple mechanisms and processes underlying HIV disease progression, including viral replication [132, 133]. In addition, studies have shown an increase in CB1 and CB2 receptor expression in brains from HIV encephalitis (HIVE) patients [134]. Similar findings have been reported in brains of simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV)-infected macaques. Specifically, expression of CB2 receptors has been identified mainly in perivascular macrophages, microglial nodules, and T lymphocytes of SIV-infected macaques [135] and on monocytes/macrophages in perivascular cuffs of postmortem HIV-1 encephalitic cases [133].

Controlled studies conducted in chronically THC-treated SIV-infected macaques have shown attenuated tissue inflammation and viral load and significant reduction of early morbidity and mortality [132, 136]. The close correlation between tissue inflammation and viral replication strongly suggests that attenuated inflammation is a relevant mechanism for cannabinoid modulation of SIV/HIV disease progression [137]. The potential role for cannabinoids in modulation of HIVE is complimented by reports from in vitro studies showing cannabinoid agonists inhibit HIV-1 Gp120-induced calcium influx and attenuate disruption of human brain microvascular endothelial cell tight junction proteins while also inhibiting the transmigration of human monocytes across the BBB and restoring barrier integrity following a challenge with HIV-1 Gp120 [138]. Additional reports have provided supporting evidence for CB2-mediated attenuation of macrophage migration to the HIV-1 protein Tat [139, 140]. Moreover, studies have shown that CB agonists and FAAH inhibitors, leading to higher levels of endocannabinoids, prevent the downregulation of tight junction proteins zonula occludens-1 and claudin-5 as well as inhibit HIV Gp120-mediated damage of brain endothelium [138]. Thus, suppression of inflammation and protection of BBB integrity have been proposed as relevant mechanisms for cannabinoid-mediated modulation of HIV disease progression.

In addition to suppression of inflammation and protection of BBB integrity, alternative mechanisms may contribute to cannabinoid modulation of HIV disease progression. Reports in the literature suggest that cannabinoids may regulate chemokine receptor signaling, specifically the activity of CXCR4, one of the co-receptors for viral entry. This has led to the prediction that CB2 receptor signal transduction can interact with that of CXCR4, leading to alterations including receptor desensitization, allosteric modulation, and dimerization. Support for this possibility comes from studies demonstrating that CB2 agonists decrease CXCR4-activation-mediated G-protein activity and MAPK phosphorylation, which is associated with suppression of viral replication [141].

2.6.4 Multiple Sclerosis

Multiple sclerosis (MS), a chronic inflammatory autoimmune disease, is characterized by degeneration of the myelin sheath (demyelination) covering axons leading to sensory disturbances, muscle weakness, uncontrollable muscle spasms, ataxia,

cognitive deficits, bladder dysfunction, fatigue, and problems with speech (dysarthria), swallowing (dysphagia), and sight [142]. Autoreactive T cells have been implicated in the initial process of myelin degradation and inflammation, leading to activated glial and astrocytes which produce proinflammatory cytokines and antibodies. Preclinical studies using rodent models of MS have shown that cannabinoid treatment ameliorates or reduces inflammation, improves motor function, delays clinical signs, and improves survival [143–146]. This clinical improvement and enhanced survival was shown to be associated with marked reduction of neuroinflammation in Δ9-THC-treated animals. Additional studies in a similar preclinical model have shown a significant reduction in neurodegeneration and the associated increased glutamate in the cerebral spinal fluid [147].

Encouraging findings from clinical studies have provided support for cannabinoid-mediated amelioration of disease. A clinical trial using cannabis extracts as a treatment for MS proved to be effective in reducing spasticity in a small cohort of patients [148]. Subsequent studies using blinded, randomized, placebo controls have not provided consistent results. One study using 16 MS patients with severe spasticity demonstrated no differences in spasticity after 4 weeks of treatment between placebo- and Δ9-THC-treated patients [149], while another study demonstrated improvements in pain, bladder dysfunction, and spasticity in some patients receiving Δ9-THC [150]. Among the factors that could contribute to the inconsistency of the results are doses of cannabinoids used (Δ9-THC vs. cannabidiol), route of administration (oral vs. smoked), and heterogeneity of the disease state at which the trial was conducted. More recently in the MUSEC (multiple sclerosis and extract of cannabis) trial, oral cannabinoid treatment for 12 weeks confirmed the positive finding in the CAMS (cannabinoids in multiple sclerosis) trial with a significant reduction in an 11-point spasticity scale in cannabinoid-treated patients [151–153]. While these are encouraging findings, long-term studies are warranted to establish whether cannabinoids will impact long-term disease management.

2.6.5 Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis

ALS, the most common form of adult motor neuron disease, is a chronic neuromuscular disease with progressive degeneration of both upper and lower motor neurons, with accompanying muscle weakness, wasting, and spasticity leading to complete paralysis and ultimately death from respiratory failure [154]. The majority of all ALS cases are sporadic (SALS) with a small percentage, 5–10 %, occurring as inherited or familial (FALS) forms of the disease. Evidence suggests the proposed mechanisms driving motor neuron cell death in the brain and spinal cord involve increased oxidative stress due to free radical toxicity and/or excessive glutamate activity and chronic inflammation [155, 156]. Mutations in several genes have been implicated in FALS with about 20 % involving the cytosolic copper-zinc superoxide dismutase (SOD1) gene. Accumulating evidence supports a role for the endocannabinoid system in pathophysiology and disease progression in rodent models of ALS. Chronic CB receptor agonist administration as well as genetic deletion of FAAH, leading to

increased levels of AEA, results in significant delay of disease progression [157] and prolonged survival [158, 159]. Relative increase in the spinal cord CB2 expression and receptor binding and function has been reported in rodent models of ALS [159]. This observation has been confirmed in postmortem spinal cords of ALS patients [160]. Finally, ALS patients self-report that cannabis improved symptoms associated with the disease, including alleviating pain and muscle spasticity, increasing appetite, and reducing depression [161]. Taken together, these findings provide support for a role for cannabinoid and particularly CB2 receptor mechanisms as a potential target for pharmacological therapy in patients with ALS.

2.6.6 Chronic Pain

While acute pain plays an adaptive role in human physiology, persistent or unresolved pain serves little purpose and imparts a devastating burden on individual lives and society as a whole. The Institute of Medicine estimates that pain-related medical care and compromised economic productivity costs the United States around one trillion dollars a year [162]. Chronic pain conditions are expected to increase with the aging population and given medical advances in reducing mortality after various traumas. Cannabis has been used for centuries to alleviate various inflammatory disease states, including pain [163]. Recent findings have postulated a role for cannabinoids in homeostatic pain modulation within the immune system [164] and along the neuraxis [165, 166] where they may act in a synergistic fashion with endogenous opioid systems [167, 168]. The homeostatic quality of cannabinoid analgesia refers to a particular potency in the context of hyperalgesic and inflammatory conditions [169], although cannabinoids may also play a critical role in placebo effects [170]. Various cannabinoid sources and formulations have been proven useful in the management of different types of pain, including oral THC/cannabidiol (Sativex) for arthritis [171] and smoked marijuana for HIV-associated sensory neuropathy [172]. A systematic review of randomized, controlled trials examining the use of cannabinoids for the treatment of chronic noncancer pain revealed that cannabinoids are safe and effective in a variety of pain conditions [173].

Nevertheless, the psychoactive properties of cannabinoids appear to represent a substantial obstacle to their beneficial use in chronic pain states, and this concern has driven the search for peripherally selective cannabinoid ligands [174–176]. According to their almost complete restriction to spinal neurons and immune cells, the CB2 receptor appears to represent the most viable receptor target for analgesic intervention, and CB2R activation is indeed antinociceptive in preclinical models of both mechanical and thermal hyperalgesia in the absence of cognitive disruption [177–182]. In addition, selective inhibition of either FAAH [115, 183] or MAGL [184] also appears to produce robust antinociception without untoward psychomimetic effects. Unfortunately, Schlosburg and colleagues found that chronic MAGL inhibition led to analgesic tolerance and even physical dependence [185]. However, the same study revealed that analgesic efficacy was preserved following chronic FAAH inhibition, pointing to FAAH as a more suitable target for analgesia without

an elevated risk of dependence. Interestingly, a recent report suggests that the ability of THC to reduce the unpleasantness of pain is regulated by the amygdala [186], suggesting the importance of cannabinoid signaling within central brain regions in mediating the emotional dimension of pain, which may play a substantial role in chronic pain conditions [187, 188].

3 Perspectives

Cannabinoid effects, whether resulting from phytocannabinoids, endocannabinoids, or synthetic analogs, are now known to encompass significant organ system physiological modulation that extends beyond the initially described psychoactive responses. The identification of an endogenous cannabinoid system and the improved understanding of the mechanisms regulating the availability of these ligands have provided an additional approach for capitalizing on their therapeutic value. Recognition of systemic cannabinoid receptor expression and their tissue-specific distribution has unveiled the possibility of therapeutically targeting their function to modulate disease progression, particularly in conditions associated with chronic inflammation. Continued progress in understanding of cannabinoid pharmacology and pharmacokinetics is likely to lead to additional medical conditions that can benefit from targeted cannabinoid system modulation.

Acknowledgements The authors acknowledge support from NIDA RO1DA030053, DOB W81XWH-11-2-0011 (PM), and NIAAA T32AA007577 (PK), K99AA020839 (SE).

References

1. Dewey WL. Cannabinoid pharmacology. Pharmacol Rev. 1986;38:151–78.
2. Hollister LE. Health aspects of cannabis. Pharmacol Rev. 1986;38:1–20.
3. Mechoulam R. Cannabinoids as therapeutic agents. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1986.
4. Campbell TR. A dictionary of Assyrian botany. London: British Academy; 1949.
5. Mechoulam R, Braun P, Gaoni Y. A stereospecific synthesis of (-)-delta 1- and (-)-delta 1(6)-tetrahydrocannabinols. J Am Chem Soc. 1967;89:4552–4.
6. Gaoni Y, Mechoulam R. The isolation and structure of delta-1-tetrahydrocannabinol and other neutral cannabinoids from hashish. J Am Chem Soc. 1971;93:217–24.
7. Hollister LE. Actions of various marihuana derivatives in man. Pharmacol Rev. 1971;23:349–57.
8. Lemberger L, Axelrod J, Kopin IJ. Metabolism and disposition of delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol in man. Pharmacol Rev. 1971;23:371–80.
9. Kiplinger GF, Manno JE. Dose-response relationships to cannabis in human subjects. Pharmacol Rev. 1971;23:339–47.
10. Mechoulam R, Feigenbaum JJ, Lander N, Segal M, Jarbe TU, Hiltunen AJ, Consroe P. Enantiomeric cannabinoids: stereospecificity of psychotropic activity. Experientia. 1988;44:762–4.
11. Loewe S. Studies on the pharmacology and acute toxicity of compounds with marihuana activity. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1946;88:154–61.

12. Perez-Reyes M, Timmons MC, Davis KH, Wall EM. A comparison of the pharmacological activity in man of intravenously administered delta9-tetrahydrocannabinol, cannabinol, and cannabidiol. Experientia. 1973;29:1368–9.
13. WHO | Cannabis. 2013; http://www.who.int/substance_abuse/facts/cannabis/en/. Accessed on June 9, 2013.
14. ElSohly MA, Ross SA, Mehmedic Z, Arafat R, Yi B, Banahan 3rd BF. Potency trends of delta9-THC and other cannabinoids in confiscated marijuana from 1980-1997. J Forensic Sci. 2000;45:24–30.
15. Licata M, Verri P, Beduschi G. Delta9 THC content in illicit cannabis products over the period 1997-2004 (first four months). Ann Ist Super Sanita. 2005;41:483–5.
16. Ohlsson A, Lindgren J, Wahlen A, Agurell S, Hollister LE, Gillespie HK. Plasma delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol concentrations and clinical effects after oral and intravenous administration and smoking. Clin Pharmacol Ther. 1980;28:409–16.
17. Agurell S, Halldin M, Lindgren JE, Ohlsson A, Widman M, Gillespie H, Hollister L. Pharmacokinetics and metabolism of delta 1-tetrahydrocannabinol and other cannabinoids with emphasis on man. Pharmacol Rev. 1986;38:21–43.
18. Pertwee RG. Receptors and channels targeted by synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonists and antagonists. Curr Med Chem. 2010;17:1360–81.
19. Einhorn LH, Nagy C, Furnas B, Williams SD. Nabilone: an effective antiemetic in patients receiving cancer chemotherapy. J Clin Pharmacol. 1981;21:64S–9.
20. Plasse TF, Gorter RW, Krasnow SH, Lane M, Shepard KV, Wadleigh RG. Recent clinical experience with dronabinol. Pharmacol Biochem Behav. 1991;40:695–700.
21. Barnes MP. Sativex: clinical efficacy and tolerability in the treatment of symptoms of multiple sclerosis and neuropathic pain. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2006;7:607–15.
22. Grotenhermen F. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of cannabinoids. Clin Pharmacokinet. 2003;42:327–60.
23. Devane WA, Hanus L, Breuer A, Pertwee RG, Stevenson LA, Griffin G, Gibson D, Mandelbaum A, Etinger A, Mechoulam R. Isolation and structure of a brain constituent that binds to the cannabinoid receptor. Science. 1992;258:1946–9.
24. Mechoulam R, Ben-Shabat S, Hanus L, Ligumsky M, Kaminski NE, Schatz AR, Gopher A, Almog S, Martin BR, Compton DR. Identification of an endogenous 2-monoglyceride, present in canine gut, that binds to cannabinoid receptors. Biochem Pharmacol. 1995;50:83–90.
25. Sugiura T, Kondo S, Sukagawa A, Nakane S, Shinoda A, Itoh K, Yamashita A, Waku K. 2-Arachidonoylglycerol: a possible endogenous cannabinoid receptor ligand in brain. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1995;215:89–97.
26. Hanus L, Abu-Lafi S, Fride E, Breuer A, Vogel Z, Shalev DE, Kustanovich I, Mechoulam R. 2-arachidonyl glyceryl ether, an endogenous agonist of the cannabinoid CB1 receptor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98:3662–5.
27. Di Marzo V, Melck D, Bisogno T, De Petrocellis L. Endocannabinoids: endogenous cannabinoid receptor ligands with neuromodulatory action. Trends Neurosci. 1998;21:521–8.
28. Piomelli D, Giuffrida A, Calignano A, Rodriguez de Fonseca F. The endocannabinoid system as a target for therapeutic drugs. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2000;21:218–24.
29. Stella N, Schweitzer P, Piomelli D. A second endogenous cannabinoid that modulates long-term potentiation. Nature. 1997;388:773–8.
30. Di Marzo V, Hill MP, Bisogno T, Crossman AR, Brotchie JM. Enhanced levels of endogenous cannabinoids in the globus pallidus are associated with a reduction in movement in an animal model of Parkinson's disease. FASEB J. 2000;14:1432–8.
31. Pertwee RG. Pharmacology of cannabinoid CB1 and CB2 receptors. Pharmacol Ther. 1997;74:129–80.
32. Felder CC, Glass M. Cannabinoid receptors and their endogenous agonists. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol. 1998;38:179–200.
33. Pertwee R. The evidence for the existence of cannabinoid receptors. Gen Pharmacol. 1993;24:811–24.

34. Bari M, Battista N, Fezza F, Gasperi V, Maccarrone M. New insights into endocannabinoid degradation and its therapeutic potential. Mini Rev Med Chem. 2006;6:257–68.
35. Di Marzo V, Petrosino S. Endocannabinoids and the regulation of their levels in health and disease. Curr Opin Lipidol. 2007;18:129–40.
36. Maccarrone M, Bari M, Battista N, Finazzi-Agro A. Endocannabinoid degradation, endotoxic shock and inflammation. Curr Drug Targets Inflamm Allergy. 2002;1:53–63.
37. Cravatt BF, Giang DK, Mayfield SP, Boger DL, Lerner RA, Gilula NB. Molecular characterization of an enzyme that degrades neuromodulatory fatty-acid amides. Nature. 1996;384: 83–7.
38. Elphick MR, Egertova M. The neurobiology and evolution of cannabinoid signalling. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci. 2001;356:381–408.
39. Goparaju SK, Ueda N, Yamaguchi H, Yamamoto S. Anandamide amidohydrolase reacting with 2-arachidonoylglycerol, another cannabinoid receptor ligand. FEBS Lett. 1998;422:69–73.
40. Jhaveri MD, Richardson D, Chapman V. Endocannabinoid metabolism and uptake: novel targets for neuropathic and inflammatory pain. Br J Pharmacol. 2007;152:624–32.
41. Matsuda LA, Lolait SJ, Brownstein MJ, Young AC, Bonner TI. Structure of a cannabinoid receptor and functional expression of the cloned cDNA. Nature. 1990;346:561–4.
42. Munro S, Thomas KL, Abu-Shaar M. Molecular characterization of a peripheral receptor for cannabinoids. Nature. 1993;365:61–5.
43. Howlett AC, Barth F, Bonner TI, Cabral G, Casellas P, Devane WA, Felder CC, Herkenham M, Mackie K, Martin BR, Mechoulam R, Pertwee RG. International union of pharmacology. XXVII. Classification of cannabinoid receptors. Pharmacol Rev. 2002;54:161–202.
44. Howlett AC, Fleming RM. Cannabinoid inhibition of adenylate cyclase. Pharmacology of the response in neuroblastoma cell membranes. Mol Pharmacol. 1984;26:532–8.
45. Howlett AC. Cannabinoid inhibition of adenylate cyclase. Biochemistry of the response in neuroblastoma cell membranes. Mol Pharmacol. 1985;27:429–36.
46. Howlett AC, Qualy JM, Khachatrian LL. Involvement of Gi in the inhibition of adenylate cyclase by cannabimimetic drugs. Mol Pharmacol. 1986;29:307–13.
47. Wartmann M, Campbell D, Subramanian A, Burstein SH, Davis RJ. The MAP kinase signal transduction pathway is activated by the endogenous cannabinoid anandamide. FEBS Lett. 1995;359:133–6.
48. Bouaboula M, Poinot-Chazel C, Marchand J, Canat X, Bourrie B, Rinaldi-Carmona M, Calandra B, Le Fur G, Casellas P. Signaling pathway associated with stimulation of CB2 peripheral cannabinoid receptor. Involvement of both mitogen-activated protein kinase and induction of Krox-24 expression. Eur J Biochem. 1996;237:704–11.
49. Davis MI, Ronesi J, Lovinger DM. A predominant role for inhibition of the adenylate cyclase/ protein kinase A pathway in ERK activation by cannabinoid receptor 1 in N1E-115 neuroblastoma cells. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:48973–80.
50. Rueda D, Galve-Roperh I, Haro A, Guzman M. The CB(1) cannabinoid receptor is coupled to the activation of c-Jun N-terminal kinase. Mol Pharmacol. 2000;58:814–20.
51. Derkinderen P, Ledent C, Parmentier M, Girault JA. Cannabinoids activate p38 mitogen-activated protein kinases through CB1 receptors in hippocampus. J Neurochem. 2001;77: 957–60.
52. Howlett AC. Pharmacology of cannabinoid receptors. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol. 1995;35:607–34.
53. Howlett AC, Mukhopadhyay S. Cellular signal transduction by anandamide and 2-arachidonoylglycerol. Chem Phys Lipids. 2000;108:53–70.
54. Mackie K, Stella N. Cannabinoid receptors and endocannabinoids: evidence for new players. AAPS J. 2006;8:E298–306.
55. Wilson RI, Nicoll RA. Endogenous cannabinoids mediate retrograde signalling at hippocampal synapses. Nature. 2001;410:588–92.
56. Herkenham M, Lynn AB, Little MD, Johnson MR, Melvin LS, de Costa BR, Rice KC. Cannabinoid receptor localization in brain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1990;87:1932–6.

57. Westlake TM, Howlett AC, Bonner TI, Matsuda LA, Herkenham M. Cannabinoid receptor binding and messenger RNA expression in human brain: an in vitro receptor autoradiography and in situ hybridization histochemistry study of normal aged and Alzheimer's brains. Neuroscience. 1994;63:637–52.
58. Ameri A. The effects of cannabinoids on the brain. Prog Neurobiol. 1999;58:315–48.
59. Devane WA, Dysarz 3rd FA, Johnson MR, Melvin LS, Howlett AC. Determination and characterization of a cannabinoid receptor in rat brain. Mol Pharmacol. 1988;34:605–13.
60. Ong WY, Mackie K. A light and electron microscopic study of the CB1 cannabinoid receptor in primate brain. Neuroscience. 1999;92:1177–91.
61. Molina-Holgado E, Vela JM, Arevalo-Martin A, Almazan G, Molina-Holgado F, Borrell J, Guaza C. Cannabinoids promote oligodendrocyte progenitor survival: involvement of cannabinoid receptors and phosphatidylinositol-3 kinase/Akt signaling. J Neurosci. 2002;22:9742–53.
62. Molina-Holgado F, Molina-Holgado E, Guaza C, Rothwell NJ. Role of CB1 and CB2 receptors in the inhibitory effects of cannabinoids on lipopolysaccharide-induced nitric oxide release in astrocyte cultures. J Neurosci Res. 2002;67:829–36.
63. Skaper SD, Giusti P, Facci L. Microglia and mast cells: two tracks on the road to neuroinflammation. FASEB J. 2012;26:3103–17.
64. Rom S, Persidsky Y. Cannabinoid receptor 2: potential role in immunomodulation and neuroinflammation. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2013;8(3):608–20.
65. Huestis MA, Gorelick DA, Heishman SJ, Preston KL, Nelson RA, Moolchan ET, Frank RA. Blockade of effects of smoked marijuana by the CB1-selective cannabinoid receptor antagonist SR141716. Arch Gen Psychiatry. 2001;58:322–8.
66. Chaperon F, Thiebot MH. Behavioral effects of cannabinoid agents in animals. Crit Rev Neurobiol. 1999;13:243–81.
67. Davis WM, Moreton JE, King WT, Pace HB. Marihuana on locomotor activity: biphasic effect and tolerance development. Res Commun Chem Pathol Pharmacol. 1972;3:29–35.
68. Taylor DA, Fennessy MR. Biphasic nature of the effects of delta9-tetrahydrocannabinol on body temperature and brain amines of the rat. Eur J Pharmacol. 1977;46:93–9.
69. Bash R, Rubovitch V, Gafni M, Sarne Y. The stimulatory effect of cannabinoids on calcium uptake is mediated by Gs GTP-binding proteins and cAMP formation. Neurosignals. 2003;12:39–44.
70. Sulcova E, Mechoulam R, Fride E. Biphasic effects of anandamide. Pharmacol Biochem Behav. 1998;59:347–52.
71. Rubovitch V, Gafni M, Sarne Y. The cannabinoid agonist DALN positively modulates L-type voltage-dependent calcium-channels in N18TG2 neuroblastoma cells. Brain Res Mol Brain Res. 2002;101:93–102.
72. Klein TW. The cannabinoid system and immune modulation. J Leukoc Biol. 2003;74: 486–96.
73. Friedman H, Newton C, Klein TW. Microbial infections, immunomodulation, and drugs of abuse. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2003;16:209–19.
74. Friedman H, Klein TW, Newton C, Daaka Y. Marijuana, receptors and immunomodulation. Adv Exp Med Biol. 1995;373:103–13.
75. Zhu W, Friedman H, Klein TW. Delta9-tetrahydrocannabinol induces apoptosis in macrophages and lymphocytes: involvement of Bcl-2 and caspase-1. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1998;286:1103–9.
76. Newton CA, Klein TW, Friedman H. Secondary immunity to Legionella pneumophila and Th1 activity are suppressed by delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol injection. Infect Immun. 1994;62:4015–20.
77. Klein TW, Newton CA, Nakachi N, Friedman H. Delta 9-tetrahydrocannabinol treatment suppresses immunity and early IFN-gamma, IL-12, and IL-12 receptor beta 2 responses to Legionella pneumophila infection. J Immunol. 2000;164:6461–6.
78. Faubert Kaplan BL, Kaminski NE. Cannabinoids inhibit the activation of ERK MAPK in PMA/Io-stimulated mouse splenocytes. Int Immunopharmacol. 2003;3:1503–10.

79. Ehrhart J, Obregon D, Mori T, Hou H, Sun N, Bai Y, Klein T, Fernandez F, Tan J, Shytle RD. Stimulation of cannabinoid receptor 2 (CB2) suppresses microglial activation. J Neuroinflammation. 2005;2:29.
80. Fischer-Stenger K, Dove Pettit DA, Cabral GA. Delta 9-tetrahydrocannabinol inhibition of tumor necrosis factor-alpha: suppression of post-translational events. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1993;267:1558–65.
81. Baldwin GC, Tashkin DP, Buckley DM, Park AN, Dubinett SM, Roth MD. Marijuana and cocaine impair alveolar macrophage function and cytokine production. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 1997;156:1606–13.
82. Shay AH, Choi R, Whittaker K, Salehi K, Kitchen CM, Tashkin DP, Roth MD, Baldwin GC. Impairment of antimicrobial activity and nitric oxide production in alveolar macrophages from smokers of marijuana and cocaine. J Infect Dis. 2003;187:700–4.
83. Cabral GA, Vasquez R. Effects of marijuana on macrophage function. Adv Exp Med Biol. 1991;288:93–105.
84. Klein TW, Kawakami Y, Newton C, Friedman H. Marijuana components suppress induction and cytolytic function of murine cytotoxic T cells in vitro and in vivo. J Toxicol Environ Health. 1991;32:465–77.
85. Coffey RG, Yamamoto Y, Snella E, Pross S. Tetrahydrocannabinol inhibition of macrophage nitric oxide production. Biochem Pharmacol. 1996;52:743–51.
86. McCoy KL, Matveyeva M, Carlisle SJ, Cabral GA. Cannabinoid inhibition of the processing of intact lysozyme by macrophages: evidence for CB2 receptor participation. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 1999;289:1620–5.
87. Pross SH, Klein TW, Newton CA, Smith J, Widen R, Friedman H. Differential suppression of T-cell subpopulations by thc (delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol). Int J Immunopharmacol. 1990;12:539–44.
88. Yuan M, Kiertscher SM, Cheng Q, Zoumalan R, Tashkin DP, Roth MD. Delta 9-Tetrahydrocannabinol regulates Th1/Th2 cytokine balance in activated human T cells. J Neuroimmunol. 2002;133:124–31.
89. Maas AI, Murray G, Henney H, Kassem N, Legrand V, Mangelus M, Muizelaar J, Stocchetti N, Knoller N. Efficacy and safety of dexanabinol in severe traumatic brain injury: results of a phase III randomised, placebo-controlled, clinical trial. Lancet Neurol. 2006;5:38–45.
90. Dusart I, Schwab ME. Secondary cell death and the inflammatory reaction after dorsal hemisection of the rat spinal cord. Eur J Neurosci. 1994;6:712–24.
91. Raghavendra V, Tanga FY, DeLeo JA. Complete Freund's adjuvant-induced peripheral inflammation evokes glial activation and proinflammatory cytokine expression in the CNS. Eur J Neurosci. 2004;20:467–73.
92. Milligan ED, Watkins LR. Pathological and protective roles of glia in chronic pain. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2009;10:23–36.
93. Gendelman HE, Lipton SA, Tardieu M, Bukrinsky MI, Nottet HS. The neuropathogenesis of HIV-1 infection. J Leukoc Biol. 1994;56:389–98.
94. Martino G, Adorini L, Rieckmann P, Hillert J, Kallmann B, Comi G, Filippi M. Inflammation in multiple sclerosis: the good, the bad, and the complex. Lancet Neurol. 2002;1:499–509.
95. McGeer PL, Rogers J. Anti-inflammatory agents as a therapeutic approach to Alzheimer's disease. Neurology. 1992;42:447–9.
96. Rothstein JD, Martin LJ, Kuncl RW. Decreased glutamate transport by the brain and spinal cord in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 1992;326:1464–8.
97. Ramirez SH, Hasko J, Skuba A, Fan S, Dykstra H, McCormick R, Reichenbach N, Krizbai I, Mahadevan A, Zhang M, Tuma R, Son YJ, Persidsky Y. Activation of cannabinoid receptor 2 attenuates leukocyte-endothelial cell interactions and blood-brain barrier dysfunction under inflammatory conditions. J Neurosci. 2012;32:4004–16.
98. Shohami E, Cohen-Yeshurun A, Magid L, Algali M, Mechoulam R. Endocannabinoids and traumatic brain injury. Br J Pharmacol. 2011;163:1402–10.
99. Correa F, Mestre L, Molina-Holgado E, Arevalo-Martin A, Docagne F, Romero E, Molina-Holgado F, Borrell J, Guaza C. The role of cannabinoid system on immune modulation: therapeutic implications on CNS inflammation. Mini Rev Med Chem. 2005;5:671–5.

100. Cabral GA, Griffin-Thomas L. Emerging role of the cannabinoid receptor CB2 in immune regulation: therapeutic prospects for neuroinflammation. Expert Rev Mol Med. 2009;11:e3.
101. Cunningham C. Microglia and neurodegeneration: the role of systemic inflammation. Glia. 2013;61:71–90.
102. Stella N. Cannabinoid and cannabinoid-like receptors in microglia, astrocytes, and astrocytomas. Glia. 2010;58:1017–30.
103. Cabral GA, Marciano-Cabral F. Cannabinoid receptors in microglia of the central nervous system: immune functional relevance. J Leukoc Biol. 2005;78:1192–7.
104. Stella N. Endocannabinoid signaling in microglial cells. Neuropharmacology. 2009;56 Suppl 1:244–53.
105. Werner C, Engelhard K. Pathophysiology of traumatic brain injury. Br J Anaesth. 2007;99:4–9.
106. Lenzlinger PM, Morganti-Kossmann M, Laurer HL, McIntosh TK. The duality of the inflammatory response to traumatic brain injury. Mol Neurobiol. 2001;24:169–81.
107. Lloyd E, Somera-Molina K, Van Eldik LJ, Watterson DM, Wainwright MS. Suppression of acute proinflammatory cytokine and chemokine upregulation by post-injury administration of a novel small molecule improves long-term neurologic outcome in a mouse model of traumatic brain injury. J Neuroinflammation. 2008;5:28.
108. Biegon A. Cannabinoids as neuroprotective agents in traumatic brain injury. Curr Pharm Des. 2004;10:2177–83.
109. Nadler V, Biegon A, Beit-Yannai E, Adamchik J, Shohami E. 45Ca accumulation in rat brain after closed head injury; attenuation by the novel neuroprotective agent HU-211. Brain Res. 1995;685:1–11.
110. Knoller N, Levi L, Shoshan I, Reichenthal E, Razon N, Rappaport ZH, Biegon A. Dexanabinol (HU-211) in the treatment of severe closed head injury: a randomized, placebo-controlled, phase II clinical trial. Crit Care Med. 2002;30:548–54.
111. Maas AI, Murray G, Henney 3rd H, Kassem N, Legrand V, Mangelus M, Muizelaar JP, Stocchetti N, Knoller N, Pharmos TBI investigators. Efficacy and safety of dexanabinol in severe traumatic brain injury: results of a phase III randomised, placebo-controlled, clinical trial. Lancet Neurol. 2006;5:38–45.
112. Biegon A, Joseph AB. Development of HU-211 as a neuroprotectant for ischemic brain damage. Neurol Res. 1995;17:275–80.
113. Panikashvili D, Shein NA, Mechoulam R, Trembovler V, Kohen R, Alexandrovich A, Shohami E. The endocannabinoid 2-AG protects the blood-brain barrier after closed head injury and inhibits mRNA expression of proinflammatory cytokines. Neurobiol Dis. 2006;22:257–64.
114. Panikashvili D, Simeonidou C, Ben-Shabat S, Hanus L, Breuer A, Mechoulam R, Shohami E. An endogenous cannabinoid (2-AG) is neuroprotective after brain injury. Nature. 2001;413:527–31.
115. Schlosburg JE, Kinsey SG, Lichtman AH. Targeting fatty acid amide hydrolase (FAAH) to treat pain and inflammation. AAPS J. 2009;11:39–44.
116. Mestre L, Docagne F, Correa F, Loria F, Hernangomez M, Borrell J, Guaza C. A cannabinoid agonist interferes with the progression of a chronic model of multiple sclerosis by downregulating adhesion molecules. Mol Cell Neurosci. 2009;40:258–66.
117. Booz GW. Cannabidiol as an emergent therapeutic strategy for lessening the impact of inflammation on oxidative stress. Free Radic Biol Med. 2011;51:1054–61.
118. Dickson DW. Neuropathological diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease: a perspective from longitudinal clinicopathological studies. Neurobiol Aging. 1997;18:S21–6.
119. Selkoe DJ. The cell biology of beta-amyloid precursor protein and presenilin in Alzheimer's disease. Trends Cell Biol. 1998;8:447–53.
120. Bayer TA, Wirths O, Majtenyi K, Hartmann T, Multhaup G, Beyreuther K, Czech C. Key factors in Alzheimer's disease: beta-amyloid precursor protein processing, metabolism and intraneuronal transport. Brain Pathol. 2001;11:1–11.

121. Santos MJ, Quintanilla RA, Toro A, Grandy R, Dinamarca MC, Godoy JA, Inestrosa NC. Peroxisomal proliferation protects from beta-amyloid neurodegeneration. J Biol Chem. 2005;280:41057–68.
122. Campbell VA, Gowran A. Alzheimer's disease; taking the edge off with cannabinoids? Br J Pharmacol. 2009;152:655–62.
123. Ramirez BG, Blazquez C, Gomez del Pulgar T, Guzman M, de Ceballos ML. Prevention of Alzheimer's disease pathology by cannabinoids: neuroprotection mediated by blockade of microglial activation. J Neurosci. 2005;25:1904–13.
124. Martin-Moreno AM, Reigada D, Ramirez BG, Mechoulam R, Innamorato N, Cuadrado A, de Ceballos ML. Cannabidiol and other cannabinoids reduce microglial activation in vitro and in vivo: relevance to Alzheimer's disease. Mol Pharmacol. 2011;79:964–73.
125. Marchalant Y, Cerbai F, Brothers HM, Wenk GL. Cannabinoid receptor stimulation is anti-inflammatory and improves memory in old rats. Neurobiol Aging. 2008;29:1894–901.
126. Tolon RM, Nunez E, Pazos MR, Benito C, Castillo AI, Martinez-Orgado JA, Romero J. The activation of cannabinoid CB2 receptors stimulates in situ and in vitro beta-amyloid removal by human macrophages. Brain Res. 2009;1283:148–54.
127. Kapadia R, Yi JH, Vemuganti R. Mechanisms of anti-inflammatory and neuroprotective actions of PPAR-gamma agonists. Front Biosci. 2008;13:1813–26.
128. Sundararajan S, Jiang Q, Heneka M, Landreth G. PPARgamma as a therapeutic target in central nervous system diseases. Neurochem Int. 2006;49:136–44.
129. Jiang Q, Heneka M, Landreth GE. The role of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma (PPARgamma) in Alzheimer's disease: therapeutic implications. CNS Drugs. 2008;22:1–14.
130. Fakhfouri G, Ahmadiani A, Rahimian R, Grolla AA, Moradi F, Haeri A. WIN55212-2 attenuates amyloid-beta-induced neuroinflammation in rats through activation of cannabinoid receptors and PPAR-gamma pathway. Neuropharmacology. 2012;63(4):653–66.
131. Abrams DI, Hilton JF, Leiser RJ, Shade SB, Elbeik TA, Aweeka FT, Benowitz NL, Bredt BM, Kosel B, Aberg JA, Deeks SG, Mitchell TF, Mulligan K, Bacchetti P, McCune JM, Schambelan M. Short-term effects of cannabinoids in patients with HIV-1 infection: a randomized, placebo-controlled clinical trial. Ann Intern Med. 2003;139:258–66.
132. Molina PE, Winsauer P, Zhang P, Walker E, Birke L, Amedee A, Stouwe CV, Troxclair D, McGoey R, Varner K, Byerley L, LaMotte L. Cannabinoid administration attenuates the progression of simian immunodeficiency virus. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 2011;27:585–92.
133. Ramirez SH, Reichenbach NL, Fan S, Rom S, Merkel SF, Wang X, Ho WZ, Persidsky Y. Attenuation of HIV-1 replication in macrophages by cannabinoid receptor 2 agonists. J Leukoc Biol. 2013;93:801–10.
134. Cosenza-Nashat MA, Bauman A, Zhao ML, Morgello S, Suh HS, Lee SC. Cannabinoid receptor expression in HIV encephalitis and HIV-associated neuropathologic comorbidities. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 2011;37:464–83.
135. Benito C, Tolon RM, Pazos MR, Nunez E, Castillo AI, Romero J. Cannabinoid CB2 receptors in human brain inflammation. Br J Pharmacol. 2008;153:277–85.
136. Winsauer PJ, Molina PE, Amedee AM, Filipeanu CM, McGoey RR, Troxclair DA, Walker EM, Birke LL, Stouwe CV, Howard JM, Leonard ST, Moerschbaecher JM, Lewis PB. Tolerance to chronic delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (Delta(9)-THC) in rhesus macaques infected with simian immunodeficiency virus. Exp Clin Psychopharmacol. 2011;19:154–72.
137. Molina PE, Amedee A, LeCapitaine NJ, Zabaleta J, Mohan M, Winsauer P, Vande SC. Cannabinoid neuroimmune modulation of SIV disease. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2011;6:516–27.
138. Lu TS, Avraham HK, Seng S, Tachado SD, Koziel H, Makriyannis A, Avraham S. Cannabinoids inhibit HIV-1 Gp120-mediated insults in brain microvascular endothelial cells. J Immunol. 2008;181:6406–16.
139. Fraga D, Raborn ES, Ferreira GA, Cabral GA. Cannabinoids Inhibit Migration of Microglial-like Cells to the HIV Protein Tat. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2011;6(4):566–77.

140. Raborn ES, Cabral GA. Cannabinoid inhibition of macrophage migration to the trans-activating (Tat) protein of HIV-1 is linked to the CB(2) cannabinoid receptor. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2010;333:319–27.
141. Costantino CM, Gupta A, Yewdall AW, Dale BM, Devi LA, Chen BK. Cannabinoid receptor 2-mediated attenuation of CXCR4-tropic HIV infection in primary CD4+ T cells. PLoS One. 2012;7:e33961.
142. Arevalo-Martin A, Garcia-Ovejero D, Gomez O, Rubio-Araiz A, Navarro-Galve B, Guaza C, Molina-Holgado E, Molina-Holgado F. CB2 cannabinoid receptors as an emerging target for demyelinating diseases: from neuroimmune interactions to cell replacement strategies. Br J Pharmacol. 2008;153:216–25.
143. Lyman WD, Sonett JR, Brosnan CF, Elkin R, Bornstein MB. Delta 9-tetrahydrocannabinol: a novel treatment for experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Neuroimmunol. 1989;23: 73–81.
144. Arevalo-Martin A, Vela JM, Molina-Holgado E, Borrell J, Guaza C. Therapeutic action of cannabinoids in a murine model of multiple sclerosis. J Neurosci. 2003;23:2511–6.
145. Croxford JL. Therapeutic potential of cannabinoids in CNS disease. CNS Drugs. 2003;17: 179–202.
146. Downer EJ. Cannabinoids and innate immunity: taking a toll on neuroinflammation. ScientificWorldJournal. 2011;11:855–65.
147. Fujiwara M, Egashira N. New perspectives in the studies on endocannabinoid and cannabis: abnormal behaviors associate with CB1 cannabinoid receptor and development of therapeutic application. J Pharmacol Sci. 2004;96:362–6.
148. Petro DJ, Ellenberger Jr C. Treatment of human spasticity with delta 9-tetrahydrocannabinol. J Clin Pharmacol. 1981;21:413S–6.
149. Killestein J, Hoogervorst EL, Reif M, Kalkers NF, Van Loenen AC, Staats PG, Gorter RW, Uitdehaag BM, Polman CH. Safety, tolerability, and efficacy of orally administered cannabinoids in MS. Neurology. 2002;58:1404–7.
150. Wade DT, Robson P, House H, Makela P, Aram J. A preliminary controlled study to determine whether whole-plant cannabis extracts can improve intractable neurogenic symptoms. Clin Rehabil. 2003;17:21–9.
151. Zajicek JP, Hobart JC, Slade A, Barnes D, Mattison PG, MUSEC Research Group. Multiple sclerosis and extract of cannabis: results of the MUSEC trial. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2012;83:1125–32.
152. Zajicek JP, Sanders HP, Wright DE, Vickery PJ, Ingram WM, Reilly SM, Nunn AJ, Teare LJ, Fox PJ, Thompson AJ. Cannabinoids in multiple sclerosis (CAMS) study: safety and efficacy data for 12 months follow up. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2005;76:1664–9.
153. Zajicek J, Fox P, Sanders H, Wright D, Vickery J, Nunn A, Thompson A, UK MS Research Group. Cannabinoids for treatment of spasticity and other symptoms related to multiple sclerosis (CAMS study): multicentre randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet. 2003;362:1517–26.
154. Qureshi M, Schoenfeld DA, Paliwal Y, Shui A, Cudkowicz ME. The natural history of ALS is changing: improved survival. Amyotroph Lateral Scler. 2009;10:324–31.
155. Weydt P, Moller T. Neuroinflammation in the pathogenesis of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Neuroreport. 2005;16:527–31.
156. Miller RG, Jackson CE, Kasarskis EJ, England JD, Forshew D, Johnston W, Kalra S, Katz JS, Mitsumoto H, Rosenfeld J, Shoesmith C, Strong MJ, Woolley SC. Practice parameter update: the care of the patient with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: multidisciplinary care, symptom management, and cognitive/behavioral impairment (an evidence-based review): report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology. 2009;73:1227–33.
157. Bilsland LG, Dick JR, Pryce G, Petrosino S, Di Marzo V, Baker D, Greensmith L. Increasing cannabinoid levels by pharmacological and genetic manipulation delay disease progression in SOD1 mice. FASEB J. 2006;20:1003–5.

158. Kim K, Moore DH, Makriyannis A, Abood ME. AM1241, a cannabinoid CB2 receptor selective compound, delays disease progression in a mouse model of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Eur J Pharmacol. 2006;542:100–5.
159. Shoemaker JL, Seely KA, Reed RL, Crow JP, Prather PL. The CB2 cannabinoid agonist AM-1241 prolongs survival in a transgenic mouse model of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis when initiated at symptom onset. J Neurochem. 2007;101:87–98.
160. Yiangou Y, Facer P, Durrenberger P, Chessell IP, Naylor A, Bountra C, Banati RR, Anand P. COX-2, CB2 and P2X7-immunoreactivities are increased in activated microglial cells/macrophages of multiple sclerosis and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis spinal cord. BMC Neurol. 2006;6:12.
161. Amtmann D, Weydt P, Johnson KL, Jensen MP, Carter GT. Survey of cannabis use in patients with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2004;21:95–104.
162. IOM Committee on Advancing Pain Research, Care, and Education. Relieving pain in America: a blueprint for transforming prevention, care, education, and research. Washington, DC: National Academies Press; 2011.
163. Zuardi AW. History of cannabis as a medicine: a review. Rev Bras Psiquiatr. 2006;28:153–7.
164. Pini A, Mannaioni G, Pellegrini-Giampietro D, Passani MB, Mastroianni R, Bani D, Masini E. The role of cannabinoids in inflammatory modulation of allergic respiratory disorders, inflammatory pain and ischemic stroke. Curr Drug Targets. 2012;13:984–93.
165. Guindon J, Hohmann AG. The endocannabinoid system and pain. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets. 2009;8:403–21.
166. Fine PG, Rosenfeld MJ. The endocannabinoid system, cannabinoids, and pain. Rambam Maimonides Med J. 2013;4:e0022.
167. Anand U, Otto WR, Sanchez-Herrera D, Facer P, Yiangou Y, Korchev Y, Birch R, Benham C, Bountra C, Chessell IP, Anand P. Cannabinoid receptor CB2 localisation and agonist-mediated inhibition of capsaicin responses in human sensory neurons. Pain. 2008;138:667–80.
168. Bushlin I, Rozenfeld R, Devi LA. Cannabinoid-opioid interactions during neuropathic pain and analgesia. Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2010;10:80–6.
169. Iversen L, Chapman V. Cannabinoids: a real prospect for pain relief? Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2002;2:50–5.
170. Peciña M, Martínez-Jauand M, Hodgkinson C, Stohler CS, Goldman D, Zubieta JK. FAAH selectively influences placebo effects. Mol Psychiatry. 2013;19:385–91.
171. Blake DR, Robson P, Ho M, Jubb RW, McCabe CS. Preliminary assessment of the efficacy, tolerability and safety of a cannabis-based medicine (Sativex) in the treatment of pain caused by rheumatoid arthritis. Rheumatology (Oxford). 2006;45:50–2.
172. Abrams DI, Jay CA, Shade SB, Vizoso H, Reda H, Press S, Kelly ME, Rowbotham MC, Petersen KL. Cannabis in painful HIV-associated sensory neuropathy: a randomized placebo-controlled trial. Neurology. 2007;68:515–21.
173. Lynch ME, Campbell F. Cannabinoids for treatment of chronic non-cancer pain; a systematic review of randomized trials. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2011;72:735–44.
174. Clapper JR, Moreno-Sanz G, Russo R, Guijarro A, Vacondio F, Duranti A, Tontini A, Sanchini S, Sciolino NR, Spradley JM, Hohmann AG, Calignano A, Mor M, Tarzia G, Piomelli D. Anandamide suppresses pain initiation through a peripheral endocannabinoid mechanism. Nat Neurosci. 2010;13:1265–70.
175. Yu XH, Cao CQ, Martino G, Puma C, Morinville A, St-Onge S, Lessard E, Perkins MN, Laird JM. A peripherally restricted cannabinoid receptor agonist produces robust anti-nociceptive effects in rodent models of inflammatory and neuropathic pain. Pain. 2010;151:337–44.
176. Nevalainen T. Recent development of CB2 selective and peripheral CB1/CB2 cannabinoid receptor ligands. Curr Med Chem. 2014;21:187–203.
177. Hohmann AG. Spinal and peripheral mechanisms of cannabinoid antinociception: behavioral, neurophysiological and neuroanatomical perspectives. Chem Phys Lipids. 2002;121:173–90.

178. Elmes SJ, Jhaveri MD, Smart D, Kendall DA, Chapman V. Cannabinoid CB2 receptor activation inhibits mechanically evoked responses of wide dynamic range dorsal horn neurons in naive rats and in rat models of inflammatory and neuropathic pain. Eur J Neurosci. 2004;20:2311–20.
179. Beltramo M. Cannabinoid type 2 receptor as a target for chronic - pain. Mini Rev Med Chem. 2009;9:11–25.
180. Kinsey SG, Naidu PS, Cravatt BF, Dudley DT, Lichtman AH. Fatty acid amide hydrolase blockade attenuates the development of collagen-induced arthritis and related thermal hyperalgesia in mice. Pharmacol Biochem Behav. 2011;99:718–25.
181. Murineddu G, Deligia F, Dore A, Pinna G, Asproni B, Pinna G. Different classes of CB2 ligands potentially useful in the treatment of pain. Recent Pat CNS Drug Discov. 2013;8:42–69.
182. Burston JJ, Sagar DR, Shao P, Bai M, King E, Brailsford L, Turner JM, Hathway GJ, Bennett AJ, Walsh DA, Kendall DA, Lichtman A, Chapman V. Cannabinoid CB2 receptors regulate central sensitization and pain responses associated with osteoarthritis of the knee joint. PLoS One. 2013;8:e80440.
183. Kinsey SG, Long JZ, O'Neal ST, Abdullah RA, Poklis JL, Boger DL, Cravatt BF, Lichtman AH. Blockade of endocannabinoid-degrading enzymes attenuates neuropathic pain. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2009;330:902–10.
184. Mulvihill MM, Nomura DK. Therapeutic potential of monoacylglycerol lipase inhibitors. Life Sci. 2013;92:492–7.
185. Schlosburg JE, Blankman JL, Long JZ, Nomura DK, Pan B, Kinsey SG, Nguyen PT, Ramesh D, Booker L, Burston JJ, Thomas EA, Selley DE, Sim-Selley LJ, Liu QS, Lichtman AH, Cravatt BF. Chronic monoacylglycerol lipase blockade causes functional antagonism of the endocannabinoid system. Nat Neurosci. 2010;13:1113–9.
186. Lee MC, Ploner M, Wiech K, Bingel U, Wanigasekera V, Brooks J, Menon DK, Tracey I. Amygdala activity contributes to the dissociative effect of cannabis on pain perception. Pain. 2013;154:124–34.
187. Tsang A, Von Korff M, Lee S, Alonso J, Karam E, Angermeyer MC, Borges GL, Bromet EJ, Demytteneare K, de Girolamo G, de Graaf R, Gureje O, Lepine JP, Haro JM, Levinson D, Oakley Browne MA, Posada-Villa J, Seedat S, Watanabe M. Common chronic pain conditions in developed and developing countries: gender and age differences and comorbidity with depression-anxiety disorders. J Pain. 2008;9:883–91.
188. Egli M, Koob GF, Edwards S. Alcohol dependence as a chronic pain disorder. Neurosci Biobehav Rev. 2012;36:2179–92.

Alcohol and Neurodegeneration

Yuri Persidsky, Larisa Gofman, and Raghava Potula

Abstract Strong association between alcohol abuse and an increase in both systemic and brain levels is evident from both humans and animal models. This chapter comprehensively reviews the interplay between progression of neuroinflammation and neurological disorders initiated by alcohol abuse. Recent observations of excitotoxicity associated with excessive neurotransmitter release, oxidative stress leading to free radical damage, and cell death through an enhanced inflammatory response provide important clues to the mechanisms that could mediate alcohol's toxic effects on brain cells. Chronic alcoholics have the temporal hallmark of neurocognitive deficits, neuronal injury, and neurodegeneration. Studies suggest that the initiation and progression of alcohol-mediated neurodegeneration is driven in part by release of pro-inflammatory factors from activated microglia, oxidative stress, impairment of blood–brain barrier (BBB), and glutamate-associated neurotoxicity. Recent observation of strong associations between cannabinoid systems within the central nervous system in regulating neuroinflammation via the cannabinoid receptor 2 highlights the importance of this pathway in alcohol-driven neuroinflammation. Regulatory mechanisms that regulate alcohol-induced neuroinflammation, oxidative neuronal injury, and altered BBB are examined, as well as modalities to ameliorate these processes are discussed.

Keywords Alcohol • Neurodegeneration • Neuroinflammation • BBB • Neuron • Glia

Y. Persidsky, Ph.D. (✉) • L. Gofman • R. Potula
Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, Temple University School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA 19140, USA

Center for Substance Abuse Research, Temple University School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA
e-mail: yuri.persidsky@tuhs.temple.edu; rpotula@temple.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_24, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

Alcohol abuse continues to be a major morbidity factor, causing approximately 1.3 million deaths globally (3.2 % of all deaths) each year and accounts for approximately 4 % of the disease burden of all diseases [1]. While the effects of alcohol exposure on liver function and end-organ injury are well accepted, the significant association between neurodegeneration and alcohol exposure is less established. New intriguing data recently were acquired to suggest a relationship between chronic inflammatory responses as underlying causes for alcohol-associated neurodegeneration as well as elements of alcohol addiction [2]. Since alcohol dependence and abuse are important health problems, therapeutic strategies to overcome this addiction are urgently required to reduce the burden of such conditions on society.

Newer neuroimaging techniques have shown significant alteration of brain structure, including atrophy of subcortical and cortical areas, thalamus, corpus callosum, and cerebellum [3]. Substantial progress has been made in brain imaging in chronic alcoholics, indicating global reduction in gray matter and white matter and an increase in cerebral spinal fluid volume and diffusional abnormalities among alcoholics and heavy to moderate drinkers [4]. Chronic alcohol consumption has been shown to be related to shrinkage of different parts of the brain and impairment of the decision-making process. When compared to normal controls, two predictors (gray matter changes and decision-making measure) were significantly altered in alcoholics. Recent studies address the issue whether amelioration takes place during 2 weeks of abstinence from alcohol [5]. This study indicated gray and white matter recovery after few days of abstinence, but it varied between different brain regions. These findings offer a unique insight into potential therapeutic interventions, promoting structural changes in the CNS of alcoholics. The changes were attributed to a recovery of myelin in the corpus callosum [6].

According to Zahr et al. [3], brain tissue loss consists of two components, transient and permanent. It has been suggested that in tissue shrinkage secondary to neuronal loss, there is no complete brain tissue recovery. Magnetic resonance spectroscopy revealed that despite prolonged abstinence, individuals that chronically consume alcohol demonstrate persistent diminution of *N*-acetylaspartate (a neuronal marker) in the frontal lobe, thalamus, and cerebellum [7]. Other studies demonstrated improvement in the level of *N*-acetylaspartate and choline (a metabolite associated with re-myelination) during abstinence [8].

Corresponding neuropathology studies indicated a loss and destruction of white matter in the same brain regions. Structural changes in the brain and the associated functional consequences that occur with chronic alcohol exposure can be grouped into "uncomplicated alcohol-related brain damage." [3] Neuropsychological manifestations of chronic uncomplicated alcohol exposure are characterized by the heterogeneity of severity and type of deficits. It has been shown that the pericerebral space with respect to intracranial cavity changed from 8.3 % of total intracranial volume in healthy controls to 11.3 % in patients with chronic alcohol exposure [9]. Previous stereologic studies indicated that this reduction occurred mainly due to decreased white matter volume. The morphologic substrate of white matter loss is currently unknown; however, this phenomenon is probably associated with a loss of myelin and axonal integrity. Common alcohol-associated CNS lesions encompass

white matter loss (leukoencephalopathy), enlarged ventricles, cerebellar degeneration, and neuronal demise in the superior frontal association cortex, anterior cingulate area, hippocampus, entorhinal cortex, and hypothalamus, which contribute to cognitive and motor deficits [10, 11].

In patients with uncomplicated alcoholism, neuropathology studies reveal up to 25 % loss of pyramidal neurons in the superior frontal cortex [3]. Much is unknown about neuronal loss in the primary motor cortex in uncomplicated alcoholism; however, silver impregnation techniques showed that neurons in the superior frontal and motor cortex featured dendritic arbor shrinkage, indicating a compromise of interneuronal communications. No changes were detected in the number of neurons in the basal ganglia, hippocampus, or serotonergic raphe nuclei in uncomplicated alcoholism.

In recent years, genomic and proteomic analysis of samples of human frontal cortex identified several groups of alcohol-associated genes encoding myelination, synaptic structure, mitochondria, signal transduction and intracellular metabolism, protein trafficking, and transcriptional regulation [12–14]. The data acquired in these studies point to the involvement of multiple pathways in the effects of alcohol on the CNS. Changes in expression of proteolipid protein and myelin basic protein (participating in stabilization of the myelin sheath) could provide additional insights into white matter changes in chronic alcoholics. It has been suggested that chronic liver injury occurring in chronic alcoholism and its associated hepatitis results in production of toxic substances (such as ceramides, ammonia) and enhanced insulin resistance, promoting neurodegeneration [15].

A number of molecular mechanisms have been proposed for ethanol-associated brain injury. These encompass alcohol-specific effects, including toxic metabolites (production of acetaldehyde and fatty acid ethyl esters), defects in mitochondrial function, generation of reactive oxygen species, decrease in brain-derived neurotrophic factors, and effects on excessive glutamate on synaptic transmission (resulting in excitotoxicity) [3]. Increased gut permeability for bacterial byproducts, such as LPS (so-called bacterial translocation), and liver dysfunction can be additional factors leading to brain injury in chronic alcoholism [16]. The latter is of significant interest, providing links between alcohol exposure and development of systemic inflammatory responses.

A significant body of evidence indicates that there is a close association between alcohol abuse and an increase in both systemic and brain levels of inflammation. The levels of cytokines in systemic circulation were increased in alcoholic subjects [17–19]. It has been shown that chronic alcohol consumption in humans is associated with increases in serum pro-inflammatory cytokines [20, 21]; monocytes isolated from the blood of alcoholics produce greater amounts of tumor necrosis factor α (TNFα) spontaneously and in response to endotoxin [22]. In experimental animals (rats), several months of alcohol administration increased the number of inflammatory factors [interleukin (IL-1β), inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2)] [23]. Recent publications from the group of Dr. Crews suggested significant upregulation of pro-inflammatory genes in the brains of alcohol-exposed animals with secondary inflammatory stimulus (such as LPS administration) [19].

They found upregulation of the β-chemokine, CCL2, a key innate immune factor, in multiple regions of postmortem alcoholic brains as compared to age-matched controls. These changes are accompanied by profound microglial activation in different brain regions [16, 17]. An additional indication of inflammatory response was the upregulated expression of cannabinoid receptor 2 in the brain endothelium, changes seen in human brain tissues affected by encephalitis [16]. Chronic alcohol administration to mice caused a sustained increase in brain CCL2 and an increase in microglial activation paralleling human studies.

Studies indicating that genes involved in the immune stress response exhibited differential expression in the frontal cortex of human alcoholics and normal controls. It has been shown that expression of the same genes is also related to genetic predisposition of alcohol consumption in mouse strains, pointing to a role for pro-inflammatory mediators in the regulation of alcohol intake [24]. Gene expression data sets led to the selection of six genes related to inflammation, and behavioral testing of gene-deficient mouse strains showed that animals defective in such genes drink less alcohol. Conversely, injection of LPS prior to alcohol testing resulted in a sustained increase in alcohol consumption. It has been shown that one of the key inflammatory pathways, toll-like receptor (TLR) 4, is critical in enhanced neuroinflammation associated with alcohol exposure. Several labs found that alcohol can activate TLR4 receptors in the brain in different types of glial cells [25]. Furthermore, alcohol-exposed animals lacking these receptors showed evidence of protection from astrocyte and microglia activation, increased expression of pro-inflammatory factors, and neuronal injury. These animals did not show long-lasting memory impairment or anxiety-like behavior. These studies collectively point to the role of neuroinflammation, not only in neurodegeneration associated with alcohol exposure, but also to promotion of addictive behavior. Development of therapeutics diminishing inflammation, therefore, may protect the CNS from alcohol injury and mitigate addiction.

1 How Microglia Are Affected by Alcohol and Implications for Neurodegeneration

Maintaining the integrity of neurons and neuronal circuits in the CNS is imperative for proper signaling and communication. Neurodegeneration is characterized by the loss of structure or function of brain cells and comprises assembly of pathophysiological events that include cellular damage, disease development, and cellular death [26]. Glial cells, including astrocytes, microglia, and oligodendrocytes, are important to neuronal function as both supporting cells for proper neural circuit transmission and an alert mechanism during injury or infection. Over the years, glial cells have been implicated in modulating and influencing neuronal health. Microglia, the immunocompetent cells of the CNS, respond to any homeostatic modification and play a pivotal role in regulation of neuroinflammatory processes, including neurodegenerative disease [27]. Although they are historically

considered to be quiescent in the healthy brain and active only during brain injury or disease, recent literature has demonstrated microglia as a dynamic entity undergoing morphologic changes to maintain healthy brain function. As the primary effector cells of the brain, microglia are indispensable for maintenance and clearance of foreign material and debris [28]. Microglia activation is a highly regulated process and is important in all aspects including proliferation, cell cycle, migration, and apoptosis during the response to inflammation, ischemia, trauma, injury, and neurodegenerative diseases [28]. Importantly, microglia can cause both neuroprotection and neurodegeneration in the CNS. Most of the known functions of microglia, including neurotoxic and neuroprotective properties, are attributed to morphologically activated microglia [29].

Microglial cell dysfunction plays an important role in pathogenesis of many neurodegenerative and neuroinflammatory diseases [30]. Constant alterations in the CNS lead to dynamic changes in microglial activation, contributing to inflammation and consequently leading to neurodegenerative outcomes. Prolonged microglial cell activation due to aberrant signaling alters the function of microglia in neurocognitive disorders, including Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's disease [31]. Alcohol abuse and alcoholism represent substantial problems that affect a large portion of the general public [32]. Alcohol is a common dietary constituent that modulates the immune system [17]. It has been reported that the number of risk factors associated with chronic alcohol abuse has significantly increased, especially in disorders of the CNS [33]. Recent studies have enumerated the deleterious effects of alcohol on the brain, including the immune cells found within the CNS [32, 34–37]. Alcohol attenuates phagocytosis [34, 38, 39], proliferation [35], expression of brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) in the hippocampus [40], and apoptotic action in microglia [41]. Alcohol consumption has an impact on the structure and function of the brain [3].

In the mature brain, resting microglia exhibit a ramified morphology and are responsible for immune surveillance [42]. The classical phenotype of activated microglia is very important in the clearance of pathogens, as well as the release of soluble factors that act as signaling molecules to combat injury and infection [27]. When microglia are activated due to brain injury or immunological stimuli, they undergo dramatic morphologic alterations, from a ramified cell with a small soma and long processes to an activated amoeboid cell with a large soma and shorter processes. Microglia activation can be differentiated based on morphology, marker expression, and cytokine secretion [43]. Microglia phenotype varies with the type of insult, the extent of damage, and the time of recovery post-injury. Addressing the effects of alcohol on microglia-mediated neurodegeneration is important to understand their role in neuroinflammation. In the healthy brain, microglial cells are highly sensitive to changes in their microenvironment and readily become activated in response to infection or injury. Activated microglia upregulate a variety of surface receptors, including the major histocompatibility complex (MHC-II), CD11b, Iba-1, and 18 kDa mitochondrial translocator protein [43]. Expression of these surface molecules is one component of microglial cell activation associated with release of factors that are important for signaling in the brain during injury, including the release of pro-inflammatory cytokines.

Pro-inflammatory cytokine release is a hallmark of activated microglia and contributes to chronic neuroinflammation [17]. Studies by many groups have shown a significant increase in the release of these factors in alcohol models, both in vitro and in vivo, and excessive quantities of these individual factors produced by activated microglia can be deleterious to neurons [17, 44, 45]. Alcohol-related studies on microglia conclude that these surface receptors are upregulated in alcohol-treated brains as compared to normal non-treated brains [43]. CCL2, a member of the β-chemokine family that signals through G protein-coupled receptor CCR2, is important for neuroinflammation pathways in microglia. Crews et al. has demonstrated that the CCL2 signal is increased in the human alcoholic brain; this can potentially play an important role in driving microglia activation and therefore indirectly lead to excessive production of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-1β and TNFα [17]. Lastly, CCL2 can act as a "priming" stimulus for microglia (lowering their "threshold sensitivity"), enhancing their synthesis of pro-inflammatory cytokines in response to subsequent stimulation [43, 46]. From these data, we can speculate that alcohol can dramatically affect the release of CCL2 in microglia, potentially orchestrate the release of cytokines, and generate a prolonged pro-inflammatory immune response.

While several groups have demonstrated neuroinflammation in microglial cell reaction to blood–brain barrier (BBB) injury [47], Marshall and colleagues [43] suggested that activated microglia produced anti-inflammatory cytokines (such as IL-10 and TGFβ) and were not fully activated in the binge drinking model (7 days of alcohol exposure). They were unable to demonstrate increased permeability of the BBB in their in vivo model. These investigators proposed that partial activation of microglia following binge ethanol exposure suggests that microglia have homeostatic roles, rather than directly contributing to neurodegeneration, and are a consequence of alcohol-induced damage, rather than the source of the damage.

Specialized functions such as migration and phagocytosis are the main characterizing features of microglia, and the integrity of neurons in the CNS depends on their proper function. Alcohol alters microglial cell migration and phagocytosis [34, 48]; however, the exact mechanisms remain elusive. Likewise, classically activated microglia show increased phagocytic activity as seen in postmortem alcoholic brains stained for ED-1, classically used to detect phagocytic microglia [49]. The level of activation achieved and cytokines released influences whether microglia exacerbate injury or promote recovery. The effects of alcohol on microglia are poorly understood; however, there are two potential mechanisms by which alcohol may influence microglial neurodegeneration: toll-like receptors (TLRs) and purinergic receptors.

TLRs are a family of pattern-recognition receptors that enable the recognition of conserved structural motifs in a wide array of pathogens. TLRs recognize components released from stressed or damaged host cells including ATP, aggregated β-amyloid, and heat shock proteins [42]. Activation of TLRs triggers the downstream stimulation of nuclear factor-kB (NF-kB) encoding molecules associated with inflammation [50]. Multiple studies have shown that alcohol induces microglial cell activation in vitro by stimulating TLR4 enhancing phagocytosis and leading to neuronal

death, indicating that activation of the TLR4 response by alcohol can be an important mechanism of alcohol-induced neuroinflammation and neurodegeneration [51].

Purinergic receptors (P2R), also known as purinoceptors, play a unique role in integrating neuronal and glial cellular circuits, as virtually every type of glial cell possesses receptors for purines and pyrimidines [52]. These receptors are ubiquitously expressed and mediate a remarkable variety of physiological and pathophysiological reactions [52–56]. Several signaling pathways are coupled to P2R in the CNS, including the MAPK/ERK pathway, NGF expression, and calcium mobilization [40, 53, 57–61]. P2R have been implicated in alcohol abuse disorders and shown to affect signaling in the CNS [62, 63]. Recent literature has shown the involvement of P2R in alcohol's action in microglia [63]. It is now generally accepted that microglia contribute to the neurodegenerative process through the release of a variety of neurotoxic factors that exacerbate the degeneration of neurons. It remains to be determined, however, how alcohol triggers microglial activation and if P2R have a role in regulating microglial activity.

Microglia, the CNS representatives of macrophages, partake in neuroinflammation in response to various intrinsic or extrinsic stimuli. It has been recently suggested that microglial signal transduction is one of the main targets of alcohol action in the brain: alcohol exposure selectively modulates intracellular signal transduction in microglia rather than globally inhibiting signaling pathways in a nonspecific manner. Deregulation of the inflammatory activation signaling of microglia by alcohol may contribute to the derangement of CNS immune and inflammatory responses [36]. Inflammation is a common denominator among the diverse list of neurodegenerative diseases. Previously, inflammation was considered to be a passive response to neuronal damage; however, an increasing number of reports demonstrate that prolonged inflammation in the CNS contributes to neuronal death. The importance of microglia, as inflammatory mediators of neurodegeneration, and their mechanisms require further study.

An ongoing controversy exists regarding whether microglia are neuroprotective or neurotoxic when activated. In their resting state, microglia provide "checks and balances" and safeguard mechanisms in the CNS, ensuring that the brain functions properly. Likewise, if a pathogen has breached the CNS or an injury has occurred, microglia assume a more central role in releasing pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines to combat the damage. Alcohol has been shown to play a role in modulating the activation of microglia and affecting their normal function, which may be potentially harmful in neuronal death. The exact mechanisms by which alcohol influences microglial cell activation are currently unknown; however, recent studies have shown evidence to support alcohol's effect on microglia-mediated neurodegeneration. Understanding the balance between neuroprotection and neurodegeneration is important in understanding the diseases of the CNS. Microglia possess a myriad of functions within the CNS, and emergence of their role in health and disease has become of interest in studying neurodegenerative diseases. Rather than classifying microglia as exclusively beneficial or deleterious, it is more likely that microglia function in both roles.

2 Alcohol Effects on the BBB

While a substantial amount of data has been acquired regarding the role of glia in alcohol-driven neurodegeneration, only recently it has become obvious that BBB compromise could be part of this process. Alcohol exposure (25–50 mM) of human brain endothelial cells results in a rapid (20–30 min) decrease of BBB tightness (measured by transendothelial electrical resistance and permeability to tracers of different molecular weights), formation of small gaps in monolayers, and redistribution of tight junction (TJ) proteins [64]. These effects are secondary to oxidative stress due to alcohol metabolism via induction of catalytic activity and expression of alcohol-metabolizing enzymes (CYP2E1 and alcohol dehydrogenase), which parallel enhanced generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) in BMVEC. These changes lead to Ca^{2+} release (via stimulation of inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate receptor), activation of myosin light chain (MLC) kinase, and phosphorylation of MLC and TJ proteins [64–66]. These effects are reversible after alcohol withdrawal or inhibition of specific intracellular pathways. In addition, BBB compromise enhances migration of mononuclear cells across endothelial monolayers in vitro.

Longer periods of exposure (24–48 h) to alcohol stimulated the activity/expression of matrix metalloproteinases (MMP-1, MMP-2, and MMP-9) and decreased the levels of tissue inhibitors of MMPs (TIMP-1, TIMP-2) via activation of protein tyrosine kinase, modifications of TJ proteins, and disruption of basement membrane integrity [67, 68]. All these effects could be reproduced by exposure to acetaldehyde or donors of oxidative stress, indicating the importance of such effects by products of alcohol metabolism in the effects of alcohol on the BBB. Our more recent work indicated a compromise of antioxidative protective mechanisms in BMVEC exposed to alcohol and suggested protective approaches for the BBB. We studied whether stabilization of antioxidant enzyme activity would prevent ROS generation that results in barrier disruption. We determined the effects of alcohol on the kinetic profile of superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase activity, and ROS/nitric oxide (NO) generation in primary human brain endothelial cells. Alcohol simultaneously augmented ROS generation and the activity of the antioxidative enzymes, SOD and catalase. SOD activity was increased for a much longer period of time than was catalase activity [69]. A decline in SOD activity and protein levels preceded elevation of oxidant levels. SOD stabilization by the antioxidant and mitochondria-protecting agent, *N*-acetyl-L-carnitine (ALC), and the anti-inflammatory agent, rosiglitazone, suppressed ROS levels. Mitochondrial membrane protein damage and decrease in membrane potential after alcohol exposure indicated mitochondrial injury. These changes were prevented by ALC. Importantly, a rapid increase in permeability can be demonstrated in animal models (mice, rabbits) exposed to pathophysiologically relevant doses of alcohol (1–2 h). In addition, alcohol promotes the pro-inflammatory phenotype in the brain endothelium: upregulation of COX-2, increased generation of prostaglandin E2, and enhanced expression of cannabinoid 2 receptor (unpublished observations).

In addition to structural tightness, alcohol exposure (50 mM) decreased glucose uptake and correlated with the reduction of glucose transporter protein 1 (GLUT1) in

BMVEC [70]. In vivo, chronic alcohol intake inhibited the transport of glucose into the frontal and occipital regions of the brain. These changes paralleled a marked decrease in GLUT1 protein expression in the BBB. In parallel, alcohol intake impaired BBB TJ proteins in the brain microvessels and enhanced permeability (measured by sodium fluorescein and Evans blue accumulation in brain tissue), thus confirming the leakiness of the BBB. The antioxidant, ALC, attenuated these effects of alcohol on glucose uptake and BBB. Such changes occurring on a repeated basis after exposure to alcohol could be one of the underlying mechanisms of neurodegeneration that warrants further investigation as a potential target for therapeutic interventions.

3 Neuronal Injury and Astrocyte Dysfunction Caused by Alcohol Exposure

Alcohol abuse-related neuronal injury and dysfunction are associated with increases in oxidative stress in the brain that coincide with the induction of pro-inflammatory cytokines and oxidative enzymes. We found that the metabolism of alcohol in primary human neurons by alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) and cytochrome P450 2E1 generated ROS. In addition, alcohol metabolites further augment ROS/NO levels via induction of NADPH/xanthine oxidase (NOX/XOX) and nitric oxide synthase (NOS) in human neurons [71]. A marked increase in lipid peroxidation and a decrease in a neuronal-specific marker paralleled ROS generation. Increase in iNOS protein correlated with an upregulation of 3-nitrotyrosine protein levels in the frontal cortex of alcohol-fed mice [72]. Colocalization of neurofilaments and iNOS protein confirmed that iNOS was mostly expressed in neurons. Of note, neither astrocytes nor microglia exhibited colocalization of iNOS/3-NT in this brain region, further confirming not only that iNOS induction is a major source of peroxynitrite but also that the enzyme is not responsive in astrocytes and microglia. These findings indicate that chronic alcohol ingestion preferentially modulates iNOS protein levels in neurons, but not in astrocytes or microglia, validating our recent findings that alcohol/acetaldehyde exposure increased the level of iNOS protein in cultured primary human neurons [71].

It is accepted that alcohol administered acutely in a pathophysiologically relevant dose can selectively and potently suppress the function of *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors [73]. Until now, the exact mechanism or site of action is unknown. Prolonged administration of alcohol leads to an adaptive increase in the sensitivity of NMDA receptors in vivo and in vitro. Such changes potentially can result in an enhanced vulnerability for glutamate-induced cytotoxic response (excitotoxicity) [74]. Animal studies suggest that chronic alcohol exposure and withdrawal are accompanied by a hyper-glutamatergic state, leading to neurotoxicity [75]. Preclinical models have shown that “anti-glutamatergic” compounds can reduce neuronal cell death. Increased sensitivity of neurons to excitotoxic insults is one of the mechanisms underlying alcohol-induced brain damage. NMDA stimulation results in increased calcium influx that is associated with uptake into

mitochondria and causes the production of ROS that interfere with the function of mitochondria and plasma membranes. Direct suppression of the mitochondrial respiratory chain also indirectly induces further NMDA receptor stimulation. If the suppressive effect of alcohol on NMDA receptors is removed during withdrawal, the possibility of neuronal damage is significantly augmented through this receptor system, more so when increased and/or prolonged withdrawal signs after repeated withdrawal [76]. Alcohol-induced brain damage is mediated by glutamate-mediated transmission. Recently, the sulfur-containing amino acid, homocysteine, has been suggested to be neurotoxic in alcoholism [77]. The catabolism of homocysteine to methionine, a key step in detoxifying homocysteine, requires folate as a cofactor. Chronic alcoholics often have a low intake of folate resulting in a sustained hyperhomocysteinemia. Homocysteine is a partial or complete agonist at the glutamate and glycine binding sites within the NMDA receptor complex, respectively. Enhanced levels of homocysteine may lead to a pathological increase in receptor activity and subsequent excitotoxicity. From a clinical perspective, increased levels of plasma homocysteine can be used as a marker to predict alcohol withdrawal symptoms, so that therapeutic intervention can be initiated [78]. To date, little is known regarding gender differences in alcohol-mediated neuroinflammation and neurodegeneration. Recently acquired data suggest that there is more pronounced glial reaction (reflective of inflammation) and neuronal injury in female versus male mice in a binge model of alcohol administration. Alfonso-Loeches et al. [79] showed that chronic alcohol treatment induces inflammatory mediators (iNOS and COX-2), cytokines (IL-1β, TNFα), gliosis (GFAP), caspase-3 activation, and greater neuronal loss in the cerebral cortex of female mice when compared to male animals.

Astrocytes are altered by alcohol exposure in vitro and in vivo reflecting putative direct and indirect effects. Astrocytes play a significant role in supporting the function of neurons and brain endothelium. It has been reported that glial fibrillary acidic protein, (GFAP), a marker for reactive astrocytes, and vimentin (detecting hyperactive astrocytes) are substantially increased in animals subjected to chronic alcohol administration [80]. These changes appeared to be related to neuronal cell death in the same areas. Mechanisms underlying the effect of alcohol on astrocytes remain the subject of debate; however, several groups reported complimentary data pointing to TLR4 activation as one possible pathway [81]. Blanco and colleagues demonstrated that astrocyte activation with IL-1β or alcohol (10 and 50 mM) resulted in the translocation of IL-1 receptor, IL-1R, and/or TLR4 into lipid raft–caveolae-enriched fractions and the recruitment of signaling molecules (phospho-IL-1R-associated kinase and phospho-extracellular-regulated kinase) into these microdomains. Using cellular imaging techniques, they demonstrated that IL-1R was internalized by caveolar endocytosis via enlarged caveosomes after IL-1β or alcohol treatment, which sorted their IL-1R cargo into the endoplasmic reticulum–Golgi compartment and into the nucleus.

Using primary human astrocytes, we showed that activation of cytosolic phospholipase A2 (cPLA2) and cyclooxygenase (COX-2) by alcohol in astrocytes enhanced the secretion of inflammatory agents via the interactive tyrosine phosphorylation of TLR4 and Src kinase [82]. Alcohol exposure (20 mM for 48 h)

increased the activity of cytochrome P450 2E1, ROS levels, and secretion of prostaglandin E2 (PGE2). PGE2 generation was dependent on induction of cPLA2 activity/protein as well as COX-2 protein level. Src phosphorylation was necessary for these effects of alcohol. The interactive tyrosine phosphorylation of TLR4–Src complex at the cell membrane triggered the activation of cPLA2 and COX-2 in the cytoplasm through a Src signaling intermediate. Inhibition of alcohol metabolism and blockage of Src activity or TLR4 prevented the activation of cPLA2 and COX-2 as well as diminished PGE2 production, suggesting that interactive phosphorylation of TLR4–Src regulated the pro-inflammatory response in astrocytes. Alcohol-driven changes were reduced in TLR4 knockout mice underscoring its involvement in CNS alcohol effects [79].

Another possibility of alcohol-induced astrocyte dysfunction is its effects on adenosine signaling. Lee et al. [83] demonstrated that mice lacking the ethanol-sensitive adenosine transporter, type 1 equilibrative nucleoside transporter (ENT1), consumed more alcohol compared with wild-type mice and had elevated striatal glutamate levels. ENT1 inhibition or knockdown reduces glutamate transporter expression in cultured astrocytes. Inhibition or deletion of ENT1 reduced the expression of type 2 excitatory amino acid transporter (EAAT2) and the astrocyte-specific water channel, aquaporin 4 (AQP4). EAAT2 and AQP4 colocalization was reduced in the striatum of ENT1 null mice. Ceftriaxone, an antibiotic increasing EAAT2 function, elevated not only EAAT2 but also AQP4 expression in the striatum. Furthermore, ceftriaxone reduced alcohol drinking, suggesting that ENT1-mediated downregulation of EAAT2 and AQP4 expression contributes to excessive alcohol consumption in a mouse model. These observations have significant implications as AQP4 regulates water content in the brain and could be another factor contributing to neurodegeneration.

Concentrations of extracellular glutamate were increased in animals exposed to alcohol for 4–8 days, suggesting deficits in glutamate transport [84]. Increased gene expression for EAAT1 was shown in the brains (frontal cortex) of alcoholics, while no results were presented for EAAT2 [85]. In contrast to discrepant experimental results, a number of clinical studies showed efficacy of anti-glutamatergic approaches for treating alcohol withdrawal symptoms [86] and dependence [87]. Furthermore, increased glutamate levels in animals with defective glutamate transporters enhanced their alcohol consumption [88]. Taken together, these data indicate multifaceted effects of alcohol on astrocyte function and suggest potential interventions.

4 Summary

It is clear that prolonged and excessive alcohol exposure affects all cell types in the brain via both direct and indirect effects. Importantly, new data suggest that inflammatory responses play a significant role in alcohol-associated neurodegeneration and alcohol addiction.

Acknowledgements This work was supported in part by NIH grants AA017398, AA015913, MH65151, and DA025566.

References

1. WHO: Alcohol and injury in emergency departments: Summary of the report from the WHO Collaborative Study on Alcohol and Injuries. World Health Organization, Geneva 2007.
2. Wu Y, Lousberg EL, Moldenhauer LM, Hayball JD, Robertson SA, Coller JK, Watkins LR, Somogyi AA, Hutchinson MR. Attenuation of microglial and IL-1 signaling protects mice from acute alcohol-induced sedation and/or motor impairment. Brain Behav Immun. 2011;25 Suppl 1:S155–64.
3. Zahr NM, Kaufman KL, Harper CG. Clinical and pathological features of alcohol-related brain damage. Nat Rev Neurol. 2011;7:284–94.
4. Pfefferbaum A, Rosenbloom M, Rohlfing T, Sullivan EV. Degradation of association and projection white matter systems in alcoholism detected with quantitative fiber tracking. Biol Psychiatry. 2009;65:680–90.
5. van Eijk J, Demirakca T, Frischknecht U, Hermann D, Mann K, Ende G. Rapid partial regeneration of brain volume during the first 14 days of abstinence from alcohol. Alcohol Clin Exp Res. 2013;37:67–74.
6. Alhassoon OM, Sorg SF, Taylor MJ, Stephan RA, Schweinsburg BC, Stricker NH, Gongvatana A, Grant I. Callosal white matter microstructural recovery in abstinent alcoholics: a longitudinal diffusion tensor imaging study. Alcohol Clin Exp Res. 2012;36:1922–31.
7. Carlen PL, Wilkinson DA, Wortzman G, Holgate R. Partially reversible cerebral atrophy and functional improvement in recently abstinent alcoholics. Can J Neurol Sci. 1984;11:441–6.
8. Gazdzinski S, Durazzo TC, Meyerhoff DJ. Temporal dynamics and determinants of whole brain tissue volume changes during recovery from alcohol dependence. Drug Alcohol Depend. 2005;78:263–73.
9. Harper CG, Kril JJ, Holloway RL. Brain shrinkage in chronic alcoholics: a pathological study. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed). 1985;290:501–4.
10. Harper C. The neuropathology of alcohol-specific brain damage, or does alcohol damage the brain? J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 1998;57:101–10.
11. Harper C, Dixon G, Sheedy D, Garrick T. Neuropathological alterations in alcoholic brains. Studies arising from the New South Wales Tissue Resource Centre. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry. 2003;27:951–61.
12. Mayfield RD, Lewohl JM, Dodd PR, Herlihy A, Liu J, Harris RA. Patterns of gene expression are altered in the frontal and motor cortices of human alcoholics. J Neurochem. 2002;81: 802–13.
13. Liu J, Lewohl JM, Harris RA, Iyer VR, Dodd PR, Randall PK, Mayfield RD. Patterns of gene expression in the frontal cortex discriminate alcoholic from nonalcoholic individuals. Neuropsychopharmacology. 2006;31:1574–82.
14. Etheridge N, Lewohl JM, Mayfield RD, Harris RA, Dodd PR. Synaptic proteome changes in the superior frontal gyrus and occipital cortex of the alcoholic brain. Proteomics Clin Appl. 2009;3:730–42.
15. de la Monte SM, Longato L, Tong M, DeNucci S, Wands JR. The liver-brain axis of alcohol-mediated neurodegeneration: role of toxic lipids. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2009;6: 2055–75.
16. Persidsky Y, Ho W, Ramirez SH, Potula R, Abood ME, Unterwald E, Tuma R. HIV-1 infection and alcohol abuse: neurocognitive impairment, mechanisms of neurodegeneration and therapeutic interventions. Brain Behav Immun. 2011;25 Suppl 1:S61–70.
17. He J, Crews FT. Increased MCP-1 and microglia in various regions of the human alcoholic brain. Exp Neurol. 2008;210:349–58.

18. Achur RN, Freeman WM, Vrana KE. Circulating cytokines as biomarkers of alcohol abuse and alcoholism. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2010;5:83–91.
19. Qin L, He J, Hanes RN, Pluzarev O, Hong JS, Crews FT. Increased systemic and brain cytokine production and neuroinflammation by endotoxin following ethanol treatment. J Neuroinflammation. 2008;5:10.
20. McClain CJ, Barve S, Deaciuc I, Kugelmas M, Hill D. Cytokines in alcoholic liver disease. Semin Liver Dis. 1999;19:205–19.
21. Kiefer F, Jahn H, Schick M, Wiedemann K. Alcohol intake, tumour necrosis factor-alpha, leptin and craving: factors of a possibly vicious circle? Alcohol Alcohol. 2002;37:401–4.
22. McClain CJ, Song Z, Barve SS, Hill DB, Deaciuc I. Recent advances in alcoholic liver disease. IV. Dysregulated cytokine metabolism in alcoholic liver disease. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol. 2004;287:G497–502.
23. Valles SL, Blanco AM, Pascual M, Guerri C. Chronic ethanol treatment enhances inflammatory mediators and cell death in the brain and in astrocytes. Brain Pathol. 2004;14:365–71.
24. Blednov YA, Benavidez JM, Geil C, Perra S, Morikawa H, Harris RA. Activation of inflammatory signaling by lipopolysaccharide produces a prolonged increase of voluntary alcohol intake in mice. Brain Behav Immun. 2011;25 Suppl 1:S92–105.
25. Corrigan F, Hutchinson M. Are the effects of alcohol on the CNS influenced by Toll-like receptor signaling? Expert Rev Clin Immunol. 2012;8:201–3.
26. Jaskova K, Pavlovicova M, Jurkovicova D. Calcium transporters and their role in the development of neuronal disease and neuronal damage. Gen Physiol Biophys. 2012;31:375–82.
27. Zhao YN, Wang F, Fan YX, Ping GF, Yang JY, Wu CF. Activated microglia are implicated in cognitive deficits, neuronal death, and successful recovery following intermittent ethanol exposure. Behav Brain Res. 2013;236:270–82.
28. Kettenmann H, Hanisch UK, Noda M, Verkhratsky A. Physiology of microglia. Physiol Rev. 2011;91:461–553.
29. Vinet J, Weering HR, Heinrich A, Kalin RE, Wegner A, Brouwer N, Heppner FL, Rooijen N, Boddeke HW, Biber K. Neuroprotective function for ramified microglia in hippocampal excitotoxicity. J Neuroinflammation. 2012;9:27.
30. Rock RB, Gekker G, Hu S, Sheng WS, Cheeran M, Lokensgard JR, Peterson PK. Role of microglia in central nervous system infections. Clin Microbiol Rev. 2004;17:942–64. table of contents.
31. Lindl KA, Marks DR, Kolson DL, Jordan-Sciutto KL. HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder: pathogenesis and therapeutic opportunities. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2010;5: 294–309.
32. Deehan Jr GA, Brodie MS, Rodd ZA. What is in that drink: the biological actions of ethanol, acetaldehyde, and salsolinol. Curr Top Behav Neurosci. 2013;13:163–84.
33. Nelson S, Kolls JK. Alcohol, host defence and society. Nat Rev Immunol. 2002;2:205–9.
34. Karavitis J, Murdoch EL, Deburghgraeve C, Ramirez L, Kovacs EJ. Ethanol suppresses phagosomal adhesion maturation, Rac activation, and subsequent actin polymerization during FcgammaR-mediated phagocytosis. Cell Immunol. 2012;274:61–71.
35. Nixon K, Kim DH, Potts EN, He J, Crews FT. Distinct cell proliferation events during abstinence after alcohol dependence: microglia proliferation precedes neurogenesis. Neurobiol Dis. 2008;31:218–29.
36. Suk K. Microglial signal transduction as a target of alcohol action in the brain. Curr Neurovasc Res. 2007;4:131–42.
37. Szabo G. Alcohol's contribution to compromised immunity. Alcohol Health Res World. 1997;21:30–41.
38. Sabino KR, Petroianu A, Alberti LR. Influence of the acute alcoholism on the phagocytic function of the mononuclear phagocytic system. J Med Life. 2011;4:421–3.
39. Fang KM, Yang CS, Sun SH, Tzeng SF. Microglial phagocytosis attenuated by short-term exposure to exogenous ATP through P2X receptor action. J Neurochem. 2009;111:1225–37.
40. Majumder P, Trujillo CA, Lopes CG, Resende RR, Gomes KN, Yuahasi KK, Britto LRG, Ulrich H. New insights into purinergic receptor signaling in neuronal differentiation, neuroprotection, and brain disorders. Purinergic Signal. 2007;3:317–31.

41. James G, Butt AM. P2Y and P2X purinoceptor mediated Ca2+ signalling in glial cell pathology in the central nervous system. Eur J Pharmacol. 2002;447:247–60.
42. Brown GC, Neher JJ. Inflammatory neurodegeneration and mechanisms of microglial killing of neurons. Mol Neurobiol. 2010;41:242–7.
43. Marshall SA, McClain JA, Kelso ML, Hopkins DM, Pauly JR, Nixon K. Microglial activation is not equivalent to neuroinflammation in alcohol-induced neurodegeneration: The importance of microglia phenotype. Neurobiol Dis. 2013;54:239–51.
44. Chao TS, Byron KL, Lee KM, Villereal M, Rosner MR. Activation of MAP kinases by calcium-dependent and calcium-independent pathways. Stimulation by thapsigargin and epidermal growth factor. J Biol Chem. 1992;267:19876–83.
45. Fernandez-Lizarbe S, Pascual M, Guerri C. Critical role of TLR4 response in the activation of microglia induced by ethanol. J Immunol. 2009;183:4733–44.
46. Raivich G, Jones LL, Werner A, Bluthmann H, Doetschmann T, Kreutzberg GW. Molecular signals for glial activation: pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokines in the injured brain. Acta Neurochir Suppl. 1999;73:21–30.
47. Pan W, Barron M, Hsuchou H, Tu H, Kastin AJ. Increased leptin permeation across the blood-brain barrier after chronic alcohol ingestion. Neuropsychopharmacology. 2008;33:859–66.
48. Karavitis J, Kovacs EJ. Macrophage phagocytosis: effects of environmental pollutants, alcohol, cigarette smoke, and other external factors. J Leukoc Biol. 2011;90:1065–78.
49. Graeber MB, Streit WJ. Microglia: biology and pathology. Acta Neuropathol. 2010;119: 89–105.
50. Alfonso-Loeches S, Pascual-Lucas M, Blanco AM, Sanchez-Vera I, Guerri C. Pivotal role of TLR4 receptors in alcohol-induced neuroinflammation and brain damage. J Neurosci. 2010;30:8285–95.
51. Fernandez-Lizarbe S, Montesinos J, Guerri C. Ethanol induces TLR4/TLR2 association, triggering an inflammatory response in microglial cells. J Neurochem. 2013;126(2):261–73.
52. Verkhratsky A, Krishtal OA, Burnstock G. Purinoceptors on neuroglia. Mol Neurobiol. 2009;39:190–208.
53. Potucek YD, Crain JM, Watters JJ. Purinergic receptors modulate MAP kinases and transcription factors that control microglial inflammatory gene expression. Neurochem Int. 2006;49:204–14.
54. Burnstock G. Purinergic signalling and disorders of the central nervous system. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2008;7:575–90.
55. Dooley R, Mashukova A, Toetter B, Hatt H, Neuhaus EM. Purinergic receptor antagonists inhibit odorant-mediated CREB phosphorylation in sustentacular cells of mouse olfactory epithelium. BMC Neurosci. 2011;12:86.
56. Inoue K, Tsuda M. P2X4 receptors of microglia in neuropathic pain. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets. 2012;11:699–704.
57. Mei L, Du W, Gao W, Mei QB. Purinergic signaling: a novel mechanism in immune surveillance. Acta Pharmacol Sin. 2010;31:1149–53.
58. Koshimizu TA, Van Goor F, Tomic M, Wong AO, Tanoue A, Tsujimoto G, Stojilkovic SS. Characterization of calcium signaling by purinergic receptor-channels expressed in excitable cells. Mol Pharmacol. 2000;58:936–45.
59. Ko WH, Au CL, Yip CY. Multiple purinergic receptors lead to intracellular calcium increases in cultured rat Sertoli cells. Life Sci. 2003;72:1519–35.
60. James G, Butt AM. Adenosine 5′ triphosphate evoked mobilization of intracellular calcium in central nervous system white matter of adult mouse optic nerve. Neurosci Lett. 1999;268: 53–6.
61. Guthrie PB, Knappenberger J, Segal M, Bennett MV, Charles AC, Kater SB. ATP released from astrocytes mediates glial calcium waves. J Neurosci. 1999;19:520–8.
62. Asatryan L, Nam HW, Lee MR, Thakkar MM, Saeed Dar M, Davies DL, Choi DS. Implication of the purinergic system in alcohol use disorders. Alcohol Clin Exp Res. 2011;35:584–94.
63. Ostrovskaya O, Asatryan L, Wyatt L, Popova M, Li K, Peoples RW, Alkana RL, Davies DL. Ethanol is a fast channel inhibitor of P2X4 receptors. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2011;337: 171–9.

64. Haorah J, Heilman D, Knipe B, Chrastil J, Leibhart J, Ghorpade A, Miller DW, Persidsky Y. Ethanol-induced activation of myosin light chain kinase leads to dysfunction of tight junctions and blood-brain barrier compromise. Alcohol Clin Exp Res. 2005;29:999–1009.
65. Haorah J, Knipe B, Leibhart J, Ghorpade A, Persidsky Y. Alcohol-induced oxidative stress in brain endothelial cells causes blood-brain barrier dysfunction. J Leukoc Biol. 2005;78: 1223–32.
66. Haorah J, Knipe B, Gorantla S, Zheng J, Persidsky Y. Alcohol-induced blood-brain barrier dysfunction is mediated via inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate receptor (IP3R)-gated intracellular calcium release. J Neurochem. 2007;100:324–36.
67. Haorah J, Ramirez SH, Schall K, Smith D, Pandya R, Persidsky Y. Oxidative stress activates protein tyrosine kinase and matrix metalloproteinases leading to blood-brain barrier dysfunction. J Neurochem. 2007;101:566–76.
68. Haorah J, Schall K, Ramirez SH, Persidsky Y. Activation of protein tyrosine kinases and matrix metalloproteinases causes blood-brain barrier injury: Novel mechanism for neurodegeneration associated with alcohol abuse. Glia. 2008;56:78–88.
69. Haorah J, Floreani NA, Knipe B, Persidsky Y. Stabilization of superoxide dismutase by acetyl-l-carnitine in human brain endothelium during alcohol exposure: novel protective approach. Free Radic Biol Med. 2011;51:1601–9.
70. Abdul Muneer PM, Alikunju S, Szlachetka AM, Haorah J. Inhibitory effects of alcohol on glucose transport across the blood-brain barrier leads to neurodegeneration: preventive role of acetyl-L: -carnitine. Psychopharmacology (Berl). 2011;214:707–18.
71. Haorah J, Ramirez SH, Floreani N, Gorantla S, Morsey B, Persidsky Y. Mechanism of alcohol-induced oxidative stress and neuronal injury. Free Radic Biol Med. 2008;45:1542–50.
72. Rump TJ, Abdul Muneer PM, Szlachetka AM, Lamb A, Haorei C, Alikunju S, Xiong H, Keblesh J, Liu J, Zimmerman MC, Jones J, Donohue Jr TM, Persidsky Y, Haorah J. Acetyl-L-carnitine protects neuronal function from alcohol-induced oxidative damage in the brain. Free Radic Biol Med. 2011;49:1494–504.
73. Harper C, Matsumoto I. Ethanol and brain damage. Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2005;5:73–8.
74. Dodd PR, Beckmann AM, Davidson MS, Wilce PA. Glutamate-mediated transmission, alcohol, and alcoholism. Neurochem Int. 2000;37:509–33.
75. Thomson AD, Guerrini I, Bell D, Drummond C, Duka T, Field M, Kopelman M, Lingford-Hughes A, Smith I, Wilson K, Marshall EJ. Alcohol-related brain damage: report from a Medical Council on Alcohol Symposium, June 2010. Alcohol Alcohol. 2012;47:84–91.
76. Matsumoto I, Burke L, Inoue Y, Wilce PA. Two models of ethanol withdrawal kindling. Nihon Arukoru Yakubutsu Igakkai Zasshi. 2001;36:53–64.
77. Bleich S, Bandelow B, Javaheripour K, Muller A, Degner D, Wilhelm J, Havemann-Reinecke U, Sperling W, Ruther E, Kornhuber J. Hyperhomocysteinemia as a new risk factor for brain shrinkage in patients with alcoholism. Neurosci Lett. 2003;335:179–82.
78. Bleich S, Degner D, Bandelow B, von Ahsen N, Ruther E, Kornhuber J. Plasma homocysteine is a predictor of alcohol withdrawal seizures. Neuroreport. 2000;11:2749–52.
79. Alfonso-Loeches S, Pascual M, Guerri C. Gender differences in alcohol-induced neurotoxicity and brain damage. Toxicology. 2013;311(1–2):27–34.
80. Kelso ML, Liput DJ, Eaves DW, Nixon K. Upregulated vimentin suggests new areas of neurodegeneration in a model of an alcohol use disorder. Neuroscience. 2011;197:381–93.
81. Blanco AM, Perez-Arago A, Fernandez-Lizarbe S, Guerri C. Ethanol mimics ligand-mediated activation and endocytosis of IL-1RI/TLR4 receptors via lipid rafts caveolae in astroglial cells. J Neurochem. 2008;106:625–39.
82. Floreani NA, Rump TJ, Muneer PM, Alikunju S, Morsey BM, Brodie MR, Persidsky Y, Haorah J. Alcohol-induced interactive phosphorylation of Src and toll-like receptor regulates the secretion of inflammatory mediators by human astrocytes. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2010;5:533–45.
83. Lee MR, Ruby CL, Hinton DJ, Choi S, Adams CA, Young Kang N, Choi DS. Striatal adenosine signaling regulates EAAT2 and astrocytic AQP4 expression and alcohol drinking in mice. Neuropsychopharmacology. 2013;38:437–45.

84. Melendez RI, Hicks MP, Cagle SS, Kalivas PW. Ethanol exposure decreases glutamate uptake in the nucleus accumbens. Alcohol Clin Exp Res. 2005;29:326–33.
85. Flatscher-Bader T, van der Brug M, Hwang JW, Gochee PA, Matsumoto I, Niwa S, Wilce PA. Alcohol-responsive genes in the frontal cortex and nucleus accumbens of human alcoholics. J Neurochem. 2005;93:359–70.
86. Krupitsky EM, Rudenko AA, Burakov AM, Slavina TY, Grinenko AA, Pittman B, Gueorguieva R, Petrakis IL, Zvartau EE, Krystal JH. Antiglutamatergic strategies for ethanol detoxification: comparison with placebo and diazepam. Alcohol Clin Exp Res. 2007;31:604–11.
87. Ma JZ, Ait-Daoud N, Johnson BA. Topiramate reduces the harm of excessive drinking: implications for public health and primary care. Addiction. 2006;101:1561–8.
88. Spanagel R, Pendyala G, Abarca C, Zghoul T, Sanchis-Segura C, Magnone MC, Lascorz J, Depner M, Holzberg D, Soyka M, Schreiber S, Matsuda F, Lathrop M, Schumann G, Albrecht U. The clock gene Per2 influences the glutamatergic system and modulates alcohol consumption. Nat Med. 2005;11:35–42.

Part V
Novel Approaches to Therapy

Cell-Based Drug Delivery for Improving Antiretroviral Therapeutic Outcomes

JoEllyn M. McMillan and Howard E. Gendelman

Abstract During the past decade, our laboratories pioneered the use of monocyte-macrophages as Trojan horses for the uptake, trafficking, and delivery of nanoformulated antiretroviral therapy (nanoART) to improve drug delivery to tissue, cell, and subcellular sites of human immunodeficiency virus infections. Particles were manufactured with excipients and coated with sugars or peptides to facilitate particle uptake and sequestration in mononuclear phagocytes. Particles housed as cellular depots in recycling endosomes and free bioactive medicines dissociated from particles were released over periods of days to weeks. This enabled long-lived drug tissue reservoirs where peripheral monocytes and tissue macrophages activated by the nanoparticles are able to sequester ART for periods of weeks and longer. Indeed, following parenteral injection of the particles high concentrations of drug are found in the reticuloendothelial system with limited systemic toxicities enabling prolonged drug-dosing intervals. Target coating of the particles further facilitated pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamics improvements over native or "naked uncoated" particle drug administrations, especially in reaching reservoirs of viral infection, such as the brain, gut, and lymphoid organs. The future of such therapies towards improving drug compliance, diminishing viral resistance, and facilitating residual virus reductions is timely and important and expanded upon within the current review.

Keywords Macrophage • Nanoparticle • Cell-based drug delivery • Antiretroviral Therapeutics • NanoART • HIV • Humanized mice models

J.M. McMillan • H.E. Gendelman, M.D. (✉)
Department of Pharmacology and Experimental Neuroscience, University of Nebraska Medical Center, 985880 Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE 68198, USA
e-mail: hegendel@unmc.edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*, 529
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_25, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

1 Introduction

Nanomedicine is an emerging discipline designed to provide improved biomedicines that can facilitate drug efficacy, reduce drug toxicity, engage antimicrobial and anticancer immunity, and target sites of infection, inflammation, degeneration, and other disease-related processes [1–3]. Overall, we posit that there is a strong likelihood that such technologies will yield improvements in delivery of therapeutics which can be realized within the current decade [4]. Notably, nanoformulations of drugs, proteins, enzymes, and antibodies have already been developed and demonstrate improved absorption and circulating half-lives with reduced toxicities and enhanced delivery to target sites of disease [2, 3]. Moreover, a large number of nanoparticle-based drug delivery systems are designed to evade the immune system in order to more efficiently deliver drug to the desired target, as in nanoformulations for cancer treatment. This precludes untoward immune reactions. When the targets themselves are the cells of the immune system, novel strategies can be developed for specific targeting. This concept formed the basis of the development of early liposomal formulations of amphotericin B for leishmaniasis and for cryptococcal and other fungal infections [5–7]. Liposomal amphotericin is preferentially taken up by phagocytic cells, the same cells infected by the Leishmania parasite or the fungus [8]. However, the main benefit of the liposomal formulation was a decrease in systemic toxicity, allowing for administration of higher doses and enhancing efficacy [5, 8]. In the past half-decade, targeting of nanoparticles to mononuclear phagocytes (MP; monocytes, macrophages, and dendritic cells), lymphocytes, and stem cells to be used as Trojan horses for delivery of anti-inflammatory and anti-infective medicines has been increasingly explored to facilitate drug delivery beyond parasitic infections [2, 9]. For example, our own laboratories have developed this concept for MP delivery of nanoformulations of antiretroviral drugs (nanoART) [10–13]. The promise of such a delivery system and the difficulties inherent in translating it for clinical use are discussed.

2 What Is NanoART?

As of 2011, there were more than 34 million people worldwide infected with HIV [14]. Notably, in the USA alone there are over one million infected patients with an estimated 50,000 new cases per year [15]. Treatment with combination antiretroviral therapy (cART) has proven effective in reducing the development of serious complications from HIV-1 infection but has not succeeded in eradicating virus from protected reservoir sites such as the lymphoid tissues, gut, and central nervous system [16–18]. While antiretroviral therapy leads to reduced morbidity and mortality for human immunodeficiency virus type one (HIV-1)-infected people [19–21], other major limitations are noteworthy, resting in systemic drug toxicities as well as the need for lifelong daily drug regimens. This type of dosing regimen can be difficult to follow and if not adhered to leads to increased viral resistance to therapy.

Suboptimal adherence causes increased risk of resistance and treatment failures [22–24]. Advanced disease, gastrointestinal absorbance, opportunistic infections, and drug abuse are all highly correlated with sporadic ART adherence commonly resulting in accelerated disease progression [25–28]. Because of concerns about promoting virologic resistance, providers are often reluctant to prescribe ART in settings associated with poor patient compliance. To counter the need for multiple dosing, single-dose multi-class cART such as Atripla™ (emtricitabine/tenofovir/efavirenz), Complera™ (emtricitabine/tenofovir/rilpivirine), and Stribild™ (Quad; elvitegravir/cobicistat/emtricitabine/tenofovir) [29–31] have been developed. However, these medicines have shown serious toxicities including lactic acidosis, hepatotoxicity, flare-up exacerbation of hepatitis after sudden discontinuance, peripheral neuropathy, and demonstrable renal impairments [32–36]. The need for long-acting and slow-release (once-a-month) formulations of standard and new ART regimens that can positively impact these concerns is clear and would be welcomed by HIV-1-infected patients [37–39]. The development of a such a drug delivery system could revolutionize ART treatment. To this end we have developed antiretroviral nanoparticles (nanoART) that are carried within circulating MP and delivered to virus-target tissues and hard to reach viral depots such as the central nervous system (Fig. 1) [10–13, 40, 41]. Cell-based nanoART can travel to sites of virus-associated inflammation, extend drug half-life by sequestering it away from hepatic metabolism, and release drug slowly with limited tissue toxicities [2, 9, 42]. However, in order for such a system to be realized for clinical use, there are limitations that need to be overcome. The drug-laden cells must migrate to the site of disease and deliver a sufficient amount ("payload") of drug as to provide effective therapy. Importantly, the cell's normal function and movement should not be compromised by the presence of the drug and excipients.

Many of the limitations for cell-based drug delivery and the targeting of specific cells for carriage can be overcome by the careful and systematic development of drug nanoformulations. The physicochemical characteristics of a nanoparticle drug carrier will influence its suitability for cell-based drug delivery. Nanocarriers for drugs are usually composed of a polymeric shell surrounding an inner core for drug carriage. The polymeric structure of a nanocarrier determines the drug loading capacity, imparts particle stability, and determines the interaction with environmental components and cell surfaces [9, 43]. Nanocarriers that have high drug-to-carrier ratios offer the potential for carrying many drug molecules per carrier and can thus maximize the efficiency of drug delivery. The charge status of the nanocarrier outer core affects the interaction of the nanoparticle with cell surfaces through interaction with cell surface receptors [9], with charged carriers being internalized by MPs to a greater extent than neutral particles [44–46]. The size and shape of the nanoparticle can also profoundly affect cell uptake. Particles in the range of 200–1,000 nm are readily taken up by MPs [47], and rod-shaped particles are internalized to a greater extent than spherical particles [48–50]. Once internalized and to be effective for drug delivery, the nanoparticle must be stored in non-degrading compartments for long-term carriage and subsequent drug release [9].

For treatment of HIV infection, harnessing the normal MP functions, including phagocytosis, cell–cell communication, and movement throughout the body and to

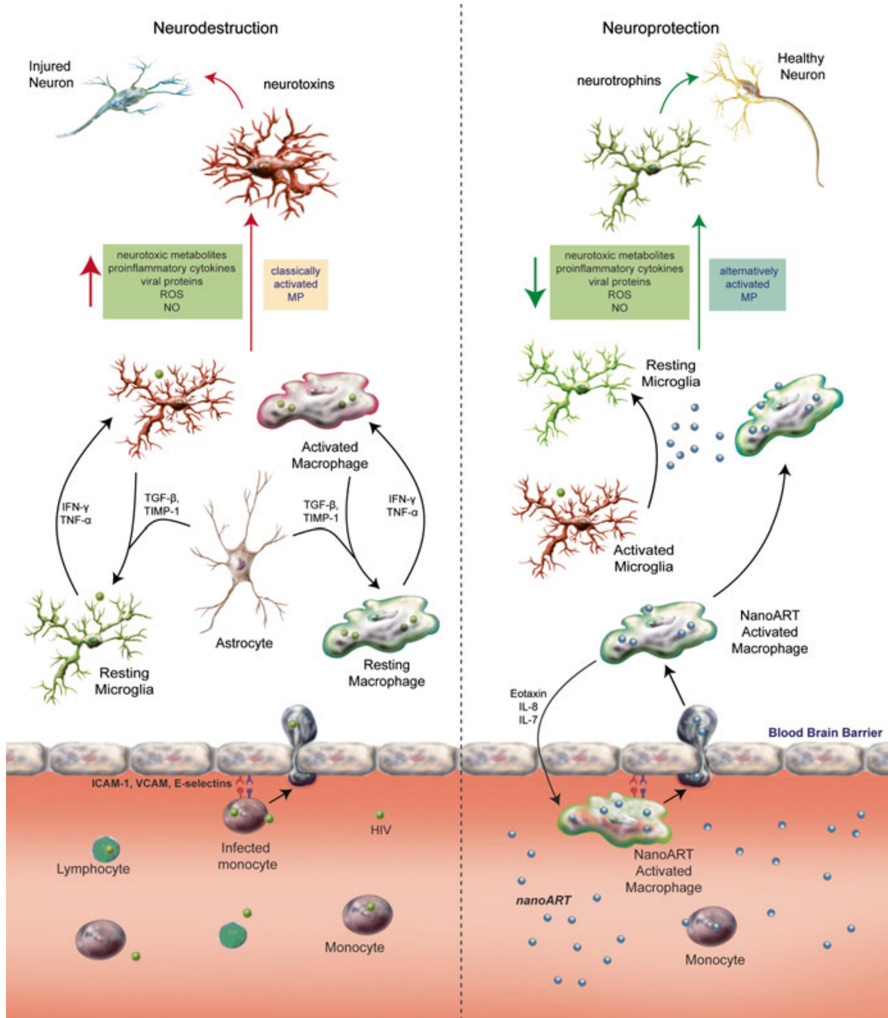


Fig. 1 Innate immune activity in HIV-1 neuropathogenesis and protection afforded by macrophages serving as Trojan horses for nanoART delivery. Activated, HIV-infected monocytes are attracted to the CNS by chemokines released from activated astrocytes and resident microglia. Spread of virus to neighboring glial cells induces neuroinflammation and neurodegeneration. NanoART-loaded macrophages are attracted to the CNS by chemokines. NanoART-loaded macrophages within the CNS release cytokines and chemokines that attract more monocyte-macrophages and enhance their migration across the blood brain barrier. NanoART and free ART are released from macrophages and suppress viral infection of microglia, resulting in a reduction in neuroinflammation and neurodegeneration

sites of injury, requires development of nanoparticles to be specifically engulfed by macrophages in select subcellular organelles. With these goals in mind, our laboratories have developed polymeric crystalline nanoparticles and polymeric micellar formulations of antiretrovirals for MP-based drug delivery [13, 51, 52]. Polymeric

crystalline formulations of antiretroviral drugs have been prepared by wet-milling and high-pressure homogenization. Synthesis of these formulations requires the free base form of the drug to have low aqueous solubility. The nanoformulations were prepared by fractionating crystalline drug in the presence of polymer surfactants, such as poloxamers 188 and 407 (P188 and P407, respectively), methyl-polyethylene glycol (mPEG), 1,2-distearoyl-phosphatidyl ethanolamine-methylpolyethyleneglycol2000 (DSPE-mPEG$_{2000}$), sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), and 1,2-dioleoyloxy-3-trimethylammoniumpropane (DOTAP) [40, 51]. Nanoparticles (200–500 nm in size) loaded with the protease inhibitors atazanavir, ritonavir, and indinavir or the non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor efavirenz were produced with loading capacities of >80 % [12, 40, 51]. The shape of the nanoparticles is largely dependent on the drug itself and can affect internalization by macrophages; atazanavir particles, which are long slender rods, are internalized more rapidly and to a greater extent than the ellipsoid indinavir particles [13, 40]. The nanoformulations are stable in suspension for weeks to months; however, this is dependent upon the polymer coating. Drug was released from atazanavir particles coated with P407 more slowly than equivalent particles coated with P188 (unpublished observations).

Poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid) (PLGA) nanoformulations have been widely studied for drug delivery [53]. PLGA is attractive for drug delivery because of its relatively high loading capacity (up to 15 %), biodegradability and biocompatibility, ease with which formulations can be prepared, ability to incorporate both hydrophobic and hydrophilic drugs in conjunction with imaging agents, sustained drug release, and potential for targeting to specific cells [53]. PLGA-ART nanoparticles have been developed by a number of laboratories [51, 54–57]. By incorporating multiple drugs into a single PLGA particle, cART can be administered from a single nanoparticle dose [54, 55]. PLGA particles can also be used as carriers for drug and imaging contrast agents. PLGA nanoparticles containing antiretroviral drug and superparamagnetic iron oxide and coated with lipid and PEG-modified lipid (SMART particles) were developed in our laboratories as tools to monitor nanoparticle biodistribution in mice by magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) [52]. SMART particles were stable in PBS and released drug slowly over 10 days. Suitable relaxivity was maintained when particles were taken up by macrophages demonstrating their use for MRI.

Liposomes are also widely used for drug nanoformulations [58, 59]. High biocompatibility, low immunogenicity, and extended circulation times contribute to their use as drug delivery systems. However, their low loading capacity, relatively quick release profiles of hydrophobic drugs, and lesser physical stability than polymeric formulations limit their applications for specific drugs [60]. Nevertheless, liposomal formulations have provided extended pharmacokinetics for hydrophilic drugs such as the nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor stavudine [61, 62] and can be modified with targeting moieties to provide enhanced receptor-mediated uptake by MPs.

Cell-based nanoparticle delivery can be improved by actively targeting nanoformulations to the carrier cells. Polymeric and liposomal nanoformulations are readily taken up by MPs by general phagocytic and endocytic mechanisms [2, 9]. By targeting surface receptors on the cells, nanoparticle uptake can be improved and may be directed to specific subcellular compartments for storage and protection

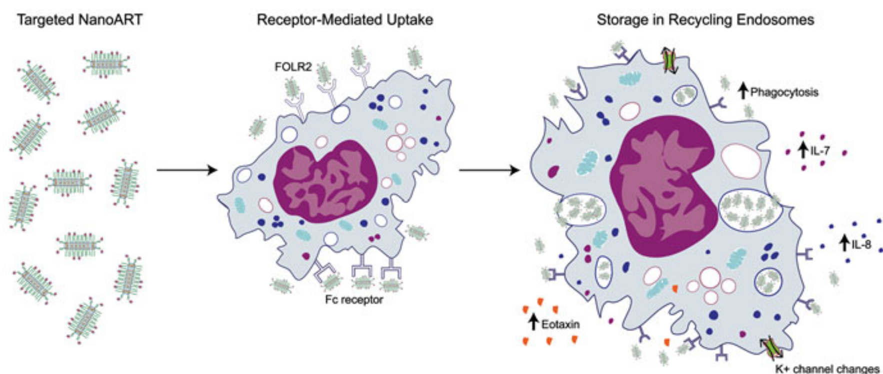


Fig. 2 Targeted nanoART production and macrophage interactions. Antiretroviral (ART) drug crystals are coated with a targeting ligand-conjugated polymer (such as folic acid-modified poloxamer 407; FA-nanoART) by high-pressure homogenization. Uptake of FA-nanoART can occur through binding to the Fc receptor and the folic acid receptor 2 (FOLR2). FA-nanoART is stored in recycling endosomes, where it is protected from degradation. NanoART carriage transforms the macrophage by enhancing phagocytosis, altering secretory functions, and stimulating the cell's migratory activity

from degradation (Fig. 2) [63–65]. By conjugating a targeting ligand onto the polymer or lipid, specific targeting of polymeric and liposomal nanoformulations can be achieved [59, 66]. In recent studies, nanoART targeted to folate receptors on macrophages were synthesized and demonstrated enhanced macrophage uptake, retention, and antiretroviral efficacy in cultured cells. Liposomal formulations of stavudine and zidovudine targeted with mannose and galactose provided increased macrophage uptake and enhanced liver, spleen, lung, and lymph node drug levels in rodents [61, 62, 67]. These targeting strategies aim at macrophages; however, it is conceivable that active targeting of T-lymphocytes may provide improved antiviral therapy and penetrance into viral reservoir sites, such as lymph nodes.

3 Testing NanoART Efficacy

A key for development of drug nanoparticles for cell-based delivery is screening in cell-based assays. Cell culture models have been used extensively for determining drug activity and toxicity and for assessing biologic effectiveness. In particular, for effective cell-based nanoformulated drug delivery, uptake of the drug by the carrier cell must be rapid and extensive, without affecting the normal functions of the cell or inducing toxicity. Once inside the cell the nanoformulated drug must be protected from degradation for effective delivery and for the cell to serve as a reservoir for long-term release of drug. Thus, prior to in vivo studies, the activity of nanoformulated antiretrovirals can be evaluated in cultured cells such as macrophages. Cell uptake, retention, release, toxicity, and antiviral efficacy of the nanoART in macrophage cell lines or primary cells isolated from animals or humans can be used as

predictive screening tools for nanoformulations prior to pharmacokinetic and _biodistribution studies in animals. A specific battery of tests should be designed in cell cultures that would prove predictive of in vivo behavior. Thus, for nanoART, activity in cultures of human monocyte-derived macrophages (MDM) has been shown to be generally predictive of pharmacokinetic performance in mice [40, 51, 68, 69]. Since macrophages are infected with the HIV virus in vivo, this screening system has also proven effective in monitoring efficacy in the same cells that are targeted for drug carriage [40, 51]. Macrophage uptake and retention of nanoART produced by high-pressure homogenization or wet-milling using various poloxamer and/or phospholipid surfactants was dependent to some extent on size, charge, shape, and coating; however, the greatest influence on these activities and on antiretroviral efficacy proved to be the drug itself [13, 40]. Preloading macrophages with nanoformulated atazanavir, ritonavir, or indinavir and then infecting the cells up to 15 days later with HIV-1_{ADA} provided 85, 80, and 40 % inhibition of progeny virion production and HIV-1 p24 staining, while treatment with an equivalent concentration of efavirenz nanoparticles resulted in nearly complete inhibition of viral infection [40, 51]. Addition of the targeting moiety folic acid to nanoformulations of atazanavir enhanced macrophage uptake and retention over twofold and enhanced antiviral efficacy in macrophages infected with HIV-1_{ADA} [68].

For effective cell-based delivery the function of the carrier cell should not be altered by carriage of the nanoformulated drug. Specifically for macrophages the normal functions of phagocytosis, migration, and release of immune-modulating cytokines and chemokines should be evaluated in cells loaded with nanoparticles. As a means of predicting global functional changes in carrier cells tools such as proteomics have proven useful [70, 71]. Pulsed stable isotope labeling of amino acids in cell culture (pSILAC) is once such tool that can identify dynamic protein changes in cells during drug treatment, intracellular trafficking, and storage that are indicative of cellular toxicities resultant from the drug itself, drug carriage, and drug release. In recent studies by Martinez-Skinner et al., pSILAC was used to determine dynamic global proteomic changes in macrophages loaded with nanoART [71]. Proteomic changes linked to immune cell migration and chemotaxis, cytokine and chemokine production, lipid metabolism, free radical scavenging, and cell differentiation were observed. These protein changes were substantiated by functional assays, including phagocytosis, migration, cytokine/chemokine secretion, and potassium channel activation, and indicated that nanoART uptake induced a unique activated macrophage phenotype that is primed for further nanoART uptake and storage and enhances cell migration [71].

4 Subcellular Distribution of NanoART

Intracellular trafficking of the nanoformulated drugs is a key factor in determining the stability of the drug once inside the cell carrier and drug release at the target site [65]. Cationic and anionic nanoparticles can have different fates once inside MP [9].

In general positively charged nanoparticles are less likely to be degraded than are negatively charged particles by decreasing acidification of lysosomal compartments [9]. Lysosomal degradation can also be reduced if the nanoparticles traffic to non-degrading endosomal compartments inside the MP. Ritonavir nanoART prepared with P188, DSPE-mPEG$_{2000}$, and DOTAP as surfactants was taken up by MDM via clathrin-mediated endocytosis and trafficked to Rab 11^{+} and Rab 14^{+} recycling endosomal compartments [68, 72] from which they were released intact at the cell surface. The released nanoparticles retained their ability to reduce HIV-1 infection of MDM. It is noteworthy that these particles were positively charged. Recent studies, however, have demonstrated similar trafficking of negatively charged atazanavir nanoART prepared with P407 and folate-modified P407 [68], suggesting a similar intracellular trafficking profile for crystalline nanoART regardless of charge state. Intracellular trafficking will also determine cell storage and release rate of the nanoART. A sustained and controlled release of drug at the target site is necessary in order to provide optimal therapeutic effectiveness [9]. Stimulated drug release at the target site is also possible by employing signals such as changes in intracellular calcium or mild hyperthermia [73, 74]. Of particular importance, however, active targeting of nanoART to specific cell compartments could not only enhance cell storage but could allow the drug to be directed to the cell compartments where HIV replicates [75].

5 Animal Models for NanoART Testing

New drug formulations are routinely tested in rodents prior to translating results to clinical trials. Determination of pharmacokinetics and biodistribution of nanoformulations for cell-based nanoART delivery is easily achieved using normal mouse strains. Uptake of parenterally injected nanoformulations by MPs and ART drug sequestration inside cells of the reticuloendothelial system can be monitored using rodent model systems [76]. Drug metabolism and enzyme induction and their contribution to ART pharmacokinetics, biodistribution, and toxicity can be determined in rodents and can be predictive of human events [77]. A particular challenge, however, in determining the pharmacodynamics and efficacy of nanoART is the specificity of HIV-1 infection for humans. The development of “humanized” mouse models that recapitulate HIV-1 pathogenesis has allowed the study of new ART therapies and mechanisms of HIV-1 pathogenesis [78, 79]. Severe combined immunodeficient (SCID) mice contain an autosomal recessive mutation in the *prkdc* (DNA-dependent protein kinase) gene that results in a deficiency in mature T and B lymphocytes [80]. Transfer of the SCID mutation onto the nonobese diabetic (NOD) background subsequently resulted in a mouse strain (NOD/SCID) with very few occurrences of spontaneous lymphocyte production (leakiness) [81]. Because of the lack of functional lymphocytes, transplantation of foreign tissues and cells is possible in these mice [82]. Mouse models have been developed using transplanted human thymus, fetal liver, and peripheral blood lymphocytes wherein human

immune cells are able to reconstitute the NOD/SCID mouse immune system [83, 84]. Immunodeficient mice transplanted with human immune cells are especially useful for assessing the pharmacokinetics and biodistribution of nanoART that are targeted to human macrophages and T-lymphocytes.

Results of studies in mice can be generally predictive of drug behavior in humans. However, there are differences in drug metabolism, immune responses, and metabolic rate that can impact the overall translation of experimental results to humans. Dose, bioavailability, frequency of administration, adverse drug reactions, and the responsiveness of reproductive organs to therapeutics can all differ from mice to humans. For nanoART testing nonhuman primates are a desired model for determining pharmacokinetics, injection route, systemic toxicity, distribution of drug to lymphoid tissues and female genital tissues, and importantly antiretroviral efficacy [85]. The expense and value of these animals, however, requires careful study design.

6 Pharmacokinetics, Pharmacodynamics, and Biodistribution

For a nanoformulated drug to be successful, it is essential that a desired pharmacokinetic (PK) and pharmacodynamic (PD) profile be achieved. The standard assessments designed for small-molecule PK may not be applicable to PK of nanomedicines. Because of the unique behavior of nanoparticles, including nanoparticle absorption, drug release kinetics, and nanoparticle clearance, using blood and plasma drug levels as a determination of PK may not provide a complete picture of nanoparticle distribution [86]. In particular for targeted and cell-based nanoparticle delivery, determination of levels of drug in plasma may not be an accurate indication of the PD of the nanoformulated drug [87]. Of significance, determination of drug concentrations at the target site or in target cells may be more predictive of therapeutic efficacy [88]. In addition when using MPs as carriers for drug nanoparticles, the activation state of the cells may influence their uptake of the nanoparticles and the delivery of drug to target sites. Thus, to develop an effective dosing regimen, determine optimal route of administration, and determine tissue and cell distribution, careful in vivo assessments of drug nanoformulations are required.

NanoART (atazanavir/ritonavir) that had passed in vitro screening for macrophage uptake, retention, toxicity, and antiretroviral efficacy was characterized for PK and biodistribution in mice and nonhuman primates [76]. In mice treated subcutaneously with a single dose of nanoART (atazanavir/ritonavir), plasma and tissue drug levels 14 days after injection were 10- and 40-fold higher than levels following administration of non-formulated drugs. Multiple doses provided up to 270-fold higher plasma and tissue levels after 6 weeks of weekly nanoART administration. The sustained plasma and tissue drug levels were attributed to localization of nanoART in non-lysosomal compartments in tissue macrophages, primarily Kupffer cells, providing a storage depot for extended drug release. Similar elevated and

extended plasma drug levels were observed following subcutaneous and intramuscular administration of nanoART as compared to native drugs to rhesus macaques. Active targeting of nanoART to macrophage folate receptors enhanced plasma and tissue drug levels by up to fivefold when administered by intramuscular injection to mice [68]. Of particular significance was the detection of drug levels in lymph nodes of up to 70 ng/g tissue in mice treated with folate-targeted nanoART. These results suggest that targeting nanoART to macrophage and even T-cell receptors can provide penetration of drug into previously inaccessible HIV viral reservoirs.

7 Antiretroviral Drugs for Nanoformulations

The advent of ART has greatly reduced the morbidity and mortality associated with HIV-1 infection. The serious subacute neurological pathology of HIV-associated encephalitis has been reduced to a milder often subclinical form [20, 21]. Initial and maintenance therapy has traditionally been a combination of reverse transcriptase inhibitors and protease inhibitors. Protease inhibitors are usually a combination of a therapeutic dose of lopinavir, atazanavir, or fosamprenavir and a much lower, boosting dose of ritonavir to inhibit metabolism of the therapeutic component by hepatic cytochrome P450 and extend plasma half-life ([37]). However, HIV infection-associated renal, cardiovascular, and peripheral neuropathic complications especially in light of coinfections such as hepatitis C and tuberculosis can affect continuation of certain drug regimens. Newer drugs such as integrase strand transfer inhibitors (raltegravir and elvitegravir), entry inhibitors (enfuvirtide), and CCR5 antagonists (maraviroc) provide improved virologic control with reduced associated toxicities [89–92]. Of importance, viral resistance may develop more slowly in patients receiving newer generations of these drugs [93–95]. Preexposure prophylaxis regimens have recently been approved by the FDA (tenofovir/emtricitabine) and show great effectiveness in reducing HIV transmission in adherent individuals [96, 97]. In spite of new therapeutics and therapeutic regimens, eradication of virus from protected sites, such as lymphoid tissue and brain, is still not possible and the incidence of minor neurologic deficits has not been reduced.

8 HIV Model Systems

As previously described a number of rodent systems have been developed for the study of HIV-1 infection and evaluation of new therapeutics. SCID mice injected with HIV-1-infected human MDM demonstrate key features of HIV-1 neuropathology [98, 99]. This mouse model has proven effective in determining effective ART therapies and in examining the interaction of the innate and adaptive immune systems in overall CNS response to HIV infection [11, 100, 101]. NOD/SCID mice repopulated with human peripheral blood lymphocytes and infected with HIV-1

have been used to evaluate pharmacokinetics, biodistribution, and antiviral efficacy of nanoART in a system of activated immune cells [69]. However, the usefulness of this model for long-term evaluation of nanoART is limited since the mice succumb to rejection of the human cell grafts within several weeks. Long-term human cell reconstitution mouse models have been developed [84, 102–105]. Newborn NOD/SCID mice are irradiated to deplete their normal bone marrow stem cells and then given human CD34+ polymorphonuclear stem cells from human fetal liver or human cord blood. Reconstitution of the mouse immune system with human immune cells occurs over a period of 12 weeks [102, 103]. In response to infection with HIV-1 these "humanized" mice demonstrate hallmark lymphocytic and humoral immune responses and support chronic HIV-1 infection. Because of the long-term survival of these mice and the stability of the immune reconstitution, chronic ART treatment regimens can be evaluated. In humanized mice chronically infected with HIV-1, weekly doses of nanoART (atazanavir/ritonavir) provided sustained plasma, liver, and spleen drug levels and suppressed viral infectivity to below the limit of detection during the course of nanoART treatment [106]. Upon cessation of treatment, however, plasma viral load rebounded and the presence of infected T-cells in lymph nodes was not suppressed. In this same model brain metabolite changes in response to chronic HIV infection correlated with microgliosis and were partially reversed with weekly nanoART treatment [107].

Immunodeficient mice reconstituted with human bone marrow $CD34^+$ stem cells, and liver and thymus cells (BLT mice) are useful for studying several tissue pathologies associated with HIV infection [84]. Many tissues in these mice are reconstituted with human cells, including the female reproductive tract. ART treatment regimens, including nanoART, to reduce vaginal transmission of HIV-1, including preexposure prophylaxis, are being explored using BLT mice [84, 108–110].

The most widely used animal model for study of the pathology of HIV infection has been the SIV-macaque model [111–113]. In particular the model lends itself to study of the neurological effects associated with chronic HIV infection, including development of encephalitis and neurological impairment. This model has been particularly valuable in determining the involvement of innate and adaptive immune functions in development of late-stage CNS disease. The actions of HIV genes in vivo can also be examined in a hybrid model where portions of the HIV gene have been inserted into SIV, creating hybrid simian-human immunodeficiency virus (SHIV) [114]. The SIV model has also proven valuable for exploring therapeutic options and identification of mechanisms of therapeutic insufficiency, viral latency, vaginal transmission, and preexposure prevention [115, 116].

9 Clinical Translation of NanoART

The promise of nanoART for treatment of HIV infection is real and of immediate need. However, to reach this goal a number of hurdles need be overcome. Translation of laboratory-based preparation of nanoART to large-scale

production for clinical trials will require the development of protocols following good manufacturing guidelines [117]. Difficulties in production scale-up will need to be overcome by carefully evaluating and establishing defined protocols for each step of synthesis. Production uniformity, purity, and activity, as well as formulation stability and shelf-life, will need to be determined and criterion for pass/fail defined. Protocols for product sterilization will need to be developed. Laboratory animal studies can define the most appropriate dose, route, and frequency of administration and can determine efficacy in animal models of HIV infection. For investigational new drug application approval, safety assessment studies in animals, both rodents and non-rodents, are required [118–120]. These studies may include some or all of the following categories: acute and repeated dose toxicity studies (90 days), reproductive toxicity, genotoxicity, local tolerance, and, for long-term use, carcinogenicity. Specific endpoints such as mortality, body weight gain/loss, clinical observation, complete blood counts, clinical metabolic panel, gross pathology, histopathology, injection site tolerance/irritation, and immunotoxicity (function and phenotypes) are usually included in preclinical toxicity assessments. These hurdles are not insurmountable, but do require time and sufficient resources.

Another important factor in determining the feasibility of translation of nanoART to clinical use is economics (reviewed in [121]). The populations in most critical need for new technologies for delivery of antiretroviral drugs are in developing countries where access is limited and often cost-prohibitive. Antiretroviral formulations can provide a means for improving pharmacokinetics of existing cheaper drugs, decreasing dose levels and frequency, reducing the occurrence of intolerable side effects, and reducing the development of resistant viral strains. ART nanoformulations as prophylactic preventatives could provide reduction in the current frequent dosing regimens and hence reduction in cost.

10 Potential for HIV Eradication

The development of nanoART as an effective therapeutic modality for HIV-1 infection offers many promises. The ability to maintain extended plasma drug levels from a single intramuscular injection would improve patient adherence and reduce the potential for development of resistant viral strains. The ability to specifically target cell and tissue reservoirs and to direct the nanoformulations to the same subcellular compartments where viral replication occurs offers for the first time the potential for viral eradication.

Acknowledgements This work was supported by the Carol Swarts Neuroscience Research Laboratory, the Frances and Louie Blumkin Foundation, and National Institutes of Health grants P01 DA028555, R01 NS36126, P01 NS31492, 2R01 NS034239, P01 MH64570, P01 NS43985. The authors declare no competing financial interest.

References

1. Wagner V, Dullaart A, Bock AK, Zweck A. The emerging nanomedicine landscape. Nat Biotechnol. 2006;24:1211–7.
2. McMillan J, Batrakova E, Gendelman HE. Cell delivery of therapeutic nanoparticles. Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci. 2011;104:563–601.
3. Kim BY, Rutka JT, Chan WC. Nanomedicine. N Engl J Med. 2010;363:2434–43.
4. Pautler M, Brenner S. Nanomedicine: promises and challenges for the future of public health. Int J Nanomedicine. 2010;5:803–9.
5. New RR, Chance ML, Heath S. Antileishmanial activity of amphotericin and other antifungal agents entrapped in liposomes. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1981;8:371–81.
6. Graybill JR, Craven PC, Taylor RL, Williams DM, Magee WE. Treatment of murine cryptococcosis with liposome-associated amphotericin B. J Infect Dis. 1982;145:748–52.
7. Taylor RL, Williams DM, Craven PC, Graybill JR, Drutz DJ, Magee WE. Amphotericin B in liposomes: a novel therapy for histoplasmosis. Am Rev Respir Dis. 1982;125:610–1.
8. Heath S, Chance ML, New RR. Quantitative and ultrastructural studies on the uptake of drug loaded liposomes by mononuclear phagocytes infected with Leishmania donovani. Mol Biochem Parasitol. 1984;12:49–60.
9. Batrakova EV, Gendelman HE, Kabanov AV. Cell-mediated drug delivery. Exp Opin Drug Deliv. 2011;8:415–33.
10. Dou H, Destache CJ, Morehead JR, Mosley RL, Boska MD, Kingsley J, Gorantla S, Poluektova L, Nelson JA, Chaubal M, Werling J, Kipp J, Rabinow BE, Gendelman HE. Development of a macrophage-based nanoparticle platform for antiretroviral drug delivery. Blood. 2006;108:2827–35.
11. Dou H, Grotepas CB, McMillan JM, Destache CJ, Chaubal M, Werling J, Kipp J, Rabinow B, Gendelman HE. Macrophage delivery of nanoformulated antiretroviral drug to the brain in a murine model of neuroAIDS. J Immunol. 2009;183:661–9.
12. Nowacek AS, McMillan J, Miller R, Anderson A, Rabinow B, Gendelman HE. Nanoformulated antiretroviral drug combinations extend drug release and antiretroviral responses in HIV-1-infected macrophages: implications for neuroAIDS therapeutics. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2010;5:592–601.
13. Nowacek AS, Miller RL, McMillan J, Kanmogne G, Kanmogne M, Mosley RL, Ma Z, Graham S, Chaubal M, Werling J, Rabinow B, Dou H, Gendelman HE. NanoART synthesis, characterization, uptake, release and toxicology for human monocyte-macrophage drug delivery. Nanomedicine (Lond). 2009;4:903–17.
14. WHO, HIV/AIDS Fact Sheet N360, in, November 2012.
15. CDC, Diagnoses of HIV Infection in the United States and Dependent Areas, 2011, in: HIV Surveillance Report, 2011.
16. Este JA, Cihlar T. Current status and challenges of antiretroviral research and therapy. Antivir Res. 2010;85:25–33.
17. Pomerantz RJ. Reservoirs, sanctuaries, and residual disease: the hiding spots of HIV-1. HIV Clin Trials. 2003;4:137–43.
18. Palmer S, Josefsson L, Coffin JM. HIV reservoirs and the possibility of a cure for HIV infection. J Intern Med. 2011;270:550–60.
19. Lewin SR, Rouzioux C. HIV cure and eradication: how will we get from the laboratory to effective clinical trials? AIDS. 2011;25:885–97.
20. Hogan C, Wilkins E. Neurological complications in HIV. Clin Med. 2011;11:571–5.
21. Spudich SS, Ances BM. Neurologic complications of HIV infection. Top Antivir Med. 2012;20:41–7.
22. Chesney M. Adherence to HAART regimens. AIDS Patient Care STDs. 2003;17:169–77.
23. Fogarty L, Roter D, Larson S, Burke J, Gillespie J, Levy R. Patient adherence to HIV medication regimens: a review of published and abstract reports. Patient Educ Couns. 2002;46: 93–108.

24. Volberding PA, Deeks SG. Antiretroviral therapy and management of HIV infection. Lancet. 2010;376:49–62.
25. Cossarini F, Spagnuolo V, Gianotti N, Carbone A, Lazzarin A, Castagna A. Management of HIV infection after triple class failure. New microbiol. 2013;36:23–39.
26. Klatt NR, Funderburg NT, Brenchley JM. Microbial translocation, immune activation, and HIV disease. Trends Microbiol. 2013;21:6–13.
27. Buckheit 3rd RW, Salgado M, Martins KO, Blankson JN. The implications of viral reservoirs on the elite control of HIV-1 infection. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2013;70:1009–19.
28. Pawlowski A, Jansson M, Skold M, Rottenberg ME, Kallenius G. Tuberculosis and HIV co-infection. PLoS Pathog. 2012;8:e1002464.
29. Llibre JM, Clotet B. Once-daily single-tablet regimens: a long and winding road to excellence in antiretroviral treatment. AIDS Rev. 2012;14:168–78.
30. Permpalung N, Putcharoen O, Avihingsanon A, Ruxrungtham K. Treatment of HIV infection with once-daily regimens. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2012;13:2301–17.
31. Wegzyn CM, Wyles DL. Antiviral drug advances in the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV). Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2012;12:556–61.
32. Luetkemeyer AF, Havlir DV, Currier JS. Complications of HIV disease and antiretroviral therapy. Top Antivir Med. 2012;20:48–60.
33. Rather ZA, Chowta MN, Raju GJ, Mubeen F. Evaluation of the adverse reactions of antiretroviral drug regimens in a tertiary care hospital. Indian J Pharmacol. 2013;45:145–8.
34. Kranick SM, Nath A. Neurologic complications of HIV-1 infection and its treatment in the era of antiretroviral therapy. Continuum (Minneap Minn). 2012;18:1319–37.
35. Kontorinis N, Dieterich D. Hepatotoxicity of antiretroviral therapy. AIDS Rev. 2003;5: 36–43.
36. McCance-Katz EF. Treatment of opioid dependence and coinfection with HIV and hepatitis C virus in opioid-dependent patients: the importance of drug interactions between opioids and antiretroviral agents. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41 Suppl 1:S89–95.
37. McKinnon JE, Mellors JW, Swindells S. Simplification strategies to reduce antiretroviral drug exposure: progress and prospects. Antivir Ther. 2009;14:1–12.
38. Swindells S, Flexner C, Fletcher CV, Jacobson JM. The critical need for alternative antiretroviral formulations, and obstacles to their development. J Infect Dis. 2011;204:669–74.
39. Williams J, Sayles HR, Meza J, Sayre P, Sandkovsky U, Gendelman HE, Flexner C, Swindells S. Long-acting parenteral nanoformulated antiretroviral therapy: interest and attitudes of HIV-infected patients. Nanomedicine (Lond). 2013;8(11):1807–13.
40. Nowacek AS, Balkundi S, McMillan J, Roy U, Martinez-Skinner A, Mosley RL, Kanmogne G, Kabanov AV, Bronich T, Gendelman HE. Analyses of nanoformulated antiretroviral drug charge, size, shape and content for uptake, drug release and antiviral activities in human monocyte-derived macrophages. J Control Release. 2011;150:204–11.
41. Kanmogne GD, Singh S, Roy U, Liu X, McMillan J, Gorantla S, Balkundi S, Smith N, Alnouti Y, Gautam N, Zhou Y, Poluektova L, Kabanov A, Bronich T, Gendelman HE. Mononuclear phagocyte intercellular crosstalk facilitates transmission of cell-targeted nanoformulated antiretroviral drugs to human brain endothelial cells. Int J Nanomedicine. 2012;7:2373–88.
42. Nowacek A, Gendelman HE. NanoART, neuroAIDS and CNS drug delivery. Nanomedicine (Lond). 2009;4:557–74.
43. Kanwar JR, Sun X, Punj V, Sriramoju B, Mohan RR, Zhou SF, Chauhan A, Kanwar RK. Nanoparticles in the treatment and diagnosis of neurological disorders: untamed dragon with fire power to heal. Nanomed Nanotechnol Biol Med. 2012;8:399–414.
44. Miller CR, Bondurant B, McLean SD, McGovern KA, O'Brien DF. Liposome-cell interactions in vitro: effect of liposome surface charge on the binding and endocytosis of conventional and sterically stabilized liposomes. Biochemistry. 1998;37:12875–83.
45. Nishikawa K, Arai H, Inoue K. Scavenger receptor-mediated uptake and metabolism of lipid vesicles containing acidic phospholipids by mouse peritoneal macrophages. J Biol Chem. 1990;265:5226–31.

46. Fujiwara M, Baldeschwieler JD, Grubbs RH. Receptor-mediated endocytosis of poly(acrylic acid)-conjugated liposomes by macrophages. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1996;1278:59–67.
47. Tabata Y, Ikada Y. Effect of the size and surface charge of polymer microspheres on their phagocytosis by macrophage. Biomaterials. 1988;9:356–62.
48. Huang X, Teng X, Chen D, Tang F, He J. The effect of the shape of mesoporous silica nanoparticles on cellular uptake and cell function. Biomaterials. 2010;31:438–48.
49. Chithrani BD, Ghazani AA, Chan WC. Determining the size and shape dependence of gold nanoparticle uptake into mammalian cells. Nano Lett. 2006;6:662–8.
50. Gratton SE, Ropp PA, Pohlhaus PD, Luft JC, Madden VJ, Napier ME, DeSimone JM. The effect of particle design on cellular internalization pathways. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2008;105:11613–8.
51. Balkundi S, Nowacek AS, Veerubhotla RS, Chen H, Martinez-Skinner A, Roy U, Mosley RL, Kanmogne G, Liu X, Kabanov AV, Bronich T, McMillan J, Gendelman HE. Comparative manufacture and cell-based delivery of antiretroviral nanoformulations. Int J Nanomedicine. 2011;6:3393–404.
52. Guo D, Li T McMillan J, Sajja BS, Puligujja P, Boska MD, Gendelman HE, Liu X. Small magnetite antiretroviral therapeutic nanoparticle probes for MRI of drug biodistribution., Nanomedicine (Lond), In Press (2013).
53. Danhier F, Ansorena E, Silva JM, Coco R, Le Breton A, Preat V. PLGA-based nanoparticles: an overview of biomedical applications. J Control Release. 2012;161:505–22.
54. Destache CJ, Belgum T, Christensen K, Shibata A, Sharma A, Dash A. Combination antiretroviral drugs in PLGA nanoparticle for HIV-1. BMC Infect Dis. 2009;9:198.
55. Shibata A, McMullen E, Pham A, Belshan M, Sanford B, Zhou Y, Goede M, Date AA, Destache CJ. Polymeric nanoparticles containing combination antiretroviral drugs for HIV type 1 treatment. AIDS Res Hum Retrovir. 2013;29:746–54.
56. Kuo YC, Yu HW. Polyethyleneimine/poly-(gamma-glutamic acid)/poly(lactide-co-glycolide) nanoparticles for loading and releasing antiretroviral drug. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces. 2011;88:158–64.
57. Kuo YC, Yu HW. Transport of saquinavir across human brain-microvascular endothelial cells by poly(lactide-co-glycolide) nanoparticles with surface poly-(gamma-glutamic acid). Int J Pharm. 2011;416:365–75.
58. Torchilin VP. Recent advances with liposomes as pharmaceutical carriers. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2005;4:145–60.
59. Micheli MR, Bova R, Magini A, Polidoro M, Emiliani C. Lipid-based nanocarriers for CNS-targeted drug delivery. Recent Pat CNS Drug Discov. 2012;7:71–86.
60. Liu Y, Pan J, Feng SS. Nanoparticles of lipid monolayer shell and biodegradable polymer core for controlled release of paclitaxel: effects of surfactants on particles size, characteristics and in vitro performance. Int J Pharm. 2010;395:243–50.
61. Garg M, Asthana A, Agashe HB, Agrawal GP, Jain NK. Stavudine-loaded mannosylated liposomes: in-vitro anti-HIV-I activity, tissue distribution and pharmacokinetics. J Pharm Pharmacol. 2006;58:605–16.
62. Garg M, Dutta T, Jain NK. Reduced hepatic toxicity, enhanced cellular uptake and altered pharmacokinetics of stavudine loaded galactosylated liposomes. Eur J Pharm Biopharm. 2007;67:76–85.
63. Huang K, Voss B, Kumar D, Hamm HE, Harth E. Dendritic molecular transporters provide control of delivery to intracellular compartments. Bioconjug Chem. 2007;18:403–9.
64. Bale SS, Kwon SJ, Shah DA, Banerjee A, Dordick JS, Kane RS. Nanoparticle-mediated cytoplasmic delivery of proteins to target cellular machinery. ACS Nano. 2010;4:1493–500.
65. Duncan R, Richardson SC. Endocytosis and intracellular trafficking as gateways for nanomedicine delivery: opportunities and challenges. Mol Pharm. 2012;9:2380–402.
66. Liu Y, Li K, Pan J, Liu B, Feng SS. Folic acid conjugated nanoparticles of mixed lipid monolayer shell and biodegradable polymer core for targeted delivery of Docetaxel. Biomaterials. 2010;31:330–8.

67. Jin SX, Bi DZ, Wang J, Wang YZ, Hu HG, Deng YH. Pharmacokinetics and tissue distribution of zidovudine in rats following intravenous administration of zidovudine myristate loaded liposomes. Die Pharmazie. 2005;60:840–3.
68. Puligujja P, McMillan J, Kendrick L, Li T, Balkundi S, Smith N, Veerubhotla RS, Edagwa BJ, Kabanov AV, Bronich T, Gendelman HE, Liu XM. Macrophage folate receptor-targeted antiretroviral therapy facilitates drug entry, retention, antiretroviral activities and biodistribution for reduction of human immunodeficiency virus infections. Nanomedicine. 2013;9(8): 1263–73.
69. Roy U, McMillan J, Alnouti Y, Gautum N, Smith N, Balkundi S, Dash P, Gorantla S, Martinez-Skinner A, Meza J, Kanmogne G, Swindells S, Cohen SM, Mosley RL, Poluektova L, Gendelman HE. Pharmacodynamic and antiretroviral activities of combination nanoformulated antiretrovirals in HIV-1-infected human peripheral blood lymphocyte-reconstituted mice. J Infect Dis. 2012;206:1577–88.
70. Kraft-Terry SD, Engebretsen IL, Bastola DK, Fox HS, Ciborowski P, Gendelman HE. Pulsed stable isotope labeling of amino acids in cell culture uncovers the dynamic interactions between HIV-1 and the monocyte-derived macrophage. J Proteome Res. 2011;10:2852–62.
71. Martinez-Skinner AL, Veerubhotla RS, Liu H, Xiong H, Yu F, McMillan JM, Gendelman HE. Functional proteome of macrophage carried nanoformulated antiretroviral therapy demonstrates enhanced particle carrying capacity. J Proteome Res. 2013;12:2282–94.
72. Kadiu I, Nowacek A, McMillan J, Gendelman HE. Macrophage endocytic trafficking of antiretroviral nanoparticles. Nanomedicine (Lond). 2011;6:975–94.
73. Sollner T, Bennett MK, Whiteheart SW, Scheller RH, Rothman JE. A protein assembly-disassembly pathway in vitro that may correspond to sequential steps of synaptic vesicle docking, activation, and fusion. Cell. 1993;75:409–18.
74. Ikehara Y, Niwa T, Biao L, Ikehara SK, Ohashi N, Kobayashi T, Shimizu Y, Kojima N, Nakanishi H. A carbohydrate recognition-based drug delivery and controlled release system using intraperitoneal macrophages as a cellular vehicle. Cancer Res. 2006;66:8740–8.
75. Kadiu I, Gendelman HE. Macrophage bridging conduit trafficking of HIV-1 through the endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi network. J Proteome Res. 2011;10:3225–38.
76. Gautam N, Roy U, Balkundi S, Puligujja P, Guo D, Smith N, Liu XM, Lamberty B, Morsey B, Fox HS, McMillan J, Gendelman HE, Alnouti Y. Preclinical pharmacokinetics and tissue distribution of long-acting nanoformulated antiretroviral therapy. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2013;57(7):3110–20.
77. Van Rompay KK. Evaluation of antiretrovirals in animal models of HIV infection. Antivir Res. 2010;85:159–75.
78. Shultz LD, Brehm MA, Garcia-Martinez JV, Greiner DL. Humanized mice for immune system investigation: progress, promise and challenges. Nat Rev Immunol. 2012;12:786–98.
79. Denton PW, Garcia JV. Humanized mouse models of HIV infection. AIDS Rev. 2011;13:135–48.
80. Bosma MJ, Carroll AM. The SCID mouse mutant: definition, characterization, and potential uses. Annu Rev Immunol. 1991;9:323–50.
81. Van Duyne R, Pedati C, Guendel I, Carpio L, Kehn-Hall K, Saifuddin M, Kashanchi F. The utilization of humanized mouse models for the study of human retroviral infections. Retrovirology. 2009;6:76.
82. Watanabe S, Terashima K, Ohta S, Horibata S, Yajima M, Shiozawa Y, Dewan MZ, Yu Z, Ito M, Morio T, Shimizu N, Honda M, Yamamoto N. Hematopoietic stem cell-engrafted NOD/SCID/IL2Rgamma null mice develop human lymphoid systems and induce long-lasting HIV-1 infection with specific humoral immune responses. Blood. 2007;109:212–8.
83. Wege AK, Melkus MW, Denton PW, Estes JD, Garcia JV. Functional and phenotypic characterization of the humanized BLT mouse model. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol. 2008;324:149–65.
84. Akkina R. New generation humanized mice for virus research: comparative aspects and future prospects. Virology. 2013;435:14–28.

85. Bailey J. Non-human primates in medical research and drug development: a critical review. Biogenic Amines. 2005;19:235–55.
86. Desai N. Challenges in development of nanoparticle-based therapeutics. AAPS J. 2012;14: 282–95.
87. Emerich DF, Thanos CG. The pinpoint promise of nanoparticle-based drug delivery and molecular diagnosis. Biomol Eng. 2006;23:171–84.
88. Allen TM. Ligand-targeted therapeutics in anticancer therapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2002;2: 750–63.
89. Sharma AK, George V, Valiathan R, Pilakka-Kanthikeel S, Pallikkuth S. Inhibitors of HIV-1 Entry and Integration: Recent Developments and Impact on Treatment. Recent Patents Inflamm Allergy Drug Discov. 2013;7:151–61.
90. Malet I, Calvez V, Marcelin AG. The future of integrase inhibitors of HIV-1. Curr Opin Virol. 2012;2:580–7.
91. Lee FJ, Carr A. Tolerability of HIV integrase inhibitors. Curr Opin HIV AIDS. 2012;7:422–8.
92. Arts EJ, Hazuda DJ. HIV-1 antiretroviral drug therapy. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med. 2012;2:a007161.
93. Quashie PK, Mesplede T, Wainberg MA. Evolution of HIV integrase resistance mutations. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2013;26:43–9.
94. Wainberg MA, Mesplede T, Quashie PK. The development of novel HIV integrase inhibitors and the problem of drug resistance. Curr Opin Virol. 2012;2:656–62.
95. De Feo CJ, Weiss CD. Escape from human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) entry inhibitors. Viruses. 2012;4:3859–911.
96. Underhill K, Morrow KM, Operario D, Mayer KH. Could FDA Approval of Pre-exposure Prophylaxis Make a Difference? A Qualitative Study of PrEP Acceptability and FDA Perceptions Among Men Who Have Sex with Men. AIDS Behav. 2014;18(2):241–9.
97. De Man J, Colebunders R, Florence E, Laga M, Kenyon C. What is the Place of Pre-Exposure Prophylaxis in HIV Prevention? AIDS Rev. 2013;15:102–11.
98. Tyor WR, Power C, Gendelman HE, Markham RB. A model of human immunodeficiency virus encephalitis in scid mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993;90:8658–62.
99. Persidsky Y, Gendelman HE. Murine models for human immunodeficiency virus type 1-associated dementia: the development of new treatment testing paradigms. J Neurovirol. 2002;8 Suppl 2:49–52.
100. Gorantla S, Che M, Gendelman HE. Isolation, propagation, and HIV-1 infection of monocyte-derived macrophages and recovery of virus from brain and cerebrospinal fluid. Methods Mol Biol. 2005;304:35–48.
101. Poluektova L, Gorantla S, Faraci J, Birusingh K, Dou H, Gendelman HE. Neuroregulatory events follow adaptive immune-mediated elimination of HIV-1-infected macrophages: studies in a murine model of viral encephalitis. J Immunol. 2004;172:7610–7.
102. Gorantla S, Makarov E, Finke-Dwyer J, Castanedo A, Holguin A, Gebhart CL, Gendelman HE, Poluektova L. Links between progressive HIV-1 infection of humanized mice and viral neuropathogenesis. Am J Pathol. 2010;177:2938–49.
103. Dash PK, Gorantla S, Gendelman HE, Knibbe J, Casale GP, Makarov E, Epstein AA, Gelbard HA, Boska MD, Poluektova LY. Loss of neuronal integrity during progressive HIV-1 infection of humanized mice. J Neurosci. 2011;31:3148–57.
104. Nischang M, Sutmuller R, Gers-Huber G, Audige A, Li D, Rochat MA, Baenziger S, Hofer U, Schlaepfer E, Regenass S, Amssoms K, Stoops B, Van Cauwenberge A, Boden D, Kraus G, Speck RF. Humanized mice recapitulate key features of HIV-1 infection: a novel concept using long-acting anti-retroviral drugs for treating HIV-1. PLoS One. 2012;7:e38853.
105. Nischang M, Gers-Huber G, Audige A, Akkina R, Speck RF. Modeling HIV infection and therapies in humanized mice. Swiss Med Wkly. 2012;142:13618.
106. Dash PK, Gendelman HE, Roy U, Balkundi S, Alnouti Y, Mosley RL, Gelbard HA, McMillan J, Gorantla S, Poluektova LY. Long-acting nanoformulated antiretroviral therapy elicits potent antiretroviral and neuroprotective responses in HIV-1-infected humanized mice. AIDS. 2012;26:2135–44.

107. Epstein AA, Narayanasamy P, Dash PK, High R, Bathena SP, Gorantla S, Poluektova LY, Alnouti Y, Gendelman HE, Boska MD. Combinatorial assessments of brain tissue metabolomics and histopathology in rodent models of human immunodeficiency virus infection. J Neuroimmune. 2013;8(5):1224–38.
108. Akkina R. Human immune responses and potential for vaccine assessment in humanized mice. Curr Opin Immunol. 2013;25(3):403–9.
109. Chateau ML, Denton PW, Swanson MD, McGowan I, Garcia JV. Rectal transmission of transmitted/founder HIV-1 is efficiently prevented by topical 1% tenofovir in BLT humanized mice. PLoS One. 2013;8:e60024.
110. Dudek TE, No DC, Seung E, Vrbanac VD, Fadda L, Bhoumik P, Boutwell CL, Power KA, Gladden AD, Battis L, Mellors EF, Tivey TR, Gao X, Altfeld M, Luster AD, Tager AM, Allen TM. Rapid evolution of HIV-1 to functional CD8(+) T cell responses in humanized BLT mice. Sci Transl Med. 2012;4(143):143ra98.
111. Clements JE, Mankowski JL, Gama L, Zink MC. The accelerated simian immunodeficiency virus macaque model of human immunodeficiency virus-associated neurological disease: from mechanism to treatment. J Neurovirol. 2008;14:309–17.
112. Fox HS. Virus-host interaction in the simian immunodeficiency virus-infected brain. J Neurovirol. 2008;14:286–91.
113. Crews L, Lentz MR, Gonzalez RG, Fox HS, Masliah E. Neuronal injury in simian immunodeficiency virus and other animal models of neuroAIDS. J Neurovirol. 2008;14:327–39.
114. Williams R, Bokhari S, Silverstein P, Pinson D, Kumar A, Buch S. Nonhuman primate models of NeuroAIDS. J Neurovirol. 2008;14:292–300.
115. Garcia-Lerma JG, Heneine W. Animal models of antiretroviral prophylaxis for HIV prevention. Curr Opin HIV AIDS. 2012;7:505–13.
116. Genesca M, McChesney MB, Miller CJ. Antiviral CD8+ T cells in the genital tract control viral replication and delay progression to AIDS after vaginal SIV challenge in rhesus macaques immunized with virulence attenuated SHIV 89.6. J Intern Med. 2009;265:67–77.
117. FDA, CFR Code of Federal Regulations Title 21: 21 CFR312.23, in, Federal Register, 2012.
118. FDA, Guidance for Industry: Immunotoxicology Evaluation of Investigational New Drugs, in: HHS (Ed.), 2002.
119. FDA, Guidance for Industry: Nonclinical Safety Evaluation of Drug or Biologic Combinations, in: HHS (Ed.), 2006.
120. FDA, Guidance for Industry: M3(R2) Nonclinical Safety Studies for the Conduct of Human Clinical Trials and Marketing Authorization for Pharmaceuticals, Revision 1, in: HHS (Ed.), 2010.
121. das Neves J, Amiji MM, Bahia MF, Sarmento B. Nanotechnology-based systems for the treatment and prevention of HIV/AIDS. Adv Drug Deliv Rev. 2010;62:458–77.

Immunomodulatory Therapeutics

David J. Graber and William F. Hickey

Abstract Altered immune mechanisms occur in a number of neurological illnesses. These immune responses range from persistent or disproportionate reactivity of resident microglia cells within the CNS to the infiltration of potentially autoreactive peripheral leukocytes. Therapies directed at elements of peripheral immune system have been a successful strategy for treating the relapsing-remitting stage of multiple sclerosis. However, regulating the microglial activity within the CNS could be a promising approach for treating the progressive stage of multiple sclerosis and other neurodegenerative diseases for which effective therapies have remained elusive. Immunomodulating agents that have been evaluated in several neurological illnesses with a neurodegenerative and/or a neuroinflammatory component are discussed in this chapter.

Keywords Neuroinflammation • Anti-inflammatory • Immunosuppressive • Central nervous system • Microglia • Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis • Parkinson's disease • Alzheimer's disease • Multiple sclerosis

Abbreviations

AD	Alzheimer's disease
ALS	Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
COX	Cyclooxygenases
DAMPs	Damage-associated molecular patterns

D.J. Graber (✉) • W.F. Hickey, Ph.D.
Geisel School of Medicine at Dartmouth, Hanover, NH, USA

Department of Pathology, Dartmouth-Hitchcock Medical Center,
One Medical Drive, Lebanon, NH 03576, USA
e-mail: David.J.Graber@Dartmouth.Edu; William.F.Hickey@Dartmouth.Edu

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_26, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

IFN-beta	Interferon-beta
MS	Multiple sclerosis
NSAIDs	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
NF-κB	Nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells
Nrf2	Nuclear-related factor E2-related factor 2
PD	Parkinson's disease
PPMS	Primary progressive multiple sclerosis
PTGS	Prostaglandin-endoperoxide synthases
SPMS	Secondary progressive multiple sclerosis
VCAM-1	Vascular cell adhesion molecule

1 Immune Mechanisms in Neurodegenerative Diseases Are Propitious Therapeutic Targets

Early use of the term "neuroinflammation" often described the infiltration of peripheral immune cells (e.g., lymphocytes) into the spinal cord in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. The term "neuroinflammation" has evolved over time, however, to include reactive microglia and their production of inflammatory mediators within the CNS parenchyma—even in the absence of leukocytic infiltration. This seems to be a feature unique to the CNS because accumulation of leukocytes in a tissue is a defining characteristic of inflammation outside the nervous system.

Parkinson's disease (PD), amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS; "Lou Gehrig's disease"), and Alzheimer's disease (AD) are well-recognized neurodegenerative diseases lacking effective treatments to stop the neuron loss and gradual, irreversible neurological disability. In addition to the loss of select groups of neurons, common characteristics of these illnesses are an aged-related onset, formation of intracellular protein aggregates, signs of oxidative stress, and so-called neuroinflammation. Increased numbers of microglia, transformed glial cell morphology and immunological marker expression, and production of inflammatory mediators (i.e., cytokines, chemokines, and free radicals) are components of the neuroinflammation in such neurodegenerative diseases and in corresponding animal models. In the late 1980s and early 1990s, analysis of neural parenchyma near sites of neuron loss in postmortem CNS from patients with various neurodegenerative disease revealed microglia with highly activated phenotype which included having a rounded morphology and enhanced expression of immunological cell surface markers [1–4]. Evidence of elevated inflammatory mediators in these same tissue regions followed [5–8].

Whether the neuroinflammation associated with neurodegenerative disease is exclusively a reaction to neuron damage, or whether the subsequent production of inflammatory mediators is a key contributor to neuron death, is disputed. Aberrantly processed proteins, intracellular protein aggregates, and damage-associated molecular

patterns (DAMPs) released from injured neurons may be a driving force for neuroinflammation by interacting with pattern recognition receptors expressed on microglia or infiltrating macrophages. Experimental evidence shows that some of the inflammatory mediators produced during neuroinflammation can be neurotoxic [9–13]. A viscous cycle of neurotoxicity-mediated neuroinflammation and neuroinflammation-mediated neurotoxicity may be a basic pathogenic mechanism in neurodegenerative diseases. To confirm this, neuroprotection in human neurodegenerative diseases as a result from limiting parenchymal neuroinflammation is necessary.

Multiple sclerosis (MS) is an autoimmune demyelinating disease that is now considered to have neurodegenerative aspects based on axonal degeneration [14, 15]. The immunological mechanisms associated with MS are much more complex than that with other neurodegenerative diseases. Infiltration of leukocytes (e.g., T cells) into the affected myelin-rich white matter regions of the CNS is critical for the relapsing-remitting stage of MS. As discussed in more detail below, the frequency and severity of relapsing demyelinating episodes are reduced by immunomodulatory agents that have been developed during the last 30 years to regulate the immune system peripherally. Progressive MS is a more debilitating stage that frequently follows the relapsing-remitting stage ("secondary progressive MS," SPMS), but can sometimes dominate from the start ("primary progressive MS," PPMS). The progressive stage, which shares similarities to other classic neurodegenerative diseases, currently lacks effective treatments. There is a gradual worsening of irreversible neurological disability over months to years. In the chronic MS plaques, there is enhanced activity of reactive microglia, but with fewer signs of classic inflammation that is characteristic of acute, transient lesions found during the relapsing-remitting stage [16, 17]. As in other neurodegenerative diseases, chronic neuroinflammation controlled mainly by reactive microglia within the CNS may function as the destructive factor for the gradual decline evident in progressive stage of MS.

2 Therapeutic Immunomodulation

Immunomodulating drugs can be divided into three classes: (1) immunostimulants, (2) immunosuppressants, and (3) anti-inflammatory agents. Immunostimulants boost or instigate an immunological reaction. Both antigen and adjuvant in vaccines act as immunostimulants by mounting adaptive immunity to protect against specific pathogens. Imiquimod is an immunostimulant that binds to the pattern recognition receptor called toll-like receptor 7 on immune cells to enhance the synthesis of inflammatory mediators to aid in the immune response to clear warts or target cancerous skin cells. With respect to immunostimulatory treatments for neurodegenerative diseases, one strategy is to enhance the immune response for aberrant protein removal in the CNS. Bapineuzumab, gantenerumab, and solanezumab are humanized antibodies created to bind amyloid beta in an effort to instigate

phagocytosis-mediated clearing of plaques in AD. Anti-amyloid therapies have not been successful to date despite some evidence of lowering amyloid brain plaque [18] and tau protein in CSF [19]. A non-antibody-mediated approach to enhance clearing of aberrant proteins by phagocytosis has been demonstrated in a preclinical mouse model of AD upon treatment with a small molecule retinoid X receptor agonist called bexarotene [20]. Whether this effectiveness will translate in human disease is undetermined at this time. Opposite to enhancing the immune response as a therapeutic strategy for treating neurodegenerative diseases, attenuating the excessive or chronic neuroinflammation is also being pursued.

Immunosuppressive drugs tend to impede the adaptive immune response or limit the infiltration of leukocytes during inflammation. Such agents are commonly utilized to prevent tissue rejection following organ transplantation and to treat autoimmune diseases. The diverse mechanisms by which immunosuppressive drugs work include selectively killing certain types of leukocytes, shifting the balance of Th1 versus Th2 versus Th17 responses, inhibiting production of interleukin-2, or blocking tissue infiltration of immune cells at sites of inflammation. For CNS illnesses, immunosuppressive agents have been commonplace for treating relapsing-remitting MS. Infiltration of lymphocytes into white matter is well documented during this phase of MS and in the animal model experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Immunosuppressive agents such as natalizumab, fingolimod, and teriflunomide are discussed in more depth below and summarized in Table 1.

Neurodegenerative diseases like AD, ALS, and PD do not appear to be mediated by adaptive immunity. They do, however, involve excessive innate immune activity most often represented by production of inflammatory mediators by microglia that can be toxic to neurons. This immune-mediated destruction of host cells has been referred to as auto-inflammatory and auto-toxicity, which is distinctive from autoimmunity. The progressive phase of MS, which is typically impervious to therapies that mitigate the relapse-remitting stage, may involve similar centralized neuroinflammation. Anti-inflammatory agents differ from immunosuppressants in that they target more of the synthesis of inflammatory mediators produced during innate immune responses or the function of selective inflammatory products. Mechanisms include inhibiting the synthesis of select mediators, blocking signaling pathways to prevent the synthesis of a group of mediators, and blocking the effects of soluble mediators individually. For drugs developed to limit the neuroinflammation in neurodegenerative disease, they will need to overcome the restrictive blood–brain barrier while retaining their anti-inflammatory activity within the unique environment of the CNS.

The majority of anti-inflammatory drugs are either glucocorticoid receptor agonists (steroid-based) or cyclooxygenase inhibitors (nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, NSAIDs). Additionally, drugs such as minocycline and thalidomide were originally developed for their non-immunological effects but were later reported to also have anti-inflammatory activity. These anti-inflammatory agents are discussed in more detail below and are summarized in Table 1.

Table 1 Immunomodulating drugs in neurodegenerative diseases

	Molecular target	Mechanism	RRMS	PPMS or SPMS	AD	PD	ALS
IFN-beta	Type I IFN receptor	Shift in adaptive immunity towards Th1; anti-inflammatory	Reduce relapse rate [24, 25]	NE [26, 27]	Und	Und	Und
Glatiramer acetate	Major histocompatibility complex	Shifts adaptive immunity towards Th2; interfere with antigen presentation	Reduce relapse rate [29]	NE [29]	Und	Und	NE [30]
Natalizumab	α4-Integrin	Block tissue infiltration of immune cells	Reduce relapse rate [31, 32]	Und	Und	Und	Und
Fingolimod	Sphingosine-1-phosphate receptor	Sequesters lymphocytes in lymph nodes	Reduce relapse rate [37, 38]	Und	Und	Und	Und
Teriflunomide	Dihydroorotate dehydrogenase	Toxic to active lymphocytes	Reduce relapse rate [40]	Und	Und	Und	Und
Dimethyl fumarate	Nuclear-related factor E2-related factor 2	Free radical protection; anti-inflammatory; reduce lymphocyte function	Reduce relapse rate [41, 42]	Und	Und	Und	Und
Glucocorticoid	Glucocorticoid receptor	Reduce lymphocyte function; anti-inflammatory	Improve recovery from severe relapse [43–45]	Inc [46–48]	NE [49]	Und	Und
NSAIDs	Prostaglandin-endoperoxide synthases (cyclooxygenases)	Reduce prostaglandins	Und	Und	NE [60]	Und	NE [61]
Minocycline	Unknown	Inc	Und	Und	Und	NE [68]	NE [67]
Thalidomide	Unknown	Inc	Und	Und	Und	Und	NE [72]

Outcomes of clinical trials for relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis (RRMS), primary or secondary progressive MS (PPMS or SPMS), Alzheimer's disease (AD), Parkinson's disease (PD), and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) are summarized. Interferon, IFN; nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug, NSAID; undetermined, Und; inconclusive, Inc; no efficacy, NE

3 Interferon-Beta1 (Betaseron®, Extavia®, Avonex®, and Rebif®)

Description. Interferon-beta (IFN-beta) is an endogenous protein and a 187 amino acid member of the IFN family of cytokines. IFNs are expressed in response to viral infections and function to interfere with viral replication. Double-stranded RNA that is produced during viral replication in host cells is the main signal for IFN expression. Recombinant IFN-alpha, IFN-beta, and IFN-gamma were developed as potential antiviral therapies. Since MS was hypothesized to be caused by an unknown viral infection, pilot trials with these recombinant IFNs were conducted. IFN-alpha did not improve relapse rates in MS [21] and IFN-gamma exacerbated relapses [22]. IFN-beta, a subtype normally produced by fibroblasts, showed promising results in relapsing-remitting MS [23]. This prompted the development of new ways to synthesize this polypeptide. Recombinant IFN-beta has been produced in bacterial expression systems (IFN-beta1b) or in mammalian cells (IFN-beta1a). The FDA approved subcutaneous injections of synthetic IFN-beta in 1993 for treatment of MS.

Efficacy. In relapsing-remitting MS, IFN-beta therapy increases the number of progression-free patients, lowers the number of newly formed CNS lesions based on MRI detection, and decreases the number of relapses (acute, transient worsening of disability status) [24, 25]. Yet, IFN-beta therapy does not appear to slow down the decline in disability in the progressive stage of MS [26, 27].

Mechanism of Action. IFN-beta activates heterodimeric IFN-alpha/beta receptor (type I IFN receptor). While IFN-alpha also activates this receptor, IFN-gamma activates type II IFN receptor and initiates a separate signaling pathway. IFN-beta engages the type I IFN receptor, initiates a signaling pathway involving receptor-associated kinases Jak1 and Tyk2, and signals the formation of a transcription factor complex IFN-stimulated gene factor 3. IFN target genes that have the IFN-stimulating response element are expressed. Many immunomodulatory and antiviral proteins are produced in response to activation of this pathway.

The precise therapeutic mechanism of IFN-beta treatment in relapsing-remitting MS remains unclear. It seems to be based on its immunomodulatory activity as opposed to its antiviral activity. This may include reduced T cell proliferation, reduced antigen presentation, altered expression of inflammatory mediators, and a shift in adaptive immunity towards Th1 (activation of CD8+ T cells).

Drawbacks. The method of administration for IFN-beta is by intramuscular or subcutaneous injection. This relies on self-administration and can cause adverse reactions (e.g., necrosis) at injection site. Some patients develop neutralizing antibodies against IFN-beta, resulting in loss of drug effectiveness. Finally, there is a subset of relapsing-remitting patients that do not respond to IFN-beta therapy.

4 Glatiramer Acetate (Copaxone® and Copolymer 1)

Description. Glatiramer acetate (Fig. 1) is a mixture of random polymers of four amino acids commonly found in myelin basic protein: glutamic acid, lysine, alanine, and tyrosine. Animals given this compound were shown to be resistant to the development of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis, and this protection could be adoptively transferred to normal syngeneic recipients [28].

Efficacy. Glatiramer acetate lowers the relapse rate in relapsing-remitting MS, but is ineffective in slowing the disability increase in the progressive stage of MS [29]. It was evaluated in ALS and showed no beneficial effect on the rate of neurological deterioration [30].

Mechanism of Action. The therapeutic mechanism of glatiramer acetate in relapsing-remitting MS is not fully understood. It may involve competitive inhibition with autoantigens for binding to major histocompatibility complex molecules to inhibit presentation to T cells. It is also suggested that glatiramer acetate shifts adaptive immunity towards Th2 and enhances expression of anti-inflammatory cytokines.

Drawbacks. It cannot be taken orally and is self-injected either intramuscularly or subcutaneously by patients. Adverse reactions (e.g., necrosis) can occur at the injection site. Some of the postinjection reactions include chest pain, flushing, dyspnea, palpitations, and/or anxiety.

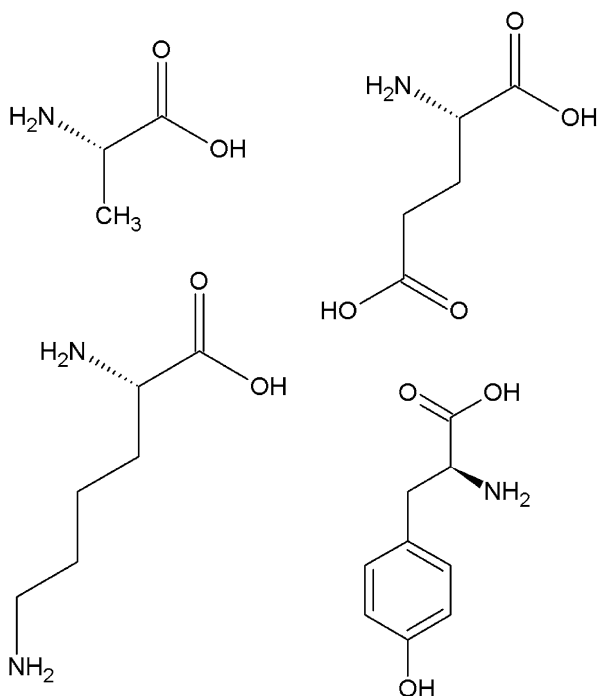


Fig. 1 Chemical structures of the amino acids in glatiramer acetate, which is a polymer consisting of random sequences of glutamic acid, lysine, alanine, and tyrosine. Structures generated using ACD/ChemSketch 12.01 (Advanced Chemistry Development, Inc.)

5 Natalizumab (Tysabri®)

Description. Natalizumab is a monoclonal antibody against the cell adhesion molecule α4-integrin. It is produced in murine myeloma cells and humanized by complementarity-determining region grafting—hypervariable region of the murine antibody gene is combined to a human immunoglobulin framework. It is an IgG4 subclass of antibody, which is preferred for therapeutic antibodies because it is a weak inducer of effector functions.

Efficacy. Natalizumab reduces the rate of relapses and limits the accumulation of new lesions [31, 32]. Its effect on the progressive stage of MS has not been fully elucidated.

Mechanism of Action. Natalizumab binds to α4-integrin expressed on immune cells and interferes with its binding to vascular cell adhesion molecule (VCAM)-1 expressed on vasculature endothelial cells at sites of inflammation. VCAM-1 expression is increased in active CNS plaques [33]. Natalizumab blocks infiltration of leukocytes into the central nervous system.

Drawbacks. A major limitation in disrupting leukocyte infiltration into the CNS with natalizumab treatment is the development of potentially fatal progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in patients infected with latent JC virus and subsequent development of immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome after halting treatment [34]. This can now be managed by limiting natalizumab to patients negative for antibodies against the JC virus. As with other biologic therapeutics, the host immune system can react to treatment by producing antibodies against natalizumab that can cause an allergic reaction or neutralize its efficacy [35, 36]. Other drawbacks include the required administration by intravenous infusion and the development of hepatotoxicity with prolonged use.

6 Fingolimod (Gilenya®)

Description. Fingolimod (Fig. 2) is an analogue of sphingosine, a primary part of a class of cell membrane lipids called sphingolipids.

Efficacy. Fingolimod modestly reduces the relapse rate in MS [37, 38] and lowers the lesion burden [39].

Mechanism of Action. Fingolimod alters lymphocyte migration by binding to the sphingosine-1-phosphate receptor. This sequesters lymphocytes in the lymph nodes.

Drawbacks. There is an increased risk of life-threatening viral infection and risk of tumor development with fingolimod use. It can worsen severe MS relapses. Common side effects include headache, influenza, diarrhea, back pain, elevated liver enzymes, and cough.

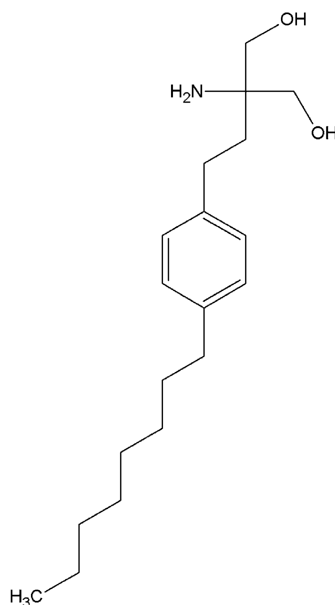


Fig. 2 Chemical structure of fingolimod. Structure generated using ACD/ChemSketch 12.01

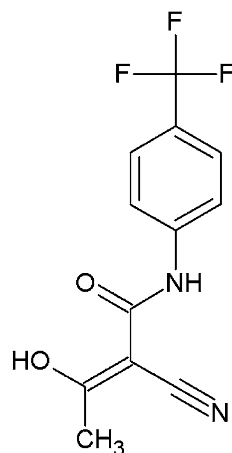


Fig. 3 Chemical structure of teriflunomide. Structure generated using ACD/ChemSketch 12.01

7 Teriflunomide (Aubagio® and Flucyamide)

Description. Teriflunomide (Fig. 3) is an active metabolite of the pyrimidine synthesis inhibitor leflunomide, which inhibits dihydroorotate dehydrogenase.

Efficacy. It appears to be beneficial in reducing the relapse rate in the relapsing-remitting stage of MS; however more trials are necessary for validation [40].

Mechanism of Action. Teriflunomide inhibits pyrimidine biosynthesis by blocking the enzyme dihydroorotate dehydrogenase. The subsequent reduction in pyrimidine

ribonucleotide uridine monophosphate inhibits rapidly dividing cells, including activated T cells. It may also disrupt the interaction of T cells with antigen-presenting cells.

Drawbacks. Teriflunomide may cause birth defects. Side effects with its use include diarrhea, nausea, and hair thinning. An increase in alanine aminotransferase in serum has also been reported indicating asymptomatic liver dysfunction.

8 Dimethyl Fumarate (Tecfidera™, Fumaric Acid, BG-12)

Description. Dimethyl fumarate (Fig. 4) is an activator of nuclear-related factor E2-related factor 2 (Nrf2) signaling.

Efficacy. Treatment with dimethyl fumarate reduces the relapse rate and the number of lesions in relapsing-remitting MS [41, 42]. Its effect on the progressive stage of MS has not been examined to date.

Mechanism of Action. Dimethyl fumarate is a known activator of the Nrf2 signaling pathway, which enhances expression of genes associated with the antioxidant response element. The gene products can protect cells from oxidative insults. Like many other molecular activators of Nrf2 signaling, dimethyl fumarate also has anti-inflammatory activity as demonstrated by inhibiting immunological expression of inflammatory mediators.

It is unclear whether enhanced production of protective gene products or anti-inflammatory activity of dimethyl fumarate is responsible for protection in relapsing-remitting MS. A reduction in lymphocyte numbers was observed in treated patients [41, 42]. This approach of attenuating the immune system peripherally parallels other disease-modifying drugs for the relapsing-remitting stage of MS. It is unknown whether dimethyl fumarate can regulate reactive microglia in the CNS. If so, this line of therapy may provide therapeutic protection in the progressive stage of MS or for other neurodegenerative diseases.

Drawbacks. Side effects of dimethyl fumarate use include flushing and gastrointestinal complaints. Its activity may be affected when taken orally by esterases in the small intestine which can cleave dimethyl fumarate to monomethyl fumarate.

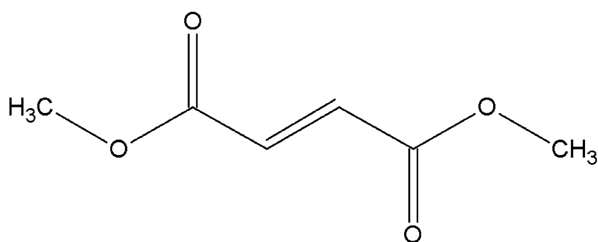


Fig. 4 Chemical structure of dimethyl fumarate. Structure generated using ACD/ChemSketch 12.01

9 Glucocorticoids

Description. Glucocorticoid receptor agonists are a long established and powerful class of anti-inflammatory drugs. They inhibit the expression of most inflammatory mediators. It also has immunosuppressive effects as well and is often used to address exacerbated relapses in MS. Pharmacologically active glucocorticoids include hydrocortisone, prednisone, prednisolone, methylprednisolone, dexamethasone (Fig. 5), betamethasone, fluticasone, and triamcinolone.

Efficacy. In relapsing-remitting MS, glucocorticoids are often prescribed to treat acute relapses. While they improve disability and promote lesion recovery, there is no effect on the risk of relapse [43–45]. Use of glucocorticoid therapy for the progressive stage of MS has provided some positive results [46–48], but a more controlled trial is warranted for validation.

Despite their proven utility in a number of peripheral inflammatory diseases, only one glucocorticoid clinical trial has been conducted for AD and no trials to date for PD or ALS. In the randomized controlled trial in AD patients, a low-dose regimen of prednisone was not found to be effective [49]. Prednisone, the sole glucocorticoid tested in a neurodegenerative disease clinical trial, is a prodrug that is converted to the active prednisolone form in the liver.

Mechanism of Action. Glucocorticoids diffuse into cells and bind to the intracellular glucocorticoid receptor forming a complex that translocates into the nucleus. There, it stimulates or represses expression of multiple gene targets by binding to glucocorticoid response elements. The glucocorticoid-glucocorticoid receptor complex blocks the synthesis of multiple inflammatory mediators by inhibiting immunological transcription factors (i.e., NF-kappaB and AP-1) and increases expression of anti-inflammatory enzymes (e.g., mitogen-activated protein kinase phosphatase-1).

Drawbacks. Glucocorticoids regulate multiple non-immunological genes, too. Prolonged use is associated with abnormal hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal function (i.e., Cushing's syndrome), cardiovascular disease, osteoporosis, developmental problems, disturbed glucose metabolism, and mood disorders. There is also the potential problem of drug availability in the neural parenchyma. Penetration of glucocorticoids into the CNS is partially inhibited due to the p-glycoprotein efflux

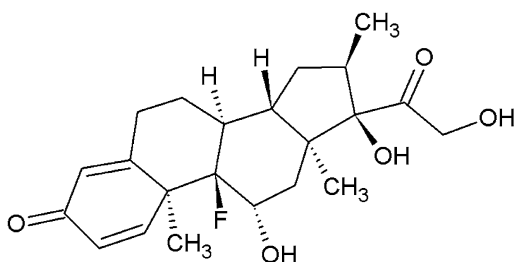


Fig. 5 Chemical structure of dexamethasone. Structure generated using ACD/ChemSketch 12.01

transporter expressed on the blood–brain barrier [50]. Glucocorticoids also bind the pregnane X receptor and increase p-glycoprotein activity [51]. This could augment blood–brain barrier resistance with continued usage.

In conclusion, the unsuccessful trial in AD by prednisone treatment may be due to inefficient access into the CNS. Increasing the dose is no solution due to severe metabolic side effect by glucocorticoids that include hyperglycemia, osteoporosis, growth impairment, and water retention abnormalities.

10 Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs)

Description. Extracts from bark and leaves from willow trees were used to treat fever and inflammation more than a thousand years ago. The active component was later identified as salacin, the archetype for the class of drugs called nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). The molecular target was later identified as prostaglandin-endoperoxide synthases (PTGS), more commonly called cyclooxygenases (COX). Constitutively expressed (COX-1 or PTGS1) and inducible (COX-2 or PTGS2) isoforms have been identified. These enzymes act on arachidonic acid—an unsaturated fatty acid released from cell membranes by phospholipases. COX-1 and COX-2 oxidize arachidonic acid forming prostaglandin H2, which can then be converted to a number of other prostaglandin isotypes or thromboxane by other tissue-specific enzymes. Early in the development of inflammation, there is an increase in the prostanoid class of fatty acids from enhanced COX-2 expression. These inflammatory products are critical in inflammation by interacting with selective G protein-coupled receptors (i.e., EP_{1-4}, DP, $FP_{A,B}$, IP, and TP) with effects including vasodilation, fever induction, leukocyte recruitment, and cytokine biosynthesis regulation. Over 20 nonselective COX inhibitors have been developed. They include acetylated (i.e., aspirin; Fig. 6) and non-acetylated (e.g., diflunisal) salicylates, para-aminophenol derivative (i.e., acetaminophen), propionic acids (e.g., ibuprofen), acetic acids (e.g., diclofenac), enolic acids (e.g., meloxicam), anthranilic acids (e.g., meclofenamate), and nonacidics (i.e., nabumetone). Selective COX-2 inhibitors include celecoxib, etoricoxib, and parecoxib.

Efficacy. In animal studies, COX inhibitors were initially found to extend survival in the transgenic mice expressing the mutant superoxide dismutase-1 gene found in

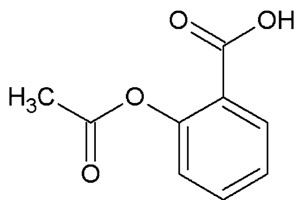


Fig. 6 Chemical structure of aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid). Structure generated using ACD/ChemSketch 12.01

some forms of familial ALS [52, 53]. However, a subsequent study using a larger sample size found no protective effect [54].

As opposed to their anti-inflammatory activity, some reports suggest COX inhibitors may also have immunostimulatory effects. By inhibiting COX-2, microglia activation and production of inflammatory mediators were enhanced in mice challenged with lipopolysaccharide or pro-inflammatory cytokines [55, 56]. Data from our laboratory suggest that ibuprofen moderately enhances lipopolysaccharide-stimulated IL-1β mRNA expression (Graber, unpublished observations). Furthermore, PGE2 and PGD2, products blocked by COX-2 inhibition, can be neuroprotective [57, 58]. In a model of excitotoxic neuronal death, COX inhibitors worsened kainic acid-mediated hippocampal neuron death [59].

Clinical trials for AD have been completed or are set to begin for celecoxib, ibuprofen, indomethacin, lornoxicam, naproxen, and rofecoxib. An intervention review showed that the rate of decline was not improved by either nonselective or COX-2-specific inhibitors [60]. One ALS trial with celecoxib showed no beneficial effect [61]. The unsuccessful trials in AD and ALS by COX inhibitors may be due to a combination of anti-inflammatory activity with counterproductive pro-inflammatory activity and enhanced neurotoxicity in the CNS.

Mechanism of Action. Oxidation of arachidonic acid, a fatty acid found in cell membranes, is enhanced during inflammation. The two main types of enzymes responsible are COX and 5-lipooxygenase. NSAIDs inhibit arachidonic acid from interacting with the COX enzyme by binding to a hydrophobic channel or acetylating a serine hydroxyl group near the active site. This decreases the levels of prostaglandin E2, prostacyclin, prostaglandin D2, and prostaglandin F2a produced during inflammation.

Drawbacks. Mucous production in the gastrointestinal tract is regulated by COX-1-mediated prostaglandins. Prolonged use of nonspecific COX inhibitors reduces mucous protection from gastric acids and can lead to ulcers. Selective COX-2 inhibitors circumnavigate these adverse gastrointestinal effects, but their prolonged use has been associated with cardiovascular dysfunction.

11 Minocycline (Dynacin®, Minocin®, Solodyn®, Minocycline, Minociclina, Minocyclinum, Minociclinum, and Borymycin)

Description. Minocycline (Fig. 7) is a semisynthetic tetracycline drug originally developed for its broad-spectrum antibacterial activity. It has also been purported to have anti-inflammatory effects and gain access into the CNS.

Efficacy. Minocycline's protective effects in animal models of neurodegenerative disease are inconsistent. In an MPTP toxicity model of Parkinson's disease, both protective [62, 63] and deleterious [64, 65] findings were found. Conflicting effects

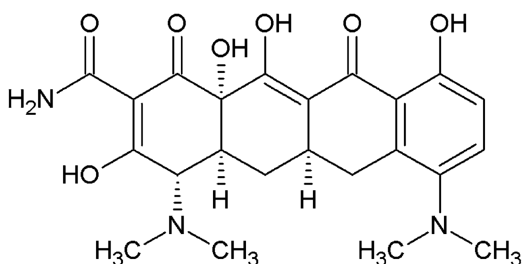


Fig. 7 Chemical structure of minocycline. Structure generated using ACD/ChemSketch 12.01

caused by minocycline were also found in transgenic mice expressing the mutant superoxide dismutase-1 gene found in some forms of familial ALS [54, 66].

Minocycline was tested in clinical trials for ALS and PD. The phase III clinical trial in ALS patients reported no improvement with minocycline and, in fact, showed an enhanced rate of deterioration [67]. The phase II clinical trial in PD patients found no improvement after 18 months of minocycline treatment [68].

Mechanism of Action. While minocycline is considered to have anti-inflammatory activity, it should be noted that these findings are inconsistent. An early study exploring its immunomodulatory potential in monocytes in vitro found minocycline enhanced IL-1β secretion [69]. A subsequent study revealed minocycline to enhance TNF-α secretion from monocytes stimulated with lipopolysaccharide, whereas minocycline suppressed TNF-α when monocytes were stimulated with phytohemagglutinin [70]. The unsuccessful trials in ALS and PD may be due to variable and condition-specific physiological anti-inflammatory activity by minocycline.

Drawbacks. Minocycline is well tolerated, but with some reports of dizziness and dermatological abnormalities such as rash and hyperpigmentation.

12 Thalidomide (Thalomid®, Distaval, Softenon, Sedoval, Talimol, Corronarobetin, Psychotablets, Theophilcholine, and Algosediv)

Description. Thalidomide (Fig. 8) was initially developed as a sedative with anti-emetic properties. It gained notoriety in the 1950s by causing serious birth defects after being prescribed to pregnant women to combat morning sickness. A physician in Israel continued to prescribe thalidomide in leprosy patients who were having trouble sleeping. Unexpectedly, the fever and painful skin nodules present in some patients, a condition called erythema nodosum leprosum, disappeared when treated with thalidomide. The beneficial effects were later thought to be due to anti-inflammatory properties. This lead to the revival of thalidomide, but with restrictions to avoid birth defects in pregnant women.

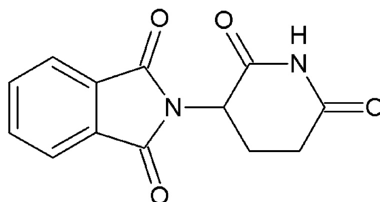


Fig. 8 Chemical structure of thalidomide. Structure generated using ACD/ChemSketch 12.01

Efficacy. Neuroprotective effects of thalidomide in the transgenic mice expressing the mutant superoxide dismutase-1 gene found in some forms of familial ALS were inconsistent [54, 71]. A clinical trial in ALS was conducted. No beneficial effect by thalidomide was found in a phase II trial [72].

Mechanism of Action. Thalidomide is considered to be a selective inhibitor of TNF-α expression. During an acute inflammatory state of erythema nodosum leprosum that sometimes occurs in leprosy patients, serum TNF-α levels have been reported to be variably increased and then suggestively decreased following thalidomide treatment [73, 74]. Cell culture experiments support thalidomide's inhibition of TNF-α expression with selective mRNA degradation as a likely mechanism [75, 76]. Evidence of thalidomide-mediated inhibition of TNF is equivocal, however. A more recent study examining erythema nodosum leprosum patients found no enhanced TNF-α, and thalidomide caused an increase in TNF-α serum levels along with clinical improvement [77]. Others have reported that thalidomide enhances TNF-α expression [78–82]. The mechanism and role of thalidomide in immunomodulation remains unclear. The unsuccessful trial in ALS may be due to a lack of physiological anti-inflammatory activity by thalidomide.

Drawbacks. A major risk with thalidomide is severe birth defects most commonly involving shortened limbs. Women who are or may become pregnant are excluded from thalidomide. Women prescribed thalidomide must remain abstinent or take two reliable methods of birth control. Since the mechanism for serious birth defects has not been fully elucidated, even males prescribed with thalidomide must restrict sexual contact and not donate sperm. Other adverse effects include deep vein thrombosis.

13 Identifying Novel Agents that Disrupt Neuroinflammation

The blood–brain/spinal barrier is a major obstacle in the development of drugs aimed at targeting microglia or infiltrated macrophages in the CNS. Many psychoactive drugs have been developed to penetrate into the CNS and augment neurotransmitter signaling. Physiochemical properties of these CNS-active drugs have been compared to other drugs known to not penetrate into the CNS [83–87]. This has led to physiochemical criteria that are favorable for entry into the CNS, which

should be helpful in developing anti-inflammatory agents to regulate parenchymal neuroinflammation. Chemical parameters that appear to be important include a molecular weight, numbers of hydrogen bond donors and acceptors, lipophilicity, and topographical polar surface area.

Anti-inflammatory agents can target a single inflammatory mediator or target an immunological transcription factor to regulate multiple inflammatory mediators. A solitary neurotoxic molecule which is responsible for parenchymal damage in all neuroinflammatory conditions has not been identified. It is likely that multiple inflammatory mediators work in concert to generate a neurotoxic environment. Neurons tend to be highly sensitive to free radical damage and excitotoxicity. Nitric oxide, superoxide anion, and glutamate can be produced by activated microglia. Cytokines such as interleukin-1beta and tumor necrosis factor-alpha may augment the effects by these neurotoxic molecules. These cytokines, in addition to chemokines like chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 2 (CCL2, MCP-1), may sustain neuroinflammation and recruit other microglia or infiltrating macrophages.

Nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells (NF-κB) is an important immunological transcription factor and an attractive therapeutic target. Novel anti-inflammatory agents that enter the CNS and block NF-κB signaling should be developed to test in models of neurodegenerative disease. Agents can target the NF-κB complex directly or indirectly through upstream signaling targets. Some promising indirect targets include glycogen synthase kinase-3β, nuclear-related factor E2-related factor 2, p38 kinase, and c-Jun N-terminal kinase.

14 Conclusion

Immunomodulatory drugs have been employed to treat a number of neurological illnesses. Agents that regulate the activity of the immune system peripherally or limit the influx of lymphocytes into the CNS have been most successful in relapsing-remitting MS. However, these same agents appear to be ineffective in the progressive stage of MS. Safe and reliable anti-inflammatory drugs that penetrate into and maintain activity within the CNS, especially those able to modify microglia activation, remain a promising therapeutic strategy for progressive MS, PD, ALS, and AD. Minocycline and thalidomide were unsuccessful to date, but their anti-inflammatory activity is not overwhelmingly convincing. Inhibitors to a single cytokine or inflammatory enzyme may not possess the effectiveness to alter disproportionate neuroinflammation. Developing new compounds that are CNS permeable and block key immune signaling molecules (e.g., NF-κB) that inhibit the expression of numerous inflammatory mediators is a promising approach. Ideally, these new drugs will not impede the targeted cells from their phagocytosis duties of clearing local debris (e.g., aberrant proteins, protein aggregates). An emphasis should be made to develop compounds with these properties as a primary or adjunctive treatment for neurodegenerative diseases and other neurological illnesses with a neuroinflammatory component.

References

1. Rogers J, Luber-Narod J, Styren SD, Civin WH. Expression of immune system-associated antigens by cells of the human central nervous system: Relationship to the pathology of alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 1988;9:339–49.
2. McGeer PL, Itagaki S, Boyes BE, McGeer EG. Reactive microglia are positive for HLA-DR in the substantia nigra of parkinson's and alzheimer's disease brains. Neurology. 1988;38(8): 1285–91.
3. McGeer PL, Itagaki S, McGeer EG. Expression of the histocompatibility glycoprotein HLA-DR in neurological disease. Acta Neuropathol. 1988;76(6):550–7.
4. Kawamata T, Akiyama H, Yamada T, McGeer PL. Immunologic reactions in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis brain and spinal cord tissue. Am J Pathol. 1992;140(3):691–707.
5. Mogi M, Harada M, Kondo T, Riederer P, Inagaki H, Minami M, et al. Interleukin-1 beta, interleukin-6, epidermal growth factor and transforming growth factor-alpha are elevated in the brain from parkinsonian patients. Neurosci Lett. 1994;180(2):147–50.
6. Mogi M, Harada M, Riederer P, Narabayashi H, Fujita K, Nagatsu T. Tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) increases both in the brain and in the cerebrospinal fluid from parkinsonian patients. Neurosci Lett. 1994;165(1):208–10.
7. Hunot S, Dugas N, Faucheux B, Hartmann A, Tardieu M, Debré P, et al. FcεRII/CD23 is expressed in Parkinson's disease and induces, in vitro, production of nitric oxide and tumor necrosis factor-α in glial cells. J Neurosci. 1999;19(9):3440–7.
8. Griffin W, Stanley L, Ling C, White L, MacLeod V, Perrot L, et al. Brain interleukin 1 and S-100 immunoreactivity are elevated in down syndrome and alzheimer disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci. 1989;86(19):7611–5.
9. Qin L, Liu Y, Wang T, Wei SJ, Block ML, Wilson B, et al. NADPH oxidase mediates lipopolysaccharide-induced neurotoxicity and proinflammatory gene expression in activated microglia. J Biol Chem. 2004;279(2):1415,21. Epub 2003 Oct 24.
10. Kim YS, Täuber MG. Neurotoxicity of glia activated by gram-positive bacterial products depends on nitric oxide production. Infect Immun. 1996;64(8):3148–53.
11. Zhao W, Xie W, Le W, Beers DR, He Y, Henkel JS, et al. Activated microglia initiate motor neuron injury by a nitric oxide and glutamate-mediated mechanism. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2004;63(9):964–77.
12. Lehnardt S, Massillon L, Follett P, Jensen FE, Ratan R, Rosenberg PA, et al. Activation of innate immunity in the CNS triggers neurodegeneration through a toll-like receptor 4-dependent pathway. Proc Natl Acad Sci. 2003;100(14):8514.
13. Floden AM, Li S, Combs CK. β-Amyloid-stimulated microglia induce neuron death via synergistic stimulation of tumor necrosis factor α and NMDA receptors. J Neurosci. 2005;25(10): 2566–75.
14. Trapp BD, Peterson J, Ransohoff RM, Rudick R, Mörk S, Bö L. Axonal transection in the lesions of multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 1998;338(5):278–85.
15. Bjartmar C, Wujek J, Trapp B. Axonal loss in the pathology of MS: Consequences for understanding the progressive phase of the disease. J Neurol Sci. 2003;206(2):165–71.
16. Prineas JW, Kwon EE, Cho ES, Sharer LR, Barnett MH, Oleszak EL, et al. Immunopathology of secondary-progressive multiple sclerosis. Ann Neurol. 2001;50(5):646–57.
17. Bradl M, Lassmann H. Progressive multiple sclerosis. Semin Immunopathol. 2009;31(4): 455–65.
18. Ostrowitzki S, Deptula D, Thurfjell L, Barkhof F, Bohrmann B, Brooks DJ, et al. Mechanism of amyloid removal in patients with alzheimer disease treated with gantenerumab. Arch Neurol. 2012;69(2):198.
19. Blennow K, Zetterberg H, Rinne JO, Salloway S, Wei J, Black R, et al. Effect of immunotherapy with bapineuzumab on cerebrospinal fluid biomarker levels in patients with mild to moderate alzheimer disease. Arch Neurol. 2012;69(8):1002–10.

20. Cramer PE, Cirrito JR, Wesson DW, Lee C, Karlo JC, Zinn AE, et al. ApoE-directed therapeutics rapidly clear {beta}-amyloid and reverse deficits in AD mouse models. Sci Signal. 2012;335(6075):1503.
21. Camenga DL, Johnson KP, Alter M, Engelhardt CD, Fishman PS, Greenstein JI, et al. Systemic recombinant {alpha}-2Interferon therapy in relapsing multiple sclerosis. Arch Neurol. 1986;43(12):1238.
22. Panitch H, Haley A, Hirsch R, Johnson K. Exacerbations of multiple sclerosis in patients treated with gamma interferon. Lancet. 1987;329(8538):893–5.
23. Jacobs L, Salazar AM, Herndon R, Reese PA, Freeman A, Jozefowicz R, et al. Intrathecally administered natural human fibroblast interferon reduces exacerbations of multiple sclerosis. Results of a multicenter, double-blind study. Arch Neurol. 1987;44(6):589–95.
24. Freedman MS, Hughes B, Mikol DD, Bennett R, Cuffel B, Divan V, et al. Efficacy of disease-modifying therapies in relapsing remitting multiple sclerosis: A systematic comparison. Eur Neurol. 2008;60(1):1–11.
25. Oliver BJ, Kohli E, Kasper LH. Interferon therapy in relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis of the comparative trials. J Neurol Sci. 2011;302(1):96–105.
26. La Mantia L, Vacchi L, Rovaris M, Di Pietrantonj C, Ebers G, Fredrikson S, et al. Interferon β for secondary progressive multiple sclerosis: a systematic review. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2013;84(4):420–6.
27. Rojas JI, Romano M, Ciapponi A, Patrucco L, Cristiano E. Interferon beta for primary progressive multiple sclerosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2010;1, CD006643.
28. Teitelbaum D, Arnon R, Sela M. Immunomodulation of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by oral administration of copolymer 1. Proc Natl Acad Sci. 1999;96(7):3842–7.
29. La Mantia L, Munari LM, Lovati R. Glatiramer acetate for multiple sclerosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010(5)::CD004678.
30. Meininger V, Drory VE, Leigh PN, Ludolph A, Robberecht W, Silani V. Glatiramer acetate has no impact on disease progression in ALS at 40 mg/day: a double-blind, randomized, multicentre, placebo-controlled trial. Amyotroph Lateral Scler. 2009;10(5–6):378–83.
31. Polman CH, O'Connor PW, Havrdova E, Hutchinson M, Kappos L, Miller DH, et al. A randomized, placebo-controlled trial of natalizumab for relapsing multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(9):899–910.
32. Kappos L, Calabresi P, Confavreux C, Giovannoni G, Galetta S, Havrdova E, et al. The efficacy of natalizumab in patients with relapsing multiple sclerosis: subgroup analyses of AFFIRM and SENTINEL. J Neurol. 2009;256(3):405–15.
33. Cannella B, Raine CS. The adhesion molecule and cytokine profile of multiple sclerosis lesions. Ann Neurol. 1995;37(4):424–35.
34. Kleinschmidt-DeMasters B, Miravalle A, Schowinsky J, Corboy J, Vollmer T. Update on PML and PML-IRIS occurring in multiple sclerosis patients treated with natalizumab. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol. 2012;71(7):604–17.
35. Hellwig K, Schimrigk S, Fischer M, Haghikia A, Muller T, Chan A, et al. Allergic and nonallergic delayed infusion reactions during natalizumab therapy. Arch Neurol. 2008;65(5):656.
36. Krumbholz M, Pellkofer H, Gold R, Hoffmann LA, Hohlfeld R, Kumpfel T. Delayed allergic reaction to natalizumab associated with early formation of neutralizing antibodies. Arch Neurol. 2007;64(9):1331.
37. Roskell N, Zimovetz E, Rycroft C, Eckert B, Tyas D. Annualized relapse rate of first-line treatments for multiple sclerosis: a meta-analysis, including indirect comparisons versus fingolimod. Curr Med Res Opin. 2012;28(5):767–80.
38. Devonshire V, Havrdova E, Radue EW, O'Connor P, Zhang-Auberson L, Agoropoulou C, et al. Relapse and disability outcomes in patients with multiple sclerosis treated with fingolimod: subgroup analyses of the double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled FREEDOMS study. Lancet Neurol. 2012;11(5):420–8.

39. Kappos L, Radue E, O'Connor P, Polman C, Hohlfeld R, Calabresi P, et al. A placebo-controlled trial of oral fingolimod in relapsing multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 2010;362(5):387–401.
40. He D, Xu Z, Dong S, Zhang H, Zhou H, Wang L, et al. Teriflunomide for multiple sclerosis. Cochrane Library 2012; 12:CD009882.
41. Gold R, Kappos L, Arnold DL, Bar-Or A, Giovannoni G, Selmaj K, et al. Placebo-controlled phase 3 study of oral BG-12 for relapsing multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 2012;367(12):1098–107.
42. Fox RJ, Miller DH, Phillips JT, Hutchinson M, Havrdova E, Kita M, et al. Placebo-controlled phase 3 study of oral BG-12 or glatiramer in multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med. 2012; 367(12):1087–97.
43. Miller DM, Weinstock-Guttman B, Béthoux F, Lee J, Beck G, Block V, et al. A meta-analysis of methylprednisolone in recovery from multiple sclerosis exacerbations. Mult Scler. 2000;6(4):267–73.
44. Brusaferri F, Candelise L. Steriods for multiple sclerosis and optic neuritis: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled clinical trials. J Neurol. 2000;247(6):435–42.
45. Richert N, Ostuni J, Bash C, Leist T, McFarland H, Frank J. Interferon beta-1b and intravenous methylprednisolone promote lesion recovery in multiple sclerosis. Mult Scler. 2001;7(1):49–58.
46. Bergamaschi R, Versino M, Raiola E, Citterio A, Cosi V. High-dose methylprednisolone infusions in relapsing and in chronic progressive multiple sclerosis patients. One year follow-up. Acta Neurol (Napoli). 1993;15(1):33–43.
47. Cazzato G, Mesiano T, Antonello R, Monti F, Carraro N, Torre P, et al. Double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized, crossover trial of high-dose methylprednisolone in patients with chronic progressive form of multiple sclerosis. Eur Neurol. 2008;35(4):193–8.
48. Goodkin D, Kinkel R, Weinstock-Guttman B, Medendorp SV, Secic M, Gogol D, et al. A phase II study of iv methylprednisolone in secondary-progressive multiple sclerosis. Neurology. 1998;51(1):239–45.
49. Aisen P, Davis K, Berg J, Schafer K, Campbell K, Thomas R, et al. A randomized controlled trial of prednisone in Alzheimer's disease. Neurology. 2000;54(3):588.
50. Karssen A, Meijer O, Van Der Sandt I, De Boer A, De Lange E, De Kloet E. The role of the efflux transporter P-glycoprotein in brain penetration of prednisolone. J Endocrinol. 2002; 175(1):251–60.
51. Bauer B, Hartz A, Fricker G, Miller DS. Pregnane X receptor up-regulation of P-glycoprotein expression and transport function at the blood-brain barrier. Mol Pharmacol. 2004;66(3):413.
52. Klivenyi P, Kiaei M, Gardian G, Calingasan NY, Beal MF. Additive neuroprotective effects of creatine and cyclooxygenase 2 inhibitors in a transgenic mouse model of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. J Neurochem. 2004;88(3):576–82.
53. Drachman DB, Frank K. Dykes-Hoberg M, Teismann P, Almer G, Przedborski S, et al. Cyclooxygenase 2 inhibition protects motor neurons and prolongs survival in a transgenic mouse model of ALS. Ann Neurol. 2002;52(6):771–8.
54. Scott S, Kranz JE, Cole J, Lincecum JM, Thompson K, Kelly N, et al. Design, power, and interpretation of studies in the standard murine model of ALS. Amyotroph Lateral Scler. 2008;9(1):4–15.
55. Blais V, Turrin NP, Rivest S. Cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2) inhibition increases the inflammatory response in the brain during systemic immune stimuli. J Neurochem. 2005;95(6):1563–74.
56. Blais V, Zhang J, Rivest S. In altering the release of glucocorticoids, ketorolac exacerbates the effects of systemic immune stimuli on expression of proinflammatory genes in the brain. Endocrinology. 2002;143(12):4820–7.
57. Bilak M, Wu L, Wang Q, Haughey N, Conant K, St Hillaire C, et al. PGE2 receptors rescue motor neurons in a model of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Ann Neurol. 2004;56(2):240–8.
58. Wu L, Wang Q, Liang X, Andreasson K. Divergent effects of prostaglandin receptor signaling on neuronal survival. Neurosci Lett. 2007;421(3):253–8.

59. Baik EJ, Kim EJ, Lee SH, Moon C. Cyclooxygenase-2 selective inhibitors aggravate kainic acid induced seizure and neuronal cell death in the hippocampus. Brain Res. 1999;843(1): 118–29.
60. Jaturapatporn D, Isaac M, McCleery J, Tabet N. Aspirin, steroidal and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;2, CD006378.
61. Cudkowicz ME, Shefner JM, Schoenfeld DA, Zhang H, Andreasson KI, Rothstein JD, et al. Trial of celecoxib in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Ann Neurol. 2006;60(1):22–31.
62. Du Y, Ma Z, Lin S, Dodel RC, Gao F, Bales KR, et al. Minocycline prevents nigrostriatal dopaminergic neurodegeneration in the MPTP model of parkinson's disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci. 2001;98(25):14669–74.
63. Jackson-Lewis V, Vila M, Tieu K, Teismann P, Vadseth C, Choi D, et al. Blockade of microglial activation is neuroprotective in the 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1, 2, 3, 6-tetrahydropyridine mouse model of parkinson disease. J Neurosci. 2002;22(5):1763–71.
64. Yang L, Sugama S, Chirichigno JW, Gregorio J, Lorenzl S, Shin DH, et al. Minocycline enhances MPTP toxicity to dopaminergic neurons. J Neurosci Res. 2003;74(2):278–85.
65. Diguet E, Fernagut P, Wei X, Du Y, Rouland R, Gross C, et al. Deleterious effects of minocycline in animal models of parkinson's disease and huntington's disease. Eur J Neurosci. 2004; 19(12):3266–76.
66. Van Den Bosch L, Tilkin P, Lemmens G, Robberecht W. Minocycline delays disease onset and mortality in a transgenic model of ALS. Neuroreport. 2002;13(8):1067–70.
67. Gordon PH, Moore DH, Miller RG, Florence JM, Verheijde JL, Doorish C, et al. Efficacy of minocycline in patients with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: a phase III randomised trial. Lancet Neurol. 2007;6(12):1045–53.
68. NINDS NET-PD Investigators. A pilot clinical trial of creatine and minocycline in early parkinson disease: 18-month results. Clin Neuropharmacol. 2008;31(3):141–50.
69. Ingham E. Modulation of the proliferative response of murine thymocytes stimulated by IL-1, and enhancement of IL-1β secretion from mononuclear phagocytes by tetracyclines. J Antimicrob Chemother. 1990;26(1):61–70.
70. Kloppenburg M, Brinkman B, de Rooij-Dijk H, Miltenburg A, Daha MR, Breedveld FC, et al. The tetracycline derivative minocycline differentially affects cytokine production by monocytes and T lymphocytes. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1996;40(4):934–40.
71. Kiaei M, Petri S, Kipiani K, Gardian G, Choi DK, Chen J, et al. Thalidomide and lenalidomide extend survival in a transgenic mouse model of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. J Neurosci. 2006;26(9):2467–73.
72. Stommel EW, Cohen JA, Fadul CE, Cogbill CH, Graber DJ, Kingman L, et al. Efficacy of thalidomide for the treatment of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: a phase II open label clinical trial. Amyotroph Lateral Scler. 2009;10(5–6):393–404.
73. Sampaio EP, Kaplan G, Miranda A, Nery JA, Miguel CP, Viana SM, et al. The influence of thalidomide on the clinical and immunologic manifestation of erythema nodosum leprosum. J Infect Dis. 1993;168(2):408–14.
74. Sarno E, Grau G, Vieira L, Nery J. Serum levels of tumour necrosis factor-alpha and interleukin-1 beta during leprosy reactional states. Clin Exp Immunol. 1991;84(1):103.
75. Moreira A, Sampaio E, Zmuidzinas A, Frindt P, Smith K, Kaplan G. Thalidomide exerts its inhibitory action on tumor necrosis factor alpha by enhancing mRNA degradation. J Exp Med. 1993;177(6):1675–80.
76. Sampaio EP, Sarno EN, Galilly R, Cohn ZA, Kaplan G. Thalidomide selectively inhibits tumor necrosis factor alpha production by stimulated human monocytes. J Exp Med. 1991;173(3): 699–703.
77. Haslett PA, Roche P, Butlin CR, Macdonald M, Shrestha N, Manandhar R, et al. Effective treatment of erythema nodosum leprosum with thalidomide is associated with immune stimulation. J Infect Dis. 2005;192(12):2045–53.

78. Wolkenstein P, Latarjet J, Roujeau J, Duguet C, Boudeau S, Vaillant L, et al. Randomised comparison of thalidomide versus placebo in toxic epidermal necrolysis. Lancet. 1998; 352(9140):1586.
79. Ishikawa M, Kanno S, Takayanagi M, Takayanagi Y, Sasaki K. Thalidomide promotes the release of tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-alpha) and lethality by lipopolysaccharide in mice. Biol Pharm Bull. 1998;21(6):638.
80. Jacobson JM, Greenspan JS, Spritzler J, Ketter N, Fahey JL, Jackson JB, et al. Thalidomide for the treatment of oral aphthous ulcers in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. N Engl J Med. 1997;336(21):1487–93.
81. Tadesse A, Abebe M, Bizuneh E, Mulugeta W, Aseffa A, Shannon E. Effect of thalidomide on the expression of TNF-α m-RNA and synthesis of TNF-α in cells from leprosy patients with reversal reaction. Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol. 2006;28(3):431–41.
82. Shannon E, Noveck R, Sandoval F, Kamath B. Thalidomide suppressed IL-1β while enhancing TNF-α and IL-10, when cells in whole blood were stimulated with lipopolysaccharide. Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol. 2008;30(3):447–57.
83. Ghose AK, Herbertz T, Hudkins RL, Dorsey BD, Mallamo JP. Knowledge-based, central nervous system (CNS) lead selection and lead optimization for CNS drug discovery. ACS Chem Neurosci. 2011;3(1):50–68.
84. Fan Y, Unwalla R, Denny RA, Di L, Kerns EH, Diller DJ, et al. Insights for predicting blood-brain barrier penetration of CNS targeted molecules using QSPR approaches. J Chem Inf Model. 2010;50(6):1123–33.
85. Bergström CA, Charman SA, Nicolazzo JA. Computational prediction of CNS drug exposure based on a novel in vivo dataset. Pharm Res. 2012;29(11):3131–42.
86. Wager TT, Hou X, Verhoest PR, Villalobos A. Moving beyond rules: the development of a central nervous system multiparameter optimization (CNS MPO) approach to enable alignment of druglike properties. ACS Chem Neurosci. 2010;1(6):435–49.
87. Fu X, Wang G, Shan H, Liang W, Gao J. Predicting blood–brain barrier penetration from molecular weight and number of polar atoms. Eur J Pharm Biopharm. 2008;70(2):462–6.

Therapeutic Potential of Cannabinoids

Guy A. Cabral and Melissa Jamerson

Abstract Cannabinoids alter the functional activities of immune cells and have potential to serve as agents for treatment of neuroinflammatory disorders. They readily access the brain, have low toxicity, and can target selective receptors on specific cell types. To date, two cognate receptors have been identified, the CB1R and the CB2R. The CB1R is expressed primarily in the CNS and testis, while the CB2R is found on immune cells, including microglia and other immunocytes that may be recruited into the CNS. Activation of the CB2R may prove therapeutically manageable in ablating neuropathogenic disorders such as Alzheimer's disease, multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Huntington's disease, HIV encephalitis, and closed head injury.

Keywords Alzheimer's disease • Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis • Cannabinoid • Cannabinoid receptor • Closed head injury • Endocannabinoid • HIV encephalitis • Huntington's disease • Multiple sclerosis • Neuroinflammation

List of Abbreviations

2-AG	2-Arachidonyl-glycerol
6-OHDA	6-Hydroxydopamine
Aβ	Amyloid-β
AD	Alzheimer's disease
AEA	Arachidonyl-2′-chloroethylamide
AIMs	Abnormal involuntary movements

G.A. Cabral, Ph.D. (✉) • M. Jamerson
Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Virginia Commonwealth University School of Medicine, 1101 East Marshall Street, Richmond, VA 23298-0678, USA
e-mail: gacabral@vcu.edu; hrickomj@vcu.edu

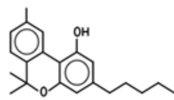
P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*, DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7_27, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

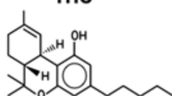
ALS	Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
AMPA	α-Amino-3 hydroxy-s-methylisoxazole-4-propionic acid
APP	Amyloid-β precursor protein
BDNF	Brain-derived neurotrophic factor
$[Ca^{2+}]I$	Inducible calcium
CBD	Cannabidiol
CBN	Cannabinol
CFA	Complete Freund's adjuvant
CHI	Closed head injury
CNS	Central nervous system
COX-2	Cyclooxygenase-2
CREAE	Chronic relapsing experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis
DA	Dark agouti
Dtg	Double transgenic
EAE	Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis
EPSCs	Excitatory postsynaptic currents
FAAH	Fatty acid amide hydrolase
FALS	Familial amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
GP/GPe	Globus pallidus
HD	Huntington disease
HTT	Huntingtin gene
HU-211	Dexanabinol
huPBL	Human peripheral blood
ICAM-1	Intercellular adhesion molecule-1
iNO	Inducible nitric oxide
IPSCs	Inhibitory postsynaptic currents
JAK/STAT1	Janus kinase/signal transducers and activators of transcription
L-DOPA	3, 4-Dihydroxy-1-phenylalanine
LEW	Lewis
MAP	Mitogen-activated protein
MBP	Myelin basic protein
MHC	Major histocompatibility complex
MPTP	1-methyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine
NAPE-PLD	*N*-acyl phosphatidylethanolamine phospholipase D
NArPE	1-stearoyl, 2-docosahexaenoyl-sn-glycero-phosphoethanolamine-*N*-arachidonoyl
NBQX	2,3-dihydroxy-6-nitro-7-sulfamoyl-benzo[f]quinoxaline-2,3-dione
NFTs	Neurofibrillary tangles
NK	Natural killer
NMDA	*N*-methyl-d-aspartate
NO	Nitric oxide
PET	Positron emission tomography
PD	Parkinson's disease
PGE2	Prostoglandin-E2
PLP	Proteolipid protein

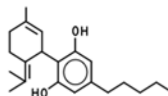
PPAR-γ	Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ
PPMS	Primary progressive multiple sclerosis
SCID	Severe combined immunodeficient
SIV	Simian immunodeficiency virus
SNr	Substantia nigra pars reticulata
SOD1	Superoxide dismutase 1
tgHD	Transgenic Huntington's disease
THC	Delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol
TMEV-IDD	Theiler's murine encephalomyelitis virus-induced demyelinating disease
VCAM-1	Vascular cell adhesion molecule-1
WIN	WIN 55,212-2

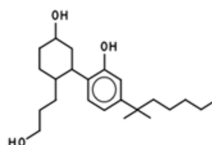
1 Introduction

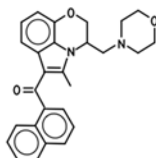
Cannabinoids are a category of compounds that includes phytocannabinoids, synthetic cannabinoids, and endocannabinoids (Fig. 1). Phytocannabinoids are terpenoid-like compounds derived from the marijuana plant, *Cannabis sativa*, which include Delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), its major psychoactive component. THC also is immunomodulatory, a property that it shares with cannabidiol (CBD) and cannabinol (CBN). However, CBD and CBN are not psychoactive, a characteristic that renders them attractive candidates for therapeutic application. Synthetic cannabinoids that have been studied include CP-55940, HU-210, Win 55,212-2 (WIN), JWH-015, and arachidonyl-2′-chloroethylamide (ACEA). Endo-cannabinoids, or endogenous cannabinoids, are bioactive lipids that include anandamide (*N*-arachidonoylethanolamine, AEA) and 2-arachidonoyl glycerol (2-AG). Through the use of select radiolabeled cannabinoids, specific binding sites have been identified in mammalian brain and nonneuronal tissues that represent cannabinoid receptors. These have 7-transmembrane domains, are coupled to G inhibitory proteins, and are linked to signaling cascades that include adenylate cyclase and cAMP, mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase, and the regulation of intracellular calcium. While activation of the CB1R elicits psychotropic effects, activation of the CB2R results in the modulation of immune function in the absence of such effects. The CB2R is found in B lymphocytes, macrophages, monocytes, natural killer (NK) cells, and polymorphonuclear cells [1, 2], as well as the CNS during inflammatory states [3–6]. Additional cannabinoid receptors may exist, based on studies using CB1R knockout or CB1R/CB2R double-knockout mice [7–10]. Because activation of the CB2R dampens inflammatory responses in the absence of psychotropic effects, it has the potential to serve as a molecular target for attenuating inflammation linked to neuropathogenic disorders such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), Alzheimer's disease (AD), closed head injury (CHI), HIV encephalitis (HIVE), Huntington's disease (HD), multiple sclerosis (MS), and Parkinson's disease (PD).

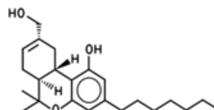


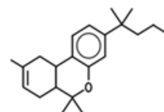


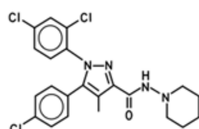


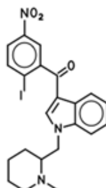


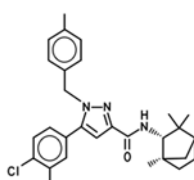


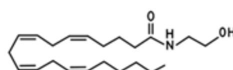












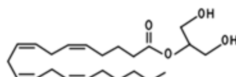


Fig. 1 Representative plant cannabinoids (phytocannabinoids), synthetic cannabinoids, and endogenous cannabinoids (endocannabinoids)

2 Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) is a fatal chronic neuromuscular disease characterized pathologically by progressive degeneration of cortical motor neurons (upper motor neurons) and clinically by muscle wasting, weakness, and spasticity that progress to complete paralysis [11]. This adult-onset disease occurs in sporadic and familial (FALS) forms. The FALS form has been linked to mutations in the superoxide dismutase 1 (SOD1) gene that codes for a zinc- and copper-binding enzyme that neutralizes supercharged oxygen molecule (superoxide radical) by-products of normal cellular metabolism. Neuroinflammation is involved in ALS pathology and is mediated by proinflammatory cytokines, prostaglandins, and nitric oxide (NO). An animal model of FALS is the mutant SOD1 transgenic mouse. CBN

has been reported to delay onset of symptoms in this animal model [12]. Treatment of mice with nonselective cannabinoid receptor partial agonists has resulted in delay of disease progression and promoted prolonged survival in a mode linked to the CB2R [13]. Consistent with these observations, the CB2R agonist AM-1241 has been reported to contribute to prolonged survival of SOD1 mutant mice [13, 14].

Experimental ALS may be linked to an imbalance in levels of endocannabinoids. Levels of AEA and 2-AG, endocannabinoids that have been implicated in playing a neuroprotective role, were upregulated in the spinal cord of SOD1 transgenic mice [15]. Post-symptomatic treatment with WIN resulted in a delay in disease progression [16]. Examination of excitatory and inhibitory synaptic transmission in the striatum of SOD1 mice revealed a reduced frequency of glutamate-mediated spontaneous excitatory postsynaptic currents (EPSCs) and an increased frequency of GABA-mediated spontaneous inhibitory postsynaptic currents (IPSCs) [17], suggesting presynaptic defects in transmitter release. The sensitivity of CB1Rs controlling both glutamate and GABA transmission was potentiated in the ALS mice.

3 Alzheimer's Disease

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is the most common neurodegenerative disorder that causes senile dementia. It has the presence of extracellular neuritic amyloid plaques and intracellular neurofibrillary tangles (NFTs) as defining neuropathological features. The amyloid plaques consist of extracellular aggregates of amyloid-β (Aβ) peptides [18–20] that often are surrounded by activated microglia and astrocytes. There are three major animal models of AD: a cholinergic deficit model in which the nonselective antagonists of muscarinic receptors scopolamine and atropine are used to mimic a cholinergic deficit, a brain Aβ infusion model in which diverse Aβ fragments are introduced by intracranial injection, and an Aβ precursor protein (APP) transgenic mouse model in which APP is expressed in the brain [21].

Intracerebroventricular administration of WIN to rats prevented Aβ-induced microglial activation, cognitive impairment, and loss of neuronal markers [4]. That prevention of neurodegeneration that occurred in AD by blockade of microglial activation [4] was supported by the observation that HU-210, WIN, and JWH-133 blocked Aβ-induced activation of cultured microglial cells. Chronic administration of WIN and JWH-133 was effective at reducing levels of COX-2 protein, tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α mRNA, and cortical beta-amyloid in APP mice [22]. The PPAR-γ pathway was found to be crucial to WIN-induced neuroprotection [23]. WIN administration improved memory function and diminished elevated levels of hippocampal TNF-α and active caspase 3 and decreased the levels of nuclear NF-κB and the number of apoptotic (i.e., TUNEL-positive) neurons, suggesting a neuroprotective effect. Coadministration of the CB1R antagonist AM251 and the selective CB2R antagonist AR144528 led to complete abrogation of the WIN-induced effects indicating that the neuroprotective and anti-inflammatory actions against Aβ damage were linked to both the CB1R and CB2R.

The CB1R distribution in double transgenic (dtg) APP(swe)/PS1(DeltaE9) mice has been characterized [24]. It was shown that CB1R immunoreactivity in the CA1 and CA2/3 hippocampal regions was decreased in these mice. Reduced CB1R expression in the double transgenic mice was associated with astroglial proliferation and elevated expression of inducible nitric oxide (iNO) synthase and TNF-α. Chronic administration of the CB1R agonist ACEA at presymptomatic or at early symptomatic stages reduced the cognitive impairment observed in these transgenic mice [25]. ACEA-treated mice showed decreased astroglial response in the vicinity of Abeta plaques and decreased expression of the proinflammatory cytokine interferon (IFN)-γ in astrocytes.

However, the CB2R may also be involved in neuroprotection in AD. Selective stimulation of the CB2R by JWH-015 on cultured microglial cells resulted in suppression of IFN-γ-induced expression of CD40, a co-stimulatory protein found on antigen-presenting cells (i.e., B lymphocytes, monocytes, and dendritic cells) that activate T lymphocytes by binding to CD154 (CD40L) [26]. The CB2R-selective agonist also inhibited IFN-γ-induced phosphorylation of Janus kinase/signal transducers and activators of transcription (JAK/STAT1) and suppressed production of TNF-α and NO by microglia that was induced by IFN-γ or by Aβ peptide challenge in the presence of CD40 ligation. CBD also has been reported to modulate microglial cell function in vitro and to induce beneficial effects in an in vivo model of AD [27]. CBD decreased ATP-induced increase in intracellular calcium ($[Ca^{2+}]_i$) in cultured N13 microglial cells and in rat primary microglia. Thus, a variety of modalities that may, or may not, be linked to a cannabinoid receptor has been implicated in the moderation of experimental AD.

A limited number of studies have been conducted to assess effects of cannabinoids relative to neurodegeneration in human AD. Examination of normally aged and Alzheimer's human brains has revealed that, compared to normal brains, $[^3H]$CP-55940 binding was reduced in the hippocampal formation, caudate, substantia nigra, and globus pallidus [28]. The reduced $[^3H]$CP-55940 binding in areas of neuritic plaques and neurofibrillary tangles was associated with increasing age and with other forms of cortical pathology, suggesting that receptor losses were neither associated selectively with the pathology of AD nor with overall decrease in levels of cannabinoid receptor. On the other hand, senile plaques in AD patients have been shown to express the CB1R and CB2R together with markers of microglial activation, while CB1R-positive neurons were greatly reduced in areas of microglial activation [4]. The CB2R agonist JWH-015 was shown to induce the removal of native beta-amyloid from human frozen tissue sections [29], the effect involving the CB2R since the selective CB2R antagonist SR144528 prevented the JWH-015-induced plaque removal in situ. In addition, the CB2R and fatty acid amide hydrolase (FAAH) have been reported to be overexpressed selectively in neuritic plaque-associated glia in postmortem brains from patients with AD [30], suggesting that some elements of the endocannabinoid system serve as modulators of the inflammatory response associated with AD.

As in the case of other neuropathological processes, the role of endocannabinoids in neuroprotection has been examined. It has been suggested that these bioactive lipids stabilize lysosomes against Aβ-induced permeabilization and sustain cell survival by preventing Aβ-induced upregulation of the tumor suppressor protein, p53, and its interaction with the lysosomal membrane [31]. The CB1R was implicated in this stabilizing action. Consistent with these results, and through the use of a novel selective CB1R radioligand, it was demonstrated that CB1R density correlates inversely with Braak tau pathology, indicating an upregulation of binding of the CB1R radioligand in human brains [32]. Thus, enhanced endocannabinoid signaling, particularly around senile plaques, may exacerbate synaptic failure in AD. The balance in levels of endocannabinoids may be critical to the maintenance of neuroprotection in AD. Monoacylglycerol lipase has been reported to accumulate in CB1R-positive presynapses [33]. Subcellular fractionation revealed impaired monoacylglycerol lipase recruitment to biological membranes in postmortem Alzheimer's tissues, suggesting that disease progression slows the termination of 2-AG signaling. It has been suggested that $A\beta_{42}$-dependent impairment in brain AEA endocannabinoid mobilization contributes to cognitive dysfunction in AD [34]. Using liquid chromatography/mass spectrometry in the analysis of endocannabinoid-targeted lipidomics of postmortem brain samples from AD patients, it was demonstrated that the midfrontal and temporal cortex tissue from these patients contained, relative to control subjects, significantly lower levels of AEA and its precursor 1-stearoyl, 2-docosahexaenoyl-sn-glycero-phosphoethanolamine-N-arachidonoyl (NArPE) [34]. The levels of AEA and NArPE in midfrontal cortex correlated inversely with those of the neurotoxic amyloid peptide, amyloid beta-protein ($A\beta_{42}$).

4 Closed Head Injury

Trauma to the brain triggers a cascade that results in delayed edema, necrosis, and impaired function. Mediators such as cytokines that accumulate in the brain after injury play a role in the pathophysiology of closed head injury (CHI). Select cannabinoids, in their capacity as anti-inflammatory agents, have been reported to have a neuroprotective effect in CHI. HU-211 (dexanabinol), a noncompetitive *N-methyl-d-*aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonist, was effective in improving motor function recovery in a model of CHI in rats [35]. The drug reduced BBB breakdown and attenuated cerebral edema possibly by dampening Ca^{2+} fluxes through NMDA receptor-mediated calcium channels and reducing depolarization-evoked Ca^{2+} fluxes [36]. HU-211 has been shown to be neuroprotective also in animal models of optic nerve crush, global ischemia, and focal ischemia [37]. HU-211 may be unique among putative neuroprotective agents in that it combines NMDA blocking and peroxy and hydroxy free radical scavenging properties that are toxic to neurons [38]. HU-211 also has been reported to inhibit TNF-α production [38]. In a randomized,

placebo-controlled, multicenter phase II clinical trial, patients treated with HU-211 achieved significantly better intracranial pressure/cerebral perfusion pressure control and exhibited a trend toward faster and better neurological outcome [39]. Endocannabinoids may play a role in neuroprotective effects in CHI. For example, 2-AG is released in mouse brain after CHI, and exogenous treatment of CHI with 2-AG exerts a neuroprotective effect mediated reportedly through the CB1R [40]. Additional studies have demonstrated that 2-AG decreases BBB permeability; inhibits the acute expression of TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6; and augments levels of endogenous antioxidants [41].

5 Human Immunodeficiency Virus Encephalitis

Human immunodeficiency virus encephalitis (HIVE) is characterized by progressive memory loss, intellectual deterioration, behavioral changes, and motor deficits. Brain damage is due primarily to the production and release of cytokines from immunocytes, neurotoxins such as glutamate and NO from activated monocytes and microglia, and HIV-specified gene products such as the transactivator protein Tat and the major envelope glycoprotein gp120 from infected monocytes and microglia. Two severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) mouse models have been exploited to study HIV-induced neuropathogenesis. In the first model, second-trimester human fetal brain is inoculated into the anterior eye chamber, or fetal brain cells are injected into the interscapular fat pad [42, 43]. In the second model, human peripheral blood mononuclear cells, in concert with cell-free HIV, are injected intracerebrally into severe combined immunodeficient (SCID) mice [44]. Transgenic mouse models that express the complete HIV genome in neurons [45] and the HIV envelope glycoprotein gp120 in astrocytes [46] also have been developed. However, the simian immunodeficiency (SIV) model comes closest to replicating events that are associated with HIV infection of the human [47].

There have been a limited number of studies that has addressed the effects of cannabinoids in the context of models of HIV infection. THC has been reported to suppress immune function and to enhance HIV replication in a hybrid model in which human peripheral blood leukocytes were implanted into SCID (huPBL-SCID) mice [48]. Examination of brains of macaques with SIV-induced encephalitis has led to the suggestion that the endocannabinoid system participates in the development of HIV-induced encephalitis [49]. Expression of the CB2R was induced in perivascular macrophages, microglial nodules, and T lymphocytes, while the endogenous cannabinoid-degrading enzyme FAAH was overexpressed in perivascular astrocytes and astrocytic processes reaching cellular infiltrates. Recent studies suggest that chronic administration of THC does not increase viral load or aggravate morbidity in SIV disease [50]. It was suggested that overall mechanisms mediating the protective effect involved novel epigenomic regulatory mechanisms [51].

6 Huntington's Disease

Huntington's disease (HD) is an inherited neurodegenerative disorder characterized by cell dysfunction and death in the basal ganglia and cortex. The disease results in a major loss of the striatal GABAergic medium spiny neurons containing enkephalin and substance P that project principally to the globus pallidus (GP) and substantia nigra pars reticulata (SNr). The huntingtin gene (HTT or HD gene) is the IT15 gene that codes for the huntingtin protein, the mutation of which causes HD. R6 transgenic mice have served as a model of early pathogenic changes in HD [52].

There is accumulating evidence that modulation of the CB1R is a key pathogenic event in HD and that its activation may attenuate disease progression. Through the use of transgenic R6/2 mice, created by inserting exon 1 of the human IT15 mutant gene, and exhibiting 150 CAG repeats as well as signs of HD, a progressive decline of CB1R expression and abnormal sensitivity to CB1R were demonstrated [53]. In symptomatic R6/2 mice the levels of AEA, 2-AG, and palmitoylethanolamide (PEA) were decreased in the striatum, whereas few changes were observed in the hippocampus. Also, using a rat quinolinic acid model of striatal excitotoxicity in which it was shown that the neurotrophin brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) was involved in the pathophysiology of HD, a linkage of the upregulation of BDNF gene transcription to the CB1R was demonstrated [54]. Loss of enkephalin and CB1R in the external segment of the globus pallidus (GPe) and a loss of substance P and CB1R immune reactivity from the internal segment of the globus pallidus (GPi) have been observed [55]. In addition, using a double-mutant mouse model that expresses human mutant huntingtin exon 1 in a CBR1 null background, it was found that receptor deletion aggravated symptoms and pathology of HD [56]. It was postulated that the mutant huntingtin-dependent downregulation involved control of the CB1R gene promoter by repressor element 1 silencing transcription factor.

In addition, using [(18)F]MK-9470 and small animal positron emission tomography (PET), cerebral changes in CB1R binding in vivo in presymptomatic and early symptomatic rats of HD (tgHD) have been examined in relation to glucose metabolism, morphology, and behavioral testing for motor and cognitive function [57]. Early regional dysfunctions in endocannabinoid signaling involved the lateral globus pallidus and caudate-putamen were implicated. The effects of WIN on striatal synaptic transmission and on glutamate and GABA release in symptomatic R6/2 also have been investigated [58]. It was suggested that the balance between CB1Rs expressed by GABAergic and glutamatergic neurons and, thus, the net effect of CB1R stimulation was altered in HD mice.

7 Multiple Sclerosis

Multiple sclerosis (MS), also known as "disseminated sclerosis" or "encephalomyelitis disseminate," is a chronic, inflammatory demyelinating disease of the human CNS that primarily affects adults. It is characterized by degeneration of the myelin

sheath that covers axons in which T cells attack myelin resulting in stimulation of other immune cells to produce inflammatory factors. One model of MS is experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) that results from induction of primed myelin epitope-specific CD4+ T lymphocytes in mice immunized with myelin proteins or peptides in complete Freund's adjuvant (CFA) [59]. EAE also can be induced in inbred Lewis (LEW) and dark agouti (DA) rats using guinea pig myelin basic protein (MBP) emulsified in CFA [60]. DA strain rats also are highly susceptible to encephalomyelitis induced with proteolipid protein (PLP). Another model of MS is Theiler's murine encephalomyelitis virus-induced demyelinating disease (TMEV-IDD) characterized by Th1-mediated CNS demyelination and spastic hind limb paralysis [60].

THC has been reported to inhibit neurodegeneration in the EAE model and reduce the associated induced elevated level of glutamate in cerebrospinal fluid [61]. Studies using CB1R knockout mice suggest that signaling through the CB1R confers neuroprotection during EAE [62]. Changes in the status of the CB1R, as affected by the development of chronic relapsing experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (CREAE), have been reported to be region specific [63]. The CB1R exhibited downregulatory responses that were circumscribed to motor-related regions that were more marked during the acute and chronic phases of disease consistent with the efficacy of cannabinoid agonists in improving motor symptoms such as spasticity, tremor, and ataxia that are typical of MS. Control of spasticity as mediated by the CB1R also has been suggested from studies in which spasticity was induced in wild-type and CB1R-deficient mice following the development of relapsing EAE [64]. The CB1R has been implicated also in cannabinoid-mediated delay in progression of EAE in the rat [65]. Levels of AEA and 2-AG were decreased in motor-related regions such as the striatum and midbrain as well as in other brain regions. Studies employing a fetal mouse telencephalon aggregate cell culture model that allowed for comparison of tissue from CB1R knockout mice with their wild-type counterparts also have lent support for a role of the CB1R in neuroprotection in EAE [66]. WIN, acting preferentially through CB1R-mediated anti-inflammatory effects, had a positive effect in reducing neurological disability and improving motor coordination of EAE mice [67]. The CB2R also may play a role in experimental MS, especially as it relates to its inflammatory dimension. For example, it has been reported that the CB2R may be involved in the control of myeloid progenitor cell trafficking toward the inflamed spinal cord thereby contributing to microglial activation in EAE [68].

As in the case of other neuropathological processes impacted by cannabinoids, the accumulating data indicate involvement of the endocannabinoid system. Activation of the CB1R dampened the TNF-α-mediated potentiation of striatal spontaneous glutamate-mediated excitatory postsynaptic currents (EPSCs), believed to contribute to the inflammation-induced neurodegenerative damage observed in EAE mice [69]. Mice lacking FAAH, and thus expressing high brain levels of AEA, developed a less severe EAE. Also, exogenous administration of 2-AG ameliorated both acute and chronic EAE [70].

A protective role of cannabinoids has been obtained also using the TMEV-IDD model. Treatment with WIN, ACEA, and JWH-015 during established disease resulted in ablation of neurological deficits [71].A reduction in microglial activation, major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II antigen expression, and number of CD4+ infiltrating T cells into the spinal cord was observed. WIN administration also resulted in amelioration of progression of symptoms of clinical disease in mice with preexisting TMEV-IDD [72]. Amelioration was associated with downregulation of virus and myelin epitope-specific Th1 effector functions (i.e., delayed-type hypersensitivity and IFN-γ production) and inhibition of CNS mRNA expression coding for proinflammatory cytokines. It has been proposed that WIN interferes with the progression of MS by downregulating adhesion molecules [73]. Administration of this cannabinoid at time of virus infection suppressed intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) and vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 (VCAM-1) expression in brain endothelium and reduced perivascular CD4+ T-lymphocyte infiltration and microglial responses. The inhibition of brain adhesion molecules by WIN was attributed to an involvement of PPAR-γ receptors. WIN also has been reported to increase cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) expression and prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) release in endothelial cells following infection with Theiler's virus, an early event in the pathogenesis of TMEV-IDD [74]. Treatment with WIN resulted in upregulation of COX-2 protein and PGE2 release that was attributed to a mechanism independent of activation of the CB1R or CB2R.

Abnormalities in cerebrospinal fluid levels of endocannabinoids have been observed in patients with MS [75]. It has been observed using the TMEV-IDD model that neuronal cells responded to excitotoxic challenges by the production of endocannabinoids that exerted neuroprotective effects against excitotoxicity [76]. It has been suggested that AEA acts through the ERK1/2 and JNK pathways to downregulate IL-12p70 and IL-23 while upregulating IL-10. Downregulation of gene expression of IL-12p70 and IL-23 forming subunits of mRNAs in the spinal cord of TMEV-infected mice and ameliorated motor disturbances consistent with the existence of cross-talk between IL-12p70/IL-23 axis and IL-10 in microglial cells have been observed [77]. In addition, mice with established TMEV-IDD and treated with WIN exhibited a restoration of self-tolerance to a myelin self-antigen and amelioration of disease [78].

Studies using the passive variety of EAE, induced in LEW rats by adoptive transfer of myelin-reactive T lymphocytes, have indicated that WIN ameliorates clinical signs of disease and diminishes T-lymphocyte infiltration of the spinal cord [79]. The CB2R has been linked to playing a role in this process, although a receptor-independent mechanism, or a yet to be characterized novel cannabinoid receptor, also has been proposed. A number of studies have addressed the site of action at which cannabinoids are involved in mediating experimental MS. The cytokinetical and cellular events of axonal degeneration and demyelination following treatment with WIN have been examined [80]. Cannabinoid treatment rendered neurons less vulnerable than oligodendrocytes in EAE induced using MOG(1-125) in DA rats.

A relatively small number of studies have been conducted involving the functional relevance of cannabinoids in ameliorating MS in humans. An association has

been found between polymorphic markers at the gene encoding the CB1R (i.e., CNR1) gene and MS [81]. In a study in two case-control groups from Spain, genetic analysis of an AAT repeat microsatellite localized in the downstream region of the CNR1 gene suggested that the long (AAT) > or = (13) CNR1 genotypes could behave as risk factors for primary progressive multiple sclerosis (PPMS). The (AAT)n repeat of the CB1R gene was suggested as linked to disease progression in relapsing MS [82]. MS patients with the homozygous genotype for long AAT repeats in the CNR1 gene had more severe disease and higher risk of disease progression. In addition, the expression of the CB1R and CB2R and a key enzyme involved in synthesis of the endocannabinoid anandamide (i.e., *N*-acyl phosphatidylethanolamine phospholipase D [NAPE-PLD]) in autopsy brain samples from patients with MS has been examined [83]. These collective findings suggested a role for the endocannabinoid system in MS.

There is experimental evidence that the CB2R also may be involved in ablating effects of MS. It has been reported using a chronic model of MS in mice that clinical signs and axonal damage in the spinal cord are reduced by the AMPA (α-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methylisoxazole-4-propionic acid) receptor antagonist, NBQX (2,3-dihydroxy-6-nitro-7-sulfamoyl-benzo[f]quinoxaline-2,3-dione) [84] implicating AMPA as playing a direct role in excitotoxicity. HU-210 reduced the AMPA-induced excitotoxicity in vivo and in vitro in a mode attributed to activation of both the CB1R and CB2R. Direct suppression of CNS autoimmune inflammation in the EAE mouse model has been reported to be exerted through the CB1R on neurons and CB2R on autoreactive T cells [85]. The CB1R expression by neurons, but not T lymphocytes, was required for cannabinoid-mediated suppression of EAE, while expression of the CB2R by encephalitogenic T lymphocytes was shown to be critical for controlling inflammation associated with EAE. In addition, selective glial expression of the CB1R, CB2R, and FAAH has been reported as associated with MS, supporting a role for the endocannabinoid system in the pathogenesis and/or evolution of this disease [86].

In addition, the role of "indirect" agonists, compounds that reinforce endocannabinoid transmission divorced of psychotropic effects, has been examined in the context of animal models of MS [87]. Using the TMEV-IDD model, it was demonstrated that treatment with the selective AEA uptake inhibitor UCM707 during established disease resulted in significant improvement in motor function. Consistent with these observations, it has been reported that the endocannabinoid system is highly activated during CNS inflammation and that AEA protects neurons from inflammatory damage through a CB1R/CB2R-mediated rapid induction of microglial mitogen-activated protein kinase phosphatase-1 (mkp-1) that is associated with histone H3 phosphorylation of the mkp-1 gene sequence [88]. The cannabinoid system may share cellular mechanisms that affect brain disease progression [89]. For example, COX-2, CB2R, and P2X7-immunoreactivities are increased in activated microglia/macrophages of MS and ALS postmortem human spinal cord. It has been proposed that the increase of lesion-associated extracellular ATP contributes via P2X7 purinergic receptor activation to the release of IL-1β that, in turn, induces the production of COX-2 and downstream pathogenic mediators.

8 Parkinson's Disease

Parkinson's disease (PD) is characterized by the progressive loss of nigrostriatal dopamine neurons leading to motor disturbances and cognitive impairment. The therapeutic effects of THC have been tested in a 1-methyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP) marmoset model for PD [90]. THC improved activity and hand-eye coordination, but induced compound-related side effects. The role of WIN in protecting mouse nigrostriatal neurons from MPTD-induced neurotoxicity and neuroinflammation also has been investigated [91]. Activation of the CB2R resulted in protection against nigrostriatal degeneration by inhibiting microglial activation/infiltration. It has been indicated also that systemic administration of WIN ameliorates 3,4-dihydroxy-l-phenylalanine (L-DOPA)-induced abnormal involuntary movements (AIMs) in the 6-hydroxydopamine (6-OHDA) rat model of PD and reverses L-DOPA-induced PKA hyperactivity via a CB1R-mediated mechanism [92]. It was proposed that the results suggested that activation of CB1Rs, as well as reduction of striatal PKA hyperactivity, could be an effective strategy for the treatment of L-DOPA-induced dyskinesias [92]. Acute injections of L-DOPA or the CB1R antagonist rimonabant have been reported equally to improve contralateral forepaw stepping in rats with unilateral 6-OHDA lesions. The combined use of these compounds resulted in improved stepping more than when either drug was used alone [93].

9 Conclusions

A recurrent theme is that differential expression, or dysfunctional expression, of constituent elements of the endocannabinoid system has been linked to a variety of neuropathological processes. The endocannabinoid system is comprised of bioactive lipids such as AEA and 2-AG, cognate receptors, and enzymes that are involved in their biosynthesis and degradation. Select cannabinoids have been reported to ameliorate a variety of neuropathological processes in experimental animals. To date, two "cannabinoid" receptors have been identified, the CB1R and the CB2R, although GPR55 has been implicated as an additional "cannabinoid" receptor. The CB1R appears to be critical for the overall homeostatic balance and regulation of the CNS, and although data indicate that this receptor may attenuate cognitive impairment and degeneration in disorders such as AD, ALS, and MS, its potential usefulness as a molecular target is tempered by the recognition that its activation engenders psychotropic effects. On the other hand, the CB2R is not linked to psychotropic effects, and its activation results in the modulation of inflammatory immune responses. The CNS contains a diverse array of cell types that include neurons, oligodendrocytes, and glial cells. While astrocytes are the predominant glial cell type, microglial cells as resident macrophages of the brain function as immune effector and accessory cells. Microglial cells express phenotypic markers for macrophages as well as those for the CB1R and CB2R [94, 95]. Immune

responses from microglial cells, along with those from immune cells recruited into the CNS during neuropathological processes, result in the release of proinflammatory cytokines, chemokines, and other factors that secondarily activate other immune cells, contributing further to the expansion of inflammatory events. Thus, the CB2R has the potential to serve as a useful molecular target for attenuating untoward immune inflammatory responses and for compensating a dysregulated endocannabinoid response in a variety of neuropathological processes.

Acknowledgments This work was supported, in part, by the National Institutes of Health awards DA005832 and DA029532.

References

1. Galiegue S, Mary S, Marchand J, Dussossoy D, Carriere D, Carayon P, et al. Expression of central and peripheral cannabinoid receptors in human immune tissues and leukocyte subpopulations. Eur J Biochem. 1995;232(1):54–61.
2. Schatz AR, Lee M, Condie RB, Pulaski JT, Kaminski NE. Cannabinoid receptors CB1 and CB2: a characterization of expression and adenylate cyclase modulation within the immune system. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol. 1997;142(2):278–87.
3. Nunez E, Benito C, Pazos MR, Barbachano A, Fajardo O, Gonzalez S, et al. Cannabinoid CB2 receptors are expressed by perivascular microglial cells in the human brain: an immunohistochemical study. Synapse. 2004;53(4):208–13.
4. Ramirez BG, Blazquez C, del Gomez PT, Guzman M, de Ceballos ML. Prevention of Alzheimer's disease pathology by cannabinoids: neuroprotection mediated by blockade of microglial activation. J Neurosci. 2005;25(8):1904–13.
5. Cabral GA, Marciano-Cabral F. Cannabinoid receptors in microglia of the central nervous system: immune functional relevance. J Leukoc Biol. 2005;78(6):1192–7.
6. Fernandez-Ruiz J, Romero J, Velasco G, Tolon RM, Ramos JA, Guzman M. Cannabinoid CB2 receptor: a new target for controlling neural cell survival? Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2007;28(1): 39–45.
7. Jarai Z, Wagner JA, Varga K, Lake KD, Compton DR, Martin BR, et al. Cannabinoid-induced mesenteric vasodilation through an endothelial site distinct from CB1 or CB2 receptors. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 1999;96(24):14136–41.
8. Di Marzo V, Breivogel CS, Tao Q, Bridgen DT, Razdan RK, Zimmer AM, et al. Levels, metabolism, and pharmacological activity of anandamide in CB(1) cannabinoid receptor knockout mice: evidence for non-CB(1), non-CB(2) receptor-mediated actions of anandamide in mouse brain. J Neurochem. 2000;75(6):2434–44.
9. Breivogel CS, Griffin G, Di Marzo V, Martin BR. Evidence for a new G protein-coupled cannabinoid receptor in mouse brain. Mol Pharmacol. 2001;60(1):155–63.
10. Wiley JL, Martin BR. Cannabinoid pharmacology: implications for additional cannabinoid receptor subtypes. Chem Phys Lipids. 2002;121(1–2):57–63.
11. Kuncl RW, Crawfors TO, Rothstein JD. Motor neuron diseases. In: Asbury AK, McKhann GM, McDonald WI, editors. Diseases of the nervous system. Philadelphia, PA: W.B. Saunders Publishing; 1992.
12. Weydt P, Hong S, Witting A, Moller T, Stella N, Kliot M. Cannabinol delays symptom onset in SOD1 (G93A) transgenic mice without affecting survival. Amyotroph Lateral Scler Other Motor Neuron Disord. 2005;6(3):182–4.
13. Shoemaker JL, Seely KA, Reed RL, Crow JP, Prather PL. The CB2 cannabinoid agonist AM-1241 prolongs survival in a transgenic mouse model of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis when initiated at symptom onset. J Neurochem. 2007;101(1):87–98.

14. Kim K, Moore DH, Makriyannis A, Abood ME. AM1241, a cannabinoid CB2 receptor selective compound, delays disease progression in a mouse model of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Eur J Pharmacol. 2006;542(1–3):100–5.
15. Witting A, Weydt P, Hong S, Kliot M, Moller T, Stella N. Endocannabinoids accumulate in spinal cord of SOD1 G93A transgenic mice. J Neurochem. 2004;89(6):1555–7.
16. Bilsland LG, Dick JR, Pryce G, Petrosino S, Di Marzo V, Baker D, et al. Increasing cannabinoid levels by pharmacological and genetic manipulation delay disease progression in SOD1 mice. FASEB J. 2006;20(7):1003–5.
17. Rossi S, De Chiara V, Musella A, Cozzolino M, Bernardi G, Maccarrone M, et al. Abnormal sensitivity of cannabinoid CB1 receptors in the striatum of mice with experimental amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Amyotroph Lateral Scler. 2010;11(1–2):83–90.
18. Dickson DW. Neuropathological diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease: a perspective from longitudinal clinicopathological studies. Neurobiol Aging. 1997;18(4 Suppl):S21–6.
19. Selkoe DJ. The cell biology of beta-amyloid precursor protein and presenilin in Alzheimer's disease. Trends Cell Biol. 1998;8(11):447–53.
20. Bayer TA, Wirths O, Majtenyi K, Hartmann T, Multhaup G, Beyreuther K, et al. Key factors in Alzheimer's disease: beta-amyloid precursor protein processing, metabolism and intraneuronal transport. Brain Pathol. 2001;11(1):1–11.
21. Dodart J-C, May P. Overview on rodent models of Alzheimer's disease. In: Gerfen CR, Rogawski MA, Sibley DR, Skolnick P, Wray S, editors. Protocols in neuroscience. New York: Wiley; 2011.
22. Martin-Moreno AM, Brera B, Spuch C, Carro E, Garcia-Garcia L, Delgado M, et al. Prolonged oral cannabinoid administration prevents neuroinflammation, lowers beta-amyloid levels and improves cognitive performance in Tg APP 2576 mice. J Neuroinflammation. 2012;9:8.
23. Fakhfouri G, Ahmadiani A, Rahimian R, Grolla AA, Moradi F, Haeri A. WIN55212-2 attenuates amyloid-beta-induced neuroinflammation in rats through activation of cannabinoid receptors and PPAR-gamma pathway. Neuropharmacology. 2012;63(4):653–66.
24. Kalifa S, Polston EK, Allard JS, Manaye KF. Distribution patterns of cannabinoid CB1 receptors in the hippocampus of APPswe/PS1DeltaE9 double transgenic mice. Brain Res. 2011;1376:94–100.
25. Aso E, Palomer E, Juves S, Maldonado R, Munoz FJ, Ferrer I. CB1 agonist ACEA protects neurons and reduces the cognitive impairment of AbetaPP/PS1 mice. J Alzheimers Dis. 2012;30(2):439–59.
26. Ehrhart J, Obregon D, Mori T, Hou H, Sun N, Bai Y, et al. Stimulation of cannabinoid receptor 2 (CB2) suppresses microglial activation. J Neuroinflammation. 2005;2:29.
27. Martin-Moreno AM, Reigada D, Ramirez BG, Mechoulam R, Innamorato N, Cuadrado A, et al. Cannabidiol and other cannabinoids reduce microglial activation in vitro and in vivo: relevance to Alzheimer's disease. Mol Pharmacol. 2011;79(6):964–73.
28. Westlake TM, Howlett AC, Bonner TI, Matsuda LA, Herkenham M. Cannabinoid receptor binding and messenger RNA expression in human brain: an in vitro receptor autoradiography and in situ hybridization histochemistry study of normal aged and Alzheimer's brains. Neuroscience. 1994;63(3):637–52.
29. Tolon RM, Nunez E, Pazos MR, Benito C, Castillo AI, Martinez-Org JA, et al. The activation of cannabinoid CB2 receptors stimulates in situ and in vitro beta-amyloid removal by human macrophages. Brain Res. 2009;1283:148–54.
30. Benito C, Nunez E, Tolon RM, Carrier EJ, Rabano A, Hillard CJ, et al. Cannabinoid CB2 receptors and fatty acid amide hydrolase are selectively overexpressed in neuritic plaque-associated glia in Alzheimer's disease brains. J Neurosci. 2003;23(35):11136–41.
31. Noonan J, Tanveer R, Klompas A, Gowran A, McKiernan J, Campbell VA. Endocannabinoids prevent beta-amyloid-mediated lysosomal destabilization in cultured neurons. J Biol Chem. 2010;285(49):38543–54.
32. Farkas S, Nagy K, Palkovits M, Kovacs GG, Jia Z, Donohue S, et al. [(1)(2)(5)I]SD-7015 reveals fine modalities of CB(1) cannabinoid receptor density in the prefrontal cortex during progression of Alzheimer's disease. Neurochem Int. 2012;60(3):286–91.

33. Mulder J, Zilberter M, Pasquare SJ, Alpar A, Schulte G, Ferreira SG, et al. Molecular reorganization of endocannabinoid signalling in Alzheimer's disease. Brain. 2011;134(Pt 4): 1041–60.
34. Jung KM, Astarita G, Yasar S, Vasilevko V, Cribbs DH, Head E, et al. An amyloid beta42-dependent deficit in anandamide mobilization is associated with cognitive dysfunction in Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging. 2012;33(8):1522–32.
35. Shohami E, Novikov M, Mechoulam R. A nonpsychotropic cannabinoid, HU-211, has cerebroprotective effects after closed head injury in the rat. J Neurotrauma. 1993;10(2): 109–19.
36. Nadler V, Biegon A, Beit-Yannai E, Adamchik J, Shohami E. 45Ca accumulation in rat brain after closed head injury; attenuation by the novel neuroprotective agent HU-211. Brain Res. 1995;685(1–2):1–11.
37. Biegon A, Joseph AB. Development of HU-211 as a neuroprotectant for ischemic brain damage. Neurol Res. 1995;17(4):275–80.
38. Shohami E, Gallily R, Mechoulam R, Bass R, Ben-Hur T. Cytokine production in the brain following closed head injury: dexanabinol (HU-211) is a novel TNF-alpha inhibitor and an effective neuroprotectant. J Neuroimmunol. 1997;72(2):169–77.
39. Knoller N, Levi L, Shoshan I, Reichenthal E, Razon N, Rappaport ZH, et al. Dexanabinol (HU-211) in the treatment of severe closed head injury: a randomized, placebo-controlled, phase II clinical trial. Crit Care Med. 2002;30(3):548–54.
40. Panikashvili D, Simeonidou C, Ben-Shabat S, Hanus L, Breuer A, Mechoulam R, et al. An endogenous cannabinoid (2-AG) is neuroprotective after brain injury. Nature. 2001;413(6855): 527–31.
41. Panikashvili D, Shein NA, Mechoulam R, Trembovler V, Kohen R, Alexandrovich A, et al. The endocannabinoid 2-AG protects the blood-brain barrier after closed head injury and inhibits mRNA expression of proinflammatory cytokines. Neurobiol Dis. 2006;22(2):257–64.
42. Epstein LG, Cvetkovich TA, Lazar ES, DiLoreto D, Saito Y, James H, et al. Human neural xenografts: progress in developing an in-vivo model to study human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) infection. Adv Neuroimmunol. 1994;4(3): 257–60.
43. Achim CL, Miners DK, Burrola PG, Martin FC, Wiley CA. In vivo model of HIV infection of the human brain. Dev Neurosci. 1993;15(6):423–32.
44. Tyor WR, Power C, Gendelman HE, Markham RB. A model of human immunodeficiency virus encephalitis in scid mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 1993;90(18):8658–62.
45. Thomas FP, Chalk C, Lalonde R, Robitaille Y, Jolicoeur P. Expression of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 in the nervous system of transgenic mice leads to neurological disease. J Virol. 1994;68(11):7099–107.
46. Toggas SM, Masliah E, Rockenstein EM, Rall GF, Abraham CR, Mucke L. Central nervous system damage produced by expression of the HIV-1 coat protein gp120 in transgenic mice. Nature. 1994;367(6459):188–93.
47. Letvin NL, Daniel MD, Sehgal PK, Desrosiers RC, Hunt RD, Waldron LM, et al. Induction of AIDS-like disease in macaque monkeys with T-cell tropic retrovirus STLV-III. Science. 1985;230(4721):71–3.
48. Roth MD, Tashkin DP, Whittaket KM, Choi R, Baldwin GC. Tetrahydrocannabinol suppresses immune function and enhances HIV replication in the huPBL-SCID mouse. Life Sci. 2005;77(14):1711–22.
49. Benito C, Kim WK, Chavarria I, Hillard CJ, Mackie K, Tolon RM, et al. A glial endogenous cannabinoid system is upregulated in the brains of macaques with simian immunodeficiency virus-induced encephalitis. J Neurosci. 2005;25(10):2530–6.
50. Molina PE, Winsauer P, Zhang P, Walker E, Birke L, Amedee A, et al. Cannabinoid administration attenuates the progression of simian immunodeficiency virus. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 2011;27(6):585–92.
51. Molina PE, Amedee A, LeCapitaine NJ, Zabaleta J, Mohan M, Winsauer P, et al. Cannabinoid neuroimmune modulation of SIV disease. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol. 2011;6(4):516–27.

52. Dowie MJ, Howard ML, Nicholson LF, Faull RL, Hannan AJ, Glass M. Behavioural and molecular consequences of chronic cannabinoid treatment in Huntington's disease transgenic mice. Neuroscience. 2010;170(1):324–36.
53. Bisogno T, Martire A, Petrosino S, Popoli P, Di Marzo V. Symptom-related changes of endocannabinoid and palmitoylethanolamide levels in brain areas of R6/2 mice, a transgenic model of Huntington's disease. Neurochem Int. 2008;52(1–2):307–13.
54. De MZ, Zuccato C, Giampa C, Patassini S, Bari M, Gasperi V, et al. Cortical expression of brain derived neurotrophic factor and type-1 cannabinoid receptor after striatal excitotoxic lesions. Neuroscience. 2008;152(3):734–40.
55. Allen KL, Waldvogel HJ, Glass M, Faull RL. Cannabinoid (CB(1)), GABA(A) and GABA(B) receptor subunit changes in the globus pallidus in Huntington's disease. J Chem Neuroanat. 2009;37(4):266–81.
56. Blazquez C, Chiarlone A, Sagredo O, Aguado T, Pazos MR, Resel E, et al. Loss of striatal type 1 cannabinoid receptors is a key pathogenic factor in Huntington's disease. Brain. 2011;134(Pt 1): 119–36.
57. Casteels C, Vandeputte C, Rangarajan JR, Dresselaers T, Riess O, Bormans G, et al. Metabolic and type 1 cannabinoid receptor imaging of a transgenic rat model in the early phase of Huntington disease. Exp Neurol. 2011;229(2):440–9.
58. Chiodi V, Uchigashima M, Beggiato S, Ferrante A, Armida M, Martire A, et al. Unbalance of CB1 receptors expressed in GABAergic and glutamatergic neurons in a transgenic mouse model of Huntington's disease. Neurobiol Dis. 2012;45(3):983–91.
59. Racke MK. Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE). In: Gerfen CR, Rogawski MA, Sibley DR, Skolnick P, Wray S, editors. Protocols in neuroscience. New York: Wiley; 2011.
60. Nesbit CE, Schwartz SA. In vitro and animal models of human immunodeficiency virus infection of the central nervous system. Clin Diagn Lab Immunol. 2002;9(3):515–24.
61. Fujiwara M, Egashira N. New perspectives in the studies on endocannabinoid and cannabis: abnormal behaviors associate with CB1 cannabinoid receptor and development of therapeutic application. J Pharmacol Sci. 2004;96(4):362–6.
62. Jackson SJ, Pryce G, Diemel LT, Cuzner ML, Baker D. Cannabinoid-receptor 1 null mice are susceptible to neurofilament damage and caspase 3 activation. Neuroscience. 2005;134(1): 261–8.
63. Cabranes A, Pryce G, Baker D, Fernandez-Ruiz J. Changes in CB1 receptors in motor-related brain structures of chronic relapsing experimental allergic encephalomyelitis mice. Brain Res. 2006;1107(1):199–205.
64. Pryce G, Baker D. Control of spasticity in a multiple sclerosis model is mediated by CB1, not CB2, cannabinoid receptors. Br J Pharmacol. 2007;150(4):519–25.
65. Cabranes A, Venderova K, de Lago E, Fezza F, Sanchez A, Mestre L, et al. Decreased endocannabinoid levels in the brain and beneficial effects of agents activating cannabinoid and/or vanilloid receptors in a rat model of multiple sclerosis. Neurobiol Dis. 2005;20(2):207–17.
66. Jackson SJ, Baker D, Cuzner ML, Diemel LT. Cannabinoid-mediated neuroprotection following interferon-gamma treatment in a three-dimensional mouse brain aggregate cell culture. Eur J Neurosci. 2004;20(9):2267–75.
67. de Lago E, Moreno-Martet M, Cabranes A, Ramos JA, Fernandez-Ruiz J. Cannabinoids ameliorate disease progression in a model of multiple sclerosis in mice, acting preferentially through CB1 receptor-mediated anti-inflammatory effects. Neuropharmacology. 2012;62(7): 2299–308.
68. Palazuelos J, Davoust N, Julien B, Hatterer E, Aguado T, Mechoulam R, et al. The CB(2) cannabinoid receptor controls myeloid progenitor trafficking: involvement in the pathogenesis of an animal model of multiple sclerosis. J Biol Chem. 2008;283(19):13320–9.
69. Rossi S, Furlan R, De Chiara V, Muzio L, Musella A, Motta C, et al. Cannabinoid CB1 receptors regulate neuronal TNF-alpha effects in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Brain Behav Immun. 2011;25(6):1242–8.

70. Lourbopoulos A, Grigoriadis N, Lagoudaki R, Touloumi O, Polyzoidou E, Mavromatis I, et al. Administration of 2-arachidonoylglycerol ameliorates both acute and chronic experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Brain Res. 2011;1390:126–41.
71. Arevalo-Martin A, Vela JM, Molina-Holgado E, Borrell J, Guaza C. Therapeutic action of cannabinoids in a murine model of multiple sclerosis. J Neurosci. 2003;23(7):2511–6.
72. Croxford JL, Miller SD. Immunoregulation of a viral model of multiple sclerosis using the synthetic cannabinoid R+WIN55,212. J Clin Invest. 2003;111(8):1231–40.
73. Mestre L, Docagne F, Correa F, Loria F, Hernangomez M, Borrell J, et al. A cannabinoid agonist interferes with the progression of a chronic model of multiple sclerosis by downregulating adhesion molecules. Mol Cell Neurosci. 2009;40(2):258–66.
74. Mestre L, Correa F, Docagne F, Clemente D, Guaza C. The synthetic cannabinoid WIN 55,212-2 increases COX-2 expression and PGE2 release in murine brain-derived endothelial cells following Theiler's virus infection. Biochem Pharmacol. 2006;72(7):869–80.
75. Di FM, Pini LA, Pelliccioli GP, Calabresi P, Sarchielli P. Abnormalities in the cerebrospinal fluid levels of endocannabinoids in multiple sclerosis. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2008;79(11):1224–9.
76. Loria F, Petrosino S, Hernangomez M, Mestre L, Spagnolo A, Correa F, et al. An endocannabinoid tone limits excitotoxicity in vitro and in a model of multiple sclerosis. Neurobiol Dis. 2010;37(1):166–76.
77. Correa F, Hernangomez-Herrero M, Mestre L, Loria F, Docagne F, Guaza C. The endocannabinoid anandamide downregulates IL-23 and IL-12 subunits in a viral model of multiple sclerosis: evidence for a cross-talk between IL-12p70/IL-23 axis and IL-10 in microglial cells. Brain Behav Immun. 2011;25(4):736–49.
78. Arevalo-Martin A, Molina-Holgado E, Guaza C. A CB(1)/CB(2) receptor agonist, WIN 55,212-2, exerts its therapeutic effect in a viral autoimmune model of multiple sclerosis by restoring self-tolerance to myelin. Neuropharmacology. 2012;63(3):385–93.
79. Sanchez AJ, Gonzalez-Perez P, Galve-Roperh I, Garcia-Merino A. R-(+)-[2,3-Dihydro-5-methyl-3-(4-morpholinylmethyl)-pyrrolo-[1,2,3-de]-1,4-benzox azin-6-yl]-1-naphtalenylmethanone (WIN-2) ameliorates experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis and induces encephalitogenic T cell apoptosis: partial involvement of the CB(2) receptor. Biochem Pharmacol. 2006;72(12):1697–706.
80. Hasseldam H, Johansen FF. Cannabinoid treatment renders neurons less vulnerable than oligodendrocytes in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Int J Neurosci. 2011;121(9): 510–20.
81. Ramil E, Sanchez AJ, Gonzalez-Perez P, Rodriguez-Antiguedad A, Gomez-Lozano N, Ortiz P, et al. The cannabinoid receptor 1 gene (CNR1) and multiple sclerosis: an association study in two case-control groups from Spain. Mult Scler. 2010;16(2):139–46.
82. Rossi S, Buttari F, Studer V, Motta C, Gravina P, Castelli M, et al. The (AAT)n repeat of the cannabinoid CB1 receptor gene influences disease progression in relapsing multiple sclerosis. Mult Scler. 2011;17(3):281–8.
83. Zhang H, Hilton DA, Hanemann CO, Zajicek J. Cannabinoid receptor and N-acyl phosphatidylethanolamine phospholipase D–evidence for altered expression in multiple sclerosis. Brain Pathol. 2011;21(5):544–57.
84. Docagne F, Muneton V, Clemente D, Ali C, Loria F, Correa F, et al. Excitotoxicity in a chronic model of multiple sclerosis: neuroprotective effects of cannabinoids through CB1 and CB2 receptor activation. Mol Cell Neurosci. 2007;34(4):551–61.
85. Maresz K, Pryce G, Ponomarev ED, Marsicano G, Croxford JL, Shriver LP, et al. Direct suppression of CNS autoimmune inflammation via the cannabinoid receptor CB1 on neurons and CB2 on autoreactive T cells. Nat Med. 2007;13(4):492–7.
86. Benito C, Romero JP, Tolon RM, Clemente D, Docagne F, Hillard CJ, et al. Cannabinoid CB1 and CB2 receptors and fatty acid amide hydrolase are specific markers of plaque cell subtypes in human multiple sclerosis. J Neurosci. 2007;27(9):2396–402.
87. Ortega-Gutierrez S, Molina-Holgado E, Arevalo-Martin A, Correa F, Viso A, Lopez-Rodriguez ML, et al. Activation of the endocannabinoid system as therapeutic approach in a murine model of multiple sclerosis. FASEB J. 2005;19(10):1338–40.

88. Eljaschewitsch E, Witting A, Mawrin C, Lee T, Schmidt PM, Wolf S, et al. The endocannabinoid anandamide protects neurons during CNS inflammation by induction of MKP-1 in microglial cells. Neuron. 2006;49(1):67–79.
89. Yiangou Y, Facer P, Durrenberger P, Chessell IP, Naylor A, Bountra C, et al. COX-2, CB2 and P2X7-immunoreactivities are increased in activated microglial cells/macrophages of multiple sclerosis and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis spinal cord. BMC Neurol. 2006;6:12.
90. van Vliet SA, Vanwersch RA, Jongsma MJ, Olivier B, Philippens IH. Therapeutic effects of Delta9-THC and modafinil in a marmoset Parkinson model. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol. 2008;18(5):383–9.
91. Price DA, Martinez AA, Seillier A, Koek W, Acosta Y, Fernandez E, et al. WIN55,212-2, a cannabinoid receptor agonist, protects against nigrostriatal cell loss in the 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine mouse model of Parkinson's disease. Eur J Neurosci. 2009; 29(11):2177–86.
92. Martinez A, Macheda T, Morgese MG, Trabace L, Giuffrida A. The cannabinoid agonist WIN55212-2 decreases L-DOPA-induced PKA activation and dyskinetic behavior in 6-OHDA-treated rats. Neurosci Res. 2012;72(3):236–42.
93. Kelsey JE, Harris O, Cassin J. The CB(1) antagonist rimonabant is adjunctively therapeutic as well as monotherapeutic in an animal model of Parkinson's disease. Behav Brain Res. 2009;203(2):304–7.
94. Carlisle SJ, Marciano-Cabral F, Staab A, Ludwick C, Cabral GA. Differential expression of the CB2 cannabinoid receptor by rodent macrophages and macrophage-like cells in relation to cell activation. Int Immunopharmacol. 2002;2(1):69–82.
95. Sinha D, Bonner TI, Bhat NR, Matsuda LA. Expression of the CB1 cannabinoid receptor in macrophage-like cells from brain tissue: immunochemical characterization by fusion protein antibodies. J Neuroimmunol. 1998;82(1):13–21.

Index

A
AD. *See* Alzheimer's disease (AD)
ADC. *See* AIDS dementia complex (ADC)
Adenosine triphosphate (ATP), 206, 208, 446
Afadin, 18
AIDS dementia complex (ADC), 251
Alcohol
  bacterial translocation, 513
  BBB, 518–519
  brain tissue loss, 512
  chronic alcohol consumption, 512
  gene expression, 514
  genomic and proteomic analysis, 513
  microglia
    activation, 515, 516
    CNS, 514, 517
    migration and phagocytosis, 516
    neuroinflammation, 515–516
    pathogenesis, 515
    pro-inflammatory cytokine, 515
    purinergic receptors, 516
    TLRs, 516
  neuroimaging techniques, 512
  neuronal injury and dysfunction
    anti-glutamatergic approach, 521
    astrocytes, 520
    chronic alcohol treatment, 520
    EAAT2 and AQP4 colocalization, 521
    iNOS protein, 519
    NMDA receptors, 520
  neuropathology study, 512
Alfonso-Loeches, S., 520
Algosediv, 560–561
ALS. *See* Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)
Alzheimer's disease (AD), 30, 223, 224, 231, 232
  amyloid-PET imaging, 161, 172
  anti-inflammatory treatment
    active and passive anti-Aß immunotherapies, 171–172
    COX-1 and COX-2 inhibitors, 170–171
  Aß deposition, 162, 163
  astrocytes, 64–65
  cannabinoids, 496–497, 573–575
  CRP, 162
  extracellular ß-amyloid (Ae), 162
  interleukin (IL)-6, 163, 164
  intracellular neurofibrillary tangles, 162, 164
  microglia activation, 163
    Aß plaque interaction, 165
    cytotoxic molecules, 164
    neurodegenerative aspects of, 166–168
    neuroprotective properties of, 165–166
    reactive microglia, 165
  nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, 162, 164
    COX-1 and COX-2 inhibitors, 168–169, 171
    oxidative stress, 170
    PPARγ, 169
    prostaglandin E2 levels, 169
  NOX2 activation in, 93
  peptide deposition, 162
  perivascular mononuclear cuffing, 164
  T cellular immune response, 162
American Academy of Neurology (AAN), 251, 345
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), 182, 190
  astrocytes, 68–69
  cannabinoids, 499–500, 572–573
  NOX2 activation in, 94

P.K. Peterson and M. Toborek (eds.), *Neuroinflammation and Neurodegeneration*,
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-1071-7, © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2014

Angulo, J.A., 444
Annexin A1 (ANXA1), 230
Antell, G., 355–374
Antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity (ADCC), 124
Antigen-presenting cells (APCs), 126, 145, 184, 212, 574
Antioxidants
  catalase and glutathione peroxidase, 88
  nonenzymatic antioxidants, 89–90
  SOD, 87–88
Antiretroviral therapeutics. *See* Cell-based drug delivery
Aquaporin-4 (AQP4), 22, 150, 521
Astrocytes
  in ALS, 70–71
  Alzheimer's disease, 66–67
  blood-brain barrier
    aquaporin-4, 22, 150
    calcium signaling, 22
    FGF, 150
    fibrous astrocytes, 20
    glucose transport, 22
    morphology, 20–21
    orthogonal arrays of particles, 150
    protoplasmic astrocytes, 20–21
    radial astrocytes, 20
    synaptic transmission, 22
    TGFβ and GDNF, 150
  CNS inflammation, 71
  cytokines and chemokines, 64
  DAMPs, 63
  GFAP expression, 63
  Huntington's disease, 68–69
  interferons, 64
  lysosomal storage diseases, 72
  in multiple sclerosis, 64–65
  nitric oxide (NO), 64
  NOD proteins, 63
  Parkinson's disease, 67–68
  pattern recognition receptors, 63
  prion diseases, 72
  TLRs, 63
  traumatic brain injury, 64
  tripartite synapse, 62
  trophic factors, 62
Asymptomatic neurocognitive impairment (ANI), 251
Atherosclerosis, 5, 203–205
ATP. *See* Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)
Aubagi®, 555–556
Avonex®, 552

B

Bacterial meningitis. *See* Pneumococcal meningitis
Bagetta, G., 436
Barhams, M.J., 337–351
Basu, A., 309–326
BBB. *See* Blood-brain barrier (BBB)
BDNF. *See* Brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF)
Benveniste, E.N., 61–72
Benzodiazepines, 181
Betaseron®, 552
Bethel-Brown, C., 431–438
Blanco, A.M., 520
Blood-brain barrier (BBB), 204, 248, 249
  ABC transporters, 149
  alcohol effects, 518–519
  astrocytes
    aquaporin-4, 22–23, 150
    calcium signaling, 22
    FGF, 150
    fibrous astrocytes, 20
    glucose transport, 22
    morphology of, 20–21
    orthogonal arrays of particles, 150
    protoplasmic astrocytes, 20–21
    radial astrocytes, 20
    synaptic transmission, 22
    TGFβ and GDNF, 150
  brain homeostasis, 4, 25, 148
  cocaine, effect of, 437
  discovery of, 4
  epithelial/endothelial cells, 148
    apical and basal domains, 4–5
    brain capillaries, 5
    electrical resistance, 9
    extracellular matrix, 5
    pericytes and astrocytes, 5
    physicochemical homeostasis, 4
    and tight junctions (*see* Tight junctions (TJs), endothelial cells)
    transporting phenotype, 6–8
  Japanese encephalitis, 310–312
  leukocyte infiltration, CNS, 31–32
  in multiple sclerosis
    drug delivery, impact on, 153–155
    immune cell trafficking, 152–153
    P-gp expression, 151
    reactive astrocytes, 151–152
  neurovascular units, 25
  pericytes
    capillary vasoconstriction, 23
    density, 24

extractellular matrix, 25
markers, 24
morphology, 24
Borymycin, 559–560
Brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), 69, 134, 187, 515, 577
Brain microvascular endothelial cells (BMVEC), 296–297
Braun, J.S., 394
Brenchley, J.M., 471
Buch, S.J., 431–438
Buga, A.M., 199–232
Burrows, K.B., 446

C

Cabral, G.A., 569–582
Cannabinoid receptor 2 (CB2R), 192
Cannabinoids
Alzheimer's disease, 496–497, 573–575
amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 499–500, 572–573
cannabinoid receptor signaling, 491–493
CBD and CBN, 571
CB1R/CB2R, 571
chronic pain, 500–501
closed head injury, 575–576
definition, 488
endocannabinoids, 491, 571
HIV encephalitis, 497–498, 576
Huntington's disease, 577
microglia, 494–495
multiple sclerosis, 498–499
CB1R and CB2R, 579–580
EAE model, 577–580
TMEV-IDD model, 577–580
Parkinson's disease, 581
physiological effects, 494
phytocannabinoids, 489–490, 571
synthetic cannabinoids, 571
traumatic brain injury, 495–496
Castro, V., 3–25
Caveolae, 19
CC-chemokine receptor 5 (CCR5), 248, 250, 434, 473–474
CCI. *See* Chronic constriction injury (CCI)
Cell adhesion molecules (CAM), 124, 152
Cell-based drug delivery
liposomal amphotericin, 530
NanoART
animal models, 536–537
biodistribution, 537–538
clinical translation, 539–540
HIV eradication, 540
HIV infection, 532, 538–539
innate immune activity, 531, 532
limitations, 531
liposomes, 533
long-acting and slow-release formulations, 531
pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, 537–538
PLGA, 533
polymeric structure, 531
size and shape, 531
subcellular distribution, 535–536
targeting, 533–534
testing, 534–535
nanomedicine, 530
Cerebral malaria (CM)
animal models
inbred animals, 408
murine ECM model, 409–411
P. coatneyi model, 411
primate models, 411
P. yoelii 17XL model, 409
rodents/nonhuman primates, 408
clinical features, 407
CNS response
cytokine expression, 415
mechanisms, 414, 415
metabolic acidosis and hypoglycemia, 416
NO production, 416
pericytes, 415
pRBC binding, 414–415
ring hemorrhages, 415
cognitive impairments and neurological deficits, 407
definition, 407
EC activation, 408
EPO therapy, 418
impact estimation, 407
pathogenesis, 407
pRBCs, 407
systemic immune response, 411–413
treatments, 416
Chamorro, A., 218
Chemokine receptors
astrocytes, 64
CCR5 and CXCR4, 473–475
CCR2/CCL2, 38
CCR6/CCL20, 37
CCR7/CCL19, CCL21, 36
CXCR3/CXCL9,10,11, 37–38
CXCR4/CXCL12, 37
microglia cells, 53

Chronic constriction injury (CCI), 106–108
Cingulin, 18
Claudins, 11, 13–14, 148
Closed head injury (CHI), 496, 575–576
CM. *See* Cerebral malaria (CM)
CNS injury-induced immunodepression syndrome (CIDS), 218
Cocaine
  BBB, effect of, 437
  glial functions, CNS
    astroglia, 436
    microglia, 435–436
  HIV-1 replication
    astrocytes, 434–435
    HIV p24 antigen, 433
    microglia, 434
  neurotoxicity, effect of, 436–437
Coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10), 90
Combination antiretroviral therapy (cART)
  CNS penetrance, 255
  comorbidities, 254–255
  HAART toxicity, 255–256
  HIVE, 255–256
  host factors, 252–253
  pathogenic mechanisms, 252, 253
  viral factors, 254
Compulsive hair-pulling disorder, 51
Congenital cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection
  cell culture models
    astrocytes cells, 296–298
    brain injury mechanisms, 298–299
    brain microvascular endothelial cells, 297–298
    microglia/macrophages, 297, 300
    neural progenitor/stem cells (NPCs), 297–299
    neuronal cells, 296, 297
    oligodendroglial cells, 296
  epidemiology
    birth defects and childhood neurodevelopmental disorders, 293
    clinical signs, 292–293
    conceptualization and design, 292
    mononucleosis syndrome, 291
    prevalence of, 292
    risk factors, 292
    sensorineural hearing loss, 293
    symptomatic clinical syndrome, 292
    symptoms, 293
  fetal/neonatal brain infection, 301–302
  inflammatory response, 300–301
  T1-weighted brain MRI, 295
  ultrasonograms/CT scans, 294
Copaxone®, 553
Copolymer 1, 553
Corronarobetin, 560–561
Coxsackievirus and adenovirus receptor (CAR), 17
C-reactive protein (CRP)
  Alzheimer's disease, 162
  stroke, 216–217
Crews, F.T., 513, 516
Cytomegalovirus. *See* Congenital cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection
Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL), 357, 371–373

D
Danger-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs), 54, 210–211, 395
Del Rio-Hortega, P., 48
de Vries, H.S., 143–155
Dimethyl fumarate, 556
Di Napoli, M., 199–232
Distaval, 560–561
Dutta, K., 309–326
Dynacin®, 559–560

E
Edwards, S., 487–501
Effector T cells (Teffs), 127–131, 134
Ehrlich, P., 4
Endocannabinoids, 110, 491, 492, 571, 572
E-selectin, 32–33, 212, 228, 437
Extavia®, 552
Extracellular matrix (ECM), 5, 25, 206, 415

F
Fibroblast growth factor (FGF), 150
Fingolimod, 554–555
Flucyamide, 555–556
Fox, H.S., 247–256
Fumaric acid, 556

G
Gao, H.-M., 81–96
Gendelman, H.E., 529–540
Gilenya®, 554–555
Glatiramer acetate, 553
Glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP), 20, 63, 449, 453, 520
Glucocorticoid, 557–558
Glutathione (GSH), 89
Gofman, L., 511–521
Goldman, E.E., 4

Goncalves, J., 450
G protein-coupled receptor (GPCR), 474
Graber, D.J., 547–562

H

HAART. *See* Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART)
Haeusler, K.G., 218
HAND. *See* HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder (HAND)
Harris, T.H., 29–39
HD. *See* Huntington's disease (HD)
Hemeoxygenase-1 (HO-1), 170
Herpes simplex encephalitis (HSE)
  cost, 270
  diagnosis, 270–271
  incidence, 270
  mimic herpes simplex encephalitis, 272
  PCR detection, 272
  serologic evaluation, 271–272
  temporal lobe localization, 264
  therapy, 272–273
Herpes simplex virus (HSV) infections
  epidemiology
    latent genital infection, 269
    type 1 HSV, 268
    type 2 HSV, 269
  history, 264
  HSE
    diagnosis, 270–271
    economic and medical cost, 270
    incidence, 270
    mimic herpes simplex encephalitis, 272
    PCR detection, 272
    serologic evaluation, 271–272
    temporal lobe localization, 264
    therapy, 272–273
  neonatal infections
    diagnosis, 279
    dissemination, 276–277
    encephalitis, 277–278
    history, 273
    incidence of, 275–276
    intrapartum infection, 275
    intrauterine infection, 275, 276
    pathogenesis, 274
    pathology, 274
    postnatal infection, 275
    skin, eye, and mouth infection, 278–279
  pathology and pathogenesis
    CNS disease, 265
    encephalitis, 266–267
    human disease, 265–266
    latency, 265–266
  viral DNA, PCR detection of, 280–281
Hickey, W.F., 547–562
Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), 356, 357, 471
High-mobility group box 1 protein (HMGB1), 210–211, 395
Hillburger, M.E., 471
HIV-1. *See* Human immunodeficiency virus type I (HIV-1)
HIV-associated dementia (HAD), 248, 251, 254
HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder (HAND)
  ADC, 251
  cART (*see* Combination antiretroviral therapy (cART))
Hong, J.-S., 81–96
Hopkins, S.J., 199–232
HTLV-1. *See* Human T-cell leukemia virus type I (HTLV-1)
HTLV-1-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP), 356–357
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
  astrocytes, 249
  chemokines, 250
  CNS, 248
  macrophages/microglia, 249
  viral proteins, 250
Human immunodeficiency virus encephalitis (HIVE), 255–256, 356, 366, 576
Human immunodeficiency virus type I (HIV-1)
  characteristics, 355
  HAND, 355, 356
  Tat (*see* Tat proteins)
Human lymphocyte antigen-DR (HLA-DR), 124
Human T-cell leukemia virus type I (HTLV-1)
  characteristics, 356
  HAM/TSP, 357
  Tax (*see* Tax proteins)
Hunter, C.A., 29–39
Huntington's disease (HD)
  astrocytes, 68–69, 186–188
  autosomal-dominant disorder, 182
  cannabinoids, 576–577
  central and peripheral cytokines, 188–189
  CNS pathology, 181
  CoQ10, 90
  genetic testing, 181
  microglia (*see* Microglia)
  peripheral immune cells, 189–190

Huntington's disease (HD) (*cont.*)
targeting neuroinflammation
CB2R, 192
CNS-penetrant molecules, 191
KMO inhibitors, 192
kynurenine pathway, 191
minocycline, 191
quinolinic acid, 191

I
Immune-dysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy X-linked (IPEX) syndrome, 131
Immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS), 253
Immunomodulatory therapeutics
anti-inflammatory drug, 550, 551
blood–brain/spinal barrier, 561-562
dimethyl fumarate, 556
fingolimod, 554–555
glatiramer acetate, 553
glucocorticoid, 557–558
IFN-beta, 550, 552
immunostimulants, 549
immunosuppressive drugs, 549–550
minocycline, 560–561
multiple sclerosis, 549
natalizumab, 554
neurodegenerative diseases, 550
neuroinflammation, 548
NSAIDs, 558–559
Parkinson's disease, 548–549
teriflunomide, 555
thalidomide, 560–561
Indoleamine 2,3 dioxygenase (IDO), 167–168
Induced/inducible Tregs (iTregs), 131
Inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), 124, 132
Interferon-beta (IFN-beta), 550, 552
Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG), 225
Ischemic stroke
acute infections, 204
adaptive immunity
antigen-presenting cells (APC), 212
cerebral ischemia, 211, 212
mast cells (MCs), 212
proinflammatory monocytes, 212
T cells, 214
adenosine triphosphate (ATP), 206
aging brain, 214
ANXA1,230
brain cooling, 228
calpains, 231
cell death-dependent inflammation, 209–210
chronic infections, 205
clinical trials, 201, 202, 224–226
CRP, 216–217
CX3CR1, 211
cytotoxic edema, 207
HMGB1, 210–211
HPA axis, 216, 219
hypothermia, 228–231
inflammation and microvasculature, 207
innate immunity
antigen-presenting cells (APC), 212
cerebral ischemia, 211
DAMPs, 210–211
germline encoded, 212
lymphocyte subtypes, 214
microglia, 212
NK, NKT, and γδT cells, 214
secretory and phagocytic cells, 212
IVIG, 225
neuroprotective agents, neuroinflammation, 225–227
pathological process, 203
pharmacotherapy, 231
poststroke infection
counter-regulatory response, 218–219
immunosuppression, 218
neural and endocrine control, 219–220
prevention of, 220–221
reperfusion therapy, 225
risk factor
atherosclerosis, 203–204
immunomodulation, 202
infections, 203
pathological process, 203
smooth muscle cell, 204
vascular risk factors, 203
ROS, 207
tissue plasminogen activator (tPA), 202
tissue repair, 220–222
tolerization, 228
vascular dementia, 224
vascular events, 208–209

J
Jamerson, M., 569–582
Japanese encephalitis (JE)
chaperone protein, 311
Culicine species, 312
DDX3 and DDX5, 311
genotypes I-V, 311
history, 310
human infection

acute encephalitic stage, 317–319
BBB, 314
complications, 320
cytokine signaling, 314
entering host cells, 315
global impact estimation, 312–313
neuropathology, 315–317
prodromal stage, 317
prolonged encephalitic stage, 319–320
therapeutic approaches
anti-inflammatory and antiapoptotic substances, 321, 324
interferon-α and interferon inducers, 321, 324
natural compounds, 323, 325–326
viral replication inhibitors, 321–323
virion, 310
JC virus (JCV)
cellular host range and molecular factors, 338–340
laboratory diagnosis, 340
lytic infection, 341
pathogenesis
markers, 342–343
viral variants and latency, 341–342
virus trafficking, 342
PML
clinical manifestations, 346
diagnosis, 345
histopathology, 346–347
inflammation and IRIS, 347–348
prognosis of, 350
risk, 343, 344
T and B cells, 348
treatments, 348–350
quantitative polymerase chain reaction, 341
in situ DNA hybridization, 341
JEV. *See* Japanese encephalitis (JE)
John, B., 29–39
John, C.C., 405–418
Johnson, M., 396
Junctional adhesion molecules (JAMs), 16

K

Katz, P.S., 487–501
Klein, M., 387–399
Koedel, U., 387–399
Kooij, G., 143–155
Krause, D.L., 161–173
Kuhn, D.M., 451
Kynurenine 3-monooxygenase (KMO), 191

L

Laboratory of Molecular Medicine and Neuroscience (LMMN), 341
Lanari, M., 294
Leblhuber, M., 188
Lee, M.R., 520
Lee, Y.M., 320
Lennette, E.H., 273
Lewandowsky, M., 3
Lewy bodies (LBs), 122
Lipolysis-stimulated lipoprotein receptor (LSR), 16
Lleo, A., 170
Loftis, J.M., 448
Lou Gehrig's disease. *See* Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)
Lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1 (LFA-1), 34–35, 124
Lymphocyte trafficking. *See* T cells, in CNS

M

Machelska, H., 105–113
Magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS), 318, 443, 444
Mahajan, S.D., 467
Major, E.O., 337–351
Marshall, S.A., 516
Martinez-Skinner, A., 529–540
Matrix metalloproteinases (MMP), 68, 202, 209, 396, 410
McMillan, J.M., 529–540
Meares, G.P., 61–72
Membrane-associated guanylate kinase (MAGUK), 17–18
Methamphetamine (Meth) neurotoxicity
induced toxicity, 443–445
mechanisms
hyperthermia, 445
mitochondrial function and bioenergetics, 446
motor proteins kinesin and dynactin, 447
neurotransmitter activity, 446
oxidative stress, 445
neuroinflammation process
astrocytic and microglial activation, 448, 452
COX inhibitor, 453
cyclooxygenase, 450–451
cytokine and chemokine mRNA transcripts, 450
endogenous ligands, 451
inflammatory cytokines, 452
monocyte chemotactic protein-1, 450

Methamphetamine (Meth) neurotoxicity (*cont.*)
neuroinflammatory mediators, 448, 449
neurons, 449
Methyl CpG-binding protein 2 (MECP2), 50
Microglia, 62
activation of
multistage process, 54–56
neuroprotection and neurotoxicity, 56–57
"ON" and "OFF" signals, 54
alcohol (*see* Alcohol)
Alzheimer's disease, 163
Aß plaque interaction, 165
cytotoxic molecules, 164
neurodegenerative aspects of, 166–168
neuroprotective properties of, 165–166
reactive microglia, 165
arsenal of executory functions, 183
cytokines and chemokine receptors, 53
developmental origins of, 47–48
Huntington's disease (HD)
C3aR and C5aR, 185
D2 receptors, 186
HLA-DR expression, 184
HTT, 185
PK-11195, 186
receptors/signaling pathways, 190
R6/2 mouse model, 185
integration, CNS, 48–50
ionotropic and metabotropic glutamate receptors, 52
neuromodulators and neurohormones, 52
Parkinson's disease (*see* Parkinson's disease (PD))
pattern-recognition receptors, 52–53
$P2X_4$ receptors, 51–52
$P2X_7$ receptors, 51
$P2Y_6$ receptors, 52
$P2Y_{12}$ receptors, 52
reactive oxygen species (ROS), 183
subsequent danger signal, 184
TLRs, 52–53
Minociclina, 559–560
Minociclinum, 559–560
Minocin®, 559–560
Minocycline, 132–133, 165, 219, 559–560
Minocyclinum, 559–560
Minor neurocognitive disorder (MND), 251
Mizee, M.R., 143–155
Molina, P.E., 487–501
Möller, T., 179–193
Monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (MCP-1), 133, 164, 450
Mosley, R.L., 119–134
Müller, N., 161–173
Multidrug resistance-associated proteins (MRPs), 19, 149
Multinucleated giant cell (MGNC), 249, 279
Multi-PDZ domain protein 1 (MUPP-1), 19
Multiple sclerosis (MS), 30
age of onset, 143
astrocytes, 64–65
blood-brain barrier
drug delivery, impact on, 153–155
immune cell trafficking, 152–153
P-gp expression, 151
reactive astrocytes, 151–152
cannabinoids, 498–499, 577–580
clinical features and diagnosis, 143–144
corticosteroids, 146
environmental and genetic factors, 144–145
experimental allergic encephalomyelitis, 147
FTY720, 146–147
glatiramer acetate, 146
helminth infections, 145
immunomodulatory therapeutics, 548–549
incidence and prevalence, 143
interferon beta (IFN-β), 146
lifetime risk of, 143
natalizumab treatment, 35, 146
NOX2 activation in, 94
white matter/grey matter lesions, 145–146
Myelin basic protein (MBP), 213

N

NADPH oxidase (NOX), 85
Nair, M.P.N., 435
NanoART
animal models, 536–537
biodistribution, 537
clinical translation, 539–540
HIV eradication, 540
HIV infection, 531, 538–539
innate immune activity, 531, 532
limitations, 531
liposomes, 533
long-acting and slow-release formulations, 531
pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, 537–538
PLGA, 533
polymeric structure, 531
size and shape, 531
subcellular distribution, 535–536
targeting, 533–534

testing, 534–535
Natalizumab, 35, 146, 554
National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS), 248, 341
Natural killer T (NKT) cells, 214
Natural Tregs (nTregs), 131
Neonatal herpes simplex virus infections
diagnosis, 279
dissemination, 276–277
encephalitis, 277–278
history, 273
incidence of, 276
intrapartum infection, 275
intrauterine infection, 275
pathogenesis, 274
pathology, 273–274
postnatal infection, 275
skin, eye, and mouth infection, 278–279
Neural progenitor/stem cells (NPCs), 296, 298–299
Neuroleptics, 181
Neuropathic pain
anti-inflammatory cytokines, 108–109, 111
chronic constriction injury, 106–108
endocannabinoids, 110
macrophages, 106–108, 111
opioid peptides, 109–110
proinflammatory cytokines, 107–108, 111
PSNL, 106, 107
resolvins, 111
spinal nerve ligation, 106, 107
T lymphocytes, 107–108, 111
Nitrated α-synuclein (N-α-syn), 129–131
Nitric oxide synthase (NOS), 87
N-methyl-D-aspartic acid (NMDA) receptors, 165
Noda, M., 47–57
Nonnemacher, M.R., 355–373
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 558–559
Alzheimer's disease, 162, 164
COX-1 and COX-2 inhibitors, 168–169, 172–173
oxidative stress, 169–170
PPARγ, 169
prostaglandin E2 levels, 169
Parkinson's disease, 132
Northrop, N.A., 443–454
Nuclear factor erythroid 2-related factor 2 (Nrf2), 68
Nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain (NOD) proteins, 63

O
O'Callaghan, J.P., 450
Occludin, 11, 14–15, 148
Opiates
glial and neuronal cell populations
astrocytes, 468
HIV-infected cells/viral load, 468
macrophages and microglia, 467, 468
MHC II and CD68, 468
neurological diseases, 468
synaptodendritic network, 468
μ-opioid agonists, 468
heroin/diacetylmorphine, 464
immune activation state, 471–472
inflammation, 470–471
mechanisms of, 465–467
opioid and chemokine receptors, 473–475
μ-, κ-, and δ-opioid receptors, 464
Opioid peptides, 109–110
Opitz, B., 391
Orthogonal arrays of particles (OAPs), 150
Oxidative stress
brain
catalase and glutathione peroxidase, 88
high sensitivity of, 83–84
nonenzymatic antioxidants, 88–90
reactive oxygen species (*see* Reactive oxygen species (ROS))
SOD, 87–88
and neurodegeneration
glutamate-mediated oxidative stress, 92
mitochondrial dysfunction, 91
NOX2 activation
ALS, 94
Alzheimer's disease, 93
multiple sclerosis, 94–95
neurodegenerative diseases, 94
Parkinson's disease, 93–94
therapeutic strategy, 95–96

P
Parasitized red blood cells (pRBCs), 407
Parasympathetic nervous system (PNS), 219
Park, G.S., 405–419
Parkinson's disease (PD), 30, 134, 182, 188
adaptive immunity
autoantibodies, 126
C1q-mediated clearing pathways, 127
immunological memory, 126
innate immune cells, 126
N-α-syn, 126–128
T cells, 126–128
age of onset, 121

Parkinson's disease (PD) (*cont.*)
- astrocytes, 67–68
- cannabinoids, 580–581
- clinical signs of, 121
- CoQ10, 90
- dopaminergic neurons, 121–122
- immunomodulatory therapeutics, 549
- incidence rate of, 121
- LBs, 122
- microglia
  - adhesion molecules, 124
  - cellular elements, interaction with, 123
  - Fc receptors, 124
  - HLA-DR, 124
  - IL-1β and TNF-α, 125
  - iNOS, 124
  - misfolded proteins, 123–124
  - morphological changes, 124
  - PBR, 125
  - progenitor cells, 123
  - reactive microglia, 124–125
  - receptors, 124
  - resting microglia, 123, 124
  - ROS and RNS, 124
  - stimuli and danger signals, 123
  - α-synuclein, 124
- NOX2 activation in, 93
- oxidative stress, 125
- prevalence of, 120–121
- α-synuclein, 122
- Th2 effector cells, 131
- therapeutic strategies, 132–134
- Tregs, 128, 129, 131

Partial sciatic nerve ligation (PSNL), 106, 107
Pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs), 53–54, 125
Pattern recognition receptors (PRRs), 125
- astrocytes, 62–63
- microglia, 52

Peng, X., 466
Peripheral benzodiazepine receptor (PBR), 125, 186
Peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC), 433
Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma (PPARγ), 15, 169
Persidsky, Y., 511–521
Peterson, P.K., 433
Pfister, H.W., 387–399
P-glycoprotein (Pgp), 19, 151
Phytocannabinoids, 571, 572
Pirrone, V., 355–374
Plasma membrane redox system (PMRS), 88
PML. *See* Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML)
Pneumococcal meningitis
- adjunctive therapy
  - inflammatory bacterial products, release of, 397–398
  - neutralizing endogenous C5a activity, 398–399
- brain injury mechanisms, 396–397
- global impact estimation, 388
- host immune response
  - amplification and propagation, 393–396
  - DAMPs, 395–396
  - HMGB1, 3395
  - initiation, 390–393
- *Neisseria meningitidis*, 388
- pathogens survival, 389–390
- *Streptococcus*
  - *S. agalactiae*, 388
  - *S. pneumoniae*, 388

Poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid) (PLGA), 533
Popa-Wagner, A., 199–232
Positron emission tomography (PET), 444
Potula, R., 511–522
Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML), 35
- clinical manifestations, 346
- diagnosis, 345–346
- histopathology, 346–347
- inflammation and IRIS, 347–348
- prognosis of, 350
- risk, 343, 344
- T and B cells, 348
- treatment, 348–350

Protein associated with Lin-7 (PALS-1), 18
P-selectin, 32–33, 208
Psychotablets, 560–561

R

Reactive nitrogen species (RNS), 87, 124
Reactive oxygen species (ROS), 207
- Alzheimer's disease, 168–170
- in brain
  - enzymes and molecules, 87
  - mitochondria, 85
  - NOS and RNS, 87
  - NOX, 85–86
  - peroxisomes, 86
  - production, 83–84
  - xanthine oxidase, 86
- Parkinson's disease, 124

Reames, H.R., 273
Rebif®, 552
Regulatory T cells (Tregs), 128, 129, 131, 133

Reinisch, V.M., 161–173
Reperfusion therapy, 225
Resolvins, 111
Retrovirus-induced transactivator protein
  HIV-1
    characteristics, 355
    HAND, 356
    Tat (*see* Tat proteins)
  HTLV-1
    characteristics, 355
    HAM/TSP, 357
    Tax (*see* Tax proteins)
Rett syndrome, 50
RIG-I-like receptors (RLR), 53
RNS. *See* Reactive nitrogen species (RNS)
Rogers, T.J., 463–475
ROS. *See* Reactive oxygen species (ROS)
Roth, R.D., 434
Roy, S., 466

S
Sacerdote, P., 466
Schleiss, M.R., 291–302
Sedoval, 560–561
Selectins, 33
Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI), 181
Singhrao, S.K., 185
Slevin, M., 199–232
Smith, C.J., 199–232
Smith, M.G., 273
Softenon, 560–561
Solodyn®, 559–560
Sphingosine-1-phosphate (S1P) receptors, 152
Spinal nerve ligation (SNL), 106, 107
Staal, R.G.W., 179–193
Stauch, K., 247–256
Synthetic cannabinoids, 571
α-Synuclein, 122

T
Talimol, 560–561
Tat proteins
  cellular localization, 364–366
  central nervous system
    antibody response, 371
    CTL response, 372
    extracellular HIV-1 Tat, 368–370
    immune surveillance, 370
    presence and diversity, 366–367
  functional domains, 258–360
  neurodegenerative disease, 357
  posttranslational modification, 363–364
  secretion, 365
  structure, 358
  viral replication, 360–362
Tax proteins
  cellular localization, 365–366
  central nervous system
    antibody response, 372
    CTL response, 373
    extracellular HTLV-1 Tax, 368–370
    immune surveillance, 370–371
    presence and diversity, 366–367
  functional domains, 359–360
  neurodegenerative disease, 357
  posttranslational modification, 364
  secretion, 366
  structure, 359–360
  viral replication, 360, 362
TBI. *See* Traumatic brain injury (TBI)
T cell acute lymphocytic leukemia (T-ALL), 36
T cells, in CNS
  chemokines
    CCR2/CCL2, 38
    CCR6/CCL20, 37
    CCR7/CCL19, CCL21, 36
    CXCR3/CXCL9,10,11, 37–38
    CXCR4/CXCL12, 37
  leukocyte extravasation and adhesion molecules
    blood-brain barrier, 31–32
    β7 integrin, CD49d and CD103, 33–34
    LFA-1/ICAM-1 interactions, 34–35
    L-, P-, and E-selectins, 33
    VLA-4 and LFA-1, 35
    VLA4 (α4β1)/VCAM-1 interactions, 34, 39
  licensing of, 30–31
Tecfidera™, 556
Teffs. *See* Effector T cells (Teffs)
Teriflunomide, 555–556
Tetraspanin-enriched microdomains (TEMs), 152–153
Thalidomide, 560–561
Thalomid®, 560–561
Theophilcholine, 560–561
Thioredoxins, 90
Thomas, D.M., 451
Tight junctions (TJs), endothelial cells, 25
  afadin, 18–19
  bicellular contacts, 12
  CAR, 17
  cingulin, 19
  claudins, 10, 13, 148

Tight junctions (TJs), endothelial cells (*cont.*)
 cytoplasmic signaling molecules, 149
 JAMs, 16
 LSR, 16MAGUK, 17–18
 MARVEL-D3, 16
 morphology, 10
 MUPP-1, 19
 occludin, 11, 14–15, 148, 149
 PAR-3/PAR-6/Cdc42/Rac1 complex, 18
 strands, 10, 11
 transcellular transport, 19–20
 tricellular contacts, 12–13
 tricellulin, 15–16
 zonula occludens-1, 10–11, 17–18
Tissue plasminogen activator (tPA), 202
Toborek, M., 3–25
Toll-like receptors (TLRs), 449
 astrocytes, 63
 JEV infection, 315
 microglia, 53, 123
Transendothelial electrical resistance (TEER), 9, 149
Transforming growth factor-β (TGFβ), 131, 150, 212
Transient ischemic attack (TIA), 216
Traumatic brain injury (TBI)
 astrocytes, 64
 cannabinoids, 495–496
 stroke, 215, 229
Tregs. *See* Regulatory T cells (Tregs)
Trojan horse hypothesis, 248
Tropical spastic paraparesis (TSP), 356–357
Tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), 249, 314, 368, 369, 450
Tysabri®, 554

V
Verkhratsky, A., 47–57
Vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV), 34
Vitamin E, 89
von Geldern, G., 337–351

W
Whitley, R.J., 263–281
Wigdahl, B., 355–374
Wilshusen, R.A., 119–134
Winbeck, K., 216
Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, 341

X
Xanthine oxidase, 84, 86

Y
Yamamoto, B.K., 443–454
Yao, H., 431–438
Yun, S.I., 321

Z
Zahr, N.M., 512
Zhou, H., 81–96
Zhu, J.P., 444
Zonula occludens-1 (ZO-1), 10, 12, 14–18